





# Richards Topical Encyclopedia

Edited by  
ERNEST HUNTER WRIGHT  
and  
MARY HERITAGE WRIGHT

Editor for Canada  
ALBERT WILLIAM TRUEMAN

VOLUME EIGHT



NEW YORK  
THE RICHARDS COMPANY, INC.

PRINTED AND BOUND IN THE U. S. A. BY  
KINGSPORT PRESS, INC., KINGSPORT, TENN.

# CONTENTS

## VOLUME VIII

### THE HISTORIES OF OUR STATES AND POSSESSIONS

*(For specific facts relating to this subject consult the Index)*

	PAGE		PAGE
ALABAMA, HISTORY OF	I	NEVADA, HISTORY OF	229
ALASKA, HISTORY OF	9	NEW HAMPSHIRE, HISTORY OF	235
ARIZONA, HISTORY OF	17	NEW JERSEY, HISTORY OF	243
ARKANSAS, HISTORY OF	25	NEW MEXICO, HISTORY OF	253
CALIFORNIA, HISTORY OF	32	NEW YORK, HISTORY OF	263
COLORADO, HISTORY OF	45	NORTH CAROLINA, HISTORY OF	285
CONNECTICUT, HISTORY OF	54	NORTH DAKOTA, HISTORY OF	297
DELAWARE, HISTORY OF	62B	OHIO, HISTORY OF	303
FLORIDA, HISTORY OF	67	OKLAHOMA, HISTORY OF	314
GEORGIA, HISTORY OF	77	OREGON, HISTORY OF	322
IDAHO, HISTORY OF	85	PENNSYLVANIA, HISTORY OF	332B
ILLINOIS, HISTORY OF	93	RHODE ISLAND, HISTORY OF	342B
INDIANA, HISTORY OF	107	SOUTH CAROLINA, HISTORY OF	348
IOWA, HISTORY OF	117	SOUTH DAKOTA, HISTORY OF	357
KANSAS, HISTORY OF	125	TENNESSEE, HISTORY OF	365
KENTUCKY, HISTORY OF	132B	TEXAS, HISTORY OF	374B
LOUISIANA, HISTORY OF	139	UTAH, HISTORY OF	388
MAINE, HISTORY OF	147	VERMONT, HISTORY OF	397
MARYLAND, HISTORY OF	157	VIRGINIA, HISTORY OF	404B
MASSACHUSETTS, HISTORY OF	164	WASHINGTON, HISTORY OF	419
MICHIGAN, HISTORY OF	178	WEST VIRGINIA, HISTORY OF	429
MINNESOTA, HISTORY OF	188	WISCONSIN, HISTORY OF	437
MISSISSIPPI, HISTORY OF	199	WYOMING, HISTORY OF	447
MISSOURI, HISTORY OF	206B	THE HAWAIIAN ISLANDS, HISTORY OF	455
MONTANA, HISTORY OF	214	UNCLE SAM'S PIGMY ISLANDS, HISTORY OF	462
NEBRASKA, HISTORY OF	221	PORTO RICO, HISTORY OF	468

# COLOR PLATES

	PAGE		PAGE
ALABAMA, MAP OF	472	NEVADA, MAP OF	520
ARIZONA, MAP OF	474	NEW HAMPSHIRE, MAP OF	522
ARKANSAS, MAP OF	476	NEW JERSEY, MAP OF	524
CALIFORNIA, MAP OF	478	NEW MEXICO, MAP OF	526
COLORADO, MAP OF	480	NEW YORK, MAP OF	528
CONNECTICUT, MAP OF	482	NORTH CAROLINA, MAP OF	530
DELAWARE, MAP OF	504	NORTH DAKOTA, MAP OF	532
FLORIDA, MAP OF	484	OHIO, MAP OF	534
GEORGIA, MAP OF	486	OKLAHOMA, MAP OF	536
IDAHO, MAP OF	488	OREGON, MAP OF	538
ILLINOIS, MAP OF	490	PENNSYLVANIA, MAP OF	540
INDIANA, MAP OF	492	RHODE ISLAND, MAP OF	543
IOWA, MAP OF	494	SOUTH CAROLINA, MAP OF	544
KANSAS, MAP OF	496	SOUTH DAKOTA, MAP OF	546
KENTUCKY, MAP OF	498	TENNESSEE, MAP OF	498
LOUISIANA, MAP OF	500	TEXAS, MAP OF	548
MAINE, MAP OF	502	UTAH, MAP OF	550
MARYLAND, MAP OF	504	VERMONT, MAP OF	522
MASSACHUSETTS, MAP OF	506	VIRGINIA, MAP OF	552
MICHIGAN, MAP OF	508	WASHINGTON, MAP OF	554
MINNESOTA, MAP OF	510	WEST VIRGINIA, MAP OF	552
MISSISSIPPI, MAP OF	512	WISCONSIN, MAP OF	556
MISSOURI, MAP OF	514	WYOMING, MAP OF	558
MONTANA, MAP OF	516	ALASKA, MAP OF	560
NEBRASKA, MAP OF	518	THE HAWAIIAN ISLANDS, MAP OF	562
PORTO RICO, MAP OF			563

## KEY TO PRONUNCIATION

ä, as in mäte	oi, as in toil
ā, as in senāte	ōō, as in sōōn
Ā, as in hāir	ōō, as in bōōk
ǎ, as in hăt	ou, as in shout
ä, as in fäther	s, as in so
ä, a sound between ä and ǎ, as in cästle	sh, as in ship
ch, as in chest	th, as in thumb
ē, as in ēve	th, as in thus
ē, as in rēlate	ū, as in cūre
ě, as in bĕnd	ū, as in accūrate
ē, as in readēr	û, as in fûr
g, as in go	ŭ, as in ŭs
ī, as in bīte	û, a sound formed by pronouncing ē with the lips in the position for ōō, as in the German <i>über</i> and the French <i>une</i>
ĭ, as in ĭnn	zh, as in azure
k, as in key	', an indication that a vowel sound occurs, but that it is elided and cannot be identified, as in apple (ăp''l)
K, the guttural sound of ch, as in the German <i>ach</i> , or the Scotch <i>loch</i>	Λ heavy accent (') follows a syllable receiving the principal stress, and a lighter accent (') follows a syllable receiving a secondary stress.
n, as in not	
N, the French nasal sound, as in <i>bon</i>	
ng, the English nasal sound, as in strong	
ō, as in bōne	
ō, as in Christōpher	
ô, as in lôrd	
ö, as in hôt	

---

# **The HISTORY of ALABAMA**

---

## **Reading Unit No. 1**

### **ALABAMA: THE COTTON STATE**

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

#### ***Interesting Facts Explained***

Where cotton is king, 8-1  
Alabama's broad waterways, 8-3  
When Alabama became a great industrial center, 8-3  
De Soto and the Indian chief, Tuscaloosa, 8-4  
When Alabama became the terri-

tory of the United States, 8-4  
Wars with the Indians, 8-6  
Where fishermen hold a "Deep Sea Rodeo," 8-7  
How Alabama keeps her charm, 8-7

#### ***Things to Think About***

Why have the farmers of Alabama begun to grow peanuts, corn, and other crops?  
Why have industrial companies flocked to Alabama?  
What "belts" does Alabama have?

Who was Cadillac?  
Which Indian tribes lived in Alabama?  
When did Alabama begin to forge ahead?  
What is being done for the Negroes of Alabama?

#### ***Picture Hunt***

Why did Alabama build great docks at Mobile at a cost of ten million dollars? 8-3

What are Alabama's most important industries? 8-5-6  
The cotton pickers, 7-245

#### ***Related Material***

The great plantations, 8-408-10  
What kinds of birds live in the warm, sunny South? 4-132-38, 141-49  
How is marble quarried, and how is it made ready for use? 9-381  
For what purposes do we use

turpentine? 9-313  
The story of cotton, 9-27-34  
The plight of the farmers, 7-459  
When brother fought with brother, 7-253-65  
What did Booker T. Washington do for the Negroes? 12-569-70

#### ***Leisure-time Activities***

PROJECT NO. 1: Make a relief map of Alabama, and show the mountains and rivers in the state, 8-2-3.

PROJECT NO. 2: Read the story of Booker T. Washington, 12-569-70.

#### ***Summary Statement***

Alabama is the state where cotton is king and where vast industries are being developed. but

the rush of modern life has not been able to rob her of her charm.

## THE HISTORY OF ALABAMA



Photo by W P A

Montgomery, the capital of Alabama, lies in the broad, fertile valley which extends east and west across the state. Because of the soft, easily weathered rocks that underlie it, this is one of the richest agricultural belts in the South. The picture shows the capitol; its central portion, which bears the dome, is said to be one

of the best examples of its style in the United States. Here Alabama voted to secede, here the Confederacy was formed, and on those steps just in front of the columns Jefferson Davis took the oath of office as president of the Confederacy. The beautiful old city was a fitting background for these stirring events.

### ALABAMA: *the* Cotton State

#### *The Tale of a State's Successful Efforts to Break Free from the Tyranny of a Single Crop and Find Prosperity by Developing Her Many Fine Resources*

**C**OTTON is king in Alabama, king over a number of other valuable crops; for farming is Alabama's chief industry. Once nothing that grew could dispute the monarch's sway. In the old plantation days, before the Civil War, cotton fields spread their annual snow over nearly all the cultivated land, and slaves were brought in vast numbers to do the work. But cotton is hard on the soil, and of late years other countries, in Asia and Africa, have been raising cotton and finding customers for it among the European countries that used to buy from the United States alone. So in spite of the fact that free labor has proved more profitable than slave labor, cotton in normal times

does not bring the huge returns today that it brought before the Civil War, when it sometimes sold for \$150 a bale. As a result Alabama's progressive farmers have been wisely turning more and more to other crops—corn, oats, hay, peanuts, white and sweet potatoes, tobacco, peaches, pears, and grapes. Occasionally corn brings more than cotton, and the produce of truck farms along the east side of Mobile Bay, where the climate is semitropical and the rainfall heavy, nets a handsome return when the carloads of lettuce and cucumbers and tomatoes are sold out of season in northern cities like Boston and New York. Dairying too has been making great strides, and some day will doubt-

## THE HISTORY OF ALABAMA

less bring the state as much money as cotton does. But it will probably do this without cutting down the acreage of cotton.

Now what kind of country is it over which King Cotton rules with such enduring sway? It is a smiling land of mountain and plain, forest and open field, of busy industrial cities and gracious leisurely towns, of mines and factories and small farms, of generous rivers and open sea. It is a storied land, with a history it looks back upon with affection, a land of haunting grace and charm born of a romantic past.

The mountains are all in the northern part of the state. They belong to the Cumberland Plateau (plă-tō') and are part of the southwestern end of the great Appalachian (ăp'ă-lă'chī-ăn) mountain system, which here dips below the coastal plain that covers all the southern and western part of the state. Of course the plain is made of the very material that once went to form the mountains. Torn away bit by bit it was carried along by streams and spread out on the floor of the sea. Then, when the land was lifted up during some great convulsion of the earth's crust, the sea bottom became the dry lowland plain that we see to-day. Gradually it was dissected by slow-going winding rivers.

### Alabama's Hill Country

On the eastern border of the state is a rugged hill country known as the Piedmont (pēd'mōnt) Plateau, the southernmost end of the long eastern belt of the Appalachian mountain system; the northern end of this belt of very old and hard rocks forms the

uplands of New England. Both the Piedmont and Cumberland plateaus have been deeply dissected by rivers, so that it is only geologists who recognize that they once were a level upland.

### The Coosa Valley

Just north of the Piedmont Plateau is a broad valley which, if followed northward, would be found to run through the whole length of the Appalachian system without a break. It is known as the Great Appalachian Valley. At

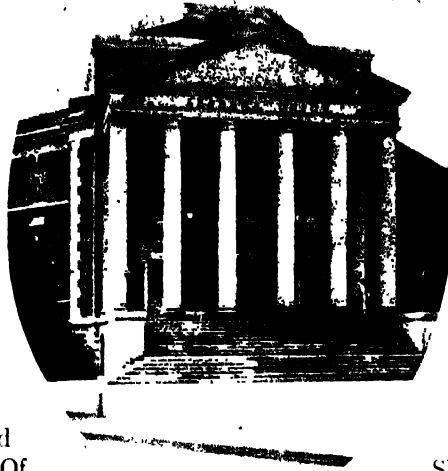
its northernmost end is Lake Champlain, in New York State. In Alabama it is drained by the Coosa River.

Nature has done well by Alabama in the matter of rivers.

In the north the Tennessee makes its way through the uplands of the Cumberland Plateau, on its way to join the Ohio, and at Muscle Shoals provides rapids upon which the United States government has built an enormous power plant for the manufacture of nitrates. Along this river's gracious valley and in the land north of it are raised most of the cereals the state produces.

At the other end of the state is Mobile (mô-bēl') Bay, on the Gulf of Mexico. Into this busy harbor empties a river system which, branching like a tree, seems to have been planned to furnish a

highway into every corner of the state. Its western branch is made up of the Tombigbee River and its tributary, the Black Warrior. The eastern branch is the Alabama, which near the city of Montgomery receives the Coosa coming down from the north. The trunk of the great tree has been split into



The Union building at the University of Alabama, in Tuscaloosa, is the center of student activities. To this beautiful old city the university students have been coming for well over a century, except for the years after the Civil War, when classes had to be suspended because the Northern army had destroyed the buildings. The Tuscaloosa of to-day still keeps its fine old streets shaded by trees a century old, but it has become the center of a large region rich in cotton, lumber, dairies, and farms. A big power development on the Coosa River supplies the city and its neighborhood with electricity to operate the foundries, blast furnaces, paper mills, and coke ovens which are clustered there.



## THE HISTORY OF ALABAMA

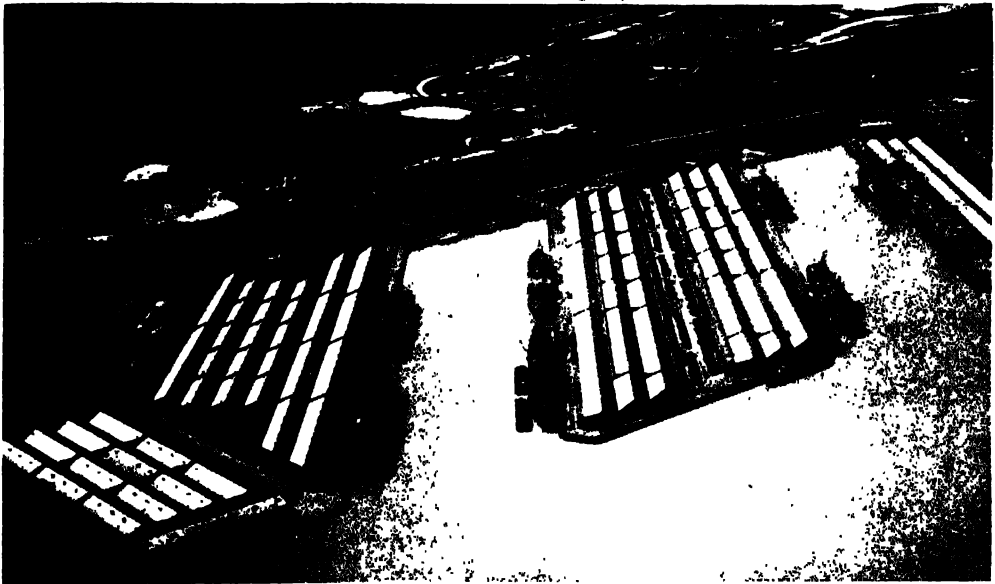


Photo by Mobile Co. of C.

These are the great state-owned docks at Mobile, built at a cost of ten million dollars. The channel which connects the docks with the Gulf of Mexico is now

deep and wide enough for ocean-going steamers to pass through. The state made these improvements in order to stimulate trade.

two parts, the Mobile River and the Tensas River, both of which enter Mobile Bay.

Only think what these broad waterways, open winter and summer, must mean to the farmers and manufacturers of the state. The Black Warrior and the Tombigbee have been dredged by the government ever since World War I and now carry a heavy traffic. The Coosa and Alabama, besides carrying freight, are dammed for the manufacture of electric power that is carried all over the state to operate factories, light cities, and do the work on the farms. Industries have flocked to Alabama to take advantage of her cheap shipping facilities and her electric power; for on slow-going products, like iron and coal and coke, they can undersell all competitors.

### Alabama's Mineral Belt

Just south of the Tennessee Valley lies Alabama's great Mineral Belt. It is only since 1880 that she has been making much use of her valuable deposits of coal and iron, which Nature was considerate enough to store up for her in the same region, throwing in at the same time, as if for good measure, a

plentiful supply of limestone, which yields materials used in the manufacture of iron and steel.

### Busy Birmingham

Since the state began to mine her iron and coal she has become a great industrial center. By 1895 she was selling her pig iron in Liverpool for less than English iron. Birmingham, at the heart of the iron region, has grown from a little hamlet, built at the intersection of two railroads after the Civil War, until she now is the South's chief iron and steel city. All over the world, by rail and by boat, she ships her coal and coke, her steel and pig iron, and the cast-iron pipes which she makes in such vast quantities. Down the Black Warrior to the port at Mobile go pipes to lay the water systems in Brazil, Hawaii, and Denmark, or fence wire for Texas or Florida. And back up the river, or up the picturesque Tombigbee, overhung by long festoons of Spanish moss, the huge barges return laden with ores from Spain or Brazil or Mt. Sinai, with sugar from Cuba or Porto Rico, or with oil from Texas. All the neighboring

---

## THE HISTORY OF ALABAMA

---

states receive these distant cargoes at a substantial saving.

Besides her iron and coal Alabama has other minerals—sand and gravel, mica, gold, silver, manganese ore, oil, and bauxite (bôk'sit), source of aluminum. Limestone has made it possible for her to build up a thriving industry in cement, and her marble is sold over the whole country. Clay products and shale also bring her in a substantial income—pottery is made on the east side of Mobile Bay—and the state is rich in Artesian wells.

### The Famous Cotton Belt

But where, you may be asking, does all the cotton come from? Just south of the Mineral Belt is a strip of level lowland that stretches across the state, a wide belt of rich black soil under a blazing sun. This is the Cotton Belt, though of course cotton comes from many other parts of the state. It is grown to-day on hundreds of small farms averaging about seventy acres each. Gone are the big plantations, gone the great slaveholders with their easy-going ways, and gone are the hordes of slaves who sang their wild sweet songs as they worked. The old plantation life vanished with the Civil War and the abolition of slavery.

To-day the ever-busy rivers carry some of the crop down to Mobile, where, as of yore, it is shipped abroad or to other ports in the United States; but a great deal of it goes to the neighboring mills that of late have increased so fast in the Cotton Belt. There it is made into cotton goods or rayon, both of them important in any list of Alabama's products.

### Forests of Lordly Pine

Between the Cotton Belt and the sea, on a level strip of sandy soil some hundred and fifty miles wide, there grows one of Alabama's most valuable products—her fine stand of timber. To be sure, two-thirds of the state is covered with forest or is returning to forest, but it is here in the Timber Belt that the yellow and long-leaf pine grow most luxuriantly. And it is here that the turpentine factories are mostly found. For not only do Alabama's forests yield valuable

timber, but turpentine and rosin products as well. And in the Timber Belt are numerous paper factories, where the wood of the evergreens is made into wrapping paper and wallboard. Alabama is one of the leading lumbering states in the Union.

It is only in the last few decades that the Cotton State has awakened to the wealth of her resources. For many years her mild climate—with its gentle south winds and one or two snowfalls a winter—her luxuriant fields of cotton, her traditions of quiet ease, kept her content to farm and let the rushing new life of the Industrial Revolution swirl by her. She had not been settled so early as the states farther east. De Soto was probably the first white man to visit her soil, when he passed by (1539-1540) on his great—and last—trip of exploration. He was entertained with all suitable pomp by Tuscaloosa—"the Black Warrior"—a powerful Indian chief who had his capital in a walled city built of wood and mud and large enough to hold 80,000 inhabitants. A fight followed, and in return for his hospitality De Soto destroyed the city and killed large numbers of the Indians.

### Who First Settled Alabama?

English traders from the east came to Alabama from time to time, but it was not till 1702 that a settlement was made. Then the French established on Mobile Bay the capital of the province they called Louisiana. Later they moved it to Fort Conde (kôn'dā'), the little village, begun in 1711, from which the present city of Mobile is descended. At one time the colony was under the government of Cadillac, the founder of Detroit.

Those were troublous days. Both Spanish and English claimed the territory and laid siege to the colony. Pirates too took a turn at plundering the town. In 1763 the land was finally handed over to England by the Treaty of Paris. But various claims were still made to part or all of it—by Spain and Carolina and Georgia—and it was not till 1813 that the whole of what is now Alabama passed into the undisputed possession of the United States and became part of the Mississippi Territory. In 1819 Alabama was admitted to the Union.

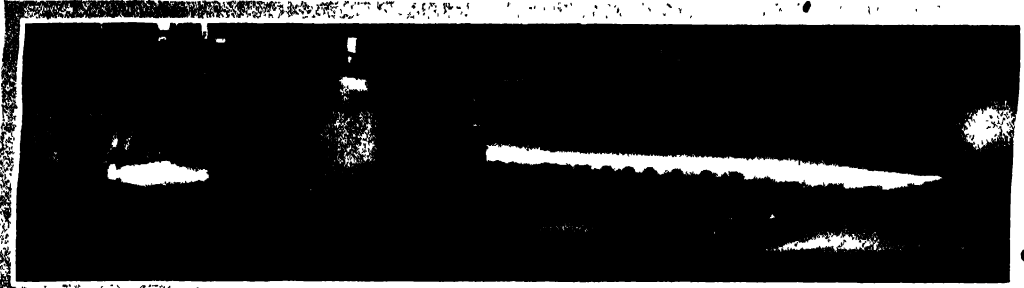
## THE HISTORY OF ALABAMA



This page shows you some of Alabama's most important industries. At A is a marble quarry. The workmen are using a saw to cut the rock into rectangular blocks which are then lifted out of the quarry by cranes. The worker at B is extracting turpentine from a pine tree. At C is a view inside a coal mine. The miner is using an automatic loader to load the coal

just freed from the seam into cars which will carry it to the surface. Three of the materials necessary for the making of steel—iron, coal, and limestone—lie conveniently side by side in Alabama. At D is a large cotton field. E shows a sawmill where Alabama timber is cut into suitable lengths. At F a farmer is gathering his cucumbers for the market.

## THE HISTORY OF ALABAMA



Mighty forces of nature are unloosed in the steel mills which are common in certain sections of Alabama.

Many stirring scenes like the one above are enacted in Birmingham and other iron manufacturing centers.

Meanwhile English settlers of all classes had begun pouring in as soon as the Revolutionary War was over. Hungry for cheap land they left the older settlements along the coast and found new homes in the rich river valleys. The invention of the cotton gin enormously increased the demand for cotton, and England, with the quick growth of her cotton mills, was willing to buy all the cotton the United States could produce. So it was natural that the newcomers should raise it.

But it was not all plain sailing for these pioneers. The Indians had owned the land for generations, and saw no reason why they should be made to give it up. In the War of 1812 the Creeks, egged on by a powerful Shawnee chief named Tecumseh (tê-kûm'sě), sided with the British and wiped out several hundred settlers who had fled to Fort Mims. Andrew Jackson finally crushed the uprising.

The Creeks—named from the places where they preferred to build their homes—were an able lot, who had formed a confederacy consisting of a number of Indian tribes, all members of the powerful Muskogean (mŭs'-kô-jě'ăn) group that lived in the southern United States east of the Mississippi. With them were the Choctaws (chôk'tô), in the western part of the territory, the Chickasaw (chik'â-sô) and Apalaches (ă'pă-lă'chê) farther east, and the Seminoles (sêm't-nôl) in Florida. But the Choctaws and the Chickasaws remained friendly to the whites. All these Indians were fairly civilized. They knew how to plant and weave and make pottery, they had skillful tools and lived in houses, and had built up a strong tribal organization.

In the same territory lived the Cherokees

(chěr'ô-kê), who belonged to the great Iroquoian (îr'ô-kwoi'ăn) group, whom you may read of in our story of New York State. The Cherokees were the largest of the eastern tribes, and were progressive enough to adopt white ways almost at once. They grew cotton, owned slaves, raised cattle, and knew many of the useful arts. Finally they banded themselves together into a nation, and one of their chiefs, a famous man named Sequoyah (sê-kwoi'ă), gave them a written language. They were finally removed to Oklahoma.

After the downfall of Napoleon (1815) a group of French aristocrats came to Alabama and founded a town they called Demopolis near the junction of the Tombigbee and the Black Warrior. There they hoped to raise grapes and olives and to transplant a sprig of French culture to the soil of the New World. But neither their French ways nor their French crops thrived under the hard new conditions, and gradually the brave French folk intermarried with the people round them, keeping only their names and a few heirlooms to tell their story.

By 1860 Alabama had become a flourishing state, with fine towns and acres upon acres of cotton. Hers had been one of the first railroads in America. She had a few mills and factories, but most of her manufactures came from the North.

And then came the War. Alabama was at the heart of the Confederacy, and it was in a room in her state capitol at Montgomery that the Confederacy was formed. Jefferson Davis, a resident of the beautiful old town, took his oath of office on the capitol steps. Alabama did not have to see so much fighting as did some of the other southern states,

---

## THE HISTORY OF ALABAMA

---

but like all the rest she suffered cruelly from the war, and from the injustices of the period that followed.

It was not till the state awoke to her industrial riches that she began once more to forge ahead. With the working of her mines the railroads had a swift growth, until to-day every great road in the South runs into Mobile, to unload its goods on the fine docks that the state has built there. Modern methods and modern conveniences replaced the old way of doing things "befo' de wah," and northern capital was quick to see the advantages of a state where there was an abundance of electrical power, plenty of coal, cheap transportation, vast stores of iron and cotton and timber, a mild climate, and thousands of pairs of hands to do the work. To-day Alabama ranks high among the states in the amount of developed water power, and manufactures an amazing variety of goods, cotton and silk textiles, rubber tires, copper wire, steel freight cars, electrochemical products, athletic underwear, stockings, ribbons, and lumber products are a few of them. Mobile and Decatur build ships.

### **Sending Books to the People**

More and more the boys and girls from the farms and from the hills are finding work in town, and the state is turning more and more of her energy to the task of training them for the callings they will follow. Good schools, in fine buildings, are increasing both in town and country. The University of Alabama, at Tuscaloosa, is an old institution, long a center of culture, but these new students want a quick, practical education. This the state is bending every effort to give them. And to help the people who must stay at home she sends libraries traveling over the state in well-appointed trucks.

She is also bringing learning to her Negroes, who make up nearly a third of the population. Many of them live in the Cotton Belt, where they do most of the work in the fields. At Tuskegee (tūs-kē'gē) is the well-known Tuskegee Normal and Industrial Institute founded by Booker T. Washington for the advancement of his race; and other Negro schools are being established. The Negroes

are decreasing in proportion to the white population, for a great many of the colored men and boys are finding work in the manufacturing cities of the North.

### **What Is a "Deep Sea Rodeo"?**

But life in Alabama is far from being all work. Her people of late years have formed the pleasant habit of holding numerous festivals and pageants under the ancient trees and along the azalea walks of their fine old towns. And many who live in the sterner climate of the states to the north have found that winter on Mobile Bay can be altogether delightful. There, especially on Dauphin Island, they sail and hunt and fish for the tarpon and other fish that delight the sportsman's heart. As a matter of fact, Mobile has a good many men who get their living from the sea, and take their fleet of fishing vessels as far as Yucatan to catch the red snapper. Every August fishermen gather at Mobile for a fishing contest that is known as the "Deep Sea Rodeo." And in the proper season other sportsmen seek out the banks of the Alabama River, a country rich in game. Alabama has an unusual variety of birds.

But all this pushing modern life has not been able to rob Alabama of her charm. In the back country one may still find plenty of simple folk who cling to the quaint old ways, and along the ivy-mantled streets of many a town and village the easy, graceful life still wears a charm that the twentieth century has not been able to destroy. Of course the state shares to a certain extent the problems that belong to a good many other states—soil erosion, soil exhaustion resulting from too much farming of a single cash crop, and the low standard of living among farmers that comes from these conditions and from the farm tenancy that goes hand in hand with them. These are problems that we have discussed on other pages of these books. But Alabama is learning to diversify her crops and to make the most of her rich resources. Clover, alfalfa, and cow-peas, planted for her livestock, are restoring the soil. And an enterprising spirit is bringing ever greater enlightenment and prosperity.

## ALABAMA

**AREA:** 51,609 square miles—28th in rank.

**LOCATION:** Alabama, a part of what we know as the Old South, belongs to the East South Central group of states; it lies between 30° 13' and 35° N. Lat. and between 84° 51' and 88° 31' W. Long. It is bounded on the north by Tennessee, on the east by Georgia, on the south by Florida and the Gulf of Mexico, and on the west by Mississippi.

**PHYSICAL FEATURES:** All of Alabama except the northern part lies in the coastal plain of the Gulf of Mexico. In the north the Cumberland Plateau rises as high as 1,800 feet in certain places, and is deeply cut by the Tennessee River and its branches. The highest section of the plateau is in the northeast, where there are many steep mountains. Southeast of this rugged section is the southern end of the Great Appalachian Valley, which enters the state from Georgia and is drained by the Coosa River. South of this valley lies another upland region where the Piedmont Plateau extends a little way into the state, a section of rolling country. It is here that we find the highest point in Alabama—Cheaha Mountain (2,407 ft.) in the Talladega range. Other mountains in the state are Raccoon, Lookout, and Little mountains, all in the northeast.

Most of the Alabama rivers drain directly into the Gulf of Mexico, though in the north the Tennessee (652 m. long) joins the Ohio. The largest river in the west is the Tombigbee (409 m. long). It rises in Mississippi, and midway in its course in Alabama receives the Black Warrior (178 m. long), which comes down from the north central part of the state. Just before the Tombigbee reaches the sea it joins with the Alabama River (315 m. long) to form a pair of sister streams, the Mobile (38 m. long) and the Tensas, which enter Mobile Bay. The Alabama is formed by the union of the Coosa (286 m. long) and the Tallapoosa (268 m. long), both of which rise in Georgia. On the east the Chattahoochee (410 m. long), which also rises in Georgia, flows along Alabama's eastern border on its way to join the Flint and with it form the Apalachicola, which enters the Gulf. Along the Gulf coast lie low sandy islands, behind which is the Intracoastal Waterway across the Gulf states. It is used by small craft. Alabama has 531 square miles of inland water.

**CLIMATE:** At Mobile the mean Jan. temperature is 52° F.; the mean July temperature, 81° F. The record high is 103° F.; the record low, -1° F. The annual mean temperature is 67° F. Alabama has a mild, even climate, for what would be excessive heat in summer is relieved in the south by winds from the Gulf, and in the north by the higher altitudes. The winters are mild; the thermometer falls below freezing on an average of only 35 days in each year, and snow falls only once or twice a year. The mean temperature for the entire state is 46° F. in winter and 79° F. in summer. The average rainfall is 52 inches. Most of the winds are from the south. Though fog is rare, thunderstorms are common.

**INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING:** University of Alabama, Tuscaloosa; Alabama Polytechnic Institute, Auburn; Alabama College, Montevallo; Athens College, at Athens; Huntingdon College, Montgomery; Birmingham-Southern College, Birmingham; Howard College, also at Birmingham; Judson College, Marion; Spring Hill College, Spring Hill; St. Bernard College, St. Bernard; Woman's College of Alabama, Montgomery; Talladega College, Talladega; Tuskegee Normal and Industrial Institute, for Negroes, at Tuskegee; an agricultural and mechanical institute for Negroes at Normal; and state teachers' colleges at Florence, Jacksonville, Livingston, Montgomery, and Troy.

**CHARITIES AND CORRECTION:** Alabama has state prisons at Wetumpka, Speigner, and Montgomery, all of them institutions where industries are carried on; but able-bodied convicts are employed in constructing the state highways. The state maintains a child welfare department, together with industrial schools for boys and girls and reform schools for youthful law-breakers. Other state institutions are a hospital for the insane, institutions for the deaf and for the blind, and a home for Confederate veterans. Alabama inflicts capital punishment by electrocution.

**POLITICAL FACTS:** Under the constitution, as adopted in 1901, the legislature consists of the Senate and a House of Representatives, with membership limited to 35 in the Senate and 107 in the House. The body meets every fourth year, with the session limited to 50 days. Members are paid \$4 a day and traveling expenses. The legislature must provide for the revision of the statutes every twelfth year.

The executive officers are elected every four years and are not eligible for reelection. The governor is not eligible for election or appointment to any other office during his term or for one year thereafter. In 1911 the salary of the governor was raised from \$5,000 to \$7,500. His veto must be placed upon a bill within a week, after which time any bill becomes a law if he has not acted upon it.

Judicial power rests with the Senate sitting as a court of impeachment, a supreme court, circuit courts, chancery courts, courts of probate, and such courts as the legislature may establish. A circuit court is held in each county at least twice a year. There are five chancery divisions, each divided into districts in each of which a chancellor holds court at least twice a year. Judges are elected for six years and circuit solicitors (prosecutors) are chosen for four years. The legislature of 1911 created a state court of appeals of three members, elected for a six-year term at \$5,000 annually.

Any United States citizen over 21 who can read and write any article of the Constitution, who has worked or been regularly engaged in some lawful business or occupation for the greater part of the year preceding the date of registration, or who owns and has paid taxes on property valued at \$300 or more, is allowed to vote. Permitted exceptions are those persons who are physically unable to write, read, or work, and those who have served in the army or navy of the United States or Confederate states in war time, and their lawful descendants. (The second half of the last sentence is a statement of the famous "grandfather clause," incorporated into the election laws of many southern states.) The suffrage clause was particularly designed to eliminate the Negro vote. All persons guilty of criminal offense are debarred from voting.

The commission form of government is mandatory in cities of the first class, of which Birmingham is the only representative. For others, it is permissive.

Primary elections are held, with party state committees authorized to fix assessments on candidates. Mostly the elections are under state control.

There are stringent laws against political contributions by corporations.

Both counties and municipal corporations are limited in their taxing and debt-incurring powers. The State Tax Commission was established in 1907 with power to act as Board of Equalization and recommend improvements in the tax laws.

The state cannot, by law, engage in internal improvements, but the 1908 amendment eliminated public roads from this provision.

The capital of Alabama is at Montgomery.

## ALABAMA—Continued

**PARKS:** There are no national parks, but many city and state parks.

**MONUMENTS:** The state has no national monuments, but has 2,435,087 acres of national forest.

**GAME AND BIRD RESERVATIONS:** Petit Bois National Wildlife Refuge on the shore in Mobile County, for birds; and Wheeler Refuge in Morgan, Limestone, and Madison counties for birds and fur animals.

**NAME:** Taken from the name of an Indian tribe in southern Alabama, members of the Creek Confederacy. The original form was "Alabamu," a Choctaw word. It is thought that this Indian word originally may have been spelled "alba aya mule," meaning "to open or clear the thicket."

**NICKNAMES:** Alabama is called the Cotton State because of its former importance in cotton production. Because of its abundance of lizards it is sometimes called the Lizard State. And because it has a great

many yellowhammers its inhabitants are sometimes called "Yellerhammers."

**STATE FLOWER:** Golden rod.

**STATE SONG:** "Alabama," by Julia Tutweiler and Edna Gockel-Gussen; officially adopted in March, 1931.

**STATE FLAG:** A white rectangle bearing a red St. Andrew's cross; adopted out of affection for the Confederate flag.

**STATE MOTTO:** "We Dare Defend Our Rights."

**STATE BIRD:** The yellowhammer, commonly called the flicker—a member of the woodpecker family.

**INTERESTING FACTS:** Alabama observes New Year's Day, Washington's Birthday, Independence Day, Labor Day, Election Day, Armistice Day, Thanksgiving Day, Christmas Day, Robert E. Lee's Birthday on January 19, Shrove Tuesday, or Mardi Gras, Thomas Jefferson's Birthday on April 13, Confederate Memorial Day on April 26, Jefferson Davis' Birthday on June 3, and Fraternal Day on October 9.

Population of state, 1940, 2,832,961							
Counties							
Autauga (C)	20,977	Lauderdale (B1)	46,230	Andalusia * (C4)	6,886	Carrville (D3)	468
Baldwin (B5)	32,324	Lawrence (B1)	27,880	Anniston * (D2)	25,523	Castleberry (B4)	609
Barbour (D4)	32,722	Lee * (D1)	36,455	Arab (C1)	640	Centerville (B1)	893
Bibb (B3)	20,155	Limestone (B1)	35,642	Ariton (D4)	561	Chapman (C4)	1,167
Blount (C2)	29,490	Lowndes (C3)	22,661	Ashford (D4)	1,224	Cherokee (B1)	786
Bullock (D3)	19,810			Ashland (D2)	1,608	Childersburg	
Butler (C4)	32,117			Ashville (C2)	385	(C2)	515
		Macon (D3)	27,654	Athens * (C1)	4,342	Citronelle (A4)	1,057
Calhoun * (D2)	63,319	Madison (C1)	66,317	Atmore * (B4)	3,200	Clanton * (C3)	3,982
Chambers (D3)	42,146	Marengo (B3)	35,736	Attalla (C1)	4,885	Clayton (D4)	1,813
Cherokee * (D1)	19,928	Marion (B1)	28,776	Auburn * (D3)	4,652	Cho (D4)	841
Chilton (C3)	27,955	Marshall (C1)	42,395	Autaugaville		Coffee Springs	
Choctaw (A3)	20,195	Mobile (A5)	141,974	(C3)	456	(C4)	196
Clarke (B4)	27,636	Monroe (B4)	29,465			Coffeeville (A4)	250
Clay (D2)	16,907	Montgomery *		Banks (D4)	252	Collinsville (D1)	957
Cleburne (D2)	13,629	(C3)	114,420	Bay Minette		Columbia (D3)	829
Coffee (C4)	31,987	Morgan (C1)	48,148	(B5)	1,763	Columbiana (C2)	1,197
Colbert (B1)	34,093	Perry (B3)	26,610	Bear Creek (B1)	243	Cordova (B2)	1,565
Conecuh (C4)	25,489	Pickens (A2)	27,671	Beatrice (B4)	410	Cottonwood	
Coosa (C3)	13,460	Pike (D4)	32,493	Beaverton (A2)	231	(D4)	600
Covington (C4)	42,417	Randolph (D2)	25,516	Bellwood (D4)	285	Courtland (B1)	454
Crenshaw (C4)	23,631	Russell * (D3)	35,775	Berry (B2)	639	Crossville (C1)	436
Cullman (C1)	47,343			Bessemer * (C2)	22,826	Cuba (A3)	557
		St. Clair (C2)	27,336	Billingham (C3)	183	Cullman * (C1)	5,074
		Shelby (C2)	28,962	Birmingham *			
		Sumter (A3)	27,321	(C2)	267,583	Dadeville (D3)	2,025
				Black (D4)	348	Daphne (B5)	630
		Talladega (C2)	51,832	Blountsville (C1)	576	Daviston (D2)	124
		Tallapoosa (D3)	35,270	Blue Mountain		Dayton (B3)	153
		Tuscaloosa (B2)	76,036	(D2)	687	Decatur * (C1)	16,604
				Blue Springs		Demopolis * (B3)	4,137
		Walker (B2)	64,201	(D4)	167	Dora (B2)	1,012
		Washington (A4)	16,188	Boaz (C1)	1,927	Dothan * (D4)	17,194
		Wilcox (B4)	26,279	Boligee (B3)	241	Dozier (C4)	399
		Winston (B1)	18,746	Brantley (C4)	1,126		
				Brent (B3)	829	East Brewton	
				Brewton * (B4)	3,323	(B4)	1,340
				Bridgeport (D1)	2,031	Eclectic (C3)	606
				Brighton (C2)	1,377	Eden (C2)	329
				Brookside (C2)	714	Edwardsville	
				Buncheville (D4)	1,909	(D2)	194
				Butler (A3)	670	Elba (C4)	2,363
						Elkmont (C1)	1,185
				Calera (C2)	1,092	Enterprise * (D4)	4,353
				Camden (B3)	909	Epes (A3)	328
				Camp Hill (D3)	1,147	Eufaula * (D4)	6,269
				Carbon Hill *		Eutaw (B3)	1,895
				(B2)	2,555	Evergreen (C4)	2,216
				Cardiff (C2)	246		
				Carrollton (A2)	626	Fairfield * (C2)	11,703

\* Part of Calhoun annexed to Etowah and part of Etowah annexed to Calhoun in 1923; part of Cherokee annexed to Etowah in 1931.

\* Part of Elmore annexed to Montgomery in 1923.

\* Part of Lee annexed to Russell and part of Russell annexed to Lee in 1932.

# ALABAMA—Continued

Fairhope (B5) 1,845  
 Falco (C4) 80  
 Falkville (C1) 567  
 Faunsdale (B3) 185  
 Fayette \* (B2) 2,668  
 Five Points (D2) 778  
 Flomaton (B4) 837  
 Florida \* (C4) 2,999  
 Florence \* (B1) 15,043  
 Foley (B5) 864  
 Fort Deposit (C4) 1,351  
 Fort Payne \* (D1) 4,424  
 Frisco City (B4) 994  
 Fruithurst (D2) 281  
 Fulton (B4) 707  
  
 Gadsden \* (C4) 39,975  
 Gainesville (A3) 283  
 Gantt's Quarry (C2) 456  
 Gaylesville (D1) 183  
 Geiger (A3) 192  
 Geneva \* (D4) 2,803  
 Georgiana (C4) 1,627  
 Glenwood (C4) 393  
 Goodwater (C2) 1,028  
 Gordo (B2) 934  
 Gordon (D4) 327  
 Goshen (C4) 356  
 Greensboro (B3) 2,034  
 Greenville \* (C4) 5,075  
 Grove Hill (B4) 730  
 Guin (B2) 1,175  
 Guntersville \* (C1) 4,398  
  
 Hackleburg (B1) 492  
 Haleburg (D4) 232  
 Haleyville (B1) 2,427  
 Hamilton (B1) 1,002  
 Hanceville (C1) 650  
 Hartford (D4) 1,494  
 Hartselle \* (C1) 2,584  
 Headland (D4) 2,052  
 Heflin (D2) 1,684  
 Helena (C2) 667  
 Hill-boro (B1) 292  
 Hoopes (B1) 260  
 Holly Pond (C1) 226  
 Hollywood (C1) 311

Homewood \* (B4) 7,397  
 Huntsville \* (C1) 13,050  
 Hurtsboro (D3) 894  
  
 Irondale (C2) 1,486  
 Jackson (B4) 2,039  
 Jacksonville \* (D2) 2,995  
 Jasper \* (B2) 6,847  
 Jemison (C3) 456  
  
 Kennedy (A2) 367  
  
 Lafayette (D3) 2,138  
 Lanett \* (D3) 6,141  
 Leeds \* (C2) 2,910  
 Leighton (B1) 810  
 Lincoln (C2) 420  
 Linden (B4) 1,203  
 Lineville (D2) 1,300  
 Lapscomb (C2) 1,740  
 Lasman (A3) 545  
 Livingston (A3) 1,170  
 Lockhart (C4) 910  
 Louisville (D4) 662  
 Luverne (C4) 2,243  
  
 McKenzie (C4) 504  
 Madison (C1) 455  
 Malvern (D4) 190  
 Marion (B3) 2,382  
 Mentone (D1) 154  
 Midland City (D4) 647  
 Midway (D3) 617  
 Millport (A2) 700  
 Mobile \* (A5) 78,720  
 Monroeville (B4) 1,724  
 Montevallo (C2) 1,490  
 Montgomery \* (C3) 78,084  
 Mooresville (C1) 129  
 Moulton (B1) 752  
 Moundville (B3) 812  
 Muscle Shoals (B1) 1,113  
  
 Nauvoo (B2) 533  
 Newbern (B3) 388  
 New Brockton (D4) 878

Newton (D4) 616  
 Newville (D4) 578  
 Northport \* (B2) 3,187  
 Notasulga (D3) 863  
  
 Oak Hill (B4) 159  
 Oakman (B2) 897  
 Odenville (C2) 347  
 Oneonta (C2) 2,376  
 Opelika \* (D3) 8,487  
 Opp \* (C4) 3,178  
 Orrville (B3) 416  
 Oxford (D2) 1,393  
 Ozark \* (D4) 3,601  
  
 Paint Rock (C1) 282  
 Parrish (B2) 870  
 Pell City (C2) 900  
 Petrey (C4) 258  
 Phenix City \* (D3) 15,351  
 Phil Campbell (B1) 533  
 Piedmont \* (D2) 4,019  
 Pinckard (D4) 555  
 Pine Apple (C4) 455  
 Pine Hill (B4) 418  
 Pollard (B4) 339  
 Prattville \* (C3) 2,664  
 Prichard \* (A5) 6,084  
  
 Ragland (C2) 1,070  
 Red Bay (A1) 1,560  
 Red Level (C4) 516  
 Reform (A2) 885  
 Repton (B4) 365  
 River Falls (C4) 413  
 Riverside (C2) 135  
 Roanoke \* (D2) 4,168  
 Robertsdale (B5) 779  
 Rockford (C3) 394  
 Rogersville (B1) 508  
 Russellville \* (B1) 3,510  
 Rutledge (C4) 289  
  
 Samson (C4) 2,182  
 Scottsboro \* (C1) 2,834  
 Searle (D3) 289  
 Selma \* (C3) 19,834  
 Sheffield \* (B1) 7,933  
 Silverhill (B5) 270  
 Slocumb (D4) 1,041

Springville (C2) 460  
 Stevenson (D1) 793  
 Stroud (D2) 125  
 Sulligent (A2) 1,287  
 Sylacauga \* (C2) 6,269  
  
 Talladega \* (C2) 4,298  
 Talladega Springs (C2) 150  
 Tallassee (D3) 1,011  
 Tarrant City \* (C2) 6,833  
 Thomaston (B3) 345  
 Thomassville (B4) 2,000  
 Thorsby (C3) 772  
 Town Creek (B1) 637  
 Trinity (B1) 249  
 Troy \* (D4) 7,095  
 Tuscaloosa \* (B2) 27,493  
 Tusculum \* (B1) 5,515  
 Tuskegee \* (D3) 3,937  
  
 Union Springs \* (D3) 3,107  
 Uniontown (B3) 1,869  
  
 Valley Head (D1) 439  
 Vernon (A2) 759  
 Vina (A1) 472  
 Vincent (C2) 1,108  
 Vredenburgh (B4) 666  
  
 Wadley (D2) 42  
 Walnut Grove (C1) 20  
 Warrior (C2) 1,008  
 Waterloo (A1) 524  
 Waverly (D3) 321  
 Webb (D4) 379  
 Wedowee (D2) 525  
 West Blocton (B2) 1,317  
 Wetumpka \* (C1) 3,089  
 Wilsonville (C2) 719  
 Wilton (C2) 422  
 Winfield (B2) 1,662  
 Woodville (C1) 183  
  
 York (A3) 1,783



---

# *The* HISTORY of ALASKA

---

## Reading Unit

### No. 2

---

## AMID THE MARVELS OF ALASKA

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

### *Interesting Facts Explained*

A land of airplanes and dogsleds, 8-10

The first land in America to be settled by man, 8-10

The Alaskan Indians and their strange totem poles, 8-10-11

Searching for the Northwest Passage, 8-11

The curse of civilization brought to the natives, 8-11

What the Russians wanted, 8-11

The attempt to keep non-Russians away from Alaska, 8-12

British explorations, 8-12

Why Alaska was called "Seward's Folly," 8-12

The gold rush, 8-13

What happened to most of the gold seekers, 8-13

Alaska's other treasures, 8-13

Protecting the seal, 8-14

The largest salmon canneries in the world, 8-14

The boundary disputes, 8-14-15

Going to school in Alaska, 8-15

How Alaska is governed, 8-15

### *Picture Hunt*

What is a totem pole? 8-11

Men with real appetites, 8-15

A new source of wealth to Alaska, 8-12

### *Related Material*

Whittling as a fine art, 12-95

Hunting for gold, 9-392

Untapped oil wells, 9-449

The man who wrote "The Call of the Wild," 13-240

Keeping food in cans, 9-226

National preserves, 7-407, 416-17

The "sea bears," 4-327

The story of Captain Cook, 13-488

Where snow shoes are used, 14-522

Compare the California and Klondike gold rushes, 13-239, 8-13

### *Habits and Attitudes*

Seeking gold and finding the way fraught with peril, 8-13

Curbing man's greed, 8-14

The sensible way to settle international disputes, 8-14

Educating the Indian, 8-15

### *Summary Statement*

"Seward's Folly" has paid for itself many times over. It is now a well-governed, progressive,

industrious territory, which may some day become a state.

---

## THE HISTORY OF ALASKA

---



Photo by Alaska Itz

The highest mountain in North America is Mt. McKinley, in Alaska; its majestic snow-covered peak is shown above. Its crest is 20,300 feet above the sea, and towers high above the lowlands which lie at the foot of the mountain. Mighty glaciers creep down the

mountain's sides, and its summit is forever covered with ice and snow. The name McKinley was given to it in 1896, in honor of President McKinley. It was first scaled in 1913. Since 1917 a beautiful national park has stretched for many miles about its base.

### AMID *the* MARVELS of ALASKA

#### *Here Is the Story of the Vast Territory We Bought from Russia, of the Land of Snow and Seals and Gold*

**A**LASKA! Dizzy mountain peaks gleaming with eternal snow . . . enormous glaciers pushing slow noses into the sea . . . long dog teams winding through snowy passes or pausing at night while the huskies howl at the moon . . . long, lonely winters buried in snowdrifts, and brief, bright summers . . . a sky lit up with the unearthly glory of the northern lights or shining with the strange glow of a mid-night sun . . .

These are only a few of the pictures that come to us when anyone says "Alaska." And the wonder of it is that they are true pictures, and that all these things are truly there—along with a rich modern life of industry and airplanes more like the life that most of us know.

Strange as it may seem for so cold and

northern a land, Alaska was probably the first part of America ever settled by mankind. For if you will look at a map you will see how close Alaska is to Asia, almost touching her at Bering Strait and connected by an inviting string of islands at the mouth of Bering Sea. It is supposed that the first American immigrants were Mongolian (mǒng-gō'ly-ăn) people who came across these bridges from Asia and later trickled down through the continent.

At all events, the oldest inhabitants—the Alaskan Indians, and especially the Eskimos—still look a little like the slant-eyed, black-haired, yellow-skinned people of Asia. The Eskimos are a peaceful and clever race, who dress in furs, live in snow houses, or igloos (ig'lōō), spear the seal and the walrus for food, and are great carvers in bone and in

## THE HISTORY OF ALASKA

ivory. But we have told their story separately elsewhere. And in the story of the Indians we have said something about the Indians of Alaska, with their bright-colored carved totem poles and their skill with dug-out canoes. In various parts of Alaska these oldest inhabitants still live.

The first white man to find Alaska was the man whose name was given to Bering Strait and Bering Sea—Vitus Bering, a Danish officer in the employ of Peter the Great of Russia. He passed through Bering Strait in 1728—one of the many explorers looking for the Northwest Passage, or waterway around North America between the Atlantic and Pacific oceans. On a second expedition in 1741 Bering sighted the coast of Alaska and made a landing on one of the Alaskan islands, probably the island of Kayak.

Soon hunters and fur traders from Siberia followed in Bering's tracks, seeking their game on the Aleutian (ā-lū'shān) Islands and in time even on the mainland. In 1783 a white settlement was founded on Kodiak (kōd-yāk') Island, in the Atlantic

south of the peninsula which is Alaska. It was a sorry day for the natives when white men invaded their country, for the newcomers oppressed them until they were no better than slaves. To be sure a Russian missionary tried to make Greek Catholics out of these people; but he did not have a great deal of success. And because of the cruelty of most of the whites the native population began to die off.

What interested the Russians about Alaska was of course the fur trade, and so this period of Alaska's history is a little like the early history of Western and Northern Canada and the United States. Instead of the Hudson's Bay Company we hear of the Russian-American Company, to which the Russian government now gave the management of Alaska. This company,

under its first director, Baranof (bā'rā-nōf), made great progress in developing the fur trade. Incidentally, it founded the city of Kodiak (1792); then when the neighboring hunting grounds were emptied of game, it moved its headquarters to Sitka on the mainland (1805).



Photo by Alaska Ry

Alaska still has much wild forest land, where roam such untamed creatures as this mighty bull moose.

The Indians of Alaska are famous for their wood carving, especially for the carvings on their totem poles, some of which you see in this picture. These totems, set up, as you see, before each house, are sacred objects covered with the symbols of the religion of the Indians.

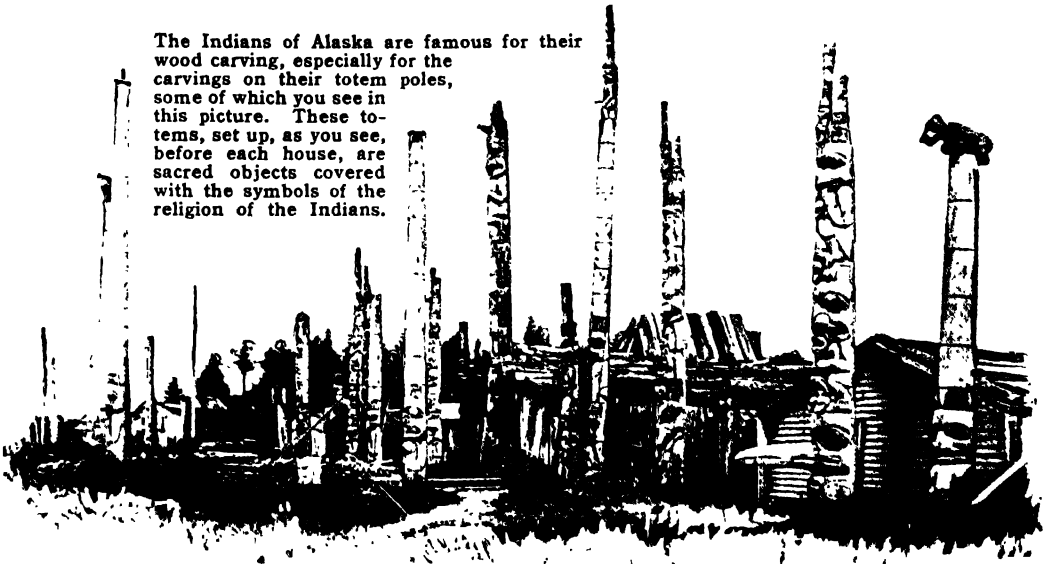


Photo by American Museum of Natural History



Photo by American Museum of Natural History

Vast herds of reindeer, like the one above, are now to be seen in Alaska. The government brought them in from Siberia largely to take the place of the wild caribou, which were being killed off; for the Indians, who lived largely upon the caribou, were threatened with starvation. Now the reindeer herds have grown enormously in numbers, and bring wealth to Indians and whites alike.

But Russia was not long to have this vast region all to herself. Already British explorers had charted long stretches of the Alaska coast—Captain James Cook in 1776-1778 and Vancouver in 1791-1794. The great Canadian explorer Mackenzie, working in the interest of that most powerful of all fur-trading companies, the Hudson's Bay Company, had in 1789 followed the course of the river that bears his name to the Arctic Ocean, which the river enters at a point just east of what is now Alaska. British and Canadian fishermen and hunters, and whalers and seal fishers from the United States were soon competing with the Russians.

In 1821 the Russian czar published a decree forbidding anyone but Russians to enter Bering Sea or come near the Alaskan coast. Great Britain and the United States objected; and within four years the czar had signed treaties with both of them withdrawing these claims and fixing the boundaries between their territories and his own. By this time whaling had become a profitable industry, and all through the middle of the nineteenth century the adventurous whalers sailed through Bering Strait to the Arctic.

By 1867—which is a great date in Alaskan history—so many of the wild creatures had been killed off that the fur trade was by no

means so profitable as it had been. No one knew of the gold hidden in the mountains, and there was so much idle land in warmer climates that Alaska did not look very promising as a colony. As for scenery, who ever thought of valuing a remote possession for *that*? So the Russian government officials may well have rubbed their hands in glee when they found that Secretary of State Seward of the United States would pay them \$7,200,000 for the whole of Alaska, which is more than twice as large as Texas, the largest of the States.

As for the United States, Secretary Seward got his treaty through the Senate. But many Americans laughed at him, calling the new land "Seward's Folly." So, almost unnoticed, Alaska ceased to be Russian and became American, in 1867.

Of course as things have turned out, this purchase was anything but "folly." But for a time what Alaska brought was mostly difficulties. It was difficult to establish law and order in 'so vast a land, with a mere 30,000 people, native and white, in its whole extent. At first Congress tried military rule, but that did not work well. Finally in 1884 the laws of Oregon were extended to Alaska, and a civilian—that is, non-military—government was set up.

## THE HISTORY OF ALASKA

The first gold had been found in Alaska before the purchase on the Stikine (stī-kēn') River in 1861 though there was not enough of it to excite people. But now in 1880 were opened the Treadwell mines in Juneau (jōō'nō), later to be among the world's biggest gold mines. And then in 1896 gold was discovered in the Klondike (klōn-dik), a region lying just across the border in the Yukon (yōō'kōn). This was Canadian territory, but most people went through Alaska to reach it. And 30,000 of them did so in a period of three or four years. It was one of the greatest gold

rushes in history. Men came from the far corners of the world to try their luck. Every ship from Vancouver and Seattle and San Francisco brought them to the boom towns which sprang up overnight along the coast from Juneau northward. Skagway, the port where most of the newcomers landed, was a wild place in those days, filled to overflowing with the newly rich and the hopeful, preparing to brave mountain wilderness and bitter cold in their search for gold. The fever reached its height with the discoveries at Nome—which is in Alaska itself—in 1899. Later, gold was found at Fairbanks, at Cook Inlet, and in several other districts.

### Alaska Grows Up

Of course the boom could not last forever, and many an abandoned mine and ruined village bear witness to the fact. When the rush had spent itself, about 10,000 of the new settlers left Alaska, and she was ready to build her future upon a more stable basis. Gold mining is still the most important of her mineral industries, however, and the supply is still plentiful. From other mines

copper, platinum, silver, and lead are now taken. Immense stores of oil have been found in the region south of Point Barrow, and it is estimated that more coal lies in Alaskan mountains than originally lay in Pennsylvania. Mining operations make up Alaska's second most important industry.

An area of upwards of sixty-four million acres in Alaska is covered by trees. Huge growths of virgin timber stand in the Tongass and Chugach national forests, a combined area of 20,850,000 acres, capable of producing forever a million tons of newsprint annually, if properly managed.

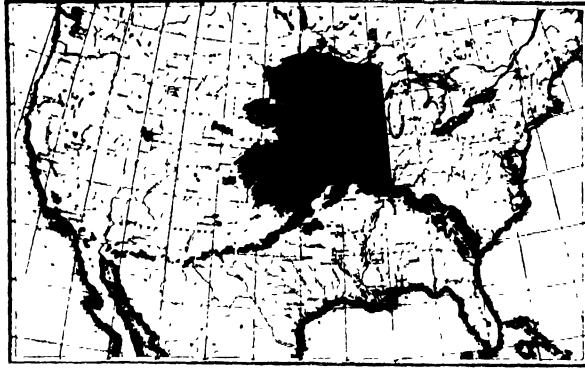


Photo by U. S. Geological Survey  
This is what we shall have if we lay a map of Alaska on a map of the United States. Did you have any idea that Alaska was so big? Note, too, that it can touch the Atlantic with the tip of the "panhandle" and stretch out the Aleutian Islands like an elephant's trunk clear to the Pacific.

In 1935 the Federal government undertook the resettlement of farmers from various states in the Matanuska Valley, some fifty miles from Anchorage. It was a small beginning, but in ten years the homesteaders opened up 7,700 acres of new land to cultivation. By 1946 there were 3,300 persons living in the valley, which includes the towns of Wasilla and Palmer. There are vast lands in the territory which are slowly being opened to settlers, who will gain a livelihood from the soil, for Alaska is fertile and, in spite of the short summers, can support all kinds of hardy vegetables and berries. Among the crops raised most successfully are potatoes, grains and fertilizers, and a variety of vegetables. Only a few crops, such as tomatoes, corn, and tree fruits, will not ripen. Because large areas of grazing land are to be had—probably some 35,000 square miles—more and more live stock is being raised. There are many small flocks of chickens, and a growing number of dairy herds. Dairy products and eggs are major farm products. Meat, too, pays well, for more and more cattle, sheep, and hogs are being brought in. Alaska has a promising future in farming.

## THE HISTORY OF ALASKA



Photo by American Museum of Natural History

Here is a fishing scene along an Alaskan river. The method used by these Indians is more or less informal,

but the biggest commercial fisheries use enormous nets and the most up-to-date methods.

Alaska's leading industry centers around her fisheries. From her earliest days fur-sealing has been of great importance, especially on the Pribilof (pré'bê-lôf') Islands. Since 1910 it has been carefully regulated so that greedy and careless people may not abuse the seals or kill too many of these precious fur-bearing creatures. Cod are caught, and herring, and halibut. Most important of all are the famous Alaskan salmon fisheries. The salmon, like the seal, has had to be protected by law. In 1878 the first salmon cannery began operations. By 1924 so many salmon were being caught that it looked as though there were not going to be any left at all. But just in time the government passed regulations and determined when and where the fish might be taken and when and where they might not. The biggest and most modern salmon canneries in the world

are along the southwest coast of Alaska.

The United States has had two serious disputes with Britain over Alaskan affairs, and both were peaceably settled. The first was about the right to kill seals in the Bering Sea; the United States claimed that this whole sea was "American waters" and that only Americans could hunt there. This was settled by arbitration in 1893, and the decision went against the Americans.

The other dispute was over the boundary between Alaska and Canada. The Canadians, especially after the discovery of gold in the Yukon, disliked having the whole northern half of British Columbia cut off from the ocean by the long thin strip of Alaska, running down the coast, which is usually called the "pan-handle"; they claimed that the boundary should run so as to give Canada the land

at the heads of some of the inlets. But this time the judges who were appointed



Photo by Alaska Ry.

This Eskimo ivory carver is only one of the many skilled carvers among his kindred, who are an artistic people.

## THE HISTORY OF ALASKA

to settle the matter decided against Canada (1903).

In 1941 we began to build a number of air and naval bases in Alaska and to increase her defenses, especially at points like Dutch Harbor in the Aleutians. When war came with Japan, the territory became a vital outpost. In 1942 the Japanese seized three islands in the Aleutian chain -Kiska, Attu, and Agattu - planning to use them as bases for operations on the North American continent. In spite of bad weather, our forces made frequent attacks which kept the enemy from making use of his conquests, and joint Canadian-American action drove him out in the following year.

Meanwhile the United States hurried the Alcan Highway from Edmonton to Fairbanks - a gigantic feat. Run through the Canadian wilds east of the mountains, where flying conditions are good, it supplied the air bases along the route followed by lend-lease planes on their way to Russia. We carried on an intensified search to learn the extent of Alaska's natural wealth, which includes many vital minerals, such as tin, tungsten, chromium, nickel, zinc, antimony, asbestos, barite, and mercury.

Alaska is not thickly populated, but it is now a modern, thriving territory. Telegraph and radio have followed the settlers, and the Alaska Railway, operated by the government, serves the district between Seward and Fairbanks. More important still is the airplane, which has shrunk distances and brought the outside world to the outlying settlements. There are two public school systems, one for white students and one for Indians, Aleuts, and Eskimos. These systems care for the education of both rural and city children throughout the territory. Such conveniences, plus liberal homesteading laws and a great natural wealth, are attracting more and more people to this romantic land.

Alaska has grown of late to the point where she aspires to statehood. She has vast untapped wealth, and a progressive population. She occupies a strategic position on world air lanes. But she is not without problems. Much of her industry is entirely seasonal, and her transportation system has yet to overcome natural handicaps. Still, she has come a long way toward her goal, and her people are capable of overcoming the obstacles before them.

To resist the cold these hardy Eskimos must eat vast quantities of food - sometimes ten pounds of meat and fish in a day, plus berries and seaweed.



(History of World War II, 6-201)

## ALASKA

**AREA:** 586,400 square miles (including the Aleutian Islands). Alaska is nearly a fifth the size of the United States proper, and is larger than the combined area of all the states east of the Mississippi and north of North Carolina, with Tennessee thrown in.

**LOCATION:** The Territory of Alaska lies in the extreme northwestern corner of North America between 51° and 71° 25' N. Lat. and between 130° and 188° W.—or 172° E.—Long. Its western limit, about 1,200 miles from the mainland, is Cape Wrangell on Attu Island, one of the Aleutian chain; its southern limit, on one of the Aleutian Islands a little southeast of Attu, is only two degrees north of the northern boundary of the state of Washington. Attu is the point farthest west in the American continent. Alaska is bounded on the north by the Arctic Ocean, on the east by Canada, on the south by the Gulf of Alaska and the Pacific Ocean, and on the west by Bering Sea, Bering Strait, and the Arctic Ocean. Across Bering Strait, which is only 54 miles wide at Cape Prince of Wales, lies Siberia, in Asiatic Russia. From north to south Alaska stretches over a territory that is greater than the distance from Duluth to New Orleans, and from east to west it is spread out over a greater distance than that from New York to San Francisco. In summer when the sun is rising in Maine it is just setting at Attu.

**PHYSICAL FEATURES:** The main part of Alaska covers the great peninsula that lies at the northwest corner of the North American continent. But the territory reaches out two great arms, one the long chain of the Aleutian Islands, which stretch toward the southwest clear across the Pacific; the other a strip of land reaching southeastward along the Pacific coast for about 600 miles. Dixon Inlet, or Dixon Entrance, the southernmost boundary of Alaska, is about 700 miles north of the United States. The whole of the southern coast line is greatly indented with straits and inlets, and is lined with countless islands; as a result, though the territory has only about 4,750 miles on the ocean measuring as the crow flies, it really has 26,364 miles of shore line. The narrow strip extending southward along the continent is known as the "panhandle," and is a mountainous region of great beauty. The many islands are really the peaks of submerged mountains, and rise sharply to a height of from 3,000 to 5,000 ft. above the sea. Ships thread the "inland passage" behind the outermost islands, past bold headlands and romantic fjords that run up into the mainland. The mountains here, known as the Coast Range, are between 5,000 and 6,000 ft. high and about 100 m. wide. Beyond the Chilkat River (55 m. long), the range is continued as the Mt. St. Elias Range, which includes the Chugach, Kenai, Wrangell, and Nutzotin Mountains. And westward the same mountain system forms the Alaska Peninsula—on which is the Aleutian Range—and the Aleutian Islands, which, like the islands along the mainland, are really the peaks of submerged mountains. Throughout the eastern part of this great chain there are numerous lofty summits. Fairweather, Vancouver, Blackburn, Sanford, Foraker (17,000 ft.), St. Elias (18,008 ft.)—which marks the international boundary line—and McKinley (20,300 ft.) are all over 15,000 ft. high—higher than any mountain in the United States. Mt. McKinley is the highest summit on the American continent. Mt. Logan, on Canadian soil, is 19,539 ft. high. Alaska has more than twenty active volcanoes, among them Mt. Wrangell (14,005 ft. high) and Mt. Katmai, which in 1912 blew off its summit after years of inaction. A number of the volcanoes are on the eastern Aleutian Islands. Mt. McKinley, Mt. Foraker, and other high peaks lie in the Alaska Range, a fine mountain group just south of the basin of the Yukon River.

It is often said that the main features of the surface of the Western United States have been continued

northward and westward into Alaska. Here are ranges near the Pacific coast, with a high plateau lying behind them. On the other side of the plateau are more mountains, outlying ranges of the Rockies, and then level plains that here slope down to the Arctic Ocean. The plateau that stretches east and west across the central part of Alaska contains the valley of the Yukon River, Alaska's principal stream. It is a rolling upland about 200 miles wide and rises from an elevation of about 1,000 ft. near Bering Sea to 4,000 or 5,000 ft. at the international boundary line. It slopes slightly toward the north, and has a number of fine canyons. North of the plateau are the north-westward extension of the Rocky Mountains, here represented by such ranges as the Baird Mountains, the Endicott Mountains, and the Brooks Range. North of these mountain groups, which contain peaks from 7,000 to 8,000 ft. high, the Arctic Slope falls gradually to the cold shores of the Arctic Sea. Here Point Barrow, far within the Arctic Circle, is the point farthest north on the Alaskan mainland.

The Yukon is formed by the union of two Canadian streams, the Lewes River (338 miles long) and the Pelly River. After the two streams meet, the Yukon flows over 200 miles before it enters Alaska, and then proceeds 1,800 miles farther before it reaches fog-covered Bering Sea. On its way it picks up the White, Stewart, and Klondike rivers in Canada, and the Porcupine (350 m. long), Koyukuk, and Tanana in Alaska. Of these the Tanana may be navigated for a short period with difficulty as far as Chena, and the Koyukuk for about 450 miles by river steamers. The Yukon itself may be used by river boats for four months in the year or more. It is possible to land from an ocean steamer at a bay on St. Michael Island, some sixty miles northeast of the Apoon, or northern, mouth of the great river. At this point—which is the ocean port for the Yukon—goods are transferred to shallow river boats that can enter the Apoon mouth and sail up the Yukon and the Lewes for about 2,200 miles as far as White Horse, which is in Canada some 200 miles east of Mt. St. Elias. There the traveler can take train by way of White Pass to Skagway, a town at the head of the beautiful 100-mile fjord known as Lynn Canal. Here larger boats may be boarded for Juneau, the capital of Alaska.

The second largest river in the territory is the Kuskokwim, about 550 miles long and, with its forks, navigable by river boats for about 650 miles from its mouth, which is in Bering Sea a little south of the mouth of the Yukon. The southeastern part of continental Alaska is drained south into the Pacific by two large rivers—the Copper (about 500 m. long) and the Susitna. In the panhandle the principal streams are the Stikine (335 m. long), the Alsek, and the Taku. Like the Copper and the Susitna these rivers have cut magnificent canyons through the mountains on their way to the Pacific. In general the Pacific Ocean receives about a fifth of the drainage of Alaska, Bering Sea about half, and the Arctic Ocean the remainder. Into that cold northern sea empty the Colville (about 320 m. long), the Chipp, and the Meade rivers along the northern coast, and the Nostak and the Kobuk (275 m. long), which flow westward into Kotzebue Sound. All together the territory has about 5,000 m. of navigable waterway during the short season when the streams are open. The rivers of the Alaska plateau furnish a serviceable means of communication to a region that is being opened up for agriculture, especially in the neighborhood of Fairbanks and Tanana. Here are the vast herds of reindeer that are being bred in Alaska from stock introduced by the government from Lapland and Siberia. Alaska has a great many mountain lakes, but none of any particular importance to the tourist or to commerce. The territory has no irrigated land. The Alaskan glaciers



## ALASKA—Continued

are very fine and many of them are famous, for they are unusually large and often come all the way down to the sea. The best-known are the Malaspina, which is the largest; the Muir in the northern panhandle; and the Seward, which descends from Mt. Logan, in Canada. The Malaspina, at the foot of Mt. St. Elias, covers some 1,500-square miles.

Of the many islands that line the shore of Alaska, the largest is Prince of Wales Island (about 140 m. long), which lies off the coast of the panhandle in the Alexander Archipelago, a group of about 1,100 mountainous islands of great beauty. The Kodiak Islands, named for the largest of the group, include a number of island groups lying along the southeastern coast of the Alaska Peninsula. The Pribilof Islands, in the southern part of Bering Sea, are famous as a breeding place for the Alaska seal. The territory has plenty of good harbors. Dutch Harbor, on Unalaska Island, in the Aleutian chain, is of great naval importance.

**CLIMATE:** Alaska has a climate that varies greatly in different localities. The winds blowing off the Pacific give the coast, especially the panhandle and the Aleutian Islands, a great deal of moisture and a temperature that is exceedingly mild for the latitude and fairly even. In Juneau the January mean is 27° F. and the July mean 57°. The mean annual temperature for this section is from 54° to 60°, and the average annual rainfall is very high—between 80 and 110 inches. The thermometer rarely goes above 75°, but there are few clear days. The Aleutian Islands are still warmer in winter and cooler in summer, with almost constant fog at all times of year. The temperature on them never goes below zero. The climate of the rest of the country is very different, for the ranges along the coast shut off the warm, moist winds from the Pacific but give no protection from the blasts that blow down from Arctic seas. The rainfall diminishes until it is less than 10 in. within the Arctic Circle. The temperature may go down to 75° or 80° below zero in winter, and the summers, though very short, are likely to be hot, with temperatures up to 90°. It is said that a winter temperature of 95° below zero has been recorded in Mt. McKinley National Park. In the valleys within the Arctic Circle the ground is frozen to a great depth all the year around, though on higher ground the earth sometimes thaws out enough on the surface for vegetation, especially moss, to spring up. This section is the "tundra," or land where the ground never thaws out. It gives food to reindeer but very little to man. The caribou, which used to live here, has been exterminated. The Yukon and other river valleys have dense forests, especially of spruce, but these thin out as one goes north. Many sorts of evergreen flourish along the coast. Once upon a time, long, long ago, Alaska had a much milder climate. At that time she was joined to Asia, and early horses went over to Asia from America, where they had originated, and early creatures like elephants came to America from Asia.

**INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING:** The most important institution of learning in Alaska is the University of Alaska at Fairbanks.

**CHARITIES AND CORRECTION:** Alaska has a hospital for the Aleutian Islands district at Unalaska and a Pioneers' Home at Sitka. The Public Health Service has nine separate posts, and charitable relief is administered under both the territorial and the federal governments. A private institution cares for the insane under provision made by the federal government.

**POLITICAL FACTS:** Alaska is governed under an act of Congress of 1912. This organized the territory

and provided self-government, putting an end to the long agitation which marked the period when the laws governing Alaska had been made by the Congress of the United States and her judicial and administrative officials appointed by the President. The Alaska legislature is made up of two houses: a Senate, which consists of sixteen members, four from each of the four judicial districts into which the territory is divided; and a twenty-four member House of Representatives, with six members from each district. Senators serve for four years and Representatives for two. The legislature meets every two years, beginning with the session of March, 1913; the governor has the right to call special sessions. The powers of the legislature are limited. It may not grant private charters, may not interfere with existing laws that regulate gambling and the sale of liquor, and may not incur indebtedness except for the actual expenses of government. It may not levy taxes in excess of one percent of the assessed valuation of property, and may pass no laws inconsistent with laws already passed by Congress. It was, however, permitted to give the vote to women at its first session. All laws must be submitted to Congress for approval before they can go into effect, and all measures must go to the President within 90 days of their passage by Congress.

The executive officers are a governor, who is appointed for four years by the President, a secretary of the territory, a secretary to the governor, and a surveyor-general. The territory forms a customs district, with a collector at Juneau and ten deputy collectors at the many ports of entry. The governor may veto bills passed by the legislature, and a two-thirds vote of both houses is necessary to override his veto.

The territory is divided into four judicial districts, with a federal judge appointed by the President to preside over each. Court is held at Juneau, Nome, Anchorage, and Fairbanks. Other departments of the government administered from Washington are the land office, education office, immigration service, mine inspection, forest service, game service, bureau of fisheries, and health office.

Alaska sends one delegate to the House of Representatives at Washington, but he has few of the privileges of a Representative. He may not vote, even upon matters concerning Alaska, and may speak only upon questions relating to the territory.

Towns with a population of 300 or more may incorporate and elect governing bodies, but otherwise there is no local government.

A complete criminal and civil code of laws was enacted for Alaska in 1899 and 1900; it has been amended from time to time since. The seat of government was at Sitka until 1906, when it was removed to Juneau. There is no land tax in Alaska except in incorporated towns.

**PARKS:** Mt. McKinley National Park, established as a game preserve, covers 3,030 square miles. One great road 75 miles long has been cut through the wilderness, and the majestic mountain dominates a landscape of great natural beauty.

**MONUMENTS:** Glacier Bay, in Southeastern Alaska, was established as a national monument in 1930 and covers 3,590 square miles. It contains many glaciers and ice-covered peaks.

Katmai National Monument, established in 1918, is on the mainland opposite Kodiak Island. It covers 4,215 square miles, and is a great wild life reserve, especially famous for Alaskan brown bears and grizzlies. The eruption of Mt. Katmai in 1912 was one of the greatest volcanic eruptions in history. Many small eruptions at about the same time created

## ALASKA—Continued

what is called the Valley of Ten Thousand Smokes.

Sitka (57 acres) marks the site of battles with the Indians, and Old Kasaan (38 acres) contains the remains of a Haida Indian village.

Alaska has 20,883,421 acres of national forest.

**GAME AND BIRD RESERVATIONS:** Alaska Railway Muskrat and Beaver Refuge, established in 1927, covers 4,160 acres and protects muskrats and beavers, as well as certain birds.

Aleutian Islands Bird Refuge, established in 1913, protects small birds and also foxes, caribou, and bears.

Bering Sea (St. Matthew and Hall Islands) Bird Refuge was established in 1909; Bogoslof Bird Refuge in 1909; Chamisso Island Bird Refuge in 1912; Curry Bird, Game, and Fish Refuge in 1927 (covering 8,960 acres); Forrester Island Bird Refuge in 1912; Hazy Is-

lands Bird Refuge in 1912; Nunivak Island Wild Life Refuge in 1929 (covering 1,111,000 acres); St. Lazaria Bird Refuge in 1909; Semidi Islands Bird Refuge in 1932 (covering 8,920 acres); and Tuxedni Bird Refuge in 1909. These refuges protect many kinds of birds and mammals. There are also the Pribilof Reservation (1909) for birds, seals, and other mammals; Fire Island Refuge (1925) for moose; Hazen Bay Refuge (1937) for birds; Kenai National Moose Range (1941); and the Kodiak Refuge (1941) for birds and bears.

**NAME:** Alaska received its name from William H. Seward, the secretary of state who negotiated its purchase from Russia. The present form is a corruption of "alak-shah" or "al ay' ek sa," a word used by the Aleut Indians and meaning "great country" or "continent." Before the territory was ceded to the United States it had been known as Russian America.

Population of territory 1939, 72,524	Second Division (G2) 11,877	Cities and Towns hav- ing 2,500 or more inhabitants	Fairbanks town (K 3) 3,455
Judicial Divisions	Third Division (J5) 19,312		Juneau city (H6) 5,729
First Division (N7) 25,241	Fourth Division (J4) 16,094	Anchorage city (J5) 3,495	Ketchikan town (O8) 4,675

---

# **The HISTORY of ARIZONA**

---

## **Reading Unit No. 3**

---

### **ARIZONA: THE GRAND CANYON STATE**

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

#### ***Interesting Facts Explained***

The Grand Canyon, Nature's masterpiece, 8-18  
Rock the Colorado River has worn away, 8-19  
Why Arizona is a famous health resort, 8-20  
Why Coronado and de Niza came to Arizona, 8-21  
When Arizona came into the

possession of the United States, 8-21  
How deserts are watered, 8-21  
The picturesque part the Indians play in the life of Arizona, 8-22  
The great Petrified Forest, 8-23  
Arizona's Painted Desert, 8-23

#### ***Things to Think About***

Name some of the natural wonders of North America.  
What is the Grand Canyon like?  
Of what use are the Colorado rivers?  
Why is it dangerous to stop one's automobile in the center of an

arroyo in May or June?  
Why is it hard to grow crops in Arizona's rich valley soil?  
How did the Indians try to wrest a living from the land in Arizona?

#### ***Picture Hunt***

Why do visitors come to Arizona in winter? 8-18-19  
Where have men been lured in

search of gold? 8-20  
Where is the highest dam in the world? 8-22

#### ***Related Material***

Who are the craftiest woodsmen in the world? 7-99-100  
What was General Sheridan's attitude toward the Indians? 7-280  
How was the Grand Canyon formed, 1-46

Where is there a canyon five times deeper than the Grand Canyon? 1-67  
How are tree trunks fossilized? 3-5-6  
One flag from ocean to ocean, 7-231-34

#### ***Practical Applications***

What attempts have been made to establish agriculture in Arizona? 8-21

Where does Arizona's wealth come from? 8-22

#### ***Leisure-time Activities***

PROJECT NO. 1: Make a clay model of a part of the Grand Canyon, 1-46.

PROJECT NO. 2: Read the story of the precious stones, 9-428-33.

## THE HISTORY OF ARIZONA



Photo by Phoenix C. of C.

Phoenix, the capital of Arizona, owes its rich farms and gardens to the water stored by Roosevelt Dam, one of the earliest of the great western dams built for irriga-

tion. The city has become a popular winter resort because of its healthful climate. Above is the state capitol, built of tufa (tōō'fā), a porous native rock.

### ARIZONA: *the* GRAND CANYON STATE

*The Youngest State in the Union Has an Amazing Array of Natural Marvels, and Many Fine Resources as Well.*

**N**ATURE seems to have been at her best when she made our great land. There is hardly a state that has not at least one splendid natural wonder, something that Nature made in a moment of superb imagination. Yellowstone Park, the Mississippi River, the Yosemite (yō-sēm'ī-tē), the White Mountains and the Catskills, the Shenandoah (shēn'ān-dō'ā) Valley, the Garden of the Gods, the Carlsbad Caverns, the splendid series of the Great Lakes, Niagara Falls, and the lush semitropical garden that is southern Florida—one could go on and on without exhausting the list. But there is one natural marvel that outdoes all the rest in its awesome grandeur and haunting beauty. It is probably the most magnificent sight the world has to offer. It is Nature's masterpiece. So great is its fame that already you know of what we are speaking. It is the Grand Canyon of the Colorado River.

Thousands of people come every year to Arizona, and with high expectations go to the canyon's brink—and no matter how

magnificent their idea of it may have been, they are never disappointed. The human imagination is too puny to create a thing so vast and so beautiful. But though it is not possible to give a perfect picture of the canyon, at least we can tell you a little of what it is like. It is a vast gorge twelve miles wide, on an average, and a mile deep. It lies in the northwest corner of Arizona, in the center of a broad, high plateau (plā-tō')—or upland—of fairly level rocks. As you come up to the edge of it, the earth seems suddenly to fall away beneath your feet, and you find yourself looking, for mile after mile, into a vast gorge so deep it is almost like the gateway to the underworld. As far as eye can see, it stretches away, wild, beautiful, and awful. Whole mountains are lost in its great maw; cliffs and spurs, valleys and hills of every size and shape are swallowed up as if they were so many hillocks. And far, far down, at the bottom of all that rose-colored mass of clay and stone and rubble, at the foot of the lowest of those

## THE HISTORY OF ARIZONA



The University of Arizona is at Tucson, a city founded as a trading post by the Spaniards in 1580 and now a bustling, modern metropolis with many fine hotels

and guest ranches for winter visitors. The university library, together with a part of its rich tropical setting, is shown in the picture above.

heaped-up mountains, you see a little flash of silver, like a thin crack opening into a brilliant room in the center of the earth. "What is that silver line?" you ask. And you are told that it is the wonderfully complex and skillful tool which carved out all of this immense gorge of which you have seen only a small part; it is the Colorado River itself.

### In Nature's Workshop

Everyone is a little doubtful when first he is told that the tiny thread of the Colorado River made this stupendous canyon. Yet the whole vast spectacle is a monument to the effectiveness of a little force applied over a long space of time. For countless years this stream has been wearing away the rocks of the plateau over which it used to flow, and through which it flows now. Every rainstorm gave it new tributaries, running into the main stream of the Colorado from channels at the side, so that in the course of many thousands of years the whole complex structure of the Grand Canyon was worked out by hundreds of little streams gnawing their way through many different sorts of rock. Those splendid mountains, whose highest points are still below the level of the plateau, were left standing either because the rock of which they are made was harder than the surrounding rock, or because no

stream lasted long enough to wear them down. Six thousand feet of rock the Colorado River has worn away, straight down into the center of the earth; along the walls you can see a complete story of the way in which this part of the world was built up, from the lowest layer of hard fire-born rock—which rises to the earth's surface far to the north and east, in Wisconsin, as the old Laurentian (lô-rên'shĭ-ăn) Highlands—all the way up the scale to the most recent layer of sandstone or limestone.

It is an exciting adventure to descend into the gorge on muleback by that crooked, steep little trail which you hardly notice—the Bright Angel Trail, it is called. Only then do you realize the true immensity of the gorge. What appeared to be little patches of moss as you looked down from the rim, now turn out to be good-sized scrub trees; and that still, silver thread of a river turns into a roaring torrent, filled with whirlpools and huge boulders. Truly one might spend a lifetime exploring the fascinating canyons and corners of Grand Canyon without ever coming to an end of the marvels of this, the most sublime natural spectacle in the world.

### The Ground Plan of Arizona

Arizona's surface is everywhere rugged and uneven. Her mountains are not ex-

## THE HISTORY OF ARIZONA

cessively high, as a rule, though San Francisco Mountain reaches an elevation of 12,611 feet. Mostly they are quite barren or covered with stubby trees and bushes, but what forests the state has are on the slopes of the higher mountains. Flagstaff and Prescott are centers for lumbering and ranching. The northern part of Arizona is a plateau from 4,000 to 7,000 feet high—a part of the Colorado Plateau. It is magnificent with mountains and deep canyons. Mesas (mā'sä), or steep-sided tablelands, like those in New Mexico, are common in Arizona, and a good many of the state's sharper peaks are really volcanoes that have long been dead. South of the plateau are heaped up mountains in rocky confusion, except in the southwestern quarter of the state, where the land falls away to a desert plain. Here there are only from two to five and a half inches of rainfall a year. The elevation varies between 500 and 2,500 feet. It is in this desert, in the valleys of the Gila (hē'lā) and Colorado rivers, that one finds Arizona's greatest heat. Along the Gila the temperature in the daytime may be as high as 130° F.—sixty degrees hotter than it is at night. But as everywhere else in the state, the air is so dry that one does not feel the extremes. This

has made Arizona a famous health resort, especially for arthritis (är-thrī'-tīs) and tuberculosis and sinus infections.

Because of the desert climate, only special sorts of vegetation can survive here. Cactus of all varieties, often with very irritating spines, grows in many parts of the state. A good many of the spineless cacti (kāk'ti) can be fed to cattle, and some few can even be eaten by human beings; but on the whole these strange desert plants are not very useful. Only in the spring, when the flowering cacti bloom, do they reach a beauty which is quite amazing.

Most of Arizona's rivers are simply beds of sand. They serve no practical purpose except to act as troughs to catch the rain. The Colorado River is of course one outstanding exception to this rule; at Hoover Dam, just below the Grand Canyon, it has been turned into one of the most important and busy rivers in the world—as we have told in our story of Nevada. But on the whole the rivers of Arizona are not very useful because they

are not usually rivers except when it rains. Then they become roaring torrents in the space of a few seconds. During the rainy season, in May and June, the descent of the waters is often so sudden that it is dangerous

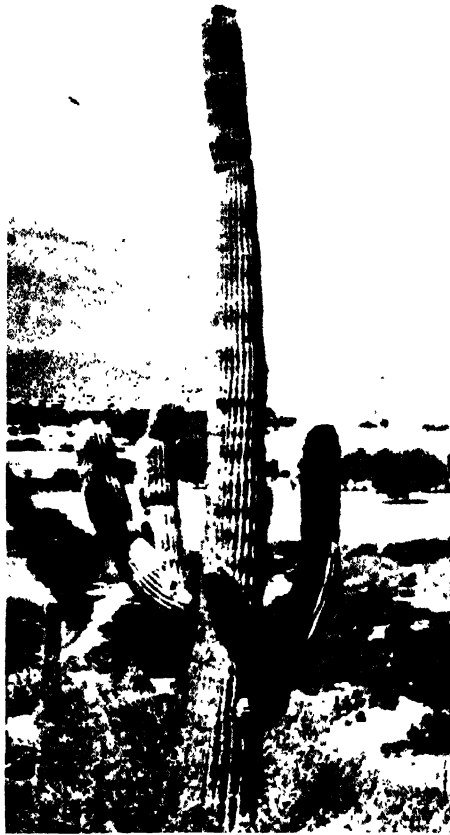


Photo by Tucson Sunshine Club

The parched lands of southern Arizona, rimmed by rocky hills and dotted here and there with sparse, twisted plant growth and towering organ cacti, have lured many a man in search of gold. Picturesque place names keep alive the memory of those early prospectors—of intrepid Spaniards and bold Americans who hoped to make their fortune in this desert, so grim and inhospitable to those who do not know its ways. To this very day one may hear thrilling tales of lost mines and hidden treasure—enough to turn the mildest man into a Coronado.



---

## THE HISTORY OF ARIZONA

---

to stop one's automobile in the center of a dry stream bed—or arroyo (ä-roi'ō), as it is called. The torrent may engulf the car and its occupants before there is time to get out of the way.

### Early Gold Seekers

To this desert state very few explorers bothered to come. After all, explorers are usually looking for something to make them rich in a hurry, and that was a purpose to which Arizona has never been very well adapted. To be sure, in 1539 Marcos de Niza (dā nē'thī) came north from Mexico to explore the country of the north and see what he could find. He returned with such glowing accounts of its riches—nobody knows where he got those ideas—that the next year Coronado (kō'rō-na'thō) went with him to explore Arizona and New Mexico, both of which belonged to Spain. Of course they were completely disappointed, and abandoned their search for wealth in this region almost at once.

### When Arizona Was a Foreign Land

The first real settlement the Spanish planted in Arizona was a trading post established in 1580. In 1776—the year when the English-speaking colonies so many miles away were winning their freedom—this post became the town of Tucson (tōō-sōn'), now a famous health resort. From the very beginning the enmity of the Indians was a great barrier in the way of Arizona's progress. The Apaches (ä-päch'ē), in particular, by their ferocious raids kept settlers from coming in very fast. This warlike people belonged to the great Athapascan group. Missionaries were sent out to convert the Indians to a more friendly way of seeing things, and in the end they succeeded; but the frontier during those early days was always a trouble- and dangerous place. Gradually Spanish settlements sprang up, and trading posts gained a foothold—but of course it was all a thoroughly foreign land to the people living along the eastern seaboard, as foreign as Mexico is to us to-day.

It was not until 1848 that Arizona came into the possession of the United States, after the Mexican War and the Treaty of

Guadalupe Hidalgo (gwä'dä-lōōp' hī-däl'gō); and the territory south of the Gila was not acquired until 1853, by what is known as the Gadsden Purchase. In 1863 Arizona was detached from New Mexico and made into a separate territory, but in 1906 the government tried to admit Arizona and New Mexico into the Union as a single state. This move was defeated by the Arizona legislature, which well knew that such a huge state would be unwieldy and clumsy to govern, especially in view of the many difficulties in transportation which the frontier was facing at that time. When Arizona was admitted to the Union, she framed the most radical state constitution in the nation—that is, one which departed most widely from what other constitutions had been. There was great excitement, and President Taft protested against a great many of its measures, particularly the one providing for the recall of judges by popular vote. In the end the constitution was submitted without that measure, and on St. Valentine's Day, 1912, Arizona joined the Union as the forty-eighth state. Immediately she amended her constitution to provide for the recall of judges.

### Watering a Desert

Always throughout her history Arizona has had to struggle against the rainless climate which makes it so hard to produce crops out of her rich valley soil. What little water she gets comes from clouds that have drifted over Texas from the Gulf of Mexico. Abandoned canals show the ancient methods of irrigation used by the Indians to wrest a living from the land; and to-day many larger and more difficult projects are continually set up to aid her agriculture. Of course these improvements have not yet made Arizona into a farming state of national importance, but she has come a long way, and is making steady progress. The great Roosevelt Dam on Salt River, near Phoenix (fē'nīks), the capital of Arizona, is one of the largest irrigation dams in the world; it provides water for the whole Salt River Valley, the richest farming district in the state. Hoover Dam furnishes an abundance of water for irrigation in Arizona, as well as

## THE HISTORY OF ARIZONA

magnificent quantities of power; and near Yuma (yōō'mā), close to the California border, another dam in the Colorado also provides water for a great many acres of very fertile land. The most valuable farm products of Arizona are cotton, hay, grapefruit, cantaloupes, and truck crops of all sorts. The fact that Arizona can produce more hay per acre than any other state gives one an idea of the richness of these desert soils when they are irrigated or used for dry farming. Corn, oats, wheat, barley, sorghums, flaxseed, beans, potatoes, oranges, and grapes are all grown on irrigated soil. It is in the south that subtropical fruits can be made to flourish.

On the abundant grassy plains of the hills grazing can be carried on very satisfactorily. Of late years sheep have been giving way to cattle.

Phoenix has canneries, meat packing plants, and cotton gins that make use of products from Arizona's farms and ranches. And Mesa mills cottonseed. During the war Phoenix made war materials also.

Arizona's mines bring her vast sums every year. Copper is by all odds their most important product. In a single year in World War II it brought over

\$1,000,000. No other state mines so much of it. Bisbee (bīz'bē), Jerome, and Globe have long been famous copper centers, though the most productive district is now in Greenlee County. For many years gold came next to copper, but since—like silver—it lately has been mined largely in connection with copper, zinc, and lead, those metals are all above it in the list of Ari-

zona's paying minerals. Silver follows gold on the list. It helped make Tombstone famous as one of the old "Western" towns. Arizona is an important producer of all these metals.

But she produces other minerals of value

lime, molybdenum (mō-līl'dē-nūm), sand and gravel, stone, clay, manganese ore, asbestos, fluor spar, coal, tungsten, mercury, and vanadium. Phoenix polishes the onyx found in the vicinity, and other places have garnet, turquoise, and a green stone called peridot (pēr'-i-dō).

Though not of great value these stones are made into very beautiful handmade jewelry by the Indians, who are skillful workers in silver. Their fine handiwork, carved with ancient tribal designs, is well-known and finds ready sale at Arizona's famous health resorts, such as Phoenix and colorful Tucson (tōō-sōn').

Arizona has always had a large Indian population, and on the many government reservations the red men play a picturesque and useful part in the life of the state. The Hopis (hō'pē) bring many visitors to watch their fascinating dances and to see the many ancient customs

this interesting tribe has kept. Then too the Navajos (nā'vā-hō) and Apaches are famous, just as in New Mexico, for the baskets they make and the beautiful blankets they weave. Nearly all the Arizona Indians, but especially the Hopis, the Pimas (pē'mā), and the Papagoes (pā'pā-gō), had made a great deal of progress before the white man came. The striking exception was a branch of the Yumas,

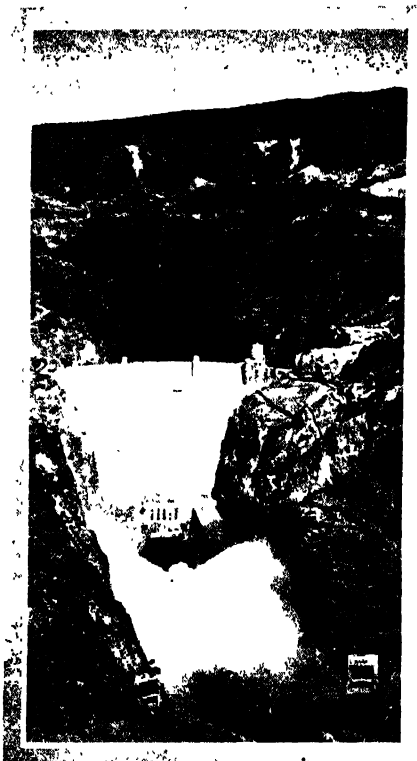


Photo by U. S. Dept. of the Interior

This is a view of Hoover Dam, one of the world's greatest engineering triumphs. The dam is built across the Colorado where the river forms the boundary between Arizona and Nevada. It is just at the point where the Colorado leaves its western course and turns abruptly to the south. The dam is 727 feet high, the highest in the world. The reservoir that it forms is 115 miles long, the largest artificial lake in the world. The dam has been built to supply water for irrigation, to supply power, and to control floods in the lower Colorado Valley.



## THE HISTORY OF ARIZONA

on the lower Colorado River; they are said to be the most backward of any tribe in the United States. Some of the oldest prehistoric remains in the country are in southeastern Arizona.

The scattered population of Arizona presents many difficult problems in education, which are complicated by large numbers of Mexicans and Asiatics. As a result, though the percentage of those who cannot read and write has been dropping steadily, it is still relatively high at 10.1 per cent. The federal government has stepped in to help education, and new night schools and extension classes are constantly being opened for those who must work during the day. To educate all these widely differing peoples is a task to test the ingenuity of any state, but Arizona is making gallant progress.

We have described the Grand Canyon, but we haven't mentioned the fact that Arizona has various other natural wonders which draw tourists from all parts of the world and send them home in amazement.

### How a Forest Is Turned to Stone

One of the state's most famous sights is the great Petrified (pět'ri-fid) Forest in northeastern Arizona, near Holbrook. For sixty square miles this forest of fallen giants extends—like no other forest ever seen. All the trees are lying on the ground, but the wonderful thing about them is that they are not

made of wood at all, but of stone. They grew long ago in prehistoric times, and when they fell it was into water-soaked soil, or perhaps into a lake. For many years water flowed over them, filtering into the wood and carrying with it tiny particles of silica (sil'y-kâ). In the end those little particles completely replaced the particles of wood. The logs are now made

of bright-colored onyx (ôn'iks) and jasper, but they still keep all the structure of wood, with the jewellike colors of the stone.

Also in the north-eastern part of the state is another natural wonder which draws many tourists. Like Joseph in the Bible, Arizona has a coat of many colors! The Painted Desert is a glorious pattern of red, purple, yellow, pink, brown, and white. Especially when the afternoon sun falls slanting across it, the colors are unbelievably clear and beautiful. The marvelous tones are all caused by the natural colors of the sandstone



Photo by Anaconda Copper Co.

In order to tell the value of a mine it is necessary to test, or assay, samples of the ore. This scene in an Arizona copper mine shows a miner collecting bits of ore from the rock face while his helper makes a note of the spot where the sample came from.

and clays that make it up.

For that matter, it would hardly be possible to talk of the beauties of Arizona without speaking of the desert itself, always fascinating, always mysterious, full of color, and full of light. Once it has got into a man's blood, he always longs to go back to it, to see its jagged horizons, to feel its wind in his face, to watch the great bunches of tumbleweed go bounding along over its barren reaches, to sink himself once again in that vast wilderness where man and his troubles are so small and Nature so immense.

## ARIZONA

AREA: 113,909 square miles—5th in rank.

**LOCATION:** Arizona, one of the Mountain states of the Southwest, lies between  $31^{\circ} 20'$  and  $37^{\circ}$  N. Lat. and between  $109^{\circ} 2'$  and  $114^{\circ} 45'$  W. Long. It is bounded on the north by Utah, on the east by New Mexico, on the south by Mexico, and on the west by California and Nevada and for a very short distance by Mexico.

**PHYSICAL FEATURES:** Arizona lies in the part of our country that is known as the Basin Range Province. Across her surface a broad band of mountains stretches diagonally from a point a little south of the northwestern corner of the state to a point about two-thirds of the way down the state's eastern boundary. The belt is from 70 to 150 miles wide, and is made up of short parallel ranges that in general lie parallel with the trend of the mountain belt. In the San Francisco Mountains Humphrey's Peak (12,611 ft.), an extinct volcano, is the highest point in the state. Toward the northeast the mountains fall away abruptly—as they do along the Mogollon Mesa, for instance—to a plateau that in the east has an average elevation of from 6,000 to 8,000 ft. but is lower in the west, where the Colorado River makes its way through the superb Grand Canyon in the northwestern corner of the state. The plateau is in general rolling, and is broken by high mountains, which often rise from shallow basins that have no outlet to the sea. In places there are barren deserts, and in places high wooded tracts. Rivers have cut deep canyons here or have left steep gullies before they dried up in the rainy season. Buttes and mesas are common, and occasionally there is a fertile river valley. It is on this broad plateau that one finds the famous Painted Desert stretching out its brilliant colors along the Colorado River. And there too is the Petrified Forest, described on other pages of these books. The chief river in this part of the state is the Little Colorado (300 m. long), which makes its way northwest to join the Colorado. The Colorado, which rises in Colorado and flows through part of Utah before it enters Arizona, forms most of the state's western boundary; it flows for 1,360 miles through our country and then crosses into Mexico to find its way to the Gulf of California and the Pacific Ocean. Its total length is about 1,450 miles. In the southeast corner of the state the mountains are lower than along the northern part of the mountain belt. The average elevation of the southeast section is about 4,000 ft. above the sea, and the mountains sometimes rise 5,000 ft. above the plain.

All that part of the state which lies west and southwest of the mountain belt is desert that slopes gradually toward the southwest. The mountains here are a good deal lower and more scattered, and as one approaches the boundaries of the state they give way to open plain. In Yuma County, along the Colorado River, there are points that are only 100 ft. above sea level, the lowest elevation in the state; Arizona's average elevation is 4,100 ft. The southern half of the state is drained by the Gila River (630 m. long), which rises in New Mexico and enters the Colorado River in the southwest corner of Arizona. Along the southern boundary are districts so dry that no vegetation will grow and the earth is covered with shifting sands. In the south-central part of the state the Gila is joined by the Salt River (about 200 m. long), which drains the southern slopes of the eastern mountain belt. Into the Salt comes the Verde, which drains the mountains farther west. The central part of the western border is drained directly into the Colorado by the Williams River, sometimes called Bill Williams Fork. Except for short distances on the Colorado, none of the rivers of Arizona may be navigated, and there are no lakes. All together the water area of the state is only 146

square miles. There is a good deal of irrigated land, especially along the Salt River, where the great Roosevelt Dam is one of the largest of its kind in the world. A dam has been built across the Colorado at Yuma, and water gathered there is carried from the Colorado to the Imperial Valley in California.

**CLIMATE:** Because of her amazingly clear, dry air and constant sunshine Arizona is famous as a health resort. The heat is intense in the lowlands, especially in the lower Gila Valley, where the temperature goes to more than  $130^{\circ}$  F. in summer and averages about  $98^{\circ}$  for the month of July. The yearly average there may be over  $74^{\circ}$ . In the southwestern deserts along the Mexican border the air reaches a temperature of  $110^{\circ}$  in the daytime but is so dry that the heat radiates rapidly after nightfall and the temperature falls to  $40^{\circ}$  or  $50^{\circ}$ . Here the annual rainfall is from 2 to 5.5 inches. Farther north, on the plateaus, the temperatures are much more comfortable and the air very bracing, and on many mountain tops the snow lies deep all the year round. Roughly, the southern half of the state has an annual average temperature of about  $68^{\circ}$ , and the more mountainous northern half, one of about  $55^{\circ}$ . At Phoenix the mean January temperature is  $51^{\circ}$ , and the mean July temperature  $90^{\circ}$ . The highest recorded temperature there is  $119^{\circ}$ , and the lowest  $12^{\circ}$ . The city has a mean annual rainfall of 7.8 inches.

July, August, and September are Arizona's hottest months, as well as those of the heaviest rainfall. Rain often comes in the shape of heavy thunderstorms that fill the dry stream beds for a few hours. Scant showers may fall between September and April, with a slight increase in volume during December. Only mountain tops get enough moisture. Those along the western border average a rainfall of 25 or 30 inches a year. The larger rivers are all fed by melting mountain snows that flood the canyons and swell the streams during May and June. Most of the moisture is brought by clouds that drift up from the Gulf of Mexico, but often the showers over the plateaus are absorbed by the dry air before they reach the earth. The northeastern part of the state is only a little less dry than the southwest. Because of its low elevation and nearness to the Gulf of California, Yuma and its vicinity has a high humidity, though rain almost never falls there.

**INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING:** The University of Arizona at Tucson, a state teachers' college at Flagstaff, and a normal school at Tempe are the more important institutions of learning.

**CHARITIES AND CORRECTION:** Arizona has a state hospital for the insane at Phoenix, a school for deaf and blind children at Tucson, a state industrial school for juvenile delinquents at Fort Grant, a home for juvenile offenders at Tucson, the Pioneer Home at Prescott, a penitentiary at Florence, and a tuberculosis sanatorium at Tempe. The state inflicts capital punishment by administering a death-dealing gas.

**POLITICAL FACTS:** Arizona is still governed under her constitution of 1911. The laws are made by a legislature consisting of a Senate of 19 members and a House of Representatives of 46 members; it meets in alternate years. All members of the legislature must be at least twenty-five years of age and must have lived in the state at least three years and in their county one year.

The executive power rests with a governor, a secretary of state, a state auditor, a state treasurer, an attorney-general, and a superintendent of public instruction. The treasurer may not serve two consecutive terms.

The judiciary consists of a supreme court, justices

## ARIZONA—Continued

of the peace, and such other courts as may be established by law. The supreme court is made up of three justices who are elected at the same time as the governor; the justice who receives the highest number of votes serves as chief justice.

Voters must be citizens of the United States who are over twenty-one years old and must have satisfied certain residence qualifications. Arizona gave the vote to women by a constitutional amendment in 1912.

The initiative and referendum have especial force in the state, and the right of recall was a vital point in Arizona's petition for statehood. All elective officers, including judges, are subject to recall. The governor's veto does not extend to measures coming under the initiative and referendum.

All cities of 3,500 inhabitants or over have the right to frame a charter for their own government. State laws control matters of indebtedness and the right to grant franchises.

The constitution includes regulations for public-service corporations and other restrictions on corporations, as well as strict child labor laws.

The capital of Arizona is at Phoenix.

**PARKS:** The Grand Canyon National Park, on the Colorado River, covers 645,136 square miles in Coconino County, and includes one of the most magnificent sights in the world. It has been described on other pages.

**MONUMENTS:** The Canyon de Chelly National Monument, in the Navajo Indian Reservation in Apache County, covers 83,840 acres and preserves prehistoric cliff dwellings.

The Casa Grande National Monument covers 473 acres in Pinal County and preserves interesting prehistoric dwellings built in the heart of the desert.

The Chiricahua National Monument covers 10,530 acres in Cochise County and contains steep canyons and other interesting examples of erosion.

The Grand Canyon National Monument in Mohave County contains 196,051 acres and offers especially fine views of the inner gorge of the Grand Canyon.

Montezuma Castle National Monument, covering 521 acres in Yavapai County, contains a cliff dwelling and other interesting prehistoric remains.

The Navajo National Monument covers 360 acres on the Navajo Indian Reservation in Coconino County and preserves ruins of three of the finest cliff dwellings.

The Organ Pipe Cactus National Monument covers 328,162 acres in Pima County and contains many fine specimens of this uncommon cactus.

The Petrified Forest National Monument covers 85,304 acres in Apache County and contains the world's finest examples of petrified trees.

The Pipe Spring National Monument covers 40 acres in Coconino County and contains the ruins of an old stone fort built by the Mormons in pioneer days.

The Saguaro National Monument covers 53,669 acres in Pima County and contains many giant cacti.

The Sunset Crater National Monument covers 3,040 acres in Coconino County and contains large fields of lava and cinders and also Sunset Mountain, an interesting extinct volcano.

The Tonto National Monument covers 1,120 acres in Maricopa County and preserves ancient cliff dwellings.

The Tumacacori National Monument covers 10 acres in Santa Cruz County and preserves the ruins of a Spanish mission over two hundred years old.

The Tuzigoot National Monument covers 43 acres in Yavapai County and contains Indian ruins over 600 years old.

The Walnut Canyon National Monument (1,641 acres) in Coconino County preserves prehistoric cliff dwellings.

The Wupatki National Monument covers 34,693 acres in Coconino County and contains ruins of ancient pueblos.

Arizona has 12,159,018 acres of national forest.

**GAME AND BIRD RESERVATIONS:** Apache National Wildlife Refuge, Apache County; Boulder Canyon Refuge, Mohave County; Cabeza Prieta Game Range, Yuma and Pima counties; Havasu Lake Refuge, Mohave and Yuma counties; Imperial Range, Yuma County; Kofa Game Range, Yuma County; Safford Refuge, Graham County; and Salt River Refuge, Gila County, protect many kinds of birds and mammals.

**NAME:** The name "Arizona" is said to have been applied by the Spaniards of the eighteenth century to a mining camp near the famous Planchas de Plata mine. In 1854 the people living in the region chose it for the name of their territory. The word probably comes from the Pima word "arizonac"—or "little creek." The Papago Indians also have a somewhat similar word meaning "young spring" or "little spring."

**NICKNAMES:** The Grand Canyon of the Colorado has given Arizona the title of the Grand Canyon State. From her many Saguaro cacti she is known as the Saguaro State, and from her many Apache Indians as the Apache State. As the youngest state in the Union she is called the Baby State, and since she was admitted to the Union on February 14 she is called the Valentine State. Because of her lead in copper she is the Copper State, and because of her vivid sunsets she is the Sunset State. She is also called the Phoenix State.

The people of Arizona are sometimes called Sand Cutters because of the trails they leave as they go about in the sands of the Arizona desert.

**STATE FLOWER:** Saguara, or giant cactus (*Cereus giganteus*); adopted in 1901 by the territorial legislature.

**STATE SONG:** "Arizona," a marching song with words by Margaret Rowe Clifford and music by Maurice Blumenthal; adopted in 1919.

**STATE FLAG:** The lower half a blue field; the upper half divided into thirteen equal segments or rays alternately red and yellow that start at the center and cover the upper half of the flag. At the center of the flag, covering part of both the upper and lower fields, is a five-pointed star.

**STATE MOTTO:** "Ditat Deus," meaning "God enriches."

**STATE BIRD.** Cactus wren.

**INTERESTING FACTS:** Arizona observes New Year's Day, Washington's Birthday, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Columbus Day, Election Day, Armistice Day, Thanksgiving Day, Christmas Day, Arbor Day on February 6 and April 2, and Admission Day on February 14.

Arizona has fossils of mammoths and an extinct horse.

Many Indians live in Arizona. They are members of the Apache, Chemehuevi, Cocopah, Havasupai, Hopi, Maricopa, Mojave, Navajo, Paiute, Papago, Pima, and Walapai tribes, and their reservations are the Cocopah, Colorado River, Fort Mohave, Fort Apache, Hopi, Navajo, Kaibab, Fort McDowell, Gila River, Maricopa, Salt River, San Carlos, Gila Bend, Papago, San Xavier, Camp Verde, Havasupai, Hualapai, and Yavapai.

# ARIZONA—Continued

Population of state, 1940, 499,261	
Counties	
Apache (F2)	24,095
Cochise (F6)	34,627
Coconino (D2)	18,770
Gila (F4)	23,867
Graham (F5)	12,113
Greenlee (F4)	8,698
Maricopa (C4)	186,193
Mohave (E2)	8,591
Navajo (E2)	25,309
Pima (D5)	72,838
Pinal (D5)	28,841

Santa Cruz (E6)	9,482
Yavapai (C3)	26,511
Yuma (B4)	19,326
Cities and Towns	
[Places marked with an asterisk (*) were clas- sified as urban in 1940]	
Benson (F6)	962
Bisbee * (E6)	5,853
Buckeye (C4)	1,305
Casa Grande (D5)	1,545
Chandler (C4)	1,239
Clifton * (F4)	2,668

Douglas * (F6)	8,623
Duncan (F5)	887
Flagstaff * (D2)	5,080
Florence (D4)	1,583
Galbert (D1)	837
Glendale * (C4)	4,855
Globe * (E1)	6,111
Holbrook (E3)	1,184
Jerome (C3)	2,295
Mesa * (D4)	7,224
Miami * (E4)	4,722
Nogales * (E6)	5,135
Phoenix * (C4)	65,414

Pima (F5)	867
Prescott * (C3)	6,018
Safford (F5)	2,266
Somerton (A5)	1,247
Tempe * (D4)	2,906
Thatcher (F5)	1,106
Tolleson (C4)	1,731
Tombstone (E6)	822
Tucson * (E5)	36,818
Wickenburg (C4)	995
Willcox (F5)	884
Williams * (C2)	2,622
Winkelman (E4)	524
Winslow * (E2)	4,557
Yuma * (A5)	5,323

# *The* HISTORY of ARKANSAS

## Reading Unit

### No. 4

## ARKANSAS: THE WONDER STATE

*Note. For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

### *Interesting Facts Explained*

Where Indians had found hot springs, 8-26  
Where the rice crops are grown, 8-27  
Famous explorers who visited Arkansas, 8-28  
What the early fur traders were like, 8-28  
When Arkansas was admitted to

the Union, 8-28  
Why the Civil War was especially bitter in Arkansas, 8-28  
Why Arkansas is called the Wonder State, 8-29  
How the rivers helped the lumber industry, 8-30  
The "dust bowl" menace, 8-30

### *Picture Hunt*

What mineral is used for our aluminum ware? 8-29

How much oil does Arkansas produce? 8-28

### *Related Material*

Who found the Mississippi? 13-464-66  
What gives a diamond its fire? 9-429  
The plight of the farmer, 7-459  
Why Americans do not speak French, 7-135-39  
How high will water rise of its own accord? 1-90  
What are Artesian wells and where are they to be found? 1-90

What is "Old Faithful"? 1-36  
What does the cotton gin do? 7-217  
How did the Missouri Compromise affect Arkansas? 7-218  
How did the Negroes live in the "old, romantic plantation days"? 9-28  
Which are the greatest fruit-growing states in the United States? 9-162

### *Practical Applications*

How is Arkansas meeting her problems of flood control? 8-30

How is the state saving her natural wonders? 8-30

### *Leisure-time Activities*

PROJECT NO. 1: Read the story of Father Marquette, 13-483-84.  
PROJECT NO. 2: Make a list

of the names of the most famous diamonds in the world, and find out what you can about their history, 9-430.

### *Summary Statement*

Arkansas has not let her natural advantages go to waste; she is taking steps to overcome her

problems, and if she can solve them she will render a valuable service to the whole nation.

---

## THE HISTORY OF ARKANSAS

---



Little Rock, the capital and largest city of Arkansas, lies along the Arkansas River. The city was first

settled in 1814 and became the capital in 1821. Above is the capitol building.

### ARKANSAS: *the* WONDER STATE

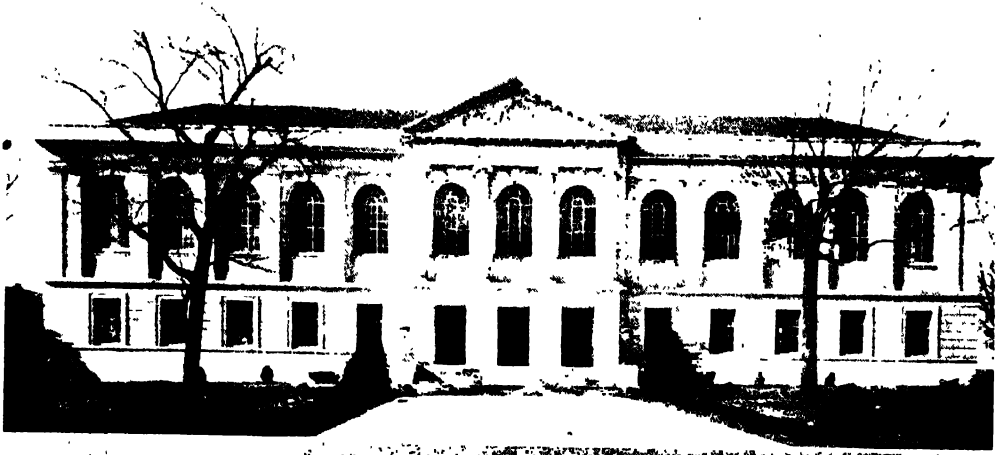
*Red Men and White Men, French, Spaniards, and Americans,  
All Have Been Drawn to Arkansas in Search of  
Health and Wealth*

**S**INCE the beginning of civilization men have been trying to find some magic charm that would give them eternal youth or lasting happiness or some such unlikely but longed-for possession. They had always known that water—just plain, ordinary water—had a cleansing and healing power and could make them feel stronger and younger. And so they reasoned that special sorts of water ought to have even more delightful effects. It was the search for a fountain of water which sent the early Spanish explorers ransacking Florida, that they might drink and never grow old. But while they carried on their vain quest certain far-away Indians in the heart of the continent had found some beautiful hot springs in the country bordering the Mississippi Valley. The red men were quick to recognize that those gracious waters were far more effective and useful than the water they were accustomed to using. And because

those Indians were of the “Arkansas,” or Quapaw, tribe—members of the same group as the Sioux—their land of mineral springs finally came to be known as Arkansas (är’-kăn-sô). Many historians say that those were the very springs about which the Spanish explorers had heard such wonderful tales—the fountain they had tried to find.

Naturally, springs like those in Arkansas at once bring a dozen questions crowding to one’s mind—questions which we can answer much more definitely than could the men of old, who were forced to explain it all by saying that these were miraculous waters. What makes the waters hot? What unusual healing power do they possess, so rare as to draw over 100,000 people to Arkansas every year in search of the vigor of renewed health? When we call them “mineral springs” and “hot springs” we tell a good deal about the nature of the waters. Many of them contain certain chemicals

## THE HISTORY OF ARKANSAS



The dignified building shown here is the library of the University of Arkansas, at Fayetteville, in the Ozark

Mountains—a resort town blessed with a share of Arkansas's healthful mineral springs.

which are useful to the human body and which are found in very tiny quantities in the foods we eat. But some of the springs are famous for quite the opposite reason: they are sought because they are entirely free from minerals or impurities of any kind. Finally, certain other hot springs produce their healing effect by the presence of radium, an amazing substance about which we have told on other pages of these books.

### Where Do Hot Springs Come From?

All of the springs come into being in just about the same way; it is the type of rock from which they flow that makes the difference in mineral content. First, rain seeps down through loose soil just as if it were going through a strainer or a sieve. This takes out all impurities. It is what accounts for the purity of most of Arkansas's springs. The water makes its way deep into the bowels of the earth, down to rocks which are hot because of their great depth below the surface. We may get some idea of the size of some such springs from the fact that Mammoth Springs in Hot Springs National Park can send out nine thousand barrels of water every minute. That is quite a little river. Hot springs like those in Arkansas occur only where the water penetrates deep

down into the earth, and where, for one reason or another, the heated rocks inside the earth are fairly near the surface.

The southeastern half of Arkansas is fairly level, for this part of the state belongs to what is known as the "Mississippi embayment," which we have described elsewhere. It was formed as a coastal plain, and in the southeastern corner has an elevation of less than 300 feet. Along the Mississippi is a strip of marvelously fertile lowland some forty or fifty miles wide, with a good many swamps and bayous (bī-ōō'), old water-courses where the river once overflowed in flood time. Here, in soil that has been carried down by the great river, Arkansas's rice crop is grown.

### The Mountains of Arkansas

From the Mississippi the state rises toward the northwest, where it reaches heights of 2,000 feet. Here are the Boston Mountains, really a part of the Ozarks (ō'zärk) of Missouri. In the center of the state, south of the broad lowlands of the Arkansas River, rise the Ouachita (wōsh'ī-tō) Mountains, made up of rocks that have been greatly folded and are full of cracks and crevices and other signs of disturbance. In them are Magazine and Blue mountains (2,800 feet),

## THE HISTORY OF ARKANSAS

the highest points in the state. It is in the rugged northwestern half of the state that Arkansas's hot springs and other fine mineral resources are to be found.

The first white men to enter the vast wilderness of Arkansas were de Soto and his Spanish followers, when they crossed the Mississippi River from Tennessee in 1541. De Soto explored the region for ten months, and pushed as far west as Hot Springs before he turned to the south and entered Louisiana. Again Arkansas was left completely to the Indians. It was not till 1673 that another white man set foot on her soil. This time Father Marquette and his companion Joliet (zhô'lyě') visited the Arkansas Indians, with a view to converting them. Then, nine years later (1682), La Salle stopped on his way down the Mississippi to claim all this for the King of France. Incidentally, he gave a large tract on the Arkansas River to his friend Henri de Tonti (ôN'rě' dē tōN'tě'). In 1686 Tonti established Arkansas Post, in order to trade for furs with the Indians. This was the first white settlement in the state; but, as we might expect, it did not become much more than a trading post for a long time. Thirty-five years later a large group of French settlers were lured by the hope of wealth to the Mississippi Valley, where one John Law, a Scotch gambler at the French court, had been given a grant of land.

### How Little Rock Got Its Name

On the collapse of the scheme in France most of the settlers deserted the region for Louisiana. About this time Bernard de la Harpe (běr'-năr' dē là ârp) strengthened the fort at Arkansas Post and gave the name of "the little rock" to the cliff on the bank of the

Arkansas River beside the fort. The post grew until to-day it has become Arkansas's capital and largest city. But it still keeps the name of Little Rock.

Arkansas was a possession of France until she passed to Spain, only to be returned again to France after forty years (1800).

Then in 1803 the United States bought her as a part of the Louisiana Purchase. Meanwhile American settlers had been coming in, and Arkansas Post had become an important trading center for the frontier. The traders were a rough lot of men, and when a man named James Bowie (bōw'ī) invented a long-bladed knife, the story went about in the East that Arkansas traders were so hardy that they used the Bowie knife for a toothpick. This is why Arkansas has the popular nicknames of the "Bowie State" and the "Toothpick State."

Until 1819 Arkansas was a part of the Missouri Territory; in that year she was organized as a separate territory, and in 1836 was admitted to the Union as a slave state, according to the provisions of the Missouri Compromise, which we have explained on other pages. When trouble began to brew over the slave question, Arkansas was divided, with loyalty to the Confederacy

strong at first. But soon the tide turned to sympathy for the Union cause, and when the Federalists captured Little Rock in 1863, the Northern sympathizers set up a state government of their own, with the capital at Little Rock. The Confederate capital was at Washington, in Hempstead County. Because her citizens were divided among themselves the Civil War was especially bitter in Arkansas. During the Reconstruction period following the war, there was great confusion



Photo by Arkansas State C. of C.

Arkansas ranks eighth among the petroleum-producing states. Her oil is found mainly in the south, in the coastal plain. Above is one of her flowing oil wells.



---

## THE HISTORY OF ARKANSAS

---



Arkansas has the most valuable deposits of bauxite in the United States. This mineral is an important source of aluminum, a light metal for which many

fascinating uses have been found. The smelting plant shown above is at Bauxite, Arkansas, a town that takes its name from the mineral.

and corruption in all departments of government. For some time the state had two rival governments. Elisha Baxter and his Republican party carried on a bitter fight with Joseph Brooks and a whole group of opposition parties. The tangle was increased when many Democrats joined the Baxter party. Both sides had armed forces. Finally President Grant had to settle the fight by recognizing Baxter as governor, even though his election had been in a good deal of doubt.

### Arkansas's Varied Crops

In spite of the breaking up of the plantations of the Old South which followed the Civil War, cotton remains king in Arkansas. Her output is more than three times what it was in 1860, and she ranks third among the cotton-raising states. But the crop is now grown on small farms along with other crops, for cotton is by no means the state's only important farm product. Although she is not a leading corn state, her average production is nearly 35,000,000 bushels. She ranks fourth in the growing of rice. She grows oats, hay, spinach, peas, beans, soybeans, sweet and white potatoes, as well as grains and cereal grasses, tomatoes, cucumbers, and other garden crops. She is a leader in growing strawberries. Many other fruits and nuts—peaches, cantaloupes, watermelons, apples, grapes, pears, pecans,

and peanuts—also help greatly to swell the farmer's income. In grapes, peaches, and pecans Arkansas is among the eight leading states. As a matter of fact she can grow nearly every crop that is raised anywhere between Canada and Mexico, for the state's varied altitudes give her a great variety of soil and climate, and over much of the state the rainfall is abundant. Because of all these conditions she also raises live stock very successfully. Cattle, hogs, chickens, dairy cattle, mules, horses, sheep, and turkeys are all important.

### Why Is Arkansas the Wonder State?

It was Arkansas's varied mineral resources that gave her the name of the "Wonder State." She has had nearly all the valuable minerals known to man, some in larger and some in smaller quantities. She has even mined diamonds—of poor quality—from the only diamond field ever discovered in North America. Far above other minerals in value is petroleum. Next comes coal, followed by natural gas and bauxite (bôk'sīt), the mineral from which we get most of our aluminum. Arkansas leads the states in its production. Other paying minerals are natural gasoline, barite, sand and gravel, clay and clay products, manganese (măng'gâ-nēs') ore, zinc, slate, lead, and oilstones. The state has big stone quarries, and there are immense chalk

---

## THE HISTORY OF ARKANSAS

---

cliffs in the Little Rock region, enough to supply the world for more than a century. Fort Smith, which lies near the coal mines of western Arkansas and the natural gas fields of eastern Oklahoma, is the state's principal manufacturing city.

Cotton gives Arkansas more wealth than any other product. Wood and a variety of wood products—the making of which is the state's chief manufacturing industry—come next to cotton in value. Nearly every kind of tree that grows in the Temperate Zone is found in Arkansas. Oil ranks third in value. In spite of the influence of World War II, which raised the value of her mineral output more than forty percent, Arkansas remains largely agricultural. Her chief manufactures are paper, flour, and furniture.

### A Network of Waterways

Lumbering was Arkansas's most prosperous industry in early days, for the state's fine river system gave transportation that was safe and cheap. No other state in the country has so large a network of rivers which may be navigated by light boats. Altogether there are about three thousand miles of navigable water. The Mississippi, running north and south, and the Arkansas River, running from west to east, are the streams of greatest importance, and plans are being laid to make use of the Arkansas and White rivers to a greater extent. Nearly 5,000 miles of railroad reach into every corner of the state, and a well-planned network of railway lines radiates from the central city of Little Rock. The improved highways of Arkansas have also helped make transportation a simpler and swifter matter.

### Sending People to School

The number of foreigners in Arkansas has always been remarkably small; compared with the problems of a state like New York, into which thousands upon thousands of foreigners without education have been pouring for years, she would seem to have no educational problems at all. Yet she has had a good many difficulties to overcome in setting up her schools. Foremost among them is the fact that three-fourths of her population live in rural communities. For

it is always harder to bring schooling to people living on scattered farms than to people living in cities. Moreover, a full twenty-five percent of the population of Arkansas is colored—and when the Negroes were freed few of them had even the slenderest education. Arkansas has met these problems squarely and has allotted nearly one-third of the state budget to financing a growing system of public schools. Under the influence of these schools illiteracy has been declining steadily. Much careful training is offered in agricultural colleges and experiment stations, to teach people to carry on the industry which is so important to Arkansas.

### Controlling Arkansas's Mighty Rivers

Arkansas has not let her natural advantages go to waste. Mountains and caves, forests and streams give her a wealth of fine scenery. The state is doing all it can to protect these natural wonders. Besides that, there are over three million acres of national forest, and a great preserve known as Hot Springs National Park, a famous health resort. But while mineral waters have been making the state famous, flood waters have been bringing untold trouble upon Arkansas throughout her history. The flood of 1927 brought devastation and destruction to more than four million acres of Arkansas land, when the Arkansas, Mississippi, and other rivers overflowed their banks. On the other hand, Arkansas has also been a heavy sufferer in the recent southwestern "dust bowl." In the north-central part of the state the great Bull Shoals Dam has been built. It is among the largest structures of its kind in the country. The dam has been designed for flood control and power development and has harnessed the waters of the White River. Such measures will help to protect Arkansas from future calamity.

To-day Arkansas looks to the future. She is exploiting more and more of her natural resources and is developing industries to take advantage of the nearness of raw materials and transportation. So the Wonder State of Arkansas is a very good state to watch in these days of turmoil and change. She may show us yet another wonder!

## ARKANSAS

**AREA:** 53,103 square miles --26th in rank.

**LOCATION:** Arkansas, one of the West South Central states, lies between 33° and 36° 30' N. Lat. and between 89° 40' and 94° 42' W. Long. It is bounded on the north by Missouri, on the east by Tennessee and Mississippi, on the south by Louisiana and Texas, and on the west by Texas and Oklahoma.

**PHYSICAL FEATURES:** The eastern half of Arkansas lies in what is known as the Mississippi embayment of the Gulf coastal plain, and is a region of low hills and valleys or of open prairie. Along the Mississippi the land is very fertile and often is swampy. There are a good many bayous in that region, for the elevation averages only about 300 feet; along the Ouachita River, near the state's southern boundary, it is only 55 ft. From the southeast the land rises gradually toward the northwest. Except for the lowlands of the Arkansas River the whole northwestern half of the state is a rugged upland. North of the Arkansas are the Boston Mountains, a part of the Ozarks. South of the Arkansas are the Ouachita Mountains, with Magazine Mountain 2,785 feet high, the highest point in the state. Blue Mountain has practically the same elevation. The Boston Mountains descend to the state's northern border in a steep incline.

Arkansas has a great many fine rivers. The Mississippi (2,470 m. long), which forms the eastern border, is the principal stream, and receives the drainage of the entire state. It is navigable for its whole distance along the boundary. The Arkansas (1,450 m. long), which rises in Colorado, flows across the central part of the state from west to east to join the Mississippi; and in the south the Ouachita (605 m. long) crosses the southern boundary into Louisiana on its way to the Red River (1,018 m. long), a tributary of the Mississippi which crosses Arkansas and Louisiana on its way from Oklahoma. It forms part of the state's southern boundary. A little north of the mouth of the Arkansas, the White River (690 m. long) empties into the Mississippi; and still farther north the Father of Waters receives the St. Francis (425 m. long), which has its headwaters in Missouri. All these rivers gather up other sizable streams as they go along. All together Arkansas has some 3,000 miles of navigable waterway. The state has few lakes. In the northeast the St. Francis River, which forms part of the boundary with Missouri, widens out to form St. Francis Lake, and here too is Big Lake. All together Arkansas has 810 square miles of water, and a considerable area of irrigated land, largely in the rice lands along the Mississippi.

**CLIMATE:** Arkansas has a mild and fairly even climate, for not only is it well to the south but it also feels the moderating influence of the Gulf of Mexico. The mean summer temperature for the state averages 79° F., the mean winter temperature 42°. Little Rock has a January mean of 41° and a July mean of 81°. The record high there is 108°, and the record low -12°. The various sections do not vary greatly in their average temperature. All of Arkansas has plenty of rain at all times of year, but certain southeastern sections have almost twice as much as other parts of the state. The average rainfall in a year at Little Rock is over 48 inches. The state has not much snow.

**INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING:** The more important institutions in the state are Arkansas College at Batesville, Arkansas State College at Jonesboro, University of Arkansas at Fayetteville and Little Rock, Hardin College at Searcy, Hendrix College at Conway, John Brown University at Siloam Springs, Ouachita College at Arkadelphia, College of the Ozarks at Clarksville, and Arkansas Baptist College for Negroes at Little Rock. There is a state agricultural and

mechanical college at Monticello and another on the junior college level at Magnolia. At Arkadelphia and Conway are state colleges for the training of school teachers.

**CHARITIES AND CORRECTION:** A state industrial school for boys is located at Wrightsville and one for girls at Alexander. There is a state penal farm at Tucker and one for Negroes at Cummins. At Alexander is a women's reformatory. The state penitentiary is at Little Rock. There are hospitals for the insane at Little Rock and Benton and tuberculosis sanitoriums at Booneville and Fort Smith. For Negroes there is a hospital for the insane at Baucum and a home for tubercular patients at Alexander. At Sweet Home is a home for Confederate veterans.

**POLITICAL FACTS:** Arkansas is governed under its third constitution, which was adopted in 1874. Laws are made by a General Assembly consisting of two houses—a Senate, made up of not less than 30 nor more than 35 representatives from senatorial districts, and a House of Representatives made up of not more than a hundred members elected to represent the various counties, with extra representation allowed to the more populous counties. Senators serve for four years and Representatives for two years. The legislative sessions are limited to sixty days but may be extended by a two-thirds vote of each house.

The executive department is headed by the governor, who is assisted by the lieutenant governor, the secretary of state, the treasurer, the attorney general, the auditor, and the commissioner of state lands. All are elected for terms of two years. The governor also appoints certain boards and commissions.

The judiciary is headed by a supreme court made up of five members, who are elected for eight years. Below this there are circuit courts, with judges elected for four years, and probate and county courts. Each township has at least two justices of the peace, who serve two-year terms. The General Assembly may act as a court upon occasion.

Voters must be citizens of the United States, and must have lived in the state for one year, in the county for six months, and in the ward or voting precinct for one month. They must pay a poll tax. Elections are held every two years.

A law of 1911 provides for the initiative and referendum. Eight percent of the voters may propose a bill or an amendment by presenting a petition four months before the Assembly convenes. Six percent may order a referendum against a measure already passed.

Primary elections are regulated by law, and election fraud is severely punished. Persons who deny the existence of a God may not run for office.

The township is the principal unit of local government.

The capital of Arkansas is at Little Rock.

**PARKS:** The Hot Springs National Park, established in 1921, covers one and a half square miles and contains various medicinal springs to which thousands of people come for treatment.

Arkansas has 3,586,665 acres of national forest.

**GAME AND BIRD RESERVATIONS:** Big Lake Refuge (9,602 acres) and White River Refuge (110,354 acres) for birds and fur-bearing animals.

**NAME:** The name of the state probably comes from the Indian word "Quapaw," or "Ugakhpa," the name of a tribe of Indians who lived in this region. The spelling varies, and the exact form of the original word is unknown. Some say it was the Algonquin word "Kappa." The meaning too is debatable. In fact

## ARKANSAS—Continued

it was once claimed that "Arkansas" was not of Indian origin, but came from the French phrase "arc en sang," or "bloody bow"—referring to a special acacia-wood bow that the Indians made. The likeness to the word "Kansas" is quite accidental. When the new district was set aside (1806) the word was spelled "Arkansaw," and the change of the last letter to "s" was probably a result of French influence. An act of the state legislature in 1881 established that the final "s" should be silent.

**NICKNAMES:** The large number of bears in Arkansas during pioneer days gave her the nickname of the Bear State; and because a great many of her citizens used to carry bowie knives she was called the Bowie State. The title of the Hot Water State comes from her many hot springs. Because the pioneers were said to use their bowie knives for toothpicks those useful weapons of the frontiersman came to be called "Arkansas toothpicks," and the state was called the Toothpick State. By a resolution passed in 1923 the Senate officially accepted for Arkansas the title of the "Wonder State," a reference to her many valuable resources and interesting physical features.

The people of Arkansas are called Toothpicks, from

the Bowie knives, or "Arkansas toothpicks," that they once carried.

**STATE FLOWER:** Apple blossom (*Pyrus malus*); adopted in 1901.

**STATE SONG:** "Arkansas," with words and music by Mrs. Eva Ware Barnett; adopted in 1917.

**STATE FLAG:** A red field bearing in the center a blue diamond surrounded by twenty-five white stars. Three blue stars below the central device commemorate the fact that the state belonged to Spain, France, and the United States; and twin stars show that it was admitted to the Union at the same time as Michigan. The diamond signifies that the state mines diamonds.

**STATE MOTTO:** "Regnat Populus," meaning "The people rule."

**STATE BIRD:** Mocking bird.

**INTERESTING FACTS:** Arkansas observes New Year's Day, Lincoln's Birthday, Washington's Birthday, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Columbus Day, Election Day, Armistice Day, Thanksgiving Day, Christmas Day, Lee's Birthday on Jan. 19, MacArthur Day on Jan. 26, Jefferson Davis' Birthday on June 3, and Arbor Day on Dec. 6.

Population of state, 1940, 1,949,387		Cities and Towns	
Counties		[Places marked with an asterisk (*) were classified as urban in 1940]	
Arkansas (D 3)	24,437	Adona (C 2)	218
Ashley (D 4)	26,785	Alexander (C 3)	134
Baxter (C 1)	10,281	Algoa (D 2)	131
Benton (A 1)	36,148	Alicia (D 2)	333
Boone (B 1)	15,860	Alma (A 2)	774
Bradley (C 4)	18,097	Alpena (B 1)	313
Cabot (C 3)	9,636	Altzheimer (D 3)	494
Carroll (B 1)	14,737	Altus (B 2)	541
Chicot (D 4)	27,452	Amity (B 3)	608
Clark (B 3)	21,402	Antoine (B 3)	233
Clay (E 1)	28,386	Arkadelphia *	5,078
Cleburne (C 2)	13,134	(B 3)	
Cleveland (C 4)	12,570	Arkansas City	1,446
Columbia (B 4)	29,822	(D 4)	
Conway (C 2)	21,536	Arkoma (A 4)	126
Craighead (E 2)	47,200	Ash Flat (D 1)	315
Crawford (A 2)	23,920	Ashdown (A 4)	2,332
Crittenden (E 2)	42,473	Athens (B 3)	74
Cross (E 2)	26,046	Atkins (C 2)	1,322
Dallas (C 4)	14,471	Augusta (D 2)	2,235
Desha (D 4)	27,160	Bald Knob (D 2)	1,445
Drew (D 4)	19,831	Banks (C 4)	248
Faulkner (C 2)	25,880	Bates (A 3)	148
Franklin (B 2)	15,683	Batesville *	5,267
Fulton (D 1)	10,253	Bay (E 2)	357
Garland (B 3)	41,664	Bearden (C 4)	961
Grant (C 3)	10,477	Bee Branch (C 2)	151
Greene (E 1)	30,204	Beebe (D 2)	1,189
Hempstead (B 4)	32,770	Belleville (B 2)	411
Hot Spring (B 3)	18,916	Ben Lomond	406
Howard (A 3)	16,621	(A 4)	
Independence		Benton * (C 3)	3,502
(D 2)	25,643	Bentonville (A 1)	2,359
Izard (D 1)	12,834	Berryville (D 4)	1,482
Jackson (D 2)	26,427	Bigelow (C 3)	377
Jefferson (D 3)	65,101	Biggers (D 1, E 1)	456
Johnson (B 2)	18,795	Birta (B 2)	58
Lafayette (B 4)	16,851	Black Oak (E 2)	329
Lawrence (D 1)	22,651	Black Rock (D 1)	769
Lee (E 3)	26,810	Black Springs	97
Lincoln (D 4)	19,709	(B 3)	
Little River (A 4)	15,952	Blevins (B 4)	331
Logan (B 2)	25,967	Blue Mountain	171
Lonoke (D 3)	29,802	(B 2)	
Madison (B 2)	14,531	Blytheville *	1,065
Marion (C 1)	9,464	(E 2)	
Miller (B 4)	31,874	Bona (A 2)	486
Mississippi		Bono (E 2)	248
(E 2)	80,217	Booneville (B 2)	2,324
Monte (D 3)	21,133	Bradford (D 2)	681
Montgomery *	8,876	Bradley (B 4)	409
(B 3)		Branch (B 2)	390
Nevada (B 4)	19,869	Brinkley * (D 3)	3,409
Newton (B 2)	10,881	Brookland (E 2)	276
Ouachita (C 4)	31,151	Bryant (C 3)	173
Perry (B 3)	8,392	Buckner (B 4)	450
Phillips (E 3)	45,970	Burdette (E 2)	110
Pike (B 3)	11,786	Cabot (C 3)	741
Poinsett (E 2)	37,670	Calico Rock (C 1)	738
Polk (A 3)	15,832	Camden * (C 4)	8,975
Pope (B 2)	25,682	Carlisle (D 3)	1,080
Prairie (D 3)	15,304	Carthage (C 3)	687
Pulaski (C 3)	156,085	Casa (B 2)	245
Randolph (D 1)	18,319	Center Point	244
St. Francis (E 2)	36,043	(B 4)	
Saline (C 3)	19,163	Centerton (A 1)	219
Scott (A 3)	13,300	Charleston (A 2)	958
Searcy (C 2)	11,942	Chester (A 2)	207
Sebastian (A 2)	62,809	Childer (B 4)	508
Sevier (A 4)	15,248	Clarendon * (B 1)	2,551
Sharp (D 1)	11,497	Clarksville *	3,118
Stone (C 2)	8,603	(E 2)	
Union (C 4)	50,461	Cleveland (C 2)	99
Van Buren (C 2)	12,518	Clinton (C 2)	915
Washington (A 1)	41,114	Coal Hill (B 2)	1,040
White (D 2)	37,176	Collins (D 4)	222
Woodruff (D 2)	22,133	Colt (E 2)	259
Yell (B 2)	20,970	Conway * (C 2)	5,782
		Corning (E 1)	1,619
		Cotter (C 1)	903
		Cotton Plant	1,778
		(D 2)	
		Cove (A 3)	381
		Crawfordsville	656
		(E 2)	
		Crossett * (D 4)	4,891
		Cushman (D 2)	427
		Daisy (B 3)	82
		Dalark (C 3)	152
		Danville (B 2)	1,010
		Dardanelle (B 2)	1,807
		Datto (E 1)	198
		De Queen * (A 3)	3,055
		De Valls Bluff	686
		(D 3)	
		De Witt (D 3)	2,498

\* Part of Desha annexed to Lincoln in 1925, and part annexed to Chicot in 1931.

\* Part of Montgomery annexed to Scott, and part of Scott annexed to Montgomery, in 1923

# ARKANSAS—Continued

Decatur (A1)	358	Holly Grove (D3)	755	Monticello * (D4)	3,650	Russellville * (B2)	5,927
Deckerville (E2)	30	Hope * (B4)	7,475	Monroe (D4)	343	St. Charles (D3)	412
Delaplaine (E1)	180	Horatio (A4)	809	Moro (E3)	278	St. Francis (E1)	266
Delight (B3)	481	Hot Springs * (B3)	21,370	Morrilton * (C2)	4,608	St. Paul (B2)	211
Denning (B2)	341	Houston (C2)	287	Mount Ida (B3)	490	Salem (D1)	574
Dermott * (D4)	3,083	Hoxie (E1)	1,466	Mountain Home (C1)	927	Saratoga (A4)	266
Des Arc (D3)	1,410	Hughes (E3)	1,004	Mountainburg (A2)	185	Seranton (B2)	322
Dierks (A3)	1,459	Humphrey (D3)	595	Mountainview (C2)	745	Searcy * (D2)	3,670
Douglas (D3)	4	Hunter (D2)	335	Mulberry (A2)	973	Sedgwick (E2)	152
Dover (B2)	493	Huntington (A2)	863	Murfreesboro (B3)	835	Sheridan (C3)	1,338
Dryden (E2)	51	Huntsville (B1)	776	Nashville * (B4)	2,782	Sherrell (D3)	258
Dumas (D4)	2,323	Huttig (C4)	1,379	Nettleton (E2)	909	Shiloh (C2)	127
Dyer (A2)	513	Imboden (D1)	525	Newark (D2)	802	Sidney (D2)	153
Earle (E2)	1,872	Jacksonport (D2)	215	Newport * (D2)	1,321	Siloam Springs * (A1)	2,764
Edgemont (C2)	83	Jamestown (D2)	76	New Rocky Comfort (Foreman P. O.) (A4)	1,007	Smackover (C4)	2,235
Edmonson (E2)	308	Jasper (B1)	412	Norfolk (C1)	304	Sparkman (C4)	840
El Dorado * (C1)	15,858	Jonesboro * (L1)	11,729	Norphlet (C4)	695	Springdale * (A1)	3,319
Elaine (E3)	634	Junction City * (C4)	797	North Little Rock * (C3)	21,137	Springtown (A1)	104
Elm Springs (A1)	156	Kelso (D4)	27	Oden (B3)	102	Stamps (B4)	2,405
Emerson (B4)	501	Kensett (D2)	827	Ogden (A1)	225	Star City (D4)	1,090
Emmet (B4)	465	Kico (D3)	253	O'Kean (E1)	138	Stephens (B4)	998
England (D3)	2,027	Kingsland (C4)	473	Okolona (E4)	525	Strong (C4)	762
Eudora (D4)	1,808	Knobel (E1)	75	Ola (B)	839	Stuttgart * (D3)	5,628
Eureka Springs (B1)	1,770	Lake City (E2)	786	Omaha (B1)	146	Success (E1)	281
Evening Shade (D1)	347	Lake Village (D4)	2,045	Osceola * (E2)	3,226	Sulphur Rock (D2)	181
Fayetteville * (A1)	8,212	Lamar (B2)	474	Ozan (B4)	133	Sulphur Springs (A1)	435
Felsenthal (C4)	203	Lavaca (A2)	340	Ozark (B2)	1,402	Swifton (D2)	484
Fisher (E2)	205	Leachville (E1)	1,076	Palestine (E3)	345	Taylor (B4)	335
Fordyce * (C4)	3,429	Lead Hill (C1)	194	Laurelburn (D2)	595	Texasarkana * * (A4)	11,821
Forrest City * (E2)	5,699	Leola (C3)	412	Paragould * (E1)	7,079	Tillar (D4)	229
Fort Smith * (A2)	36,584	Lepanto (E2)	1,198	Paraloma (B4)	143	Tinsman (C4)	258
Fouke (B4)	5	Lehigh (C2)	779	Paris * (B2)	3,430	Tontitown (A1)	189
Fountain Hill (D4)	267	Letona (D2)	186	Parkdale (D4)	278	Traskwood (C3)	226
Fourche (C2)	88	Levy (C3)	1,906	Parkin (E2)	1,412	Trumann * (E2)	3,381
Franklin (D1)	100	Lewisville (B4)	1,314	Patterson (D2)	284	Tuckerman (D2)	875
Friendship (C)	272	Lincoln (A3)	790	Pca Ridge (A1)	72	Tupelo (D2)	249
Fulton (B4)	185	Little Rock * (C3)	88,039	Peach Orchard (E1)	374	Ulm (D3)	146
Garfield (B1)	104	Lockesburg (A1)	764	Perry (C2)	377	Umpire (A3)	74
Garland (B4)	325	London (B2)	118	Perryville (C3)	577	Upland (C4)	4
Gassville (C1)	228	Lonoke (D3)	1,715	Piggott (E1)	2,034	Van Buren * (A2)	5,422
Gilbert (C2)	106	Lonsdale (C3)	119	Pine Bluff * (C3)	21,290	Varnar (D3)	5
Gillett (D3)	781	Louann (C4)	492	Plainview (B3)	704	Vidonia (C2)	259
Gillham (A4)	238	Lowell (A1)	271	Pleasant Plains (D2)	156	Wabbaseka (D3)	258
Glenwood (B3)	854	Luxora (E2)	1,258	Plummersburg (C2)	541	Walcott (E1)	122
Gould (D4)	908	McCrory (D2)	1,010	Pocahontas * (D1)	3,028	Waldo (B4)	1,240
Grady (D3)	472	McGehee * (D4)	3,663	Pollard (E1)	169	Waldron (A3)	1,298
Grannis (A3)	225	McNab (B4)	144	Portia (D1)	393	Walnut Ridge (E1)	2,013
Gravette (A1)	865	McNeil (B4)	694	Portland (D4)	518	Ward (D3)	283
Grays (D2)	47	McRae (D2)	170	Pottsville (B2)	308	Warren * (C4)	2,516
Grayson (B3)	2	Madison (E3)	838	Powhatan (D1)	137	Washington (B4)	432
Green Forest (B1)	755	Magazine (B2)	385	Prairie Grove (A2)	887	Watson (D4)	236
Greenland (A2)	114	Magnolia (D2)	226	Prescott * (B4)	3,177	Weiner (E2)	447
Greenway (E1)	303	Magnolia * (B4)	4,326	Princeton (C1)	238	Wesson (C4)	245
Greenwood (A2)	1,219	Malvern * (C3)	5,290	Pvatt (C1)	224	West Crossett (D4)	127
Grubbs (D2)	345	Mammoth Springs (C1)	666	Quitman (C2)	393	West Fork (A2)	359
Gwinn (D2)	250	Manila (E2)	1,248	Ratchiff (B2)	337	West Helena * (E3)	4,717
Gurdon (B4)	2,045	Manfield (A2)	1,002	Ravenna (D1)	240	West Point (D2)	145
Hackett (A2)	436	Marianna * (E3)	4,419	Ravenden Springs (D1)	200	Wheatley (D2)	362
Halley (D1)	119	Marion (E2)	758	Readland (D4)	150	Whelen Springs (B4)	214
Hamburg (D1)	1,939	Marked Tree * (E2)	2,685	Rector (E1)	1,736	Wickes (A3)	121
Hampton (C4)	686	Marmaduke (E1)	677	Redfield (C3)	339	Willford (D1)	272
Hardy (D3)	721	Marshall (C2)	822	Reyno (E1)	346	Wilmar (D4)	695
Harrisburg (E2)	1,193	Marvell (E3)	830	Rison (C4)	1,005	Wilmot (D4)	625
Harrison * (B1)	4,238	Mayflower (C3)	165	Rogers * (A1)	3,550	Wilton (A4)	319
Hartford (A2)	1,189	Maynard (E1)	266	Rohwer (D4)	142	Winchester (D4)	171
Hartman (B2)	561	McBourne (D1)	567	Roshoro (B3)	131	Winslow (A2)	248
Hatfield (A3)	437	Mena * (A3)	5,510	Russell (D2)	206	Winthrop (A4)	336
Havanna (B2)	449	Millard (A2)	560			Wynne * (E2)	3,633
Hazen (D3)	819	Mineral Springs (B4)	731			Yellville (C1)	546
Heber Springs (C2)	1,656	Minturn (D2)	133			Zinc (C1)	119
Helena * (E3)	3,546	Monette (E2)	1,074				
Hermitage (C4)	344						
Hugunson (D2)	166						

\* Population of Junction City, Claiborne and Union parishes, La. 355 in 1940

\* Population of Texasarkana City, Bowie County, Tex. 17,019 in 1940

---

# *The HISTORY of CALIFORNIA*

---

## Reading Unit No. 5

---

### CALIFORNIA: THE GOLDEN STATE

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

#### *Interesting Facts Explained*

How the picturesque canyons of California were formed, 8-34  
When white men first came to California, 8-34  
When Californians spoke Spanish, 8-37  
The gold rush of '49, 8-38  
How the mild climate attracts settlers to California, 8-38  
Sacramento, the busy capital, 8-

39  
Where rice is sowed by airplane, 8-39  
Why California deserves her title of the Golden State, 8-40  
Where deserts are made fertile by irrigation, 8-40  
Where visitors to California see nature in all her beauty, 8-41

#### *Picture Hunt*

Where are the "English" walnuts sent? 8-35  
How long is the new Golden Gate

Bridge and how high are its towers? 8-39  
Franciscan missions, 7-434

#### *Related Material*

What happened at the time of the Alaska gold rush? 8-13  
What do we know about the way in which mountain ranges were born? 1-20  
What traces of the Ice Age are left on the face of the earth? 1-59-64  
What vows did the Franciscan friars take? 13-529

What kind of brick do the Arizona Indians use for their houses? 9-376  
One flag from ocean to ocean, 7-231-34  
How old are the giant redwoods? 2-6  
A famous son of California, 13-340-41

#### *Practical Applications*

How does Hoover Dam help the California farmer? 8-41

What use is made of the abalone shells? 8-40

#### *Leisure-time Activities*

PROJECT NO. 1: Make a list of the chief fruits and flowers grown in California, 8-35-41.

PROJECT NO. 2: Read one of Jack London's novels.

#### *Summary Statement*

The history of the Golden State, upon which Nature has showered her riches, has been one

of unbelievably rapid increase in wealth and population since the gold rush of 1849.

## CALIFORNIA: *the* GOLDEN STATE

### *The Story of a Golden Land That Has Been Favored above Almost Any Other Land on Earth*

**Q**UT on our country's western edge, where the stormy Pacific always pounds the shore, lies a land containing more extremes of hot and cold, of wet and dry, of lofty mountain and lowly valley than any other part of the United States. For in the great state of California, which stretches for a thousand miles along the coast and is second only to Texas in size, we find on the one hand Mount Whitney (14,495 feet), the tallest mountain in the United States, and on the other hand Death Valley, with its lowest point 280 feet below sea level, the lowest point in the country. In the northwest corner of the state is a heavily forested stretch where the rainfall may be as heavy as 125 inches a year, and at the state's opposite corner are the burning sands of the Mojave (mô-hä'vâ) and Colorado deserts, where the rainfall in places may be almost zero. On the east are the eternal snows of the Sierra Nevada (sî-ër'ä nê-vä'dä) Mountains, and only a little way farther south is the scorching heat of the southeastern deserts,

with a summer temperature that sometimes climbs to 129° in the shade—the hottest point in the United States, and perhaps in the world.

Naturally, amidst all this amazing variety Nature has had a chance to do almost anything that came

into her head, and aided by man's invention she seems to have set her wits to work to grow a startling variety of fruits and flowers and to produce marvels of climate and scenery that are hard to equal anywhere in the world. Many consider the Sierra Nevada the finest mountain range in the United States. Here are no gentle rounded summits or long level ridges. Instead there is the crowded procession of gaunt and jagged peaks which give the range the name "sierra"—a word that in Spanish means "saw" and was applied to



Photo by the Sacramento C. of C.

Sacramento, the capital of California, lies in the broad, fertile valley of the Sacramento River. First the site of a fort built in 1839, the settlement grew rapidly into a city at the time of the famous gold rush. A view of the state capitol, surrounded by handsome trees and tall shrubs, is shown in the picture above.

any saw-toothed mountain range. These mountains, like the Rockies, are young as mountains go, much younger than the worn-down chains along our country's eastern coast. Their rocks were originally laid down

## THE HISTORY OF CALIFORNIA

beneath a very ancient sea, but were crumpled and folded into lofty summits and displaced still more by great masses of molten rock that crowded up from below.

Of course the wind and water set to work as soon as the mass was raised above the surface of the sea. The crests were chiseled down and planed off, and when the range was upheaved again and again as the long ages rolled by, the process of leveling off was always begun all over again. But meanwhile a great crack—or "fault"—had formed along what is now the eastern face of the range. The rocks on the west side of the crack were gradually upheaved higher and higher into a gigantic chain of mountains with a very steep face along their eastern side—where the crack had been—and a much more gentle slope toward the Pacific coast.

Moisture was shut out of the lands to the east--what we now know as the Great Basin--and most of the streams that did form there wandered about in a disheartened way and lost themselves in the sands or in salty lakes called "sinks." Salton Sea, one of those sinks in southeastern California, is well below sea level, and when rain does fall receives the drainage of a large area. The vast deposits of borax and nitrate (nī'trāt) of soda in Death Valley were left there by water that drained into the depression and then evaporated.

### An Ocean of Volcanic Mud

The northern part of the great chain was buried in a vast ocean of volcanic mud, belched forth by the volcanoes in that part

of the range. In this material, which soon hardened over the face of the land, streams carved jagged peaks and steep gashes which grew ever deeper as the range was reared higher and higher. To-day those stream beds are picturesque canyons hundreds of feet deep, and the great gray peaks that tower above them are the highest in the

United States. Eleven of them have an elevation of more than 14,000 feet. Movements of the earth's surface are still going on in California, especially in the Coast Range, and earthquakes are fairly common in parts of the state.

When the Ice Age came, glaciers formed on the summits of the great Sierras, and gouged deep scars in their side. Those snows have never vanished from many of the higher mountains, but have lived on, in all their dazzling purity, age after age. That is what gives

the range its name "nevada," the Spanish word for "snowy." The hoary majesty of the mountains who wear this age-old crown is one of the chief glories of a state that boasts a bewildering array of beautiful sights.

Strangely enough this favored spot has been known to white men for only a short time, as such things go. It was not until 1542 that the Spaniard Juan Rodriguez Cabrillo (hwān rô-drē'gāth kă-brē'yō) sailed up the coast and decided that this must be the "island of California," which a certain spinner of yarns named Montalvo (mōn-tāl'vō) had written about, some thirty-odd years before. But Cabrillo did not do much about his discovery, and neither did Sir Francis Drake, when he spent some five weeks in 1579 re-



Photo by the Union Pacific Railway

The University of California, at Berkeley, has a beautiful setting and enjoys a marvelous climate. If its branch at Los Angeles is included, the university has an enrollment of over thirty thousand students.



## THE HISTORY OF CALIFORNIA



In the famous Livermore Valley, in Alameda County, California, grow these vines in endless rows. Their grapes are used to make white wine.



These sturdy bags are filled with "English" walnuts that were grown in California. They are being shipped of all places—to England!



Photos by the Sa.

The oranges here are ripening on the trees in one of California's subtropical groves. A background of snow-capped peaks makes a fine contrast.



California is able to grow an amazing variety of delicious fruits and vegetables. In this scene we see farmers harvesting asparagus.

## THE HISTORY OF CALIFORNIA



The heavy wheels of caravan after caravan that made the long journey across the plains to California have left deep ruts that can still be seen to-day, if one looks for them where the old trails crossed hard rock.

The scene above comes from a modern moving picture that has attempted to bring back those pioneer days. Hollywood is the center for California's moving-picture industry, which sends its product all over the world.

pairing his ships in one of the bays north of San Francisco. He claimed the country for the English crown, named it New Albion, and let it go at that. During the next 150 years the coast had a few visitors now and then but no settlers. It was not till 1769 that Spain planted a little outpost at San Diego (săn dē-ā'gō), where her galleons could be refitted.

### A Saint Comes to California

And that might have been the extent of her interest for a good deal longer if it had not been for one of the most remarkable men the Catholic church has produced. This was a Franciscan monk named Junipero Serra (hōō-nē'pā-rō sēr'rā), a veritable saint whose lofty spirit and flaming zeal triumphed over wilderness, desert, and his own painful physical ills to bring Christianity to the Indians, who had lived in California no one knows how long.

They were a strangely mixed lot, those silent red men, with representatives from over twenty of the seventy-odd groups into which North American Indians have been divided on the basis of language. In the south were Yumas (yōō'mā)—a people in general very low in the scale of civilization—and a good many representatives of the great Shoshonean (shō-shō'nē-ān) group, those hardy plateau dwellers whom we meet in the early history of so many of the western states. Along the bottom lands of the Colorado River the red men had learned to farm a little, but they

were the only California Indians to do so. The tribes of the central part of the state depended largely on acorns and other nuts for food, and had built up their lives around the gathering and grinding and cooking of them. Here the Maidu (mī'dōō) were the most important tribe. In the northwest the Indians depended on salmon, and fashioned their lives accordingly. They made good use of the canoe.

None of the California Indians had a high civilization like the Indians of Mexico and Peru, but Serra loved their souls no less on that account. His dauntless spirit drove his frail body on till he had founded a long chain of missions up the coast as far as San Francisco.

### The Building of the Missions

Those beautiful white buildings, with red-tiled roofs and cloistered patios (pā'tyō)—or inclosed courts—bright with flowers, were centers of civilization. The monks knew how to choose a fertile soil, and how to irrigate it and coax grain, olives and grapes, lemons, oranges, and figs to grow in it. They imported sheep and cattle, and taught the Indians to tend the fields and flocks, to tan leather, and do a score of other useful things. The hides and tallow could be sold abroad for a handsome sum and so pay for the manufactured articles that the growing settlements needed. Eventually so many California hides were carried in swift sailing ships to

## THE HISTORY OF CALIFORNIA

supply the New England leather industry that the thrifty Yankees came to refer to them as "California bank notes"—and as a matter of fact they were sometimes used as money. Hides and furs were the province's chief exports.

Of course Spanish settlers soon began to flock in. They lived in the little towns that grew up around the missions, or gathered at convenient points for trade, such as the little adobe (ă-dō'bě)—or mud brick—town started at the time of our Revolutionary War and named for the angels—Los Angeles (lōs ăn'jēl-ēs). Many of the newcomers were soldiers, who cared little for the priests but obeyed a military governor who ruled the province. A gay and graceful and leisurely society gradually grew up on the ranches and in the little towns. The people all spoke Spanish and hardly knew what was going on across the continent. When Mexico broke away from Spain (1821) this distant province at first refused to follow, and remained loyal to the Spanish king. But in 1822 she gave in and swore allegiance to Mexico. She conducted her affairs in a high-handed way, however, and before long refused to have any governors except those of her own choice.

### A Stirring of New Life

Meanwhile, in spite of laws against it, people of other nations were beginning to come in. The Russians had planted a fur-trading colony at Fort Ross, (1809), and Americans were drifting over the Sierras or coming by ship around the Cape or up from Panama. Gradually the missions were robbed of their power till by 1840 all had been taken over by the government. And more and more the stirring life and republican ideas

to the east of that high wall of mountains were making themselves felt.

At last Mexico and the United States came to blows, and the United States saw her chance. An American, Captain J. C. Frémont (frē-mōnt'), a picturesque explorer and adventurer who later ran for the presidency of the United States, had already begun to stir up trouble. He had even engineered an absurd little attempt at a revolution. It is called the Bear Flag War (1846) because of the bear on the flag that at one time was run up at Sonoma (sō-nō'mă). The plan was to make California a separate nation. But it all came to nothing. As soon as war was on with Mexico, Commodore Sloat sailed into the bay at Monterey (mōn'tē-rā') and on July 7, 1846, landed and ran up the American flag. In



by Caterpillar Tractor Company

Towering derricks like these are not an unusual sight in California—especially in the southern part. The oil found here comes from shales and sandstones that are younger than most of the oil-bearing rocks of our country.

1848, at the close of the war, the territory was ceded to the United States.

One of the picturesque figures in this period of California's history was the famous Kit Carson (1809-1868), who accompanied Frémont on his expedition into the state. Carson had been born in Kentucky, but had been taken by his parents to Missouri when he was only a year old, and later had gradually worked his way west. When only seventeen he became a professional guide, and before long was known through the whole frontier for strength and bravery, and for his magnificent qualities of mind and heart. He fought in the Mexican War and the Civil War, and long did valuable service as Indian agent at Taos, New Mexico. We have to think of him as the typical pioneer, brave, resourceful, generous, and enduring.

And now California swiftly bade farewell to her easy-going Spanish ways. American settlers began to flock in by the thousands.

## THE HISTORY OF CALIFORNIA

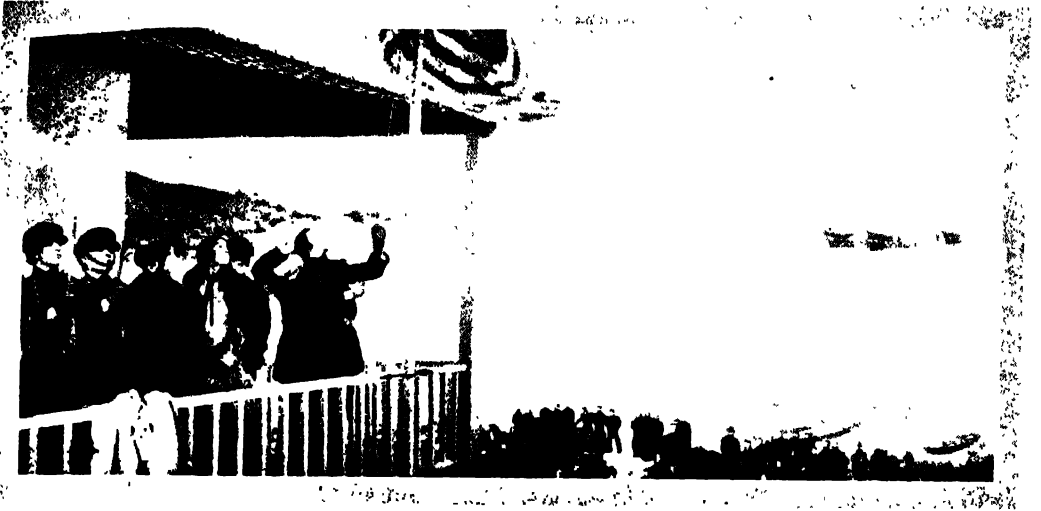


Photo by the Los Angeles Public Library

Here we see Commodore Sloat raising the American flag for the first time over Monterey. Three years

later in 1849 a convention met here to frame constitution for the new state.

At first the lure was gold, which had been discovered near Sutter's Fort—now Sacramento (săk'rá-mě'n'tō)—in 1848. By '49 the insane rush for the magic metal was well under way. It was the greatest gold rush the world has ever seen. We have told on other pages how men came in wagons across the desert or up to San Francisco by boat to get rich or die in the attempt. They were a ruthless, violent, earnest lot. Civilized law completely broke down before them, and robbery, murder, and every other known crime flourished unchecked. No legal government had as yet been set up by the United States, but the people formed Vigilance Committees whose members took the enforcement of law into their own hands. In spite of all they could do, it was a long time before there was anything like order at such places as Brandy Gulch, Poker Flat, Hell's Delight, and Hangtown.

### California Goes to Work

California lands were broad and fertile, and in the end many of the newcomers settled on farms. By 1870 wheat was bringing them greater wealth than gold. Even roaring miners must be clothed and fed, so grocery stores and blacksmith shops and meat markets sprang up, and doctors and lawyers begin to practice their professions. In this way a

normal life was born. When California was admitted to the Union in 1850 she came in as a free state, but the question was not finally settled for her until after the terrible convulsion of the Civil War.

### An Amazing Migration

Since then her history has been one of such rapid increase in wealth and population that one can scarcely believe the figures. People have poured over the Sierras in a migration more amazing than any other in history. Some have brought only stout hearts and willing hands, others have brought vast accumulated wealth. All have been attracted by this smiling garden where the sun shines in some places an amazing number of days in the year and where, except in the mountains, frost comes but rarely.

To-day California sells her wares to every civilized country in the world. She ranks high among the states in the value of her exports, among which petroleum, lumber, grain, fruit, vegetables, and fish are the most important. In the Great Central Valley—hemmed in by the towering Sierras on the east and the lower Coast Range on the west, with the two ranges meeting at the north and south—every conceivable crop, from rice to artichokes, can be raised. Two rivers drain this fertile plain, the Sacramento com-

## THE HISTORY OF CALIFORNIA



San Francisco's new Golden Gate Bridge spans the entrance to one of the world's most beautiful harbors. This spectacular arch of steel is by far the world's longest suspension bridge, with a span of 4,200 feet. Its towers are 746 feet high—the highest in the world—and they carry the largest cables ever spun. The

whole structure cost thirty-five million dollars. It is said that the bridge is constructed so that if it were destroyed by an enemy, the whole mass would sink to the bottom of the harbor and leave the channel unobstructed. In the picture above we are looking toward the east—away from the Pacific.

ing down from the north and the San Joaquin (sān wa-kēn') from the south. Near the center they meet and flow out through a break in the mountains to join the ocean at the Golden Gate, the name we give to the entrance to San Francisco harbor—the third greatest harbor in the world and our nation's great doorway to the Pacific and the Far East. Ocean-going vessels can mount these streams to Sacramento, and to Stockton, eighty-eight miles up the San Joaquin.

### A Busy Capital

The rivers carry a thriving trade, for many roads—railroads, automobile highways, and airways—meet at Sacramento, the capital city. Here are the largest railway shops in the world, as well as canneries, flour mills, meat-packing establishments, and other factories—many hundreds of them all together. The San Joaquin too is a busy stream. Over fifty crops—onions, potatoes, fruit, and grain—are raised commercially around Stockton alone, and the city has numerous factories besides. The San Joaquin Valley grows all sorts of winter vegetables to be shipped on fast trains east—for five transcontinental railway lines enter California.

Everywhere in the Great Central Valley is

a network of irrigation ditches, for the moist west winds from the Pacific drop much of their water on the western slopes of the Coast Range, and the Great Central Valley is very dry. But the thriving crops seem to ask no questions. With the warm sun overhead and with plenty of water from the great dams and the Sierras, they grow all the year round, and the great tractors work all night long—with giant headlights—to cultivate them. The valley is like a gigantic factory. Different localities have each their own specialties. Prunes are grown in the Santa Clara Valley. Raisin grapes thrive around Fresno (frēz'nō), the greatest center for dried fruits in the world; wine grapes grow at Sonoma and in the Napa (nāp'ā) Valley, where Germans, Swiss, and Italians work in the vineyards—as they did at home—and the great wine cellars run far into the mountain's heart.

### Along the Sacramento

Islands in the delta of the Sacramento produce ninety percent of the world's asparagus; and rice is sowed by airplane in fields farther up the river. Not far from the city of Sacramento cherries grow abundantly. Petaluma (pēt'ā-lōō'mā) raises chickens and sells fresh eggs; apples grow north of San

## THE HISTORY OF CALIFORNIA

Francisco, around Sebastopol (sê-bās'tô-pôl) and Sonoma, hops along the Russian River, and fine olives at Corning.

All up the northwest coast the giant redwoods and numerous other trees furnish lumber to go all over the world, and Eureka (û-rê'ká), in the same section, specializes in dairying and has fine woolen mills. California ranks next to Oregon in the amount of her standing timber, and in 1944 was third among the states in the amount of timber cut.

### Our Only Volcano

This northern country, which is bleak and barren when one gets into the lava fields farther inland, is full of game, and the streams abound in fish, of which salmon is perhaps the most tempting to the sportsman. Here furs are trapped and some sheep are raised—and here tourists come vacationing, perhaps to see Mount Lassen, the one active volcano in the United States. It was in eruption as lately as 1921. Beautiful Mount Shasta was once a volcano, but its fires are now quite dead.

The earth in the Great Valley produces many things besides crops. Oil and natural gas are found in Fresno County and Kings County, as well as in many other places in California. Only Texas produces more. The gold mined in the grassy foothills east of the valley and dredged from the streams still gives California the right to her title of the Golden State. But other sections too produce minerals. Natural gasoline, cement, sand and gravel, stone, clay and clay products, borax, gold, salt, mercury, magnesium compounds, zinc, copper, lime, tungsten, lead, talc, and iron bring yearly at least a million dollars apiece. Gypsum, silver, pumice, chromite, calcium chloride, manganese ore, and a little mica and asbestos help to swell the value of the entire mineral output to well over \$500,000,000 a year—the third largest in the nation.

Fisheries pay well, especially tuna and the sardines brought in to Del Monte (dêl môn'tê) and canned there. Abalone (ăb'ă-lô'nê) shell is valued for ornaments.

We should have badly misled you if we allowed you to think that all California's crops are to be found in the Great Valley.

Even the desert yields abundantly, for California leads all states in the amount of irrigated land. Water from the Colorado River has been carried to the desert in the Imperial Valley, down in the southeast corner of the state. There, in one of the most fertile spots in the United States—and also one of the hottest—melons are tended by Mexican and Japanese laborers, to be sold all over the country. Farther north irrigation has turned the desert Coachella (kô'ă-chêl'ă) Valley into a grove where dates grow—and the finest grapefruit in California. All over southern California, wherever moisture can be found—for without irrigation the region is practically a desert—oranges, grapefruit, lemons, walnuts, and almonds stand in vast groves, and garden crops are raised for shipment east. Acres of flowers—orchids, violets, gardenias—are cut, and many are sent to New York by airplane. Besides the crops we have listed, corn, oats, wheat, barley, sorghums, sugar beets, flaxseed, cotton, hay, sweet potatoes, beans, peaches, pears, and figs are all important.

### What Makes the Desert?

But what is there about California, you may ask, that should make the state so dry? It is, as we have said, in part the work of the western mountain range, but in the south it is explained by the fact that in summer the state lies within the belt of the northeast trade winds. California relies on the moisture-laden west winds for rainfall, and when these fail, the sun laps up every particle of water. The winds from the Pacific keep the climate even in temperature, and water the western slopes of the Coast Range and the tops of the Sierras with lavish hand. Here vegetation of all kinds is exuberant; the giant redwoods grow in the lower altitudes and the still greater sequoias on the high eastern chain. Elsewhere we have described those wonderful trees.

But the land behind the ranges and to the south of them is very dry except in the rainy season, in winter. Then rushing torrents carve the mountains' flanks into steep canyons—sometimes 5,000 feet deep—with beautifully chiseled masses rising between. The wet and dry seasons are the principal

---

## THE HISTORY OF CALIFORNIA

---

seasonal changes in California's year, though the temperature in the south is much higher in summer than in winter. The great cry of the California farmer is for water, and his profits largely depend upon the price of the electricity he must use to pump the water over his fields. The Great Central Valley gets a great deal of water from Shasta Dam. Luckily California has huge supplies of water power, and has developed more of it than any other state in the Union. She also gets electricity from Hoover Dam.

### Have You Been to California?

Of course so fine a climate has attracted pleasure seekers as well as people who come to work and those who are looking for health. Nearly 800,000 visitors go to California every year. They gather in resorts up and down the coast, and they visit the magnificent national parks, such as the Yosemite (yô-sēm'î-tê) and the Sequoia (sê-kwoi'â), with their breath-taking scenery. They go to lovely Lake Tahoe (tä'hô), 6,225 feet high, or to Death Valley, with its amazing desert coloring. Ten percent of the visitors stay, to swell the state's fast-growing population. Los Angeles now covers more space than any other city in the world. San Francisco, too, has grown like a mushroom—with humming factories and bustling docks for importing Hawaiian sugar for its refineries, and silk and other goods from the Orient. Los Angeles improved her harbor a few years ago and now has a thriving trade in silk and rubber, for which she sends away vast stores of oil and cotton in exchange. One of her most flourishing industries is the making of moving pictures at Hollywood. San Diego too has a good harbor, and is a United States naval base.

It is natural that California should have turned more and more to manufactures. For the state has all sorts of raw products—minerals, lumber, fruits, and farm crops—and has developed plenty of electric power, together with excellent facilities for shipping. World War II speeded a growth that had been going on for a long time. The country now needed a great many things in a hurry, and this lucky state was a good place for making them. Airplane factories sprang up there

like mushrooms—and other war plants, too. To-day manufacturing is the state's chief source of income. Her factories make many sorts of things, but the most important are food products, iron and steel products, ships, airplanes, petroleum products, clothing, chemicals, and articles made of wood, of rubber, and of plastics. In all this growth the state has had plenty of workers. Between 1940 and 1948 her population increased by over forty-five percent.

Many of California's people are foreign-born—from everywhere on earth. At one time Japanese and Chinese came in large numbers, but California feared a race problem and kept them out for many years. Nowadays much of the work in the fields is done by seasonal pickers called "fruit tramps"

respectable, industrious people who begin with the season in the south and work north, picking the crops as the season advances. These workers suffered sadly in the economic depression of the 1930's.

The state has made great strides in education, has excellent public schools, with nearly a hundred thousand miles of roads for the students to use in going to and fro. The University of California at Berkeley, with a branch at Los Angeles, is the largest in the world, and the California Institute of Technology, at Pasadena (päs'â-dê'nä), is one of our country's finest scientific schools. Leland Stanford University, at Palo Alto (pa'lô al'tô), is another famous institution. Californians are trying to produce a race of men as superior as their fine surroundings.

### The Land of Flowers

Beautiful public buildings, beautiful homes, gardens, and parks are common everywhere in those parts of the state where people live. Many of the houses are of Spanish type, with flowers clambering up to the roof. Flowers grow so lavishly that in the spring thousands upon thousands of acres—especially around Bakersfield and Arvin—are a solid mass of color. The sight is breath-taking in beauty. In spring even the desert is carpeted with delicate blossoms. So California is not only the Golden State—it is the land of flowers.

## CALIFORNIA

AREA: 158,693 square miles 2nd in rank.

**LOCATION:** California, one of the Pacific states, lies between 32° 30' and 42° N. Lat. and between 114° and 124° 29' W. Long. It is bounded on the north by Oregon, on the east by Nevada and Arizona, on the south by Mexico, and on the west by the Pacific Ocean.

**PHYSICAL FEATURES:** Lengthwise through some two-thirds of California run two great mountain ranges, the Coast Range, which lies near the ocean, and the Sierra Nevadas, which are near the eastern border. Between the two is a long and fertile valley, which is closed in at the north and south, where the two ranges meet. In the north the Sierra Nevadas merge with a mountain mass known as the Klamath Mountains, which reach into California from Oregon. In the south the Sierras swerve to the west before they end a little north of the southern extremity of the Coast Range. Of the two mountain chains the Coast Range is a good deal the lower, though it reaches heights of 8,000 ft. The Sierra Nevadas are much more rugged, and rear their granite tops several thousand feet higher. In them are eleven summits of more than 14,000 ft.; Mt. Whitney (14,495 ft.) is the highest point in the United States proper. Even the mountain passes are from 6,000 to over 11,000 ft. high. The eastern face of these mountains is exceedingly steep, for the range was formed by the elevation of all the rocks that lay on the western side of a giant crack in the earth's surface. The western slopes are gradual, and since they get a great deal of rain, streams have carved on them numerous canyons that are sometimes as much as 2,000 ft. deep. In many cases glaciers too have helped the streams in this work. The finest of the canyons are those of the Merced (150 m. long), Kings, American, and Tuolumne (155 m. long) rivers. Throughout the Sierras the scenery is very fine. The Coast Range, though not so magnificent, has many charming valleys, and along most of the shore comes down to the sea in fine rocky cliffs and headlands. A large number of short streams carry off the heavy rainfall on its western slopes. Only in the south is there a coastal plain, and that a narrow one. All together California has 1,000 miles of coast. In southern California the mountains all belong to what are known as the Basin Ranges; these are short ridges lying north and south and rising from fairly level plains. The Basin Ranges are found over a large area in the Western United States. Their average height in California is from 5,000 to 7,000 ft., though certain peaks are over 10,000 and one over 11,000 ft.

The Central Valley of California, between the Coast Range and the Sierras, is about 450 miles long and 70 miles wide. It is drained by the Sacramento River (382 m. long) and the San Joaquin (250 m. long), which finally join and empty their waters into the bay at San Francisco. They find their way to the ocean through the famous Golden Gate, the entrance to San Francisco harbor. The Sacramento comes down from the north, and on its way receives the Feather (100 m. long) and the American, streams that drain the western slopes of the northern Sierras. The San Joaquin, which comes up from the south, brings water from the western slopes of the central Sierras, where it is fed by the Tuolumne, Merced, and other rivers. The southern Sierras are drained by the Kings and Kern (200 m. long) rivers into Tulare Lake, Buena Vista Lake, and Kern Lake. In very wet seasons Tulare Lake overflows into the San Joaquin River. No permanent streams make their way down the eastern slopes of the Coast Range, for there is little rainfall there and forests—which might store the water—have been cut away. The fertile Central Valley gets water from the Sierras and from Friant, Shasta, and other dams.

The country lying east of the mountains in California is mostly desert. In the northeast corner of the state is a barren region that has been overflowed by lava, from which rise steep mountain ranges. Volcanic disturbances are still going on there. Mount Lassen, in the mountains to the west of the lava plains, has been lately in eruption, and there are a good many other signs of hidden fire. Beautiful Mount Shasta, a little farther north, is an extinct volcano. The whole of California is subject to earthquakes. The waters that gather in the extreme northeast corner of the state have no way of reaching the sea, but flow into a number of alkaline lakes that shrink greatly in the dry season. Goose Lake, a body of fresh water lying partly in Oregon, is drained by the Pit River (280 m. long) into the Sacramento. Through the northwest corner of the state flows the Klamath River (250 m. long), which rises in Oregon and enters the Pacific.

The country east of the Sierras in the central and southern parts of the state lies almost entirely in the Great Basin region of the United States, and except for a very small area that is drained by small streams into the Colorado River, has no outlet to the sea. Most of the streams disappear in what are known as "sinks"—that is, they wander through the sands and finally vanish beneath the surface. A few come to an end in salt lakes, such as Mono Lake, Owens Lake, and Salton Sea. East of the mountains in the central part of the state lies Owens Valley, about 15 miles wide and 120 m. long. It is drained by Owens River (180 m. long) into beautiful Owens Lake, which lies at the foot of the highest of the Sierras. Owens River supplies large amounts of water to Los Angeles. To the east of Owens Lake rise the lofty peaks of the Inyo Range, and still farther to the east is beautiful Death Valley, a magnificently colored desert some 50 m. long and 5 to 10 m. wide. It is famous for being the lowest point in the United States—280 ft. below sea level. In it the Amargosa River, which rises in Nevada, comes to an end. Death Valley has long been a source of borax and other minerals deposited there by the evaporating waters. South and southeast of the lower end of the Sierras is the Mohave Desert, with an average elevation of about 2,000 ft.; and south of that is a region—not very distinctly outlined—which is known as the Colorado Desert.

East of the mountains in the southernmost part of the state most of the drainage is into the Salton Sea, or Salton Sink, the lowest part of a large tract that lies below sea level. In 1904, the Colorado River, which forms the state's boundary with Arizona, found an unexpected outlet through the Imperial Canal, built on Mexican soil to bring water from the Colorado River to the Imperial Valley, a very fertile section lying south of Salton Sink in California. The great river flooded the whole region, and when it was finally brought within bounds in 1907, left 400 square miles of water in the Salton Sea. Most of this has since evaporated. The whole section, including Salton Sea and the land south of it, was once covered by the Gulf of California. The Colorado River deposited a layer of rich silt here, with the result that the soil is now extremely fertile to a depth, it is said, of two hundred feet. The climate is very warm, and garden and fruit crops can be harvested every month in the year. Our national government provided for the building of the All-American Canal near the state's southern boundary but on United States soil, to replace the Imperial Canal. It brings water westward from the Colorado, across which the Imperial Dam has been built at Yuma, Arizona. This is one of the largest irrigation canals in the country, and cost \$38,000,000 to build. It has given to the fertile Imperial Valley a much larger and more dependable water supply.

California's finest lake is Tahoe (23 m. long and 13 m. wide), which lies in the Sierras at an elevation



## CALIFORNIA—Continued

of 6,225 ft. It is partly in Nevada, between the easternmost of the Sierras and one of the Basin Ranges, and around it are peaks that tower four and five thousand feet above it. In places it is 1,500 ft. deep, and everywhere the water is amazingly pure. Clear Lake, another fine body of water, lies in the Coast Range. All together California has 2,205 square miles of water, and large areas of irrigated land. Of her rivers the Sacramento may be navigated for 180 miles and the San Joaquin for 88 miles. The state's average elevation is 2,900 ft.

**CLIMATE:** California has every variety of climate, depending upon altitude and the position of the mountain ranges. In general it is much milder and has many fewer extremes than places in the same latitude on the eastern coast, for winds from the Pacific keep it from being cold in winter except on the tops of mountains, and prevent extremes of heat along the coast in summer. The deserts, which are cut off from these winds by the high mountain ranges, get exceedingly hot; those in the southeast are the warmest region in the United States, if not in the world. Here the temperature goes to 129° F. in the shade and the normal annual mean is as high as 78.4°. On the other hand the high Sierras are never very warm, and in winter the thermometer there goes as low as 36° below zero. The normal annual mean in this region is as low as 37°. Elsewhere in the state the winters are always mild, and in most places the heat of summer is not so uncomfortable as one would suppose, because the air is for the most part very dry. Along the coast sea breezes spring up every day to relieve the heat—a great boon to southern California, which is much warmer than the northern part of the state. San Francisco has a mean January temperature of 50°, and a mean July temperature of 58°—in other words, the winters there are only a little cooler than the summers, which are almost never hot. The record high there is 101°, the record low 27°.

Rainfall too varies greatly in different parts of the state, and often at points that are close together. The western slopes of the Coast Range and the Sierras have a heavy rainfall, which increases with the altitude. The northwest counties get as much as 60 or 70 inches a year, and there are points that may sometimes have 125 inches in a year. This heavy fall shades off as one goes south, until at San Diego there is only 10 inches a year and in the southeastern desert a good deal less than that, for in some years places there have no rain at all. California lies in the path of the trade winds. The state has a rainy season, which comes in winter, and a dry season during the summer and early fall. But north of San Francisco, and in fact along the whole Pacific coast, there are heavy fogs that come in from the sea at night and leave their moisture on the earth and on vegetation. This amounts to daily showers over the whole region, even in the dry season. The snow that gathers in winter on the high mountain tops is of great importance in watering the state, for as it melts in summer it feeds countless streams that find their way to the valley to water the crops. California has a climate that is very beneficial in the treatment of certain diseases, for all through the south there is a great deal of sunshine, and the dry air of the desert is prescribed for tuberculosis, arthritis, sinus infections, and similar disorders.

**INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING:** Armstrong Schools of Business at Berkeley; the California Institute of Technology at Pasadena; the University of California at Berkeley, with a branch at Los Angeles, one at Santa Barbara, and others elsewhere; Chapman College at Whittier; Chico State College at Chico; Pomona College and Scripps College for Women, both part of the Claremont Colleges, Inc., at Claremont; College of the Holy Names at Oakland; College of the Immacu-

late Heart at Los Angeles; the Dominican College at San Rafael; Fresno State College at Fresno; George Pepperdine College at Los Angeles; Humboldt State College at Arcata; La Verne College at La Verne; Loyola University at Los Angeles; Mills College at Oakland; Mount St. Mary's College at Los Angeles; Occidental College at Los Angeles; College of the Pacific at Stockton; Pacific Union College at Angwin; Pasadena College at Pasadena; the University of Redlands at Redlands; St. Mary's College at St. Mary's; San Diego State College at San Diego; San Francisco State College at San Francisco; the University of San Francisco at San Francisco; San Jose State College at San Jose; Santa Clara College at Santa Clara; the University of Southern California at Los Angeles; Leland Stanford Jr. University at Palo Alto; Westmont College at Santa Barbara; Whittier College at Whittier; and normal and technical colleges. The world's largest telescope is on Mt. Palomar.

**INSTITUTIONS FOR THE PROMOTION OF THE ARTS:** The Henry E. Huntington Library and Art Gallery, one of the most famous collections in the world, is at Pasadena.

**CHARITIES AND CORRECTION:** California has throughout the state numerous institutions devoted to public health and to the correction of delinquents. Among them are the Industrial Home for Adult Blind, Sonoma State Home, Agnews State Hospital, Mendocino State Hospital, Napa State Hospital, Norwalk State Hospital, Pacific Colony, Patton State Hospital, Stockton State Hospital, Preston School of Industry, Whittier State School for boys, Ventura School for girls, Folsom State Prison, and San Quentin State Prison. The state inflicts capital punishment by administering a death-dealing gas.

**POLITICAL FACTS:** California is governed under the constitution of 1879, which has been largely amended. Laws are made by a legislature consisting of two houses: the Senate, made up of forty members elected for four years; and the Assembly, made up of eighty members elected for two years. Sessions of the legislature are held yearly and are divided into two halves, the first half lasting thirty days and devoted to the introduction of bills, and the second half, of equal length, coming thirty days later. No bill may be introduced during the second session except by a two-thirds vote of the members.

The executive branch is headed by the governor, who, together with the members of his staff, is elected for four years, with no bar to reelection.

The judiciary is headed by the supreme court made up of a chief justice and six associates, all elected for twelve years. This court is divided into two departments, which may sit separately or as one court. Each county has a superior court whose members are elected for six years. There are such inferior courts as the legislature sees fit to establish. No judge may receive his salary while any case submitted ninety days before is still unattended to.

Women were given the vote in 1911. At present a voter must be a citizen of the United States, must be at least twenty-one years of age, and must have lived in the state one year, in the county 90 days, and in the voting precinct 30 days. People who cannot read and write and those who have been convicted of specified crimes are not allowed to vote. Certain Orientals are excluded from citizenship.

Elections are held according to a primary law which is a simplification of the direct-primary law. Nominations other than by primaries must be made by petition, with a certificate required for each signer. The initiative and referendum are in full force, and all officers may be recalled, including judges.

## CALIFORNIA—Continued

Local government is organized in 58 counties, with uniform laws. Cities of sufficient size may institute the commission form of government.

Chinese or Mongolian labor is prohibited to corporations formed under the laws of the state but the law is not enforced. There are strict measures for the regulation of trusts. A public-utilities commission has general control over the public utilities of the state.

The capital of the state is at Sacramento.

**PARKS:** California has a rapidly growing system of state parks and four large national parks. King's Canyon National Park in Tulare and Fresno counties covers 707 square miles. It includes the area formerly known as General Grant National Park, the home of the famous General Grant Sequoia, the Nation's Christmas Tree, and some of the wildest and most beautiful scenery in the United States, a region of massive peaks and lakes 10,000 to 14,000 feet above sea level.

Lassen Volcanic National Park, in Lassen County, covers 161 square miles and contains Mount Lassen, the only volcano which has recently been active in the United States proper. Mild eruptions occurred between 1914 and 1917; and the belching of smoke and steam, the hot springs, boiling lakes, and mud volcanoes all give evidence of intense internal heat, although in general Mount Lassen would seem to be a dying volcano.

Sequoia National Park, in Tulare and Inyo counties, covers 602 square miles and preserves many of the most magnificent giant trees in the country. The General Sherman Tree is the largest of them all, and is probably the oldest living thing in the world. We have described it elsewhere. The park is also famous for the grandeur of its mountain scenery and for the refuge it provides for the mule deer and other forms of wild life.

Yosemite National Park, in Tuolumne and Mariposa counties, covers 1,182 square miles. The most celebrated part of the park is the Yosemite Valley, world-famous for its lofty granite walls, its precipices, and its thundering waterfalls. Famous though it is, it occupies only some 8 square miles of this vast region of countless beauties.

**MONUMENTS:** Death Valley National Monument, in Inyo County, reaches 280 feet below sea level, and contains the lowest point in the United States. We have described this beautiful desert on other pages. From its barren reaches snow-crowned Mount Whitney, the highest point in our country, is visible in the lofty Sierra Nevada Range to the west.

Pinnacles National Monument, covering 12,818 acres in San Benito County, contains many unusual formations in volcanic rock, among them tall spires and extensive caves.

Lava Beds National Monument, in Siskiyou County, contains interesting formations in the beds of lava that were once poured forth by long-extinct volcanoes. The monument's numerous caves were once occupied by the Indians.

Muir Woods National Monument, in Marin County, is named for John Muir (1838-1914), the famous naturalist and author who, though he had been born in Scotland, spent most of his long life in Wisconsin and in Alaska and the Far West. It was largely through his efforts that our government was led to establish the Yosemite and other national parks and to embark on its conservation policy. In the grove that bears his name are some of the tallest and most beautiful of the sequoias.

El Cabrillo National Monument covers half an acre in San Diego and commemorates the discovery of California.

Channel Islands National Monument off Santa Barbara includes parts of Santa Barbara and Anacapa Islands, which contain many interesting fossils.

Devil Postpile National Monument, not far from Yosemite National Park, consists of peculiar, six-sided volcanic rock columns.

Joshua Tree National Monument, near White Water in Riverside County, has many desert plants, notably the Joshua tree, one of the most spectacular features of the western deserts.

California has 24,791,604 acres of national forest.

**GAME AND BIRD RESERVATIONS:** The Clear Lake, Colusa, Havasu Lake, Imperial, Lower Klamath, Sacramento, Salton Sea, Sutter, and Tule Lake refuges protect a great variety of birds. The Havasu Lake and Imperial refuges protect bighorn sheep, beavers, and muskrats.

**NAME:** California received its name from the Spaniards. The title may have been suggested by a Spanish romance by Montalvo published in 1510; in that work the name "California" was given by the author to a mythical island. The meaning of the term is in doubt. It may have come from the words "kali forno," a phrase used by the Indians of Lower California and meaning "high hills," "mountains," or "native land." Other scholars have cited various possible Greek derivations for the word, and also suggest that it may come from the Latin words "calida fornax," meaning "hot furnace."

**NICKNAMES:** Because of its vast stores of gold California has been called the El Dorado State—literally, "the gilded state"; the sixteenth-century Spaniards used the phrase as the name of an imaginary city or country extremely rich in gold and supposedly situated somewhere in the interior of South America. Because of its huge grape crop California is called the Grape State. Its rich gold mines have given it the title of the Land of Gold. The state motto has led people to call it the Eureka State.

The people of California are called Gold Diggers, a reference to the great days of the gold rush of '49.

**STATE FLOWER:** Golden poppy (*Eschscholtzia*)—commonly called the California poppy.

**STATE SONG:** "I Love You, California," with words by F. B. Silverwood and music by A. F. Frankenstein.

**STATE FLAG:** A white field bearing a red stripe and a single red star in the upper left-hand corner; in the center of the white field is a California grizzly bear in brown. This flag, known as the "bear flag," was adopted in 1911.

**STATE MOTTO:** "Eureka," a Greek word meaning "I have found it"; the motto alludes to the discovery of gold in California.

**STATE BIRD:** California valley quail (*Lophortyx californicus*).

**INTERESTING FACTS:** California observes New Year's Day, Lincoln's Birthday, Washington's Birthday, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Columbus Day, Election Day, Armistice Day, Thanksgiving Day, Christmas Day, and Admission Day on September 9.

California has a large number of Indian reservations: Fort Independence, Colorado River, Chemehuevi, Fort Mohave, Fort Yuma, Hoopa Valley, Rancherias, Augustine, Cabazon, Cahuilla, Campo, Capitan Grande,

## CALIFORNIA—Continued

Cosumt, Cuyapaipe, Inaja, La Jolla, Laguna, La Posta, Los Coyotes, Manzanita, Mesa Grande, Mission Creek, Morongo, Pala, Palm Springs, Pauma, Pechanga, Ramona, Rincon, San Pasquel, San Manuel, Santa Rosa, Santa Ysabel, Santa Ynez, Soboba, Sycuan, Torres Martinez, Twenty-nine Palms, Viejas (Baron Long), Fort Bidwell, Round Valley, and Tule River, together with Indian colonies at Death Valley, Indian Ranch, Owen Valley, Red Hill, Sunland, and West Bishop. On these reservations are members of the Paiute, Shoshone, Washo, Yuma, Hoopa Valley, Klamath, Miami, Mission, Kern River, Maidu, Papago, Pit River, Pomo, Tejon, Wailaki, Whilkut, Wiktrami, Wintu, Yawilmani, and Yuki tribes. The Sherman Institute for Indians is in Riverside County.

Every New Year's Day, Pasadena, one of the greatest winter resorts in the world, holds a Tournament of Roses. On that day the famous football game between the East and the West is played in the Rose Bowl, a huge amphitheater that seats 52,000 people. Other cities have festivals at various times.

In 1937 the longest suspension bridge in the world

was completed across the Golden Gate in San Francisco Harbor.

At Hollywood, a part of Los Angeles, is the center of our country's moving-picture industry.

In 1937 the United States Reclamation Service began work on the Central Valley Water Conservation Project. At the northern end of the valley, on the Sacramento River, are the Shasta and Keswick Dams. At the southern end, on the San Joaquin, is the Friant Dam. These dams are part of a vast flood control and irrigation project affecting an area larger than England. Shasta and Keswick together are capable of producing over a billion and a half kilowatt hours of electrical energy each year.

California's Indians and her inhabitants of Mexican origin still cling to the interesting "fiestas," or festivals, which they have long held to celebrate religious and other events. Such occasions are a source of never-fading interest to tourists.

On the rocky island of Alcatraz, in the harbor at San Francisco, is a famous federal prison.

### Population of state 1940, 6,907,387

#### Counties

Alameda (D5)	513,011
Alpine (F4)	323
Amador (E4)	8,973
Butte (D3)	22,810
Calaveras (E4)	8,221
Colusa (C3)	9,788
Contra Costa (D5)	100,450
Del Norte (B1)	4,745
El Dorado (F4)	13,229
Fresno (F6)	178,565
Glenn (C3)	12,195
Humboldt (B2)	45,812
Imperial (K9)	59,740
Inyo (H6)	7,625
Kern (G7)	135,124
Kings (K6)	35,168
Lake (C3)	8,069
Lassen (E2)	14,479
Los Angeles (G8)	2,785,643
Madera (F5)	23,314
Marin (C4)	52,907
Mariposa (F5)	5,605
Mendocino (B3)	27,864
Merced (E5)	46,988
Modoc (E1)	8,713
Mono (G5)	2,299
Monterey (D6)	73,032
Napa (C4)	28,503
Nevada (E3)	19,283
Orange (H9)	130,760
Placer (E3)	28,108
Plumas (E5)	11,548
Riverside (J9)	105,524
Sacramento (D4)	170,333
San Benito (D6)	11,392

San Bernardino (J8)	161,108
San Diego (J9)	289,348
San Francisco (C5)	634,536
San Joaquin (D5)	154,207
San Luis Obispo (F7)	33,246
San Mateo (C5)	111,782
Santa Barbara (E8)	70,555
Santa Clara (D5)	174,949
Santa Cruz (C5)	45,057
Shasta (C2)	28,800
Sierra (F3)	3,025
Siskiyou (C1)	28,598
Solano (D4)	49,118
Sonoma (C4)	69,052
Stanislaus (D5)	74,866
Sutter (D3)	18,680

Tehama (C2)	14,316
Trinity (H2)	3,970
Tulare (G6)	107,152
Tuolumne (E5)	10,887
Ventura (F8)	69,685
Yolo (D4)	27,243
Yuba (D3)	17,034

#### Cities and Towns

[Places marked with an asterisk were classified as urban in 1940]

Alameda * (C5)	36,256
Allany * (D5)	12,493
Alhambra *	
(G8)	38,935
Alturas (E1)	2,090
Amador (E4)	249
Anaheim * (H9)	11,031
Angels (E4)	1,163
Antioch * (D5)	5,106
Arcaha * (G8)	9,122
Arcaha (A2)	1,855
Arroyo Grande (E7)	1,090
Atherton (C5)	1,908
Atwater (E5)	1,235
Auburn * (D4)	4,013
Avalon (G9)	1,637
Azusa * (H8)	5,209

Bakersfield *	
(G7)	29,252
Banning * (H9)	3,874
Beaumont * (F4)	2,208
Bell * (E3)	11,264
Belmont (C5)	1,229
Bemeta (D4)	2,419
Berkeley * (C5)	85,517
Beverly Hills *	
(G8)	26,823
Biggs (D3)	547
Bishop (G5)	1,490
Blue Lake (A2)	503
Blythe (L9)	2,355
Brawley * (K10)	11,718
Brca * (G9)	2,567
Burbank * (G8)	34,337
Burlingame *	
(C5)	15,940
Calexico * (K10)	5,415
Calipatria (K9)	1,799
Calistoga (C4)	1,124
Carmel-by-the-Sea * (D6)	2,837
Ceres (E5)	1,332
Chico * (D3)	9,287
Chino * (H8)	4,204
Chula Vista *	
(H10)	5,138
Claremont *	
(H8)	3,057
Cloverdal (B4)	809
Clovis (F6)	1,626
Coalinga * (E6)	5,026
Colfax (E3)	794
Colton * (H8)	9,686
Colusa (C3)	2,285
Compton * (G9)	16,198
Concord (C5)	1,373
Corcoran (F6)	2,092
Corning (C3)	1,472
Corona * (H9)	8,764
Coronado *	
(H10)	6,932
Corte Madera (C4)	1,098
Covina * (H8)	3,049
Crescent City (A1)	1,363
Culver City *	
(G8)	8,976
Daly City * (C5)	9,625
Davis (D4)	1,672
Delano * (F7)	4,573
Dinuba * (F6)	3,790
Dixon (D4)	1,108
Dorris (D1)	863

Dos Palos (E5)	978
Dunsmuir (C1)	2,359
El Cajon (J10)	1,471
El Centro *	
(K10)	10,017
El Cerrito * (D5)	6,137
El Monte * (G8)	4,746
El Segundo *	
(G9)	3,738
Elsinore (H9)	1,552
Emeryville * (C5)	2,521
Escondido *	
(H9)	4,560
Eureka * (A2)	17,055
Exeter * (F6)	3,883
Fairfield (C4)	1,312
Ferndale (A2)	901
Fillmore * (G8)	3,252
Firebaugh (E6)	704
Fort Bragg *	
(B3)	3,235
Fort Jones (C1)	360
Fortuna (A2)	1,413
Fowler (F6)	1,531
Fresno * (F6)	60,685
Fullerton * (H9)	10,442
Gilroy * (D5)	3,615
Glendale * (G8)	82,582
Glendora * (H8)	2,822
Grass Valley * (D3)	5,701
Gridley (D3)	2,338
Gustine (E5)	1,355
Hanford * (F6)	8,234
Hawthorne *	
(D3)	8,263
Hayward * (C5)	6,736
Healdsburg *	
(C4)	2,507
Hemet * (J9)	2,595
Hercules (C4)	343
Hermosa Beach * (G9)	7,197
Hillsborough * (C5)	2,747
Hollister * (D6)	3,881
Holtville (K10)	1,772
Huntington Beach *	
(H9)	3,738
Huntington Park * (G9)	28,648
Imperial (K10)	1,493
Indio (J9)	2,296

# CALIFORNIA—Continued

Inglewood * (G9) 30,114	Mount Shasta (C1) . 1,618	Riverside * (H9) 34,696	Sausalito * (C5) 3,540
Isleton (D4) . . 1,837		Rocklin (D4) 795	Seal Beach (H9) 1,553
Jackson (E4) . . . 2,024	Napa * (C4) . . 7,740	Roseville * (D4) 6,653	Sebastopol (C4) 1,856
King City (D6) 1,768	National City * (H10) 10,344	Ross (A1) 1,751	Selma * (F6) 3,667
Kingsburg (F6) 1,504	Needles * (L8) 3,624	Sacramento * (D4) 105,958	Sierra Madre * (G8) 4,581
Laguna Beach * (F4) 4,460	Nevada City (D3) 2,445	St. Helena (C4) 1,758	Signal Hill * (G8) 3,184
La Habra (H9) 2,499	Newman (D5) 1,214	Salinas * (D6) 11,586	Soledad (D6) 861
Lakeport (C3) 1,490	Newport Beach * (H9) 4,438	San Anselmo * (C5) 5,790	Sonoma (C4) 1,158
La Mesa * (H10) 3,925	N. Sacramento * (D4) 3,053	San Bernardino * (H8) 43,646	Sonora (E4) 2,257
Larkspur (A2) 1,558		San Bruno * (C5) 6,519	South Gate * (G8) 26,945
La Verne * (G8) 3,092	Oakdale * (E5) 2,592	San Buenaventura * (F8) 13,264	South Pasadena (G8) 14,356
Lemoore (F6) 1,711	Oakland * (C5) 302,163	San Carlos * (C5) 3,520	South San Francisco * (C5) 6,629
Lincoln (D4) 2,044	Oceanside * (H9) 4,651	San Clemente (B2) 479	Stockton * (D5) 54,714
Lindsay * (F6) 4,397	Ojai (F8) 1,622	San Diego * (H10) 203,341	Suisun City (C4) 706
Livermore * (D5) 2,885	Ontario * (H8) 14,197	San Fernando * (G8) 9,094	Sunnyvale * (C5) 4,377
Livingston (E5) 895	Orange * (G9) 7,901	San Francisco * (C5) 634,536	Sussexville (E2) 1,575
Lodi * (D4) 11,079	Orland (C3) 1,366	San Gabriel * (G8) 11,867	Sutter Creek (E4) 1,134
Lompoc * (E8) 3,379	Oroville * (D3) 4,421	Sanger * (F6) 4,017	Taft * (F7) 3,205
Long Beach * (G9) 164,271	Oxnard * (F8) 8,519	San Jacinto * (F9) 1,356	Tehachapi (C7) 1,264
Los Angeles * (G8) 1,504,277	Pacific Grove * (D6) 6,249	San Jose * (D5) 68,457	Tehama (C2) 175
Los Banos (E5) 2,214	Palm Springs (J9) 3,434	San Juan (D6) 678	Torrance * (D3) 9,950
Los Gatos * (C5) 3,597	Palo Alto * (C5) 16,774	San Leandro * (C5) 14,601	Tracy * (D5) 4,056
Loyalton (E3) 925	Pasadena * (G8) 81,864	San Luis Obispo * (E7) 8,881	Trinidad (A1) 94
Lynwood * (D3) 10,982	Paso Robles (F7) 3,045	San Marino * (G8) 8,175	Tulare * (F6) 8,259
	Patterson (D5) 1,109	San Mateo * (C5) 19,403	Turlock * (E5) 4,859
Madera * (E6) 6,457	Perris (H9) 1,011	San Rafael * (C5) 8,573	Ukiah * (B3) 3,731
Manhattan Beach * (G9) 6,398	Petaluma * (C4) 8,034	Santa Ana * (H9) 51,921	Upland * (H8) 6,316
Manteca (D5) 1,981	Piedmont * (C5) 9,866	Santa Barbara * (F8) 34,958	
Maricopa (F7) 670	Pinole (C5) 934	Santa Clara * (D5) 6,650	Vacaville (D4) 1,611
Martinez * (C5) 7,381	Pittsburg * (D5) 9,520	Santa Cruz * (C6) 16,896	Vallejo * (C4) 20,072
Marysville * (D3) 6,646	Placencia * (E3) 1,472	Santa Maria * (E8) 8,522	Vernon (G9) 850
Maywood * (G8) 10,731	Placer * (E4) 3,064	Santa Monica * (G9) 53,500	Visalia * (F6) 8,904
Menlo Park * (C5) 3,258	Placanton (D5) 1,278	Santa Paula * (F8) 8,986	
Merced * (E5) 10,135	Plymouth (E4) 460	Santa Rosa * (C4) 12,605	Walnut Creek (B5) 1,578
Mill Valley * (C5) 4,847	Point Arena (B4) 374		Watsonville * (D6) 8,937
Modesto * (D5) 16,379	Pomona * (H8) 23,539		Westmorland (K9) 1,010
Monrovia * (H8) 12,807	Porterville * (F6) 6,270		Whittier * (G9) 16,115
Montague (C1) 463			Williams (C3) 814
Montebello * (G8) 8,016	Red Bluff * (C2) 3,824		Willits (B3) 1,625
Monterey * (D6) 10,084	Redding * (C2) 8,109		Willows (C3) 2,215
Monterey Park * (G8) 8,531	Redlands * (H8) 14,324		Winters (D4) 1,133
Morgan Hill (D5) 1,014	Redondo Beach * (G9) 13,092		Woodlake (F6) 1,146
Mountain View * (C5) 3,946	Redwood City (C5) 12,453		Woodland * (D4) 6,637
	Reedley * (F6) 3,170		
	Rialto (H8) 1,770		Yreka City (C1) 2,185
	Richmond * (C5) 23,642		Yuba City * (D3) 1,968
	Rio Vista (D4) 1,666		

---

# *The* HISTORY of COLORADO

---

## Reading Unit No. 6

### COLORADO: THE CENTENNIAL STATE

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

#### *Interesting Facts Explained*

Why the early progress of Colorado was slow, 8 46  
When beautiful Pikes Peak was not a welcome sight, 8 47  
How Colorado got her name, 8-47  
Why the Spaniards came to Colorado, 8 48  
When gold was found, 8 48  
Why Colorado's mining towns are

now deserted, 8-50  
How coal has become the leading mineral product of the state 8-50  
When fortunes were made in farming instead of in mining, 8 51  
Irrigation, 8-51  
How Colorado has shown her wisdom, 8-52

#### *Related Material*

What were the prairies like in the early days? 7-233, 280  
What was the first important event in President Jefferson's administration? 7-204-7  
The tragedy of the American Dust Bowl, 7-455, 466  
What do the old Spanish mission buildings look like? 11-499

How did the Pueblo Indians build their cities? 7-93-95  
How are dry lands irrigated? 10-539-44  
One flag from ocean to ocean, 7-231-34  
What do we know about radium? 1-283, 9-424-26

#### *Practical Applications*

How were the desert plains and ragged hills of Colorado turned into good farm land? 8 50-51

How many states in the Union spent more money on education than Colorado in 1932? 8-52

#### *Leisure-time Activities*

PROJECT NO. 1: Draw a map of Colorado and mark on it the famous mining towns, the chief industrial towns, the mountains, and the Colorado River, 8 48,

50-52.  
PROJECT NO. 2: Make a list of the chief products of Colorado's farms, 8-51.

#### *Summary Statement*

Although Colorado was once only a backwater in the life of the nation, her mineral deposits, which are no longer so important

as they once were, helped her to move forward to the position she now holds as one of our most progressive states.

---

## THE HISTORY OF COLORADO

---

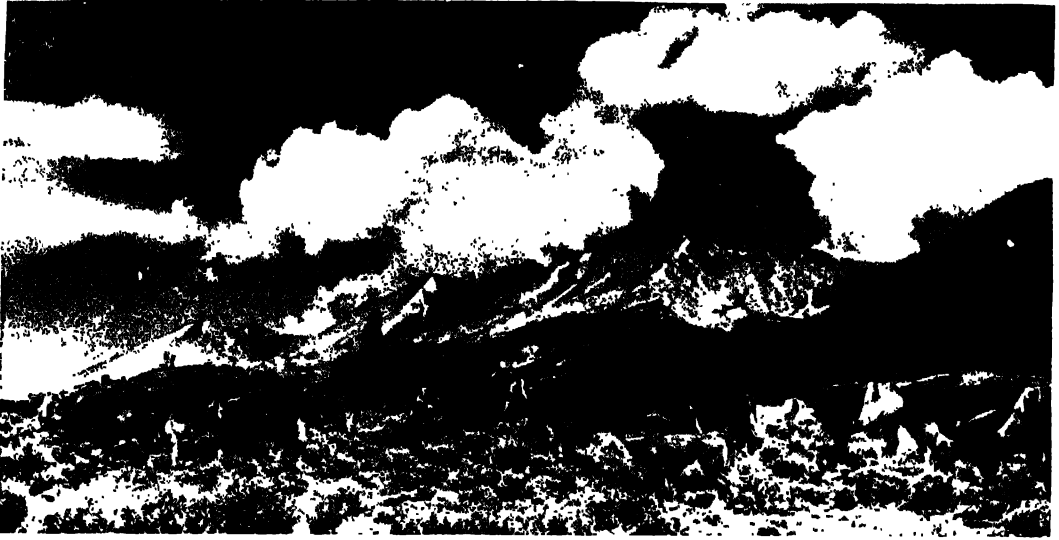


Photo by Screen Traveler from Genlreau, N Y.

To many people Colorado will always be the place where the West begins. Its wild days, to be sure, are long since past, but on the great ranges the cowboys

still round up the roving herds that feed on the sparse range grass, and against the sunset the giant mountains still rise in unimaginable splendor.

### COLORADO: *the* CENTENNIAL STATE

*The State That Entered the Union a Century after the Declaration of Independence Has Forged Ahead So Rapidly That She Is Now One of Our Most Progressive States*

**T**HE progress of a great nation along the road of civilization has sometimes been compared to the march of a great army. Steadily it moves ahead, with drums beating and flags flying and thousands of feet striking the ground in unison. But in at least one particular the comparison is not very exact. For in a good army, an army which marches proudly and confidently like the one we have described, there are no deserters and there are no eager or curious soldiers who scurry ahead of the other troops, just to see what they can see before anyone else arrives. No, in this army of ours everyone marches steadily in unbroken ranks, so that all those thousands of feet meet the dusty earth at the same instant and the whole army moves forward together.

That is why a nation advancing along her chosen path of progress is perhaps more like a mighty river than like an army. For the mass of the river does not move ahead all at once. Even in the greatest rivers

there are many thousands of little pools and quiet eddies which are either standing quite still or are moving ahead only very slowly, while the main body of the stream rolls on toward the ocean at full speed. So it is, even in the greatest of nations. Some sections of the country will make rapid progress for a time; others will stand by, quite outside the main current, moving not at all themselves or maybe even slipping backward a bit. Yet the main current of the river is still pressing on, and a careless passerby sees nothing unusual about these little backwaters. They too are part of the stream, and they too will move downstream some day. That is the way rivers flow—not all at once, but part at a time. And so we come to our story of Colorado!

During the first part of her history Colorado was one of those backwaters in the stream of the nation's progress. A little knowledge of her geography will explain how this came to be. In the eastern part of

## THE HISTORY OF COLORADO

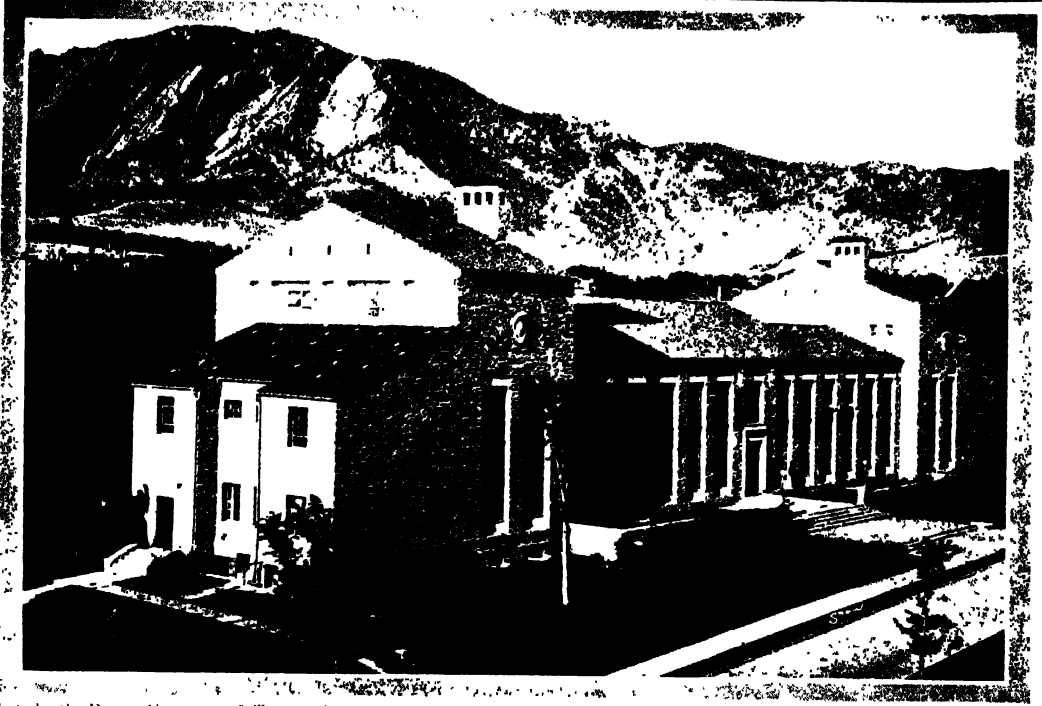


Photo by the Denver Convention & Tourists Association

The University of Colorado is at Boulder, a city perched on the edge of the Front Range of the Rockies and noted, not only for its views of rugged mountain and

canyon, but for its healthful climate as well. Above is the university's Arts Building, interestingly designed to form a part of the rugged landscape.

the state are the Great Plains—simply a continuation of the land of Kansas and Nebraska to the east—long, level, rolling plains, rising slowly to the west. But in the western part of the state these plains meet the mountains toward which they have been rising—the great Rocky Mountains. Standing out in front of those mountain masses, like a huge sentinel, is Pikes Peak, more than 14,000 feet high. Except in midsummer it is covered with a shining blanket of snow. From this peak the prairies stretch fully eight hundred unbroken miles to the Mississippi Valley. West of those great ranges is a high plateau (plā-tō'), or elevated table-land.

### The Slogan of the Forty-Niners

But in 1849 and 1850 beautiful Pikes Peak was not a welcome sight to the weary traveler who had written "California or Bust" on the side of his wagon. For it meant that the towering summits of the Rocky Mountains had to be passed, that

the hardest part of the whole journey lay just ahead. More than forty of those peaks are over fourteen thousand feet high, and some six hundred are over twelve thousand feet. Once on the other side of the Colorado peaks, the barren flats of western Colorado and Utah awaited the traveler; but even those desolate wastes were more welcome than the stony roads, steep grades, and frequent snowstorms of the mountain passes. And so, for a long time, Colorado's explorers left her to the Indians. They said that her mountains were impassable, and that her eastern regions were part of that "Great American Desert" that was so much talked about and so little looked at. As soon as a few hard-working farmers came west looking for land, the "Great American Desert" somehow became pretty good land after all. But that comes later in our story.

As we might guess from her name—which means "colored" or "red" in Spanish, and referred first of all to the Colorado River—the first explorers to reach Colorado were

## THE HISTORY OF COLORADO

Spaniards. Just as in Texas, they came north from Mexico, seeking gold or the conversion of the Indians to Christianity. During the whole of the seventeenth century Spanish explorers kept coming north; and, later, fur traders of all nationalities, French and Swiss, Spanish and American, began to make their way through these wilds in search of beaver pelts. But of course none of those men ever bothered with the hard labor of planting a settlement. In 1803 the United States, by the Louisiana Purchase, acquired the northeastern part of what is now Colorado, but not even then did settlers take an interest in the country. The explorers said the land was "useless," "uninhabitable," bad from any point of view.

Even Zebulon Pike did not do much better when he tried to climb the peak which now bears his name. He set out for its summit one morning after breakfast, expecting to reach the top and be back by lunch time. After climbing for two days, he found himself on top of one of the minor foothills at the foot of the peak. He thereupon announced that the mountain could never be climbed! And so, though Colorado was shifted about from territory to territory, though a little bit of Texas and a little bit of Mexico were added to her area, nobody ever made an honest effort to settle her. Even the Forty-Niners, who should have known better, dashed straight through the state to California, without even bothering to look

at the scenery or examine the fertile soil.

And so we come to the year 1858, with Colorado still about as little known as she had been a hundred years before. In that year we find one W. Green Russell, a man from Georgia, poking and scraping about in the flats where Cherry Creek flows into the

Platte River. It is not long before a rumor gets about that our man has discovered gold in Colorado—as he most certainly has done—and then the rush is on! Thousands of people come pouring into the state. Instead of "California or Bust" the motto becomes "Pikes Peak or Bust." Plenty of the settlers "busted," alas, and their end was tragic. But plenty of others saw Pikes Peak and managed to get between their fingers a little of the Colorado gold. In spite of the fierce Cheyenne (shī-ēn') and bold Arapahoe (ā-rāp'ā-hō) Indians—all members of the great Algonquian group—in spite of



Photo by the Colorado Association

The marble quarry shown in this picture lies above the Crystal River, and is very appropriately—near the town of Marble in western Colorado. The beautiful rock quarried here was originally a limestone, but tremendous heat and pressure have recrystallized it and turned it to marble.

dangers and hardships almost too great for flesh and blood to bear, the lure of gold drew men irresistibly to Colorado

As a result, Colorado, in one tremendous spurt, caught up with the current of national life. By about 1900 gold production had reached its highest level, with more than 1,320,000 ounces, worth over twenty-six million dollars, mined in 1902. Silver reached its highest level about 1890, with the output in the peak year of 1893 worth over \$33,400,000.

Everyone has heard the names of some of the famous Colorado mining towns and



## THE HISTORY OF COLORADO



Photo by the Colorado Springs C. of C.

Here is a view of the Cripple Creek mining district, once one of the greatest gold producers in Colorado.



Photo by the Denver Convention & Tourists Association

It has taken Colorado's capital less than a hundred years to grow from nothing into a great city. This

view of Denver shows the business section. The capitol building is in the foreground to the right.

## THE HISTORY OF COLORADO

fields of ore. Leadville, Silverton, Central City, Creede, and Cripple Creek all will be famous as long as the story of the American frontier is told. But those were not the only mining towns in Colorado's great boom days. For every one that became famous there were dozens of little towns in the back country which never were widely known. You can see their little shells to-day in many a lonely valley and canyon—hastily built, crude, awkward little towns made of unpainted wooden boards, ramshackle, picturesque,—and quite deserted!

Though there is plenty of rich metal in the mines, though Colorado is more prosperous than ever before, her mining towns are nothing but empty walls. Why? Well, there are many reasons. First of all, the price of silver has sunk, so that it is not worth while mining any but the richest ores. Many gold mines are still being worked, but the easy gold has been picked up and gold mining is no longer a business for a man with a pick, a shovel, and a tin pan. Large companies operate the gold mines now, and there are no more boom towns.

### Colorado's Output of Gold and Silver

Production of precious metals has dropped in Colorado—as in other states. In fact, of late years much of the gold and silver mined in the United States has been taken from the ground only because it was found in connection with humbler metals like copper and lead. Recently Colorado, though a

leading gold-mining state, has mined perhaps a tenth of the gold she mined in 1900. Her annual output of silver brings her only about a twelfth of what it once brought. No wonder the mining towns of Colorado became for the most part "ghost towns"—deserted and lonely.

This does not mean that the mining industry as a whole has ceased to figure in Colorado's economic life, but only that it has shifted its interests. To-day coal has taken the place of gold as the leading mineral product of Colorado. During World War II it brought the state six or eight times what her gold brought her. It lies in the Great Plains and in the mountains as well. Molybdenum (mô-lîb'dê-nûm)—an element used to harden steel—zinc, petroleum, gold, lead, vanadium, silver, fluor-spar, natural gas, sand and gravel, clay and clay products, stone, copper, tungsten, feldspar, mica, natural gasoline, sulphur, and lithium minerals are Colorado's chief mineral products.

The state ranks first in the production of molybdenum and vanadium. She has uranium and rich stores of iron. Near Walden is an "ice cream" oil well. In it the oil, on reaching the surface, "freezes" into a creamy mass much like ice cream.

But if Colorado's mineral production is no longer as spectacular as in other days, she has industries to make up for it. Those desert plains and rugged hills turned out, on closer inspection, to be fairly useful land for farming after all. In fact, with a little



Photo by the Colorado Association

In southwestern Colorado, near the New Mexican border, is Mesa Verde National Park, where some of the greatest of the pueblo ruins are to be found. Here, in wide, shallow caves in the sheer canyon walls, the prehistoric Indians built their cliff cities. They had moved here from the broad table-land above because the canyon was safer, but they still climbed back to the mesa to till the soil and grow corn. The great period of the prehistoric pueblos was around twelve hundred A.D. At that time as many as five hundred people may have lived in each of the cliff dwellings—with extra rooms for storage.

## THE HISTORY OF COLORADO



Photo by the Colorado Association

These ranch hands are harvesting sugar beets in Colorado. The plump white roots different from the red variety that we eat as a vegetable—are being loaded

into wagons to go to the factory, where their juice will be extracted and made into sugar. Colorado grows more sugar beets than any other state.

irrigation they were found to be just about as fine fields as any farmer could want.

### What Grows on Colorado's Farms?

Full many a disappointed prospector after gold must have turned to the broad plains and fertile valleys of Colorado with deep relief, to make his fortune as a farmer instead of as a miner. During the years between 1910 and 1920 farming came gradually to displace mining as the most important industry. First in value of all Colorado crops is hay. Hay is good, for the most part, only to feed to cattle, and so we shall not be surprised to find Colorado a leader in livestock production. In sheep, especially, she ranks high, usually coming seventh or eighth among the states. But her horses and cattle are also valuable.

Next to hay Colorado's most valuable crop is sugar beets; she grows more of them than does any other state. But they bring far less money than her crop of hay does. Potatoes, corn, wheat, beans, barley, oats, and sorghums are other Colorado crops of

considerable value. But more important than any of them are the fruit and truck crops in which she has recently begun to specialize. Much of the Colorado farm land must be irrigated, for there is little rainfall. Colorado is second only to California in the size of the area under irrigation. This artificial watering is often an actual advantage, for it makes it possible to use lands on which no vegetation was ever grown before. Such ground is rich in minerals, none of which have been used up by previous plants. That is why Colorado peas, apples, peaches, pears, cantaloupes, watermelons, onions, cauliflower, cabbage, celery, tomatoes, and lettuce are so widely known. The seeds of all these plants are especially excellent when grown in Colorado, and many seeds are sent to other parts of the world, there to reproduce their fine qualities.

### Colorado's Leading Industry

In manufacturing, Colorado's most valuable industry ever since 1914 has been the making of beet sugar. Denver, Greeley, and

---

## THE HISTORY OF COLORADO

---

Trinidad are important cities for this industry; but many of the mills are in the smaller towns of the state, near the fields. By-products of this manufacture are used as food for stock. Denver, a busy live stock market and a center for oil and mining, has foundries and machine shops, canneries, meat packing plants, flour and planing mills, car shops, and factories for making rubber goods and clay products. Her story is a turbulent one, with fires, floods, riots, and murders crowding the pages of her history. But as the state's political and industrial capital she is now staid and mature.

### Important Colorado Cities

Mining, smelting, and manufacturing are carried on in Pueblo (pwěb'lō), Colorado's second city, often called the "Pittsburgh of the West." Colorado Springs, Boulder, Greeley, and Fort Collins are also busy at all these occupations. Fort Collins is a famous wool-shipping center, for Colorado is one of the country's important wool-producing states. Coal mining and lumbering are important industries at Greeley. Climax is noted for mining molybdenum, and Paradox Valley for radium.

### Scenery of Amazing Grandeur

Finally, those hills and woods and rivers and lakes which the weary California gold seekers cursed so bitterly have taken on a new value and become the center of a new industry. From all over the nation people come to see Colorado's grand mountains, and to take away - nothing material, perhaps, but certainly the memory of natural beauties almost unequalled anywhere in the world. Estes (ěs'tiz) Park, Pikes Peak Park, and the famous and fantastic Garden of the Gods are magnificent public preserves. Mesa Verde (mā'sä vār'dā) National Park, in the southwestern corner of the state, has some of the most perfect examples of cliff dwellings to be seen anywhere in the country.

Colorado has been wise beyond most of her sister states in cutting down her

timber slowly and building her railroads well. The worst danger to the timber has been from destructive forest fires; but this peril has been overcome by the construction of many fire stations from which keen-eyed rangers keep a constant lookout for telltale clouds of smoke. As for railroads, Colorado has built some of the finest railway lines in the world's history. Crowded into her 5,000 miles of track are engineering feats which are truly amazing. Winding, twisting, turning, through tunnels, up mountains, over rivers, her roads are a splendid accomplishment. For many years the railroads have been bringing people to Colorado. The pure dry air, cold in winter but always bracing, attracts thousands of seekers after health, and Colorado Springs, with its famous mineral springs, is one of our country's most famous health resorts. It is said that in many years the skies of Denver are absolutely cloudless for three hundred days in the year.

### Colorado's Future

Educationally, Colorado is also well advanced, with only 2.8 percent of her people unable to read and write. She has excellent elementary schools, and superior colleges and universities. Only seven states spent more money on the education of each child in 1932. Among her institutions of higher learning, the University of Colorado, at Boulder, is the most widely known.

And so Colorado, which was once only a backwater in the life of the nation, suddenly has moved forward to a position among the leading states. The great impulse to growth came from her mineral deposits. Those deposits are no longer so important as they once were, but Colorado is still a leader in other ways. For when a state is accustomed to prosperity, it does not easily slip backward again. The current of the great river draws it onward, turning its energies into new channels and bringing its best powers into action. Colorado has a future that beckons her; no one can doubt that she will obey the call.



## COLORADO

**AREA:** 104,247 square miles—7th in rank.

**LOCATION:** Colorado, one of the Mountain states, lies between 37° and 41° N. Lat. and between 102° and 109° W. Long. It is bounded on the north by Wyoming and Nebraska, on the east by Nebraska and Kansas, on the south by Oklahoma and New Mexico, and on the west by Utah.

**PHYSICAL FEATURES:** Colorado is the most mountainous state in the Union. Two-fifths of her surface lies in the Great Plains, which cover the eastern part of the state; the rest is occupied by our country's highest and most rugged section of the Rocky Mountains, with lofty plateaus covering the western quarter of the state. The plains rise gradually from about 4,000 ft. along Colorado's eastern border to the foot of the easternmost range of the Rockies, which from Pike's Peak (14,110 ft. high) —a famous summit at its southern end —rears a massive front clear to the state's northern line. Toward the south this range is known as the Rampart Range, but farther north it is called the Front Range. In fact the whole ridge is often referred to as the Front Range — and the same name may be used for the easternmost wall of the Rockies across the whole breadth of our country. At the foot of Pike's Peak the edges of the rock layers that make up the Great Plains have been weathered into all sorts of strange shapes in the region that is known as the Garden of the Gods. All along the edge of the plains there are interesting formations. West of the Front Range lies a series of beautiful valleys, or "parks," as they are called. The northernmost is known as North Park, lying between Medicine Bow Range and Park Range. Toward the south it is walled in by the mountain crest along which runs the continental divide, which follows Park Range north from this point. South of North Park is Middle Park, the only one of the parks lying west of the divide. At the south it is walled in by the Sawatch or Saguache Range, probably the finest in Colorado; it is a part of the continental divide. South of Middle Park is South Park, and southwest of that is San Luis Park, the largest of all. To the east San Luis Park is hemmed in by the beautiful Sangre de Cristo Mountains, and to the south it extends into New Mexico. West of it are the San Juan Mountains that lie in jagged summits in the southwestern corner of the state. Sometimes Estes Park, a little valley lying east of the divide along Thompson Creek, is included in this list. It serves as the gateway to Rocky Mountain National Park, and is probably the most beautiful of all these mountain-rimmed valleys. From the main crest of the Rockies other ranges go off in various directions, making of central Colorado a great mass of high and rugged mountains. The plateau that covers the western part of the state extends into Utah, and is known by various names in different sections the Roan or Book Plateau lies near the center of the western border and the Uncompahgre Plateau farther south. All together Colorado has some thousand peaks over 10,000 ft. high, and forty-four that are over 14,000 ft. The lowest point in the state is in Prowers County, where the elevation is 3,350 ft. along the Arkansas River. The highest point is Mount Elbert (14,431 ft.), in the Sawatch Range. Colorado's average elevation is 6,800 ft. If measurements are correct it is the highest state in the Union.

A number of large rivers are born in the Colorado mountain ranges. The North Platte (618 m. long) rises in North Park and flows north into Wyoming before it turns east into Nebraska, where it meets the South Platte (424 m. long), which rises in South Park; together the two streams form the Platte River, which makes its way to the Missouri and on to the Gulf of Mexico. The Arkansas (1,450 m. long), which rises in Lake County, also makes its way east to the Mississippi and so to the Gulf of Mexico. The Rocky Mountain

National Park, which lies across the Front Range in the northern part of the state, sees the birth of the Colorado River (about 1,450 m. long), which for 1,360 miles flows through the southwestern part of our country before it crosses into Mexico to enter the Gulf of California and the Pacific Ocean. Before it leaves Colorado the Colorado River receives a number of rivers, among them the Eagle and the Gunnison (150 m. long), said to be the best trout stream in the country. The Dolores (230 m. long) rises in Colorado but enters Utah before it joins the Colorado River. In the north the White and the Yampa rise in Colorado but flow west to the Green River in Utah and so are carried on to join the Colorado. The state has a great many rivers and some magnificent canyons that have been carved out. In the south the Rio Grande (1,800 m. long) rises in San Juan County and drains San Luis Park on its way south to the Gulf of Mexico. The Rio Grande, the Arkansas, the Colorado, and the Bear River, a branch of the Yampa, may be used by boats for short distances. Colorado's lakes are all small, though often very beautiful. There are a great many hot springs, often medicinal and sometimes radioactive. All together the state has 290 square miles of water. There are large tracts of irrigated land.

**CLIMATE:** Colorado has long been a resort for persons seeking health. Its dry air and sunshine are invaluable in the treatment of tuberculosis and various other diseases. The heaped-up mountain ranges create a great variety of conditions, but in general the southeast is the warmest part of the state and the north-central region the coldest. The mean annual temperature for the state is about 46° F., but in the mountains the cold is very severe and the snow lies deep in winter, though in summer the temperature there often goes to 110°. The plains have the most agreeable climate. Denver, in the foothills, has a mean Jan. temperature of 30°, and a mean July temperature of 72°. The record high there is 105° and the record low —29°. Snow never lies long on the ground, and even in the hottest summer days the nights are cool. The normal yearly rainfall for the state is 15.5 inches, but it varies greatly in different places and seldom does it reach more than 27 in. Parts of the state are very dry. On an average the sky is cloudless on more than half the days: everywhere the air is clear and bracing.

**INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING:** Among the more important institutions are Colorado College at Colorado Springs, the Colorado School of Mines at Golden, the Colorado State College of Agriculture at Ft. Collins, the University of Colorado at Boulder, the University of Denver at Denver, and Loretto Heights, a college for women at Loretto. There are state teachers training colleges at Greeley, Alamosa, and Gunnison. At Gothic is the Rocky Mountain Biological Laboratory, a summer school for scientists. The University of Denver sponsors the Central City Play Festival every summer in the old "opera house" at Central City, one of Colorado's early mining towns. Robert Edmond Jones has for some time been the director.

**CHARITIES AND CORRECTION:** Colorado has an industrial school for boys at Golden and one for girls near Morrison, homes and training schools for the feeble-minded at Ridge and at Grand Junction, a home for dependent children at Denver, a soldiers' and sailors' home at Monte Vista, a school for the deaf and blind at Colorado Springs, a hospital for the insane at Pueblo, a reformatory at Buena Vista, and a penitentiary at Canyon City. Denver was one of the first cities in the United States to establish special courts for juvenile offenders. Colorado inflicts capital punishment by administering a death-dealing gas.

**POLITICAL FACTS:** Colorado is governed under the constitution of 1876, which has been freely amended.

## COLORADO—Continued

The laws are made by a legislature consisting of a Senate and a House of Representatives, the two together to number not more than a hundred members. Senators are elected for four years and Representatives for two. No bill may be altered, on its way through either house, in such a way as to change its original purpose. Revenue bills must originate in the House of Representatives.

The executive officers are all elected for two years; the treasurer and auditor may not serve two consecutive terms. The governor may grant pardons and reprieves, and may commute a criminal sentence; he has the power to veto any item of a money appropriation bill.

The judiciary is headed by the supreme court, which is made up of three judges elected for nine years. Below it are the district courts, one for each of the judicial districts into which the state is divided. Each district court is presided over by a judge elected for six years. Each county elects a judge to preside for four years over the county court. In 1911 the legislature created a court of appeals made up of five judges appointed by the governor for four-year terms; its duty is to supplement the work of the supreme court. A constitutional amendment adopted in 1912 provided for the recall of judges and of certain judicial decisions.

Since 1893 women have had the vote in Colorado. The constitution specifies a twelve-months residence in the state as the principal requisite for voting, and authorizes the legislature to make other requirements.

Colorado has a direct-primary election law which applies to all except municipal officers and presidential electors. Senators are elected by the people.

Counties are administered by commissioners elected for four-year terms. Counties with less than 70,000 inhabitants have three commissioners; the more populous ones may have five. Cities and towns may adopt a commission form of government, and most of the municipal charters provide for preferential voting for commissioners. Municipalities have in their charters provision for initiative, referendum, and the recall of officials. A constitutional amendment passed in 1912 gave cities and towns home rule in municipal affairs.

The capital of Colorado is at Denver.

**PARKS:** Mesa Verde National Park, established in 1906 in the extreme southwestern corner of the state, lies on a steep mesa, and in its 80 square miles preserves the finest cliff dwellings in the United States.

Rocky Mountain National Park, established in 1915 in the northern part of the state, covers 395 square miles and lies among some of the finest mountains in our country; it is in the Front Range, and is crossed by a part of the continental divide.

Colorado has a large number of state parks, among them Estes Park, the Garden of the Gods, and Pike's Peak Park, all of them as famous as the national parks. There are also many fine park systems in the various cities.

**MONUMENTS:** Black Canyon National Monument contains some ten miles along the finest part of the Black Canyon of the Gunnison River.

Colorado National Monument, in Mesa County, contains 18,120 acres, with interesting examples of erosion. In it are tall pillars, the largest balanced rock in the world, and the Elä Natural Bridge.

Great Sand Dunes National Monument, in Alamosa County, contains 36,609 acres in which are the largest sand dunes in the United States, some 1,000 feet high.

Dinosaur National Monument, partly in Utah, lies in the northwestern corner of Colorado and contains the country's richest deposits of prehistoric reptiles.

Holy Cross National Monument covers 1,392 acres in the Holy Cross National Forest. In it is the famous Mount of the Holy Cross, on which is a huge cross of snow and ice.

Hovenweep National Monument covers 299 acres and lies partly in Montezuma County and partly in Utah. It contains four groups of prehistoric cliff dwellings and other structures.

Yucca House National Monument, in Montezuma County, contains the ruins of an Indian village.

Wheeler Monument, near Creede, has fantastic colored pinnacles, deep gorges, and interesting volcanic remains.

Colorado has 15,228,282 acres of national forest.

**GAME AND BIRD RESERVATIONS:** Kit Carson Refuge in Cheyenne County protects whooping cranes and waterfowl. For the use of scientists Colorado has set aside a number of "primitive areas" where plant and animal life is untouched.

**NAME:** The state probably takes its name from the Colorado River, which was given its title by the Spaniards. The word "colorado" is a participial form of the Spanish verb "colorar," which means "to color." The participle carries the meaning of "ruddy" or "red." As applied to the river it aptly describes the stream's brown or reddish color.

**NICKNAMES:** Colorado was once known as the Buffalo Plains State, but the name has fallen into disuse since the disappearance of the buffalo. She is often referred to as the Centennial State, for she was admitted to the Union a hundred years after the signing of the Declaration of Independence. Because large quantities of lead have been mined there she is called the Lead State, and because she has some of the finest mountain scenery in our country she is sometimes referred to as the Switzerland of America.

The people of Colorado are called Silverines because their state has produced a great deal of silver, and Rovers because of the roving instinct which led people to the state at the time of the Pike's Peak gold fever.

**STATE FLOWER:** Columbine (*Aquilegia caerulea*), commonly known as the Rocky Mountain columbine; officially adopted in 1899.

**STATE SONG:** "Where the Columbine Grows," by Arthur J. Fynn; approved in 1915.

**STATE FLAG:** A blue field with a white stripe across the center; upon the blue field is the letter "C" in red, and filling the center of the letter is a gold disk.

**STATE MOTTO:** "Nil sine Numine," meaning "Nothing without the Deity"; an adaptation from Virgil's Aeneid.

**STATE BIRD:** Lark bunting.

**INTERESTING FACTS:** Colorado observes New Year's Day, Lincoln's Birthday, Washington's Birthday, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Columbus Day, Election Day, Armistice Day, called Victory Day, Thanksgiving Day, Christmas Day, and Colorado Day on August 1.

In the southwestern corner of the state is the Southern Ute Indian Reservation, on which live members of the Ute tribe.

# **COLORADO—Continued**

## **Population of state 1940, 1,123,296**

### **Counties**

Adams (E2) . . .	22,481
Alamosa (D4) . .	10,484
Arapahoe (E2) . .	32,150
Archuleta (B4) . .	3,806
Baca (G4) . . . .	6,207
Bent (F4) . . . .	9,653
Boulder (D1) . . .	37,438
Chaffee (C3) . . .	8,109
Cheyenne (G3) . .	2,964
Clear Creek (D2) .	3,784
Conejos (C4) . . .	11,648
Costilla (D4) . . .	7,533
Crowley (F3) . . .	5,398
Custer (D3) . . . .	2,270
Delta (B3) . . . .	16,470
Denver (E2) . . .	322,412
Dolores * (A4) . .	1,958
Douglas (E2) . . .	3,496
Eagle (C2) . . . .	5,361
Elbert (E2) . . . .	5,460
El Paso (E3) . . .	54,025
Fremont (D3) . . .	19,742
Garfield (A2) . . .	10,560
Galpin (D2) . . . .	1,625
Grand (C1) . . . .	3,587
Gunnison (B3) . . .	6,192
Hinsdale (B4) . . .	349
Huerfano (D4) . . .	16,622
Jackson (C1) . . .	1,798
Jefferson (D2) . . .	30,725
Kiowa (G3) . . . .	2,793
Kit Carson (G2) . .	7,512
Lake (C2) . . . .	6,883
La Plata (B4) . . .	15,494
Larimer (D1) . . .	35,539
Las Animas (E4) . .	32,369
Lincoln (F3) . . . .	5,882
Logan (F1) . . . .	18,370
Mesa (A2) . . . .	33,791
Mineral (C4) . . .	975
Moffat (A1) . . . .	5,086
Montezuma (A4) . . . .	10,463
Montrose (A3) . . .	15,418
Morgan (F1) . . . .	17,214
Otero (F4) . . . .	23,571
Ouray (B3) . . . .	2,089
Park (D2) . . . .	3,272
Phillips (G1) . . .	4,948
Putkin (B2) . . . .	1,836
Prowers (G4) . . .	12,304
Pueblo (E3) . . . .	68,870
Rio Blanco (A2) . .	2,943
Rio Grande (C4) . .	12,404
Routt (B1) . . . .	10,525
Saguache (C3) . . .	6,173
San Juan (B4) . . .	1,439
San Miguel (A3) . .	3,664
Sedgwick (G1) . . .	5,294
Summit (C2) . . . .	1,754

Teller (D3) . . . .	6,463
Washington (F2) . .	8,336
Weld (E1) . . . .	63,747
Yuma (G1) . . . .	12,102

### **Cities and Towns**

Aguilar (E4) . . . .	1,397
Akron (F1) . . . .	1,417
Alamosa * (D4) . . .	5,613
Alma (D2) . . . .	469
Animas City (B4) . . . .	712
Antonito (C4) . . .	1,220
Arriba (F2) . . . .	286
Arvada (D2) . . . .	1,482
Aspen (C2) . . . .	777
Ault (E1) . . . .	761
Aurora * (E2) . . .	3,437
Basalt (B2) . . . .	212
Bayfield (B4) . . .	372
Berthoud (D1) . . .	811
Black Hawk (D2) . . . .	289
Blanca (D4) . . . .	407
Boulder * (D1) . . .	12,958
Brickridge (C2) . . . .	381
Brighton * (E2) . .	4,029
Brush (F1) . . . .	2,481
Buena Vista (C3) . .	779
Burlington (G2) . .	1,280
Calhan (E2) . . . .	352
Canon City * (D3) . . . .	6,690
Carbondale (B2) . .	437
Castle Rock (E2) . .	580
Cedaredge (B3) . . .	556
Center (C4) . . . .	1,515
Central City (D2) . . . .	706
Cheyenne Wells (G3) . . . .	695
Coal Creek (D3) . . .	261
Collbran (B2) . . . .	301
Colorado Springs * (E3) . . . .	36,789
Cortez (A4) . . . .	1,778
Craig (B1) . . . .	2,123
Crawford (B3) . . .	221
Cresce (C4) . . . .	670
Crested Butte (C3) . . . .	1,145
Cripple Creek (D3) . . . .	2,358
Crook (G1) . . . .	236
Crowley (F3) . . . .	318
Dacono (E1) . . . .	296
De Beque (A2) . . .	280
Deer Trail (E2) . . .	387
Delagua (F4) . . . .	422
Del Norte (C4) . . .	1,923
Delta * (A3) . . . .	3,717
Denver * (E2) . . . .	322,412
Dolores (A4) . . . .	804
Durango * (B4) . . .	5,887
Eads (G3) . . . .	700
Eagle (C2) . . . .	518
Eaton (E1) . . . .	1,322
Eckley (G1) . . . .	358
Edgewater (D2) . . .	1,648
Elizabeth (E2) . . .	275

Englewood * (E2) . . . .	9,680
Eric (D1) . . . .	1,019
Estes Park (D1) . . .	994
Evans (E1) . . . .	792
Fairplay (C2) . . . .	719
Firestone (E1) . . .	262
Flagler (F2) . . . .	506
Fleming (G1) . . . .	400
Florence * (D3) . . .	2,632
Fort Collins * (D1) . . . .	12,251
Fort Lupton (E1) . . . .	1,692
Fort Morgan * (F1) . . . .	4,884
Fountain (F3) . . . .	571
Fowler (E3) . . . .	922
Frederick (E1) . . .	652
Fruita (A2) . . . .	1,466
Genoa (F2) . . . .	214
Georgetown (D2) . . .	391
Gilcrest (F1) . . . .	352
Glenwood Springs (B2) . . . .	2,253
Golden * (D2) . . . .	3,175
Granada (G3) . . . .	342
Granby (D1) . . . .	251
Grand Junction * (A2) . . . .	12,479
Grand Valley (A2) . . . .	230
Greeley * (E3) . . .	15,995
Gunnison (C3) . . . .	2,177
Gypsum (C2) . . . .	245
Hastun (G1) . . . .	985
Havden (B1) . . . .	640
Holly (G3) . . . .	864
Holyoke (G1) . . . .	1,150
Hotchkiss (B3) . . .	653
Hudson (E1) . . . .	295
Hugo (F2) . . . .	852
Idaho Springs (D2) . . . .	2,112
Ignacio (B4) . . . .	555
Iliff (F1) . . . .	322
Johnstown (E1) . . .	961
Julesburg (G1) . . .	1,619
Kennsburg (E1) . . .	284
Kersey (E1) . . . .	268
Kit Carson (G3) . . .	333
Kremmling (C1) . . .	567
Lafayette (D2) . . .	2,052
La Jara (D4) . . . .	897
La Junta * (F4) . . .	7,040
Lamar * (G1) . . . .	4,445
La Salle (E1) . . . .	755
Las Animas * (F3) . . . .	3,232
La Veta (D4) . . . .	897
Leadville * (C2) . . .	4,774
Limon (F2) . . . .	1,053
Littleton (D2) . . .	2,244
Longmont * (D1) . . .	7,406
Louisville (D2) . . .	2,023
Loveland * (D1) . . .	6,145
Lyons (D1) . . . .	654

Meeker (B1) . . . .	1,399
Merino (F1) . . . .	259
Milliken (E1) . . . .	531
Minturn (C2) . . . .	596
Monte Vista * (C4) . . . .	3,208
Montrose * (B3) . . .	4,764
Morrison (D2) . . . .	216
Nederland (D2) . . .	384
New Castle (B2) . . .	484
Norwood (A3) . . . .	412
Oak Creek (C1) . . .	1,769
Olathe (B3) . . . .	705
Olney Springs (F3) . . . .	260
Ordway (F3) . . . .	1,150
Otis (G1) . . . .	498
Ouray (B4) . . . .	951
Pagosa Springs (C4) . . . .	1,591
Palisade (A2) . . . .	855
Palmer Lake (E2) . . . .	269
Paonia (B3) . . . .	1,117
Peetz (F1) . . . .	207
Pierce (E1) . . . .	343
Platteville (E1) . . .	561
Pueblo * (E3) . . . .	52,162
Red Cliff (C2) . . . .	715
Rico (A4) . . . .	388
Ridgway (B3) . . . .	354
Rifle (B2) . . . .	1,373
Rockvale (D3) . . . .	575
Rocky Ford * (F3) . . . .	3,494
Romeo (C4, D4) . . .	392
Saguache (C3) . . . .	1,210
Sabla * (D3) . . . .	4,969
Sanford (D4) . . . .	736
Sedgwick (G1) . . . .	373
Selbert (G2) . . . .	249
Silt (B2) . . . .	359
Silver Cliff (D3) . . .	309
Silverton (B4) . . . .	1,127
South Canon (B2) . . . .	1,729
Springfield (G4) . . .	1,082
Steamboat Springs (C1) . . . .	1,613
Sterling * (F1) . . .	7,411
Stratton (G2) . . . .	623
Sugar City (F3) . . .	565
Superior (D2) . . . .	205
Swink (F3) . . . .	374
Telluride (B4) . . . .	1,337
Trinidad * (E4) . . .	13,223
Victor (D3) . . . .	1,784
Walden (C1) . . . .	668
Walsenburg * (E4) . . . .	5,855
Wellington (D1) . . .	465
Westcliffe (D3) . . .	429
Westminster (D2) . . . .	534
Wiley (G3) . . . .	413
Windsor (E1) . . . .	1,811
Woodland Park (D2) . . . .	372
Wray (G1) . . . .	2,061
Yampa (C1) . . . .	426
Yuma (G1) . . . .	1,606

\* Part of Dolores annexed to San Miguel in 1925.

---

# ***The HISTORY of CONNECTICUT***

---

## **Reading Unit No. 7**

**READING UNIT NO. 7**

### **CONNECTICUT: THE NUTMEG STATE**

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

#### ***Interesting Facts Explained***

The "home industries" of New England, 8-55  
Tributes to the skill of the early settlers, 8-56  
Connecticut's plan of government, 8-56  
The tale of the Charter Oak, 8-

57  
The Yankees and the Indians, 8-57-58  
Connecticut's industrial interests, 8-59-61  
When Yale University was founded, 8-61

#### ***Things to Think About***

What made the New Englanders famous in the early days?  
Which important inventors were born in New England?  
What were the Connecticut "Blue Laws"?  
What did Massachusetts do to

encourage craftsmen and manufactures?  
What nicknames have been given to Connecticut towns?  
When was the insurance business begun in America?

#### ***Related Material***

What was life like in the New England colonies before the Revolution? 7-145-55  
How has the Machine Age altered people's lives? 10-529-37  
What do we mean by "division of labor"? 7-497-99

The tragedy of our abandoned farms, 7-466  
What is the story of Eli Whitney and the cotton gin? 10-406-7  
How did Charles Goodyear make rubber useful? 9-268-70

#### ***Practical Applications***

What use have the people of Connecticut made of their inventive abilities? 8-56

What care has Connecticut taken of her foreign working population? 8-61

#### ***Leisure-time Activities***

PROJECT NO. 1: Read the story of how we learned to tell the time, 10-459-73.

PROJECT NO. 2: Make a tool chest, 14-30.

#### ***Summary Statement***

Ingenious, hard-working, and enterprising, the people of Connecticut have used their gifts to such advantage that their state,

though very small, has always been influential in the nation's history.



## CONNECTICUT: *the* NUTMEG STATE

*Ingenious, Hard-working, and Enterprising, the People of Connecticut Have Made Their Little State a Home for Free Institutions and Useful Inventions*

**F**OR some reason your typical Yankee has always been a whittler. From the moment when he first set foot in the New England wilds he used his clever jack-knife to carve the thousand and one things that might make his new life more comfortable and his new work easier. No obliging five-and-ten-cent store stood around the corner ready to supply his needs. And if it had, five cents was in those days so hard to get that he would have spent it only for the most pressing necessities. Whatever he wanted he had to make. Clothing, tools, implements, furniture, even the dishes he ate from, all came from the skillful hands of his own family during the long winter evenings when they sat by the light of the fire after the day's work was done. The women folk spun and sewed while the men and boys carved and carpentered. And the most inventive and industrious families had the most comfortable homes.

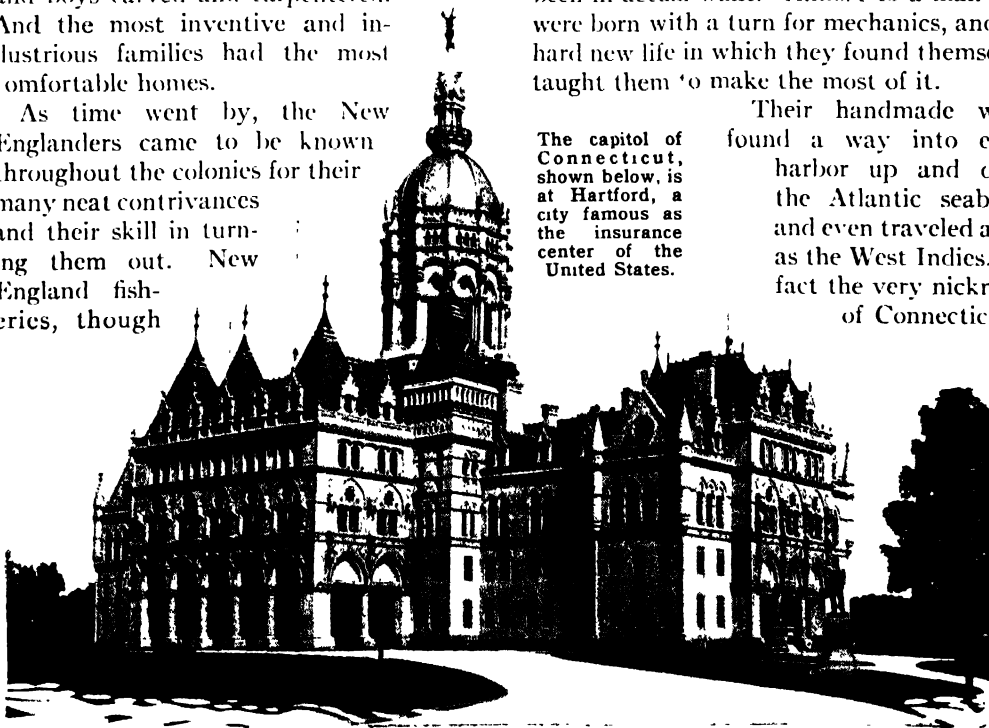
As time went by, the New Englanders came to be known throughout the colonies for their many neat contrivances and their skill in turning them out. New England fisheries, though

they brought a better return, took heavy toll of a man's endurance and might well take his very life. Only the strongest dared challenge the sea. But even a man worn out with poor food and hard labor could wield a jackknife or hammer, and after a long day's work in the kitchen or in the fields women could still sit and spin or sew.

So the thrifty settlers of New England set themselves to turn the wood from their forests and the wool from their sheep into a multitude of useful articles that farmers and fishermen and traders might be tempted to buy. They learned to make the best ships to be had anywhere in the world, and sold them to all the European nations. And they developed, around their own firesides, a set of "home industries" that brought many a penny to families that might otherwise have been in actual want. Almost to a man they were born with a turn for mechanics, and the hard new life in which they found themselves taught them 'o make the most of it.

Their handmade wares found a way into every harbor up and down the Atlantic seaboard and even traveled as far as the West Indies. In fact the very nickname of Connecticut is

The capitol of Connecticut, shown below, is at Hartford, a city famous as the insurance center of the United States.



## THE HISTORY OF CONNECTICUT

said to be a kind of wry tribute to the skill of her early inhabitants. For the Yankees were shrewd traders as well as able workmen, and fairly or unfairly it came to be a common saying that the merchants of Connecticut, the "Land of Yankee Notions," deftly carved out of wood the nutmegs that they sold to their unwary neighbors.

### Born Inventors

It is easy to see why a people with an inventive turn and a lively taste for trade should be among the first to use the machines that began to make their way into industry in the eighteenth century. How the Yankees must have loved the spinning jennies and power looms that did the work so swiftly! Before long they were inventing machines of their own to help in other industries, and were well started on the great Industrial Revolution that was to make the whole world over and to puzzle men with a set of problems that we are still wrestling with to-day.

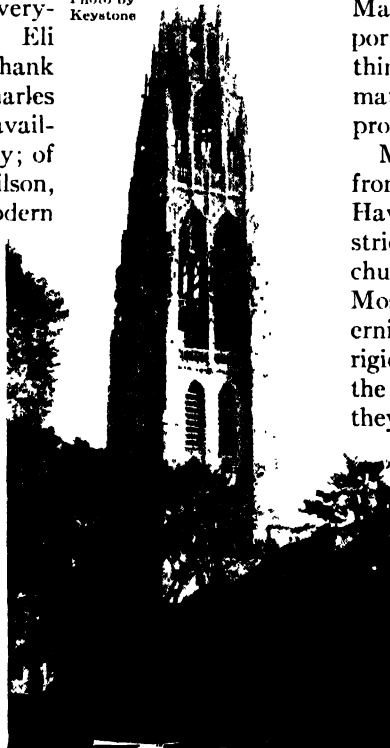
Connecticut in particular has given the world a long list of inventors and inventions. Everyone knows the name of Eli Whitney, whom we have to thank for the cotton gin; of Charles Goodyear, who made rubber available for its many uses to-day; of Elias Howe and Allen B. Wilson, who helped to give us the modern sewing machine; of Samuel Colt, famous for firearms; and of Seth Thomas, father and son, well-known makers of clocks. There have been many years in which Connecticut has led all the states in the percentage of her citizens who have taken out patents; and the workers in her factories are known for their skill.

The first settlers were farmers, who came from Massachusetts. As early as 1634 the fertile lands along the Connecticut

River tempted people from Watertown to establish the town of Wethersfield. In the next year a delegation from Newtown—the present Cambridge—planted a settlement at Windsor, and a little later in the same year Hartford was founded by settlers from Dorchester. Four years under the stern rule of the Massachusetts Bay Colony had been enough to make these ardent Puritans long for greater religious liberty. In 1636 the whole congregation of the church at Newtown pulled up stakes and moved to Hartford under the leadership of the Reverend Thomas Hooker; and other congregations, stifled in the atmosphere of Massachusetts, joined their friends in the Connecticut Valley. There they took up land and began to trade with the Indians, competing with the Dutch from New Amsterdam, who in 1633 had planted a trading post at Hartford.

Below rises the lacy "collegiate Gothic" tower of the Harkness Memorial Building at Yale University. The university is at New Haven, which until 1873 shared with Hartford the honor of being the capital of Connecticut.

Photo by  
Keystone



In 1639 the three little settlements adopted a plan of government under a famous document which they called the Fundamental Orders. It was much like the government they had known in Massachusetts except in one important feature. It let its citizens think for themselves in religious matters. Connecticut is justly proud of that fact.

Meanwhile a group of Puritans from London had founded at New Haven (1638) a settlement even stricter than the one at Massachusetts Bay. The Bible laws of Moses were to be the law for governing the community; and so rigidly were they interpreted that the Connecticut "Blue Laws," as they are called, are famous to this day. Under their harsh provisions it was illegal even for a man to kiss his wife on Sunday. Of course rules so strict as this were never very well obeyed.

Eventually New Haven was joined under a royal charter to the settlements in the Connecticut Valley (1662), and the laws that

## THE HISTORY OF CONNECTICUT



by Conn. Dept. Agr.

This well kept farm is in the Connecticut Valley, one of the finest farming districts in the country. Like

many other fertile valleys this one owes its richness to the character of the underlying rock.

were then set up for the whole colony were patterned after the gentler notions of the first Connecticut settlers. The charter was very generous. It not only gave the colony lands to the westward as far as "the South Sea," but it allowed the settlers entire freedom to make their own laws and control their own courts of justice. As you may guess, the colonists made the most of their independence, and as the years went by showed an ability for self-government which Connecticut looks back upon with the greatest pride.

### The Tale of the Charter Oak

There were times when the colonists were hard pressed to keep their independence, especially on the famous occasion when the hated Sir Edmund Andros was made royal governor of all New England (1686) and came to Hartford to demand the surrender of the Connecticut charter. The story goes that as he was wrangling over the matter with the determined Connecticut worthies the candles were suddenly blown out, and when they were relighted the charter was clean

gone from the table where it lay. No amount of searching brought it to light at that time, but later it was recovered from its hiding place inside a hollow tree—and the "Charter Oak" is famous to this day.

The disappearance of the beloved charter did not prevent Andros from abolishing it, but when William III seized the English throne (1688) the charter was restored to the Connecticut people, and they went happily ahead in their career of self-government under it until the Declaration of Independence, when it became the constitution of the new state. The independent spirit of the men and women who had lived under it for over a century made them ardent in the colonial cause, and Connecticut had little trouble with British sympathizers.

### The Bloody Indian Wars

Of course she had the usual boundary disputes with other English colonies and with the Dutch, who claimed the western part of Connecticut territory. And there were the cruel Indian wars that fell to the lot of all the

## THE HISTORY OF CONNECTICUT

settlements. The Pequots (pē'kwōt), scattered over the eastern part of the state, the most savage of the New England tribes, made war against the colonists (1636) but were crushed by the combined forces of Connecticut and Massachusetts. Later (1675) Connecticut men fought in what is known as King Philip's War, a bloody uprising of allied Indian tribes under an Indian leader named Philip; and in the eighteenth century Connecticut played a courageous part in other clashes—such as Queen Anne's War—(1702-1713)—between the whites and the red men, who had now joined with the French in an effort to crush the English settlers; but these wars ended when the British took Quebec (1760). The various Connecticut tribes were members of the Algonquian (āl-gōn'kī-ăn) group of Indians, whom we have described in our story of Wisconsin.

### Crops that Yield Cash

Though the Connecticut settlers began as soon as they arrived to use their mother wit in the manufacture of useful articles, they continued to get their principal income from farming until the middle of the nineteenth century. But as more and more factories were built and more and more fertile lands were opened up in the West, more and more young people left the farms to work in the cities or else went out as pioneers to clear new lands and build new states. The more barren farms were abandoned, until to-day only about one-ninth of the state's land is under cultivation. But the farms that remain—mostly in the rich river valleys or along the Sound—are so fertile and so convenient to market that there are few sections in the country where land costs so much per acre.

To-day tobacco is one of the most valuable crops, with the vast majority of the growers banded together into an association which markets nearly the whole of the Connecticut output. It comes mostly from the valleys of the Connecticut and the Housatonic (hōōs'-ă-tōn'ik). Since a great many of the Connecticut farmers have gone into dairying,



Courtesy of Connecticut Development Commission

Connecticut hums with factories, and is one of the country's important industrial states. Her brass works—you have a glimpse of one here—turn out nearly three-fourths of the brass articles made in the United States.

hay and Indian corn, raised as food for the cattle, are also important. The great cities that drink the milk and eat the butter and cheese that Connecticut produces will also buy her potatoes and garden truck and her apples and poultry and eggs. Oats, peaches, pears, and grapes are other paying crops. The state has a fairly temperate climate, changeable but milder than that of the other

New England states because so much of her land is open to the sea; so her crops are highly varied. Of late she has even gone extensively into the nursery and florist industry, for which Cromwell is a center.

Because the glacier carried off the more fertile top soil the uplands are mostly sandy and unproductive. Our story of Maine will tell how the face of New England—Connecticut included—has been shaped in the long ages that make up the earth's history. Connecticut is much less rugged than the states to the north, and her uplands, highest in the northwest corner of the state, are divided in two by a broad valley along which the Connecticut River flows before it takes its turn to the east. From the north the uplands slope gradually down to the coast, where the sinking of the land has let the ocean into the river valleys and so given the state a number of good harbors.

You may be sure that these did not go to waste in the day when Connecticut had a thriving industry in shipbuilding and sent

## THE HISTORY OF CONNECTICUT



Photo by Conn. Dept. Agr.

Connecticut's famous country fairs are always welcomed by the farmers, who can there display their

best products and hobnob with their neighbors. Let us hope that the fine apples above won a prize.

her trim vessels to carry her wares to Europe and the West Indies and even around the stormy Horn to California and China. In our story of Rhode Island we have told of the profits New England made in rum, molasses, and slaves. As late as 1845 New London was carrying on a busy whaling industry, in which she ranked second to New Bedford. Today she still builds many a pretty craft and has a part in the fishing industry, which has dwindled greatly from former times but nevertheless nets the fisherfolk a good return in oysters, lobsters, flounders, cod, and the menhaden that yields various products useful in industry.

### What Is Freestone?

Connecticut's mineral products too have fallen off. At the time of the Revolution she was mining much of the iron that went to make the supplies of the colonial army, and her copper was made into coins for the infant republic. But richer mines were opened up to westward and her own more slender stores were left lying in the ground. Nowadays she quarries building stone, of which Portland brownstone, or freestone, has given her the nickname of the Freestone State. Clay, sand and gravel, magnesium, feldspar, and peat are her other chief minerals.

But none of the products of earth or sea yield Connecticut so much money as her

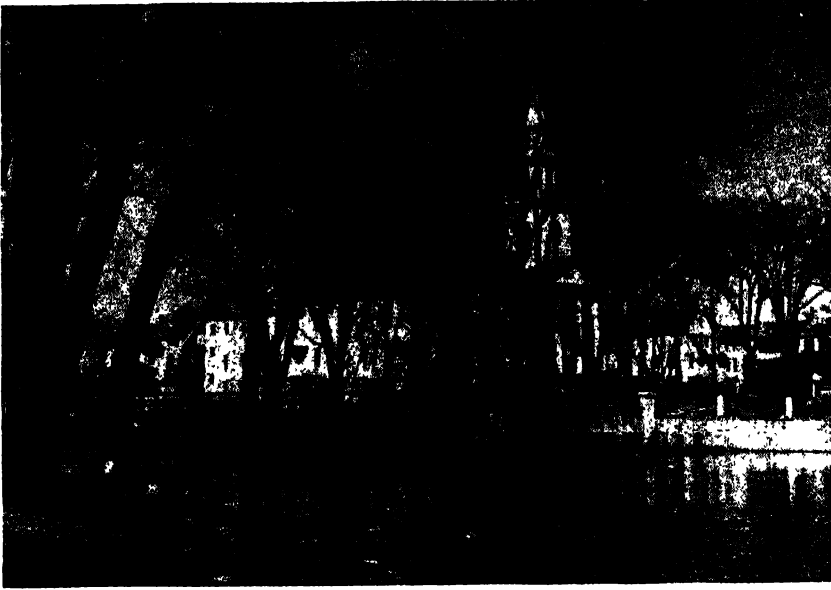
factories earn. Though she is the forty-sixth state in size, she is fourteenth in the value of her manufactured output and has tucked so many people into her industrial centers that only Rhode Island, New Jersey, and Massachusetts have a denser population. The growth of her machines has been steady from the time when, in her earliest infancy, she passed laws to encourage craftsmen and manufactures, and began to build mills along her energetic rivers. As early as 1647 New Haven was selling shoes, and in the eighteenth century the clever Connecticut workmen were known far and wide for their clocks. At the same time distant colonies were buying Connecticut brass, iron, and tin goods—in fact, every sort of hardware—and peddlers were carrying Connecticut nails and needles and buttons and kitchen utensils to every farmhouse in the land.

### An Early Start in Industry

Meanwhile the manufacture of hats, paper, woollens, and silks was getting a good start, with cotton following a little later. Just after the War of 1812, when shipping had been hard hit, Connecticut manufactures began to grow apace, and during the World War they were almost tripled, for then she set herself to making arms, ammunitions, and clothing for the soldiers.

To-day Connecticut turns out an astonish-

## THE HISTORY OF CONNECTICUT



Beautiful little white churches like this one in Connecticut adorn most of the old New England villages. They all have a family likeness, and as a rule they stand—in dignified reserve—upon the village green. Many of them are masterpieces of line and proportion. Their grave simplicity speaks of a day when religion was more of a discipline than a comfort. But they never fail to be serene, and like all expressions of true religious feeling, they outlast the centuries in usefulness.

Photo by Gendro

ing variety of articles, as the nicknames of some of her cities will show. Danbury is the Hat City; Meriden, the Silver City; New Britain, the Hardware City; Waterbury, the Brass City; Willimantic, the Thread City. East Hampton specializes in bells, Ivoryton in piano keys, Middlefield in gun sights, Oakville in pins, South Manchester in silks, and Collinsville sells in Spanish America thousands of machetes (mä-chä'tā), heavy knives some two or three feet long which are used by the natives to cut sugar cane or heavy underbrush. Connecticut is a leading state in the production of clocks, brassware, arms and ammunition, felt hats, textiles, and plated ware. Since the South has turned to the making of cotton goods, Connecticut has turned out fewer textiles, but she has increased her output in many other lines. In World War II she made submarines, parachutes, arms, and ammunition. Her busy people are near the top in the United States in the size of their income per person.

### Where Factories Always Hum

Of course many of the cities we have named manufacture a great many other products besides their specialty. Waterbury, the center of the nation's brass manufactures, makes clocks and watches, silverware, files, recording instruments, various kinds of ma-

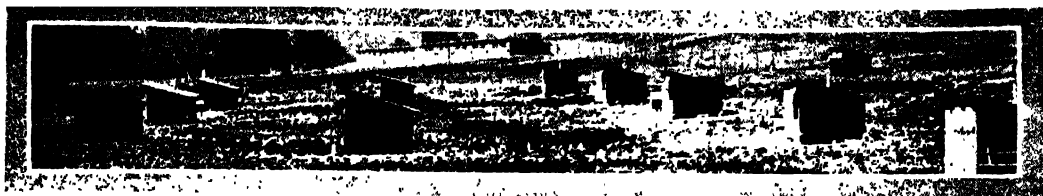
chinery, and chemicals. New Britain turns out cutlery, and foundry and machine-shop products. Danbury, where felt hats have been made ever since 1780, also manufactures hat-making machinery, silver-plated ware, electric trucks, silk braid, thread, ball and roller bearings, and electrical equipment. Hartford, where electroplating was invented, makes silver plate, firearms, typewriters, brushes, precision machines, tools, hardware, rubber tires, electrical equipment, and airplanes. She is also the state capital. New Haven, the seat of Yale University, has a wide list of manufactures, with guns, ammunition, hardware, and clocks in the lead. And Bridgeport, Connecticut's principal city and one of the leading manufacturing centers in the country, produces an amazing list of articles—firearms, ammunition, sewing machines, corsets, photographs, machinery, chain goods, plated ware, motor bodies and parts, airplanes, various kinds of apparatus, and articles in bronze, brass, steel, and iron. To do this she imports large quantities of coal, coke, and oil, as well as iron, copper, sand, clay lumber, and all sorts of raw materials.

Various things have combined to turn Connecticut into a great manufacturing center. In the first place, of course, there was the natural ingenuity of her people, which

---

## THE HISTORY OF CONNECTICUT

---



These trim little houses shelter a multitude of chickens that eventually will find their way to the great markets

of New York, Boston, and other eastern cities. Connecticut farmers do well in the poultry business.

made them not only skillful workers, but skillful managers as well. Then too her rivers put plenty of water power under their hands; to-day, though she has to import all her coal and oil—as well as her raw materials—she has set her streams to manufacturing a vast amount of electricity which is carried to factories all over the state.

In the early days of sailing vessels her excellent harbors: New London, New Haven, Hartford, Stonington, and Bridgeport furnished her with capital shipping facilities, and still make it possible for her to carry on a lively coastwise trade. Later the railroads served her ably, and nowadays an excellent system of highways enables her to send much of her goods by truck to the great centers near at hand. Many bus lines draw her smaller communities together in a close web of social interest and trade, so that tiny villages are often in reality parts of the large cities. In addition, there is a system of fine parkways, of which the Merritt Parkway and the Wilbur Cross Parkway are the most famous. These roads bring Connecticut into closer touch with the neighboring states and with their urban centers.

Because Connecticut has always been near the great ports where immigrants first land in the United States she has always been able to get workers to keep her factory wheels turning. Near the middle of the last century she received large numbers of Irish, who were driven from their homes overseas by a terrible potato famine. They were followed by Canadians, Russians, Germans, English, and Swedes. At present more than a sixth of the population is foreign born, with the Italians in the lead, followed by the Poles and then the Irish.

Not only was it easy for Connecticut to get workers; she had plenty of money to

invest as well. The state is the home of insurance, which began its career in this country when the first company was established in Hartford in 1794. Many of the nation's largest concerns are located in the state, and have huge funds at their disposal. All this massing of capital has been of great value to Connecticut's businesses.

No New England state ever neglected education. Connecticut early established schools and in 1701 founded Yale University, one of the country's greatest educational institutions. Trinity College is at Hartford, Wesleyan University at Middletown, and Connecticut College for Women at New London. The state's greatest educational problem is the instruction of her foreign working population, on whom she depends for so much of her manufactured output. She was the first state to restrict child labor in the textile mills (1842), and passed one of the earliest workmen's compensation acts (1913).

Now what we have said will help show you why Connecticut has always been influential in the nation's history and why, tiny as she is, she is one of our great states to-day. But what we have not done is to picture for you the little state's exquisite charm, the beauty of her rolling uplands, of her swift, romantic rivers, of her picturesque farms, and of her ancient, peaceful villages, with their flock of trim white houses around the village green. To know Connecticut you must go to visit her, along with the thousands of tourists who visit her every year. Then you will understand why painters flock to her quaint old towns and writers love to salt their tales with the quiet, canny folk who, living amid the whirl of our bustling twentieth century, still keep much of the dignity of their Puritan ancestors.

## CONNECTICUT

**AREA:** 5,009 square miles - 46th in rank.

**LOCATION:** Connecticut, one of the New England states, lies between 40° 54' and 42° 3' N. Lat., and between 71° 47' and 73° 43' W. Long. It is bounded on the north by Massachusetts, on the east by Rhode Island, on the south by Long Island Sound, and on the west by New York.

**PHYSICAL FEATURES:** In general Connecticut is a rolling upland, with the trough of the Connecticut Valley down the center. The highest section is in the northwest, where Bear Mountain reaches an elevation of 2,355 ft. and Gridley Mountain and Mount Riga are over 2,000 ft. The mean elevation of the northern border is about 1,000 ft.; from there the land falls away gradually toward the coast. North-and-south ridges of harder rock rise from the central Connecticut lowlands and from the uplands as well. Picturesque streams flow in the valleys between. The principal river in the state is the Connecticut (407 m. long), which rises in New Hampshire, enters Connecticut from Massachusetts, and flows south until it reaches Middletown, where it swerves to the southeast. It may be navigated as far as Hartford. The next river in importance is the Housatonic (148 m. long), with its branch, the Naugatuck (65 m. long). It drains the western part of the state, and like the Connecticut, empties into Long Island Sound. In the eastern part of the state the Thames also empties into the Sound, and may be navigated as far as Norwich. A sinking of the sea-coast has let the water into a number of small river valleys and created some good harbors. Connecticut has plenty of lakes; and frequent rapids and waterfalls give abundant water power. The water area is 145 square miles. There is no irrigated land.

**CLIMATE:** Connecticut has a more even climate than the states to the north, but she has wide extremes of temperature nevertheless. At New Haven the mean Jan. temperature is 28° F.; the mean July temperature, 72°. The record high is 101°; the record low, -15°. Inland the extremes are greater, with the northwest suffering most under the keen northwest winds of winter. The mean annual temperature for the state is 49° F. The average annual rainfall is between 45 and 50 inches.

**INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING:** Albertus Magnus College for women at New Haven, Connecticut College for women at New London, the University of Connecticut at Storrs, Hartford, and New Haven, St. Joseph College for women at West Hartford, Trinity College at Hartford, Wesleyan University at Middletown, United States Coast Guard Academy at New London, and Yale University at New Haven. Normal schools are located at New Britain, Willimantic, New Haven, and Danbury.

**CHARITIES AND CORRECTION:** The state maintains, or helps to maintain, state hospitals for the insane at Middletown and Norwich, a state training school for the feeble-minded at Mansfield, a state veterans' home at Rocky Hill, tuberculosis sanatoriums at Hartford, Meriden, Norwich, Laurel Heights, and Waterford, an oral school for the deaf at Mystic, the Long Lane School for girls at Middletown, a school for boys at Meriden, a state farm for women at Niantic, a state prison at Wethersfield, a reformatory at Cheshire, a state hospital at Newtown, the Newington Home for Crippled Children at Hartford, and the American School for the Deaf at West Hartford.

**POLITICAL FACTS:** Connecticut is governed under the constitution of 1818, which has been freely amended.

The legislative body is the General Assembly, which is made up of two houses: the Senate, elected in alternate years; and the House of Representatives, also elected in alternate years. The executive power is vested in the governor, a lieutenant-governor, a secretary, a treasurer, an attorney-general, and a comptroller.

Judiciary duties are vested in a Supreme Court of Errors and a superior court, with their judges appointed by the Assembly on recommendation of the governor. Besides these there are courts of common pleas, district courts, police courts, and probate courts.

A voter must be over 21 years of age, have lived in the state a year and in the town six months, must be of sound moral character, and must be able to read the constitution or the state statutes in English. Voting machines were authorized in 1905. Each town selects its officers for local government and votes for a sheriff every four years. There is no legislative provision for the commission form of government, but in 1911 Bristol adopted a city charter which contained such features and provided for the initiative and referendum. Specific statutes regulate municipal ownership, child labor, workmen's compensation, sanitation, civil service commissions for state service, and aviation.

The capital of Connecticut is at Hartford.

**NAME:** Connecticut was named for the river that crosses the state. This was called by the Indians "Connittecok" or "Quonehtacut." In the Indian tongue the name probably meant "the long river."

**NICKNAMES:** Connecticut got its title of Nutmeg State from old stories of its inventive and ingenious inhabitants who were shrewd to the extent of making and selling wooden nutmegs. It takes its name of the Constitution State from the famous Fundamental Orders drawn up at Hartford in 1639 and said to have been the first written state constitution. It is nicknamed the Blue Law State because of the famous blue laws of the New Haven Plantation. Its fine brown building stone has given it the name of the Brownstone State - or the Freestone State. The stable character of its citizens has led to its being known as "the Land of Steady Habits."

The people of Connecticut are frequently referred to as Nutmegs or as Wooden Nutmegs.

**STATE FLOWER:** Mountain laurel (*Kalmia latifolia*); adopted in 1917.

**STATE SONG:** "Connecticut State Song," words by Ida Townsend-Green, music by E. A. Leopold; not yet officially adopted.

**STATE FLAG:** Azure blue, charged with a shield of rococo design in white, with three grapevines embroidered in its center. A streamer below the shield bears the state motto. This design forms the arms of the state.

**STATE MOTTO:** "Qui Transtulit Sustinet," meaning "He who transplanted us continues to sustain." The motto is taken from the Latin version of the Psalms.

**STATE BIRD:** The American robin was designated as the state bird by the General Assembly in 1943.

**INTERESTING FACTS:** Connecticut observes New Year's Day, Lincoln's Birthday, Washington's Birthday, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Columbus Day, Armistice Day, Thanksgiving Day, and Christmas Day. Good Friday is usually proclaimed by the governor as a day of fasting and prayer.



# CONNECTICUT—Continued

## Population of state 1940, 1,709,242

### Counties

Fairfield (B5)	418,384
Hartford (D2)	450,189
Litchfield (B2)	87,011
Middlesex (E4)	55,999
New Haven (D4)	484,316
New London (G3)	125,224
Tolland (F2)	31,866
Windham (H2)	56,223

### City, Borough, or Urban Town

[Places marked with an  
asterisk (\*) were classi-  
fied as urban in 1940;

those having two aster-  
isks (\*\*) were classified  
as urban under special  
rule]

Ansonia * (C4)	19,210
Bantam (C3)	564
Branford (D4)	2,235
Bridgeport *	
(C5)	147,121
Bristol * (D3)	30,167
Colchester (F3)	1,234
Danbury * (B4)	22,339
Danielson (H2)	1,507
Derby * (C4)	10,287
East Hartford Town ** (E2)	18,615
Farmington (D3)	1,327
Groton (G4)	4,719
Guilford (E4)	1,986

Hartford *	
(E2)	166,267
Jewett City *	
(H3)	3,682
Litchfield (C3)	1,234
Meriden *	39,494
Middletown *	
(E3)	26,495
Naugatuck *	
(C4)	15,388
New Britain *	
(D3)	68,685
New Haven (D4)	160,605
New London *	
(G4)	30,456
Newtown (B4)	603
Norwalk * (H5)	39,849
Norwich * (G3)	23,652
Putnam (F2)	7,775
Rockville * (F2)	7,572

Shelton * (C4)	10,971
Southington *	
(D3)	5,088
Stafford Springs *	
(F2)	3,401
Stamford * (A5)	47,938
Stonington (H4)	1,826
Stratford Town **	
(C5)	22,580
Torrington (C2)	26,988
Unionville (D2)	2,064
Wallingford *	
(D4)	11,425
Waterbury *	
(C3)	99,314
West Hartford town ** (E2)	33,776
West Haven town ** (D4)	30,021
Willimantic (G3)	12,101
Winsted * (C2)	7,674
Woodmont (D5)	748

---

# **The HISTORY of DELAWARE**

---

## **Reading Unit No. 8**

---

### **DELAWARE: THE BLUE HEN STATE**

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

#### ***Interesting Facts Explained***

Why there are many marshes along the Delaware coast, 8-64

The historic Lenni-Lenape Indians, 8-64

Henry Hudson and Lord De La Warr, 8-64

Why Delaware was called "New Sweden," 8-64

Why the people of Delaware were known as the "Blue Hen's Chickens," 8-65

How Delaware founded her ship-building industry, 8-66

Where almost half of the explosives used by the Allies in World War I were made, 8-66

#### ***Things to Think About***

Which state is smaller than Delaware?

What did the other Algonquian tribes call the Lenni-Lenape Indians?

Who were the first people to settle in Delaware?

When did Delaware become a British possession?

Which was the first state to ratify the federal constitution?

Why is the peach blossom Delaware's state flower?

How are oysters cultivated?

#### ***Picture Hunt***

What events took place at the old statehouse in Delaware?  
8-63

Which is the chief port of Delaware? 8-65

#### ***Related Material***

How the colonies were born, 7-121-33

Who was Peter Stuyvesant? 7-128, 130

What important discoveries did Henry Hudson make? 13-475-77

What kind of pottery did the English call Delft? 12-58

What potteries in America make beautiful chinaware? 12-61

Which are our greatest fruit-growing states? 9-162

#### ***Leisure-time Activities***

PROJECT NO. 1: Read the story of the freedom-loving Swedes, 13-73, 6-407.

PROJECT NO. 2: Make some animals out of fruits, 14-13, 14.

#### ***Summary Statement***

Delaware is the second smallest state in the Union, but her

growth has been steady and she is busy and prosperous.

## THE HISTORY OF DELAWARE



Photo by Sobelman Syndicate

The new statehouse, above, is at Dover, which has been the capital of Delaware since 1777. The famous old statehouse, which was built in 1722, is also at Dover; though it still stands, it is no longer in use.

It was in the old statehouse that prominent citizens of the state met in 1787 to ratify the federal constitution, an act which made little Delaware the first state to enter the Union. Dover has a busy canning industry.

### DELAWARE: *the* BLUE HEN STATE

*Though Parts of Little Delaware Still Keep to Many of the Ways of Old Colonial Days, Her Busy Farms and Factories Are among the Most Modern Our Country Has to Offer*

**F**INE goods do not always come wrapped in big packages, and great riches are often found in small compass. We have heard such sayings as these often enough, but from time to time some outstanding example brings them to mind afresh, and we realize all over again how true they are. One of the best of these examples is the tiny state of Delaware—the Diamond State.

Little Delaware is the second smallest state in the country—second only to Rhode Island. Her soil is rich but it does not contain many valuable minerals, as the soil of West Virginia or Pennsylvania does. She is low and flat for the most part, and fully one-tentieth of her surface is made up of marshes and swamps which are of no use to the farmer. She has a long seacoast but no big natural harbors except New Castle. Her forests were never very important, because Delaware herself has always been such a tiny state. Yet perhaps we should really count

all these handicaps as sources of strength. For they have encouraged the little state to rely on the special industries to which she is best suited, and to avoid competition with other states. They have made her citizens alert and quick to see how they can use the peculiar and individual features of their own little piece of earth. The result is that to-day Delaware is a prosperous and busy little commonwealth whose growth has always been steady even though it has never been sensational. She is a state which will never astound anyone, but will never disappoint anyone, either. On the whole, she clings to the old ways, and though she is in the most crowded section of our country, she can offer many a quaint sight and interesting rural custom that have lasted over from the long ago. But she is fast adapting herself to modern industrial change. In short, she is altogether capable and altogether contented.

Delaware is part of the great Atlantic

---

## THE HISTORY OF DELAWARE

---

coastal plain, which also makes up the eastern section of New Jersey and Virginia. The soil is mostly clay with some loam in the north, loam in the central part, and sand in the south. It is very fertile for the most part, and in places is suitable for making pottery. Like the whole coastal plain, Delaware has been sinking under the ocean very slowly for many thousands of years. In fact, before the ocean moved in, what is now Delaware Bay was the valley of a river very much like the Hudson River to-day. This sinking explains the many marshes, the shallow lakes, and the short streams along the coast of Delaware.

When the first white men came to the region they found it occupied by a very old and historic tribe of Indians, members of the Lenni-Lenape (lěn'ī-lěn'ā-pě) group—the name meant “first,” or “original, people.” If the stories the red men told were true, they came from the Far West, beyond the Mississippi River. The other Algonquian (āl-gōn'kī-ăn) tribes—for that was the group to which they belonged—called them “the original people” and “the grandfathers of the red men.” They were a highly civilized and friendly set of Indians, with a fairly complete culture and high degree of intelligence.

### Who Discovered Delaware River?

The first white explorer to discover them was Henry Hudson, the Englishman who is famous to-day for discovering the Hudson River and Hudson Bay. He called the Delaware the “South River,” in contrast to the “North River,” which was later named for its explorer. But while Hudson was the

first white man to sight Delaware (1609), he has not received so much credit for his discovery as Lord De La Warr, who really did nothing to deserve that the state should remember him. A year after Hudson had been there, De La Warr, it is said, anchored his ship off the mouth of Delaware Bay, but did not explore upstream. Still, De La Warr

happened to be governor of Virginia at that time, while Hudson was nothing but a sea captain sailing for the Dutch. So De La Warr gave his name to the bay, and to the Indians whom he never saw, just as if he had been the first discoverer.

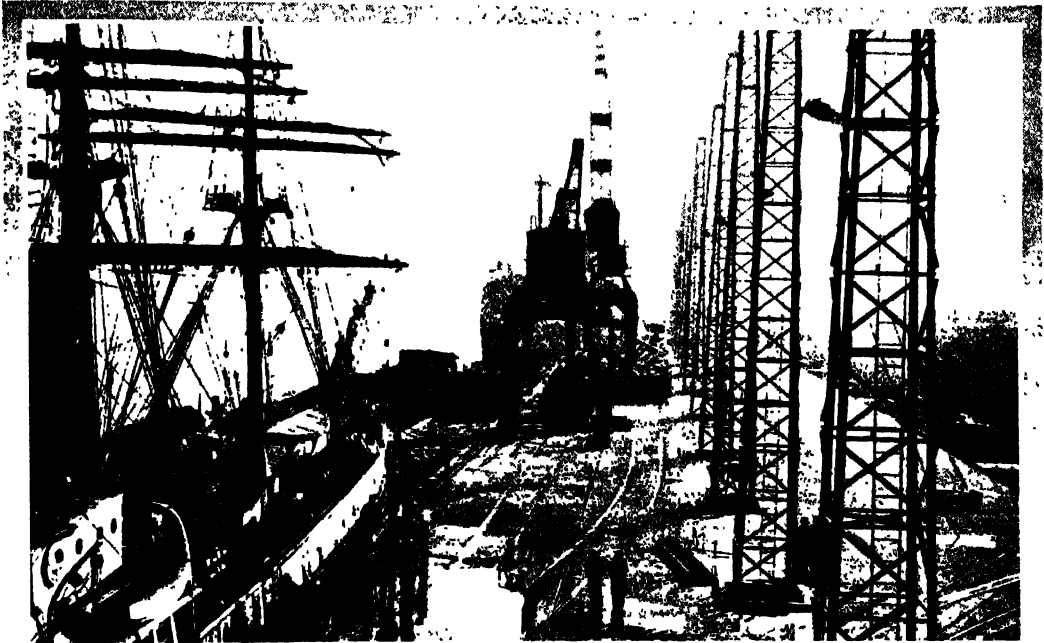
The first white men to possess the region were not so much the Dutch, who explored it, or the English, who named it, as the Swedes, who actually lived in it. To be sure, the first settlement was made by the Dutch (1631), near what is now Lewes (lū'is). But they were so harsh to their Indian neighbors that the Delawares

quickly destroyed their fort and broke up their settlement. In 1638 a company of Swedish merchants sent out a band of settlers under Peter Minuit (mīn'ū-īt), a Dutchman who had been governor of New Netherland. Their settlement, which they named Christinaham, is now the city of Wilmington; and the church they built there still stands. The Swedes lived peacefully, growing crops and doing a little trading with the Indians. Soon their settlement had grown so large that they were calling Delaware New Sweden. But trouble came with the Dutch, who had settled near, and in 1655, following a successful attack by the doughty Peter Stuyvesant (stī'vē-sănt), the whole region became part of



Here is one of the buildings of the University of Delaware, an institution founded in 1833 at Newark, Delaware.

## THE HISTORY OF DELAWARE



The ships shown here have sailed up the broad mouth of the Delaware to tie up, at last, at the municipally

owned marine terminals at Wilmington, the largest city and chief port of the state.

New Netherland. When the English took New Amsterdam, Delaware too became an English possession (1664).

### The Blue Hen's Chickens

That threw the door open to the English. For the first time they began to settle in Delaware, and soon they far outnumbered the Dutch and the Swedes. At first the only important public question before the new settlers was the dispute as to whether Delaware was a separate territory or belonged to Maryland or Pennsylvania. This dispute became fairly heated on several occasions, and was not really settled until the Revolutionary War, when Delaware at last became a state (1776)—one of the original thirteen. During the war Delaware furnished two of the finest regiments in the American army, and several small battles were fought on her soil. One of those two Delaware regiments carried about with it a number of fighting roosters, all of them the descendants of one blue chicken. For this reason the people of the state were known to their neighbors as the "Blue Hen's Chickens," and the name

has stuck even to this day. After the war, Delaware was the first state to ratify the federal constitution (December 7, 1787).

All this time Delaware had been growing steadily and quietly. She had no sudden period of tremendous expansion, like Illinois, but kept to about the same rate of growth year after year. Of course most of the early settlers in Delaware were farmers. Outside of Wilmington there were only a few small villages, and even Wilmington was never a very big city until fairly recent years. So it was on the fertile, level farms of her countryside that Delaware's growing population was to be found. There her citizens grew Indian corn and wheat in large quantities. Potatoes, oats, hay, and livestock were others of their products.

### A Little State in a Young Country

With these flourishing crops, and with the help of a small fishing industry and a fairly busy spinning and weaving industry, Delaware built up a substantial prosperity. For a while her forests were of some importance, for they contained a good deal of white oak

---

## THE HISTORY OF DELAWARE

---

which was extremely useful in shipbuilding. Those trees furnished the foundation for the shipbuilding industry which Wilmington carries on even to this day. But the forests were soon exhausted, and Delaware had to bring in wood for her ships from other states. As for her mining industries, a little sand for making glass, a certain amount of clay, and some small deposits of granite—all in the northern part of the state—accounted for the whole of them, as they do to this day.

### A Difficult Decision

Into this peaceful farming community the Civil War broke suddenly, bringing its message of hate and destruction. Delaware was a slaveholding state, but when it came to deciding between the Union and her slaves, she chose the Union. Of course there were many Southern sympathizers, especially in the southern part of the state, where most of the slaves were owned. Many of those men slipped away to fight for the cause they believed in, even though their state had sided with the North. Delaware's losses in men were heavy, even though very little fighting took place on her soil. When the war was over, Delaware refused to ratify the constitutional amendment forbidding slavery.

### The Famous Delaware Peaches

The inhabitants of Delaware had known for a long time that their state was finely adapted to growing fruit. Her rich soil, her plentiful rainfall, and her even, moderate temperature all fitted her for this crop. Today apples, grapes, pears, plums, and prunes are among the most important crops of the state. The peaches which she grows are so excellent and so famous that Delaware has adopted the peach blossom as the state flower. Her berries—strawberries, blackberries, and raspberries—are still more important. Corn, oats, wheat, hay, and white and sweet potatoes pay well, and broiling chickens bring handsome returns. Nearly all these crops, as well as tomatoes and other garden vegetables, Delaware ships to the big markets of Philadelphia and New York.

In our story of Maryland we have told of

the fine farming organization on the eastern shore of Chesapeake Bay. Oyster fishing might almost be considered a kind of farming, too, for the oysters are planted in special beds and carefully cultivated. With the regular fisheries, mostly for sturgeon and shad, oysters contribute greatly to Delaware's income.

The manufacturing industries of Delaware are varied and flourishing. Especially in the years since 1900 they have developed with a good deal of speed. In 1899 the state, in order to attract business, passed laws especially favorable to corporations, with the result that many such organizations are incorporated in Delaware, even though they operate in other states.

### Busy Delaware

To-day Delaware houses a vast number of industries for her small size. Most of them are in the northern part of the state, around Wilmington, where about half of the people of Delaware live. The coming of the railroads made Wilmington an active repair and construction center. Her leather-working industries have been important for a long time; and during the late summer and fall her huge canning and preserving factories are always hard at work storing up the Delaware fruit crop. Slaughtering and meat packing are carried on around Wilmington; and in the valley of the Brandywine River, not far from the city, is the chief factory of a vast manufacturing corporation made up of many branches in various states. At first it manufactured gunpowder only, but now it makes many other products—paints and varnishes, nylon and other artificial silks, camera films, and a whole list of chemical products. During World War I it manufactured forty percent of all the explosives used by the allies. It is easy to see why this great corporation, controlled by one family, should have vast power in the state.

After Wilmington the cities of Delaware are not very big or very important. Near Wilmington is New Castle, known chiefly for its shad fisheries and its harbor. Like the state, the cities are small, but all are prosperous.

## DELAWARE

**AREA:** 2,057 square miles—47th in rank.

**LOCATION:** Delaware is one of the border states of the South Atlantic group. It lies between 38° 27' and 39° 50' N. Lat. and between 75° 2' and 75° 47' W. Long. On the north and northwest is Pennsylvania; on the east are the Delaware River, Delaware Bay, and the Atlantic Ocean; and on the south and west is Maryland. Across the Delaware River lies New Jersey. Delaware is the second smallest state in the Union.

**PHYSICAL FEATURES:** Delaware lies in the eastern part of the peninsula that separates Chesapeake Bay from the Atlantic Ocean, and is therefore entirely in that portion of our country known as the Atlantic coastal plain. For this reason the state is mostly low and level, with an average elevation of only 60 feet, though north of White Clay and Christiana creeks the hills are well defined and the streams run swiftly. Of all the states in the Union Delaware is the lowest. There are no important rivers except the Delaware (296 m. long). The drainage is mostly into Delaware River and Delaware Bay, though certain streams that make their way to the Chesapeake rise along the western border of the state. Most important of these is the Nanticoke. Along Delaware Bay there are a good many marshes, but the Atlantic coast is mostly sandy. Lewes, New Castle, and Wilmington all have harbors. The last is formed by the estuary of the Brandywine and Christiana creeks. The highest point in the state (440 feet) is to be found at Centerville, on a ridge that runs west of Wilmington in a northwesterly direction, forming the watershed between Brandywine and Christiana creeks. Delaware has 405 square miles of water, and no irrigated land.

**CLIMATE:** At Wilmington the mean Jan. temperature is 35° F.; the mean July temperature, 75° F. The record high is 100° and the record low, 5° F. The mean annual temperature for the state is about 55° F. The highest temperature reported in the state is 107°; the lowest is -12° F. The annual rainfall is between 40 and 45 inches. The nearness of the Atlantic Ocean and of Chesapeake Bay gives Delaware a mild, even climate.

**INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING:** University of Delaware, at Newark, with an affiliated agricultural experiment station; State Junior College for Colored Students, at Dover.

**CHARITIES AND CORRECTION:** State Hospital for the Insane, at Farnhurst; Delaware Industrial School for Girls (white), at Claymont; Industrial School for Colored Girls of Delaware, at Marshallton; Ferris Industrial School of Delaware, at Marshallton; Home for the Feeble-minded, at Stockley; Palmer Home for aged whites, at Dover; Layton Home for Aged Colored People, at Wilmington; Wilmington House of Detention, at Wilmington; New Castle County Workhouse; Brandywine Sanatorium; Edge-wood Sanatorium; and the jails and almshouse maintained by each of the three counties of Delaware. Delaware inflicts the death penalty by hanging.

**POLITICAL FACTS:** Delaware is now governed under her fourth constitution, which was adopted in 1897. The legislature consists of the Senate, with members elected for four years, and the House, with members elected for two years. The legislature meets in alternate years. Of the executive officers the governor, lieutenant-governor, attorney-general, and insurance commissioner are elected for four years; and the state treasurer and auditor of accounts are chosen for two years. The governor may not serve more than two terms. The judiciary is headed by a supreme court, which is made up of a chief justice and four associates. They also constitute the court of general sessions and the court of oyer and terminer. Other courts are a court of chancery, an orphans' court consisting of a

chancellor and a resident associate judge of the county and a registers' court. The chancellor, chief justice, and associates are appointed by the governor and confirmed by the Senate. Their term is for twelve years.

The secrecy and purity of the ballot are carefully guarded. In order to vote a citizen must be over 21 years of age, have lived in the state for a year, in the county for three months, and in the district for thirty days, must be able to read the constitution and write his own name, and must not be a pauper or a member of the army or navy.

The hundred, or township, is the unit of local government.

The primary law provides for the nomination of county officials, members of the legislature, and the election of delegates to the various party conventions.

The capital of Delaware is at Dover.

**GAME AND BIRD RESERVATIONS:** Killcohook in New Castle County, Bombay Hook in Kent County, and Cape Henlopen in Sussex County protect birds of various kinds and muskrats.

**NAME:** From the Delaware River, which in turn received its name from the bay. It, in turn, had been named by Captain Samuel Argall in honor of Thomas West, Lord De La Warr, or Delaware, an Englishman who was governor of Virginia. Lord Delaware was descended from a noble family with an estate called La Warre, or Warwick, in Gloucestershire. Many versions of the name exist. "War," the first syllable of "Warwick," is French (werre) and means "strife, war, confusion," etc. "Wick" means "town" or "village"—also "dwelling place," or "small inlet."

**NICKNAMES:** "Blue Hen State" from the Revolutionary story of a Delaware company and their fighting cocks, descended from a certain blue hen. The regiments were known as the "Blue Hen's Chickens" and the nickname clung to the state. Delaware is also called the Diamond State—from the fact that it is small in size but great in importance. It is called New Sweden because Peter Minuit was sent out in 1638 by Queen Christina of Sweden, and built a fort at Wilmington, which he named after the Queen and garrisoned with Swedes and Finns.

The people are called "Blue Hen's Chickens," as explained above, and Muskrats, from the former prevalence of those animals in the state.

**STATE FLOWER** Peach blossom (*Prunus persica*), chosen because of the supremacy of Delaware in peach growing.

**STATE SONG:** "Our Delaware," words by George B. Hynson and music by Will M. S. Brown; approved in 1925.

**STATE FLAG:** A colonial blue field bearing a buff diamond in the center of which is the state coat of arms and below it, in yellow letters, "Dec. 7, 1787," the date of the entry of Delaware into the Union. This flag is official but has never been adopted by legislative action.

**STATE MOTTO:** "Liberty and Independence."

**STATE BIRD:** The "Blue Hen Chicken" was adopted by the state legislature April 14, 1939. The cardinal had formerly been generally accepted.

**INTERESTING FACTS:** Delaware observes New Year's Day, Lincoln's Birthday, Washington's Birthday, Good Friday, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Columbus Day, Election Day, Armistice Day, Thanksgiving Day, and Christmas Day. Delaware Day, on December 7, is also occasionally observed.

The state still punishes criminals at the whipping post under a law of 1771.

# **DELAWARE—Continued**

<b>Population of state 1940, 266,505</b>		Bridgeville (H3)	1,180	Harrington (H3)	2,113	Newport (H1)	987
<b>Counties</b>		Camden (H2)	682	Hartly (H2)	125	Ocean View (J3)	406
Kent (H2)	34,441	Cheswold (H2)	232	Houston (H3)	296	Odessa (H2)	393
		Clayton (H2)	890	Kenton (H2)	233	Port Penn (H1)	271
New Castle (H1)	179,562	Dagsboro (J3)	222	Laurel * (H3)	2,884	Rehoboth (J3)	1,247
Sussex (H3)	52,502	Delaware City (H1)	1,163	Leipsic (H2)	210	St. Georges (H1)	339
		Delmar <sup>1</sup> (H4)	881	Lewes (J3)	2,246	Seaford * (H3)	2,804
		Dover * (H2)	5,517	Little Creek (J2)	242	Selbyville (J4)	882
				Magnolia (J2)	218	Smyrna (H2)	1,870
<b>Cities and Towns</b>		Ellendale (J3)	287	Middletown (H2)	1,529	Townsend (H2)	544
[Places marked with an asterisk (*) were classi- fied as urban in 1940]		Elsmere (H1)	1,630	Milford * (J3)	4,214	Viola (H2)	113
		Farmington (H3)	120	Millsboro (J3)	432	Wilmington * (H1)	112,504
Bethany Beach (J3)	152	Belton (H2)	442	Millville (J3)	184	Woodside (H2)	189
Bethel (H3)	245	Frankford (J3)	563	Milton (J3)	1,198	Wyoming (H2)	870
Blades (H3)	601	Frederica (J2)	645	Newark * (H1)	4,502		
Bowers (J2)	328	Georgetown (J3)	1,820	New Castle * (H1)	4,414		
		Greenwood (H3)	573				

<sup>1</sup> Population of Delmar town, Wicomico County Maryland, 1,184 in 1940.



---

# *The* HISTORY of FLORIDA

---

## Reading Unit

### No. 9

---

## FLORIDA: THE PENINSULA STATE

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

### *Interesting Facts Explained*

Florida, the land of flowers, 8-69  
What Ponce de Leon found when in search of a Fountain of Eternal Youth, 8-69  
When the United States took over Florida, 8-71

How the Everglades were drained, 8-72  
Florida's seagoing highway, 8-74  
The home of the sponge, 8-74  
The importance of tourists in Florida's life, 8-74

### *Things to Think About*

What does the word "Florida" mean?  
How many lakes are there in central Florida?  
What were the reasons for Florida's slow growth?  
Why did Florida recover from

the Civil War sooner than most of the South?  
What does the government plan to build in Florida?  
What kinds of fruits are grown in Florida?

### *Picture Hunt*

Where do the Seminole Indians live? 8-70  
What important industries are

there in Florida? 8-71-73  
How many varieties of fish live in Florida waters? 8-75

### *Related Material*

How long has it taken for the coral polyps to build the great coral reefs? 3-99  
What has the United States done for Cuba? 7-57  
How can we tell an alligator from

a crocodile? 3-442-44  
Why are people in the United States no longer allowed to shoot egrets or to sell their feathers? 4-146-47  
Where do sponges grow? 7-53

### *Practical Applications*

By what means does the government hope to ship goods cheaply from Florida? 8-72

How can two crops be raised on the same land at one time in Florida? 8-74

### *Leisure-time Activities*

PROJECT NO. 1: Read the story of the coral, 3-97-102.  
PROJECT NO. 2: Read the

story of the alligators and the wily crocodile, 3-437-45.

### *Summary Statement*

After an exciting and varied history, Florida has at last become the garden spot and the

land of romance and leisure that Nature intended her to be.



Photo by the Tallahassee C. of C.

Florida's capital is at Tallahassee, a city in the north-western part of the state. This strange name comes

from a Seminole word, as do many other place names in Florida. The capitol is shown above.

## FLORIDA: *the* PENINSULA STATE

*The Land of the Fountain of Youth Still Charms Us with Her Romantic Beauty, and Her Enterprising Citizens Have Built Up Several Industries That Give Her a More Substantial Fame*

**O**UR country is fortunate enough to lie in the Temperate Zone, where the changing seasons are a never-failing tonic, and force us to work hard to keep body and soul together. It is in the Temperate Zone that mankind seems to develop the greatest energy. But we are fortunate too in having within our boundaries two summer lands, where flowers bloom all the year and a breath of the warm tropics brings a touch of romance. Florida is one of those smiling lands, a place where people go from the sterner north to feel the kindly warmth of a sun that always rides high in the heavens.

She is a beautiful state. Even the diligent searcher of maps is likely to fall beneath her spell. For here are names that are sheer music—Withlacoochee, Oklawaha (ók'lá-wó'-hó), Chattahoochee, Apalachicola, (áp'á-

läch'í-kō'lá), Tallahassee, Pensacola, Okaloosa, (ók'ká-lōó'sá), and Ocala (ók-ká'lá). The word "Florida"—"land of flowers"—gives the state one of the most beautiful of all our state names. And when you add all the other romantic and beautiful words that she has attached to her thousands of lakes and countless gushing springs—many of which are in fact medicinal—it is hard to decide just which one of those sparkling bits of water might indeed be the Fountain of Eternal Youth which gave Florida her early fame.

Her surface is extremely level, yet on it are to be found regions of greater variety and beauty than one would think possible. In part she was formed by the busy little corals whose work we have described elsewhere. In the farthest western part the state

## THE HISTORY OF FLORIDA

is fairly high, with many rolling hills. Then, running down the western coast of her peninsula and north into Hamilton County, is a limestone belt like the one in Kentucky and Tennessee, full of potholes and sinkholes, with caves and underground rivers below the surface. Here are countless lakes, many of them connected by some underground stream, so that they rise and fall together. To the eastward the coastal plain which makes up all of Florida flattens out and lies in very level formations. There are a great many lakes in this region too, especially in the great Everglade swamps of the south, where thousands of square miles are covered with water, sword grass, and rich semitropical trees and flowers. Florida has 30,000 lakes in the central portion alone, and might well be called the Lake State. Because she is surrounded by water on three sides, and has the longest coast line of any state in the Union, she is oftenest called the Peninsula State.

### The Land of Flowers

There were two reasons why Florida was called the "land of flowers." Flowers grew all along her shores, and she was discovered on Easter Sunday, which is called in Spanish "Pascua Florida" or "Feast of Flowers." The discoverer was Ponce de Leon (pōn'thā dā lā-ōn'), a Spanish governor of Cuba who landed near St. Augustine (ō'gūs-tēn) in 1513, looking for a Fountain of Eternal Youth. Many vague stories told of the fountain, set in the midst of a beautiful flowery island; all of them promised eternal youth to any man who bathed in its miraculous waters. But alas for the beautiful dreams of Ponce de Leon! Before he could find his wonderful fountain or do anything at all to settle his land of flowers, he died of a

wound received in a fight with the Indians of Florida. For a long time afterward, nobody bothered with Florida. Perhaps people no longer believed in the Fountain, or perhaps the fate of Ponce de Leon discouraged them. At any rate it was not until 1565 that the Spaniards returned to Florida to build a fort at St. Augustine. They came at this time because French settlers who had tried

to found a colony in South Carolina were moving southward and coming into Florida. The Spaniards at once moved in and drove the French away. The fort which they built at that time is all that is left of the oldest permanent European colony in the United States. It was stormed several times by the French and English, but to-day you can still see it in the heart of the modern city of St. Augustine.

And now for a time the history of Florida

is very confused. One conquest of a region is important, but half a dozen are not. For more than a hundred years Florida was passed around from French to English to Spanish soldiers of fortune with great regularity. The Spaniards had settled the region and had a clear title to it; but the French and English armies and navies often came to claim ownership. A glimpse of what happened to western Florida may give some idea of the confusion of these years. From 1763 to 1783 the region belonged to England by treaty—it had belonged to Spain before 1763. Then for twelve years it was Spanish again, in 1795 Spain sold it to France, and in 1803 the United States claimed it, though the English tried to take control of it again in 1814. And this is what happened to only a part of the state! St. Augustine alone changed hands thirteen times. At long last it became clear that the Spaniards could not keep order here. Hundreds of savage Indians,



Florida has three universities. The University of Florida is at Gainesville; its Chemistry and Pharmacy Building is shown here. The plants and trees in the foreground grow only in the South.

## THE HISTORY OF FLORIDA



The Seminole Indians—the few that are left—live in the watery wildernesses of the Everglades. There they build crude shelters on the moundlike islands,

and paddle from place to place in canoes like the one above. In the tourist season they move out to the highways to sell their handiwork.



Photos by the Miami News Service

This is a view of Miami, one of Florida's famous resorts for those who seek to escape winter.

## THE HISTORY OF FLORIDA

lawless traders, and runaway slaves gathered in the swamps and backwoods of Florida to make raids on the plantations of the states to the north. The Spaniards could do nothing against these outlaws and pirates. So the United States took over the region and in 1822 organized it into a Territory. But it was not until 1845 that Florida became a state, for only then did she have the 60,000 settlers that were necessary.

The reasons for Florida's slow growth were many, but two were especially important. First of all, much of her land was either swampy or very sandy and dry. In either case it was useless for farming. A great deal of work had to be done to make the country flourish, and most of the settlers were not willing to undertake the task. Then the Indians who lived in the thick swamps and forests were powerful for a long time. The Creeks soon disappeared from the northern part of the state, but in the south the Seminoles (sēm'i-nōl)—an offshoot of the Creeks—under their chief Osceola (ōs'ē-ō'lā) forced the United States into some of the fiercest and bloodiest Indian wars ever fought. Not until 1842 was the Indian problem finally on the way to settlement, after much bitterness and loss of life. It is easy to see why people kept away from the "flowery land" for a long time.

### Taking Wealth from the Swamps

But those men who braved the Indians and the thick Florida undergrowth reaped rich rewards. When swamps could be drained, the rich mud of the bottom lands proved to be wonderful soil for farming. And even the sandy topsoil of the higher regions proved

to be productive when the settlers learned to use it correctly. Corn, oats, rice, hay, and potatoes were the first crops, as they were in almost every state in the South. Later, settlers from Georgia began drifting over the border and planting cotton in the northern part of the state. Tobacco was another early crop, grown almost entirely in Gadsden County, just northwest of Tallahassee. During all this period the rich swamp lands in the southern part of the state lay quite

untouched. People thought them useless. And so long as this land lay idle, Florida agriculture could not come into its own. The few manufacturing industries did not amount to much, either. Certain small manufactures sprang up in some of the cities along the coast, especially at Jacksonville, Pensacola, and Tampa. They mostly had to do with the small cotton and tobacco crops, with fishing, and with shipping. But on the whole, at the time of the Civil War Florida was a good deal of a frontier state,

almost undeveloped and with little interest outside farming.

Of course Florida had slaves, and so she had a reason for fighting on the Southern side. But in reality she was too backward to be of great importance either way. Within two years after she withdrew from the Union her chief ports had been captured and her Confederate troops driven into the interior. But when Federal troops tried to invade the peninsula and win Florida for the North, they were soundly defeated. The Battle of Olustee (ō-lūs'tē), in 1864, kept Florida in the control of the Confederates until the end of the war, though the Northern troops still held her seaports.



Photo by the Florida Co.

Fruits and vegetables grow abundantly in this favored land. The orange tree above is heavily laden with sun-ripening fruits destined for a northern market.

---

## THE HISTORY OF FLORIDA

---



Photo by the Sarasota County C. of C.

Florida has made truck gardening into an important industry; for her early produce is in great demand in the winter-bound states to the north, and her farmers

can raise several crops a season on the same piece of ground. The picture above shows how beans are gathered on a Florida truck farm.

Like many other Southern states Florida suffered more from the Reconstruction than from the Civil War itself. The freeing of the slaves alone meant a very real property loss; and the dishonest and inefficient state government added to the disorder and destruction. But Florida recovered sooner than most of the South, perhaps because the "carpetbag" politicians of the North concentrated on the richer and more prosperous regions of Virginia, the Carolinas, Alabama, and Mississippi.

### Draining the Everglades

Soon after the Civil War Florida began work on an impressive list of internal improvements, which she is still carrying out. Many canals were attempted between Lake Okeechobee (ō'kē-chō'bē)—in the heart of the Everglades—and the sea. Once completed, almost any one of these canals would have done much to drain off the Everglades, but very little was accomplished until after 1910. After that time, the work went ahead by leaps and bounds, and to-day much of that vast and beautiful wilderness of tangled swamp and shy wild life is open and productive land. Pensacola, Jacksonville, Key

West, Tampa, and Miami harbors were all deepened, widened, and improved. Down the east coast ran a long line of narrow lagoons, or shallow "lakes" separated from the sea by sand bars. These were deepened and widened and connected, to make an inland waterway down the whole east coast. And recently the United States government has projected a great canal from Jacksonville to Port Inglis, directly across the peninsula of Florida. This canal would make possible a direct passage from New Orleans to the Atlantic, and cut one to two and a half days off the voyage from New Orleans to New York. It would connect with a waterway running along the southern coast of Alabama, Mississippi, Louisiana, and part of Texas, and with another running north along Georgia, the Carolinas, and Virginia. In this way goods could be shipped by cheap water transportation in a good many directions. Florida's chief ports are Jacksonville, Key West, Tampa, Miami, Pensacola, and Fernandina. Much of their trade is with Cuba.

### A Highway that Goes to Sea

Another internal improvement of the greatest importance to Florida is her great

## THE HISTORY OF FLORIDA



Photo by Tarpon Springs C. of C.

Florida's coasts are teeming with all sorts of interesting and valuable sea creatures. Among them are the sponges. You see a goodly number of them here, piled high on a dock in Tarpon Springs.



Photo by the Tampa C. of C.

In a few places ancient bones and other animal remains have made deposits of phosphate, valuable as a fertilizer. Here is one of the many places in Florida where this material is worked.



Photo by the U. S. Forest Service

- Turpentine is another of Florida's valuable products. This photograph shows workers in the process of "turpentineing," or tapping the native pine trees and collecting the sap as it runs out.

## THE HISTORY OF FLORIDA

railroad system. Because the state is flat, railroads are easy to build, yet they were slow to arrive. In 1880 there were only 518 miles of track in the state, but then the railroad builders began in earnest. Twenty years later there were more than six times as many miles of track. An interesting branch of Florida's highways is the only sea-going highway in existence. This road runs more than a hundred miles on an elevated roadway along a narrow ridge of coral rocks and sand bars that reaches out to Key West, the southernmost island of the Florida peninsula. Often the automobiles seem to run on water far out in the middle of the sea.

### Florida's Many Fruits

Naturally with all these improvements the industries and cities of Florida soon began to flourish. Agriculture still holds first place, for since the Civil War Florida has been producing the things she is best fitted to grow. She no longer spends her time on wheat, which Nebraska or Illinois can grow better; fruit is the great Florida crop nowadays. Florida oranges, grapefruit, and tangerines, Florida pineapples, lemons, avocados (äv'ô-kä'dô), peaches, pears, bananas, figs, and grapes are known over all the country. Most of our supply of limes come from Florida, and the guava (gwä'vâ), a tropical fruit, is getting a good start there. Both the soil and the climate are perfectly suited to raising all these fruits, though sometimes "cold snaps" have done immense damage, especially to the orange trees. The growing of pecans is coming to be more and more important, especially in the north. Florida's production of cotton has fallen off recently, but more and more tobacco is being planted. Key West and Tampa are the great cigar and cigarette manufacturing centers, and employ hundreds of skilled workers, many of whom come from Cuba. Tallahassee (täl'â-häs'ë), near the tobacco-growing region, is more a shipping point for it than a manufacturing center, and also sends cotton, fruit, corn, and vegetables to all parts of the Union. Jacksonville, Tampa, and Miami are busy ports. Miami sends huge shipments abroad by sea and air.

The raising of early vegetables for northern markets is bringing the state more and more

money every year. The luxuriant truck gardens are almost like a factory, for with skillful management and a generous use of fertilizer, two crops can be raised on the same land at one time, and a succession of crops planted during the season. Besides the crops we have mentioned Florida grows oats, peanuts, white potatoes, and sweet potatoes.

### The Home of the Sponge

The fisheries of Tampa and other ports have begun to flourish of late. Besides food fish of all sorts, the fishing fleet of Tampa brings to shore great quantities of oysters, turtles, and sponges. Tarpon Springs ships more sponges than any other city in the world. Florida has long led the nation in mining phosphate (fös'fât) rock, used for fertilizer. Jacksonville is the center for the industry. She also leads in fuller's earth, used in cleaning fabrics and clarifying oil, and she produces stone, clay, sand and gravel, lime, and peat. Her timber output was once larger than it is to-day. But she still has a good yield, and woods cover large parts of the state. Turpentine and resin are among the most important forest products. Corn, rice, sweet potatoes, sugar cane, and Irish potatoes are old farm crops, but peanuts have lately come to be planted widely. For a while the hunting of alligators for their skins and of egrets for their beautiful white plumes were good-sized industries. But to-day the scaly reptiles and the shy and lovely birds are only rarely found in the depths of the Everglades.

### Vacation Land

One large source of Florida's income has not yet been described. This is her "tourist trade." Every winter thousands of people come to this smiling state, lured by her broad beaches, warm climate, and beautiful scenery. They find health in her fine sunshine, and sport in fishing for the huge tarpon and the kingfish. Some two million tourists may visit the state in a single year, and spend hundreds of millions of dollars. This amounts to much more than Florida's agriculture in a year. It is easy to see how important tourists are in Florida's life. Tampa, Miami (mî-âm'î), Palm Beach, St. Augustine, Key West,



## THE HISTORY OF FLORIDA



Miami News Bureau Photo

Florida waters are beautiful and alluring. On the beaches are swimming and water-skiing: a fascinating sport that is shown above. And farther offshore

there is deep-sea fishing, with some 600 varieties, all told, to be the fisherman's prey. Among the most sporting are the king fish and the tarpon.

Clearwater, and Pensacola, all are famous winter resorts, and St. Petersburg boasts a "trailer city" of gigantic proportions. So sudden was the growth of this business that a great boom in Florida real estate took place in the years between 1923 and 1926. During that time the value of land went up unbelievably, until the most worthless bits of swamp and sand sold at tremendous prices. Many men bought land without ever seeing it, and later found they had bought lots in the middle of a lake, or in a huge dark swamp where no man had ever been. In 1926 this boom suddenly collapsed, and the way was left open for more substantial growth.

In education Florida has had the same problems to face as the rest of the South, and as in the rest of the South her industrial development is helping to overcome them. For a long time Negro illiteracy was very high; in 1900, 38.4 percent of all Florida Negroes could not read or write. Native white illiteracy was at 5.2 percent. But by 1930 both these figures had been more than cut in half, and stood at 18.8 for the Negroes and 2.0 percent for the whites. Illiteracy as a whole sank from 21.9 to 7.1 percent in this same period. This remarkable reduction has been brought only by great effort. In-

creasing amounts of money have been spent by the state on education—in 1930 over five times as much as in 1912; and with Florida's ever-growing prosperity we may look for still greater expenditures and better education in the future. The state has a number of good institutions of higher learning.

And so it is that after an exciting and varied history, deeply and darkly stained with the blood of contending nations and races, Florida has at last developed into the garden spot which Nature intended her to be. With her flourishing fields, her long, wide beaches, mild climate, and rich semitropical greenery, it is not strange that she has come to be the state of romance and leisure. Neither Ponce de Leon nor anyone else ever found a fountain of youth by walking over the countryside and jumping into every likely-looking pond. But by digging in the ground, by planting trees and vegetables and building beautiful towns—and by using the fine tonic of romance and imagination—other generations have made Florida into a true Fountain of Youth for tired people of other climes. For this achievement alone, even if she had done nothing else, the state of beautiful names would long be remembered with pride and affection by her sister states.

## FLORIDA

**AREA:** 58,560 square miles—21st in rank.

**LOCATION:** Florida, one of the South Atlantic states, lies between 24° 30' and 31° N. Lat., and between 79° 48' and 87° 38' W. Long. It is bounded on the north by Alabama and Georgia; on the east by the Atlantic Ocean; on the south by the Straits of Florida, which separate it from Cuba, and by the Gulf of Mexico; and on the west by the Gulf of Mexico and Alabama. Florida lies the farthest south of any state in the Union.

**PHYSICAL FEATURES:** With the exception of Delaware, Florida is the lowest state in the Union, with an average elevation of only 100 ft. All the eastern part of the state lies in the Atlantic coastal plain, and is low and flat, but in northwest Florida there is a section of rolling hills that extends into Alabama. A low divide runs down the central part of the peninsula and forms the watershed for the state. It is rarely more than 300 feet high, but in Polk County it rises in Iron Mountain to 325 feet, the highest point in the state. Florida has a great deal of swamp land, especially in the south, where a large tract known as the Everglades and measuring 5,000 square miles is largely covered with standing water from which rise grassy hummocks or cypress swamps and an occasional grassy plain. The soil is very fertile and is being drained for farms. Big Cypress Swamp lies to the west of the Everglades, and in the northeastern part of the state the Okefenokee Swamp extends into southern Georgia.

The state is well supplied with rivers, many of which rise in lakes that are fed by springs. The most important on the eastern coast is the St. Johns (276 m. long), which empties into the Atlantic in the northeast corner of the state. It may be navigated for some 250 miles. On the west coast the Withlacoochee empties into the Gulf of Mexico. And in the northwestern part of the state the Gulf of Mexico receives the Suwannee (190 m. long), which rises in Georgia in the Okefenokee Swamp; the Apalachicola (90 m. long), which is formed by the union of the Flint and the Chattahoochee, both of which rise in Georgia; the Choptawatchee (180 m. long), which rises in Alabama; and the Escambia, another stream that has its headwaters in Alabama. The Perdido forms the western boundary between Florida and Alabama, and the St. Marys (175 m. long), rising in the Okefenokee Swamp in Georgia, forms part of the boundary between Georgia and Florida before it reaches the Atlantic. The Oklawaha, a tributary of the St. Johns, is perhaps Florida's most beautiful river. Florida rivers are picturesque with towering trees draped in Spanish moss.

Florida has a longer coast line than any other state in the Union. It measures 3,751 miles, and has a number of good harbors. On the east coast, and on part of the west coast as well, are a good many sand reefs that form a continuous line along the shore, with lagoons or bays—in Florida often called "rivers"—behind them. The harbors on the Atlantic are Fernandina, St. Augustine, and Miami. The harbors on the Gulf are on the whole better than the ones on the eastern shore; among them Tampa, Key West, and Pensacola are the most important. A long chain of small islands, known as "keys," extends southwest from Biscayne Bay, and one of the outermost boasts the important city of Key West. Inside the islands along the eastern coast the Florida Waterway for small boats reaches from Jacksonville to Miami, a distance of 383 miles. Another waterway connecting Lake Okeechobee and the Caloosahatchee River is being built. A sea-level waterway has been projected between Jacksonville on the Atlantic and Port Inglis on the Gulf of Mexico. It would make use of the St. Johns, the Oklawaha, and the Withlacoochee rivers,

and would shorten the voyage from New York to New Orleans by one or two days, or even more.

Florida has a great many lakes, especially in the central part of the state, where there are thousands of them. The largest is Lake Okeechobee, which has an area of about 1,250 square miles but, like other Florida lakes, is very shallow. Most of these lakes are formed in sinkholes in the limestone that underlies the region, and many of them are connected by underground channels, so that two or more lakes rise and fall together. There are a great many underground streams and numerous springs, many of them, such as Green Cove Spring in Clay County, with medicinal properties. Near Jacksonville a spring comes up from the bottom of the sea with such force that it sends out waves in every direction. All together Florida has 3,805 square miles of water, and no irrigated land.

**CLIMATE:** The climate of Florida varies with the latitude. The peninsular section has, in the northern part, a climate that is semitropical, and here, in spite of occasional frosts, citrus fruits are raised. But the southern third is warmer still, and will ripen tropical fruits like the pineapple. The presence of the ocean and the sweep of the trade winds gives these warmer sections of the state a climate with fewer extremes than are felt in the northwest, where conditions are much as they are in other Gulf states. It is in the northwest that we find Florida's record high of 103° F. and her record low of 13°. The mean annual temperature for the whole state is about 71°. At Key West the January mean is 70°, the July mean 84°. The record high there is 100°, the record low 41°. The state has about 52 in. of rainfall a year.

**INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING:** The more important institutions in the state are Florida Southern College at Lakeland, Florida State College for women at Tallahassee, University of Florida at Gainesville, the John B. Stetson University at De Land, University of Miami at Coral Gables, Rollins College at Winter Park, and the University of Tampa at Tampa. A normal training school is part of the state university. The Florida Agricultural and Mechanical College for colored students is at Tallahassee. Other colored institutions are the Florida Baptist Academy at Jacksonville, the Cookman Institute at Jacksonville, and the Normal and Manual Training School at Orange Park.

**CHARITIES AND CORRECTION:** Florida maintains a hospital for the insane at Chattahoochee, a reform school and an industrial school for boys at Marianna, an industrial school for girls at Ocala, a farm colony for the feeble-minded at Gainesville, a children's home at Jacksonville, a school for the deaf and blind at St. Augustine, and a penitentiary at Raiford. Able-bodied male convicts are put to work building roads. Florida administers capital punishment by electrocution.

**POLITICAL FACTS:** Florida is governed under the constitution of 1885, which has since been amended. The legislature consists of two houses: a Senate elected for four years but changing half its membership every two years; and a House of Representatives elected for two years. Regular sessions of the legislature are limited to sixty days and special sessions to twenty days.

The governor, who heads the executive branch of the government, and other state officials are elected for four years, and the governor may not serve two consecutive terms. Other state officials include an attorney-general, a secretary of state, a treasurer, a comptroller, and various commissioners.

## FLORIDA—Continued

The judiciary is headed by a supreme court with five justices elected for a term of six years. They choose the chief justice by lot from among their number. Below this court are the circuit courts with nine justices, who serve a six-year term and are appointed by the governor with the consent of the Senate. All cases of equity are heard in the circuit courts, and to them certain cases arising in the county courts may be appealed. Cases involving sums of less than \$100 are heard by judges of the county courts or by justices of the peace. Justices of the county courts serve four-year terms.

A voter must be a United States citizen, must be over twenty-one years of age, must have lived in the state a year and in the county six months, and, unless he be a new voter, must have paid a poll tax for two years preceding the election. A direct primary law was adopted in 1913, together with measures for the regulation of campaign expenses and penalties for corrupt practices in elections.

The county is the unit of local government. Each county elects five commissioners for a two-year term, as well as the regular county officers, most of whom serve four-year terms. Towns and cities have the privilege of establishing the commission form of government.

The constitution provides homestead tax-exemption laws, prohibits the levy of state income or inheritance taxes, and contains various other provisions likely to attract wealth to the state. Divorce may be obtained after a 90-day residence in the state.

The capital of Florida is at Tallahassee.

**PARKS:** The Tropical National Park in the Everglades was authorized by Congress in 1934, to be set up upon the donation of the necessary lands. The park will cover about 2,500 square miles.

**NATIONAL MONUMENTS:** Castle San Marcos at St. Augustine and Fort Matanzas, sixteen miles south of it, became national monuments in 1924. San Marcos (1672) is the oldest fortification now standing in the United States.

Fort Jefferson, on Garden Key of the Dry Tortugas, a group of islands about 70 miles west of Key West, became a national monument in 1935. On these islands which got their name from the large numbers of turtles living on them a fortification was begun in 1846, a part of the country's plan of defense in the Gulf of Mexico. The place was never garrisoned until 1861, when a small force of Federal troops was stationed there. In days long gone by, the islands were headquarters for buccaneers and pirates.

Florida has 1,241,955 acres of national forest.

**GAME AND BIRD RESERVATIONS:** All together Florida has eighteen national refuges, covering nearly 145,000 acres and protecting a variety of birds—pelicans, herons, cormorants, ducks, geese, upland game birds, ibises, egrets, man-o'-war birds, black skimmers, clap-

per rails, laughing gulls, terns, sandpipers, all varieties of shore birds, and also deer and fur-bearing animals. The largest is the St. Marks Migratory Bird Refuge, established in 1931 and covering 64,095 acres.

**NAME:** Florida was named in 1512 by Ponce de Leon, who in choosing the name was either celebrating the fact that he discovered the land on Easter Sunday, or that the whole land when he first saw it was covered with flowers. The word "Florida" is a Spanish feminine adjective meaning "flowery" or "covered with flowers." "Pascua Florida" is the Spanish for "Feast of Flowers," the name for Easter. "Tierra Florida" is the Spanish for "Flowery Land." So the adjective "Florida" might belong to either phrase.

**NICKNAMES:** Florida is called the Alligator State from the large numbers of alligators found there. It is called the Everglade State because of its famous tract known as the Everglades. Its official name is often translated into the Flower, or Flowery, State. Its large crop of oranges gives it the title of the Orange State, and its characteristic shape leads to its being known as the Peninsula State. Because of its long shore line on the Gulf of Mexico it is sometimes called the Gulf State.

The inhabitants of Florida are called Alligators, from the animals so common there; Crackers, because the old-time planters, it is said, had a way of cracking their whips over the backs of their mules; and Fly-up-the-Creeks, from the green herons common along the marshy streams.

**STATE FLOWER:** Orange blossom (*Citrus trifoliata*); adopted in 1909.

**STATE FLAG:** A white field bearing in its center the shield of the state, with red bars extending from the outer rim of the shield to each corner of the flag.

**STATE SONG:** "The Sewanee River"; and "Florida, My Florida," with words by Dr. C. V. Waugh set to the tune of "Maryland, My Maryland," adopted by a resolution of the House of Representatives in 1913.

**STATE MOTTO:** "In God We Trust."

**STATE BIRD:** Mocking bird.

**INTERESTING FACTS:** Florida observes New Year's Day, Washington's Birthday, Good Friday, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Columbus Day, Election Day, Armistice Day, Thanksgiving Day, Christmas Day, Robert E. Lee's Birthday on January 19th, Confederate Memorial Day on April 26th, and the birthday of Jefferson Davis on June 3rd.

Several thousand Seminole Indians live on the Seminole Indian Reservation on Lake Okeechobee, and others are scattered through the wilds of the Everglades.

Daytona Beach, on the eastern coast, is famous as a speedway for automobiles. Here many important races are held.

# FLORIDA—Continued

Population of state 1940, 1,897,414							
Counties							
Alachua <sup>1</sup> (D2)	38,607	Polk (F4)	86,665	Dennellon (D2)	1,217	Naples (E5) . . . .	1,253
Baker (D1)	6,510	Putnam <sup>2</sup> (E2)	18,698	Eustis * (E3)	2,930	Ocala * (D2)	8,986
Bay (A1)	20,686	St. Johns (E2)	20,012	Fernandina *	3,492	Okeechobee (F4)	1,658
Bradford <sup>2</sup> (D2)	8,717	St. Lucie * (F4)	11,871	(E1)		Orlando * (E3)	36,736
Brevard (F3)	16,142	Santa Rosa (A6)	16,085	Fort Lauderdale *	17,996	Ormond (E2)	1,914
Broward (F5)	39,794	Sarasota <sup>10</sup> (D4)	16,106	(F5)		Quiedo (E3)	1,356
Calhoun <sup>3</sup> (A1)	8,218	Seminole (E3)	22,304	Fort Meade (E4)	1,992	Pahokee * (F5)	4,766
Charlotte <sup>4</sup> (E5)	3,663	Sumter (D3)	11,041	Fort Myers *	10,604	Palatka * (E2)	7,140
Citrus (D3)	5,846	Suwannee (D1)	17,073	(E5)		Palm Beach* (F5)	3,747
Clay <sup>5</sup> (E2)	6,468	Taylor (C1)	11,565	Fort Pierce *	8,040	Palmetto * (D4)	3,491
Collier <sup>6</sup> (E5)	5,102	Union <sup>2</sup> (D1)	7,094	(F4)		Panama City *	11,610
Columbia (D1)	16,859	Volusia (E2)	53,710	Frostproof (E4)	1,704	(C6)	
Dade (F6)	267,739	Wakulla (B1)	5,463	Gainesville *	13,757	Pensacola * (A6)	37,449
De Soto * (E4)	7,792	Walton (B6)	14,246	(D2)		Perry * (C1) . .	2,668
Dixie <sup>7</sup> (C2)	7,018	Washington	12,302	Graceville (A1)	1,181	Plant City *	7,491
Duval (E1)	210,143	(C6)		Green Cove		(D3)	
Escambia (A6)	74,667	<b>Cities, Towns, and Villages</b>		Springs (E2) .	1,752	Pompano * (F5)	4,427
Flagler (E2)	3,008	[Places marked with an asterisk (*) were classified as urban in 1940]		Greenville (C1)	1,114	Port St. Joe (A2)	2,393
Franklin (B2)	5,991	Alachua (D2)	1,081	Gulfport (D4)	1,581	Port Tampa	1,124
Gadsden (B1)	31,450	Apalachicola *	3,268	Haines City *	3,890	Punta Gorda	1,889
Gilchrist <sup>1</sup> (D2)	4,250	(A2)		(F3)		(D5)	
Glades <sup>8</sup> (E4)	2,745	Apopka (E1)	1,312	Hallandale (F6)	1,827	Quincy * (B1)	3,888
Gulf <sup>3</sup> (A2)	6,951	Arcadia * (F4)	4,055	Hastings (E2)	1,035	River Junction *	7,110
Hamilton (D1)	9,778	Auburndale *	2,723	Havana (B1)	1,221	(B1)	
Hardee * (E4)	10,158	Avon Park *	3,125	Hialeah * (F6)	3,958	Riviera (F5)	1,981
Hendry * (E5)	5,237	(E4)		High Springs	2,010	St. Augustine *	12,090
Hernando (D3)	5,641	Baldwin (E1)	1,002	(D2)		(E2)	
Highlands <sup>9</sup> (E4)	9,246	Bartow * (E4)	6,158	Holly Hill (E2)	1,665	St. Cloud (E3)	2,042
Hillsborough		Blountstown	1,931	Hollywood *	6,239	St. Petersburg *	60,812
(D3)	180,148	Bonifay (C6)	1,924	(F5)		(D4)	
Holmes (C6)	15,447	Boynton (F5)	1,326	Homestead *	3,154	Sanford * (E3)	10,217
Indian River *		Bradenton *	7,444	(F6)		Sarasota * (D4)	11,141
(F3)	8,957	(D4)		Inverness (D4)	1,075	Sebring * (E4)	3,155
Jackson (A1)	34,428	Brooksville (D3)	1,607	Jacksonville *		South Miami	2,408
Jefferson <sup>9</sup> (C1)	12,032	Bunnell (E2)	1,030	(E1)	173,065	(F6)	
Lafayette <sup>1</sup> (C2)	4,405	Carrabelle (B2)	1,019	Jasper (D1)	1,722	Starke (D2)	1,480
Lake (E3)	27,255	Chipley (C6)	2,167	Key West * (E7)	12,927	Stuart (F4)	2,438
Lee * (E5)	17,488	Clearwater *	10,136	Kissimmee *	3,225	Tallahassee *	16,240
Leon (B1)	31,646	(D4)		(E3)		(B1)	
Levy (D2)	12,550	Clermont (E3)	1,631	Lake City * (D1)	5,836	Tampa * (D4)	108,391
Liberty (B1)	3,752	Clewiston (F5)	1,338	Lakeland * (E3)	22,068	Varon Springs *	3,402
Madison <sup>9</sup> (C1)	16,190	Cocoa * (F3)	3,098	Lake Wales *	5,024	(D3)	
Manatee <sup>10</sup> (D4)	26,098	Coral Gables *	8,294	(E4)		Lavars (E3)	1,119
Marion (D2)	31,243	(F6)		Lake Worth *	7,408	Titusville (F3)	2,220
Martin * (F4)	6,295	Crescent City	1,124	(F5)		Umatilla (E3)	1,149
Monroe (E6)	14,078	(E2)		Largo (D4)	1,031	Vero Beach *	3,050
Nassau (E1)	10,826	Crestview (B6)	2,252	Leesburg * (E3)	4,687	(F4)	
Okaloosa (B6)	12,900	Cross City (C2)	1,869	Live Oak * (D1)	3,427	Wauchula * (E4)	2,710
Okeechobee (F4)	3,000	Dade City * (D3)	2,561	Lynn Haven	1,246	West Palm Beach *	33,693
Orange (E3)	70,074	Dania * (F5)	2,902	Madison * (C1)	2,730	(F5)	
Osceola (E3)	10,119	Daytona Beach *	22,584	Manatee * (D4)	3,595	Wewahatchka	1,022
Palm Beach *		(E2)		Marianna * (A1)	5,079	(A1)	
(F5)	79,989	Deerfield (F5)	1,850	Melbourne *	2,622	Wildwood (D3)	1,546
Pasco (D3)	13,981	De Funiak Springs *	2,570	(F3)		Winter Garden *	3,060
Pinellas (D4)	91,852	(B6)		Miami * (F6)	172,172	(E3)	
		De Land * (F2)	7,041	Miami Beach *	28,012	Winter Haven *	6,199
		Dunedin (D3)	1,758	(F6)		(E3)	
				Milton (A6)	1,851	Winter Park *	4,715
				Monticello (C1)	2,042	(E3)	
				Mount Dora	1,880	Zephyrhills (D3)	1,252
				(E3)			
				Mulberry (E4)	1,502		

<sup>1</sup> Gilchrist organized from part of Alachua in 1926.  
<sup>2</sup> Part of Bradford taken to form Union in 1921, part annexed to Putnam in 1927.  
<sup>3</sup> Part of Calhoun taken to form Gulf in 1925.  
<sup>4</sup> Charlotte, Glades, Hardee, and Highlands organized from parts of De Soto in 1921. Part of Glades annexed to Hendry in 1937.  
<sup>5</sup> Parts of Bradford and Clay annexed to Putnam in 1927.  
<sup>6</sup> Collier and Hendry organized from parts of Lee in 1923, part of Glades annexed to Hendry in 1937.  
<sup>7</sup> Dixie organized from part of Lafayette in 1921.  
<sup>8</sup> Indian River organized from part of St. Lucie, and Martin organized from parts of Palm Beach and St. Lucie, in 1925.  
<sup>9</sup> Part of Jefferson annexed to Madison, and part of Madison annexed to Jefferson, in 1921.  
<sup>10</sup> Sarasota organized from part of Manatee in 1921.

---

# **The HISTORY of GEORGIA**

---

## **Reading Unit**

### **No. 10**

---

## **GEORGIA: THE EMPIRE STATE OF THE SOUTH**

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

### **Interesting Facts Explained**

Georgia, the youngest of the thirteen colonies, 8-78  
Georgia's part in the Revolution, 8-79  
Cotton and slaves in Georgia, 8-80-81  
Why Georgia imports milk,

butter, and eggs, 8-82  
How manufacturing has brought back prosperity to Georgia, 8-83  
What makes Georgia the "Empire State of the South," 8-83

### **Picture Hunt**

Why is Atlanta often called the "Gate City of the South"? 8-78

Why is it not wise for Georgia to cling to cotton as her principal crop? 8-81

### **Related Material**

The great plantations, 8-408-10  
Which secret society was organized in "dens," each under a "Cyclops," and all under a Great Grand Cyclops? 7-272-73  
Why did Harriet Beecher Stowe write "Uncle Tom's Cabin"? 13-318-19  
Good land that is fast being eaten away, 7-468, 470

Where have some of the most popular songs in the world come from? 9-28  
How the colonies were born, 7-121-33  
A famous son of Georgia, 13-338-39  
A famous Georgia poet, 13-335  
The story of great King Cotton, 9-27-34

### **Practical Applications**

Why did the large plantations grow all the food they needed? 8-80

How is cotton protected from the boll weevil to-day? 9-33

### **Leisure-time Activities**

PROJECT NO. 1: Read Sidney Lanier's poem of "The Marshes of Glynn," which refers to the marshes of Glynn County,

Georgia.  
PROJECT NO. 2: Read the story of Br'er Rabbit by Joel Chandler Harris.

### **Summary Statement**

No other state rallied from the Civil War so swiftly as Georgia, and no other state has

progressed more rapidly in the paths of industry and prosperity.

## GEORGIA: *the* EMPIRE STATE OF THE SOUTH

*Beautiful Georgia, after Many Reversals of Fortune, Is Winning Her Way to a New Prosperity and a Sound Social Order*

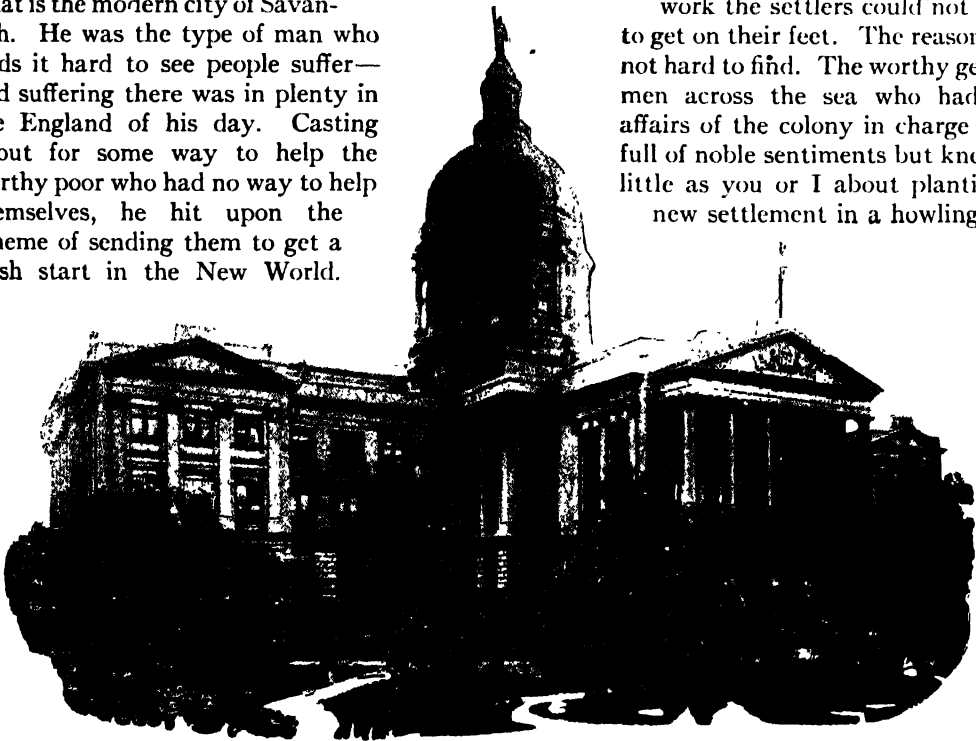
**T**HE colony of Georgia, youngest of the famous thirteen, was planted as a magnificent experiment. To be sure, shrewd statesmen back in the mother country had long wanted to see a robust little settlement south of the Carolinas. It was needed to act as a buffer between the Spaniards in Florida and the older English settlements farther north—and if it also could be of service in keeping the French from moving east from their settlements on Mobile Bay, it would come in handier still!

These were the purposes of the British government, but they were not the purposes of General James Edward Oglethorpe (ô'g'l-thôrp) when he set down his 114 colonists at the mouth of the Savannah River in 1733—to found what is the modern city of Savannah. He was the type of man who finds it hard to see people suffer—and suffering there was in plenty in the England of his day. Casting about for some way to help the worthy poor who had no way to help themselves, he hit upon the scheme of sending them to get a fresh start in the New World.

George II, the English ruler, was glad to give Oglethorpe a charter to found the colony—which was named for the King—and parliament voted a large sum of money to help it get a start. Sturdy Scotch Highlanders, hardworking Englishmen eager to better themselves, Portuguese Jews, and Lutherans from Germany, Switzerland, Italy, and other European countries came flocking over, for the settlement was to be a refuge for persecuted Protestants of every tongue. A high-minded set of laws was drawn up by the "Trustees" in England, who had the management of the colony's affairs. Everything seemed to favor the venture.

And yet, for all that, the colony did not prosper. Trade languished, and in spite of hard work the settlers could not seem to get on their feet. The reason was not hard to find. The worthy gentlemen across the sea who had the affairs of the colony in charge were full of noble sentiments but knew as little as you or I about planting a new settlement in a howling wil-

Below is Georgia's capitol building—at Atlanta, the capital city. Atlanta is often called the "Gate City of the South," for it is a center for many southern railway lines.



---

## THE HISTORY OF GEORGIA

---

derness. Without knowing conditions, they made all the laws for people who were much better able to make laws for themselves. They tried to make their settlers raise grapes for making wine, hemp for making linen, herbs for making medicine, and mulberries for growing silkworms—which the colonists tried to do, but with sad results. Those were not the crops for a new land, and the colonists could not make them pay.

### Problems of the Early Colony

More than that, the trustees hampered the trade with the Indians and forbade the colony to sell rum, which, made from West Indian molasses, was bringing substantial returns to the rest of the colonies. And they forbade the holding of slaves, another severe handicap for Georgia in competing with other settlements. For labor was exceedingly scarce in the New World, as it is in all new lands, and the high cost of hiring it forced the people of Georgia to charge a ruinous price for their goods. Naturally, customers went to Virginia or other colonies to buy. There seemed to be nothing that Georgia could sell the rest of the world in order to get the things she had to have.

At last the various restrictions were removed (1749), and in 1753 Georgia was put under the control of the crown. Then settlers from Virginia and North and South Carolina came flocking in, and the tide turned in the colony's affairs. Georgia prospered mightily, till by the time of the Revolution there was no more flourishing colony in the New World. In fact she was doing so well that when the Revolution broke out, nearly half her citizens refused to fight for the colonial cause. They were thoroughly contented under King George, and saw no reason to make a change. But a group of men who had come to Georgia from New England insisted upon bringing the colony in on the American side, and in the end Georgia decided that her interests lay with her sister colonies.

### Georgia's Part in the Revolution

The even division of her citizens between the British and the American causes made the Revolutionary War in Georgia a much

more bitter affair than it would otherwise have been. It was a civil war as well as a rebellion. The battles were many and fierce. The British captured Savannah (1778), Augusta, and Sunbury. But by 1782 the American forces were in complete control of the state. In 1777 the first state constitution had gone into effect, and in 1788 Georgia became the fourth state to ratify the federal constitution.

At this time Georgia claimed as her own all lands west to the Mississippi between her present northern and southern borders. That is, she considered that she owned most of Alabama and Mississippi, and a part of Florida, too. But the Cherokees (chĕr'ō-kĕ) and Creeks were making trouble for white settlers in Georgia's western counties, and in 1802 the state gave up all her claims to land west of the Chattahoochee (chăt'ā-hōō'chĕ) River. In return for these territories the federal government was to settle all the Indians' claims for land within the borders of Georgia. Much bickering and corruption and bloodshed followed. Georgia at times openly defied the federal government, and felt that in not turning out all the Indians at once it was failing her very badly. The Cherokees, an able tribe belonging to the great Iroquois (Ir'ō-kwoi) group of Indians, even formed themselves into a formal nation (1827), with a written constitution and legislative assembly to make their own laws. But the Indians at last gave up their claims to Georgia land and moved off west to Oklahoma. This whole period of the state's history was full of land frauds and huge speculations, as often happens in a raw, new land.

### Cities on the "Fall Line"

Now what is the appearance of this state that had such interesting beginnings? Georgia's surface is arranged on the same plan as that of all the Atlantic seaboard states south of New Jersey. Along the coast, and extending inland from a hundred to two hundred miles, are the soft sands and clays of the level coastal plain, which is here at its very widest and rises gradually as one goes inland. Near the sea it is covered with marshes. The end of the coastal plain is

## THE HISTORY OF GEORGIA



The School of Law of the University of Georgia is housed in this dignified building in Athens, Georgia

The university was chartered in 1785, and in 1801 Athens was founded to be its home.

marked by the "fall line," where the hard and very old rocks of the Piedmont Plateau (pēd'mōnt plā-tō') begin. This line runs across Georgia from Augusta through Milledgeville and Macon (mā'kūn) to Columbus, cutting the state into two almost equal sections, one north and the other south of the line. In Virginia, South Carolina, and the other Atlantic states the fall line runs nearly north and south, and divides the states into eastern and western portions; but in Georgia it turns toward the southwest.

### The Georgia Uplands

The Piedmont Plateau has been well worn down; and the Blue Ridge, so high and beautiful in Virginia and the Carolinas, loses its grandeur here and disappears entirely in the southwestern part of the state. North of the Piedmont Plateau are the higher Appalachian (ăp'ă-lă'chĭ-ăn) Mountains; and then comes the Great Valley, which extends the whole length of the Appalachian mountain system in the United States. In Georgia harder layers of rock stand up in it as ridges

running northeast and southwest. The great ridges of the Alleghenies (ăl'ĕ-gă'nĭ) do not reach so far south, but in the extreme northwest corner of the state is a little group of two or three mountains which are a part of the Cumberland Plateau, most of which lies in Tennessee.

### A Land of Cotton

Of course most of the early development of Georgia was in the field of agriculture, and the big crop was cotton. That is the story of almost all the southern states. But since many different types of soil are found in Georgia, the farmers did not at first devote themselves entirely to cotton. Transportation was poor in those early days, and the planters had to raise enough food for themselves and their slaves. Each large plantation produced almost everything it needed in the way of food. Indian corn, wheat, hay, oats, sweet potatoes, yams, all were important crops, and a good deal of live stock was raised. The slave labor which was common everywhere in Georgia made



## THE HISTORY OF GEORGIA

all agriculture a simple and profitable business, at the same time that it did great harm to the land. For the first half of the nineteenth century Georgia was a land of plenty, rich and successful in almost every way. Though the prosperity could not last, it made her a beautiful and gracious land, whose charm we can still feel to-day.

In manufacturing, too, Georgia was well advanced before the Civil War. Very few if any of the southern states began so early to manufacture on such a large scale. As a rule their prosperity was founded on agriculture before the Civil War and after it on manufacturing. But Georgia had had excellent reasons for turning to manufacturing, especially to the making of cotton cloth. Her many streams develop a tremendous quantity of waterpower, especially where they cross the fall line. She also has excellent ports, by which she can send her finished cloth to any part of the world. So by 1850 there were thirty-five cotton mills

in the state, all doing a very considerable business. The milling of flour is another industry which arose early in Georgia.

Unlike South Carolina, Georgia was harder hit by the Civil War itself than by the Reconstruction which followed. She had always been a slaveholding state, even when she had been the property of a private company, with laws against slavery. Slave labor had helped to develop the land quickly, and so Georgia had always had very definite ideas on the necessity of holding slaves. Many times during the first half of the nineteenth

century she had stood for the right of each state to control its own affairs in the matter of slavery. So it was quite natural, when the question of slavery was fanned to a fever heat in 1860, for Georgia to take her place as a leader of the South. During the first part of the war, only a few scattered battles

were fought on her soil, mostly for the seaports and the fertile, semitropical islands along the coast. Late in 1861 Federal ships set a tight blockade around all Georgia's seaports, and managed to keep it there. But these were trifling engagements, important at the time perhaps, but insignificant compared with what was to follow.

In the spring of 1864 General Sherman broke through the Confederate lines in Tennessee and drove the Southerners before him through Georgia. Through the entire northern part of the state he marched with his army, from Atlanta to Savannah and the Atlantic Ocean. Everywhere the Northern troops pillaged and burned and destroyed.

Georgia was left a shell, powerless to resist an enemy, and the back of the Confederate power was broken. A year later General J. H. Wilson of the Northern army led a troop of cavalry into Georgia and captured Jefferson Davis, the president of the Confederacy, at Irwinville. The war was over.

We have said that the Reconstruction in Georgia was less bitter and ruinous than in many other southern states. That is true. But it does not mean that it was not a period of terrible anger and resentment and suffering. The state was poor, for her



Here it stands, bale after bale of it—the source of Georgia's former prosperity and of much present poverty. Though Georgia can raise almost everything grown in the United States except a few semitropical fruits, she still clings to cotton as her principal crop. Its continued production has exhausted her soil and reduced many of her farmers to tenancy. For in years when the price of cotton is low, they cannot make both ends meet, and so run into debt, with small hope of escape from it. Georgia is now awake to the danger, and is raising more and more corn, peanuts, tobacco, fruits, and nuts. Some day she will have an agriculture of amazing variety and richness.

## THE HISTORY OF GEORGIA

property had been almost entirely destroyed, and her great plantations lay in ruins with no one to work them. Race prejudice was quick to spring up, and the Ku Klux Klan reared its head, terrorizing lawlessly any man who dared to speak against it. But after all, Georgia was not invaded by "carpet-baggers"—those Northern politicians who arrived with all their worldly goods in one carpetbag, to govern the conquered Southerners and to make money from state graft and corruption. Because the carpet-baggers kept away, there was less bitterness and more sensible rebuilding in Georgia than in most of the South.

Georgia's first prosperity, now destroyed by the Civil War, had been founded on her rich agriculture, especially her cotton crop. Now that the war was over and the price of cotton was high, Georgia seemed ready to return to the same sort of prosperity, for that valuable crop would grow everywhere except in the extreme north. The huge plantations were broken up into small farms, and the owners embarked on a policy of renting out the farms to tenants. Most of the Negroes who had been freed became tenants, and so did most of the white men who had no large holdings of land. They all had one idea, to raise vast quantities of cotton quickly and so to make money.

### The Tyranny of Cotton

Therefore within twenty years Georgia and the South as a whole were growing far more cotton than anyone wanted to buy. Cotton is not worth anything on the farm; it must be sold to a mill before it is of any use to the

farmer. When the new tenant farmers could not sell their cotton, their condition was desperate. In their eagerness to raise cotton, they had not bothered to raise grain and vegetables for their own use. The depression in cotton brought many of them to the edge of starvation, and forced them deep into debt. They had to borrow money on future crops in order to live. Moreover, cotton and tobacco rob the soil of precious minerals, and without fresh fertilization or crop rotation each planting is less productive than the one before. In this manner Georgia developed a group of poor tenant farmers. These Georgia "crackers"—so called because of the strange sound of their speech—became one of the state's worst problems, shared by most of the South.

Also, because of row-crop farming Georgia's land was being washed away. Each year cash crops and "run-off" water were

carrying away more of her wealth, while the boll weevil destroyed the cotton.

Georgia's farmers have learned that they must vary their produce, must replenish their land, and must combat the pest which ruined their cotton crops. They are just beginning to reap the prosperity, justly theirs for having learned their lesson so well. Livestock has become more important and cotton less so on the farms in recent years. Since the twenties the cotton lands have been cut in half, but the yield per acre has risen nearly forty percent. Other land has been turned to varied crops. Georgia now raises beef and dairy cattle and poultry. She is a leading state in the production of peanuts, peaches, grapes,



Photo by the U. S. Forest Service

This dusky worker is gathering turpentine in one of Georgia's splendid pine forests. They give her first rank among the states in the production of what are sometimes called "naval stores"—that is, turpentine, tar, pitch and resin.

## THE HISTORY OF GEORGIA

watermelons, pimento peppers, pecans, and sweet potatoes. Her garden truck industry is making rapid progress, and she grows valuable crops of corn, oats, wheat, barley, hay, tobacco, and white potatoes.

At the same time, scientific farming methods have come to the rescue of the eroded land. Fertilizers are used extensively to restore to the earth the minerals that many crops of cotton and tobacco took from it. And new methods of cultivation and planting are spreading quickly, promoted by agencies which are striving to aid the state's agriculture.

### Georgia's Industries

Much of Georgia's prosperity since the Civil War has come from her manufactures. Her industrial growth since 1900 has been astounding, and the Second World War gave a new impetus to a variety of industries. Textiles are the most important, centering around the cotton she raises. Her cotton mills are among the busiest in the South, turning out all sorts of goods from tire fabric to candlewick bedspreads, and almost every one of her larger cities is known as a cotton-manufacturing center. The use of water power has helped immensely such places as Columbus, Macon, and Augusta on the fall line. In addition, Macon is a center for shipping fruit and vegetables and is noted for rich clay beds. Augusta is a cotton and timber market and manufactures tires. Columbus makes bricks, machinery, concrete, syrup, timber products, and a host of other goods. Atlanta is a rail center and is noted for factories which turn out cotton and wood products and agricultural machinery. Savannah is one of the South's leading ports, and she and Brunswick export cotton, oil, resin, and turpentine. Rome and Dalton are other manufacturing centers.

Industries from the Northeast are moving southward in greater numbers, seeking to take advantage of the mild climate and the abundance of raw materials and the electric power in the rivers. A new day is now dawning for southern industry, and every encouragement is offered. Many of these plants are being set out in the small towns, which have become both agricultural and in-

dustrial, like certain parts of North Carolina. Unfavorable freight rates, which cost shippers of southern manufactured goods two million dollars each year, have delayed industrial development in the South. Georgia has been a leader in combatting these rates, and she stands to profit greatly by their elimination.

The value of Georgia's forests of yellow pine has been growing constantly, and today they produce more naval stores than those of any other state. She also has a growing paper and pulp industry, for which many farmers are raising lots of slash pine. And she is the nation's greatest producer of fertilizer. Clay—especially kaolin, used in making paper and china—building stone, barite, iron, sand and gravel, talc, coal, mica, lime, manganese ore, and fuller's earth are minerals that pay her best. She also has supplies of asbestos and bauxite.

In education, Georgia, like the rest of the South, has had to face many problems. The illiterate Negroes whom the Civil War released from slavery greatly overtaxed her school system. Before the opening of the twentieth century few attempts were made to collect school taxes or to force children to attend school. But progress of late has been swift and steady. In the past twenty years the average expenditure per child has more than doubled. Georgians are making great efforts to provide their children with better schools.

### The Empire State of the South

Georgia has been nicknamed the "Empire State of the South," which invites comparison with New York. In some ways such a comparison is justified. Georgia has been the gateway to the South to some extent, just as New York was a gateway to the lands to the west. If the Civil War left her many problems, she is meeting them squarely and overcoming them skillfully. She is defeating soil erosion, advancing the education of her people, and promoting industry. She is now on the threshold of far greater achievement and prosperity than she has yet known. She is making for herself a future to which the whole nation may look with pride.

## GEORGIA

**AREA:** 58,876 square miles--20th in rank.

**LOCATION:** Georgia is a South Atlantic state, lying between 30° 31' and 35° N. Lat. and between 81° and 85° 53' W. Long. It is bounded on the north by Tennessee and North Carolina, on the east by South Carolina and the Atlantic Ocean, on the south by Florida, and on the west by Florida and Alabama.

**PHYSICAL FEATURES:** Along the Georgia coast lies a broad belt of low plain extending back to the fall line. Beyond is the higher rolling land of the Piedmont Plateau, which gives way to the Appalachian mountain region, with the Blue Ridge along its southern border and the Great Appalachian Valley just north of the Blue Ridge. Other ranges are the Cahutta Range, the White Oak Mountains, and the Rocky Face Ridge. In the northwestern corner of the state Lookout Mountain and Sand Mountain belong to the Cumberland Plateau. The Cahutta Range is a continuation of the Unakas in Tennessee. The highest point in the state is Brasstown Bald (4,768 ft.), in the Appalachian region. Stone Mountain (867 ft.) is a bare mound of gray granite near Atlanta. It is being carved with gigantic figures in honor of the Confederacy. All the rivers in the coastal plain flow southeast into the Atlantic. Of these the most important are the Savannah (314 m. long), which lies along the South Carolina boundary; the Ogeechee (250 m. long); the Ocmulgee (255 m. long) and the Oconee (250 m. long), which unite to form the Altamaha (137 m. long). The Chattahoochee (410 m. long) and the Flint (205 m. long), though they rise in the Piedmont Plateau, find their way southward and unite in the southwest corner of the state to form the Apalachicola (90 m. long), which empties into the Gulf of Mexico. The Coosa (286 m. long), which drains the Great Valley, and the Tallapoosa (268 m. long) finally unite in Alabama and enter the Gulf of Mexico. In the northwest corner of the state is a small section that drains northward into the Tennessee and so into the Ohio and the Mississippi. The total water area of Georgia is 540 square miles. There is no irrigated land. A line of long low sand bars stretches along the coast; behind them runs the Intracoastal Waterway.

**CLIMATE:** At Atlanta the mean temperature for January is 43° F.; for July, 78° F. The record high is 103° F.; the record low, -8° F. The climate of Georgia varies greatly according to altitude. The coastal lowlands are hot and humid; in fact the mean July temperature for the whole state is 81.8° F. But the uplands have a more bracing climate, and the higher mountain tops are very cold in winter, with a mean annual temperature of only 40°. The state has an average rainfall of 49.3 inches.

### INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING

The University of Georgia, at Athens, has branches throughout the state. Among these are the Georgia School of Technology at Atlanta, the Georgia State College for Women at Milledgeville, the Georgia State Woman's College at Valdosta, the University of Georgia School of Medicine at Augusta, the Georgia State Teachers College at Collegeboro, and the University System of Georgia Center at Atlanta, an evening college. For Negroes the state maintains colleges at Albany, Fort Valley, and Industrial College.

Other institutions are Piedmont College at Demorest, Bessie Tift College at Forsyth, Emory University at Emory University and Atlanta, Agnes Scott College at Decatur, Lagrange College at Lagrange, Brenau College at Gainesville, Mercer University at Macon, Wesleyan College at Macon, Oglethorpe University at Oglethorpe, Berry College at Mount Berry, Shorter College at Rome, and a number of junior colleges. For Negroes there is the Atlanta University System at Atlanta.

**CHARITIES AND CORRECTION:** Georgia maintains at Milledgeville a convict farm for all offenders except able-bodied males, who are put to work on the chain gang to build state roads. The state supports an insane hospital, a tuberculosis sanatorium, a school for the deaf and dumb, an academy for the blind, training schools for girls, a training school for mental defectives, a training school for delinquent boys, one for girls, and a state penitentiary. At Warm Springs is a famous endowed institution for the treatment of sufferers from infantile paralysis. Georgia inflicts capital punishment by electrocution.

**POLITICAL FACTS:** Under the constitution, adopted in 1877 and thoroughly revised in 1945, the General Assembly consists of a Senate of 54 members and a House of Representatives of 205 members elected for two years and meeting in odd-numbered years.

The executive department is headed by a governor who is elected for a 4-year term and who may not serve two successive terms. Serving with the governor are a lieutenant-governor, a secretary of state, an attorney general, a state school superintendent, a comptroller general, a treasurer, and commissioners of agriculture and labor, all of whom are elected to the same term as the governor.

The supreme judiciary power rests in a supreme court consisting of seven justices serving 6-year terms, one of whom is chief justice and one presiding justice. In addition there are the court of appeals, whose members serve 6 years, and superior courts for each judicial circuit, with at least one judge in every circuit. There are also city courts, courts of ordinary and of probate, justices of the peace, and a solicitor-general for each judicial district.

Any person may vote who is 18 years of age or over, has resided in the state for one year and in the county for six months, is of good character or can read or write any paragraph of the Constitution of the United States, and is neither guilty of a crime punishable by imprisonment nor mentally incompetent.

The capital of Georgia is at Atlanta.

**MONUMENTS:** Ocmulgee National Monument, near Macon, covering 683 acres and containing interesting Indian mounds; Fort Pulaski, near Savannah; Kennesaw Mountain Battlefield Site, near Marietta, covering 60 acres; New Echota Marker, a memorial on the site of the last Cherokee capital in Georgia; part of the Chickamauga and Chattanooga Military Park, covering 8,146 acres in Georgia and Tennessee; and Fort Frederica on St. Simon Island in Glynn County.

Georgia has 1,732,322 acres of national forest.

**GAME AND BIRD RESERVATIONS:** National wildlife refuges are Blackbeard Island, 4,854 acres; Okefenokee, 328,551 acres; Piedmont, 29,211 acres; Savannah, 12,709 acres in Georgia and South Carolina; Tybee, 100 acres; Wilson, 1,588 acres; and Wolf Island, 538 acres for birds of many kinds, deer, and fur-bearing animals.

**NAME:** Georgia was named after King George II by Oglethorpe and his associates in 1732, when they secured their charter. The name is a Greek feminine noun meaning "tillage" or "agriculture," and comes from the two words "ge," meaning "earth," and "ergon," signifying "to work."

**NICKNAMES:** Georgia is called the Buzzard State because of its strict law for the protection of buzzards, once necessary as scavengers. It is also called the Cracker State, from the people called "crackers," who were the lowest and most ignorant of its citizens before the abolition of slavery. Some have thought the nickname came from the peculiar dialect of these people. It is known as the Goober State from the fact that peanuts, or goobers, are commonly grown there. It is

## GEORGIA -Continued

also often referred to as the Empire State of the South.

The people of Georgia are sometimes called Sandhillers, from those of them who live in the pine barrens.

**STATE FLOWER:** Cherokee rose (*Rosa sinica*), adopted by the legislature on Aug. 18, 1916.

**STATE TREE:** Live oak

**STATE SONG:** "Georgia," a poem by Robert Love-man set to music by Lottie Belle Wylie; approved Aug., 1922.

**STATE FLAG:** A vertical blue field next to the flag-staff, containing the coat of arms of the state, with the remaining two-thirds of the flag equally divided into three horizontal bands scarlet on the outside, with the middle band of white.

**STATE MOTTO:** "Wisdom, Justice, and Moderation." (They form an arch with "Constitution" as the keystone.)

**STATE BIRD:** Brown thrasher

**INTERESTING FACTS:** The government is building dams across the Etowah, Flint, Chattahoochee, and Appalachian rivers. They will develop power, contro floods, and open navigation as far as Bainbridge and Columbus. Farms, factories, and cities will profit.

The holidays observed in Georgia are New Year's Day, Washington's Birthday, Independence Day, Labor Day, Columbus Day, Armistice Day, Thanksgiving Day, Christmas Day, and also Robert E. Lee's Birthday on Jan. 19, Confederate Memorial Day and World War Memorial Day on April 26, and Jefferson Davis's Birthday on June 3.

Population of state 1940, 3,123,723							
Counties							
Appling (D4)	14,497	Dawson (B1)	4,479	Lamar (B2)	10,191	Spalding (B2)	28,427
Atkinson (D4)	7,093	Decatur (B5)	22,234	Lamar (C4)	5,632	Stephens (C1)	12,972
Bacon (D4)	8,096	De Kalb (B2)	86,942	Laurins (C3)	33,606	Stewart (B3)	10,603
Baker (B4)	7,344	Dodge (C3)	21,022	Lee (B4)	7,837	Sumter (B3)	24,502
Baldwin (C2)	24,190	Dooly (C3)	16,886	Liberty (C4)	8,595		
Banks (C1)	8,777	Dougherty (B4)	28,565	Lincoln (D2)	7,042	Talbot (B3)	8,141
Barrow (C1)	13,064	Douglas (B2)	10,053	Long (C4)	4,086	Taliaferro (D2)	6,278
Bartow (B1)	25,283	Early (B4)	18,679	Lowndes (C5)	31,860	Tattnall (D3)	16,243
Ben Hill (C4)	14,523	Echols (D5)	2,964	Lumpkin (B1)	6,223	Taylor (B3)	10,768
Berrien (C4)	15,370	Ellingham (E3)	9,646	McDuffie (D2)	10,878	Telfair (D4)	15,145
Bibb (C3)	83,783	Elbert (D1)	19,618	McIntosh (E4)	5,292	Terrill (B4)	16,675
Bleckley (C3)	9,655	Emanuel (D3)	23,517	Macon (C3)	15,947	Thomas (C5)	31,289
Brantley (D4)	6,871	Evans (E3)	7,401	Madison (C1)	13,431	Tift (C4)	15,599
Brooks (C5)	20,497	Fannin (B1)	14,752	Marion (B3)	6,954	Toombs (D3)	16,952
Bryan (E4)	6,288	Fayette (B2)	8,170	Meriwether (B2)	22,055	Towns (C1)	4,925
Bulloch (E3)	26,010	Floyd (A1)	56,141	Miller (B4)	9,998	Trouten (D3)	7,632
Burke (E2)	26,520	Forsyth (B1)	11,322	Mitchell (B4)	23,261	Troup (B3)	43,879
Butts (C2)	9,182	Franklin (C1)	15,612	Monroe (B2)	10,749	Turner (C4)	10,846
Calhoun (B4)	10,438	Fulton (B2)	392,886	Montgomery (D3)	9,668	Twigg (C3)	9,117
Camden (E5)	5,910	Gilmer (B1)	9,001	Morgan (C2)	12,713	Union (C1)	7,680
Candler (D3)	9,103	Glascow (D2)	4,547	Murray (B1)	11,137	Upson (B3)	25,064
Carroll (A2)	34,156	Glynn (E1)	21,920	Muscogee (B3)	75,494	Walker (A1)	31,024
Catoosa (A1)	12,199	Gordon (B1)	18,415	Newton (C2)	18,576	Walton (C2)	20,777
Charlton (D5)	5,256	Grady (B5)	19,654	Oconee (C2)	7,576	Ware (D4)	27,929
Chatham (E4)	117,970	Greene (C2)	13,709	Oglethorpe (C2)	12,430	Warren (D2)	10,236
Chattahoochee (B3)	15,138	Gwinnett (B2)	29,087	Paulding (B2)	12,832	Washington (D3)	21,230
Chattahoochee (A1)	18,532	Habersham (C1)	14,771	Peach (C3)	9,378	Wayne (E4)	13,122
Cherokee (B1)	20,126	Hall (C1)	34,822	Pickens (B1)	1,136	Webster (B3)	4,726
Clarke (C2)	28,398	Hancock (C2)	12,764	Pierce (D4)	11,800	Wheeler (D3)	8,535
Clay (B4)	7,064	Haralson (A2)	11,377	Pike (B2)	10,375	White (C1)	6,417
Clayton (B2)	11,655	Harris (B3)	11,428	Polk (A2)	28,467	Whitfield (B1)	26,105
Clinch (D5)	6,437	Hart (D1)	15,512	Pulaski (C3)	9,829	Wilcox (C4)	12,755
Cobb (B2)	38,272	Heard (A2)	8,610	Putnam (C2)	8,514	Wilkes (D2)	15,084
Coffee (D4)	21,541	Henry (B2)	15,119	Quitman (A4)	3,435	Wilkinson (C3)	11,025
Colquitt (C4)	33,012	Houston (C3)	11,303	Rabun (C1)	7,821	Worth (C4)	21,374
Columbia (D2)	9,433	Irwin (C4)	12,936	Randolph (B4)	16,609	Cities, Towns, and Villages	
Cook (C4)	11,919	Jackson (C1)	20,089	Richmond (D2)	81,863	[Places marked with an asterisk (*) were classified as urban in 1940]	
Coweta (B2)	26,972	Jasper (C2)	8,772	Rockdale (B2)	7,724	Abbeville (C4)	1,010
Crawford (B3)	7,128	Jeff Davis (D4)	8,841	Schley (B3)	5,033	Acworth (B1)	1,267
Crisp (C4)	17,540	Jefferson (D2)	20,040	Screven (E3)	20,353	Adairsville (B1)	827
Dade (A1)	5,894	Jenkins (D3)	11,843	Seminole (B5)	8,492		
		Johnson (D3)	12,953				
		Jones (C2)	8,331				

<sup>1</sup> Lanier organized from parts of Berrien, Clinch, and Lowndes in 1921.

<sup>2</sup> Brantley organized from parts of Charlton, Pierce, and Ware in 1921.

<sup>3</sup> Parts of Campbell and Cobb annexed to Fulton in 1926 and 1927, respectively, Milton and remainder of Campbell annexed to Fulton in 1932.

<sup>4</sup> Seminole organized from part of Decatur in 1921.

<sup>5</sup> Part of Gordon annexed to Floyd in 1933.

<sup>6</sup> Leach organized from parts of Houston and Macon in 1925.

<sup>7</sup> Lamar organized from parts of Monroe and Pike in 1921.

<sup>8</sup> Long organized from part of Liberty in 1921.

<sup>9</sup> Part of Marion annexed to Talbot, and part of Talbot annexed to Marion, in 1934.

# GEORGIA—Continued

Adel (C4)	2,134	Cartersville *		Harlem (D2)	736	Ray City (C4)	638
Adrian (D3)	580	(B1)	6,141	Hartwell (D1)	2,372	Reidsville (D4)	805
Ailey (D3)	506	Cave Springs		Hawkinsville *		Reynolds (B3)	871
Alamo (D3)	646	(A1)	982	(C1)	3,000	Richland (B3)	1,497
Albany * (B4)	19,055	Cedartown *		Hazlehurst (D4)	1,732	Ringgold (A1) ..	882
Alma (D4)	1,840	(A1)	9,025	Helena (D3)	1,073	Rochelle (C4) ..	1,175
Alto (C1)	217	Chatsworth (B1)	1,001	Hinesville (E4)	630	Rockmart * (A2)	3,764
Americus * (B3)	9,281	Chickamauga		Hogansville * (B2)	3,886	Rome * (A1)	26,282
Andersonville		(A1)	1,665	Homerville (D4)	1,522	Rossville * (A1)	3,538
(B3)	211	Chipley (B3)	709			Royston (C1)	1,549
Apalache (C2)	255	Clarkston (B2)	921	Jackson (C2)	1,917		
Arabi (C4)	388	Clarksville (C1)	850	Jefferson (C1)	1,839	St. Marys (E5)	733
Arcade (C1)	98	Claxton (E3)	1,808	Jeffersonville		(D3)	3,566
Argyle (D4)	278	Clayton (C1)	1,088	(C3)	804	Sardis (E1)	667
Arlington (B4)	1,337	Cochran (C3)	2,464	Jesup * (E4)	2,903	Savannah * (E3)	95,996
Ashburn (C4)	2,266	College Park *		Jonesboro (B2)	1,204	Screven (E4)	664
Athens * (C2)	20,650	(B2)	8,213			Senoia (B2)	679
Atlanta * (B2)	302,288	Collins (D3)	712	Kingsland (E5)	619	Shellman (B4)	1,063
Attapulgus (B5)	315	Colquitt (H4)	1,416	Kingston (B1)	653	Silvertown *	
Auburn (C1)	286	Columbus * (B3)	53,280			(B3)	3,930
Augusta * (E2)	65,919	Comer (C1)	811	Lafayette * (A1)	3,509	Smithville (B4)	619
Austell (B2)	1,229	Commerce * (C1)	3,294	La Grange * (A2)	21,983	Smyrna (B2)	1,440
Avalon (C1)	113	Conyers (B2)	1,619	Lakeland (C4)	1,502	Social Circle (C2)	1,735
Avera (D2)	298	Coolidge (C5)	608	Lavonia (C1)	1,667	Soperton (D3)	1,339
		Cordele * (C4)	7,929	Lawrenceville		(E3)	5,028
Babcock (B4)	22	Cornelia (C1)	1,808	(C2)	2,223	Sparks (C4)	695
Baconton (B4)	504	Covington * (C2)	3,900	Leesburg (B4)	716	Sparta (D2)	1,872
Bainbridge *		Crawford (C2)	812	Lincolnton (D2)	894	Statesboro *	
(B5)	6,352	Crawfordville		Lithonia (B2)	1,554	(E3)	5,028
Baldwin (C1)	402	(D2)	1,056	Loganville (C2)	627	Stratham (C2)	605
Ball Ground (B1)	711	Cumming (B1)	958	Louisville (D3)	1,803	Stone Mountain	
Barnsville * (B2)	3,535	Cuthbert * (B4)	3,447	Ludowici (E4)	866	(B2)	1,408
Barney (C5)	154			Lumber City		Summerville	
Bartow (D5)	438	Dahlonega (C1)	1,294	(D4)	1,044	(A1)	1,358
Barwick (C5)	409	Dallas (B2)	1,922	Lyons (D3)	1,900	Swainsboro *	
Baxley * (D4)	2,916	Dalton * (B1)	10,448			(D3)	3,575
Bellton (C1)	263	Darien (E4)	1,015	McCaysville		Sycamore (C4)	601
Benevolence		Davisboro (D3)	533	(B1)	1,832	Sylvania * (E3)	2,531
(B4)	190	Dawson * (B4)	3,681	McDonough		Sylvester (C4)	2,191
Bethlehem (C1)	242	Decatur * (B2)	16,561	(B2)	1,232		
Between (C2)	115	Demorest (C1)	820	McRae (D3)	1,595	Talbotton (B3)	1,060
Bibb City (B3)	1,631	Doerum (C4)	832	Macon * (C3)	57,865	Tallapoosa (A2)	2,338
Bishop (C2)	217	Donalsonville		Madison (C2)	2,045	Taylorville (B1)	926
Blackshear (D4)	2,010	(B4)	1,718	Manchester		Temple (A2)	624
Blairsville (C1)	358	Douglas * (D4)	5,175	(B3)	3,462	Tennille (D3)	1,758
Blakely * (B4)	2,774	Douglasville *		Marietta * (B2)	8,667	Thomaston *	
Blue Ridge (B1)	1,362	(B2)	2,555	Marshallville		(B3)	6,396
Bluffton (B4)	246	Dublin * (D3)	7,814	(B3)	905	Thomasville *	
Bly * (D2)	181	Duluth (B2)	626	Meigs (B4)	927	(B5)	12,683
Bogart (C2)	379			Metter (D3)	1,823	Thomson * (D2)	3,088
Bolingbroke (C3)	103	Eastman * (C3)	3,311	Midville (D3)	780	Thunderbolt	
Boston (C5)	1,099	East Point *		Milan (C4)	748	(E3)	886
Bostwick (C2)	318	(B2)	12,403	Milledgeville *		Tifton * (C4)	5,228
Bowden (A2)	1,024	East Thomaston *		(C2)	6,778	Toccoa * (C1)	5,494
Bowersville (C1)	284	(B3)	3,590	Millen * (E3)	2,820	Trion * (A1)	3,800
Bowman (C1)	634	Eatonton (C2)	2,399	Monroe * (C2)	4,168		
Boykin (H4)	118	Edison (B4)	1,241	Montezuma (B3)	2,346	Unadilla (C3)	1,137
Braselton (C1)	197	Elberton * (D1)	6,188	Monticello (C2)	1,746	Union City (B2)	884
Braswell (B2)	56	Ellaville (B3)	928	Moultrie * (C4)	10,147	Union Point (C2)	1,566
Bremen (A2)	1,708	Ellijay (B1)	1,497	Mount Vernon			
Brewton (D3)	109			(D3)	900	Valdosta * (C5)	15,595
Brinson (B5)	305	Fairburn (B2)	1,502	Nashville (C4)	2,449	Vidalia * (D3)	4,109
Bristol (D4)	114	Fayetteville (B2)	832	Nelson (B1)	679	Vienna (C3)	2,063
Bronwood (B4)	437	Fitzgerald * (C4)	7,388	Newnan * (B2)	7,182	Villa Rica (A2)	1,522
Brooklet (E3)	503	Forsyth (C2)	2,372	Nicholls (D4)	660		
Brooks (B2)	134	Fort Gaines (A4)	1,357	Norcross (B2)	979	Wadley (D2)	1,133
Brunswick * (E4)	15,035	Fort Valley *				Warm Springs	
Buckhead (C2)	214	(C3)	4,953	Ocilla (C4)	2,124	(B3)	608
Buena Vista (B3)	1,161	Gainesville *		Oglethorpe (B3)	1,048	Warrenton (D2)	1,284
Buford * (B1)	4,191	(C1)	10,243	Omega (C4)	608	Washington *	
Butler (B3)	1,093	Glennville (E4)	1,674	Oxford (C2)	616	(D2)	3,537
Byromville (C3)	275	Glenwood (D3)	625			Waycross * (D4)	16,763
Byron (C3)	305	Gordon (C3)	1,524	Palmetto (B2)	1,029	Waynesboro *	
		Grantville (B2)	1,267	Pearson (D4)	1,057	(D2)	3,793
Cadwell (C3)	291	Gray (C2)	698	Pelham * (B4)	2,579	West Point *	
Cairo * (B5)	4,635	Greensboro (C2)	2,459	Pembroke (E3)	1,039	(A3)	3,591
Calhoun * (B1)	2,955	Greenville (B2)	683	Perry (C3)	1,542	Willacoochee	
Camak (D2)	360	Griffin * (B2)	13,222	Pooler (E3)	736	(D4)	903
Camilla * (B4)	2,588			Porterdale *		Winder * (C1)	3,974
Canoochee (D3)	53	Hagan (E3)	685	(C2)	3,116	Woodbury (B3)	865
Campton (C2)	190	Hahira (C5)	980	Poulan (C4)	670	Wrens (D2)	1,192
Canon (C1)	496	Hampton (B2)	619			Wrightsville	
Canon * (B1)	2,651	Hapeville * (B2)	5,059	Quitman * (C5)	4,450	(D3)	1,760
Carl (C2)	135						
Carrollton * (A2)	6,214						

---

# *The HISTORY of IDAHO*

---

## **Reading Unit No. 11**

---

### **IDAHO: THE GEM STATE**

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

#### ***Interesting Facts Explained***

Why Idaho's prosperity is sound, 8-86  
Idaho's first business, 8-88  
The Indian tribes in Idaho, 8-89  
When Idaho was admitted to the Union, 8-89  
The importance of mining in Idaho, 8-89  
The coming of the railroads, 8-91

Why Idaho can grow more wheat per acre than any other state in the Union, 8-91  
The fine trees in Idaho's forests, 8-92  
How nature supplies Boise with hot water, 8-92  
Why education is a problem in Idaho, 8-92

#### ***Related Material***

One flag from ocean to ocean, 7-231-39  
What do we think caused the craters on the surface of the moon? 1-131  
What is to be done with the turbulent water at the bottom of the Grand Canyon? 1-370  
Do the Niagara Falls lose their great beauty in midwinter? 1-78  
What makes us say that the beaver has a "one-track

mind"? 4-373  
How was the city of Pompeii destroyed? 5-256-57  
What did the Indians teach Champlain? 7-3  
What kinds of trees grow in "winter forests"? 2-196  
How long did it take nature to make petrified forests? 9-315  
What does the word "Chinook" mean? 1-231

#### ***Practical Applications***

Why is it difficult to build railroads and highways in some parts of Idaho? 8-91

How does Idaho use her streams and rivers? 8-92

#### ***Leisure-time Activities***

PROJECT NO. 1: Make a list of Idaho's chief farm products.  
PROJECT NO. 2: Make a

study of the beaver and his habits, 4-373-76.

#### ***Summary Statement***

Although Idaho has merely scratched the surface of the vast stores of wealth that lie within her boundaries, in the course of

her short history she has won an enviable place in our nation's industry.

---

## THE HISTORY OF IDAHO

---



Photo by Idaho State Chamber of Co

Boise, the capital and most important manufacturing city of Idaho, lies in the western part of the state in the center of an important mining and agricultural

district. Hot water coming from a natural spring in the city is put to good use to supply heat for many of the buildings. The capitol is shown above.

### IDAHO: *the* GEM STATE

*The State of "the Coming Up of the Sun" Has Built Herself Securely into the Life of the Nation and Looks Forward to a Constantly Growing Fame*

**I**DAHO waits upon the future. That is not to say that she is backward to-day. On the contrary, she is prosperous, progressive, and enlightened. In her short history she has won an enviable place in our nation's industry. But while many other states are using up their resources at appalling speed, Idaho has merely scratched the surface of the vast stores of wealth that lie within her boundaries. Her life is peaceful and restrained. One does not often see her name on the front page of our large national newspapers, for she is well governed and has few upheavals. Her prosperity is sound, and perhaps for that reason it is not "news." Nor is she a prey to speculators, whose ambitious plans would bring her a feverish boom and then a tragic reaction. Because she advertises little, she is not widely known, and certainly many people do not realize either her present in-

dustrial importance or the promise that lies before her. But some day all that will change, and Idaho, wise and wealthy in her long-guarded resources, will come into prominence. That is why we say that she waits on the future.

Even now she is of much greater importance than many a state that is more widely known. She has only some half million citizens, yet they have used their energies to such good purpose that Idaho is one of the leading states in mining a number of important minerals. And certain products of her orchards and farms have a nation-wide fame. Her magnificent mountains are not widely visited as yet, but those who have had the good fortune to see them, declare the Sawtooth Mountains to be unsurpassed in magnificence by any range in the United States. Big game is constantly increasing in those canyon and mountain fastnesses,



## THE HISTORY OF IDAHO

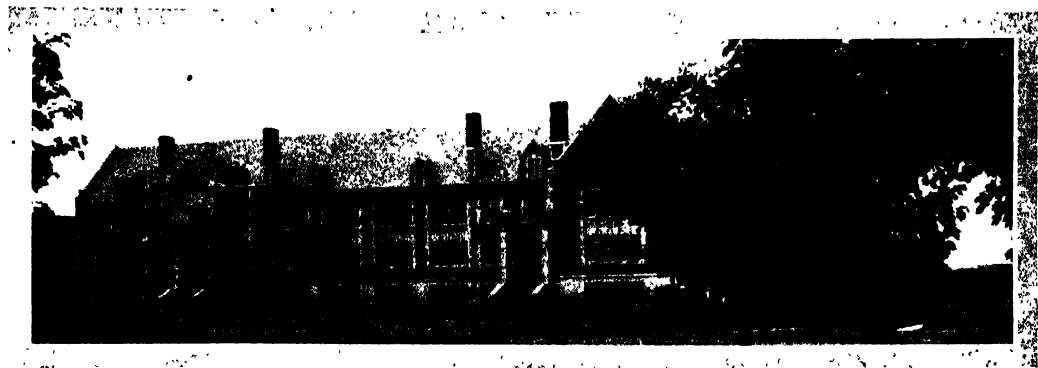


Photo by Idaho State Chamber of Commerce

Both the University of Idaho and the State Agricultural College are at Moscow, in a section of the country

important for its wheat growing and stock raising. One of the university buildings is shown above.

reached only by pack horses, and already the dry and bracing climate is attracting winter pleasure seekers to luxurious resorts. Some day Idaho too will become the haunt of the tourist.

### "The Gem of the Mountains"

Meanwhile, what is this state that lies in mountain seclusion against our northern border? First of all, she is a large state, with romantic gorges and towering summits. Sometimes she is called "Little Ida," as if she were another Rhode Island or Delaware, but that is only because she lies in the neighborhood of such gigantic states as Texas, California, Montana, and New Mexico. Actually, only eleven other states are larger than Idaho, and few have a land surface that is quite so varied and interesting. For Idaho—called "the Gem State" because her name was once thought to mean "the gem of the mountains"—is enthroned upon a group of mountain ranges of every conceivable size, shape, and character. Her eastern border is made up of spurs from the great Rocky Mountain system—the Cabinet, Coeur d' Alene (kûr dâ-lân'), Bitter Root, Salmon River, Teton (tē'tŏn), Salt River, and Snake River ranges. Many of them reach a long way into the interior of the state, and the Salmon River Mountains actually cut Idaho into two parts, a north and a south, so long and rugged are they. Running through the southern part of Idaho and then curving north to form part of the state's western boundary is the great Snake River,

which has given its name to one of the most interesting natural features of the state the great Snake River Plains. These plains are formed of many hundreds of sheets of melted rock, or lava (la'vâ), which small volcanoes poured out over this region time and again, over a period of many years, until the land was built up like a gigantic layer cake with hundreds of layers. Some of those small volcanoes may still be seen, though they are not active to-day. In a park called the Craters of the Moon in the north-central part of the plains, the country is pock-marked and scarred with volcanoes until it looks like the moon's surface.

### Seven Devils Canyon

Through the hundreds of layers of the Snake River Plains the Snake River has cut, just as cleanly as a great knife in a cake, eating its way through thousands of feet of volcanic rock. The gorge is six hundred miles long and sometimes three or four thousand feet deep; and at Seven Devils Canyon, where it crosses an old mountain range, it reaches a depth of 5,000 feet. Nowhere has the Snake River achieved anything as tremendous as the Grand Canyon of the Colorado, for the Snake has had to cut through a harder rock; but the vastness of this chasm in the earth's surface, and the magnificent view it gives of the structure of the earth, are things it is hard to imagine. The river has numerous falls and rapids, with Shoshone (shô-shŏ'nê) Falls higher than Niagara. It is along the Snake River—on

## THE HISTORY OF IDAHO

the great volcanic plain which once was covered with sage-brush—that we find much of Idaho's finest farm land. Of course the Snake River furnishes the water for irrigation, and is a good deal shrunken as a result. But the soil is very rich in minerals. All it needs is to be enriched by plowing in clover and alfalfa; then it will bear crops that are unexcelled in quality and abundance.

Idaho as a whole lies very high, with an average elevation of 5,000 feet above sea level, though the northern part of the state is some 2,000 feet lower. The lowest point is at Lewiston, on the western border, where the Snake River suddenly turns west and enters Washington. Lewiston is only 738 feet above sea level, but the highest point in the state, at Borah Peak, at the southern end of the noble Sawtooth Range, has an elevation of 12,655 feet. The northern

region is another of Idaho's fine farming sections. There broad valleys separate the mountain ranges and the clouds bring plenty of rainfall.

Idaho did not come into the possession of the United States until 1846. Before that time she was part of the "Oregon country," and Spain, Russia, England, and the United States all claimed to possess the region by virtue of having explored it first. It is easy to see how hard a task it is to decide who was the first explorer, since four different nations could claim that one of their citizens had had that honor. The United States based its claim on the expedition of Lewis and Clark, which in 1805 came through Lo Lo Pass, an old Indian trail over the Bitter Root Moun-

tains; but there does not seem much doubt that Spaniards and Russians had explored Idaho at different times before. However that may be, Russia and Spain were not powerful enough to press their claims for long. Spain gave up the struggle in 1819, Russia in 1824, and England at last in 1846, when she agreed that the United States should have all land south of the forty-ninth parallel. Before that she and the United States had held the country jointly, though between 1812 and 1835 Britain controlled the fur trade.

Fur trading was Idaho's first business. Her many mountain streams were ideal for beavers, furs needed no elaborate apparatus to catch or prepare them, and they were easy to transport. No wonder, then, that the Missouri Fur Company, the Pacific, the American, and the Hudson Bay Fur com-

panies—the last organized by Englishmen—all sent men into Idaho and built forts there. But, as usual, these fur traders made no move to settle the country. They explored the forests, took out the furs, and let it go at that. People who traveled to California on the famous Oregon Trail, leading from Independence, Missouri, stopped at Fort Hall or at Fort Boise (boi'zâ)—old fur-trading posts built in 1834, the second a few months the younger—and then they went right on to the golden lands on the Pacific coast. Others went by along the California Trail in the south. It was only about 1860, when gold was discovered there, that settlers in large numbers began to come into Idaho.

Because of Colorado's still greater gold



Photo by Idaho State Chamber of Commerce

This is a view of the famous Arrowrock Dam, which has turned thousands of useless acres into fine agricultural land. It was built across the Boise River in 1915, is 349 feet high, 240 feet wide, and stores water for 340,000 acres of land.

## THE HISTORY OF IDAHO

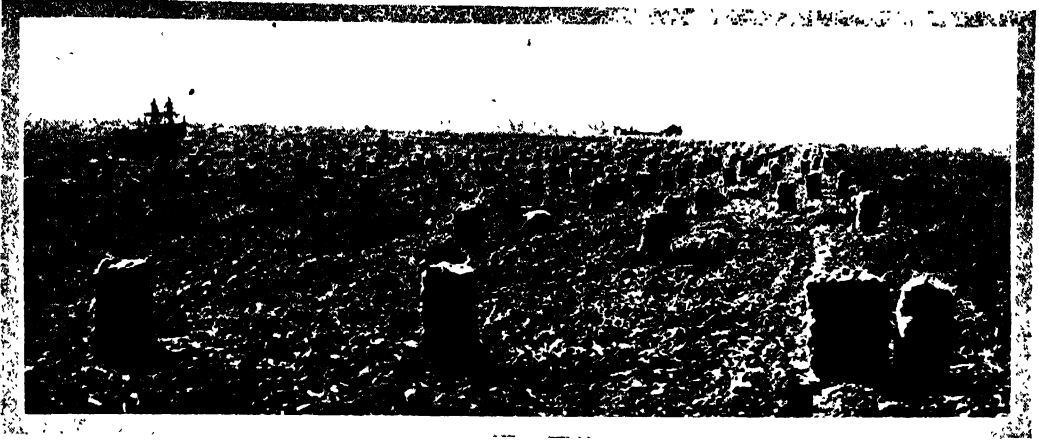


Photo by Idaho State Chamber of Commerce

Here is bag after bag of those delicious, mealy potatoes that we have learned to expect Idaho to provide for

us. One acre of the land in this part of Idaho can produce 680 bushels of potatoes.

strike in the early 1860's, the rush of gold seekers to Idaho was not overwhelming; but the prosperity it brought was all the sounder for that, for fewer fly-by-night adventurers came. As usual, the gold-maddened settlers had no thought of respecting previous treaties with the Indians. Their constant invasion of Indian territories brought about several uprisings—notably that of the Nez Percés (nā' pēr'sā')—the name in French means "pierced nose"—in 1877. Under their leader, Chief Joseph, they conducted a masterly campaign, retreating through 1,300 miles of enemy territory until finally they were captured in northwestern Montana, only a few miles away from Canada, which had been their goal. The Coeur d' Alene, Paloos (pā-lōōs'), and Spokane (spō-kān') Indians also put up a spirited resistance.

### Idaho's Indian Tribes

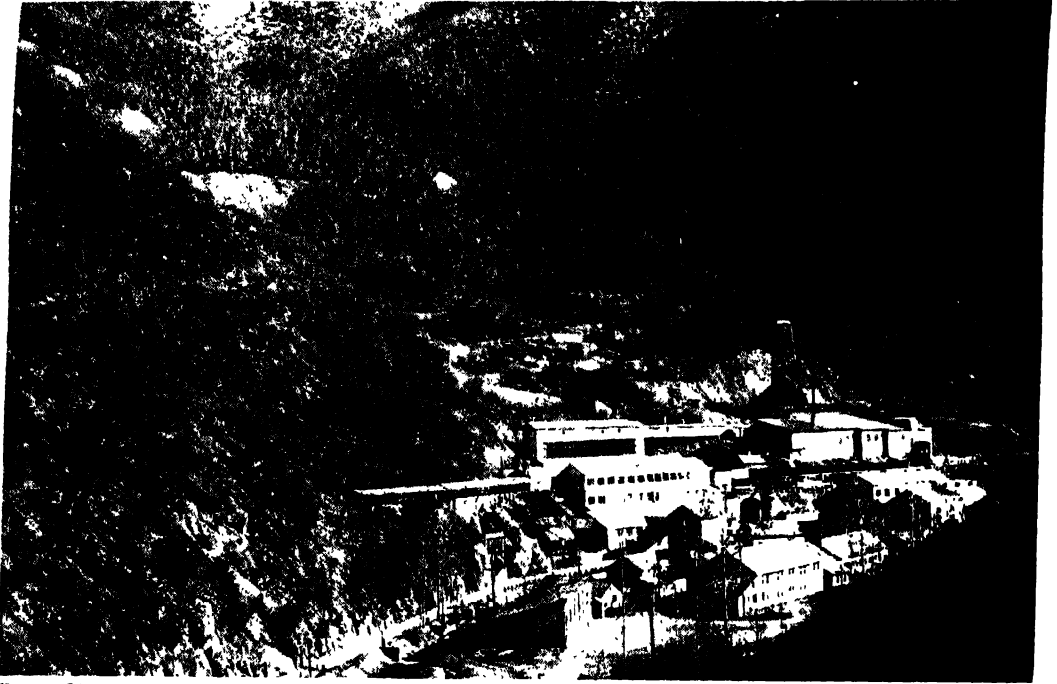
The Paloos and Nez Percé tribes were both members of the larger Shahaptian (shā-hāp'ti-ān) family, able Indians who could trade as well as fight. The great Shoshonean (shō-shō'nē-ān) family was represented by the much less capable tribes of Bannocks and Shoshones (shō-shō'nē); the Shoshones were spread over this whole territory—in western Wyoming and Colorado, and parts of Idaho, Utah, and Nevada. The Utes (ūt), Hopis (hō'pē), and Comanches (kō-mān'chē) belonged to the same great

group. In spite of these Indian troubles—and for a western mining state Idaho has had remarkably few—the colonists continued to pour into Idaho and the settlements continued to eat away the few remaining lands of the red men. The Territory of Idaho was organized in 1863. It then included Montana and a part of Wyoming, but it was gradually cut down to its present size, until in 1890 Idaho was admitted to the Union as a state.

It was Idaho's mines that first drew settlers to her hills. They still bring her great wealth and employ large numbers of people—though farming and manufacturing have edged them out of first place among the state's industries. Gold is much less important than it was even in the 1930's. During World War II a good deal less of it was mined in all the states, and much of the gold that is taken from the earth is now mined in connection with other metals, such as copper, zinc, and lead. The same thing is true of silver. A good many minerals are more valuable to Idaho than her gold is, and she stands near the bottom in the list of gold-producing states. Silver, too, brings her a good deal less wealth than formerly. For many years it was Idaho's most valuable mineral and now ranks only third. But it still is several times as valuable as gold, and Idaho leads the states in its production.

Humble zinc is the mineral that nowadays yields Idaho the most money, with lead com-

## THE HISTORY OF IDAHO



Courtesy Idaho State Chamber of Commerce Boise, Idaho

The buildings are not especially impressive, but they are the surface plant of the biggest silver mine in the

United States. The Sunshine Mine near Kellogg, Idaho, has long been the country's heaviest producer.



Photo Courtesy Agricultural Department, Union Pacific Railroad

Part of northwestern Idaho lies in the Pacific wheat belt, which extends into Washington and Oregon and is the smallest of our country's four great wheat-producing areas. The variety grown here is known as

"soft white" wheat. Of course this is not the only part of Idaho where wheat is grown. The photograph above shows a wheat-harvesting scene in the southern portion of the state.

## THE HISTORY OF IDAHO



Photo by Idaho State Chamber of Commerce

In a world of dwindling forests, Idaho may well be proud of her magnificent stands of timber. The logs

above have been loaded on cars to start the first lap of their journey to the mill.

ing second. Sand and gravel, phosphate rock, copper, antimony, stone, and mica pay well, and there is also an income from tungsten, mercury, vanadium, cobalt, and clay. During World War II, when it was most needed, there was a dramatic strike of tungsten ore in Valley County.

Farms in Idaho were first planted in the valleys and plains around the mining camps; but it was not long before those offspring of the mineral fields had surpassed their parents and were bringing Idaho more wealth than any of her other industries. The building of an efficient railroad system was the most important of the causes for this rapid growth. That was a difficult job because of the many mountains cutting up Idaho into different sections; even to-day, when she has nearly 3,000 miles of track, Idaho has not yet been able to build a direct line through the Salmon River Range, and only in 1927 did she manage to construct her first highway through this tangled mass of mountains. All her other lines have to go around the mountains by running through Oregon. And

so, for a long time, the fertile fields of Idaho, especially those of the Palouse district, were used to graze sheep and cattle. These animals were not so profitable as grain, but at least they could walk to market under their own power. In 1900 only four states had more sheep than Idaho, though in cattle the state ranked only thirty-seventh.

Then the two most important developments—the building of the railroads and the introduction of irrigation—changed the history of Idaho's agriculture in a short space of time. Wheat growing became one of her leading industries just as soon as there was a way to get the product to market. Just as in Montana, the climate of Idaho, though the Pacific lends it considerable warmth, is in many places too cold for corn to mature, but the soil, especially in the Palouse district, is ideally suited to wheat, and Idaho often produces more wheat per acre than any other state in the Union. Hay, potatoes, apples, barley, oats, beans, sugar beets, and corn are valuable crops. Idaho potatoes are especially fine and are famous

## THE HISTORY OF IDAHO

throughout the country; her apples and small fruits are unsurpassed in the United States. Apples are grown in the Boise and Payette (pā-ēt') Valleys, and in the district around Lewiston. Pears, peaches, and less hardy fruits flourish along the lower Snake River. Idaho is also a leading state in growing prunes. Much of her fruit depends on the chinook (chī-nōōk'), a warm wind which we have described on other pages. Idaho specializes in growing vast quantities of vegetable seed, especially beans, sweet corn, and peas. During World War I she developed dry farming, but drought and the agricultural depression were hard on farms of this kind.

### Our Largest Virgin Forest

The forests of Idaho, one of her richest treasures, are among the finest in the world, covering as they do over a third of the state's entire area. In the region just to the west of southern Montana the largest tract of virgin forest in the United States is to be found, in a wilderness of tremendous size, rich in white and yellow pine, larch, white and red fir, spruce, and cedar, with valuable veins of minerals and vast quantities of water power, all quite untouched. The reason for their preservation is of course to be found in the ruggedness of the country, which makes road building almost impossible. But not all of Idaho's forests have gone untouched, for in 1933 she cut 316 million board feet of timber. This gave her fourteenth rank among the lumbering states in the Union. The sawmill at Potlatch, in the northwestern part of the state, is one of the largest in the world. But today Idaho cuts much less timber than formerly.

### What Are Idaho's Cities?

The manufactures of Idaho are not well developed; this is because of her recent settlement, her many mountains, and the difficulties of transportation. As a matter of fact, only a few states in the Union produce manufactures of lower value. Largest and most important of the manufacturing cities is Boise, the capital, a busy mining center that works lumber, packs meat, makes candy, and mills flour. Boise is the only sizable city in the world which has a natural

supply of hot water at her door, from hot springs within the city limits. Pocatello (pō'kā-tēl'ō), in the southeast, is a railroad center, with machine shops and meat-packing establishments. Coeur d'Alene, Lewiston, and Nampa are famous lumbering cities; and Idaho Falls and Twin Falls, on the Snake River, are centers of agricultural production. All together, this may not seem like a very impressive picture of Idaho's manufacturing, but actually the future of these industries is very bright. For Idaho is blessed with abundant supplies of power in her streams and rivers. Only four states have more water power. Of late years the state has added the manufacture of beet sugar, dairy products, and flour to her industries. All of them give promise of large growth.

Educationally, Idaho is well advanced indeed, for she has an excellent school system that gets fine results. Only 1.1 per cent of her citizens cannot read and write—one of the finest records in the country. The many mountains and other difficulties of transportation tend to make education in Idaho a good deal of a problem. But special grants of land, by the national and the state governments, have done much to encourage both lower and higher education. There are a number of schools of higher learning.

### What Lies Ahead?

Such is Idaho, a busy state, nestled among the great mountain ranges which provide both her riches and the minor hindrances which impede her progress. The things which she produces, like her life as a whole, are useful rather than spectacular. Lead, cattle, timber, wheat, silver, potatoes, and fruits, unless produced in enormous quantities, do not attract very much attention. And so, when we look over the map or number the states in our mind, Idaho is not likely to be the first, or even one of the first few, that we think of. But when we look a little deeper into the workings of the country, to find out "what makes the wheels go round," what makes the country rich and prosperous and healthy, it is to the busy, forward-looking, substantial states like Idaho that credit must be given. Her present achievement is admirable. Her brilliant future seems secure.

## IDAHO

**AREA:** 83,557 square miles—12th in rank.

**LOCATION:** Idaho, one of the Mountain states, lies between 42° and 49° N. Lat. and between 111° and 117° W. Long. It is bounded on the north by the Canadian province of British Columbia and by Montana, on the east by Montana and Wyoming, on the south by Utah and Nevada, and on the west by Oregon and Washington.

**PHYSICAL FEATURES:** Idaho's most important mountain chains lie along the Montana border and are a part of the Rockies. Here are the Cabinet, Coeur d'Alene, Bitterroot, and Beaverhead ranges, all of them magnificent mountain masses that send tremendous spurs westward and southwestward through the state. The whole of central Idaho is a wilderness of rugged summits. Along the southwestern edge of this mountain stronghold is the Sawtooth Range, one of the finest in our country. The Salmon River Range to the northeast and the Lost River Range to the southeast are only a little less beautiful. Borah Peak (12,655 ft. high) in Custer County, is the highest point in the state. From this central mountain mass flow the Clearwater River in the north-central part of the state and the Salmon River (420 m. long) a little farther south. Both make their way westward to the Snake River (1,038 m. long), which rises in Yellowstone Park in Wyoming and crosses Idaho in a great curve to the state's western border, where it forms part of the boundary between Idaho and Washington and Idaho and Oregon. It finally joins the Columbia and is carried on to the Pacific. Along the right bank of the Snake River, in the southeastern part of the state, are the Snake River Plains, a level tract from fifty to seventy-five miles wide. Here great lava fields have spread out and hardened to make what, under irrigation, is one of the most fertile sections of Idaho. In these dry plains the Big Lost River, which comes down from the north, finally disappears. Farther west the Snake flows through magnificent canyons and falls in a number of splendid cascades. Seven Devils Canyon is in places 5,000 ft. deep. Near the western boundary the Snake receives the Boise and Payette rivers. In the southwest corner of the state is the Owyhee Range. The southeastern corner is drained by the Bear River (about 450 m. long) and the Malad River into Great Salt Lake in northern Utah, a body of water that has no outlet to the sea. Here the Bear River Mountains are a continuation of the Wasatch Range of Utah. The northern part of Idaho is lower than the rest of the state, and the valleys between the mountains are broad and level. There is plenty of rainfall here, and very fertile farmland. Clark Fork (505 m. long) and the Kootenai River (about 400 m. long) cross this part of the state on their way to the Columbia River, Clark Fork rising in Montana and the Kootenai in British Columbia. Idaho has some very fine lakes in the northern panhandle, among them Priest Lake, Pend Oreille, and Coeur d'Alene. The lowest point in Idaho is at Lewiston, which is only 720 ft. above sea level. The state's average elevation is 5,000 ft. All together Idaho has 534 square miles of water, and large tracts of irrigated land. The Salmon River may be used by flatboats for some 400 miles.

**CLIMATE:** Idaho has a milder climate than the states farther east, for it feels the effects of warm winds from the Pacific Ocean and is protected by its high eastern mountains from the cold that grips the high plains. The lowest temperatures are found in the central mountain region, the highest in the south along the Snake River. The mean annual temperature for the state is from 46° to 50° F., but in Custer County it is 36° and at points in the south it is 55°. Boise has a January mean of 30° and a July mean of 73°. The record high there is 121° and the record low —28°. The rainfall too

varies greatly. It is highest on the higher elevations, and lowest in the Snake River Plains, especially along the Lost River and the upper Salmon River. Boise has about 13 inches of rainfall a year, but there are places that have only 5 inches. On the mountains there is between 35 and 40 inches. The dry air is everywhere healthful and stimulating.

**INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING:** The more important institutions are the College of Idaho at Caldwell, the University of Idaho at Moscow, with a technical institute at Pocatello, and Northwestern Nazarene College at Nampa. There are state normal schools at Lewiston and Albion and colleges of education in the same cities.

**CHARITIES AND CORRECTION:** Idaho has a hospital for the insane at Blackfoot, sanatoriums at Orofino and Lava Hot Springs, a sanatorium for mental defectives at Nampa, a school for the deaf and blind at Gooding, an industrial training school for boys and girls at St. Anthony, a soldiers' home at Boise, and a penitentiary at Boise. The state inflicts capital punishment by hanging.

**POLITICAL FACTS:** Idaho is governed under the constitution of 1889, which has been freely amended. The legislature, which meets in alternate years, consists of a Senate of thirty-three members and a House of Representatives of 61 members, all elected for two years. The executive branch is headed by the governor and his staff, all elected for two years. The work of administration is largely carried on by nine governmental departments.

The judiciary is headed by a supreme court made up of five justices elected for six years. The Senate tries cases of impeachment. The state is divided into eleven judicial districts, each presided over by at least one judge elected for four years; the more populous districts have two judges. District courts must be held in each county at least twice a year. The prosecuting attorney is elected by the people for a two-year term.

The initiative and referendum has been in force since 1912.

All United States citizens over twenty-one years of age may vote provided that they have lived in the state six months and in the county thirty days. All state, district, and county officers are nominated at primary elections held every two years. Nominations may also be made by petition. All public officers except judges may be recalled.

Cities are the most important of the units of local government. Municipalities of more than 2,500 inhabitants may adopt the commission form of government, and any county or city unit may make and enforce all necessary local regulations.

**PARKS:** Idaho has no national parks, though Yellowstone National Park extends for a short distance across the Wyoming line.

**MONUMENTS:** Craters of the Moon National Monument in Blaine County, in the Snake River Plains, contains remarkable volcanic craters, together with interesting examples of the eruption of lava through fissures. There are remarkable lava tunnels and caves.

Idaho has 21,502,411 acres of national forest.

**GAME AND BIRD RESERVATIONS:** The Deer Flat Refuge in Canyon County and the Minidoka Refuge in Cassia, Blain, Power, and Minidoka counties are both on reclamation projects. There are also the Camas Refuge in Jefferson County and the Snake River Refuge in Canyon County. All four protect birds, such as grebes, Forster's terns, cormorants, white

# IDAHO—Continued

pelicans, ducks, coots, herons, sage grouse, and avocets.

**NAME:** Idaho's name is a contraction of the Shoshone Indian words, "Ee dah how," meaning "It is sunrise." It was officially given to the region when Idaho was organized as a territory in 1863. Joaquin Miller, the writer, first used the Indian expression in its present spelling, but he says that the name was first applied to Idaho by one Colonel Craig, of Nez Perce County.

**NICKNAMES:** Idaho is called the Gem State from a common misunderstanding as to the exact meaning of the state's name. It is also called Little Ida because it is smaller than the surrounding states.

The people of Idaho are sometimes called Fortune Seekers, a name that goes back to the days of the gold rush.

**STATE FLOWER:** Syringa (*Philadelphus lewisii*); formally adopted in 1931.

**STATE SONG:** "Our Idaho," with music by Sallie

Hume Douglas and words by Lula M. Huffman; approved in 1931; also "Here We Have Idaho."

**STATE FLAG:** A field of Copenhagen blue bordered with gilt fringe and bearing in the center the state seal embroidered in colors. The words "State of Idaho" are embroidered in gold on a red band below the seal. The flag was adopted in 1907.

**STATE MOTTO:** "Esto Perpetua," meaning "Mayest thou endure forever"; the words are said to have been addressed to Venice by the dying Fra Paolo.

**STATE BIRD:** Mountain bluebird; approved in 1931.

**INTERESTING FACTS:** Idaho observes New Year's Day, Washington's Birthday, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Election Day, Armistice Day, Thanksgiving Day, Christmas Day, and Pioneer Day on June 15.

Idaho has five Indian reservations: Coeur d'Alene, Kootenai, Nez Percé, Fort Hall, and Western Shoshone. On them live members of the Coeur d'Alene, Kootenai, Nez Percé, Bannock, Shoshone, and Paiute tribes.

Population of state 1940, 524,873							
Counties							
Ada (B6)	50,401	Payette (B5)	9,511	Eden (D7)	413	Mullan (C2)	2,291
Adams (B5)	3,407	Power (F7)	3,965	Emmett * (B6)	3,203	Nampa * (B6)	12,119
Bannock (F7)	34,759	Shoshone (C2)	21,230	Fairfield (D6)	511	New Plymouth	
Bear Lake (G7)	7,911	Teton (G6)	3,601	Fairview (G7)	414	(B5)	804
Benewah (B2)	7,332	Twin Falls (D7)	36,403	Filer (D7)	1,239	Nezperce (B3)	590
Bingham (F6)	21,044	Valley (C5)	4,035	Franklin (G7)	523	Oakley (E7)	813
Blaine (D6)	5,295	Washington (B5)	8,853	Genesee (B3)	678	Orofino (B3)	1,602
Boise (C5)	2,333	Yellowstone Na- tional Park (part) <sup>3</sup>		Georgetown (G7)	463	Paris (G7)	932
Bonner (B1)	15,667			Glenns Ferry (C7)	1,290	Parma (B6)	1,085
Bonneville (G6)	25,697			Gooding * (D7)	2,568	Paul (E7)	606
Bonanza (B1)	5,987			Grace (G7)	701	Payette * (B5)	3,322
Butte <sup>1</sup> (E6)	1,877			Grangeville (B4)	1,929	Pocatello * (F7)	18,133
Camas (D6)	1,360	<b>Cities, Towns, and Villages</b>				Post Falls (A2)	843
Canyon (B6)	40,987	[Places marked with an asterisk (*) were clas- sified as urban in 1940]		Hagerman (D7)	435	Preston * (G7)	4,236
Caribou (G7)	2,284			Hailey (D6)	1,443	Priest River (B1)	1,056
Cassia (E7)	14,430	Aberdeen (F7)	1,016	Hansen (D7)	527	Rathdrum (B2)	511
Clark (F5)	1,005	Alameda * (F7)	2,691	Hazelton (D7)	417	Rexburg * (G6)	3,437
Clearwater (C3)	8,243	American Falls (F7)	1,439	Idaho Falls *		Rigby (G6)	1,978
Custer <sup>1</sup> (D5)	3,549	Arco (E6)	548	(F6)	15,024	Rupert * (E7)	3,167
Elmore <sup>2</sup> (C6)	5,518	Ashton (G5)	1,203	Iona (G6)	518	St. Anthony *	
Franklin (G7)	10,229	Bancroft (G7)	406	Jerome * (D7)	3,537	(G6)	2,719
Fremont (G5)	10,304	Blackfoot * (F6)	3,681	Kamiah (B4)	568	St. Charles (G7)	429
Gem (B5)	9,544	Bloomington (G7)	418	Kellogg * (B2)	4,235	St. Maries (B2)	2,234
Gooding (D6)	9,257	Boise City *		Kendrick (B3)	407	Salmon (F4)	2,439
Idaho (C4)	12,691	(B6)	26,130	Kimberly (D7)	963	Sandpoint * (B1)	4,356
Jefferson (F6)	10,762	Bonnets Ferry (B1)	1,345	Kooskia (B3)	490	Shellev (F6)	1,751
Jerome (D7)	9,900	Bovill (B3)	447	Kuna (B6)	443	Shoshone (D7)	1,366
Kootenai (B2)	22,283	Buhl (D7)	2,414	Lapwai (B3)	426	Soda Springs (G7)	1,087
Latah (B3)	18,804	Burley * (E7)	5,329	Lava Hot Springs (G7)	647	Spirit Lake (B2)	1,006
Lemhi (D5)	6,521	Caldwell * (B6)	7,272	Lewiston * (A3)	10,548	Sugar City (G6)	697
Lewis (B3)	4,666	Cambridge (A5)	405	McCall (B5)	875	Teton (G6)	514
Lincoln (D7)	4,230	Cascade (B5)	1,029	McCammon (F7)	489	Troy (B3)	580
Madison (G6)	9,186	Challis (D5)	620	Mackay (E6)	776	Twin Falls *	
Minidoka (E7)	9,870	Clarks Fork (B1)	430	Malad City *		(D7)	11,851
Nez Perce (B3)	18,873	Coeur d'Alene * (B2)	10,049	(F7)	2,731	Ucon (G6)	449
Oneida (F7)	5,417	Cottonwood (B3)	673	Menan (F6, G6)	432	Wallace * (C2)	3,839
Owyhee <sup>1</sup> (A7)	5,652	Council (B5)	692	Meridian (B6)	1,465	Wardner (B2)	861
		Downey (F7)	673	Middleton (B6)	477	Weiser * (B5)	3,663
		Driggs (G6)	1,040	Montpelier *		Wendell (D7)	1,001
				(G7)	2,824	Weston (F7)	439
				Moscow * (B3)	6,014	Wilder (B6)	507
				Mountain Home (C6)	1,193	Winchester (B3)	634

<sup>1</sup> Part of Custer annexed to Butte in 1937.

<sup>2</sup> Part of Owyhee annexed to Elmore in 1930.

<sup>3</sup> Yellowstone National Park geographically located within limits of Idaho, Montana, and Wyoming. Total population 459 in 1940.



---

# *The HISTORY of ILLINOIS*

---

## Reading Unit No. 12

---

### ILLINOIS: THE PRAIRIE STATE

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

#### *Interesting Facts Explained*

Where America's roads meet, 8  
94  
Marquette and Joliet, the first white explorers, 8-96  
How Illinois was won for the United States, 8-97  
When state boundaries were fixed to include Chicago, 8-97  
How Illinois began to make rapid progress, 8-98

When Lincoln fought in the Black Hawk War, 8-99  
When the canal between Lake Michigan and the Illinois River was built, 8-101  
Illinois the first to ratify the thirteenth amendment, 8-102  
When fire burned down two-thirds of Chicago, 8-104  
A century of progress, 8-104

#### *Picture Hunt*

Where is Abraham Lincoln buried? 8 96

Where are the biggest stockyards in the world? 8 100

#### *Related Material*

Why Americans do not speak French, 7-135-39  
Why did Joliet become a fur trader? 13 487  
Who helped Joliet and Marquette to find the Mississippi? 13-483-84  
What famous man operated a flatboat on the Mississippi when he was young? 10-220  
Who invented spiral springs for

watches? 13-377  
A poet who lived in Chicago, 13-343  
How did Westinghouse's air brake improve the railroads? 10-190-200  
The story of the railroads, 10-185-200  
How is sandstone formed? 3-4  
The story of Abraham Lincoln, 12-524-29

#### *Practical Applications*

What must a democracy learn if it is to survive? 8-100

What is the story of oil in Illinois? 8-103

#### *Leisure-time Activities*

PROJECT NO. 1: Read "A Little Book of Western Verse"

by Eugene Field or "Chicago Poems" by Carl Sandburg.

#### *Summary Statement*

The history of Illinois has been the history of the mighty struggles involved in opening up the

American frontier to trade and industry.

## ILLINOIS: *the* PRAIRIE STATE

*Reaching Out One Hand to the Atlantic Ocean and the Other to the Gulf of Mexico, Illinois Sends Her Goods to Every Corner of the Globe and Takes a Stirring Part in the Nation's Life.*

**T**HERE are a number of ways of finding the center of the United States. If you were to draw a line from the farthest point in Washington to the farthest point in Florida, and another line from the tip of Maine to the southern tip of California, the two lines would cross somewhere in the southwest corner of Nebraska. That would be the geographical center of the country. If you were looking for the center of population, where there would be just as many people to the east as to the west and

to the north as to the south, you would go to a spot two or three miles northeast of the little town of Linton, in Indiana. But if you wanted to reach the spot where all the roads converged, a center around which trade was spread in ever widening circles, you would go to the city of Chicago, in the state of Illinois. Like a gigantic spider she sits at the center of a web of railroads, steamship routes, highways, and airways, which reach to the farthest corners of the land.

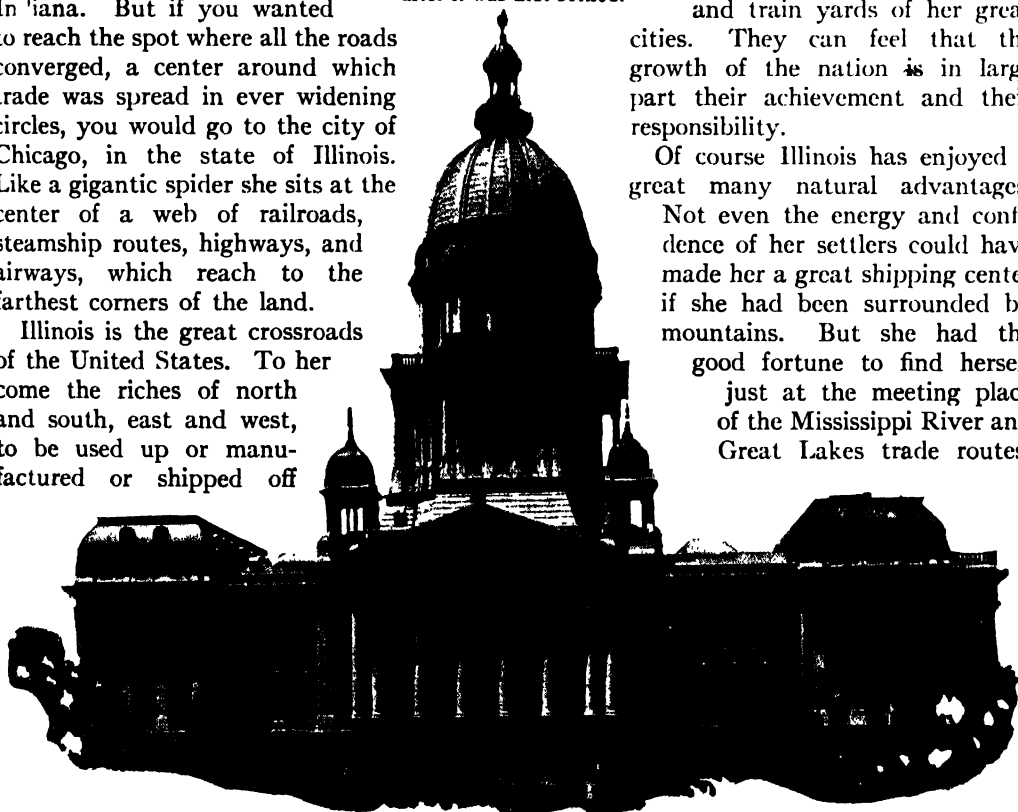
Illinois is the great crossroads of the United States. To her come the riches of north and south, east and west, to be used up or manufactured or shipped off

again to some other point. Besides making use of countless products from all over the world, Illinois provides us with a vast number of useful and valuable products of her own. A list of the things which are grown or mined or manufactured within her borders would be a very long list indeed. The Bureau of the Census has estimated that there are some 333 occupations which men carry on in the United States. The citizens of Illinois engage in all but thirteen of these. Illinois is one of the busiest states in the Union. Her citi-

The state capitol at Springfield, pictured below, is a huge structure built in the form of a Greek cross. Springfield became the capital of Illinois in 1837, nineteen years after it was first settled.

zens can feel the life blood of the nation's industry as it flows every day through the warehouses and stockyards and train yards of her great cities. They can feel that the growth of the nation is in large part their achievement and their responsibility.

Of course Illinois has enjoyed a great many natural advantages. Not even the energy and confidence of her settlers could have made her a great shipping center if she had been surrounded by mountains. But she had the good fortune to find herself just at the meeting place of the Mississippi River and Great Lakes trade routes.



## THE HISTORY OF ILLINOIS



The University of Illinois, founded at Urbana in 1867, is one of the large educational institutions of the

country. The library of the university is shown in the picture you see above.

She is like a tremendous bridge connecting the south with the north; and the easiest way to the east passes through her portals. For thousands of miles to the south and west there are no barriers to overcome. Trains can dart straight as an arrow over the smooth prairies, and boats can float unimpeded down the broad rivers which she has in such abundance and which were so useful in the early day. Illinois is in a position to control the trade of that whole great inland prairie which is drained by the Mississippi and its tributaries.

### An Inland Ocean of Long Ago

In our stories of Wisconsin and Michigan we described the great inland ocean that once covered all the land which the Mississippi River now drains. It covered only a part of Wisconsin and Michigan, but Illinois was once entirely submerged by it, and owes to it much of her fertile soil. For though this "ocean" was broad it was never so deep as the Atlantic or Pacific. Instead, it was more like an enormous shallow bay

or lake. Perhaps there were islands here and there, and certainly a great deal of it was never much more than a big, half-tropical swamp. Thousands of streams were always carrying dirt from the highlands to the north and east into that ancient inland sea, and filling it up with silt. As a result, when finally the floor of the sea was lifted up and the waters drained away, millions of acres of level, rich land were uncovered. That is why Illinois is one of the most level states in the Union. The fine limestone and sandstone which underlie so much of her soil are made up of the silt deposited in that old inland ocean, with a plentiful mixture of the tiny shells of the animals which swarmed in its shallow waters. And the soft coal which is so abundant in the southern part of the state is what remains of countless plants and animals which lived and died in the swamps.

### A Land of Level Prairies

Ever since she has been dry land Illinois has been covered with the fertile soil which

## THE HISTORY OF ILLINOIS

now lies on her prairies. The whole state is flat and rolling, for nothing has ever happened to upset that level surface laid down under the sea. The glacier, when it came, covered only the northern part of the state; and its work was mainly to bring down more rich soil from the north and to spread it evenly over Illinois. It did not change the surface of the land very much, or pile up the soil in very big mounds.

### The Land of the Illini

When the first white men came to Illinois they found the land very level and fertile, and inhabited by many peaceful tribes of Indians, who were engaged in farming. In the south and west were the Cahokia, Tamaroa, Michigamea, Kaskaskia, and Peoria tribes, all gathered together into a group that called themselves the Illini, a name which simply means "the men." They belonged to the Algonquian (ăl-gŏn'kĭ-ăn) family, which we have described elsewhere. In the northwest were the Sauks and the Foxes, in the west the Kickapoos, and in the southeast the Shawnees. But long before the coming of these Indians there had been the mound builders, whom we have described in our story of Ohio. They lived in the valleys of the Illinois and Mississippi rivers. You can still see the mounds which they built in Cahokia (kă-hŏ'-kĭ-ă), near East St. Louis, and in Dixon, Lewiston, and Joliet (jŏ'li-ět).

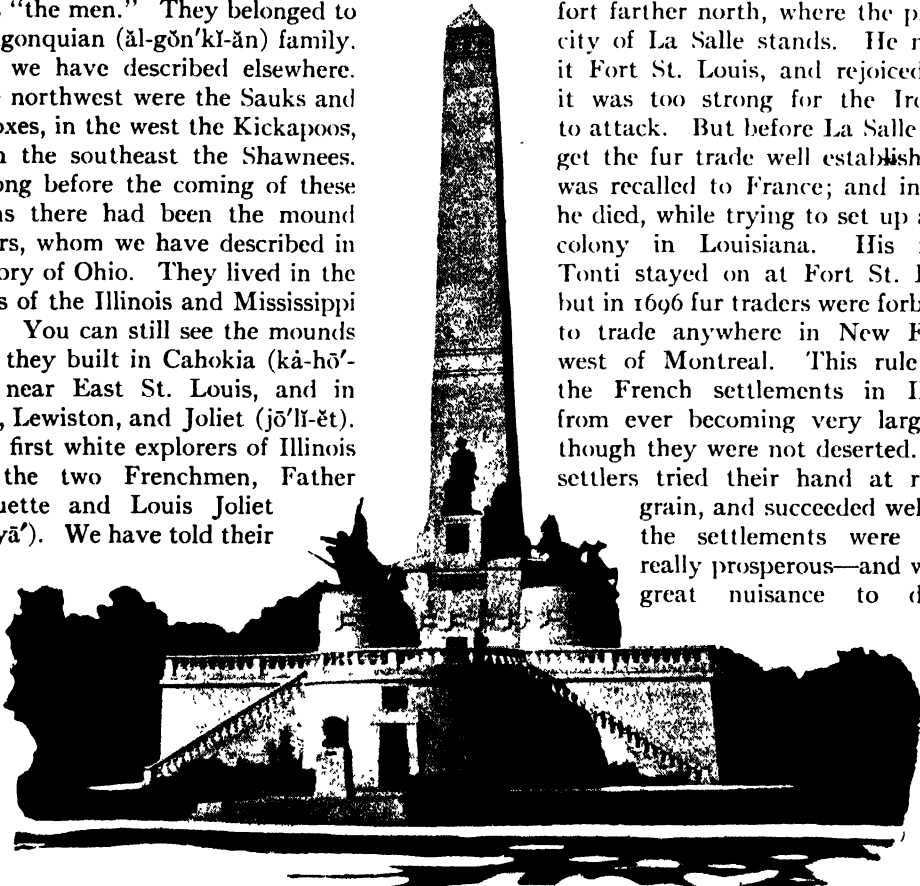
The first white explorers of Illinois were the two Frenchmen, Father Marquette and Louis Joliet (zhŏ'lyă'). We have told their

stories elsewhere in these books. After crossing Wisconsin by the Fox River, they floated down the Mississippi as far as Arkansas. On the way back they passed up the Illinois River, crossed the portage to the Chicago River, and came out on Lake Michigan just where the center of Chicago's business district stands to-day. Another Frenchman followed Marquette and Joliet, and became the first real settler in Illinois. He was Robert Cavalier, Sieur de La Salle (kă'vâ'-lyă') (syŭr dē lâ sâl). In 1679 La Salle and his friend Henri de Tonti (ŏN'rē' dē tŏN'tē') crossed the hostile wilderness from Detroit, and built a fort at Peoria (pē-ŏ'rĭ-ă). They intended to use it as a base for fur trading among the Illini Indians and the tribes to the west. But the unfriendly Iroquois (ĭr'ŏ-kwoi) destroyed this fort, and drove off the Illini.

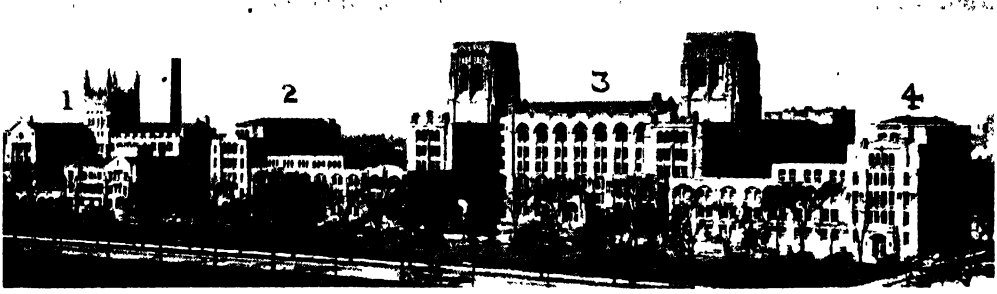
Then La Salle built a new fort farther north, where the present city of La Salle stands. He named it Fort St. Louis, and rejoiced that it was too strong for the Iroquois to attack. But before La Salle could get the fur trade well established he was recalled to France; and in 1687 he died, while trying to set up a new colony in Louisiana. His friend Tonti stayed on at Fort St. Louis; but in 1696 fur traders were forbidden to trade anywhere in New France west of Montreal. This rule kept the French settlements in Illinois from ever becoming very large, although they were not deserted. The settlers tried their hand at raising grain, and succeeded well, but the settlements were never really prosperous—and were a great nuisance to defend

The Lincoln Monument at Springfield, Illinois, marks the last resting place of one of our greatest presidents. Also at Springfield, and carefully preserved by the state, is the house where Lincoln lived before he became president.

Photo by Georg Studio



## THE HISTORY OF ILLINOIS



These handsome buildings, a part of the medical school of the University of Chicago, all face the Midway, a long strip of campus which was once the famous

Midway of the Chicago World's Fair of 1893. The buildings at 1, 2, and 3 are all hospitals. At 4 is a home for destitute crippled children.

against the English. When all of New France was surrendered to England in 1763, after a long struggle, very few men could imagine how important a part in American history these few scattered villages would play. The whole territory now became merely a part of the great Province of Quebec.

### The English Rule Illinois

The English government of Illinois was very much like the English government of Michigan and of Wisconsin. It was selfish and inefficient. The English officials made life so uncomfortable for the French that some of them crossed the Mississippi where the Missouri joins it, and settled St. Louis. The English successfully defeated the revolt of the Indians led by Pontiac (pŏn'tī-āk), but their policies kept nearly all the Indians of Illinois in a restive mood. When George Rogers Clark seized the state in 1778 for the new Continental Congress, he had the help of many of the red men, though in 1812 they sided with the British.

### A Brave Little Army

Clark's army had just 175 men, but with it he captured Kaskaskia, Cahokia, and Vincennes (vīn-sēnz'), Indiana. During the winter of 1778 the English came down from Detroit and recaptured Vincennes. Clark and his men marched all the way across Illinois and waded for miles through the February floods of the Wabash River. At last they reached Vincennes, stormed the fort, and captured the town. The English governor of the region was taken prisoner,

and Illinois was secured for the United States.

But there were to be many ups and downs before American rule was firmly established in Illinois. After 1787 everyone admitted that the Northwest Territory was a part of the United States. But the English lived and governed there for three more years, because there were no Americans to do the job. Finally Governor St. Clair came to Kaskaskia (1790) to govern the territory. From that time on, no matter what changes took place Illinois was always ruled by the United States. And you may be sure that plenty of changes did take place. For ten years, until 1800, she was part of the Northwest Territory. Then she was part of the Indiana Territory till 1809. In that year she became the Illinois Territory, and nine years later, in 1818, she was admitted to statehood.

### An Important Boundary Line

When she became a new state Illinois made many important changes in her boundaries and government. Her northern boundary, which had been along a line drawn through the southern tip of Lake Michigan, was moved almost sixty miles farther north, in order to give her an outlet on the Great Lakes and so anchor her to the North and the anti-slavery cause. Otherwise her trade would all have been down the Mississippi. This may not have seemed very important in 1818, when Chicago was a tiny village at the mouth of a swampy little river, but to-day a good deal more than half the people of

## THE HISTORY OF ILLINOIS

Illinois live in this little section that was added to the state at the last minute.

Another important change made by Illinois when she became a state was the prohibition of slavery. Throughout much of her later history she was constantly torn by slavery agitation. But those who were for slavery never gained control, and the original law of 1818 remained in force until slavery was abolished by national amendment. All the states which were carved out of the Northwest Territory had laws against slavery. The slaves already living in them did not become free, but no new slaves could be admitted. In Michigan this rule was easily accepted. But since Missouri, just across the Mississippi River from Illinois, allowed slavery, many men of Illinois feared that new settlers might prefer to seek land across the river and leave Illinois a wilderness. Today we know how mistaken their fears were, but for many years after 1818 Illinois politics were always in turmoil over this terrible issue.

### A Rush of Settlers

In our story of Ohio we have told of the great army of settlers who came streaming in from the east, walking, or riding, or floating on flatboats down the Ohio River. In spite of the gloomy predictions of the politicians who did not want to see slavery barred, these new arrivals did find homes in Illinois. They thronged into the state by thousands, and did not seem to mind the fact that they had to hire their help instead of buying it. Many of them were farmers, and, slavery or no slavery, they knew good farm land when they saw it! We have no way

of telling just how many of these newcomers there were, but after 1812 Illinois grew steadily at great speed. In 1810 there were hardly 12,000 people in the state. Twenty years later there were more than 157,000, and by 1860 Illinois boasted some 1,710,000 inhabitants. By 1880 the figure had reached 3,078,000; and in 1930 exactly 7,630,654 persons were living inside the boundaries of Illinois. She had increased the number of her inhabitants more than forty-eight times in just a hundred years. The world has rarely seen growth so rapid as this.

At first most of the new settlers came from the states to the east; but later many more began to arrive from Europe. After 1848 the social unrest in Germany drove great numbers of her citizens abroad in search of opportunity. Germans were the largest group

to come to Illinois, but thousands of English, Irish, Scotch, and Scandinavians came too. You will notice that all these settlers came from countries that did not have slavery. Many had lived in cities abroad and settled in cities here. Now slaves are not so useful in the city as in the country, where the tasks to be learned are simpler and the cost of living is not so high. Because of their early training many of these new settlers had strong objections to slavery. So during the Civil War it was her foreign-born citizens and her city dwellers who kept Illinois on the side of the North.

By the year 1830 the horde of new settlers had pushed nearly all the Indians out of Illinois and across the Mississippi River. For the most part the red men quietly accepted their unhappy lot. The Pottawatamies (põt'á-wõt'á-mí) left the region around



Photo by Cornelia Clarke

Corn grows well in the fertile glacial soil of Illinois. If you travel through the state at the right time of year, you will see an endless succession of cornfields like this one. Many of them will be dotted with bright pumpkins that are awaiting Thanksgiving.

## THE HISTORY OF ILLINOIS

Chicago peacefully, and the Winnebagos (wīn'ê-bā'gō) resisted feebly for a very

little flurry was the last, and indeed the only, real trouble caused by the Indians in Illinois. Perhaps the most important thing about the Black Hawk War was the fact that Abraham Lincoln fought in it. We cannot say that he did anything very heroic. For almost a year he served as a captain of militia, but he did not see an Indian or fire a shot except in practice.

A few years after the Black Hawk War another and more unusual struggle took place on the soil of Illinois. The Mormons, or Latter Day Saints, were a group founded and led by a man named Joseph Smith. Starting in western New York they had migrated through the Middle West, stopping from time to time but always driven on because of their religion. Among other un-

Illinois raises a goodly number of sheep, but by no means enough to challenge the supremacy of the western states, which have vast areas of land to devote to grazing.

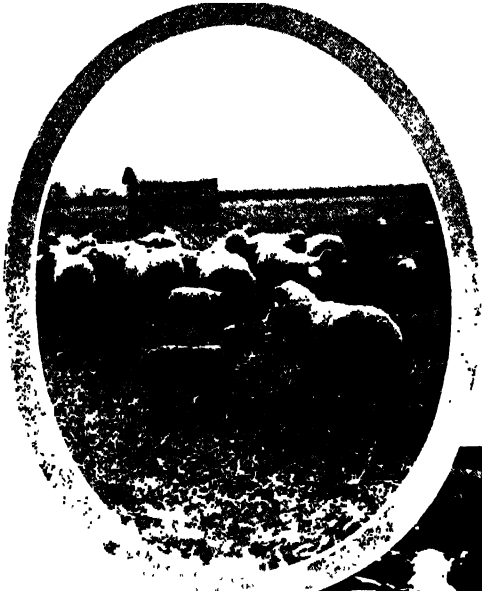
Phot. by the University of Illinois

short time only. The Sauks and Foxes, in the northwestern part of the state, put up the only real resistance against the relentless pressure of the white men. Under their leader Black Hawk they waged a hopeless war against the palefaces. In the early part of 1832, when the trouble was first beginning, the Indians did much damage in the northwestern section of Illinois, where they strove to keep possession of the valuable lead mines around Galena (gā-lē'nā). Settlers had been streaming in by the hundreds to take out the ore, which was in great demand for making bullets. Those mines still yield zinc—and a little lead—even to-day.

Of course the Indians were doomed to lose in the contest with the white man. Black Hawk was taken prisoner, and his tribe crossed the Mississippi in defeat. This

Because the state grows so much grain, Illinois is able to raise profitably a large number of cattle and swine. These go to the great slaughtering and packing firms at Chicago, which ship the meat to the hungry markets of the East.

usual beliefs they held that it was a man's duty to follow the early Bible custom and take more than one wife. This was the main reason why they never were allowed to stay



## THE HISTORY OF ILLINOIS



Photo by Swift & Company

The Union Stock Yards, covering some 475 acres in the southern part of Chicago, are the most important in the world. Here a number of firms have their

slaughterhouses and meat-packing plants. It is not surprising to find that this busy and interesting place draws many visitors every year.

long in one place. Before coming to Illinois the Mormons had been driven out of Ohio and Missouri. In 1840 they crossed the river from Missouri and settled in the little town of Nauvoo, in Hancock County. Within four years Nauvoo had become the largest city in the state, with 20,000 inhabitants. Ambitious politicians had made it practically independent of state law. But many ugly stories began to spring up. The frontiersmen did not like polygamy (pô-lig'â-mî), which is the system by which one husband has more than one wife; but they may have been jealous of the new Mormon prosperity, too. At any rate Joseph Smith was arrested in 1844 and thrown into the county jail at Carthage. Two days later he was taken in the county jail and lynched by a mob. The city of Nauvoo suffered several attacks in that same year; and the other settlers continued to harass the Mormons without mercy. Finally (1846) the Mormons could stand the persecution no longer. They gathered their belongings together and left the state, to found Salt Lake City, in Utah.

### The Dangers of Mob Violence

Such a story of mob violence shows the American frontier at its worst. Many of those early settlers, though brave and enduring, were narrow, suspicious men, hard as the life they had to lead and only too eager to attack and destroy anything that

was unusual. They did not care if the new system was good or bad. If it was good they attacked it because they were jealous; and if it was bad they did not wait to restrain it by law but attacked it because they did not like it. Their lawless murders can have no place in the American tradition of freedom and toleration, where law should reign. If a democracy is to survive it must first of all learn self-control.

### The Scramble for the Railroads

But in the great bustle and confusion of those rude days men did many careless and thoughtless things. A whole new civilization was being built up, and the builders were too busy to worry about details. Thousands were moving into Illinois from the east and thousands more were moving on to the new California gold fields. Everywhere was hurry and confusion. Railroads were springing up all over the state, and the men who built them used bribery freely in order to get cheap land for their tracks and stations. Any city which did not have a railroad running through it, felt that it had been slighted. So each city tried to bribe the government and the railroad builders to build the railroad past its door, and to stay far away from all the neighboring towns. In this way the city with the railroad could become the center of trade for a whole region. Many lines were built between towns which had no use for



## THE HISTORY OF ILLINOIS

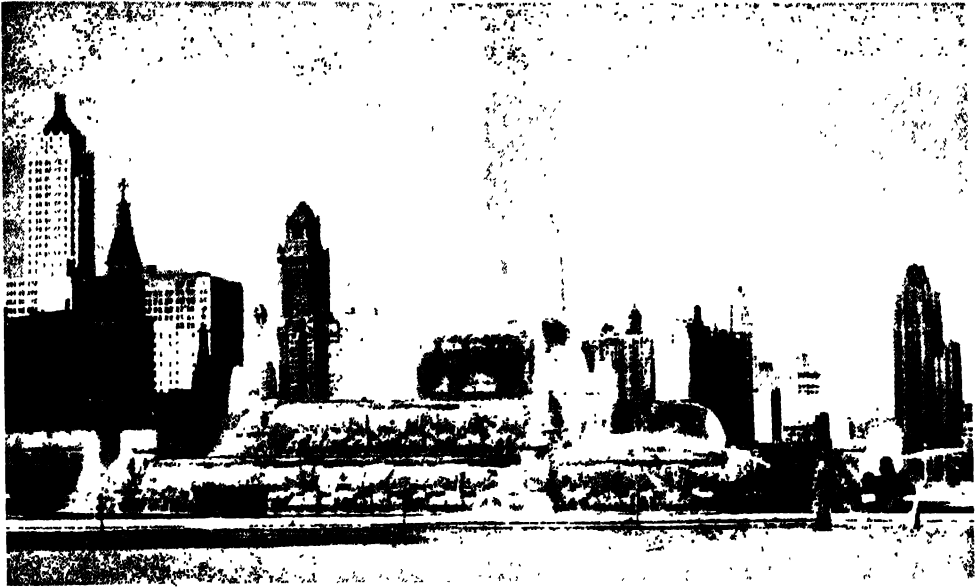


Photo by Chicago Art Institute

As we look on Chicago's impressive skyline it is hard to realize that this great city—our second largest—was only a small town a hundred years ago. At that time the present business district was a pasture, and

the only water supply was a well! Now Chicago has as many fine buildings, beautiful parks, and internationally known museums as one would expect to find in a city hundreds of years old.

a railroad; they wanted it simply to gratify local pride. Hundreds of railroad companies collapsed and were never heard of again. Those that survived often charged very high rates, because there was no way to regulate them. But in spite of all these mistakes and dishonest practices, the railroads continued to develop. By 1853 the last stagecoach lines had stopped running, and the railroads had almost no competition. The backbone of Illinois's railroad system had been laid down. She has been adding to it ever since, till now it is second largest in the United States, though in the beginning it was only a slapdash affair.

### How Chicago Got Her Start

Another important development of this period was the finishing (1848) of the state canal between Lake Michigan and the Illinois River. After it was in use the farmers could send their grain by water from southern or central Illinois all the way to New York by way of the Great Lakes and the Erie Canal. No shifting or unloading was nec-

essary. Before this time they had had to ship goods downstream to New Orleans, and then by boat to the east. The new route was shorter, and the new market was larger. Chicago, seated just where the new canal opened into Lake Michigan, reaped many of the benefits. From this time on she continued to grow with tremendous speed. In fact she grew so fast that before very long she outgrew the canal. Her railroads got to be so cheap and efficient that they took most of the trade.

### By Boat from Chicago to the Gulf

Later (1900) the Chicago Drainage Canal, one of the world's greatest sanitary constructions, was built to supplement the older waterway. It is deep enough so that through it water actually drains from the Great Lakes into the Gulf of Mexico. In 1933 government works on the Illinois River were completed and what is known as the Illinois Waterway—from Chicago through the Drainage Canal and the Illinois River to the Mississippi—became available for good-sized barges.

## THE HISTORY OF ILLINOIS

Chicago now is a port of entry for the United States. The last step to insure the region's full development was taken when in 1947 work was begun on an eight-mile canal in Madison County to cut off a dangerous stretch in the Mississippi and so to open a cheap through route for heavy barges from the Gulf to St. Paul and the Great Lakes.

Illinois's early progress suffered from the outbreak of the Civil War. We have described her position as a bridge connecting the north and south. Both the slavery and anti-slavery groups had strong parties within the state, and many bitter political battles took place. The most famous of these were the debates between Stephen A. Douglas and Abraham Lincoln. Illinois announced herself against slavery in the election of 1860, and against it she remained throughout the troubles of the Civil War.

A good many southerners had come to Illinois and of course won plenty of their neighbors to their beliefs. Especially in the southern part of the state, many people were bitterly dissatisfied and wished to fight for the Confederacy.

In 1864 they even got up a plot to release thousands of Confederate prisoners from Camp Douglas in Chicago. Luckily the plot was discovered just in time. But the majority of the people of Illinois were loyal to the Union, and made a splendid contribution in men and supplies to the Northern cause. As soon as the great struggle was over, Illinois was the first state to ratify the Thirteenth Amendment, which provided that slavery should never again exist in the United States.

### Why Illinois Has Prospered

And now, with the war ended, we come to the period of Illinois's great prosperity. The

wheat and corn of her rich deep soil and fertile river valleys were needed while the destruction caused by five years of war was being repaired. For almost thirty years (1850 to 1879) Illinois was the Union's greatest producer of wheat. To-day she ranks midway. She has long been a leader in growing hay, oats, and corn, and ranks first in soybeans.

Buckwheat, barley, white potatoes, sweet potatoes, flaxseed, apples, peaches, pears, and grapes are all profitable. Illinois's southern tip, called "Egypt," is part of the Mississippi embayment—described elsewhere—and is warm.

Much Illinois grain is fed to cattle, hogs, and horses, for the state is a leading producer of all three. In hogs she ranks second. She produces, also, vast quantities of dairy and poultry products.

Hogs and cattle demanded a slaughtering and packing industry to get them ready for markets in the East. As a result, ever since 1870 Chicago has been the busiest slaughtering and packing center in the world—getting her animals from the lush fields in states that lie all around her.

It is true that during the

1930's her farmers suffered along with other farmers—as we have told in our story of Indiana—but during and after World War II they did an enormous business.

It was not only the products of her agriculture that made Illinois so useful and progressive a state in the years after the Civil War. Her central position and her ability to bring together great quantities of wood and steel gave her a leading place in manufactures. When the fighting was over, the industries of Illinois were firmly established; to-day they outrank her agriculture, though the output of her farms has not fallen off. Farm tools, especially harvesters, which she soon



The rocks in Illinois provide the state with a number of useful products. Pure sands for making glass, fluorite to be used in the making of steel, and lime for a number of different purposes are only a few of the state's valuable minerals. Above is a limestone quarry in Illinois.

## THE HISTORY OF ILLINOIS

turned out in large quantities, proved their value all over the country. To-day Illinois, at the center of our country's great farming region, still makes more farm tools than any other state in the Union. The great iron mines of Michigan and Minnesota were just being opened up for use, and ships could easily carry ore down Lake Michigan to Chicago. Here the industrialists of Illinois built huge foundries and machine shops where the ore was made into all sorts of useful objects.

### The Part Played by Coal

The iron and steel industry was tremendously helped by the fact that just at this time men started to work the great coal fields in the southern and central parts of the state. Even the first white explorers of Illinois had known about these beds of soft coal, which came to the surface in many places. But as long as the scattered forest lands of Illinois supplied cheap wood, there was no particular reason for digging up the coal, which was so much harder to get at. But the woods of Illinois were soon gone. Then, when men needed more fuel than the forests could supply, they turned at once to those great underground stores. For many years only Pennsylvania mined more coal than Illinois. Even to-day it is only rarely that Illinois ranks lower than third among the coal-mining states of the nation. These great coal deposits have done more than anything else to make Illinois a great manufacturing state and a center of transportation. The coal they produced ran her factories and smelted her steel; and it moved the thousands of trains which came and went bringing goods from all over the country to Chicago or carrying goods from Chicago to every part of the United States.

### An Amazing Growth

We shall probably find it hard to realize how fast all the different parts of Illinois's industrial system developed. It was not that the railroads developed first, and then the packing industry, and then the mines, one industry after the other. All of the industries in Illinois started growing at about the same time, and they all grew with

tremendous speed. In 1850 Illinois was the fifteenth state in manufacturing, in 1870 she was sixth, and in 1880 fourth. As each industry developed, it helped the others along. Because of her railroad system, the foundries and machine shops found it easier to move their products to market and to get their raw materials. The iron and steel works made it easier and cheaper to build railroads. The great wheat crops and dairy-ing industries reduced the cost of living, and so encouraged industry through the lowering of wages. The new cities founded by industry made it more and more profitable to the farmers to produce bigger and better crops. No wonder Illinois enjoyed one of the most amazing growths of any region in the world's history!

### The Story of Oil in Illinois

The first mines in Illinois were dug to get coal. But in taking out coal men found several other products almost as valuable as the one they were looking for. For miles the level plains of Illinois are covered with some of the finest limestone and sandstone in the country. This stone is being quarried to-day in great quantities to be used for buildings. In addition, the limestone serves in making cement and yields lime for the smelting of iron, and the sandstone is crushed to be used as sand. Besides these products the miners found that in the southeastern part of the state the coal belt yielded oil and natural gas. For some time around the year 1910 Illinois was one of the nation's great oil producers. But the apparent supply soon diminished. In 1939 new deposits were discovered in the southern part of the state and the Salem pool took rank second only to the East Texas field among the country's producing areas. To-day the state ranks high in oil production, and produces natural gas and gasoline, zinc, and lead as well. She is one of the great refining and distributing centers of the country. Powerful pumps move the crude oil through great pipe lines from other oil fields into Illinois. And from Illinois the finished products are piped out north and south, east and west, for use in tractors and automobiles and factories.

We should fill a book if we tried to describe

---

## THE HISTORY OF ILLINOIS

all of Illinois's important industries. She is a leader in producing fluor spar, a mineral much used in the manufacture of various metals. She digs up fine clay, which she makes into beautiful pottery at Monmouth and Macomb. She grows hothouse flowers in tremendous quantities, and ships them far and wide over the country. From her corn crop alone she makes such a great variety of things that it would take many pages to describe them. Dynamite, soap, artificial rubber and silk, varnish, paper, carpets, glue, vinegar, corn syrup, cornstarch, and corn sugar are only a few. She makes furniture in Chicago and its suburbs. At Peoria, the second largest city in the state, she has tractor factories and enormous distilleries which make much of the nation's whiskey.

Elgin (əl'jĭn), Springfield, and La Salle are famous for the fine watches and clocks they manufacture. Springfield, the state capital since 1837, is proud of her many memories of Abraham Lincoln. Decatur (dē-kā'tēr) was his first home in Illinois, but most of his life until he became president was lived at Springfield.

### Plows, Brooms, and Pearl Buttons

From the five hundred rivers that wander over her surface Illinois takes fish, and mussel shells which are made into artificial pearl buttons. Paris makes brooms, and Joliet is known for her steel works and wall paper. Plows, tractors, and railway cars are made at Rock Island and Moline (mô-lĕn'), and furniture at Rockford. East St. Louis, an important railway center, unites with other towns around her in manufacturing iron, packing meat, and turning out a good many other useful wares.

These small cities of Illinois carry on many different industries, but Chicago engages in nearly all of them. She is the second largest city in the country, and the greatest railway center, meat packer, grain market, and livestock market in the world. Her manufactures of electrical machinery, clothing, railroad cars, foundry products, and iron and steel products, are among the most important in the world. The volume of business which Chicago does is even more

amazing when we remember that she is really only a little more than a century old. But her growth has been steady, ever since she became a town in 1833. Even the great Chicago fire, which burned down two-thirds of the city (1871), was more of a blessing than a curse. Old Chicago had been built almost entirely of wood. The streets were narrow and crooked, and the whole town was a jumble of ill-assorted buildings. But the new Chicago was more carefully planned. The city was rebuilt in a year or two, and now it had wide streets and brick or stone buildings. The fire had actually encouraged the citizens to build a Chicago that was better in every way. To-day the great city is one of the world's finest examples of city planning.

### A Century of Progress

During the great depression following 1929 Chicago was hard hit, as was the rest of the country. But her main products were not luxuries, like the automobile; they were coal and wheat and steel—things the nation had to have, no matter how poor people were. Because of this fact Chicago, as well as Illinois as a whole, was one of the leaders in the new recovery. Her citizens had lost heavily but they had so fine a confidence in the future that in 1933, in the depths of the depression, they held a great festival, the Century of Progress. This fair celebrated the hundredth anniversary of Chicago's becoming a town. She had grown from humble little Fort Dearborn, built (1804) near a half-mile portage between the Chicago River and the headwaters of the Kankakee.

### Triumph over the Depression

The fair was a great success. From all over the world people came to see the great exhibits—just as they had come to another famous World's Fair held in Chicago in 1893. That earlier fair had formed the nation's architecture on new models. This one sent people home with many new ideas and a new hope for a return to prosperity. Chicago came out of the depression with even wider recognition as a leader in the life of the nation.

In her wonderful progress Chicago may be taken as typical of the state in which she

## THE HISTORY OF ILLINOIS



Photo from Ewing Galloway, N.Y.

This cornpicker and husker has done away with the old-fashioned husking bee and saves a vast amount of time and money in cornfields as big as Illinois's. Corn grows in many places, but does best only where there is a growing season five months long and a hot mid-summer with warm nights and plenty of rain. Given those conditions it will sometimes shoot up

several inches in a single day. Yet hot climates do not suit it either. It seems to need the warning of rapidly shortening hours of daylight to make it mature at its best—so plant breeders are all the while developing varieties that will grow farther and farther north. For corn is valuable. It contains more protein and more oil than any other cereal.

plays so large a part. From crude and clumsy beginnings she has come to be one of the greatest cities in the world. But it is not only in material ways that Chicago and Illinois have progressed together. When the University of Chicago was founded by John D. Rockefeller (1892) Chicago took her place with the leading intellectual centers of the country. As a city she has always been interested in music and the arts. The Chicago Symphony Orchestra is one of the world's finest; and the museums, libraries, and art galleries of Chicago have made her a center of art appreciation and culture famous throughout the country. Her system of public education, like that of Illinois as a whole, has always been liberally endowed and highly successful. The University of Illinois (1867) at Urbana and Northwestern University (1855) at Evanston are other important institutions of higher learning.

The history of Illinois has been the history

of the mighty struggles involved in opening up the American frontier to trade and industry. Her flourishing cities and busy factories bear witness to her success in performing this gigantic task. The Century of Progress exhibition summed up the whole long story, and in such a way as to bring pride to the heart of every citizen of Illinois. But this great state will not be satisfied with retelling the stories of her past. Already she has set out on new tasks. Chicago has had grave problems of crime and graft but has dealt with them resolutely. During the depression of the 1930's her school system broke down, but she built it up again. This great state sees ever more clearly that abundant living is in itself an end worthy of her best energies. So long as she brings to her new duties the strength and enthusiasm of the past, Illinois is sure to remain the pioneering state which she always has been. Her greatest achievement still lies before her.

## ILLINOIS

**AREA:** 56,400 square miles—23rd in rank.

**LOCATION:** Illinois, one of the East North Central states, lies between 37° and 42° 30' N. Lat. and between 87° 35' and 91° 31' W. Long. It is bounded on the north by Wisconsin, on the east by Lake Michigan and Indiana, on the southeast by Indiana and Kentucky, on the southwest by Missouri, and on the west by Missouri and Iowa.

**PHYSICAL FEATURES:** The surface of Illinois is like a great smooth table sloping slightly toward the south and southwest. Only Delaware and Louisiana are more level. The highest point is Charles Mound (1,241 ft.), on the northern border, where there are a good many low hills. Most of Illinois is in the prairie plains region, but the southern tip of the state—in general, the seven southernmost counties—lies in the very fertile region known as the Mississippi embayment of the Gulf coastal plain. Here, along the Mississippi, is the lowest point in the state, 279 ft. Just north of this section a broad, though not very high, elevation crosses the state, and another very low elevation extends northward along the Mississippi as far as the mouth of the Illinois. There is a third slight rise of land along the Wabash. Both the Mississippi and the Illinois have in places cut out sizable bluffs. The average elevation of the state is about 600 ft.

Illinois is well supplied with rivers, and has a good deal less swamp land than one would expect from its very level surface. It is true that a great many of the farms have put in a drainage system, especially in the east and north, but the land yields so well that the thousands of miles of drainage ditches are considered an excellent investment. Of the nearly five hundred streams within the state the Illinois (273 m. long) is the most important. It is formed by the junction of the Kankakee (225 m. long) and the Des Plaines (150 m. long), and flows southwestward across the state to join the Mississippi. It is connected with Lake Michigan by the Chicago Drainage Canal, and is now navigable for about 245 miles. In this way Lake Michigan is actually drained south into the Gulf of Mexico, for the canal follows the Chicago River, which formerly emptied into Lake Michigan. Three-fourths of the state is drained westward or southwestward into the Mississippi. Besides the Illinois the Rock (300 m. long), which comes down from Wisconsin, and the Kaskaskia (300 m. long) are the most important of the Mississippi's tributaries. Along the state's southeastern border flows the Wabash (475 m. long), which comes across Ohio from Indiana in order to join the Ohio. All together it is navigable for about 250 miles. From Illinois it receives the Vermilion, the Embarrass, and the Little Wabash (180 m. long). The Ohio (981 m. long) forms the state's southern boundary for some 200 miles, and is navigable all the way, an important artery of commerce. Into it from Illinois flow the Saline and the Cache. Of course the most important of all the rivers that wash Illinois is the Mississippi (2,470 m. long), which for some 750 miles flows along the western border and may be navigated all the way. Illinois has very few lakes, though the Illinois River widens out to form broad sheets of water, such as Lake Peoria. All together the state has 622 square miles of water, not counting its jurisdiction in Lake Michigan. There is no irrigated land.

**CLIMATE:** Illinois has a climate that is changeable and suffers great extremes of heat and cold. The southern part of the state is a good deal warmer than the north, with a mean annual temperature at Cairo of 58° F. and a record high of 115° at Centralia. On the northern border the mean annual temperature is 47°. Everywhere the winter brings cold; a temperature of -32° has been recorded in the north. These great

extremes result from the fact that Illinois is a long way from the ocean and so does not feel its moderating effect. Icy winds sweep unhindered down the Mississippi Valley in winter and moist heat-laden winds blow up the same valley from the south in summer. Both winds bring uncomfortable weather. The climate at Chicago is somewhat modified by Lake Michigan. The mean January temperature there is 24°, the mean July temperature is 72°. The record high is 105°, the record low -23°. The state gets plenty of rain, more in the south than in the north. The average for the south is about 43 inches a year, and for the north about 34 inches. The north gets a good deal more snow than the south. From time to time Illinois is visited by tornadoes.

**INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING:** The more important institutions in the state are Augustana College and Theological Seminary at Rock Island, Aurora College at Aurora, Barat College of the Sacred Heart for women at Lake Forest, Bradley Polytechnic Institute at Peoria, Carthage College at Carthage, University of Chicago in Chicago, College of St. Francis for women at Joliet, DePaul University in Chicago, Elmhurst College at Elmhurst, Eureka College at Eureka, George Williams College in Chicago, Illinois College at Jacksonville, Illinois Institute of Technology in Chicago, University of Illinois at Urbana and Chicago, Illinois Wesleyan University at Bloomington, James Millikan University at Decatur, Knox College at Galesburg, Lake Forest University at Lake Forest, Loyola University in Chicago, MacMurray College for Women at Jacksonville, Monmouth College at Monmouth, North Central College at Naperville, Northwestern University at Evanston and Chicago, Rosary College for women at River Forest, St. Francis Xavier College for women in Chicago, Shurtleff College at Alton, and Wheaton College at Wheaton. The state maintains a normal university at Normal and one at Carbondale. State teachers' colleges are at De Kalb, Macomb, and Charleston. There are also numerous junior colleges in various parts of the state.

**INSTITUTIONS FOR THE PROMOTION OF CULTURE:** Chicago is an important art center for the entire country. It has the Chicago Museum of Art, and many art schools, as well as the Field Museum of Natural History. In the same city there is a grand opera company of the first rank and one of the best symphony orchestras in the country.

**CHARITIES AND CORRECTION:** Illinois maintains hospitals at Anna, Elgin, Kankakee, Jacksonville, East Moline, Peoria, Chester, Chicago, Alton, Manteno; a research and educational hospital in connection with the college of medicine at the University of Illinois; and an eye and ear infirmary in Chicago. For the feeble-minded there is a school and colony at Lincoln and a hospital at Dixon. At Jacksonville is a school for the blind and one for the deaf, at Chicago an industrial home for the blind, at Geneva a training school for girls, at St. Charles one for boys, and at Normal a home for soldiers' and sailors' orphans. Quincy has a home for soldiers and sailors, and Wilmington a home for soldiers' widows. Illinois has three penitentiaries, one for men and one for women at Joliet and a third at Menard. Besides this there are reformatories at Pontiac and Dwight and a state penal farm at Vandalia. Illinois inflicts capital punishment by electrocution.

**POLITICAL FACTS:** The present constitution, the third under which the state has been governed, was adopted in 1870. Laws are made by the General Assembly, which is made up of two houses, a Senate and a House of Representatives. The members are elected from the districts into which the state is divided, one Senator and three Representatives from each district. Senators are elected for four years and

## ILLINOIS—Continued

**Representatives for two.** Senators must be twenty-five years of age or over, and Representatives must be over twenty-one. The constitution provides for a system of voting by which a voter may express a strong preference for one candidate by casting as many votes for him as there are persons to be chosen—that is, if three Representatives are to be elected, he may vote for three different candidates or may cast three votes for one candidate. The legislature meets in odd-numbered years. The executive power is headed by the governor, who is elected for four years, as are all the members of his staff except the treasurer, who serves for two years and may not serve two consecutive terms.

The judiciary is headed by a supreme court made up of seven justices, each one elected from one of the seven judicial districts into which the state is divided. They serve for a term of nine years. Each district has a circuit court made up of three judges elected from the district and serving for six years. Appellate courts—which hear cases on appeal—are held in each district when it is necessary. Each county chooses a county judge. Cook County, which is made up of the city of Chicago, forms one judicial unit and has separate courts. Small cases are heard before justices of the peace.

Voters must be twenty-one years of age or over, must be citizens of the United States, must have lived in the state a year, in the county 90 days, and in the election district 30 days. The state has a primary-election law, with provisions for holding a presidential primary. United States Senators are considered to be state officials and are nominated in state primaries.

The county is an important unit in local government, and is under the administration of commissioners. There is provision for the commission form of government in cities, for the recall of officials, and for the initiative and referendum.

The capital of Illinois is at Springfield.

**PARKS:** The state has no national parks, but there are a great many state parks. The park system planned by the city of Chicago is said to be the finest and most extensive city system in the world.

Illinois has 812,654 acres of national forest.

**GAME AND BIRD RESERVATIONS:** The Upper Mississippi River Wild Life and Fish Refuge, established in 1925 and reaching also into Iowa, Minnesota, and Wisconsin, covers 5,256 acres in Illinois and

protects muskrats, raccoons, birds, fish, and mussels. The Chautauqua Refuge in Mason County also protects birds and fur-bearing animals.

**NAME:** Illinois took its name from the Illinois River, which in 1679 had been named for the Illini Indians by La Salle. The original form of this Algonquin word was "Inini," a term meaning "the men, perfect and accomplished." The suffix "ois" is French and denotes a tribe.

**NICKNAMES:** Illinois is called the Corn State because of its important position in the Corn Belt. It is also known as "Egypt," a name given in particular to that portion of the state around Cairo, where the climate is warm and the soil very fertile. At one time the state was widely known as the Garden of the West, a fitting title because of its large areas of cultivated fields. The level character of its lands has led people to call it the Prairie State. But probably the commonest nickname is the Sucker State, a title that is said to have come from the fact that the early lead miners, instead of staying all winter, as the miners in Wisconsin did, went home when cold weather came, just as the sucker, a common fish in Illinois, migrates up and down the rivers.

The people of Illinois are called Egyptians and Suckers, and those who live on the broken, sandy plains are called Sandhillers.

**STATE FLOWER:** The wood, or bird's-foot, violet (*Viola pedata*); adopted in 1908.

**STATE SONG:** "Illinois," with words by C. H. Chamberlain and music by Archibald Johnston; approved in 1925.

**STATE FLAG:** A white field upon which is reproduced the great seal of the state in black or in red, white, and blue; adopted in 1915.

**STATE MOTTO:** "State Sovereignty—National Unity."

**STATE BIRD:** Cardinal.

**INTERESTING FACTS:** Illinois observes New Year's Day, Lincoln's Birthday, Washington's Birthday, Good Friday, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Columbus Day, Election Day, Armistice Day, Thanksgiving Day, and Christmas Day.

Only one state in the Union has a larger proportion of land that is suitable for cultivation.

<b>Population of state</b> 1940, 7,897,241	<b>Cumberland</b> (H7) 11,698	<b>Henderson</b> (A4) 8,949	<b>McDonough</b> (C5) 26,944
<b>Counties</b>		<b>Henry</b> (D3) 43,798	<b>McHenry</b> (H1) 37,311
Adams (H6) 65,229	De Kalb (G2) 34,388	<b>Iroquois</b> (J4) 32,496	<b>McLean</b> (G5) 73,930
Alexander (F11) 25,496	De Witt (G5) 18,244		<b>Macon</b> (G6) 84,693
	Douglas (H6) 17,590	<b>Jackson</b> (F10) 37,920	<b>Macoupin</b> (E7) 46,304
	Du Page (H2) 103,480	<b>Jasper</b> (H7) 13,431	<b>Madison</b> (E8) 149,349
Bond (F8) 14,540		<b>Jefferson</b> (G9) 34,375	<b>Marion</b> (G8) 47,989
Boone (G1) 15,202	Edgar (J6) 24,430	<b>Jersey</b> (D7) 13,636	<b>Marshall</b> (F3) 13,179
Brown (C6) 8,053	Edwards (H9) 8,974	<b>Jo Daviess</b> (D1) 19,989	<b>Mason</b> (E5) 15,358
Bureau (F3) 37,600	Efingham (G7) 22,034	<b>Johnson</b> (G11) 10,727	<b>Massac</b> (G11) 14,937
			<b>Menard</b> (E5) 10,663
Calhoun (C7) 8,207	Fayette (G8) 29,159	<b>Kane</b> (H2) 130,206	<b>Mercer</b> (C3) 17,701
Carroll (E1) 17,987	Ford (H4) 15,007	<b>Kankakee</b> (J3) 60,877	<b>Monroe</b> (D9) 12,754
Cass (D6) 16,425	Franklin (G10) 53,137	<b>Kendall</b> (H2) 11,103	<b>Montgomery</b> (F7) 34,499
Champaign (H5) 70,578	Fulton (D4) 44,627	<b>Knob</b> (D4) 52,250	<b>Morgan</b> (D6) 36,378
Christian (F7) 38,564			<b>Moultrie</b> (G6) 13,477
Clark (J7) 18,842	Gallatin (H10) 11,414	<b>Lake</b> (J1) 121,094	
Clay (G8) 18,947	Greene (D7) 20,292	<b>La Salle</b> (G3) 97,801	<b>Ogle</b> (F1) 29,869
Clinton (F8) 22,912	Grundy (H3) 18,398	<b>Lawrence</b> (J8) 21,075	
Coles (H6) 38,470		<b>Lee</b> (F2) 34,604	<b>Peoria</b> (E4) 153,374
Cook (J2) 4,063,342	Hamilton (G9) 13,454	<b>Livingston</b> (H4) 38,838	<b>Perry</b> (F9) 23,438
Crawford (J7) 21,294	Hancock (H5) 26,297	<b>Logan</b> (F5) 29,438	<b>Piatt</b> (G5) 14,659
	Hardin (H11) 7,759		

# ILLINOIS—Continued

Pike (C6) 25,340	Centralia * (F8) 16,343	Harvey * (J2) 17,878	Paris * (J6) . . . 9,281
Pope (H11) 7,999	Champaign * (H5) . . . 23,302	Havana * (D5) . . 3,999	Park Ridge * (J1) . . 12,063
Pulaski (F11) 15,875	Charleston * (H7) 8,197	Herrin * (F10) . . 9,352	Paxton * (H5) . . 3,106
Putnam (F3) 5,289	Chester * (E10) 5,110	Highland * (E8) . 3,820	Pekin * (E4) 19,407
Randolph (E9) 31,608	Chicago * (J2) 3,396,808	Highland Park * (J1) 14,476	Peoria * (E4) 105,087
Richland (H8) 17,137	Chicago Heights * (J3) 22,461	Highwood * (J1) 3,707	Peoria Heights * (F4) 4,376
Rock Island (D3) 113,323	Christopher * (F10) 3,833	Hillsboro * (F7) 4,514	Peru * (F3) 8,983
St. Clair (E9) 166,899	Cicero * (J2) 64,712	Hinsdale * (H2) 7,336	Pinckneyville * (F9) 3,146
Saline (H10) 38,066	Clinton * (G5) 6,331	Hoopeston * (J5) 5,381	Pontiac * (G4) 9,585
Sangamon (E6) 117,912	Collinsville * (E8) 9,767	Jacksonville * (D6) 19,844	Princeton * (F3) 5,224
Schuyler (C5) 11,430	Crystal Lake * (H1) 3,917	Jerseyville * (D7) 4,809	Quincy * (B6) 40,469
Scott (D6) 8,176	Danville * (J5) 36,919	Johnston City * (G10) 5,418	River Forest * (J2) 9,487
Shelby (G7) 26,290	Decatur * (G6) 59,305	Joliet * (H2) 42,365	Riverside * (J2) 7,935
Stark (E3) 8,881	De Kalb * (G2) 9,146	Kankakee * (J3) 22,241	Robinson * (J8) 4,311
Stephenson (E1) 40,646	Des Plaines * (J1) 9,518	Kewanee * (D3) 16,901	Rochelle * (F2) 4,200
Tazewell (F4) 58,362	Dixon * (F2) 10,671	La Grange * (J2) 10,479	Rock Falls * (E2) 4,987
Union (F11) 21,528	Dolton * (I2) 3,068	La Grange Park * (J2) 3,406	Rockford * (F1) 84,637
Vermilion (J5) 86,791	Downers Grove * (J2) 9,526	Lake Forest * (J1) 6,885	Rock Island * (C3) 42,775
Wabash (J9) 13,724	Dupo (E9) 2,073	Lanark (E1) 1,292	St. Charles * (H2) 5,870
Warren (C4) 21,286	Du Quoin * (F9) 7,515	La Salle * (F3) 12,812	Salem * (G8) 7,319
Washington (F9) 15,801	Dwight (H3) 2,499	Lawrenceville * (J8) 6,213	Savanna * (D1) 4,792
Wayne (H9) 22,092	East Alton * (D8) 4,680	Libertyville * (J1) 3,930	Shelbyville * (G7) 4,092
White (H9) 20,027	East Moline * (E3) 12,359	Lincoln * (F5) 12,752	Sparta * (E9) 3,664
Whiteside (E2) 43,338	East Peoria * (E4) 6,806	Litchfield * (F7) 7,048	Springfield * (E6) 75,503
Will (J3) 114,210	East St. Louis * (D8) 75,609	Lockport * (J2) 3,475	Spring Valley * (F3) 5,010
Williamson (G10) 51,424	Edwardsville * (E8) 8,008	Lombard * (H2) 7,075	Stanton * (E7) 4,212
Winnebago (F1) 121,178	Elmhurst * (J2) 15,458	Lyons * (J2) 4,960	Steger * (J3) 3,369
Woodford (F4) 19,124	Elmwood Park * (J2) 13,689	Macomb * (C5) 8,764	Sterling * (E2) 11,363
<b>Cities, Towns, and Villages</b>		Madison * (D8) 7,782	Streator * (C3) 11,930
*Places marked with an asterisk (*) were classified as urban in 1940]		Marion * (G10) 9,251	Sullivan * (C6) 3,101
Abingdon * (D4) 3,218	Elmington * (J2) 15,458	Marseilles * (G3) 4,455	Summit * (J2) 7,043
Alton * (D8) 31,355	Elmhurst * (J2) 15,458	Mattoon * (H7) 15,827	Sycamore * (C2) 4,702
Anna * (F11) 4,092	Elmwood Park * (J2) 13,689	Maywood * (J2) 26,648	Taylorville * (F6) 8,313
Arlington Heights * (J1) 5,668	Evansville * (J1) 65,389	Melrose Park * (J2) 10,933	Urbana * (H5) 14,064
Aurora * (H2) 47,170	Fairbury (H4) 2,300	Mendota * (I2) 4,215	Vandalia * (F8) 5,288
Barrington * (J1) 3,560	Fairfield * (H9) 4,008	Metropolis * (G11) 6,287	Venue * (D8) 5,154
Beardstown * (D5) 6,505	Flora * (H8) 5,474	Moline * (C3) 34,608	Villa Park * (H2) 7,236
Bellefonte * (D9) 28,405	Forest Park * (J2) 14,840	Monmouth * (C4) 9,096	Virden * (E7) 3,041
Bellwood * (A2) 5,220	Franklin Park * (J2) 3,007	Morris * (H3) 6,145	Washington Park * (D3) 4,523
Belvidere * (G1) 8,094	Freeport * (E1) 22,366	Morrison * (D2) 3,187	Watseka * (J4) 3,744
Benld (E7) 2,414	Galena * (D1) 4,126	Mount Carmel (J9) 6,987	Waukegan * (J1) 34,241
Benton * (G10) 7,372	Galesburg * (I4) 28,876	Mt. Vernon * (C9) 14,721	West Chicago * (H2) 3,355
Berwyn * (J2) 48,451	Geneseo * (D4) 3,824	Murphysboro * (F10) 8,976	West Frankfort * (G10) 12,383
Bloomington * (G5) 32,868	Genoa * (H2) 4,101	Naperville * (H2) 5,272	Westville * (J5) 3,446
Blue Island * (J2) 16,638	Georgetown * (J6) 3,235	Niles Center * (J2) 7,172	Wheaton * (H2) 7,389
Bradley * (J3) 3,689	Gillespie * (E7) 4,440	Normal * (C5) 6,983	White Hall * (D7) 3,025
Brookfield * (J2) 10,817	Glencoe * (J1) 6,825	North Chicago * (J1) 8,465	Wilmette * (J1) 17,226
Cairo * (F11) 14,407	Glen Ellyn * (H2) 8,055	Oak Lawn * (J2) 3,483	Winnetka * (J1) 12,430
Calumet City * (K2) 13,241	Granite City * (D8) 22,974	Oak Park * (J2) 66,015	Wood River * (D8) 8,197
Carleton Place * (D4) 11,577	Grenville * (F8) 3,391	Oglesby * (F3) 3,938	Woodstock * (H1) 6,123
Carbonate * (F10) 8,550	Harrisburg * (G10) 11,453	Olney * (H8) 7,831	Zengler * (F10) 3,006
Carlinville * (E7) 4,965	Harvard * (H1) 3,121	Ottawa * (C3) 16,005	Zion * (J1) 6,555
Carrollton * (J9) 4,098		Pana * (F7) 5,966	



---

# *The* HISTORY of INDIANA

---

## Reading Unit No. 13

### INDIANA: THE HOOSIER STATE

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

#### *Interesting Facts Explained*

Indiana, an inland prairie, 8-110  
When Indiana belonged to England, 8-111  
How George Rogers Clark with 175 men stormed Vincennes, 8-111  
When most of the Indians left Indiana, 8-112  
Indianapolis, the capital city

since 1825, 8-112  
The Knights of the Golden Circle, 8-113  
When the railroads in Indiana were built, 8-113  
Where much of our limestone comes from, 8-114  
Why floods cause disaster in Indiana, 8-115

#### *Picture Hunt*

Where are Indiana's imposing monuments to her soldiers and sailors? 8-110, 111

What three good reasons are given for Indiana's prosperity? 8-113

#### *Related Material*

The plight of the Indiana farmer, 7-458-60  
A Hoosier poet, 13-337-38  
The Northwest Ordinance, 2-197  
What kind of society did the Quakers establish in the "City of Brotherly Love"? 12-462

When did we learn how to take a ship over a hill or a small mountain? 10-270  
How could limestone change into gleaming marble? 1-52  
Why are caves usually found in limestone rock? 1-85

#### *Practical Applications*

What gives the farmers of Indiana an easy market for their goods? 8-115

What is Indiana doing to stop the destruction of her farm lands by floods? 8-115

#### *Leisure-time Activities*

PROJECT NO. 1: Draw a map of Indiana and mark on it Gary, East Chicago, Hammond, South Bend, Terre Haute, Indianapolis, Anderson, Muncie, Kokomo,

Fort Wayne, Evansville, and Lafayette.  
PROJECT NO. 2: Read half a dozen of James Whitcomb Riley's best-known poems.

#### *Summary Statement*

The history of the busy, many-sided Indiana is the history of a

state which delights in overcoming hardships.

## THE HISTORY OF INDIANA



Photo by Ewing Galloway, N.Y.

Much of Indiana's industrial output comes from her smaller cities—of which she has a large number. Muncie, which you see above, is one of them—typical in its enterprise, prosperity, and comfort. It makes

many sorts of things. Boilers, glass, wire, metal furniture, silverware, and electrical equipment are among them. The rich farms that surround the city are conveniently at hand to supply its food.

### INDIANA: *the* HOOSIER STATE

*One of the Fertile States of the Middle West, Indiana Is Covered with Thousands of Farms. But Her Cities Carry on a Bustling Manufacturing Industry*

**F**OR as long as anyone can remember, people have been calling Indiana the Hoosier State. But in all this time no one has ever known very clearly what was meant by the nickname. All sorts of guesses have been made as to its meaning, but they are only guesses after all. Some people claim that the word means "hill dweller" or "highlander." But Indiana is a very flat state. The only real hills are some sand hills in the north and some "knobs" in the south, along the Ohio River—these last are a fringe of the great Cumberland Plateau, which we have told of elsewhere. There is a theory that the early settlers of Indiana were gruff and suspicious folk, and that when anyone passed their houses they would shout impolitely,

"Who's here?" In this way, if the theory be true, they came to be known as "Who's heres" or Hoosiers. But this story is not very convincing, either.

It is too bad that someone could not find a better nickname for this busy little state. For though Indiana is not very large—she is only thirty-seventh among the states in size—she nevertheless does so many things and does them so well that many names would be fitting to her. But it is often the case that a state which does one thing very well and pays no attention to anything else will be better known than a busy, many-sided state like Indiana. Still, Indiana probably does not mind this very much. She can be satisfied with the important part she plays

## THE HISTORY OF INDIANA



Indiana's several large universities, and its small colleges as well, have helped to further education within the state. The attractive building shown above

is a part of Indiana University, which was founded in 1820 at Bloomington, a city lying forty-five miles south-west of the capital.



This is the Administration Building of the University of Notre Dame, at South Bend, Indiana. This Catholic institution has gained nation-wide fame with its

football team, which has been one of the best in the country. The "Fighting Irish" have a record of spectacular victories on the field.

## THE HISTORY OF INDIANA

in the life of the country, and does not need to brag about herself.

Like all the states of the inland prairies, Indiana is very flat. She is like a great table which does not stand quite level. The highest parts of the state are in the east; at one point there is an elevation of 1,240 feet above sea level. The lowest point is in the farthest southwest corner, where the land is only 316 feet above sea level. So Indiana slopes from east to west and from north to south. This is why most of her big rivers run toward the southwest corner of the state. She has a number of fine streams, but none so important as the Ohio. It played a big part in the early history of this region and is an artery of trade to-day. But all that tale you will find in our story of the state which bears its name.

The geography of Indiana has had many important effects on her history. She is flat because she was once part of the bottom of the same inland ocean which covered Illinois. When the glacier came down over most of her surface it only smoothed her out the more by filling in all the depressions with a layer of fine soil. Because she is so low and flat the many rivers which run through and around her do not move very fast. They are satisfied to wander about a bit before they

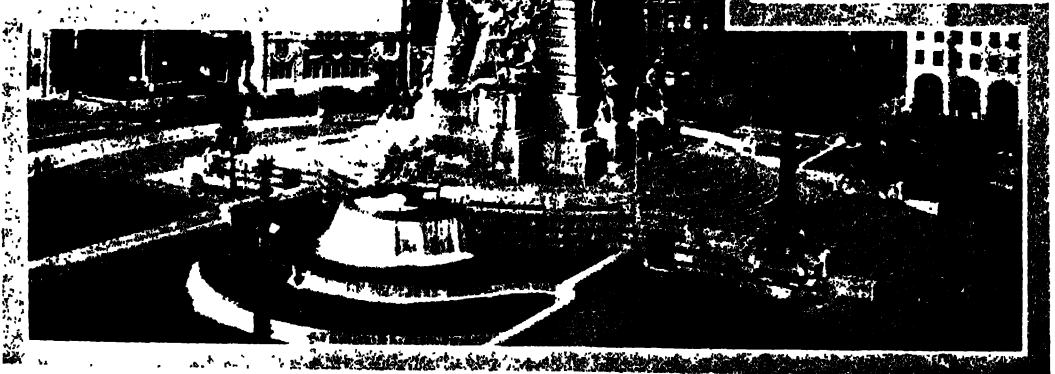
go on to their destination. Usually they find their way to the Gulf of Mexico in the end. But in the early days of Indiana's history they wandered about even more, and spread out over the country much more widely than they do now. To-day dikes and levees keep them in their beds, and a very complicated drainage system prevents much of the land from being a swamp.

When the first white settlers came to Indiana much of her surface, especially in the north, was covered with a wilderness of swampy forest. Few people thought Indiana would ever be a fit place to live in. Beavers might swarm happily through those swamps and streams, but human beings needed dry land, and there was not enough of it in Indiana for any large number of white men to settle on. No, Indiana would always be a deep, dark wilderness where only a few pioneers went to trap beavers or cut timber.

Of course a few Indians had lived in Indi-

**The imposing Soldiers' and Sailors' Monument at Indianapolis is shown here. Its colossal shaft is surmounted by a statue of Victory thirty-eight feet high.**

*Photo by Bass Photo Company*



## THE HISTORY OF INDIANA

ana for a long time. They hunted in the rich beaver country of the northeast. The most important tribes in later history were the Miamis, (mī-ām'yī), Oubachis (ōo-ba'chī), Kickapoos, Ouiatanons (wē-ā'tā-nōn), Mascoutins (mās-kōō'tin), and Shawnees.

### England against France

Those tribes belonged to the Algonquian (āl-gōn'kī-ān) group, and were bitter enemies of the Iroquois (īr'ō-kwoi). When La Salle founded Fort St. Louis in Illinois (1683) he took most of the Algonquian tribes with him. They left Indiana to the Iroquois, and banded together around La Salle's strong fort. But after La Salle was dead and the Iroquois had grown too weak to defend the land, the Algonquians moved out of Illinois and back into Indiana. In this they had the help of the French, who needed aid in keeping the English traders out of New France. But the English, by means of gifts and generous prices for beaver skins, soon made friends with the Miamis and the Ouiatanons, and continued to send their traders into the Indiana country.

Then the French built three strong forts along the Wabash River, and collected the Indians around them. One of these, Fort Vincennes (vīn-sēnz'), named for the fort's first commander, seems to have become a true settlement, for several families came there to live in 1734 and 1735. In 1760, after the capture of Quebec, the French surrendered Canada to the English, and all of Indiana north of Terre Haute (tēr'ē hōt') became English ground, a part of the Province of Quebec.

Below Terre Haute the French claimed the territory, which did not become the property of England until three years later.

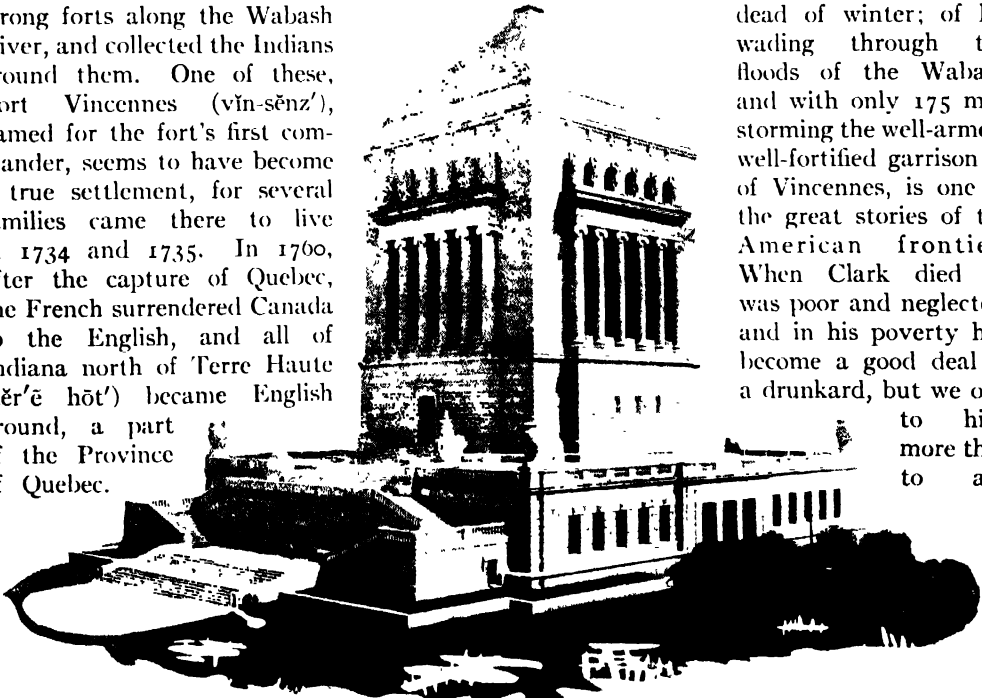
The English rule in Indiana started off poorly. England owned only two little forts; the rest of the new country was a wilderness filled with unfriendly Indians. When the Indians organized a revolt under Pontiac (1763) the English lost all control of Indiana for a time. The Indians easily captured the only two forts the English had. After many battles and treaties Pontiac gave them back, but by that time they were little better than ruins. The only serviceable fort left in all Illinois and Indiana was the one at Kaskaskia in Illinois.

Vincennes became English property in 1763, but the country was so unsettled that the English did not bother to send a governor to their new village until four years later. They had really ruled over Indiana for only a little more than ten years when George

Rogers Clark (1752-1818) captured the territory for the Continental Congress in 1778. The story of Clark's march across Illinois in the dead of winter; of his wading through the floods of the Wabash and with only 175 men storming the well-armed, well-fortified garrison of Vincennes, is one of the great stories of the American frontier. When Clark died he was poor and neglected, and in his poverty had become a good deal of a drunkard, but we owe to him, more than to any

Indiana has set up this great monument to honor those of her sons who lost their lives in World War I. The memorial, which reminds us of some of the famous tombs of ancient times, is at Indianapolis.

Photo by Bass Photo Company



## THE HISTORY OF INDIANA



Photo by Indiana Limestone Corporation

This is one of several huge quarries near Bedford, Indiana. The limestone quarried here is porous, but it is so even in texture and, when cut, makes such fine regular blocks that one might almost think it was made of some sort of cement! But with a hand lens it is easy to make out the shapes of countless tiny

shells. These belonged to marine creatures that lived long ago, when this rock was being formed in a shallow sea that covered most of the central portion of our country. The rocks of the Middle West lie almost as flat as when they were laid down—which is the main reason why that section is flat to-day.

other one man, two of the richest states of the whole Union, Indiana and Illinois.

### When Virginia Claimed Indiana

When the war of the American Revolution was over and England had granted all land east of the Mississippi and south of the Great Lakes to the United States, Virginia claimed Indiana as her own. George Rogers Clark had come from Virginia, and that state had provided him with money and soldiers. In the same way Connecticut had claimed part of Ohio. But both these claims came to nothing. Indiana, like Ohio, Wisconsin, Michigan, and Illinois, became part of the new Northwest Territory (1787). In 1800 the Indiana Territory was founded, with its capital at Vincennes. At first it included almost all of the Northwest Territory except Ohio. But in 1805 Michigan became a separate territory, and in 1809 Illinois was cut away. This left the Indiana Territory just about what Indiana is to-day.

In 1810 and 1811 the Indians and the white men fought the last of the big wars of the Northwest Territory in Indiana. The new governor of the territory, William Henry Harrison, defeated the Indians under the Shawnee chief Tecumseh (tê-kûm'sě) at the great battle of Tippecanoe (tîp'ê-kâ-nōō'). After that battle few Indians remained in

the state that was named for them, and the white settlers moved in rapidly. In 1810 there were 24,000 people living in Indiana, in 1820 there were 147,000, and by 1850 almost a million. In 1870 there were over a million and a half inhabitants, and to-day the number is well over three millions. Indiana became a state in 1816, with its capital at Córdon, in the extreme southern part of the state. Later (1825) the capital was moved to Indianapolis, where it still is.

### The Conquering Farmer

Most of the new settlers who came to Indiana were farmers. By 1900 almost nineteen-twentieths of the land was in farms. Naturally this meant that the new lands had to be greatly improved. Trappers and hunters did not have to do much to the country in order to carry on their trade, but farmers had plenty of work to do. The rivers of Indiana could not wander about so freely as before, and someone had to drain off the great swamps that covered the rich soil of the valleys. More than this, the farmers everywhere had to cut down the forests and clear away the underbrush that covered the land. All this work took a long time, for the forests were thick and the swamps were hard to clear away. But by the time of the Civil War Indiana had succeeded—perhaps too

## THE HISTORY OF INDIANA

well—in clearing away the tangled forests which covered her surface. We shall have more to say of the evil effects of this destruction of the forests later on.

But now the great struggles of the Civil War stopped for a while much of the progress which Indiana was making. Indiana herself had always been against slavery. The party for slavery was strong, but the party against it had always been even stronger. Many Quakers from Pennsylvania had settled in the southern part of the state, and they believed that slavery was one of the worst of all possible sins. They led the opponents.

But during the Civil War many of the citizens of Indiana took sides with the South, for nearly all of the state's earliest settlers had come from Virginia, Georgia, North and South Carolina, and Kentucky. These pro-slavery men formed a group which they called the Knights of the Golden Circle; its purpose was to help the Southern cause. They did everything they could to hinder and annoy the governor, Oliver P. Morton, who was on the side of the North, but found that they had a fearless and able man to deal with—one of the finest governors in the country. When the state senate refused to vote him funds he

borrowed money from a New York bank on his own responsibility. When a plot to overthrow his government was discovered, he arrested the leaders and captured a large supply of guns and ammunition. When the Confederate general John H. Morgan organized a raid into Indiana, Governor Morton raised the militia, captured most of Morgan's men, and drove the General into Ohio, where he was taken prisoner.

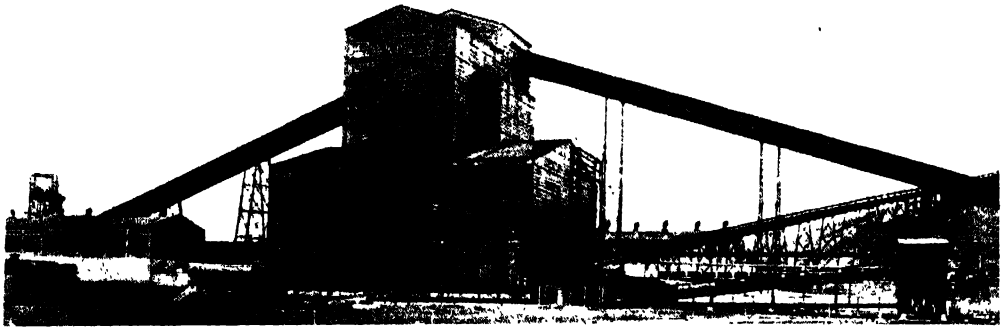
After the war the industries of Indiana began to develop with great speed. Before the war she had built canals to help her market her goods down the Ohio or east by the Great Lakes. And the National Road had come through (1850) to make an easy path to the east. But now, like Illinois, she built a great system of railroads, which to-day cover the entire state. Almost 7,000 miles of railroad lines are in use. Men had known for a long time of the great fields of soft coal in the southwestern part of the state. Now they began to dig in them. In a short time Indiana was one of the leading states in coal production, and to-day she still ranks sixth. With coal mining went drilling for oil and natural gas. Soon two very rich fields of oil and gas, in the west central and southwestern parts of the state, were



Photo by the University of Indiana

Here are three good reasons for the prosperity of Indiana. At the top is a sow and her thriving family. Indiana is one of several states that raise a good many swine. In the center is one of the state's famous cornfields. Below are some of its cattle.

## THE HISTORY OF INDIANA



Indiana's coal beds were formed at the same time as those of Pennsylvania, but they were too far from the heat and pressure of mountain making to be hardened into anthracite, or hard coal, as were the beds in

Pennsylvania. Above is a picture of an Indiana coal breaker, where coal from the mines is broken up into useful sizes, rid of unburnable materials, sieved, washed, and loaded into cars.

working at top speed. But oil and gas fields are much easier to exhaust than coal fields, because the oil or gas flows out of the ground and does not have to be dug for. The result was that for a while Indiana led almost all the states in these products. Then, about 1905, the amount fell off sharply, and every year after that she produced less and less. To-day the industry is a very small one, and is steadily shrinking.

### The Builder's Limestone

On the other hand the great layers of Indiana limestone which underlie the surface of the state have been growing more important every year. It is a smooth, white stone, made up of millions of shells of prehistoric sea animals. In it are many caves, some of them of vast size. All over the country architects use it for buildings, because it can be cut so easily and looks so well. A large percentage of the limestone used for buildings in the United States comes from Indiana. Then, in the western part of the state, there are many special clays which are used for making pottery, and in the north a sort of loose, crumbly earth out of which Portland cement is manufactured. Mineral waters, too, bring in a tidy sum. Sand and gravel, marl, and oilstones complete the list of Indiana's minerals, of which coal is of course the most important.

Natural resources such as we have named encouraged manufactures to spring up all

over Indiana. The most important of these was the iron and steel industry. The easiest way to use the coal of Indiana's rich fields was to make steel with it; for iron ore could reach Indiana easily from Michigan and Minnesota by the Great Lakes. To-day the big centers in Indiana for this industry are Gary, East Chicago, and Hammond. South Bend and Terre Haute are also important. You will notice that all these cities except one are in the northern part of the state, where the coal and ore can easily be brought together.

### Busy Centers of Industry

From the steel manufactured in these cities Indiana makes many different articles. Most important of all are automobiles. These are made in many cities—especially South Bend, Indianapolis, Anderson, Muncie, and Kokomo (kō'kō-mō). Certain towns make only certain parts of automobiles, such as tires, spark plugs, or wind shields. Machine shops and foundries operate in a good many places—Indianapolis, Fort Wayne, Evansville, and Marion. Indianapolis is the center of the furniture, slaughtering, and printing industries of Indiana. South Bend makes clocks and watches, Terre Haute has famous glass and paper mills, and Evansville is one of our principal hardwood markets. All of these cities produce tens of millions of dollars' worth of goods apiece every year.

But no matter how important the manu-



---

## THE HISTORY OF INDIANA

factures of Indiana become, they are not today, and probably never will be, so important as her agriculture. The fertile valleys of the White and the Wabash rivers contain some of the finest farm land in the country, and nearly the whole state carries on farming. At least four-fifths of the land is in farms. The main crops are corn, wheat, oats, barley, buckwheat, hay, tobacco, soybeans, white potatoes, and sweet potatoes. In all these crops Indiana does very well indeed. Her fine railroad facilities and the many large cities close at hand have given the farmers an easy market for their goods. She is second to Illinois in raising soybeans, and has a large output of all the garden vegetables. Because of her large supplies of grain she grows pigs, horses, and other live stock; and dairying is one of her important occupations. The great markets at Chicago encourage these industries, although Indiana produces a great deal for use within the state's own borders. For many years, in fact ever since the days of the French, she has been growing fruits, especially apples, pears, and peaches. Of course she cans a great deal of her produce. She also ranks high among the states in the size of her commercial truck crop.

### Disastrous Floods

Now farm land needs a great deal of attention. When we told how the forests were stripped off Indiana, we said that the harmful results of this policy would soon become clear. To-day when the spring rains come down in torrents there are no trees to absorb the water, and no thick mat of roots to hold the soil in place. All the water flows off the land as soon as it falls, and rushes into the rivers. As it flows, it picks up particles of loose soil and carries them along. This soil finds its way into the river, where some of it sinks to the bottom and some floats away into the Gulf of Mexico. The soil in the Gulf of Mexico is lost forever, but the soil on the river bottom can do much harm. It fills up the bed of the stream, and when the next flood comes rushing down, with all the water pouring into the stream at once, the river bed is not big enough to hold the torrent. This means that great floods occur, and wash away even more land from Indiana's farms.

Unless effective steps are taken, some of the finest land in the entire country will be lost forever, and the great Wabash, White, and Ohio rivers will be quite out of control, as they were in the floods of 1936 and 1937.

### Problems to Solve

Of course, Indiana is doing a good deal to stop this destruction. She has encouraged farmers to plant grass wherever they have no crops, so that the grass roots will hold the soil down. She has planted many trees to take the place of the old forests, and she has lent many of the farmers money at easy rates of interest, so that they can own their own farms. Then they will be willing to do something toward planting trees and keeping the land in good condition. This is a great deal to have accomplished; but it is not enough. Somebody must build big dams across the rivers, to slow up the flow of the water. Dredges must clear out the river beds wherever this is possible, so that the rivers can flow more easily. Indiana's farmers are much better off than they were in the 1930's, and many who were once tenants now own their own farms. On other pages we have told of the problem of farm tenancy.

We can trust Indiana to do her part in all these tasks. Her citizens are intelligent and energetic and they have many chances to learn what they must do. Indiana University, founded at Bloomington in 1824, and Purdue University, founded in 1869 at Lafayette, have done outstanding work in educating the farmers of Indiana. The free-school system, founded in 1852, has been constantly improved until it is one of the best in the country. Only 17 out of every 1,000 citizens of Indiana cannot read and write. Notre Dame University at South Bend, De Pauw at Greencastle, and Wabash College at Crawfordsville all have long histories of service and progress.

The future path of Indiana is not an easy one; she shares the pressing problems of our nation. But her history is the history of a state which delights in overcoming hardships. Whatever can be done to solve the problems facing her, we may be sure that Indiana will do it, quietly and carefully, without asking for applause from anyone.

## INDIANA

**AREA:** 36,291 square miles—37th in rank.

**LOCATION:** Indiana, an East North Central state, lies between 37° 47' and 41° 50' N. Lat., and between 84° 49' and 88° 2' W. Long. It is bounded on the north by Lake Michigan and Michigan, on the east by Ohio, on the south by Kentucky, and on the west by Illinois.

**PHYSICAL FEATURES:** Indiana has a level surface, especially in the north, where the only elevation is a line of sand hills. The south is more hilly, for the edge of the Cumberland Plateau extends into the state in the form of a series of rocky hills called "knobs." But the highest point in the state, at Greenfork Top in Randolph County, is only 1,240 ft. above sea level, and the average elevation is 700 ft. The state is lowest in the southwest, along the Ohio River. In the south is a limestone belt with a great many caves; Wyandotte Cave in Crawford County is one of the largest in the United States. In the north are hundreds of lakes, of which English Lake, James Lake, Crooked Lake, and Turkey Lake are among the largest. The southern part of the state has a large number of mineral springs; of these French Lick and West Baden are the best-known.

The Ohio River (981 m. long) forms Indiana's southern border, and receives most of the drainage of the state. Into it flows the Wabash (475 m. long), which forms part of the boundary between Indiana and Illinois. It has a number of tributaries, among them the Tippecanoe (200 m. long) and the White (50 m. long), which is formed by the junction of the East Fork and West Fork (300 m. long). The White and the Wabash are Indiana's most important rivers. In the northwest the Kankakee (225 m. long) drains into the Illinois, and the St. Joseph (210 m. long), after receiving the Elkhart, enters Michigan and makes its way to Lake Michigan. Here too is the Maumee (175 m. long), a stream made by the union of the St. Mary's (110 m. long) and a second St. Joseph (110 m. long). The Maumee enters Lake Erie. In the southeast the Whitewater (100 m. long) drains part of Indiana before it enters Ohio, to find its way to the Miami River and finally to the Ohio. The state has 309 square miles of water, not counting its jurisdiction over part of the Great Lakes. There is no irrigated land. All together Indiana has 550 miles of navigable river. The Ohio carries traffic for its full length along the southern boundary.

**CLIMATE:** Like other regions lying in the interior of a large continent, Indiana has rather wide extremes of temperature. The summers are warm and the winters fairly cold. The mean annual temperature is about 52° F., with the north about five degrees lower than the south. December and January have a mean monthly temperature of 25°, and July and August one of 79°. At Indianapolis the January mean is 28°, and the July mean, 76°. The record high there is 106°, the record low -25°. The mean annual rainfall for the state is about 43 in., with some ten inches more in the Ohio Valley than in the north.

**INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING:** The state maintains the Indiana State Teachers College at Terre Haute, Ball State Teachers College at Muncie, and a teachers' college on the state university's Indianapolis campus. Other colleges and universities are Butler University at Indianapolis, Central Normal College at Danville, De Pauw University at Greencastle, Earlham College at Richmond, Evansville College at Evansville, Franklin College at Franklin, Goshen College at Goshen, Hanover College at Hanover, Huntington College at Huntington, Indiana Central College at Indianapolis, Indiana University at Bloomington and Indianapolis, Manchester College at North Manchester, Marion College at Marion, University of

Notre Dame at Notre Dame, Oakland City College at Oakland City, Purdue University at Lafayette, Rose Polytechnic Institute at Terre Haute, St. Mary-of-the-Woods College for women at St. Mary-of-the-Woods, St. Mary's College for women at Notre Dame, Valparaiso University at Valparaiso, and Wabash College at Crawfordsville.

**CHARITIES AND CORRECTION:** Institutions for mental cases are maintained at Indianapolis, Logansport, Richmond, Evansville, Madison, and Fort Wayne; at New Castle is a village for epileptics, and at Fort Wayne and Butlerville are institutions for the feeble-minded. At Knightstown is a home for the children of soldiers and sailors and at Lafayette is a soldiers' home. A tuberculosis sanatorium is at Rockville, and a school for the deaf and one for the blind at Indianapolis. The institutions for punishment and correction are a state farm near Greencastle, a reformatory at Pendleton, a women's prison at Indianapolis, a boys' school at Plainfield, a girls' school at Indianapolis, and a state prison at Michigan City. Indiana inflicts capital punishment by electrocution.

**POLITICAL FACTS:** Indiana adopted her present constitution in 1851. The laws are made by a Senate and a House of Representatives. The Senators serve for four years and the Representatives for two. The legislature meets in alternate years, and may be called in special session by the governor. Every six years a count is taken for the apportionment of representatives to the population. The executive body is made up of the governor, a secretary, an auditor, and a treasurer. The governor is elected for four years and may not serve for two consecutive terms. The other three officials are elected for two-year terms and may not hold the same office for more than four years out of any six.

The judiciary department is headed by a supreme court made up of from three to five judges serving six-year terms. Below them are appellate courts, circuit courts, and such other courts as may be established by the legislature. The state is divided into districts so apportioned as to cover territories as nearly equal in population as is possible, and each has a resident judge. Circuit courts consist of one judge elected from the judicial circuit. Each district has a prosecuting attorney elected for two years, and probate, juvenile, and superior court judges elected for four years.

To be eligible to vote one must be a United States citizen and have lived in the state six months, in the county sixty days, and in the precinct thirty days. Foreigners who have declared their intention of becoming citizens may also vote. There is provision for direct primaries and for direct nomination of candidates.

County commissioners are the principal officials in the counties. The state makes no provision for a commission form of government in towns and cities. The General Assembly has the power to give to county boards doing county business various powers in local administration.

Indiana legislation has been of a progressive nature, and has provided an employers' liability act and rigid child labor laws.

The capital of Indiana is at Indianapolis.

**NAME:** The state's name was formed by adding the Latin suffix "a," meaning "land," to the word "Indian." So the name means "land of the Indians." The word "India" goes back in its origin to the Sanskrit word "Sindhu," meaning "river." Since the early explorers thought they were in the Far East, they gave to the people they discovered in the New World the name that belonged to the people along the Indus River, in India. As early as 1776 an organization called the Indiana Land Company was exploiting this region; the

# INDIANA—Continued

company's title referred to the territory in which it was operating, for the section had been ceded to the Pennsylvania Trading Company by the Six Nations of the Iroquois Confederacy in 1768. When a territory was organized here it was named "Indiana," from the earlier usage, and the state received the same name when it was admitted to the Union (1816).

**NICKNAMES:** Indiana has long been called the Hoosier State or "Hoosierdom." The origin of the name is in doubt. Some say it goes back to the word "hoozer," meaning "hill dweller," or "highlander." It may be a word from the Cumberland dialect. Others derive the word from a question possibly put by the early settlers to passers-by—"Who's here?" The word also might have come from "husher," meaning one who could "hush" his man; in that case it referred to the prowess of the early settlers.

**STATE FLOWER:** Zinnia.

**STATE SONG:** "On the Banks of the Wabash Far Away," both words and music by Paul Dresser; officially approved in 1913.

**STATE FLAG:** A blue field with a yellow border and in the center a torch with six rays diverging from the flame. Around this device are thirteen gold stars, representing the states admitted to the Union before Indiana.

**STATE BIRD:** Redbird, or cardinal; approved in 1933.

**INTERESTING FACTS:** Indiana observes New Year's Day, Lincoln's Birthday, Washington's Birthday, Good Friday, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Columbus Day, Election Day, Thanksgiving Day, and Christmas Day.

Indiana has 784,647 acres of national forest.

Population of state 1940, 3,427,796			
Counties			
Adams (H3)	21,254	Lagrange (G1)	14,352
Allen (G2)	155,084	Lake (C2)	294,195
		La Porte (D1)	64,660
		Lawrence (D7)	35,045
Bartholomew		Madison (F4)	88,575
(F6)	28,700	Marion (L5)	460,926
Benton (C3)	11,117	Marshall (E2)	25,935
Blackford (G4)	13,783	Martin (D7)	10,300
Boone (D4)	22,081	Miami (E3)	27,926
Brown (E6)	6,189	Monroe (D6)	36,534
		Montgomery	
		(D4)	27,231
		Morgan (E6)	19,801
Carroll (D3)	15,410		
Cass (E3)	36,908	Newton (C3)	10,775
Clark (F7)	31,020	Noble (G2)	22,776
Clay (C6)	25,365		
Clinton (F4)	28,411	Ohio (H7)	3,782
Crawford (E8)	10,171	Orange (D7)	17,311
		Owen (D6)	12,090
Daviess (C7)	26,163	Parke (C5)	17,358
Dearborn (H6)	23,053	Perry (D8)	17,770
Decatur (F6)	17,222	Pike (C8)	17,045
De Kalb (G2)	24,756	Porter (C2)	27,836
Delaware (G4)	74,963	Posey (B8)	19,183
Dubois (D8)	22,579	Pulaski (D2)	12,056
		Putnam (D5)	20,839
Elkhart (F1)	72,634	Randolph (G4)	26,766
		Ripley (G6)	18,898
Fayette (G5)	19,411	Rush (G5)	18,927
Floyd (F8)	35,061		
Fountain (C4)	18,299	St. Joseph (E1)	161,823
Franklin (G6)	14,412	Scott (F7)	8,978
Fulton (E2)	15,577	Shelby (F5)	25,953
		Spencer (C8)	16,211
Gibson (B8)	30,709	Stark (D2)	12,258
Grant (F4)	55,813	Steuben (G1)	13,740
Greene (C6)	31,330	Sullivan (C6)	27,014
		Switzerland (G7)	8,167
Hamilton (E4)	24,614		
Hancock (F5)	17,302	Tippecanoe (D4)	51,020
Harrison (E8)	17,106	Tipton (F4)	15,135
Hendricks (D5)	20,151		
Henry (G5)	40,208	Union (H5)	6,017
Howard (E4)	47,752		
Huntington (F3)	29,931	Vanderburgh	
		(B8)	130,783
Jackson (E7)	26,612	Vermilion (C5)	21,787
Jasper (C2)	14,397	Vigo (C6)	99,709
Jay (G4)	22,601		
Jefferson (G7)	19,912	Wabash (F3)	26,601
Jennings (F7)	13,680	Warren (C4)	9,055
Johnson (E5)	22,493	Warrick (C8)	19,435
		Washington (E7)	17,008
Knox (C7)	43,973	Wayne (G5)	59,229
Kosciusko (F2)	29,561		
		Wells (G3)	19,099
		White (D3)	17,037
		Whitley (F2)	17,001
		Cities and Towns	
		[Places marked with an asterisk (*) were classified as urban in 1940]	
		Akron (L2)	990
		Albany (G4)	1,623
		Albion (G2)	1,234
		Alexandria *	
		(F4)	4,801
		Ambia (C4)	603
		Anderson * (F4)	41,572
		Andrews (F3)	954
		Angola * (H1)	3,141
		Arcadia (E4)	968
		Argos (E2)	1,190
		Ashley (G1)	675
		Attica * (C4)	3,760
		Auburn * (G2)	5,415
		Aurora * (H6)	4,828
		Batesville * (G6)	3,065
		Bedford * (E7)	12,514
		Beech Grove *	
		(E5)	907
		Berne (H3)	2,075
		Bicknell * (C7)	5,110
		Bloomfield (F6)	2,270
		Bloomington *	
		(D6)	20,870
		Bluffton * (G3)	5,417
		Boonville * (C8)	4,526
		Boswell (C3)	877
		Bourbon (E2)	1,145
		Brazz * (C5)	8,126
		Bremen (E2)	2,179
		Bristol (F1)	694
		Brookston (D3)	826
		Brooksville (H6)	2,194
		Brownburg (E5)	1,136
		Brownstown	
		(E7)	1,860
		Butler (H2)	1,794
		Cambridge City	
		(H5)	2,207
		Campbellsburg	
		(E7)	608
		Cannelton (D9)	2,240
		Carlisle (C7)	874
		Carmel (E5)	771
		Carthage (F5)	937
		Cayuga (C5)	1,126
		Centerville (H5)	1,162
		Charlestown	
		(F8)	939
		Chesterton (C1)	2,470
		Churubusco (G2)	1,122
		Cicero (E4)	943
		Clarksville (F7)	2,386
		Clay City (C6)	1,117
		Clinton * (C5)	7,092
		Cloverdale (D5)	657
		Columbia City	
		(F2)	4,219
		Columbus * (F6)	11,738
		Connersville *	
		(G5)	12,898
		Converse (F3)	943
		Corydon (E8)	1,865
		Covington (C4)	2,096
		Crawfordsville *	
		(D4)	11,089
		Crothersville	
		(F7)	1,169
		Crown Point *	
		(C2)	4,643
		Culver (E2)	1,605
		Dale (C8)	763
		Dana (B5)	845
		Danville (D5)	2,093
		Darlington (D4)	683
		Decatur * (H3)	5,861
		Delphi (D3)	2,213
		Dublin (G5)	751
		Dugger (C6)	1,406
		Dunkirk * (G4)	2,942
		Dyer (B2)	976
		East Chicago *	
		(C1)	54,637
		East Gary * (C1)	3,401
		Eaton (G4)	1,453
		Edinburg (F6)	2,466
		Elkhart * (F1)	33,414
		Ellettsville (D6)	863
		Elmora (C7)	799
		Elwood * (F4)	10,913
		English (E8)	757
		Evansville * (B9)	97,062
		Fairmount (F4)	2,382
		Fairview Park	
		(C5)	1,074
		Farmersburg	
		(C6)	1,005
		Farmland (G4)	914
		Ferdinand (D8)	990
		Flora (D3)	1,468
		Fort Branch (B8)	1,552

# INDIANA—Continued

Fortville (F5) . . . 1,463	Ladoga (D5) . . . 936	Noblesville * (E4) . . . 5,575	Shoals (D7) . . . 1,031
Fort Wayne * (G2) . . . 118,410	Lafayette * (D4) 28,798	North Judson (D2) . . . 1,408	South Bend * (E1) . . . 101,268
Fowler (C3) . . . 1,903	Lagrange (G1) . . . 1,814	North Liberty (E1) . . . 978	South Whitley (F2) . . . 1,118
Francesville (D3) . . . 804	Lapel (E4) . . . 1,146	North Manchester * (F3) . . . 3,170	Speedway (E5) . . . 2,325
Francisco (C8) . . . 611	La Porte * (D1) 16,180	North Vernon * (F6) . . . 3,112	Spencer (D6) . . . 2,375
Frankfort * (D4) 13,706	Lawrence (E5) . . . 1,087	Oakland City * (C8) . . . 3,068	Spiceland (G5) . . . 645
Franklin * (E6) . . . 6,264	Lawrenceburg * (H6) . . . 4,413	Oaktown (C7) . . . 793	Sullivan * (C6) . . . 5,077
Frankton (F4) . . . 824	Lebanon * (E4) . . . 6,529	Odon (C7) . . . 958	Summitville (F4) . . . 991
Fremont (H1) . . . 855	Liberty (H5) . . . 1,496	Oolitic (D7) . . . 1,186	Swayzee (F3) . . . 661
French Lick (D7) 2,042	Ligonier (F2) . . . 2,178	Orleans (E7) . . . 1,428	Syracuse (F2) . . . 1,416
	Linton * (C6) . . . 6,263	Osgood (G6) . . . 1,198	
Galveston (E3) . . . 735	Logansport * (E3) . . . 20,177	Ossian (G3) . . . 784	Union City <sup>1</sup> (H4) . . . 3,535
Garrett * (G2) . . . 4,285	Loogootee (D7) . . . 2,325	Owensville (B8) . . . 1,188	Universal (B5) . . . 603
Gary * (C1) . . . 111,719	Lowell (C2) . . . 1,448	Oxford (C3) . . . 863	Upland (G4) . . . 900
Gas City * (F4) . . . 3,488	Lynn (H4) . . . 1,014	Paoli (E7) . . . 2,218	Valparaiso * (C2) 8,736
Gaston (F4) . . . 677	Lyons (C7) . . . 794	Parker City (G4) . . . 786	Van Buren (F3) . . . 825
Geneva (H3) . . . 966		Penileton (F4) . . . 1,681	Veederburg (C4) . . . 1,781
Goodland (C3) . . . 1,097	Madison * (G7) . . . 6,923	Peru * (E3) . . . 12,432	Vevay (G7) . . . 1,209
Goshen * (F1) . . . 11,375	Marengo (E8) . . . 812	Petersburg * (C8) 3,075	Vincennes * (B7) 18,228
Gosport (D6) . . . 729	Marion * (F3) 26,767	Piercetown (F2) . . . 895	
Grandview (D9) . . . 607	Markle (G3) . . . 671	Plainfield (E5) . . . 1,811	
Greencastle * (D5) . . . 4,872	Martinsville * (E6) . . . 5,009	Plainville (C7) . . . 619	
Greendale (H6) . . . 1,548	Medaryville (D2) 703	Plymouth * (E2) 5,713	
Greenfield * (F5) 4,821	Medora (E7) . . . 722	Porter (C1) . . . 1,190	
Greensburg * (G6) . . . 6,065	Mentone (E2) . . . 731	Portland * (H4) 6,362	
Greentown (F4) . . . 1,060	Michigan City * (D1) 26,476	Poseyville (B8) . . . 948	
Greenwood (E5) . . . 2,499	Middlebury (F1) . . . 722	Princeton * (B8) 7,786	
Griffith (C1) . . . 2,116	Middletown (F4) 1,520		
	Milan (G6) . . . 1,000	Redkey (G4) . . . 1,538	
Hagerstown (G5) 1,638	Milford (F2) . . . 901	Remington (C3) . . . 869	
Hammond * (C1) 70,184	Miltoon (F8) . . . 760	Rensselaer * (C3) 3,214	
Hartford City * (G4) . . . 6,946	Milton (G5) . . . 646	Richmond * (H5) . . . 35,147	
Haubstadt (B8) . . . 762	Mishawaka * (E1) . . . 28,298	Ridgeville (G4) . . . 1,003	
Hebron (C2) . . . 949	Mitchell * (E7) . . . 3,393	Rising Sun (F7) . . . 1,545	
Highland * (C1) 2,723	Monon (D3) . . . 1,262	Roachdale (D5) . . . 736	
Hobart * (C1) . . . 7,166	Monroeville (H3) 994	Roanoke (G3) . . . 808	
Hope (F6) . . . 1,046	Montezuma (C5) 1,366	Rochester * (E2) 3,835	
Huntingburg * (D8) . . . 3,816	Monticello * (D3) . . . 3,153	Rockport (C9) . . . 2,421	
Huntington * (G3) . . . 13,903	Montpelier (G3) 1,800	Rockville (C5) . . . 2,208	
Hymera (C6) . . . 1,298	Moore'sville (F5) 1,979	Roscdale (C5) . . . 712	
	Morgantown (E6) . . . 724	Rossville (D4) . . . 627	
Indianapolis * (E5) . . . 386,972	Morocco (C3) . . . 1,151	Royal Center (E3) . . . 865	
	Morristown (F5) 665	Rushville * (G5) 5,960	
Jasol Ile * (C6) 3,418	Mt Vernon * (B9) . . . 5,638		
Jasper * (D8) . . . 5,041	Muncie * (G4) 49,720	St Paul (F6) . . . 695	
Jeffersonville * (F8) . . . 11,493	Munster (B1) . . . 1,751	Salem * (E7) . . . 3,194	
Jonesboro (F4) . . . 1,791		Sandborn (C7) . . . 602	
	Nappanee * (E2) 3,028	Schererville (C2) . . . 998	
Kendallville * (G2) . . . 5,431	New Albany * (F8) . . . 25,414	Scottsburg (F7) . . . 2,189	
Kentland (C3) . . . 1,608	Newburg (C8) . . . 1,374	Seelyville (C6) . . . 807	
Kewanna (E2) . . . 701	New Carlisle (E1) . . . 747	Sellersburg (F8) . . . 1,121	
Kirklin (E4) . . . 712	New Castle * (G5) . . . 16,620	Seymour * (F7) 8,620	
Knightstown (F5) . . . 2,323	New Harmony (B8) . . . 1,390	Shelburn (C6) . . . 1,606	
Knightsville (C5) 677	New Haven (G2) 1,872	Shelbyville * (F5) . . . 10,791	
Knox (D2) . . . 2,165	Newport (C5) . . . 795	Sheridan (E4) . . . 1,720	
Kokoma * (E5) . . . 33,795		Shirley (F5) . . . 952	
Kouts (C2) . . . 732			

<sup>1</sup> Population of Union City, Dea-se County, Ohio 1,397 in 1940

---

# **The HISTORY of IOWA**

---

## **Reading Unit No. 14**

### **IOWA: THE HAWKEYE STATE**

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

#### ***Interesting Facts Explained***

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| Why Iowa is a prosperous state, 8-118                   | 8-121  |
| When glaciers covered Iowa, 8-119                       | When Iowa was admitted to the Union, 8-121                             |
| Why Julien Dubuque came to Iowa, 8-119                  | When Des Moines became the capital, 8-121                              |
| When Iowa became United States territory, 8-120         | How the massacre at Spirit Lake discouraged settlers for a time, 8-121 |
| Why Iowa was almost unexplored for many years, 8-120    | Iowa's part in the Civil War, 8-121                                    |
| When Fort Madison and Burlington were founded, 8-120-21 | Iowa's railroads, 8-121-22   |
| The first official capital of Iowa, 8-123               | Her enviable educational record, 8-123                                 |

#### ***Picture Hunt***

- |   |                                      |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| What is the "soft winter wheat" belt? 8-120 | Iowa earn their own education? 8-119 |
| In what ways can the students of            |                                      |

#### ***Related Material***

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| America turns to the West, 7-213-16                         | What happened to Black Hawk, the leader of the Sauk Indians? 7-474 |
| How much corn does the United States raise each year? 9-104 | What do we know about Jacques Marquette? 13-483-84                 |
| Which is the chief flour-exporting city in the world? 9-236 | The growth in farm tenantry, 7-459                                 |
| How does Uncle Sam help the farmer? 7-380                   | What took the place of canals in the United States? 10-274         |
| How did the Indians make their bread? 7-384                 |  |

#### ***Practical Applications***

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| Why did Iowa encourage the building of railroad lines? 8-122-23 | Why do the Iowa corn farmers buy scrawny cattle? 8-123 |
|---|--|

#### ***Leisure-time Activities***

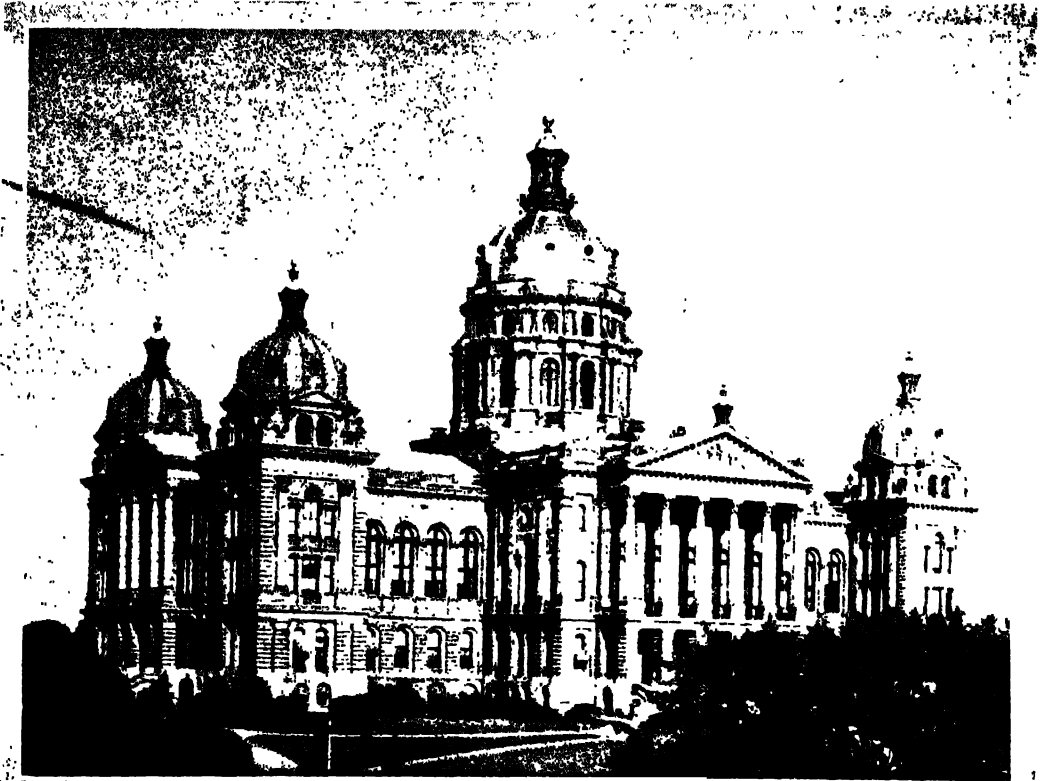
PROJECT NO. 1: Make a list of the states through which the Mississippi flows.

PROJECT NO. 2: Read Lincoln's Gettysburg address.

---

## THE HISTORY OF IOWA

---



Des Moines, in the south-central part of Iowa, is the state's largest city as well as its capital. The capitol building is shown here. A large coal field surrounding the city has been of great importance to Des Moines' manufactures, which of course make use of the prod-

uce of the state's fine farms. Flour milling and meat packing are busy industries. Des Moines was one of the first American cities to show an interest in city planning. To-day she has a fine arrangement of parks and public buildings.

### IOWA: *the* HAWKEYE STATE

*Intended by Nature for Farming, Iowa Has Known How to Make the Most of Her Opportunities until To-day She Is One of the Leading Agricultural States in the Union*

**B**OTH Nature and man have worked together to make Iowa one of our most prosperous states. Nature began it by giving her a soil as well adapted to farming as any in the country—level, rich, and well watered during the summer months. Few states in the Union have so high a percentage of land that may be put to the plow—and few states have so many acres of improved land. Though Iowa has very cold winters—as cold as Montreal's—her summers are very warm—as warm as

those at Washington, D. C. Those weeks of warm days and warm nights, combined with the fact that the threat of fall comes fairly early with the shortening days, gives Iowa just the conditions that are necessary for growing corn, her great and most profitable crop. Occasional droughts and still more frequent storms can do a good deal of damage, but in spite of them it is clear that Nature intended Iowa to be a land of plenty.

But man too has done his part. He has learned to farm this superb soil without

## THE HISTORY OF IOWA

exhausting it, he has studied conditions till he has found what crops it will grow best—and he has been willing to work! Perhaps that is one of the most admirable things about the prosperity of the Hawkeye State. It comes from no stored wealth to be exploited and in the end exhausted. It springs from the ability and hard work of Iowa's progressive citizens.

To the man who saw it from an airplane or from the planet Mars, Iowa (i'ō-wā) would present no unusual appearance. Its surface is flat, divided into two very gently sloping plains covered with low, graceful, regular hills, like the ripples left by waves on a sandy beach. The eastern border, which is the Mississippi River, is the lowest region of the state, sinking at Keokuk (kē'ō-kūk), in the extreme southeastern corner, to a height of less than 500 feet. The highest part of the state is a ridge which runs from the northwest to the southeast, cutting the state into two unequal parts—the eastern section about twice as big as the western. In the extreme northwestern corner of the state this ridge reaches a height of 1,675 feet, but for the most part it is a good deal lower.

### Rivers and Glaciers

On the eastern side the land slopes away from the ridge very gently to the southeast, so the rivers flow to the southeast for the most part. In the western part of the state, the land slopes to the southwest, and the rivers follow the slope of the land and flow southwest too. The entire surface of Iowa was once covered by the glacier, except for a small region in the northeastern corner where, for some reason, the glacier passed it by. Like similar regions in Wisconsin and Michigan, it is known as a "driftless region."

Though this is not the highest, it is the most rugged part of the state; for the glacier never had a chance to smooth off the roughness in this little area.

The early story of Iowa is the story of the whole Mississippi Valley; for it was not until fairly late in her history that she came to be thought of as a separate region. The original

inhabitants were the Iowa Indians, one of the many tribes of the Sioux (sōō). Iowa is said to have meant "the sleepy ones" originally; but why the Iowas should have been any sleepier than any other Indians we cannot tell. The Illinois, who were Algonquians (āl-gōn'kī-ăn), pushed the "sleepy" Iowas out to the west, and the Sauks and Foxes, two other Algonquian tribes who had joined forces, followed after them. In 1673 Marquette and Joliet (jō'lyē) coasted along the eastern border of the state, and in

1680 Father Hennepin (hēn'ē-pīn) followed the original discoverers of the region.

### Who Was Dubuque?

But it was not until 1788—more than a hundred years after the discovery of the state—that the first settler, Julien Dubuque (dōō-būk'), came to Iowa. He did not care to till the rich soil which has been the source of Iowa's greatest prosperity. He came—by official permit of Louis XVI, the French king—to work certain lead mines which were known to exist near the shores of the Mississippi. The spot where he built his fort and got out his lead is now the site of a flourishing city which bears his name. The mines were rich and the Indians of the neighborhood were friendly enough, and everything seemed ripe for a flourishing settlement; but when Dubuque died (1810), his followers left the little colony deserted.



This is the old capitol building at Iowa City. It is now a part of the University of Iowa. Many of the students here are proud to earn their own education. Coöperative dormitories and many different types of work help them toward this goal.

## THE HISTORY OF IOWA



Photo from Ewing Galloway, N. Y.

The "Breadbasket of the Nation," as Iowa is called, has many a scene like this one. Level as a floor, these prairies are a giant checkerboard of fields. The dark patches are corn, the light ones are oats, partly

shocked, and the rest is mostly soybeans. Iowa once raised wheat, but she stopped when new milling methods began to make the best flour from spring wheat, which needs a cooler summer than Iowa's.

Meanwhile Iowa had been shuttling back and forth from one nation to another. First the French were in possession of her (1682--1763); then the Spanish held her till she was again returned to the control of France (1800). In 1803 the United States completed the Louisiana Purchase, and took over Iowa as part of the Louisiana Territory, though for a time she was governed as part of the Indiana Territory. Next she became part of the Louisiana Territory (1805), then of the Missouri Territory (1812), and from 1821 to 1834 she was just unorganized land somewhere out on the edge of civilization. In 1834 she became part of Michigan Territory, in 1836 part of the Wisconsin Territory, and, at long last, in 1838, when the Wisconsin Territory was cut in two, she became the Iowa Territory.

### An Unknown Land

These changes were entirely unimportant, inasmuch as they had no effect at all on Iowa's history. The fact of the matter was that nobody knew very well what the country west of the Mississippi River was like, and not very many men cared.

The reasons why Iowa remained almost unexplored for so many years were all prudent and excellent reasons. Over all those level western plains roamed the famous Sioux Indians—cunning, warlike, ferocious. It was a long time before it was safe for anyone to venture very far away from the few huddled little settlements along the Mississippi River. Yet everywhere in the country men kept hearing about Iowa's land, and many of them dared to come to see if what they had heard was true. Especially after the Black Hawk War (1832) in Illinois had crushed much of the Indian power in the locality, they began to troop into the new Iowa Territory, without waiting for permission either from the Indian owners or from the United States government. As a result there were a fair number of settlers scattered over the eastern border of Iowa before the United States even announced that the region was open to immigration.

### Iowa's Oldest Towns

The rush of immigration from other states was soon under way. In 1832 settlers had founded Fort Madison and Burlington on the



---

## THE HISTORY OF IOWA

---

Mississippi River in the southern part of the state. In the following year a second, and more successful, attempt was made to found a city at Dubuque, and the Territory of Iowa, even though it had not yet been officially created, was already growing like Jack's famous beanstalk. Just seven years after Black Hawk's defeat the capital was moved westward from Burlington to Iowa City, the first official capital of Iowa. By 1844 Iowa had the necessary 60,000 settlers and applied for admission to the Union. After several disputes over boundaries and the question of slavery, she was admitted in 1846.

As soon as she had reached statehood, with all the protection provided by federal laws, with a settled and orderly government and the privilege of citizenship for all her settlers, Iowa's prosperity had an amazing growth. Sturdy farmers left their acres farther east to open up these fresh new lands, and eager-eyed strangers came from many lands across the seas, hopeful to find at last a land of plenty for themselves and their children. By 1850 Iowa had a population of 190,000; in 1860, nearly 675,000; by 1880, well over a million and a half; and by 1900, about 2,232,000.

### The Massacre at Spirit Lake

In 1857 the capital was once again moved west, this time as far as Des Moines (démoin'), where it still is. And in the same year the Sioux Indians massacred some thirty settlers living in the northwest corner of the state around Spirit Lake. For a time

after this event settlers came more slowly, especially to the northwestern part of the state. But only for a time! Soon the whole of Iowa was covered with the checkerboard of farms which is even to-day so typical of Iowa and of all the prairie states.

Like the various difficulties with the Indians, the Civil War caused only a short interruption in Iowa's steady progress. Of course the two events are not to be compared in seriousness. In addition to the thousands of men she sent to the battlefields in the South, Iowa contributed heavily to the Northern cause in money and produce. The victims of the Indian fighting in Iowa would probably number not more than a hundred or two, while more than 75,000 men went to fight for the Northern cause, and the state donated well over a million dollars besides. Yet it is only when we look at the figures that we realize

what a tremendous strain the war must have put on Iowa's young and growing economy. She rallied so quickly and apparently so easily from it that one might think the war had been an insignificant incident in her history.

After the war was over, the main public interest of Iowa centered around the part played by the railroads in developing her agriculture. As a farming state she of course found it to her interest to get her produce to market as quickly and cheaply as possible. In 1860 she had only 655 miles of railroad; so as soon as might be she began to do everything in her power to encourage the building of railroad lines. She worked so effectively



Photo by the Iowa State College

One of our country's most vexing problems is to devise some way of avoiding over-production or under-production of certain important foodstuffs. You might think that the growing of this Iowa corn concerned the farmer alone, but it really concerns us all. In seasons when bumper crops are harvested, prices go so low that it is scarcely worth the farmer's while to harvest his crop. He loses money and is not able to buy farming equipment and other manufactured products. Naturally, the factories of the East and Middle West suffer from this. In seasons of drought the farmer may get high prices for the little he can produce, but if there is not enough corn to fatten the animals destined for market, meat prices will begin to skyrocket and everybody in the country will eventually suffer. One scheme proposed for evening things up is the "ever normal granary." Its aim is to prevent too heavy planting and to store grain from the bountiful years in order to put it on the market when the lean years come.

## THE HISTORY OF IOWA



Photo by the United States Department of Agriculture

This photograph of a modern "milk factory" was taken in Iowa, where dairy farming is important. Much of

the milk will be churned into butter, one of the state's most valuable products.

that to-day little Iowa, which is twenty-fourth in size among the states, is fourth in railroad mileage. For forty or fifty years, after about 1870, new railroads were springing up all over the state, until to-day there is hardly a farm which is more than ten miles from a railroad.

### Controlling the Railroads

With the growth of the railroads there came the problem of regulating them. For the railroads had little and often no competition, the farmers were at their mercy, and it was easy for the roads to agree to charge whatever rates they liked. Naturally the farmers did not put up with this for very long. A state railroad commission was set up to pass on rates, but this proved ineffective. Finally a really effective Interstate Commerce Commission was created in 1906, and the railroad companies were forced to account for their rates to an impartial and competent body. Of course a heavy water-borne traffic passes along the Mississippi, especially since the government built a canal at Keokuk

to avoid the rapids. The Missouri too carries a certain amount of freight.

### Iowa's Deep Black Soil

It is easy to see the danger of any unfair practices on the part of the railroads when we consider the things which Iowa was busy producing, and is still busy producing to-day. Of course Iowa's farms were by far her most important industry; the rich glacial drift and river-bottom soils make up about seventy percent of Iowa's surface, and the loam is almost unbelievably rich and deep and black. The largest and most important crop from the very first was corn. In 1900 about 10,000,000 acres, or one-third of the entire area of improved land in the state, was planted to it. Now it is interesting that corn is not shipped a great deal in its original form. It is much more profitable when turned into chops or steaks or bacon. As a result Iowa has long been a leading state in the raising of hogs, cattle, horses, and chickens—and all these products need quick and efficient

---

## THE HISTORY OF IOWA

transportation to the great stockyards of Chicago or St. Paul or St. Louis. Hay is another crop which is important to the live-stock industry, and Iowa is one of the leading states of the nation in growing it. Oats, wheat, barley, soybeans, buckwheat, flaxseed, potatoes, sweet potatoes, and fruit—especially apples, pears, and grapes—are crops of great value, with oats in the lead. The rest of Iowa's agricultural output is made up of her poultry and dairy products, which are extremely valuable. She has long been the second state in the Union in producing butter, and fourth in milk. Besides this, she leads all the states in her output of eggs and chickens.

### A Use for Iowa's Corn

Especially in recent years the raising of live stock has become immensely important to Iowa. A great deal of the business is done nowadays with cattle shipped in from other states. As a rule these animals arrive from the western ranges poor, scrawny, tough, and stringy. A steak taken from one of them would hardly be worth the eating. Such beasts are bought by Iowa corn farmers and treated, for six months or a year, to the best that Iowa's rich soil has to provide. They roam slowly through fields of rich grass, munching food from morning till night. Soon the flesh of such an animal is soft and juicy, and the creature is so fat that sometimes he can scarcely run a city block without collapsing, though when he arrived he was lean and tough enough to run all day. When he is fat and soft he is ready for the stockyards, a tenderer, more useful, and much more valuable animal than when he was shipped from the range. In this way the Iowa corn farmer makes his profit—by selling better animals than he buys. The same fattening process is carried on in the raising of hogs and horses and poultry, except that these animals are not usually brought in from other states, but are raised in Iowa from the start. Iowa leads all the states in producing hogs.

The manufacturing industries of Iowa are almost all closely connected with her agriculture. Meat packing is the most important by far, and every large Iowa city has its stockyards. Those at Des Moines, Sioux

City, Dubuque, and Iowa City are the most important. The manufacture of dairy products is the next most profitable industry, with food preparations third, and railroad construction and repair—at Burlington, Council Bluffs, and most of the other large cities of Iowa—taking fourth place. Flour and grain milling—at Des Moines, Sioux City, Davenport, and Iowa City—the manufacture of corn sirup and cornstarch, the dressing of poultry, and canning are other industries closely connected with Iowa's agriculture. Cedar Rapids has a famous factory for making rolled oats. The city of Muscatine (mūs'kâ-tên'), on the Mississippi River, is famous as a producer of "pearl" buttons made from shells of clams dug out of rivers. Coal, cement, stone—mostly limestone and sandstone—clay products, sand and gravel, and gypsum are Iowa's outstanding mineral products. The gypsum mines around Fort Dodge are among the most important in the entire country. Fields of soft coal in the northern and northwestern part of the state provided the mineral which has been of greatest value to Iowa, even though the state does not rank high among the coal-producing states of the Union. At Keokuk is one of the biggest power dams in the world.

### A Proud Record

Educationally, Iowa is one of the most advanced states in the country. Her percentage of citizens who are unable either to read or to write has long been the lowest in the United States, standing in 1930 at 0.8—a record for all the other states to try to attain. State aid for local schools, given since 1910, and a high standard of training for teachers have been the most important aids in this achievement. Many well-known colleges and universities are to be found in Iowa, among them the University of Iowa at Iowa City and the Iowa State College of agriculture and mechanical arts at Ames, one of the leading agricultural schools in the country.

Of course Iowa suffered in the farm depression following World War I, as we have explained on other pages of these books. But she has now regained and surpassed her former prosperity.

## IOWA

**AREA:** 56,280 square miles—24th in rank.

**LOCATION:** Iowa, one of the West North Central states, lies between 40° 36' and 43° 30' N. Lat. and between 89° 5' and 96° 31' W. Long. It is bounded on the north by Minnesota and for a very short distance by South Dakota, on the east by Wisconsin and Illinois, on the south by Missouri, and on the west by Nebraska and South Dakota.

**PHYSICAL FEATURES:** Iowa lies entirely in the prairie plains region of the United States, and is a gently rolling country of long low hills and pretty valleys. About two-thirds of the way across the state from the eastern border runs a broad low divide starting at Spirit Lake on the northern boundary and extending due south until it nears the southern border, when it swerves eastward toward the center of the Missouri boundary line. East of this divide the rivers all find their way toward the Mississippi; west of it they seek the Missouri. On the eastern side of the watershed the land falls very gradually toward the southeast from the state's highest point of 1,675 ft. in Osceola County, on the northern border. In Keokuk County, on the Mississippi River, is the lowest point in Iowa—477 ft. West of the watershed the land slopes very gently from the northeast to the southwest. The average elevation of the state is about 1,100 ft. In the northeast corner is a region that the glacier missed, and here the land is rugged, with steep river valleys and sharp cliffs. There is also a line of bluffs along the Missouri River, in the west.

On the eastern slope of the state are six good-sized rivers: the Turkey; the Wapsipinicon; the Cedar (329 m. long), which rises in Minnesota and enters the Iowa (350 m. long), an important river which joins the Mississippi; the Skunk (250 m. long); and the Des Moines (327 m. long), which rises in Minnesota and enters the Mississippi near Keokuk. Of course Iowa's most important streams are the Missouri (2,475 m. long), which forms most of the western boundary, and the Mississippi (2,470 m. long), which forms the eastern boundary. Both of these rivers may be navigated for their full length along the boundary of the state. The United States has built a canal around the rapids in the Mississippi at Keokuk to open navigation on the Mississippi, and a great power dam has been constructed there. The northern part of the state's western boundary lies along the Big Sioux River (300 m. long), which rises in South Dakota and finally enters the Missouri. All together Iowa has 561 square miles of water. Its lakes are unimportant. There is no irrigated land. Iowa is famous for her rich black soil, which is so deep and porous that extremes of drought or flood do not greatly affect the crops. It is said that no state in the Union has a soil that is better suited to farming.

**CLIMATE:** Like others of the North Central states Iowa has great extremes of temperature, but the air is dry and healthful. The mean annual temperature is 48° F., but the state has seen a record low of -47°, and a record high of 113°. The south has a mean annual temperature about 8° higher than that in the north. The northwest is the coldest part of the state. At Dubuque the mean January temperature is 19°, the mean July temperature 74°. The record high there is 110°, the record low -32°. The state has plenty of rain for crops, but the amount varies from year to year and from season to season. The mean annual fall is about 32 inches. The wettest months are May, June, and July. The driest season comes in winter. In general the western part of the state has less rain than the east. The growing season usually lasts from the end of May to the first of October, though in any given year it may be shorter. On an average the crops are injured by drought once in four or five years;

they are a good deal more likely to suffer from flood and hail.

**INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING:** The more important institutions in the state are Briar Cliff College at Sioux City, Buena Vista College at Storm Lake, Central College at Pella, Clarke College at Dubuque, Coe College at Cedar Rapids, Cornell College at Mount Vernon, Drake University at Des Moines, University of Dubuque at Dubuque, Grinnell College at Grinnell, Iowa State College of Agriculture and Mechanic Arts at Ames, State University of Iowa at Iowa City, Iowa Wesleyan College at Mount Pleasant, Loras College at Dubuque, Luther College at Decorah, Marycrest College at Davenport, Morningside College at Sioux City, Parsons College at Fairfield, St. Ambrose College at Davenport, Simpson College at Indianola, and Upper Iowa University at Fayette. The Iowa State Teachers College is at Cedar Falls.

**CHARITIES AND CORRECTION:** Iowa maintains insane hospitals at Independence, Cherokee, Clarinda, and Mount Pleasant, an epileptic hospital at Woodward, a tuberculosis hospital at Oakdale, an industrial school for boys at Eldora and one for girls at Mitchellville, a home for soldiers' orphans at Davenport, a school for the blind at Vinton and one for the deaf at Council Bluffs, a soldiers' home at Marshalltown, a juvenile home at Toledo, a reformatory for women at Rockwell City, one for men at Anamosa, a penitentiary at Fort Madison, and a home for the feeble-minded at Glenwood. Capital punishment is by hanging.

**POLITICAL FACTS:** Iowa is governed under the constitution of 1857, the second in her history. It has been amended in various important details. Laws are made by a General Assembly made up of two houses—a Senate consisting of a representative from one of each of the 50 senatorial districts, and a House of Representatives consisting of a representative from each one of the state's 99 counties and an extra representative from each one of the nine most populous counties in the state. Senators must be at least twenty-five years of age, and are elected for a term of four years; half the senatorial body is elected every two years. Representatives serve two-year terms and must be at least twenty-one years of age. The legislature meets in alternate years.

The executive branch is headed by the governor, who must be at least thirty years of age and, like the other state executives, serves a two-year term.

The judiciary is headed by a supreme court of nine judges elected for six years. The state has more than 20 judicial districts, each one of which is entitled to from two to six judges all elected for four years. Each district judge holds sessions in the various counties in his district. Superior courts with judges elected for four years, may be established in cities containing 4,000 inhabitants. The state has an attorney-general elected for two years, and each county has a county attorney elected for two years.

Voters must be citizens of the United States and at least twenty-one years of age; they must have been residents of the state for at least six months and of the county for 60 days. The law provides for direct primaries and for the direct election of United States senators. Judges of the supreme court, the district courts, and the superior courts are nominated and elected on a nonpartisan ticket. The law gives the people the right of initiative and referendum. No state debt may be incurred without a vote of the people, and, except in case of war, the debt is limited to \$250,000.

The unit of local government is the county, each county to contain not less than 432 square miles. Cities may adopt the commission form of government.

## IOWA—Continued

The system of government adopted by Des Moines in 1907 has become so famous that it is known as the Des Moines System.

Prohibition laws have long been in force in Iowa. Equal property rights for husbands and wives are provided by law. The office of commerce counsel regulates and investigates the fairness of service rates for commercial purposes.

The capital of Iowa is at Des Moines.

Iowa is one of two states west of the Mississippi to have given a native son to the presidency. Herbert Hoover was born there in 1874.

**GAME AND BIRD RESERVATIONS:** Upper Mississippi River Wild Life and Fish Refuge, extending also into Wisconsin, Minnesota, and Illinois, protects various birds, fur-bearing animals, fish, and mussels. Union Slough Refuge in Kossuth County protects birds.

Iowa has 218,671 acres of national forest.

**NAME:** The origin and the meaning of the name of the state are uncertain, though it is thought that both the river and the state were named for a powerful tribe of Indians who lived here in early times. The first modern spelling of the name is found in the "American Gazetteer" of 1804. The word is of Dakota origin and has had a variety of spellings. Finally the form "Ioway" became common, and "Iowa" was formally adopted by the state. It probably means "this is the place," though other possible interpretations are "beautiful" or "the beautiful land." It has also been said to mean "something to write or paint with."

**NICKNAMES:** Iowa is sometimes called the Land of the Rolling Prairies, but a much commoner title is the Hawkeye State, a nickname which probably came from an old Indian chief named Hawkeye, though it may have been taken from "Old Hawkeye," a familiar nickname for J. G. Edwards, once editor of the Burlington "Patriot."

The people of Iowa are called Hawkeyes.

**STATE FLOWER:** Wild rose (*Rosa virginiana*); adopted in 1897.

**STATE SONG:** "Iowa," with words by S. H. M. Byers and music by Paul Lange; the words were formerly sung to the old German tune "O Tannenbaum." The "Iowa Corn Song" and "Iowa, Proud Iowa" are also popular throughout the state.

**STATE FLAG:** Three vertical stripes of red, white, and blue, with the white stripe, in the center, bearing a spreading eagle in whose beak are blue streamers on which is the state motto.

**STATE MOTTO:** "Our Liberties We Prize and Our Rights We Will Maintain."

**STATE BIRD:** Eastern goldfinch (*Spinus tristis*).

**INTERESTING FACTS:** Iowa observes New Year's Day, Lincoln's Birthday, Washington's Birthday, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Election Day, Armistice Day, Thanksgiving Day, and Christmas Day.

On the Sac and Fox Reservation in Iowa live members of the Sauk (or Sac) and Fox tribe of Indians.

Population of state 1940, 2,538,268							
Counties							
Adair (C3)	13,196	Fremont (B4)	14,645	Page (B4)	24,887	Akron (A2)	1,314
Adams (C3)	10,156	Greene (C2)	16,599	Palo Alto (C1)	16,170	Albert City (C2)	759
Allamakee (11)	17,184	Grundy (L2)	13,518	Plymouth (A2)	23,502	Albia * (E3)	5,157
Appanoose (14)	24,245	Guthrie (C3)	17,210	Pocahontas (C2)	16,266	Algona * (C1)	4,954
Audubon (C3)	11,790	Hamilton (D2)	19,922	Polk (D3)	195,835	Allerton (D4)	782
Benton (E2)	22,879	Hancock (D1)	15,402	Pottawattamie (B3)	66,756	Allison (L2)	708
Black Hawk (E2)	79,946	Hardin (D2)	22,530	Poweshiek (E3)	18,758	Alta (B2)	1,269
Boone (D2)	29,782	Harrison (B3)	22,767	Ringgold (C4)	11,137	Alton (B2)	1,025
Bremser (E2)	17,932	Henry (F3)	17,994	Sac (B2)	17,639	Ames * (D2)	12,555
Buchanan (F2)	20,991	Howard (E1)	13,531	Scott (G3)	84,748	Anamosa * (F2)	4,069
Buena Vista (B2)	19,838	Humboldt (C2)	13,459	Shelby (B3)	16,720	Anita (C3)	1,088
Butler (E2)	17,986	Ida (B2)	11,047	Sioux (A1)	27,209	Anthon (B2)	881
Calhoun (C2)	17,584	Iowa (E3)	17,016	Story (D2)	33,484	Armstrong (C1)	937
Carroll (C2)	22,770	Jackson (G2)	19,181	Tama (E2)	2,428	Arnolds Park (B1)	855
Cass (C3)	18,647	Jasper (D3)	31,496	Taylor (C4)	11,258	Atlantic * (C3)	5,802
Cedar (F3)	16,884	Jefferson (F3)	15,762	Union (C3)	16,280	Audubon (C3)	2,409
Cerro Gordo (D1)	43,845	Johnson (F3)	33,191	Van Buren (F4)	12,053	Aurelia (B2)	752
Cherokee (B2)	19,258	Jones (F2)	19,950	Wapello (E3)	44,280	Avoca (B3)	1,598
Chickasaw (E1)	15,227	Kookuk (E3)	18,406	Warren (D4)	17,695	Bancroft (C1)	959
Clarke (D3)	10,233	Kossuth (C1)	26,630	Washington (F3)	20,055	Battle Creek (B2)	827
Clay (B1)	17,762	Lee (F4)	41,074	Wayne (D4)	13,308	Bayard (C3)	703
Clayton (F2)	24,334	Linn (F2)	89,142	Webster (C2)	41,521	Bedford (C4)	151
Clinton (G3)	44,722	Louis (F3)	11,384	Winneshiek (D1)	22,263	Belle Plaine * (E3)	202
Crawford (B2)	20,538	Lucas (D3)	14,571	Woodbury (A2)	103,627	Bellevue (G2)	771
Dallas (C3)	24,649	Lyon (A1)	15,174	Worth (D1)	11,449	Belmond (D2)	1,099
Davis (E4)	11,136	Madiison (D3)	14,525	Wright (D2)	20,038	Bettendorf * (G3)	143
Decatur (D4)	14,012	Mahaaka (F3)	26,485	<b>Cities and Towns</b>			
Delaware (F2)	18,487	Marion (D2)	27,019	[Places marked with an asterisk (*) were classified as urban in 1940]			
Des Moines (F4)	36,804	Marshall (D2)	35,406	Ackley (D2)	1,586	Bloomfield * (E4)	2,732
Dickinson (B1)	12,185	Mills (B4)	15,064	Adair (C3)	874	Boone * (D2)	12,373
Dubuque (G2)	63,768	Mitchell (E1)	14,121	Adel (C3)	1,740	Brighton (F3)	791
Emmet (C1)	13,406	Monona (A2)	18,238	Afton (C3)	987	Britt (D1)	813
Euette (F2)	29,151	Monroe (E3)	14,553	Amosworth (F3)	415	Brooklyn (E3)	408
Floyd (E1)	20,169	Montgomery (B3)	15,697			Buffalo Center (D1)	911
Franklin (D2)	16,379	Muscatine (F3)	31,296			Burlington * (F4)	25,832
		O'Brien (B1)	19,293			Calmar (F1)	903
		Osceola (B1)	10,607			Camanche (G3)	814
						Carroll * (C2)	5,389
						Cascade (F2)	1,376
						Casey (C3)	709

# IOWA—Continued

Gedar Falls * (E2) 9,349	Gilmore City (C2) 908	Marcus (B2) 1,206	Riceville (E1) 910
Cedar Rapids * (F3) 62,120	Gladbrook (E2) 945	Marengo (E3) 2,260	Rockford (E1) 1,054
Center Point (F2) 861	Glenwood * (B3) 4,501	Marion * (F2) 4,721	Rock Rapids * (A1) 2,556
Centerville * (E4) 8,413	Glidden (C2) 941	Marshalltown * (E2) 19,240	Rock Valley (A1) 1,507
Chariton * (D3) 5,754	Goldfield (D2) 715	Mason City * (D1) 27,080	Rockwell (D2) 779
Charles City * (E1) 8,681	Gowrie (C2) 1,028	Maxwell (D3) 812	Rockwell City (C2) 2,391
Charter Oak (B2) 776	Graettinger (C1) 928	Mechanicsville (F3) 821	Rolfe (F2) 1,122
Cherokee * (B2) 7,469	Grand Junction (C2) 1,125	Mediapolis (F4) 806	Sabula (G2) 771
Cincinnati (E4) 859	Greene (E2) 1,303	Melcher (D3) 1,290	Sac City * (C2) 3,165
Clarinda * (B4) 4,905	Greenfield (C3) 1,869	Milford (B1) 1,202	St. Ansgar (E1) 934
Clarion * (D2) 2,971	Grinnell * (E3) 5,210	Milton (E4) 809	Sanborn (B1) 1,344
Clarksville (E2) 1,240	Grissold (B3) 1,132	Missouri Valley * (B3) 3,994	Schaller (B2) 758
Clear Lake * (D1) 3,764	Grundy Center (E2) 2,012	Mitchellville (D3) 769	Seymour (D4) 1,539
Clinton * (G3) 26,270	Guthrie Center (C3) 2,066	Monona (F1) 1,191	Sheffield (D2) 1,060
Colfax (D3) 2,252	Guttenberg (F2) 1,860	Monroe (D3) 1,015	Sheldon * (B1) 3,768
Columbus Junction (F3) 975	Hamburg (B4) 2,187	Montezuma (E3) 1,477	Shall Rock (E2) 925
Coon Rapids (C3) 1,533	Hampton * (D2) 4,006	Monticello * (F2) 2,546	Shenandoah * (B4) 6,846
Corning (C4) 2,162	Harlan * (B3) 3,727	Moravia (E4) 731	Sibley (B1) 2,356
Correctionville (B2) 1,151	Hartley (B1) 1,503	Morning Sun (F3) 861	Sidney (B4) 1,290
Corydon (D4) 1,872	Hawarden * (A2) 2,681	Moulton (E4) 1,181	Sigourney (E3) 2,355
Council Bluffs * (B3) 41,439	Hedrick (E3) 731	Mt. Airy (C4) 1,930	Sioux Center (A1) 1,680
Cresco * (E1) 3,530	Holstein (B2) 1,296	Mt. Pleasant * (F4) 4,610	Sioux City * (A2) 82,364
Creston * (C3) 8,033	Hopkinton (F2) 841	Mt. Vernon (F3) 1,489	Sioux Rapids (B2) 1,056
Dallas Center (D3) 865	Hubbard (D2) 779	Moyle (B2) 973	Spencer * (B1) 6,598
Danbury (B2) 728	Hull (A1) 1,072	Murray (D3) 857	Spirit Lake (B1) 2,161
Davenport * (G3) 66,039	Humboldt * (C2) 2,819	Muscatine * (F3) 18,286	Storm Lake * (B2) 5,274
Dayton (C2) 732	Humeston (D4) 903	Mystic (E4) 1,884	Story City (D2) 1,479
Decorah * (F1) 5,103	Ida Grove (B2) 2,238	Nashua (E2) 1,439	Stratford (C2, D2) 712
Denison * (B2) 4,361	Independence * (F2) 4,342	Neola (B3) 841	Strawberry Point (F2) 1,223
Des Moines * (D3) 159,819	Indianola * (D3) 4,123	Nevada * (D2) 3,353	Stuart (C3) 1,611
De Witt (G3) 2,205	Inwood (A1) 634	Newell (C2) 854	Summer (E2) 1,752
Dexter (C3) 760	Iowa City * (F3) 17,182	New Hampton * (E1) 2,933	Sutherland (B2) 875
Dows (D2) 945	Iowa Falls * (D2) 4,425	New London (F4) 1,340	Swea City (C1) 735
Du'aque * (G2) 43,992	Jefferson * (C2) 4,088	New Sharon (E3) 1,214	Tabor (B4) 976
Dumont (E2) 762	Jesup (E2) 902	Newton * (D3) 10,462	Tama * (E3) 2,837
Dunlap (B3) 1,550	Jewell (D2) 1,051	Nora Springs (E1) 1,198	Tipton * (F3) 2,518
Durant (G3) 810	Kalona (F3) 765	North English (E3) 865	Toledo (E2) 2,073
Dyersville (F2) 2,138	Kanawha (D2) 767	Northwood (D1) 1,724	Traer (E2) 1,493
Dysart (D2) 986	Keokuk * (F4) 15,076	Oakland (B3) 1,317	Tripoli (E2) 1,001
Eagle Grove * (D2) 4,024	Keosauqua (F4) 1,040	Ocheyedan (B1) 712	Urbana (D3) 1,083
Earlham (C3) 865	Keota (F3) 1,032	Odebolt (B2) 1,350	Victor (E3) 763
Eddyville (E3) 984	Kingsley (B2) 1,145	Oelwein * (B2) 7,801	Vilbica (C4) 2,011
Edgewood (F2) 716	Knox * (D3) 6,936	Ogden (B1) 1,513	Vinton * (E2) 4,163
Eldon (E4) 1,676	Lake City (C2) 2,216	Olin (F2, F3) 707	Wall Lake (B2) 762
Eldora * (D2) 3,553	Lake Mills (D1) 1,677	Onawa * (A2) 3,438	Walnut (B3) 902
Elkader (F2) 1,556	Lake Park (B1) 828	Orange City (B2) 1,920	Wapello (F3) 1,603
Elma (E1) 790	Lake View (B2) 1,082	Osage * (E1) 3,196	Washington * (F3) 5,227
Emmetsburg * (C1) 3,374	Lamoni (D4) 1,567	Osceola * (D3) 3,281	Waterloo * (E2) 51,743
Essex (B4) 762	Lansing (F1) 1,388	Oskaloosa * (E3) 11,024	Waukon * (F1) 2,972
Estherville * (C1) 5,651	La Porte City (E2) 1,594	Ossian (F1) 822	Waverly * (E2) 4,156
Fairfield * (F3) 6,773	Laurens (C2) 1,304	Ottumwa * (E3) 31,570	Webster City * (D2) 6,738
Farley (F2) 739	Lehigh (C2) 1,004	Oxford Junction (G3) 705	Wellman (F3) 1,129
Farmington (F4) 968	Le Mars * (A2) 5,353	Panora (C3) 1,169	West Bend (C2) 737
Fayette (F2) 1,162	Lenox (C4) 1,220	Parkersburg (E2) 1,260	West Branch (F3) 719
Fonda (C2) 1,188	Leon (D4) 2,307	Paullina (B2) 1,230	West Burlington (F4) 1,323
Fontanelle (C3) 797	Livermore (C2) 736	Pella * (F3) 3,638	West Liberty (F3) 1,802
Forest City * (D1) 2,545	Logan (B3) 1,700	Perry * (C3) 5,977	West Union (F2) 2,059
Fort Dodge * (C2) 22,904	Lohrville (C2) 776	Pleasantville (D3) 895	What Cheer (E3) 1,339
Fort Madison * (F4) 14,053	Lone Tree (F3) 651	Pomeroy (C2) 843	Williamsburg (F3) 1,308
George (A1) 1,107	Lorimor (C3) 614	Postville (F1) 1,194	Wilton (F3) 1,146
	Lovilia (E3) 852	Prairie City (D3) 831	Winfield (F3) 864
	McGregor (F1) 1,309	Primghar (B1) 1,081	Winteret * (C3) 3,631
	Madrid (D3) 2,074	Redfield (C3) 898	Woodbine (B3) 1,467
	Malvern (B3) 1,325	Red Oak * (B3) 5,763	Woodward (D3) 895
	Manchester * (F2) 3,672	Reinbeck (E2) 1,429	
	Manilla (B3) 1,040	Remsen (B2) 1,196	
	Manly (D1) 1,445		
	Manning (B3) 1,748		
	Manson (C2) 1,429		
	Mapleton (B2) 1,824		
	Maquoketa * (G2) 4,076		

# **The HISTORY of KANSAS**

## **Reading Unit No. 15**

### **KANSAS: THE SUNFLOWER STATE**

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

#### ***Interesting Facts Explained***

How the people of Kansas are "typical" of the United States, 8-126  
The early explorers of Kansas, 8-127  
How the myth of the "Great American Desert" was created, 8-127  
How the slave question arose in

Kansas, 8-128  
When "bleeding Kansas" became a state, 8-128  
Wheat, the most valuable crop raised in Kansas, 8-129  
What the word "Kansas" means, 8-130  
Why Kansas City is famous, 8-130

#### ***Things to Think About***

What makes Kansas typical of the Middle West?  
Which Indian tribes lived in Kansas?  
Why did the slave question become acute in Kansas?

Why did Kansas suffer heavily during the Civil War?  
What makes the soil of Kansas "perfectly fitted" for growing wheat, corn, and other grains?

#### ***Related Material***

America turns to the West, 7-213-16  
How do some plants meet the danger of droughts? 2-207  
Who are the Latter Day Saints? 7-243  
What was the story of the Missouri Compromise? 12-516, 7-218, 247-48  
How much did the United States government offer Mexico to

give up Texas? 7-235  
Where are the largest stockyards in America? 9-329  
How are chicks hatched in modern farms? 9-354-57  
What else is there in the Sahara desert besides sand? 5-452-53  
The tragedy of the American dust bowl, 7-455, 466

#### ***Practical Applications***

What can be done to prevent the loss of oil in new oil fields? 8-130

What active steps has Kansas taken to overcome the "dust bowl" menace? 8-363

#### ***Leisure-time Activities***

PROJECT NO. 1: Draw a map of Kansas and mark on it Kansas City, Wichita, Topeka, Hutchinson, and Leavenworth.

PROJECT NO. 2: Read the story of John Brown and his raid, 12-530-31.

## THE HISTORY OF KANSAS



Wolf Photo Service

Topeka, the capital of Kansas, lies on a broad prairie bench which rises above the Kansas River. One of

the city's most impressive buildings is the state capitol shown in the picture above.

### KANSAS: *the* SUNFLOWER STATE

*'Bleeding Kansas,' Once an Arena for the Violent Political Conflicts before the Civil War, Has Come to Be One of the Most Peaceful and Progressive of Our States*

**K**ANSAS is at the very heart of our country. And since this is true, it is interesting to know that many people have thought her more typical of the United States than any other state in the Union. Certainly it would be hard to find one that more fully represented those twenty or so states lying between the Alleghenies and the Rocky Mountains. She answers all the requirements. For to be typical of that vast section of our country, a state must have some manufacturing and a good deal of agriculture. Its cities must not be too numerous or too large, but important cities it must have. This at once eliminates the states with vast cities like Chicago or St. Louis. The Dakotas do not qualify, for they have too little manufacturing. Ohio, on the other hand, has too much. Louisiana is too far south—and too greatly favored by the Mississippi. Minnesota is too far north.

Yes, Kansas would certainly be our first

choice if we were to choose a state to represent the section. She has mineral deposits, she has water power, and she has some forest land. She has played an honorable part in our history, and has provided herself with an excellent educational system. Though she has several large cities, the bulk of her prosperous population lives in rural areas. Finally, her surface is level, not mountainous, and well watered by rivers; and her very shape—with regular boundary lines broken only when for a short space they follow a river—tells the story of an open country where roads run straight and farms follow the section lines laid down on the map. In all these features, and in many others, Kansas is typical of what we know as the "Middle West." Her advantages are the advantages of the greater part of our country, and her problems are also the problems of many of the other states lying within the valley of the Mississippi and its tributaries.



## THE HISTORY OF KANSAS

For the most part Kansas is made up of one great plain which rises very gradually and without a break from east to west. In the east there is also a rise from south to north—as the courses of the rivers will show. The lowest point in the state is in the southeastern corner, in Montgomery County, where the land is only about 700 feet above sea level. The highest point is in the extreme west, where certain low hills reach a height of 4,135 feet. This is a considerable height for “low” hills to reach, and their elevation is explained only by the fact that the plains the hills rise from are very high. Those plains, though they are often rolling and hilly, never are mountainous. Actually, the only “mountains” of Kansas—and the name is certainly misapplied—are certain low mounds in the southeastern corner of the state. They are the outposts of the Ozark Plateau (ô'zârk plâ-tô'), an important mountain region in the states to the east, especially Missouri.

### Who Explored Kansas?

Coronado, the Spaniard, seeking the fabled golden land of Quivira (kê-vê'râ) was the first explorer of Kansas. In our story of Nebraska we have described his expedition across the Great Plains in 1541. He sought vast wealth, which, like one of his desert mirages, always vanished as he came near. Coronado returned home disappointed, leaving the country to the native Indians, principally the Pawnee, Kansa, and Osage tribes. The next explorers were Frenchmen who came up the Arkansas River from Louisiana in 1719. They claimed the land for France

but did not stay to colonize. Like Coronado they had little effect on the history of the country, for they left hardly a memory of their presence.

In 1803 the Louisiana Purchase transferred the greater part of what is now Kansas to the United States from the French, though a part of the southwestern corner was not added

until 1850. In the 1830's many eastern Indian tribes were urged to move to the “Indian Territory” created by the government west of the Mississippi. Among those who came to what is now Kansas were the Shawnees, Delawares, Potawatomes, Kickapoos, and Wyandots.

Several exploring expeditions sent out by the United States government reported that Kansas was nothing but a broad expanse of sandy desert, burning hot in summer, unsuited to any kind of crop, quite useless unless perhaps dates might be grown on a few scattered oases, as in the Desert of Sahara!

Their stories did much to create the myth of the “Great American Desert,” which, after a few years of careful investigation and settlement, shrank to comparatively tiny proportions. It did not take long to find out the facts. Land-hungry people with eyes wide open were surging to the West. With the Mormon colony growing up in Utah, and California fast becoming a land of fabulous wealth, men began to know Kansas better and to value her much more highly than did those first careless wanderers over her borderless plains. As early as 1825 a regular trade was being carried on with Mexico and the Far West by way of the trail which took its name from the beautiful



University of Kansas

One of the fine buildings of the University of Kansas, at Lawrence, is shown here. Kansas State College, at Manhattan, is another of the state's institutions of higher learning.

## THE HISTORY OF KANSAS



This huge machine looks like some great monster left over from the days before the Ice Age. But if such it is, it has been well tamed to civilized uses. It will pick and husk corn with amazing speed and efficiency--and that is important in Kansas, where it is shown at work. For Kansas is one of our most important states in raising corn. What she really excels in, however, is wheat--"hard winter wheat," which is sown in the autumn and harvested in early July. No state raises even half so much wheat as Kansas.

Photo by J. W. McManis  
from Gendreau, N. Y.

old city of Sante Fe. Although many explorers and traders saw and admired the fertile plains of Kansas, their interest was in quicker and easier wealth than farming produced. Few farmers or settlers came to this land of the Indian and the buffalo until the United States, by the Kansas-Nebraska Act of 1854, created separate territorial governments in Kansas and Nebraska.

### Slave or Free?

You may remember how, in our story of Missouri, we told of the struggle which allowed slavery south of the northern boundary of Missouri, and forbade it in every other state which should be made out of the Louisiana Purchase. Now in Iowa and Arkansas there was no question of slavery. Arkansas was south of Missouri and Iowa was settled almost entirely by free settlers, so that no issue could be made out of those two states. But Kansas had a strong party ready and willing to question the legality of the Missouri Compromise. Missouri had become a state in 1821, and Kansas did not become a territory until 1854; so for all those thirty-three years, the Missouri Compromise staved off the question of slavery in new states. But when Kansas and Nebraska became territories, it was expressly provided, contrary to the Missouri Compromise, that both these new states should decide for themselves whether they should be slave or free. In Nebraska there was never much

trouble; almost without discussion she joined the ranks of the free states. But in Kansas a fierce struggle began, and people came to feel that its outcome would decide the question of slavery in the United States. Of course there was a bitter contest for votes, and both slaveholders and free-state men swarmed into the territory. At the first election, in 1854, it became clear that the proslavery men did not have enough strength to win. So some 1,700 men from Missouri, which was a slave-holding state, armed themselves, crossed the border into Kansas, and stuffed the ballot boxes with votes for proslavery candidates.

### "Bleeding Kansas"

This act of violence began a whole series of border raids and other lawless acts. The free-state partisans of Kansas would not obey the laws of what they called the "bogus" proslavery government. Back and forth the battle raged. The people of Missouri invaded Kansas and the Kansans struck back at Missouri. Whole towns were attacked, burned, and pillaged. The famous John Brown, who was soon to be hanged for his raid on the arsenal at Harper's Ferry, West Virginia, killed five proslavery men in a raid on Pottawatomie (pôt'â-wôt'â-mî) Creek, in Franklin County, Kansas. Finally (1856) the government had to send troops into Kansas to insure some sort of order at the next elections. The troops managed to keep

## THE HISTORY OF KANSAS

order pretty well, and in 1857 the free-state party triumphed at the polls. This triumph did not become effective until 1859.

### The Battle Ends

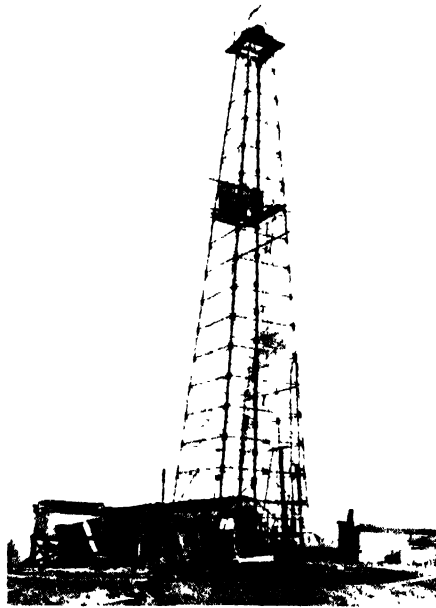
By now a tremendous number of settlers had entered Kansas from free states, and they were able to adopt and put into effect a constitution which forbade forever any form of slavery within the state of Kansas. The struggle was decided, and two years later "bleeding Kansas" peacefully became a state (1861).

During the Civil War Kansas suffered heavily, for she sent to the battlefields a larger proportion of her population than did any other state. Her progress was paralyzed when the border warfare with Missouri broke out afresh for a time; but Kansas had taken a definite stand on the Northern side and never wavered, no matter how heavy the cost. During the confusion of the war, a great many Negroes moved from other parts of the country to Kansas, where their lives and families would be safe; and many of them fought bravely and well in Kansas regiments.

After the war Kansas was able to turn all her energies to developing the resources which Nature had given her so lavishly. As is usually the case in a new country, agriculture was the first industry to which people turned, and because the soil of Kansas is perfectly fitted for growing wheat, corn, and other grains, those were the crops the farmers raised. The land of the prairies is a rich clay loam, very fertile and often so dark

as to be actually black. The river valleys are also made up of very dark loams, but they have a higher proportion of sand. Both these soils are perfectly adapted to growing grain; and by 1900 Kansas had won fifth rank in the nation in raising wheat and third in corn. Today more than ninety per cent of Kansas' 52,000,000 acres is in farms. She leads all the states in growing wheat,

with a yield that has exceeded 200,000,000 bushels in a single year, when it brought her over \$300,000,000. Usually her crop is 50 percent larger than any other state's. Severe droughts through a period of years brought a sharp decline in the size of the corn crop, but Kansas is still a leading producer. Other important crops are oats, barley, soybeans, flaxseed, hay, sorghums, sweet potatoes, tobacco, apples, peaches, pears, and grapes. Some of these grow best in the eastern part of the state, where rainfall is heaviest, but sorghums and alfalfa do well on the drier land farther west. In some of the eastern counties apples and potatoes are of considerable value.



Here and there in southern and eastern Kansas oil derricks like this one rise above the broad plain. Although there is little to suggest it from the flat surface above ground, scientists think that some of the oil may come from long, narrow "lenses" of sand surrounded by shale. Lenses like these are found along sloping seacoasts to-day.

The western third of the state has a rainfall that averages less than twenty inches a year—too little for most of the usual farm crops. But the land yields a rich income for all that, for here are the great cattle and sheep ranges. This does not mean that stock is not found elsewhere. It is raised in every part of the state. For example, in east-central Kansas the Flint Hills section, a large tract covered with bluestem grasses, furnishes rich pasture land where large numbers of cattle are fattened for market. Today

---

## THE HISTORY OF KANSAS

Kansas ranks high among the states in the number of beef cattle on her farms, and also in the number of cattle of all kinds. Dairy and poultry products are of growing importance, but as yet are less valuable than live stock.

Of course Kansas suffered in the farm depression of the years following World War I. We have told the whole unhappy story on other pages. But today she has once more attained a sound prosperity.

During the 1930's the droughts which devastated the West and Middle West struck hard at the live stock industries of Kansas. Her western counties became the center of one of the worst "dust bowls" in the country. The word "Kansas" means "people of the south wind," and that untiring wind whipped up the dust till the sun was hidden for days at a time and men and beasts perished miserably. You may read of it in our story of South Dakota. Kansans quickly realized the need for soil and water control and adopted new farming methods which held the water in the soil and kept the wind from carrying the precious topsoil away. Lakes and ponds were constructed to hold the water, and throughout the western treeless area shelter belts of trees were planted. Droughts no longer ravage Kansas as they once did, and the state is determined to make steady improvement in soil and water control.

### Where Are the Kansas Oil Fields?

In manufacturing, Kansas is a well-equipped, efficient state, though not one of the national leaders. She has not much timber, but that is about the only important raw material which she lacks, and what she has is valuable hardwood. In minerals, petroleum, natural gas and gasoline, zinc, coal, cement, salt, stone, sand and gravel, clay and clay products, lead, helium, and pumice give her high rank among the states. Oil and gas in scattered areas—are the most valuable. They were developed early, with the carelessness common to exploiters of new oil fields, and by 1924 Kansas oil seemed about exhausted. But at that moment new fields were discovered, and in recent years Kansas has ranked among the first five states in oil production, with new wells still being

opened. In zinc she ranks third, and in helium she ranks second. Her coal fields, also in the eastern and southeastern counties, have been of immense service to her, even though her output does not give her high rank.

### Why Kansas City Is Famous

With rich oil, gas, and coal fields as supplies of power, with a magnificent supply of raw materials, with a central location, and with an excellent transportation system she has more than 8,000 miles of railroad—Kansas has great advantages as a manufacturing state. Most important of all her manufactures has been meat packing. Kansas City—only partly in Kansas—is one of the nation's busiest railway and airline centers. She is a large grain and live stock market, and ranks second in meat packing. Flour and grain milling, the manufacture of foundry and machine-shop products, of steel and airplanes, and the refining of oil are important industries. Farmers, cowboys, and miners flock her streets. Wichita (wich'ī-tō) is a great center for distributing live stock and grain products; and Topeka (tō-pē'kā), which has been the capital ever since Kansas became a state, has fine flour mills and does a large business in printing and publishing. Hutchinson is in the middle of the Kansas salt fields, and also ships grain, and poultry and dairy products. Leavenworth, while more famous for its great federal prison, is also known as a manufacturer of wood, iron, and steel products.

Educationally, Kansas is typical of the Middle West, which means that she has built up an excellent educational system. Her percentage of citizens who cannot read and write is the same as for Nebraska and South Dakota. It is 1.2 percent—a remarkably low figure, in view of her tremendous farming population. To put schools within reach of children on scattered farms is a real problem. The state has various schools of higher education.

And so we see Kansas, typical of the whole middle-western United States in her history, in her physical features, in her problems and interests and achievements—a state remarkable for her rapid progress.

## KANSAS

**AREA:** 82,276 square miles—13th in rank.

**LOCATION:** Kansas, one of the West North Central states, lies between 37° and 40° N. Lat. and between 94° 38' and 102° 1' 34" W. Long. It is bounded on the north by Nebraska, on the east by Missouri, on the south by Oklahoma, and on the west by Colorado. The state lies almost exactly in the center of our country.

**PHYSICAL FEATURES:** Kansas is a great rolling plain that rises very gradually toward the west. In the east it also slopes slightly from north to south. The lowest point of all is in Montgomery County in the southeast, where the land is 700 ft. above the sea. The highest point is in the central part of the western border, where the high, level plains that cover the western two-thirds of the state rise to a height of 4,135 ft. In the southeastern corner is a small area of low hills where the Ozarks reach a short distance into Kansas from Missouri. In other places too there are occasional small sections of somewhat hilly country, as in the northwest and along the Missouri and the Cimarron rivers. In the southwest is a section of sandhills. The state's average elevation is 2,000 ft.

Through this rolling prairie the Kansas and the Arkansas rivers have made broad valleys, and both streams carry a certain amount of local traffic. The Kansas (169 m. long) enters the Missouri in the northeastern part of the state, and through its branches drains a large part of the state's surface; for the Smoky Hill (540 m. long) rises in Colorado and flows eastward two-thirds of the way across the state before it joins the Republican (445 m. long), which comes down from Nebraska and unites with the Smoky Hill to form the Kansas. The Solomon (300 m. long) and the Saline (200 m. long) are both tributaries of the Smoky Hill; the Big Blue (300 m. long), which comes down from Nebraska, joins the Kansas directly. Most of the drainage of the southern part of the state is into the Arkansas (1,450 m. long), which rises in Colorado and flows eastward through Kansas for a considerable distance before it turns south into Oklahoma, where it turns again to the east on its way to the Mississippi. In Oklahoma it is joined by the Cimarron (600 m. long), which rises in New Mexico but drains the southwestern corner of Kansas on its way eastward. From the southeastern corner of Kansas the Neosho (460 m. long) and the Verdigris flow southward across the Oklahoma border before they join the Arkansas. Of course Kansas' chief stream for navigation is the Missouri (2,475 m. long), which flows for 150 miles along the state's northeastern border and can carry traffic all the way. All together Kansas has 384 square miles of water, and a good deal of irrigated land. There are very few lakes.

**CLIMATE:** Kansas has a climate in which there are wide extremes of heat and cold, but one that is very healthful, for the air is dry and the sun shines a good deal of the time. Even in periods of great heat or great cold one does not feel much discomfort; there is always a breeze in summer. The average annual temperature for the state is 54° F., but there are recorded temperatures of 116° and -34°. At Wichita the January mean is 31°, the July mean 79°. The record high there is 112°, the record low -22°. The growing season lasts from 150 to 175 days, and during that period only one day in five is cloudy. The wind is always blowing, usually from the south, and in summer tornadoes are frequent. The western part of the state is much drier than the eastern; in dry years the whole western half gets too little rain to support crops. The mean annual rainfall for the entire state—that is, the figure that is nearest the medium—is about 27 inches, but in some years there may be as little as 20 inches for the entire state and in other years there may be 35.5 inches. In the west the average for a dry

year falls as low as 12 inches, much too low for farming. In the east the rainfall varies between 26 and 45.7 inches a year. Fortunately for the state's agriculture, most of the rain comes in the growing season.

**INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING:** Among the most important are Baker University at Baldwin City, Bethany College at Lindsborg, Bethel College at North Newton, Fort Hays Kansas State College at Hays, Friends University at Wichita, Kansas State College of Agriculture and Applied Science at Manhattan, University of Kansas at Lawrence, Kansas Wesleyan University at Salina, Marymount College for women at Salina, Mount St. Scholastica College for women at Atchison, Ottawa University at Ottawa, St. Benedict's College at Atchison, Southwestern College at Winfield, Sterling College at Sterling, Washburn Municipal University at Washburn, the Municipal University of Wichita at Wichita, and the College of Emporia at Emporia. There are state teachers' colleges at Emporia and Pittsburg. Various city systems of education maintain junior colleges: at Arkansas City, Chanute, Coffeyville, Dodge City, El Dorado, Fort Scott, Garden City, Highland, Hutchinson, Independence, Kansas City, Parsons, and Pratt.

**CHARITIES AND CORRECTION:** Kansas has state hospitals for the insane at Topeka, Osawatimie, and Larned; a tuberculosis sanatorium at Norton; a hospital for epileptics at Parsons; an orphans' home at Atchison; a school for the feeble-minded at Winfield; a soldiers' home at Fort Dodge; the Mother Bickerdyke Home at Ellsworth; a school for the blind at Kansas City and one for the deaf at Olathe; an industrial farm for women delinquents at Lansing; an industrial school for delinquent girls at Beloit and one for delinquent boys at Topeka; an industrial reformatory at Hutchinson; and a penitentiary at Lansing. Kansas does not inflict capital punishment.

**POLITICAL FACTS:** Kansas is governed under the constitution of 1861, which has been a good deal amended. The legislature meets biennially, and is made up of a Senate, which must not have more than forty members, and a House of Representatives, which must not have more than 125 members. The Senators serve for four years, and the Representatives for two years. In the House there is one member from each county in which at least 250 legal votes were cast at the preceding general election.

The executive branch is headed by the governor, who has the pardoning power and may veto bills passed by the legislature. He may even exercise his veto in the case of separate items in an appropriation bill.

The judiciary is headed by a supreme court made up of seven judges who are elected for six years. The state is divided into thirty-nine judicial districts, each presided over by a judge who is elected for four years. Each county has a probate court, presided over by a judge elected for two years. Townships choose two justices of the peace every two years. Larger cities have various kinds of special courts.

In 1912 Kansas adopted a constitutional amendment which gave the vote to all persons over twenty-one provided that they are citizens of the United States and have lived in the state six months and in the township thirty days before the election. The vote is also granted to aliens who have declared their intention of becoming citizens.

A primary-election law passed in 1908 provides for the nomination of United States Senators and of candidates for elective offices either by primaries or by independent nomination. Separate official primary tickets for each political party are printed and supplied for use at each voting precinct.

## KANSAS—Continued

The commission form of government in cities is provided for, with certain specifications as to the regulations to be adopted in cities of different sizes. Larger cities must have five commissioners and smaller ones three. There are the usual features of the initiative, recall, and referendum. All commissioners are under bond.

Corporations are carefully controlled by law. Kansas has been noted since 1880 as a prohibition state, and for many years prohibited the sale of cigarettes. There are strict workmen's compensation laws.

The capital of Kansas is at Topeka.

**NAME:** When Kansas became a state she chose her present name, which was specified in the constitution of 1861. It came from the name of the Kansas River, which in turn had been named for the Kansas Indians, who lived along its banks not far above the point where it joins the Missouri. The word belongs to the Sioux language and means "the wind people," "small-wind," "people of the south wind," or "makes a breeze near the ground." It is a term that had been embedded in the life and social organization of the Sioux tribe from very early times, and no doubt meant a good deal more to them than the mere translation would suggest.

**NICKNAMES:** Because of certain of its characteristics Kansas has been called the Central State, the Cyclone State, the Garden of the West, the Sunflower State, and the Grasshopper State—from the scourge of grasshoppers that came in the years between 1874 and 1876. Its common title of the Jayhawker State goes back to James Montgomery and his men, who were the "irregular," or guerrilla, troops along the border between Kansas and Missouri before and during the Civil War. The name, which was originally applied to any savage spider, was taken by certain Kansas soldiers and was finally transferred to the state. Because over a period of years there was continuous discussion of the rights of squatters, Kansas came to be known as the Squatter State.

The people of Kansas are known as Jayhawkers, Sunflowers, and Grasshoppers.

**STATE FLOWER:** The wild native sunflower (*Helianthus annuus*)

**STATE SONG:** "Kansas," by Humphrey W. Jones, was chosen as the state song by the schools of Kansas. "Home on the Range" has since been widely adopted.

**STATE FLAG:** A dark blue field bearing in the center the great seal of the state surmounted by a crest on a wreath, in which is a sunflower that appears to have been torn from its stalk.

**STATE MOTTO:** "Ad Astra per Aspera," meaning "to the stars through difficulties."

**STATE BIRD:** The school children, in an extensive vote, chose the western meadow lark as the state bird. In 1937 it was officially adopted by the legislature.

**INTERESTING FACTS:** Kansas observes New Year's Day, Lincoln's Birthday, Washington's Birthday, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Columbus Day, Armistice Day, Thanksgiving Day, and Christmas Day.

Kansas has Indians on the Kickapoo, Potawatomi, and Sac and Fox reservations. They are members of the tribes for which the reservations are named. At Lawrence is the Haskell Institute, the largest government Indian school in the United States.

In 1928 and 1929 Colby, Kansas, a town of 2,153, had the distinction of being the only town in the United States where no local taxes were levied. All the town's expenses were met by the profits from the municipally owned and operated light and power plant. In 1931 Chanute, with 10,277 inhabitants, and Belleville, with 2,383, also levied no city taxes, but paid for their city expenses through the profits from their municipal plants. Other cities have since joined the list.

### Population of state 1940, 1,801,028

#### Counties

Allen (G7)	19,874
Anderson (G6)	11,658
Atchison (G3)	22,222
Barber (D8)	9,073
Barton (D6)	25,010
Bourbon (H7)	20,944
Brown (G3)	17,395
Butler (F7)	32,013
Chase (F6)	6,345
Chautauqua (F8)	9,233
Cherokee (H8)	29,817
Cheyenne (A3)	6,221
Clark (C8)	4,081
Clay (E4)	13,281
Cloud (E3)	17,247
Coffey (G6)	12,278
Comanche (C8)	4,412
Cowley (F8)	38,139
Crawford (H7)	44,191
Decatur (B3)	7,434
Dickinson (E5)	22,929
Doniphan (G3)	12,936
Douglas (G5)	25,171
Edwards (C7)	6,377
Elk (F7)	8,180
Ellis (C5)	17,508
Ellsworth (D5)	9,855
Finney (B6)	10,092
Ford (C7)	17,254

Franklin (G5) . . . 20,889

Geary (F5) . . . 15,222  
Gove (B5) . . . 4,793  
Graham (C4) . . . 6,071  
Grant (A7) . . . 1,946  
Gray (B7) . . . 4,773  
Greeley (A5) . . . 1,638  
Greenwood (F7) . . . 16,495

Hamilton (A6) . . . 2,645  
Harper (D8) . . . 12,068  
Harvey (E6) . . . 21,712  
Haskell (B7) . . . 2,088  
Hodgeman (C6) . . . 3,535

Jackson (G4) . . . 13,382  
Jefferson (G4) . . . 12,718  
Jewell (D3) . . . 11,970  
Johnson (H5) . . . 33,327

Kearny (A7) . . . 2,525  
Kingman (D7) . . . 12,001  
Kiowa (C7) . . . 5,112

Labette (G8) . . . 30,352  
Lane (B6) . . . 2,821  
Leavenworth (G4) . . . 41,112  
Lincoln (D4) . . . 8,338  
Linn (H6) . . . 11,969  
Logan (A5) . . . 3,688  
Lyon (F6) . . . 26,424

McPherson (F6) . . . 24,152  
Marion (E6) . . . 18,951  
Marshall (F3) . . . 20,986  
Meade (B8) . . . 5,522

Miami (H5) . . . 19,489  
Mitchell (D3) . . . 11,319  
Montgomery (G8) . . . 49,729  
Morris (F5) . . . 10,363  
Morton (A8) . . . 2,186

Nemaha (F3) . . . 16,761  
Neosho (G7) . . . 22,210  
Ness (C5) . . . 6,864  
Norton (C3) . . . 9,831

Osage (G5) . . . 15,118  
Osborne (D4) . . . 9,835  
Ottawa (E4) . . . 9,224

Pawnee (C6) . . . 10,300  
Phillips (C3) . . . 10,435  
Pottawatomie (F4) . . . 14,015  
Pratt (D7) . . . 12,348

Rawlins (A3) . . . 6,618  
Reno (D7) . . . 52,165  
Republic (E3) . . . 13,124  
Rice (D8) . . . 17,213  
Riley (F4) . . . 20,617  
Rooks (C4) . . . 8,497  
Rush (C5) . . . 8,285  
Russell (D5) . . . 13,464

Saline (E5) . . . 29,535  
Scott (B5) . . . 3,773  
Sedgwick (E7) . . . 143,311  
Seward (B8) . . . 6,540  
Shawnee (G5) . . . 91,247  
Sheridan (B4) . . . 5,312  
Sherman (A4) . . . 6,421

Smith (D3)\* . . . 10,582  
Stafford (D6) . . . 10,487  
Stanton (A7) . . . 1,443  
Stevens (A8) . . . 3,193  
Sumner (F8) . . . 26,163

Thomas (A4) . . . 6,425  
Trego (C5) . . . 5,822

Wabaunsee (F5) . . . 9,219  
Wallace (A5) . . . 2,216  
Washington (E3) . . . 15,921  
Wichita (A5) . . . 2,185  
Wilson (G7) . . . 17,723  
Woodson (G7) . . . 8,014  
Wyandotte (H4) . . . 145,071

#### Cities

[Places marked with an asterisk (\*) were classified as urban in 1940]

Abilene *	(E5)	5,671
Alma	(F4, F5)	776
Almena	(C3)	543
Altamont	(G8)	642
Altونا	(G7)	707
Anthony *	(D8)	2,873
Arcadia	(H7)	843
Argonia	(E8)	532
Arkansas City *	(E8)	12,752
Arma	(H7)	1,615
Ashland	(C8)	1,186
Atchison *	(G3)	12,648
Atica	(D8)	708

# KANSAS—Continued

Atwood (A3) . . . . .	1,408	Erie (G7) . . . . .	1,286	Larned * (C6) . . . . .	3,533	Plainville (C4) . . . . .	1,232
Augusta * (F7) . . . . .	3,821	Esbridge (F5) . . . . .	648	Lawrence * (G5) . . . . .	14,390	Pleasanton (A6) . . . . .	1,227
Axtell (F3) . . . . .	545	Eudora (G5) . . . . .	603	Leavenworth * . . . . .		Pratt * (D7) . . . . .	6,591
Baldwin City . . . . .		Eureka * (F7) . . . . .	3,803	(G4) . . . . .	19,220	Protection (C8) . . . . .	846
(G5) . . . . .	1,096	Florence (F6) . . . . .	1,329	Lebanon (G7) . . . . .	652	Rossville (G4) . . . . .	601
Baxter Springs * . . . . .		Fort Scott (H7) . . . . .	10,557	Lebo (G6) . . . . .	522	Russell * (D5) . . . . .	4,819
(H8) . . . . .	4,921	Fowler (B8) . . . . .	563	Lenexa (H5) . . . . .	502		
Belle Plaine (E8) . . . . .	878	Frankfurt (F3) . . . . .	1,243	Lenora (H3) . . . . .	537	Sabetha (G3) . . . . .	2,241
Belleville * (E3) . . . . .	2,580	Fredonia * (G7) . . . . .	3,524	Leon (F7) . . . . .	573	St. Francis (A3) . . . . .	1,041
Beloit * (D4) . . . . .	3,765	Frontenac (H8) . . . . .	1,766	Leoti (A6) . . . . .	816	St. John (D6) . . . . .	1,735
Bird City (A3) . . . . .	694			Le Roy (G6) . . . . .	751	St. Marys (F4) . . . . .	1,132
Blue Rapids (F3) . . . . .	1,433	Galena * (H8) . . . . .	4,375	Liberal * (B8) . . . . .	4,410	St. Paul (G7) . . . . .	869
Bonner Springs . . . . .		Garden City * . . . . .		Lincoln (D4) . . . . .	1,761	St. Paul * (G7) . . . . .	869
(H4) . . . . .	1,837	(B7) . . . . .	6,285	Lindsborg (E5) . . . . .	1,913	Salina * (E5) . . . . .	21,073
Bucklin (C7) . . . . .	832	Gardner (H5) . . . . .	510	Little River (D6) . . . . .	603	Scammon (H8) . . . . .	737
Buffalo (G7) . . . . .	555	Garnett * (G6) . . . . .	2,607	Logan (C3) . . . . .	703	Scandia (E3) . . . . .	614
Buhler (E6) . . . . .	634	Geneseo (D5) . . . . .	632	Longton (F8) . . . . .	629	Scott City (B6) . . . . .	1,848
Burden (F8) . . . . .	522	Girard * (H7) . . . . .	2,554	Louisburg (H5) . . . . .	590	Scranton (G5) . . . . .	500
Burlingame (G5) . . . . .	1,019	Glasco (E4) . . . . .	741	Lucas (D4) . . . . .	648	Sedan (F8) . . . . .	1,948
Burlington (G6) . . . . .	2,379	Glen Elder (D3) . . . . .	555	Lyndon (G5) . . . . .	751	Sedgwick (E7) . . . . .	738
Burr Oak (D3) . . . . .	560	Goodland * (A4) . . . . .	3,306	Lyons * (D6) . . . . .	4,497	Seneca (F3) . . . . .	2,015
Burrton (E6) . . . . .	842	Great Bend * . . . . .				Severy (F7) . . . . .	570
		(D6) . . . . .	9,044	McCracken (C5) . . . . .	534	Sharon Springs . . . . .	
Caldwell (E8) . . . . .	1,962	Greenleaf (E3) . . . . .	749	McCune (G8) . . . . .	556	(A5) . . . . .	760
Cancy * (G8) . . . . .	2,629	Greensburg (C7) . . . . .	1,417	McLouth (G4) . . . . .	515	Smith Center . . . . .	
Canton (E6) . . . . .	796	Grenola (F8) . . . . .	517	McPherson * . . . . .		(D3) . . . . .	1,686
Cawker City . . . . .		Gypsum (E5) . . . . .	615	(E6) . . . . .	7,194	Solomon (E5) . . . . .	872
(D3) . . . . .	657			Macksville (D7) . . . . .	723	South Hutchinson . . . . .	
Cedarville (F8) . . . . .	952	Halstead (E7) . . . . .	1,397	Madison (F6) . . . . .	1,198	(E7) . . . . .	915
Centralia (F3) . . . . .	607	Hamilton (F7) . . . . .	519	Manhattan * . . . . .		Spearville (C7) . . . . .	603
Chanute * (G7) . . . . .	10,142	Hanover (F3) . . . . .	896	(F4) . . . . .	11,659	Stafford (D7) . . . . .	2,011
Chapman (E5, . . . . .		Harper (D8) . . . . .	1,695	Mankato (D3) . . . . .	1,426	Sterling (D6) . . . . .	2,215
F5) . . . . .	782	Haven (E7) . . . . .	653	Marion (E6) . . . . .	2,086	Stockton (C4) . . . . .	1,418
Chase (D6) . . . . .	825	Hays * (C5) . . . . .	6,385	Marquette (E5) . . . . .	609	Strong (F6) . . . . .	848
Cheney (E7) . . . . .	714	Herington * (F5) . . . . .	3,804	Marysville * (F5) . . . . .	4,055	Sylvan Grove . . . . .	
Cherokee (H8) . . . . .	1,101	Hawatha * (G3) . . . . .	3,238	Meade (B8) . . . . .	1,400	(D4) . . . . .	540
Cherryvale * . . . . .		Highland (G3) . . . . .	764	Medicine Lodge . . . . .		Syracuse (A7) . . . . .	1,226
(G8) . . . . .	1,185	Hill City (C4) . . . . .	1,115	(D8) . . . . .	1,870		
Chetopa (G8) . . . . .	1,606	Hillsboro (E6) . . . . .	1,580	Miltonvale (E4) . . . . .	800	Tonganoxie (G4) . . . . .	1,114
Cimarron (B7) . . . . .	1,304	Hoisington * . . . . .		Minneapolis (E4) . . . . .	2,087	Topeka * (G4) . . . . .	67,833
Clafflin (D6) . . . . .	747	(D5) . . . . .	3,719	Moline (F8) . . . . .	870	Toronto (G7) . . . . .	737
Clay Center * . . . . .		Holton * (G4) . . . . .	2,885	Moran (G7) . . . . .	592	Treecre (H8) . . . . .	568
(E4) . . . . .	4,518	Holyrood (D5) . . . . .	559	Mound City . . . . .		Tribune (A6) . . . . .	607
Clearwater (E8) . . . . .	591	Hope (E5) . . . . .	500	(H6) . . . . .	703	Troy (G3) . . . . .	1,049
Clifton (E3) . . . . .	670	Horton * (G3) . . . . .	2,872	Moundridge (E6) . . . . .	864	Turon (D7) . . . . .	594
Clyde (E3) . . . . .	1,060	Howard (F8) . . . . .	1,170	Mound Valley . . . . .			
Coffeyville * . . . . .		Hoxie (B4) . . . . .	957	(G8) . . . . .	648	Ulysses (A7) . . . . .	824
(G8) . . . . .	17,355	Hugoton (A8) . . . . .	1,349	Mulberry (H7) . . . . .	1,175		
Colby (A4) . . . . .	2,458	Humboldt (G7) . . . . .	2,290	Mulvane (E8) . . . . .	940	Valley Center . . . . .	
Coldwater (C8) . . . . .	1,214	Hutchinson * . . . . .				(E7) . . . . .	700
Columbus (H8) . . . . .	3,402	(E6) . . . . .	30,013	Natoma (C4,D4) . . . . .	651	Valley Falls (G4) . . . . .	1,241
Concordia * (E3) . . . . .	6,255	Independence * . . . . .		Neodesha * (G8) . . . . .	3,376	Victoria (C5) . . . . .	884
Conway Springs . . . . .		(G8) . . . . .	11,565	Ness City (C6) . . . . .	1,355		
(E8) . . . . .	849	Inman (E6) . . . . .	507	Newton * (E6) . . . . .	11,048	Wakeeney (C4) . . . . .	1,852
Cottonwood Falls . . . . .		Iola * (G7) . . . . .	7,244	Nickerson (D6) . . . . .	1,052	Wakefield (E4) . . . . .	513
(F6) . . . . .	1,076			Norton * (A3) . . . . .	2,762	Walnut (G7) . . . . .	544
Council Grove * . . . . .		Jetmore (C6) . . . . .	881	Nortonville (G4) . . . . .	562	Wamego (F4) . . . . .	1,767
(F5) . . . . .	2,875	Jewell (D3) . . . . .	669			Washington (E3) . . . . .	1,598
Dighton (B6) . . . . .	974	Johnson (A7) . . . . .	524	Oakley (B4) . . . . .	1,138	Waterville (F3) . . . . .	717
Dodge City * . . . . .		Junction City * . . . . .		Oberlin (B5) . . . . .	1,878	Wathena (H3) . . . . .	860
(B7) . . . . .	8,487	(F4) . . . . .	8,507	Olathe * (H5) . . . . .	3,979	Waverly (G6) . . . . .	566
Douglass (E8,F8) . . . . .	760			Onaga (F4) . . . . .	741	Weir (H8) . . . . .	1,038
Downs (D3) . . . . .	1,219	Kanopolis (D5) . . . . .	868	Osage City (G5) . . . . .	2,079	Wellington * . . . . .	
		Kansas City * . . . . .		Osawatimie * . . . . .		(E8) . . . . .	7,246
Edna (G8) . . . . .	507	(H4) . . . . .	121,458	(H6) . . . . .	4,145	Wellsville (G5) . . . . .	632
Edingham (G4) . . . . .	676	Kensington (C3) . . . . .	597	Osborne (D4) . . . . .	1,876	Westmoreland . . . . .	
El Dorado * (F7) . . . . .	10,045	Kingman * (D7) . . . . .	3,213	Oskaloosa (G4) . . . . .	800	(F4) . . . . .	532
Elk City (G8) . . . . .	680	Kinsley (C7) . . . . .	2,178	Oswego (G8) . . . . .	1,953	West Plains (B8) . . . . .	619
Elkhart (A8) . . . . .	902	Kiowa (D8) . . . . .	1,379	Ottawa * (G5) . . . . .	10,193	White City (F5) . . . . .	516
Ellinwood (D6) . . . . .	2,059			Oxford (E8) . . . . .	1,020	Whitewater (E7) . . . . .	515
Ellis (C5) . . . . .	2,042	La Crosse (C5) . . . . .	1,407			Wichita * (E7) . . . . .	114,966
Ellsworth (D5) . . . . .	2,227	La Cygne (H6) . . . . .	932	Paola * (H5) . . . . .	1,511	Wilson (D5) . . . . .	1,068
Elwood (H3) . . . . .	1,014	La Harpe (G6) . . . . .	624	Parsons * (G8) . . . . .	14,294	Winfield * (F8) . . . . .	9,506
Emporia * (F6) . . . . .	13,188	Lakin (A7) . . . . .	709	Peabody (E6) . . . . .	1,367		
Enterprise (E5) . . . . .	671			Phillipsburg (C3) . . . . .	2,109	Yates Center . . . . .	
				Pittsburg * (H8) . . . . .	17,571	(G7) . . . . .	2,176

---

# *The* HISTORY of KENTUCKY ---

## Reading Unit No. 16

### KENTUCKY: THE BLUE GRASS STATE

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

#### *Interesting Facts Explained*

The land where "the sun shines bright," 8-133  
Why Kentucky is called the Blue Grass State, 8-133  
What the Indians meant by the word "Kentucky," 8-135  
When settlers came to Kentucky, 8-135

Boone's Road, 8-135  
When Kentucky found the riches Nature had hidden underground, 8-137  
When Kentucky improved her educational system, 8-138  
Where Abraham Lincoln was born, 8-138

#### *Picture Hunt*

What interesting Confederate monuments are to be seen in Kentucky? 8-135, 136

What helped the growth of the city of Louisville? 8-137  
Fort Harrod, 7-138

#### *Related Material*

America turns to the West, 7-213-16  
Where are geysers to be seen at their best? 1-36  
What are the wonders of Mammoth Cave? 1-13  
Why is Pitch Lake in Trinidad one of the strangest lakes in the world? 7-66  
The story of tobacco, 9-221-24  
How did Daniel Boone get to

know the Indians and their ways? 12-469  
Why is Washington thought of as America's greatest leader? 12-476-78  
Who was Jefferson Davis? 7-250  
How did General Jackson get the nickname of "Stonewall"? 7-260

#### *Practical Applications*

What service helped the growth of Louisville? 8-137

How did Governor Willson help the tobacco farmers? 8-138

#### *Leisure-time Activities*

PROJECT NO. 1: Draw a map of Kentucky and mark on it: Louisville, Covington, Paducah, Ashland, Lexington and Frankfort; the Ohio, Kentucky, Big

Sandy, and Cumberland rivers; the Allegheny Mountains.

PROJECT NO. 2: Read the story of Daniel Boone, 12-469-72.

#### *Summary Statement*

The gallant state that gave birth to Abraham Lincoln knows well that no matter how richly

Nature endows a land, its welfare is in the hands of the men who work it.



---

## THE HISTORY OF KENTUCKY

---



Frankfort, the capital city of Kentucky, lies in the heart of the Blue Grass region. No one can be quite sure how the city got its name, but it may be that

it was named for Stephen Frank, a pioneer who was attacked by Indians here in the early days. Above is a photograph of the capitol.

### KENTUCKY: *the* BLUE GRASS STATE

#### *The Tale of the Smiling Land of Daniel Boone, Where Industry and Agriculture Flourish Side by Side*

**I**T WOULD be hard to say just why we have a feeling of pleasure when we think of Kentucky. Certainly it is not that most of us have visited that land where "the sun shines bright," and it is not that we know much about the state's gallant history. Yet at the mention of the Blue Grass State there rises to our minds the picture of broad tobacco fields and rolling pastures clothed in vivid green, of gracious mansions with wide, vine-hung verandahs, of gentle ladies and eloquent "colonels" speaking the soft speech of the South, of fine horses and tense sport, and of a way of life that is gay and dignified and friendly.

And interestingly enough, our notion would not be far wrong, though Kentucky is much more varied than this picture of her would indicate. There are mountains and mines and forests, and bustling cities where factories run night and day to turn out the manufactures that nowadays bring the state a bigger income than her agriculture does. The people who fell the trees and dig the coal and

work the iron and steel do not have much time to sit in front of the cabin door singing "My Old Kentucky Home." And yet in the great green bowl that we know as the Blue Grass region the Kentucky of song and story does live on into our modern industrial age.

That famous section is not very large—never much more than a hundred miles across. It lies in the north-central part of the state—a little low plain of gently rolling land, smooth and well-kept as a park, with no hills or swamps to interrupt its graceful vistas. Over its surface there grows at almost all times of the year a thick crop of fine soft grass. When this grass blooms in the middle of June the little pods in which its seeds lie take on a blue color. There are so many of them that the whole plain seems blue, and this is how the region got its name. Because the city of Lexington stands in the middle of it, the region is sometimes called the Lexington Plain.

The low Blue Grass region is surrounded

## THE HISTORY OF KENTUCKY

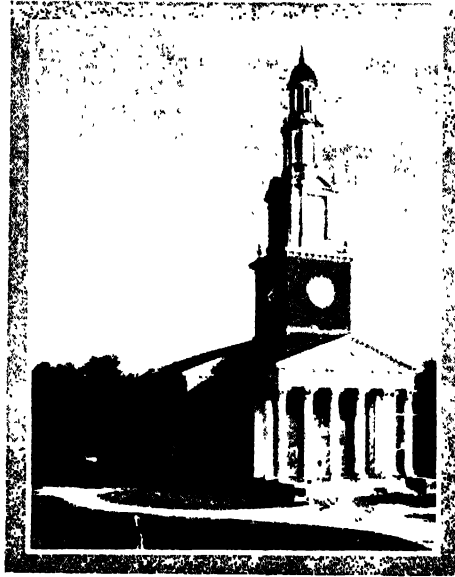
on all sides by higher land—sometimes as much as a hundred or two hundred feet higher. In many places the break is very sudden, so that steep cliffs seem to wall in the wide valley where the blue grass grows. The higher land is known as the Highland Rim Plateau. It covers almost half of Kentucky's surface, and completely surrounds the Blue Grass section. The only other parts of the state which the Highland Rim does not cover are the corners farthest east and farthest west. In the east and south-east is the mountain region, the highest part of the state. Along the eastern border are the high Allegheny (ăl'ĕ-gă'nĭ) ranges. West of them comes the Allegheny Plateau, deeply cut into sharp ridges and steep valleys by the rivers that have dissected it—the Kentucky River, the Big Sandy, and the Cumberland, with their branches. Both these mountain sections we have described elsewhere in our set. Because the eastern quarter of the state is so rugged, travel through it is difficult. For a long time the mountains were an important barrier in keeping settlers out of Kentucky. Across the state, in the west and southwest corners, there is a little region which is very low and flat and fertile. This is a part of the old Coastal Plain, which you may read of on other pages. It used to lie under a great inland sea.

### The Ground Plan of Kentucky

So our picture of Kentucky as a whole will show us a land high in the east, where it is cut up by valleys, and low and open in the west. The slope from east to west will be very even except in the middle of the state, where a wide hollow is cut out for the Blue Grass region.

But if we look closely at that Highland Rim Plateau, which covers so much of Kentucky, we shall find that the Blue Grass region is not the only circular hollow which breaks up the level surface of this broad, sloping plain. It is only the biggest one. The whole central part of the state is covered with circular pits and depressions called "sink holes." They look as if the ground had caved in underneath

them, and are formed when the water eats its way into the cracks in the limestone rocks underneath—for all rocks have cracks. As it flowed through these cracks, the water carried away tiny particles of lime from the limestone on either side of every crack. The cracks grew larger and larger, until soon a wide hollow had been worn away. There was not enough stone left to hold up the earth, and one day it collapsed. But the water still kept running through the limestone cracks underground, and carrying away the limestone. In this way



This gracefully spired building is Memorial Hall, a part of the University of Kentucky, which was established in 1865 at Lexington. Lexington was for many years the home of Henry Clay, one of our foremost statesmen.

it is possible that a crack so small you could hardly see it was the beginning of Lexington Plain, which is now a hundred miles wide.

Almost all of the Highland Rim is covered with sink holes, or filled with hollows and caves which the water has made in this manner. In the valley of the Green River, in the southwestern part of the state, you may see one of the most famous natural wonders of our country—Mammoth Cave, which the people of Kentucky have presented to the nation for a national park. You will find its marvels described in our story of geology. Colossal Cavern, in the same region, is only a little less amazing.

Kentucky has a good many mineral springs. Often the water is salty, and has left deposits of salt that once attracted ani-

## THE HISTORY OF KENTUCKY

mals for many miles around. That is why the neighborhood of these salt "licks" will often yield remains of mammoths and other beasts no longer living on the earth. Such salty springs were of course a great boon to the early settlers.

The early history of the smiling land of Kentucky is obscure and bloody. The very name is an Indian word for "the Dark and Bloody Ground." The Iroquois (ir'ô-kwoi) and the Cherokee (chër'ô-kë) Indians had been fighting to possess the region for many years when the first settlers arrived. We have described those warlike tribes in other stories. So savage had the fighting been that in the greater part of this rich and smiling country no man dared to stay in one place for more than a few days. Some roving group of Indians was certain to find him and kill him without mercy. Along the border of the Ohio River lived a few Shawnees, and a few Chickasaws had a village or two in the far west by the Mississippi. Everywhere else there was only uninhabited wilderness.

La Salle, when he passed down the Ohio River (1669), was probably the first white man to see Kentucky. But La Salle was more interested in the regions of Illinois and Indiana, because they were easy to reach from the settlements of New France on the Great Lakes. So he left Kentucky unexplored. Two years later an English explorer named Thomas Batts passed through Kentucky, looking for a river to the Pacific Ocean. For almost eighty years the French and English explorers wandered by, but they never found a river to the Pacific Ocean, or gold, or tribes of Indians with whom to trade beaver skins for fire water. Ordinary forest was not worth anything in those days; a man could walk out into the woods and take as much as he wanted. That was all anyone could see in Kentucky—endless woods that could not be exchanged for gold. Neither the French nor the English would touch the land.

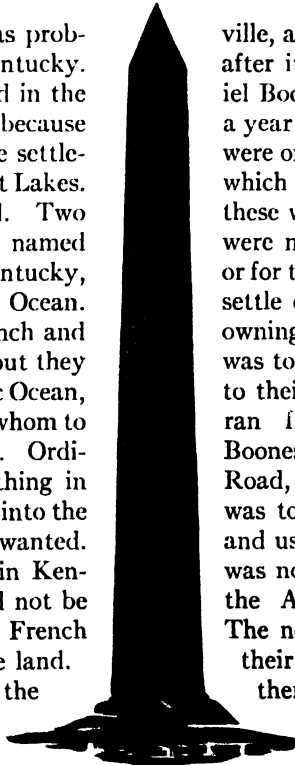
But about the year 1770 the government of Virginia, which had always claimed the whole

country to the west as far as the Pacific Ocean, found a use for Kentucky. The good farm land of Virginia was being used up. Because it was not worth while to use proper methods of plowing and fertilizing, many tobacco farms in Virginia ceased to yield and became useless. At first the careless farmer could simply move off to other farm lands near by. But soon all the good land east of the Allegheny Mountains was occupied or exhausted—and new farmers were still coming into Virginia from Europe and from other colonies. In 1750 Dr. Thomas Walker, a surveyor for a land company, had crossed the Alleghenies to lay out Kentucky into farms. The pass through the mountains, where the Cumberland River had cut a "gap," soon saw many other explorers. The famous Daniel Boone traveled west through the Cumberland Gap in 1767; and three years later George Washington was surveying several counties in the north-eastern corner of what is now Kentucky. The tide of new settlers was beginning to rise.

The first real settlement in Kentucky was near Louisville, and was called Harrodsburg (1774) after its founder, James Harrod. Daniel Boone built a fort at Boonesborough a year later, in 1775. At that time there were only 150 settlers in this new colony, which was known as Transylvania. But these were bold, far-sighted men. They were not interested in looking for gold, or for the Pacific Ocean. They wanted to settle down and become peaceful, land-owning farmers. The first thing they did was to get Daniel Boone to build a road to their settlements. This famous road ran from the Cumberland Gap to Boonesborough, and was called Boone's Road, or the Wilderness Road. Later it was to become one of the most famous and useful roads in the country. But it was no sooner finished than the War of the American Revolution broke out. The new colonists had to give much of their time to the problem of defending themselves against the English and the Indians whom the English hired to fight. During the

The president of the Confederate states, Jefferson Davis, was born at Fairview, Kentucky, where this monument was set up to honor his memory.

Photo copyright by Canfield & Shook



## THE HISTORY OF KENTUCKY

Revolution the settlers of Kentucky fought many battles and beat off many attacks. The other states were too busy to help her, so Kentucky had to shift for herself, though many times she was in great danger.

### The First State West of the Mountains

But even during the worst days of the war Kentucky grew rapidly. On the settlers came, some floating on flatboats down the Ohio River, many more making their way over the Wilderness Road. When the Revolution was over there were about thirty thousand white men in Kentucky. These settlers had fought their own battles during the war and they had made their own laws without help. Now they saw no reason why they should again belong to Virginia. They asked Virginia and the new Congress for their freedom, and the right to become a separate state. Both these governments were willing, but there was a great deal of delay and red tape, so much that a certain General James Wilkinson started a movement to secede from the Union and to join Kentucky with the Spanish settlements at New Orleans. Of course he got nowhere with his plan, and in 1792 Kentucky became a state, the first one to be set up west of the Alleghenies.

But if Kentucky had grown at a surprising rate during the war, now that the fighting was over the settlers began to arrive even faster. The rich land of the Blue Grass region attracted them first, but soon the whole state was covered with villages and towns. Most of the new settlers came from North Carolina, Maryland, and Virginia; but later on some of them came from New England and Pennsylvania. In any case the vast majority of them were of English, Irish, or Scotch blood. Off in the hill country of the southeast, where they have not been disturbed for many years, the descendants of these settlers still cling to many of the customs of their English ancestors.

They still remember the old English songs, and they use many words which have not been known in other parts of America or in England since the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries. But though these hill dwellers are among the most interesting inhabitants of Kentucky, they are not very numerous. Few settlers went to the highlands. Most of the new farmers preferred the rich plains and wide valleys of the central and western parts of the state. After 1850 a number of Germans came, especially to Louisville, but before that almost all the settlers had been of British or American ancestry. The manners and customs of Virginia predominated, and the institutions of Virginia were the ones the settlers established in their new home.

When the first settlers came to Kentucky they were not interested in founding new industries. Because they came from states where farming was the most important occupation they were mostly farmers who wanted

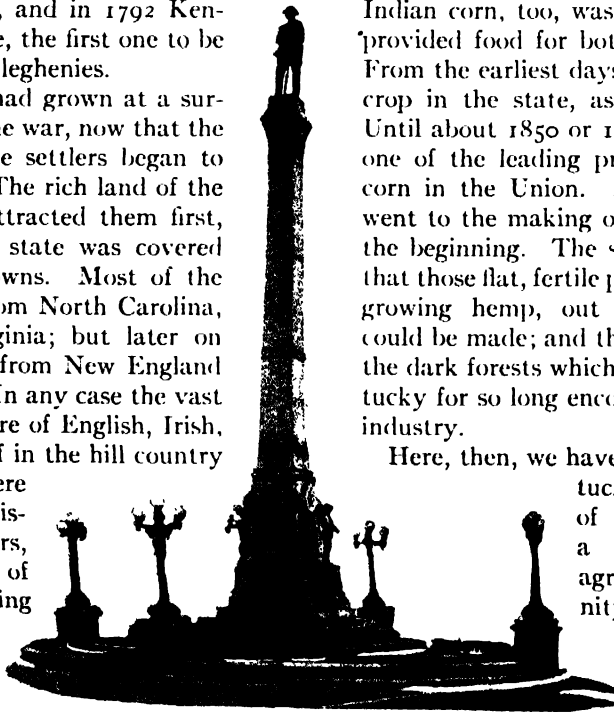
land. Even the very first pioneers, away back in 1780, started growing tobacco as soon as they had cleared away a little patch of ground.

Indian corn, too, was easy to grow and provided food for both men and cattle. From the earliest days it was the largest crop in the state, as it still is to-day. Until about 1850 or 1860 Kentucky was one of the leading producers of Indian corn in the Union. A great deal of it went to the making of whiskey, even in the beginning. The settlers found, too, that those flat, fertile plains were good for growing hemp, out of which clothes could be made; and the clearing away of the dark forests which had covered Kentucky for so long encouraged the timber industry.

Here, then, we have a picture of Kentucky at the time of the Civil War—a healthy, growing, agricultural community. In the matter of slavery she was about evenly divided. The rich

The Confederate Monument shown below stands at Louisville, the largest and most important city in Kentucky.

Photo copyright by Canfield & Shook



## THE HISTORY OF KENTUCKY



Photo copyright by Canfield & Shook

Louisville is built along the Ohio River. In the last century a lively steamboat traffic helped the growth of the city, especially after 1830, when a canal was opened to give a passage to boats around the Louisville

rapids commonly referred to as the Falls of the Ohio. A large part of Louisville lies on a low plain not many feet above the river—a hazardous place for a city in time of flood.

planters of the lowlands had many slaves, but the poorer hill dwellers had none. So evenly were the two parties balanced that when the war came Kentucky at first would not fight on either side. She preferred to be neutral, remaining in the Union but not fighting against her sister states of the South. But this soon became impossible.

### Kentucky's Role in the Civil War

Union men won a decisive election in 1861, Confederate troops started to invade the state, and in September, 1861, Kentucky joined the Northern side. Throughout the war the South kept trying to capture Kentucky, but the Northerners were always able to beat the Confederates back. Because so much fighting took place on Kentucky soil, many of her farms were completely devastated.

After the war Kentucky's citizens settled down to the task of rebuilding the state. Her tobacco regions were soon the most productive in the Union; and even to-day she is second—or sometimes even first—in this crop. There are two main regions where tobacco is grown in Kentucky. One, the Black Patch, is in the southwestern corner, where a heavy, black leaf is raised. The great

demand for this leaf comes from foreign countries. The Blue Grass region grows a light, fine leaf called Burley. Most of this leaf is intended for use in the United States. Both regions soon flourished again after the war. The hemp, lumber, and flour industries also found a new prosperity, and many new industries began to spring up. Kentucky had been a center for fine horses for a long time. In fact there had been a race track at Shallow Ford Station as early as 1775. But now that peace had come and horses were not needed for the battlefield, the breeding of fine horses became a very important industry in Kentucky. And the fine blue grass was good for other animals. Kentucky raises cattle, pigs, sheep, and chickens. And wheat, oats, barley, hay, soybeans, potatoes, sweet potatoes, apples, peaches, pears, and grapes are paying crops.

### Riches Hidden Underground

But though Kentucky's agriculture continued to grow richer and more productive every year, she could not afford to neglect her industries. For men were just beginning to realize what a store of riches Nature had hidden underneath the fine soil. To be sure, the state will never be a great iron and steel producer. Iron is missing from her under-

---

## THE HISTORY OF KENTUCKY

---

ground treasure. But in those wild and lonely mountains in the southeast is one of the finest coal fields in the country. The state also has natural gas and gasoline, petroleum, clay, stone, fluorspar, sand and gravel, zinc, and lead. With the discovery of her natural resources Kentucky's industries began to flourish, and this in turn attracted the railroads, which now found it worth while to come and carry her goods.

### Education in Kentucky

As time went by Kentucky began to realize that her educational system had not kept up with her growing prosperity. In 1910 she spent only about \$8 a year on each child's education; in 1924 she spent more than three times that much. At this time the citizens of Kentucky also reorganized their institutions of higher education.

Kentucky has always been a rural state for the most part, and she has not developed many big cities. Louisville is by far the largest city in the state, and is also the center of many of Kentucky's manufactures. She is especially famous as a center of the livestock and tobacco industries, and for her distilleries, her planing mills, and her plumbing supplies. Louisville makes most of the baseball bats in the country. Covington, the second largest city of the state, manufactures tobacco and fine machinery, and has many breweries and ironworks. Paducah (pă-dū'kă) and Ashland, at opposite ends of the state, are both centers of shipping; but Paducah is also a great tobacco market, while Ashland is famous for her steel, lumbering, and mining industries. In the Blue Grass region are two well-known cities—Lexington and Frankfort. Lexington, famous for her tobacco, is also a distilling center and a market for blue grass seed. Nowhere in the world are finer horses bred than those coming from her neighborhood. Frankfort, the capital, sells hemp, tobacco, and lumber, and raises fine horses. Flour and cotton milling, woodworking, and meatpacking are other Kentucky industries.

The government of Kentucky has had to face many severe problems in recent years. For several years after 1900 so much tobacco was grown that the price fell very low—so low that the farmers could not sell their crops.

In order to raise the price many of the growers got together and agreed to raise no crop during the year 1908. This would reduce the supply of tobacco, and send the price up. But many farmers outside the group thought they would grow full crops in order to take advantage of the new high prices. So the farmers who were not growing tobacco used force to keep any of the crop from going to market in Kentucky. They rode about by night, terrorizing with guns and whips those who were trying to grow full crops. For several years a kind of civil war was let loose in Kentucky and mention of the "night riders" filled many hearts with terror. But at last Governor Willson forced the tobacco companies to pay fair prices for the farmers' crops, and the terrorist groups broke up. There have also been grave labor troubles in the coal fields around Harlan County, with a good deal of violence.

### When the Ohio Breaks Its Bounds

Lately the frequent destructive floods of the Ohio River have laid waste many of the Kentucky cities which line its banks. Louisville was very hard hit in January, 1937, and so were Covington and Ashland. Two-thirds of the city of Louisville was flooded, and the property damage was enormous. Only the prompt relief of the Red Cross saved the citizens from the terrible dangers of disease, famine, and exposure.

### Kentucky's Formula for Success

But none of these problems are so difficult that hard work and careful thought will not solve them. And we may be sure that Kentucky has many able minds and willing hands at work on them—in the smiling capital at Frankfort as well as in the coal fields of Harlan County and along the mighty Ohio. The gallant state that gave birth to Abraham Lincoln knows well that no matter how richly Nature endows a land, its welfare is only in the hands of the men who work it. There is no magic formula which will make the labor and thought of men unnecessary. As long as she knows so much, and has men within her borders who are willing to work on this principle, Kentucky can face the future with confidence.

## KENTUCKY

**AREA:** 40,395 square miles—36th in rank.

**LOCATION:** Kentucky, one of the East South Central states, lies between 36° 30' and 39° 6' N. Lat. and between 82° and 89° 38' W. Long. It is bounded on the north by Ohio, Indiana, and Illinois; on the east by West Virginia and Virginia; on the south by Tennessee; and on the west by Illinois and Missouri.

**PHYSICAL FEATURES:** Except along the south-eastern border, where the Allegheny Mountains cross the state, Kentucky is a plateau sloping west and north. Rivers have cut into the rock beds, and have made the eastern quarter—the Allegheny Plateau—a land of ridges and valleys. The Cumberland and Pine Mountains rise to 2,000 and 3,000 ft. Big Black Mountain, in Harlan County, is 4,150 ft. high. The lowest point (257 ft.) is along the Mississippi in Fulton County. The average elevation is 750 ft. West of the Allegheny Plateau the Highland Rim Plateau reaches to the Tennessee River. In the north central region is a fertile, gently rolling area called the Blue Grass region, or Lexington Plain. It is separated from the Highland Rim Plateau by a steep 200-foot drop that sweeps in a semicircle from the mouth of the Scioto River, which enters the Ohio from the north, to the mouth of the Salt, below Louisville. There are many caves in the southern part of the Highland Rim Plateau, the most famous being Mammoth Cave, in Edmonson County, and Colossal Cavern. West of the Tennessee is another lowland, part of the Mississippi embayment of the Gulf Coastal Plain. The surface is level and the average elevation below 500 feet.

The big Sandy River (200 m.) and the Tug Fork form the boundary with West Virginia. The Cumberland (687 m.) flows through the southeastern and south central parts of the state, through Tennessee, and back across southwestern Kentucky into the Ohio. Other streams that flow into the Ohio are the Big Sandy, the Green (360 m.), the Kentucky (259 m.), the Licking (350 m.), the Salt, the Tennessee (652 m.), and the Tradewater. The Ohio (981 m.) forms the northern border for 643 miles. The Mississippi forms 50 miles of the western boundary. The Cumberland, Mississippi, Ohio, and Tennessee are navigable for their whole lengths within the state. The Louisville and Portland Canal (2 m.) carries boats around the Falls of the Ohio at Louisville. Kentucky has 417 square miles of water.

**CLIMATE:** Kentucky has a mild climate. The mean temperature is about 55° F., but the eastern mountains fall 5° below this average, and the western lowland rises 5° above it. At Louisville the January mean is 34°, the July mean 79°. The state averages 46 in. of rainfall in a year, with 38 in. in the northeast and 50 in. in the south. There is little snow. Prevailing winds are from the west and southwest. South winds bring the rain, and north and northwest winds often bring frosts.

**INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING:** Asbury College at Wilmore, Berea College at Berea, Centre College of Kentucky at Danville, Georgetown College at Georgetown, Nazareth College for women at Louisville, Transylvania University at Lexington, Union College at Barbourville, University of Kentucky at Lexington, the University of Louisville at Louisville, and state teachers' colleges at Richmond, Murray, and Bowling Green are the more important institutions. For Negroes there are Kentucky State College at Frankfort and Louisville Municipal College at Louisville. The state has over a dozen junior colleges.

**CHARITIES AND CORRECTION:** There are state hospitals at Lexington, Lakeland, and Hopkinsville. Other institutions are a reformatory and an institution for the feeble-minded at Frankfort, a state prison at Eddyville, a reformatory at La Grange, houses of correction for boys and girls at Greendale, a Confed-

erate Home at Pewee Valley, a school for the deaf at Danville, and one for the blind at Louisville.

**POLITICAL FACTS:** Kentucky is governed under the constitution of 1891. Laws are made by a general assembly consisting of a senate, elected for 4 years, and a house of representatives, elected for two. Sixty-day sessions are held in even-numbered years. Other state officers are elected for 4 years, and the governor may not succeed himself. The judiciary is headed by the court of appeals, of five to seven judges elected for 8 years, with the judge longest in service as chief justice. There are also district and county courts.

Voters must be citizens of the United States with one year of residence in the state, six months in the county, and sixty days in the precinct, and must be at least twenty-one. Officials, except for school officials, trustees, and presidential electors, are nominated in primary elections.

Laws prohibit mixed marriage, protect workingmen, and regulate child labor and liquor manufacturing. The capitol is at Frankfort.

**PARKS:** Mammoth Cave National Park contains a large number of limestone caves, among them the famous Mammoth Cave. Abraham Lincoln National Historical Park near Hodgenville contains the log cabin where Lincoln was born.

Kentucky has 1,393,534 acres of national forest.

**GAME AND BIRD RESERVATIONS:** Kentucky Woodland Refuge in Lyon and Trigg counties protects wild turkeys, deer, and waterfowl.

**NAME:** The history of the name of Kentucky is in doubt. The first record of it is in a document found in a letter from a trader to Gov. Hamilton in 1753. In 1774 Col. Richard Henderson of North Carolina bought from the Cherokees for 10,000 pounds the greater part of the "Cane tuck ee" country. The word appears to come from an Indian name meaning "dark and bloody ground" or "river of blood." It refers either to a tradition of a prehistoric race driven away by the Indians, or to a battle between the Iroquois and the Cherokees. The word may also come from the Cherokee or the Iroquois for "prairie."

**NICKNAMES:** Kentucky is called the Blue Grass State from the color of the seed vessels of blue grass. The name Corncrack State comes from the mountaineers, or perhaps from the corn crake, a kind of crane. The state is sometimes called "the dark and bloody ground," the Tobacco State, and the Bear State. The people are sometimes called Red Horses, after a fish of the sucker family that is found in the Ohio and its branches.

**STATE FLOWER:** Goldenrod, adopted in 1926.

**STATE SONG:** "My Old Kentucky Home," written in 1850 by Stephen Collins Foster (1826-64), adopted in 1928. Foster, who wrote many other popular airs, such as "Nelly Bly," "Swanee River," and "Old Black Joe," was not a Kentuckian. He was born in Pittsburgh and spent most of his life there.

**STATE BIRD:** Kentucky cardinal, or redbird.

**STATE MOTTO:** "United We Stand, Divided We Fall," from G. P. Morris' "The Flag of Our Union."

**STATE FLAG:** A navy blue field bearing in the center the seal of the commonwealth encircled by a wreath of goldenrod.

**INTERESTING FACTS:** Besides the customary holidays, Kentucky observes Robert E. Lee's Birthday (Jan. 19), and Confederate Memorial Day (June 3). She does not officially observe Good Friday.

# KENTUCKY

## Population of state 1940, 2,845,027

### Counties

Adair (E3)...	18,566
Allen (D4)...	15,496
Anderson (F2)...	8,936
Ballard (A3)...	9,480
Barren (E4)...	27,559
Bath (G2)...	11,451
Bell (G4)...	43,812
Boone (F2)...	10,820
Bourbon (F2)...	17,932
Boyd (H2)...	45,938
Boyle (F3)...	17,075
Bracken (F2)...	9,389
Breathitt (G3)...	23,946
Breckinridge (D3)...	17,744
Bullitt (E3)...	9,511
Butler (D3)...	14,371
Caldwell (C3)...	14,499
Calloway (B4)...	19,041
Campbell (F2)...	71,918
Carlisle (A4)...	7,650
Carroll (E2)...	8,657
Carter (G2)...	25,545
Casey (F3)...	19,962
Christian (C4)...	36,129
Clark (F2)...	17,988
Clay (G3)...	23,901
Clinton (E4)...	10,279
Crittenden (B3)...	12,115
Cumberland (E4)...	11,923
Daviess (C3)...	52,335
Edmonson (D3)...	11,344
Elliott (G2)...	8,713
Estill (F3)...	17,978
Fayette (F2)...	78,899
Fleming (G2)...	13,327
Floyd (H3)...	52,986
Franklin (F2)...	23,308
Fulton (F3)...	15,413
Gallatin (F2)...	4,307
Garrard (F3)...	11,910
Grant (F2)...	9,876
Graves (B4)...	31,763
Grayson (D3)...	17,562
Green (E3)...	12,321
Greenup (H2)...	24,917
Hancock (D3)...	6,807
Hardin (D3)...	29,108
Harlan (G4)...	75,275
Harrison (F2)...	15,124
Hart (E3)...	17,239
Henderson (C3)...	27,020
Henry (E2)...	12,220
Hickman (A4)...	9,142
Hopkins (C3)...	37,789
Jackson (F3)...	16,339
Jefferson (E2)...	385,392
Jessamine (F3)...	12,174
Johnson (H3)...	25,771
Kenton (F2)...	93,139
Knott (H3)...	20,007
Knox (G4)...	31,029
Larue (E3)...	9,622
Laurel (F3)...	25,640
Lawrence (H2)...	17,275
Lee (G3)...	10,860
Leslie (G3)...	14,981
Letcher (H3)...	40,592
Lewis (G2)...	15,686
Lincoln (F3)...	19,859
LIVINGSTON (B3)...	9,127
Logan (D4)...	23,345
Lyon (B3)...	9,067
McCracken (B3)...	48,534
McCreary (F4)...	16,451
McLean (C3)...	11,446
Madison (F3)...	28,541
Magoffin (G3)...	17,490
Marion (E3)...	16,913
Marshall (E4)...	16,602

Martin (H3)...	10,970
Mason (G2)...	19,066
Meade (D3)...	8,827
Menifee (G3)...	5,691
Mercer (F3)...	14,629
Metcalf (E4)...	10,853
Monroe (F4)...	14,070
Montgomery (G2)...	12,280
Morgan (G3)...	16,827
Muhlenberg (C3)...	37,554
Nelson (E3)...	18,004
Nicholas (F2)...	8,617
Ohio (D3)...	24,421
Oldham (E2)...	10,716
Owen (F2)...	10,942
Owsley (G3)...	8,957
Pendleton (F2)...	10,392
Perry (G3)...	47,828
Pike (H3)...	71,122
Powell (G3)...	7,671
Pulaski (F3)...	39,863
Robertson (F2)...	3,417
Rockcastle (F3)...	17,165
Rowan (G2)...	12,713
Russell (E3)...	13,615
Scott (F2)...	14,314
Shelby (E2)...	17,759
Simpson (D4)...	11,752
Spencer (E2)...	6,757
Taylor (E3)...	13,556
Todd (C4)...	14,234
Trigg (C4)...	12,784
Trimble (E2)...	5,601

### Cities, Towns, and Villages

Union (C3)...	17,411
Warren (D4)...	36,631
Washington (E3)...	12,965
Wayne (F4)...	17,204
Webster (C3)...	19,198
Whitley (F4)...	33,186
Wolfe (G3)...	9,997
Woodford (F2)...	11,847
Albany (E4)...	1,259
Ashland* (H2)...	25,537
Auburn (D4)...	955
Augusta (G2)...	1,701
Barbourville (G4)...	2,420
Bardstown* (E3)...	5,152
Bardwell (A4)...	1,218
Beattyville (G3)...	1,102
Beaver Dam (D3)...	1,166
Bellevue* (F1)...	8,741
Benton (B4)...	1,906
Berea (F3)...	2,176
Bowling Green* (D4)...	14,585
Brodhead (F3)...	702
Bromley (F1)...	876
Brooksville (F2)...	656
Burgin (F3)...	703
Burkesville (E4)...	1,092
Burnside (F3)...	880
Cadiz (C4)...	1,228
Calhoun (C3)...	753
Campbellsville (E3)...	2,488
Carlisle (G2)...	1,414
Carrollton* (E2)...	2,910
Catlettsburg* (H2)...	4,524
Cave City (D3)...	960
Central City* (C3)...	4,199
Clay (C3)...	1,429
Chilton (B4)...	1,540

Cloverport (D3)...	1,402
Columbia (E3)...	1,372
Corbin* (F4)...	7,893
Covington* (F2)...	62,018
Crab Orchard (F3)...	705
Crofton (C4)...	688
Cynthiana* (F2)...	4,840
Danville* (F3)...	6,734
Dawson Springs* (C3)...	2,560
Dayton* (F1)...	8,379
Drakesboro (C3)...	1,255
Earlington* (C3)...	2,858
Eddyville (B3)...	2,407
Elizabethtown* (D3)...	3,667
Elkton (C4)...	1,214
Elsmere* (F2)...	2,885
Emmence (E2)...	1,411
Franklin* (F1)...	2,416
Evarts (G4)...	1,642
Falmouth (F2)...	2,099
Fleming (H3)...	1,193
Flemingsburg (G2)...	1,542
Fort Thomas* (F1)...	11,034
Frankfort* (F2)...	11,492
Franklin* (D4)...	3,940
Fulton* (B1)...	3,308
Georgetown* (F2)...	4,420
Glasgow* (D4)...	5,815
Grayson (G2)...	1,176
Greensburg (E3)...	1,176
Greenup (H2)...	1,063
Greenville (C3)...	2,347
Guthrie (C4)...	1,253
Hardinsburg (D3)...	930
Harlan* (G4)...	5,122
Harrodsburg* (E3)...	4,673
Hartford (D3)...	1,385
Hawesville (D3)...	896
Hazard* (C3)...	7,397
Henderson* (C3)...	13,160
Hickman (A4)...	2,268
Hodgenville (E3)...	1,348
Hopkinsville* (C4)...	11,724
Horse Cave (E3)...	1,278
Irvine* (F3)...	3,631
Irrington (D3)...	790
Jackson (G3)...	2,099
Jeffersonton (E2)...	899
Junction City (F3)...	694
Kuttawa (B3)...	1,125
La Grange (E2)...	1,334
Lancaster (F3)...	1,999
Lawrenceburg (E3)...	2,046
Lebanon* (E3)...	3,786
Lebanon (E3)...	1,141
Leitchfield (D3)...	1,146
Lexington* (F2)...	49,304
Liberty (F1)...	676
Livemore (C3)...	1,601
Livingston (F3)...	669
London (F3)...	2,263
Louisa (H2)...	2,023
Louisville* (H3)...	319,077
Loyal (G4)...	1,600
Ludlow* (F1)...	6,185
McHenry (D3)...	722
Madisonville* (C3)...	8,209
Manchester (G3)...	1,509
Marion (C3)...	2,163

Mayfield* (B4)...	8,619
Maysville* (G2)...	6,572
Middlesborough* (G4)...	11,777
Midway (F2)...	886
Millersburg (F2)...	850
Monticello (F4)...	1,733
Morehead (G2)...	1,901
Morganfield* (C3)...	3,079
Morgantown (D3)...	859
Mortons Gap (C3)...	1,072
Mt. Sterling* (G2)...	4,782
Mt. Vernon (F3)...	1,100
Murfordville (D3)...	812
Murray* (B4)...	3,773
Neon (H3)...	1,187
Newport* (F1)...	30,631
Nicholasville (F3)...	3,192
Nortonville (C3)...	989
Oliver Hill (G2)...	1,491
Owensboro* (C3)...	30,245
Owenton (F2)...	1,190
Owingsville (G2)...	948
Paducah* (B3)...	33,765
Paintsville (H3)...	2,324
Paris* (F2)...	6,697
Pewee Valley (E2)...	625
Pikesville* (H3)...	4,185
Pineville* (G4)...	3,882
Prestonsburg (H3)...	2,328
Princeton* (C3)...	5,389
Providence* (C3)...	4,397
Raceland (H2)...	1,046
Ravenna (G3)...	1,098
Richmond* (F3)...	7,335
Russell (H2)...	1,844
Russellville* (D4)...	3,983
Salversville (G3)...	1,254
Scottsville (D4)...	1,797
Seebree (C3)...	1,109
Seco (H3)...	722
Shelbyville* (E2)...	4,392
Shepherdsville (E2)...	762
Smiths Grove (D3)...	699
Somerset* (F3)...	6,154
Springfield (E3)...	1,767
Stanford (F3)...	1,940
Sturgis (C3)...	2,321
Taylorsville (E2)...	921
Tompkinsville (E4)...	1,438
Uniontown (C3)...	1,327
Vanceburg (G2)...	1,184
Van Lear (H3)...	1,723
Versailles* (F2)...	2,548
Vine Grove (E3)...	822
Wallins Creek (G4)...	903
Walton (F2)...	973
Warsaw (F2)...	880
Wayland (H3)...	1,950
Weeksbur (H3)...	1,578
Wheelwright (H3)...	2,027
Whitesburg (H3)...	1,616
Wickliffe* (A4)...	1,039
Williamsville (F4)...	2,331
Williamstown (F2)...	1,077
Wilmore (F3)...	1,228
Winchester* (F3)...	8,594



---

# *The* HISTORY of LOUISIANA

---

## Reading Unit No. 17

---

### LOUISIANA: THE PELICAN STATE

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

#### *Interesting Facts Explained*

How Louisiana guards our country's southern door, 8-140  
Why Louisiana has to keep 1,500 miles of strong levees, 8-140-41  
La Salle names Louisiana in honor of Louis XIV, 8-141  
When Bienville founded New Orleans, 8-141  
When the first cargo of Negro slaves arrived from Africa, 8-

141  
Why French influence is still strong in Louisiana, 8-142  
The Louisiana Purchase, 8-142  
When race hatred made Louisiana unhappy, 8-143-44  
Louisiana's great mineral products, 8-145  
Where the Mardi Gras carnival is held, 8-145

#### *Picture Hunt*

Which nations have played a part in the history of Baton Rouge? 8-140  
What traces of the old slave days

are still to be found in Louisiana? 8-143  
Louisiana changes hands, 7-205

#### *Related Material*

The great plantations, 8-408-10  
Which is the only state to raise sugar cane profitably? 9-116  
Why was Andrew Jackson called "King Andrew"? 7-224  
The Louisiana Purchase, 7-205-7  
What country was made famous by Longfellow's "Evangeline"? 7-8  
How did England honor Long-

fellow? 13-303  
Where are beds of rock salt to be found? 9-411  
What is known about the man who found the Mississippi? 13-464-66  
Who were the buccaneers? 10-170  
Where was the first real oil well drilled? 9-407

#### *Practical Applications*

How is Louisiana improving conditions among her Negroes? 8-144

How has Louisiana been able to provide money for education? 8-144

#### *Leisure-time Activities*

PROJECT NO. 1: Make a list of the "oil" states.

PROJECT NO. 2: Read Longfellow's "Evangeline."

## LOUISIANA: *the* PELICAN STATE

### *The Story of the State That Stands at the Mouth of the Mississippi River.*

**L**OUISIANA is keeper of one of the chief gateways of the United States. From the days of her earliest settlement she has guarded our country's great southern door. Every cargo carried down the Mississippi to put to sea must pass the port of New Orleans. Minneapolis, St. Paul, Pittsburgh, Cincinnati, Louisville, Omaha, St. Louis, Memphis, Vicksburg, even Chicago by way of the Chicago Drainage Canal, all can ship goods by the cheapest of all routes to ocean steamers waiting at New Orleans to sail to every corner of the world. Of course the railroads have taken much of the picturesque traffic that used to crowd the Ohio and Mississippi rivers. On other pages we have described those brave steamboat days, more hearty than refined, but full of the lusty life of a young nation. Some day the rivers will probably be put to work again, to save money for the buyers, but even to-day a great deal of the produce of the richest agricultural region in the world is carried by the Mississippi. New Orleans does a big business with the islands and countries around the Caribbean, and with other ports along our own coast. Grain, iron, coal, cement, cotton, rice, molasses, sugar, flour, coffee, tobacco, meat, tropical fruits, oil, and many manufactured products crowd the levees and wharves of this busy shipping center. The Intracoastal Water-

The beautiful skyscraper which is Louisiana's state capitol dominates the scene at Baton Rouge. This city, which lies along the Mississippi River about seventy miles northwest of New Orleans, has been occupied by French, British, and Spanish, and all have contributed to its history.

way inside the islands along the Gulf Coast gives a safe route to small boats and barges between Corpus Christi, Texas, and Florida. Vast quantities of bulky goods that can take their time are shipped cheaply in this way.

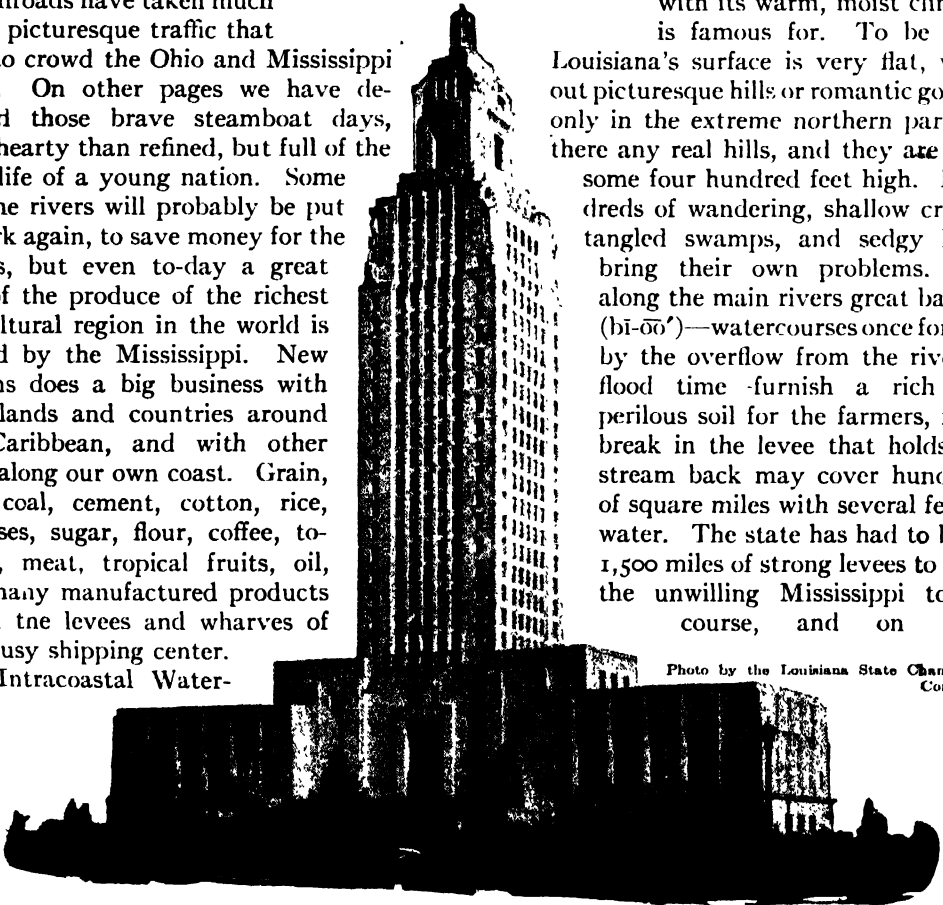
So now, as in the past, Louisiana's (lō-ē'zī-ān'ā) prosperity is bound up with the great river whose mouth she guards. In the first place, she owes much of her wealth to the

fertile soil which covers almost the whole of the state.

The river carried it down from regions far up in the continent, and left it here to grow the crops that the state, with its warm, moist climate, is famous for. To be sure,

Louisiana's surface is very flat, without picturesque hills or romantic gorges; only in the extreme northern part are there any real hills, and they are only some four hundred feet high. Hundreds of wandering, shallow creeks, tangled swamps, and sedgy lakes bring their own problems. All along the main rivers great bayous (bī-ōō')—watercourses once formed by the overflow from the river in flood time—furnish a rich but perilous soil for the farmers, for a break in the levee that holds the stream back may cover hundreds of square miles with several feet of water. The state has had to build 1,500 miles of strong levees to keep the unwilling Mississippi to its course, and on their

Photo by the Louisiana State Chamber of Commerce



## THE HISTORY OF LOUISIANA

strength depend the safety and property of thousands upon thousands of the state's citizens. But after all Louisiana can hardly complain, for all these disadvantages are the work of the river which has brought the state such great prosperity. They are part of the price she must pay for her enviable place in the world.

It was in August, 1519, that Alonso Alvarez de Pineda (äl'vā-rēs dā pē-nā'dā), exploring the coast of the New World, entered a great river which he found flowing into the Gulf of Mexico. He went up the stream for some distance, but of course could do nothing about settling the land which he found; so he left no traces. We are not even sure it was the Mississippi he entered, though his description makes so much of its size that it can hardly have been any other stream. Some years later, in 1542, Hernando de Soto, fighting his way downstream from Arkansas, came to Louisiana; but his band of explorers was worn out and broken in strength, while de Soto himself was discouraged and weak from his long journey.

### The Death of a Great Explorer

Those survivors of his party who finally reached civilization said the lion-hearted explorer died of a fever where another great river flowed into the Mississippi. This was probably the Red River, which enters the Mississippi near the farthest western tip of the state of Mississippi. Here, in the lonely depths of the great American wilderness, de Soto gave up his troubled spirit. To prevent hostile Indians from digging the body up, the forlorn members of his band sank it beneath the waves of the mighty Father of Waters.

In lonely splendor he rests there, wrapped in his blanket, beneath the rushing current of the great river which he discovered.

It was 140 years later that La Salle tried (1682) to establish the first colony in Louisiana; but he died before he had done much

more than give the region its name—chosen in honor of Louis XIV, the "Grand Monarch" of France. At last, in 1699 or 1700, some of the group of colonists who had settled shortly before near Biloxi, Mississippi, moved to the west and under the leadership of Pierre Lemoyne d'Iberville (pyēr lē-mwān' dē'bēr'vel') established a little fort and settlement about forty miles up the Mississippi River. This colony never prospered, for the settlers were not used to the heat, had no remedies for the fevers that lurked in the swamps, and did not raise enough food. The company formed in France by Antoine Crozat and John Law, a Scotch adventurer and

gambler in the French court, did much to encourage the colony. The company soon collapsed, ruining its creditors, but it brought about large developments here.

Finally, in 1718 the new governor, Jean Baptiste Lemoyne de Bienville (zhôN bā'tēst' lē-mwān' dē byāN'vel'), brother of the founder of the colony, founded the present city of New Orleans, and the next year the first cargo of Negro slaves arrived from Africa. Wars with the Indians broke out from time to time during the next forty years. The Creeks and Chickasaws were dangerous foemen, but the French at least managed to hold their own, for the colony grew steadily. The official census of 1766 showed 5,552 people in the territory. Many



Photo by the New Orleans News

The old name, "Place d'Armes," still clings to the quaint New Orleans square which saw so many exciting events during Louisiana's colonial period. On one side is the venerable cathedral of St. Louis. Near it is an old building, built of adobe and lime, which was the seat of government in Spanish times. In its council hall the city's keys passed, in 1803, from Spain to France—only to shift hands again twenty days later, this time into the possession of the United States. The equestrian statue of Andrew Jackson shown above was set up in the square in memory of the sharp defeat which the man who was later to become our seventh president dealt the British at New Orleans in 1815.

---

## THE HISTORY OF LOUISIANA

---

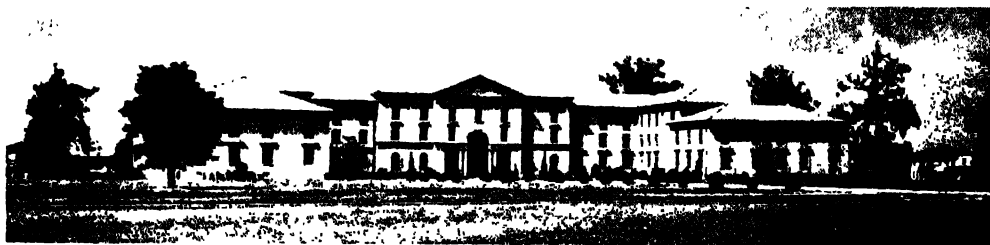


Photo by the Louisiana State Chamber of Commerce

Louisiana State University, which was opened in 1860 at Baton Rouge, is one of the largest universities of

the South. The photograph shows a view of Smith Hall, one of the dormitories for women.

Germans and Alsatians arrived, and some French convicts were shipped over to work in the new colony. But most of the settlers were sturdy French who came to make their fortunes. About the year 1765 a number of French refugees from Acadia, now Nova Scotia, came down from Canada after being driven out of their homes by the British. Their touching story has been told by Longfellow in his poem "Evangeline." Some of the descendants of those early pilgrims still live to-day in the little towns and villages of St. Martin, Vermillion, and St. Mary parishes.

### Who Are the Creoles?

But by the time these picturesque settlers had come, the French were no longer governing Louisiana. In 1762 a secret treaty between France and Spain gave all the French holdings west of the Mississippi to Spain, and a year later the British took over all the French and Spanish territory east of the Mississippi. In spite of this change, the French influence is strong in Louisiana to this very day. The mixture of French and Spanish blood produced a type of people called Creoles (kré'ól) who still keep a distinct culture and speech of their own.

### Louisiana Is Bought from France

It was only in 1769 that the Spanish officially took over the colony of Louisiana from the French. Their rule was liberal and intelligent and their governors far more sensible and efficient than the French had been. Louisiana under the Spaniards was quiet and prosperous, her citizens energetic

and busy. But in 1800 the Spanish were forced to return Louisiana to the French, and just three years later the United States bought from France the whole French region west of the Mississippi. This exchange was known as the Louisiana Purchase. By it the United States paid \$27,267,622, or about four cents an acre, for what is undoubtedly the richest agricultural section in the world. The states which were included in this purchase were Louisiana, Arkansas, Missouri, Iowa, most of Minnesota, both the Dakotas, most of Kansas, Nebraska, and as much of Wyoming, Montana, and Colorado as lies east of the Rockies.

### An Unusual Name for a County

In 1804 the present northern boundary of Louisiana was drawn, and all of the present state lying west of the Mississippi became the Territory of Orleans. The portion east of the Mississippi was not added until eight years later, just a few days after Louisiana was admitted to the Union as a state (1812). Because these eastern counties had belonged for a time to the territory of West Florida they are known to this day as the "Florida parishes," or counties—for counties are called "parishes" in Louisiana. In 1815 the final battle of the War of 1812 was fought at New Orleans, ending in a smashing victory for the American cause and for the American general, Andrew Jackson. After that last flurry Louisiana settled down to forty peaceful years of developing her agriculture.

Louisiana has never been a one-crop state like Mississippi or Alabama. Of course farming at once became her chief industry,

## THE HISTORY OF LOUISIANA

and naturally cotton played an important part in her scheme of life. The rich soil along the river fronts and bayous, and in the swamp lands once they were drained, was ideal for the cotton crop. But corn, hay, potatoes, sugar cane, tobacco, and fruits were soon grown widely, and indigo was attempted. Sugar cane was raised successfully in Louisiana as soon as it was brought to the colony from the West Indies, about 1750; but it was not until about 1800 that the settlers learned how to make the sirup crystallize into the clear, sandlike grains we know as "sugar" to-day. From 1800 on, the sugar industry grew rapidly. It flourished greatly in the delta regions of the Mississippi, in the extreme southern part of the state. There it soon supplanted every other crop. Not long ago the deadly mosaic (mô-zâ'ik) disease attacked Louisiana sugar cane, but with the government's help the growers are getting it well in hand. To-day just about all the sugar produced in the United States comes from Louisiana. But she has many other important crops--corn, oats, rice, cotton, hay, pecans, peanuts, white and sweet potatoes, tobacco, peaches, and pears. Tobacco has never been so important as it might be, but is widely grown.

### A Solemn Choice

In describing the first colonies of Louisiana we spoke of the coming of the first slave ship in 1719. Now as a Southern state with a large interest in cotton, Louisiana naturally became a great slaveholding state. In 1860 she had almost as many slaves as free men. When the question of slavery became the

burning issue of the day, she was clearly decided in favor of the Southern cause, and in 1861 she joined the Confederate states.

Since she was far from the actual battle front, Louisiana at first saw very little fighting on her soil. But on the battlefield

her men were famous for their reckless bravery. The "Louisiana Tigers" were one of the great regiments of the war, at Gettysburg and elsewhere. And it was not long until the Union troops brought the war to Louisiana's very door. In the early spring of 1862 Admiral David G. Farragut (fâr'â-güt) sailed up the Mississippi River, which was filled with explosive mines, past the two forts which guarded New Orleans, and destroyed a Confederate fleet of thirteen gunboats and two ironclad ships, with the loss of only a single Union vessel. As a result of this daring attack, New Orleans was soon in the hands of the Union troops. Farragut's fleet passed on up the river to Vicksburg, and by July of 1863 that city as well as Port Hudson was in Union hands. Baton Rouge had fallen in 1862, so that the state was almost wholly occupied by Union troops from 1863 to the end of the war.

After the war the period of Reconstruction was a time of strife and bitterness unequalled in the history of the state, and in fact in the history of the South as a whole. Giving Negroes the right to vote aroused tremendous opposition, because nearly all the Negroes were unable to read and write and had no understanding of national politics. The whites were afraid the tremendous colored vote would be influenced entirely by the Negroes' feeling against the white race. In-



Photo by Screen Traveler from Gend

New Orleans is one of the most colorful cities in the United States. In its old French Quarter there lingers many a reminder of the brave French and Spanish days. Houses with the fine wrought-iron balconies that you see on these old houses on St. Peter's Street are a lasting monument to their artistic French builders.

## THE HISTORY OF LOUISIANA



Photo by the Louisiana State Chamber of Commerce

Since the Department of Agriculture has been able to curb the mosaic disease which was the despair of cane growers, Louisiana has been producing more and more sugar cane. When harvest time comes, the workers—mostly Negroes—attack the cane with their curved blades, first removing the leaves and then cutting down the stalks at the base. The work is still done by hand, and the brown faces and gay costumes

of the harvest hands are set against the background of green stalks in a colorful picture. It is one of the characteristic features of Louisiana. Wagons and trucks carry the cane to great rollers which squeeze out its sweet juices. Later the juice will go to a refinery to be made into molasses and sugar, while the pith may be used for fuel or turned into fiber board. Nothing is allowed to go to waste.

stead of appealing to reason on both sides, the government tried to force the new order on Louisiana by taking the vote away from most of the white population. Several bloody riots took place between blacks and whites, and terrible hatreds were created which a little tact and common sense might have avoided in large part. The corruption of the Reconstruction government was scandalous; in the four years from 1868 to 1873 the state debt increased until every man in Louisiana owed more than \$73.00—the highest state debt per person in the land. But in 1877 the party standing for white supremacy gained control, and took practically full power into their own hands. In 1896 the feeling again grew so bitter that in many parts of the state white men armed with rifles drove all Negroes away from the voting places. But with the spread of education those old hatreds are gradually growing less violent.

### Attacking a Grave Problem

And Louisiana is gradually educating her Negroes. For a long time large numbers of them were unable to read and write—61.1

percent in 1900, 38.5 percent in 1920, and 23.3 percent in 1930 were, as we say, illiterate. Because every voter must read and write, out of 130,000 registered voters only 7,000 were Negroes, though there were almost as many Negroes as whites living in the state. This situation has brought Louisiana a great many difficult political and economic problems.

A number of most important developments are working together to remedy the situation. Foremost is the fact that Louisiana can afford to spend more money on education because her many new industries bring her larger tax receipts. With the coming of the railroads after the Civil War the development of manufacturing in Louisiana was immensely speeded up. In 1880 there were only 650 miles of railroad; but in 1900 the mileage of Louisiana was 2,800 and by 1915 it had reached more than 5,700 miles.

In mining, growth since the Civil War has been astonishing. For some twenty-five years, from about 1900 to 1924, the mines at Sulphur City in Calcasieu (kál'ká-shū) Parish led all the states of the Union, and in fact the whole world, in sulphur production. In 1924 these mines were thought to be

---

## THE HISTORY OF LOUISIANA

worked out; yet to-day they give Louisiana second rank among the states producing sulphur. In the islands and swamps on the Gulf coast are deposits of rock salt which are wonderfully rich and pure. From them the state makes several million dollars a year. But Louisiana's most important minerals by far are oil, natural gas, and natural gasoline. The oil is found mostly along the Gulf coast but comes from the north as well. Louisiana ranks second among the states in natural gas and third or fourth in oil. Shreveport is a busy refining and pumping center. Other minerals that bring the state a tidy income are sand and gravel, stone, and clay and clay products.

### An Amazing Growth

In manufacturing, the growth of Louisiana in recent years has been just as amazing. Sugar and molasses refining, lumber and timber products, food preparations, the cleaning and polishing of rice, and the manufacture of cotton by-products all keep her busy. The lumber industry is found in the western part of the state, where Lake Charles, Leesville, Westlake, Pickering, and Shreveport are all important cities. Louisiana contains immense forests of pine, cypress, cedar, red gum, oak, tupelo (tū'pê-lô), and ash, all of them yielding valuable timber. She has, also, the most profitable fur industry in the country.

### Oysters, Shrimps, Frogs, and Terrapins

Another industry which has recently come into great importance is fishing. The oysters which Louisiana catches every year are worth an enormous amount of money, and shrimps are even more valuable. In the backwoods swamps and bayous grow enormous frogs which are caught for food, and Louisiana terrapins are also famous, especially for the soup which is made of them.

Sugar refining and rice polishing are an old and a new industry which have developed together in recent years. The planting of

rice did not begin in Louisiana until after the Civil War, but then the marshes and swamps of the south and west were found to be ideal ground for this crop. Louisiana leads all the states in growing rice, with about a third of the country's crop. New Orleans is the most important city specializing in the preparation of rice. Baton Rouge (băt'ŭn rōōzh), the capital, is a great cotton and oil center and a busy refiner of sugar. As for New Orleans, where the life of the old French Quarter rubs elbows with the tremendous new developments of modern America, she is the center of all Louisiana's industries. Wheat, flour, corn, lumber, tobacco, cotton, and oil are her chief exports. Among her imports tropical fruits and coffee are the most important. She has the largest sugar refineries in the world, while the manufacture of rice, cottonseed oil and cottonseed cake, tobacco, lumber and timber, cotton goods, and machine-shop products are all busy New Orleans industries. New Orleans shares with Baton Rouge the honor of being the educational center of Louisiana; Tulane University is in New Orleans and the state university is at Baton Rouge. Finally, New Orleans is a famous winter resort. The winter tourist season every year reaches a climax in the great carnival of Mardi Gras (mar'dê gra), which ends on Shrove Tuesday, the day before Lent opens. The whole city is then a riot of color and fun. New Orleans is famous, too, for fine food.

### Building a Sound Foundation

Louisiana has always been a busy state, and to-day the bustle of her activity, in the fields and cities and along the water front, is greater than ever before. During the 1930's, with the rise of her governor Huey Long, her politics grew bitter and violent. But things are quieter now, and the war and postwar years have brought her great prosperity. Meanwhile, following her best traditions, she is helping to build a better and finer country for everyone who lives in it.



## LOUISIANA

**AREA:** 48,522 square miles—30th in rank.

**LOCATION:** Louisiana, one of the West South Central states, lies between about 29° and 33° N. Lat. and between about 89° and 94° W. Long. It is one of the Gulf states, and is bounded on the north by Arkansas, on the east by Mississippi, on the south by the Gulf of Mexico, and on the west by Texas and Oklahoma.

**PHYSICAL FEATURES:** Louisiana lies entirely in the coastal plain of the Gulf of Mexico. Part of it is made up of rocks formed from river deposits laid down under the sea, and the rest is made up of recent deposits of the Mississippi and other rivers. The average elevation of the state is only 100 ft., and the highest point—in Claiborne Parish, in the northwest—is only 469 ft. Part of New Orleans is actually 4.5 ft. below sea level. Only Delaware is more level than Louisiana. In general the land slopes from the northern boundary, where the elevation is about 400 ft., toward the southeast. Nearly half the state is made up of marsh, or of bottom land along the many rivers that wind in sluggish fashion toward the south or southeast. A belt of swamp some twenty or thirty miles wide—and in places as wide as sixty miles—extends along the coast. Wherever the water here is fresh the swamp is likely to be wooded. Besides this, all the large rivers and many of the smaller ones have broad bottom lands on either side of the stream, an area that is often overflowed at high water but is very fertile. The Mississippi is actually above the level of this lowland which it has made, for the current is constantly dropping part of its load along the banks. About 1,500 miles of levee hold the water back in flood time. Along the Mississippi the bottom lands are from ten to fifty or sixty miles wide, and along the Red River and the Ouachita about ten miles wide. A large area in the southeastern part of the state lies in the present delta of the Mississippi River. Along the coast there are a great many lagoons, or so-called "lakes," that are really only arms of the sea, and feel the effect of the tides. Among the largest of these are Lake Pontchartrain (40 m. long and 25 m. wide), Lake Maurepas, and Lake Sabine. A good deal of the marshland has been reclaimed by building dikes, and is used for rice, sugar, or cotton.

North of the belt of coastal marshes is an area of prairie that has an average elevation of 20 or 30 ft. above the sea. Here, covering the whole southwestern part of the state and scattered northward to the Red River, are broad grassy tracts, with trees growing only along the margins of the streams. North of the Red River the land rises gradually to the low plateau that stretches across the northern part of the state. The only rugged feature in this section is the row of bluffs that runs north and south through the second tier of counties west of the Mississippi.

Of course every part of the state is crossed by rivers, with their broad flood plains and bayous, or old overflow outlets. The bayous, which extend in every direction through the southern part of the state, are often important for navigation and the drainage of swamp land. The Bayou Teche, Bayou Lafourche, Bayou Plaquemine, and Atchafalaya Bayou are all well-known names. The Atchafalaya follows the old channel of the Red River. Of the rivers the Mississippi (2,470 m. long) is of course the most important. It is constantly used by boats for the whole of its course through the state—nearly 600 m.—and for much of that distance it forms the state's eastern boundary. The Red River (1,018 m. long) is another navigable stream; it crosses the state from Texas to join the Mississippi. The Sabine (380 m. long) forms part of Louisiana's western boundary, and is in constant use as a waterway as it makes its way to the Gulf of Mexico from its headwaters in Texas. In the northeastern part of the state the Ouachita (605 m.

long) picks up a large number of smaller streams as it comes down from Arkansas to join the Red River; and in the east the Pearl (490 m. long) receives the drainage of the southeastern corner of Louisiana as it flows along the border between that state and Mississippi, where it rises. The Calcasieu (200 m. long) drains a small area in the southwest. Louisiana is a state with a heavy rainfall and so has a great many rivers of her own, as well as those that flow across her from other states on their way to the sea. All together she has 4,794 miles of navigable waterway, 3,771 miles of it in her rivers and the rest in bayous. She has built a number of canals to connect various parts of her waterways. Of these the New Orleans Industrial Canal, opened in 1923, is the most important. It joins the Mississippi River and Lake Pontchartrain, to the north, and opens up 96,000 acres that can be used for harbor sites by the city of New Orleans. It is 5.5 miles long. The Intracoastal Waterway, averaging 100 feet in width and 9 feet in depth, skirts the Gulf Coast from Corpus Christi, Texas, to Florida. Since it lies inside the outer rim of marsh and islands along the shore it gives a passage without danger from the sea to small craft throughout its entire length. It offers Louisiana a cheap shipping route for bulky goods along the Gulf in either direction. A good many small lakes are scattered through the state along the course of rivers. They were formed when old oxbow bends in the stream were cut through by the river's current, leaving a small body of water in the old stream bed. All together Louisiana has 3,097 square miles of water, and a good deal of irrigated land, almost entirely devoted to the growing of rice. The water hyacinth spreads a tight network in slow streams.

**CLIMATE:** Louisiana has a semitropical climate, and for the most part a very even one, for the nearness of the Gulf and the state's many rivers and bayous keep temperatures from going very high, and the southerly latitude keeps them from going very low. In some places soils that are light allow of more rapid evaporation and so tend to produce lower temperatures at night but otherwise the differences inside the state are only those that would naturally come as one travels north or reached a higher elevation. The winds are mostly from the Gulf, and are of great help in cooling the air when they spring up on an afternoon in summer. In the extreme southeast the mean annual temperature is 70° F.; in the northeast it is 65°. Most of the state has a mean July temperature of from 81° to 83°, but the mean January temperature varies from 46° in the north to 56° in the south. Along the coast there are only a few days in the year when the thermometer goes below freezing. New Orleans has a mean January temperature of 54°, and a mean July temperature of 82°. Its record high is 102°, and its record low 7°. The whole state has abundant rainfall, though the western edge is drier than other parts. The heaviest rains come in the southeast, where New Orleans has had as much as 85.5 inches in a year, though her average is 57.5 inches. The average for the state is 55 inches.

**INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING:** The more important institutions in the state are Centenary College at Shreveport, Louisiana College at Pineville, Louisiana Polytechnic Institute at Ruston, Louisiana State University at Baton Rouge, Loyola University at New Orleans, Northwestern State College at Natchitoches, Southeastern Louisiana College at Hammond, Southwestern Louisiana Institute at Lafayette, and Tulane University at New Orleans. Outstanding for Negroes are Dillard and Xavier universities at New Orleans, Southern University at Scotlandville, and the state normal institute at Grambling.

**CHARITIES AND CORRECTION:** Louisiana maintains schools of correction at Monroe, Pineville, and



## LOUISIANA—Continued

Baton Rouge, and a penitentiary at Angola; general hospitals at New Orleans, Shreveport, Independence, Pineville, Lafayette, Monroe, and Bogalusa; a mental institution at Jackson and two at Pineville; and a school for the handicapped at Alexandria, two at Scotlandville, and two at Baton Rouge.

A national leprosarium, or sanatorium for lepers, is at Carville.

**POLITICAL FACTS:** Since its admission to the Union in 1812 Louisiana has had ten constitutions. The present one was adopted in 1921. The state has found it a problem to adapt her early laws and institutions to the customs of American democracy and at the same time to handle her racial problems. Her numerous constitutions reflect the changes that have taken place. Laws are made by a state legislature consisting of two houses. These are a Senate that contains 39 members and a House of Representatives that contains 100 members. All members of the Legislature are elected for four-year terms. Sessions of sixty days are held in alternate years. The law provides that each parish must have at least one representative in the House of Representatives.

The governor, elected for four years, is the chief executive. He must be at least thirty years of age. All state officials are chosen for four years.

The judiciary is headed by a supreme court made up of a chief justice and six associates, all elected for fourteen-year terms. Members of the supreme court must be over thirty-five years of age and must have practiced law in the state for ten years preceding their election. The courts of appeal are made up of three judges each. These judges serve for twelve years and must have practiced law in the state for at least six years before their election. The state is divided into twenty-eight judicial districts in which courts are held, with a district judge presiding. He serves a six-year term. Juvenile courts, courts presided over by justices of the peace, and certain special courts complete the system. The parish of Orleans has a court of appeals made up of three judges.

Voters must be over twenty-one, must have been actual residents of the state for two years, of the parish for one year, and of the precinct for three months, and must be able to pass a specified literacy test.

The unit of local government is the parish, which corresponds to the county in other states. The legislature has the power to establish and organize new parishes, which must contain at least 625 square miles and not less than 7,000 inhabitants. The "parish" organization dates back to 1807, and originated in an earlier Spanish division of the province. This earlier division was made for religious purposes, a fact that explains the large number of parishes that are named for saints.

A general law regulating the adoption of a commission form of government applies to towns of more than 2,500 inhabitants.

Louisiana is the only state in the Union with a legal system that is not based entirely on English common law. When the United States took over the region from France the only change that was made in the Spanish code of laws under which the colony had long been governed was the addition of the Anglo-Saxon jury system. At this time the influence of French law—as embodied in the Code Napoléon in France—was very strong, for the people were largely French.

But there was little basic difference between French and Spanish law. The result is that Louisiana has a mixture of English and Latin law. The civil system is primarily Latin.

The capital of Louisiana is at Baton Rouge.

**PARKS:** Chalmette National Historical Park in St. Bernard County marks the spot where the Battle of New Orleans was fought.

Louisiana has 1,274,060 acres of national forest.

**GAME AND BIRD RESERVATIONS:** Breton Island Refuge for birds, Tern Island Refuge for birds, and Delta Refuge for birds, fur-bearing animals, and alligators are all in Plaquemines Parish. Lacassine and Sabine refuges, both in Cameron Parish, protect birds and fur-bearing animals. East Timbalier Island Reservation in Terrebonne Parish and Shell Keys Refuge in Iberia Parish protect birds.

**NAME:** The great province of Louisiana, which originally included all the Mississippi Valley, was named by La Salle in 1682 in honor of Louis XIV, king of France. The termination "ana" was used in France in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries to denote "of" or "belonging to." The "i" was inserted to make the word more musical. The word "Louis" can be traced back through the Latin "cluo" and through the Greek to the ancient Sanskrit. All the meanings attached to it convey the idea of making a noise, with the secondary idea of fame or renown. Clovis, Ludwig, Lewis, and other related names have sprung from the same source.

**NICKNAME:** Louisiana is called the Creole State because of the large number of its inhabitants who are Creoles—that is, descended from early French and Spanish settlers. It is called the Pelican State because the pelican is common there, so common as to have been used on the coat of arms. Because it produces sugar it is sometimes called the Sugar State.

The people of Louisiana are called Creoles and Pelicans.

**STATE FLOWER:** Magnolia; approved in 1900.

**STATE SONG:** "Song of Louisiana," composed by Vashti Robertson Stopher; adopted in 1932.

**STATE FLAG:** A solid blue field bearing in the center the state coat of arms in white and beneath it a ribbon upon which is the state motto in blue lettering. The coat of arms consists of a pelican feeding its young.

**STATE MOTTO:** "Union, Justice, and Confidence."

**STATE BIRD:** The American brown pelican, though it has never been adopted by legislative action, has been accepted as the state bird and is used as part of the coat of arms on the state seal.

**INTERESTING FACTS:** Louisiana observes New Year's Day, Washington's Birthday, Good Friday, Independence Day, Labor Day, Columbus Day, General Election Day, Armistice Day, Thanksgiving Day, Christmas Day, the anniversary of the Battle of New Orleans on Jan. 8, Lee's Birthday on Jan. 19, Huey Long's on Aug. 30, and All Saints' Day on Nov. 1.

Louisiana has the Chitimacha Indian Reservation in St. Mary's Parish; it is the home of a small number of Chitimacha Indians.

# LOUISIANA—Continued

Population of state,  
1940, 2,363,880

## Counties

Acadia (E6) . 46,260  
Allen (D5) . 17,540  
Ascension (H6) . 21,215  
Assumption (G7) 18,541  
Avoyelles (F4) 39,256

Beauregard (C5) 14,847  
Bienville (C2) . 23,933  
Bossier (B1) . 33,162

Cadido (B1) . 150,203  
Calcasieu (C6) . 56,506  
Caldwell (E2) . 12,046  
Cameron (C7) . 7,203  
Catahoula (F3) . 14,618  
Claiborne (D1) . 29,855  
Concordia (F4) . 14,562

De Sota (B2) . 31,803

East Baton Rouge (G5) . 88,415  
East Carroll (G1) . 19,023  
East Feliciana (G5) . 18,039  
Evangeline (E5) . 30,497

Franklin (F2) . 32,382

Grant (D3) . 15,933

Iberia (F7) . 37,183

Iberville (G6) . 27,721

Jackson (D2) . 17,807

Jefferson (J7) . 50,427

Jefferson Davis (D6) . 24,191

Lafayette (E6) . 43,941

Lafourche (H7) . 38,615

La Salle (E3) . 10,959

Lincoln (D1) . 24,790

Livingston (H5) . 17,790

Madison (G2) . 18,443

Morehouse (F1) . 27,571

Natchitoches (C3) . 40,997

Orleans (K6) . 494,537

Ouachita (E2) . 59,168

Plaquemines (K7) . 12,318

Pointe Coupee (F5) . 24,004

Rapides (D4) . 73,370

Red River (C2) . 15,881

Richland (F2) . 28,829

Sabine (B3) . 23,586

St. Bernard (H7) . 7,280

St. Charles (J7) . 12,321

St. Helena (H5) . 9,542

St. James (H6) . 16,596

St. John the Baptist (H6) . 14,766

St. Landry (F5) . 71,481

St. Martin (F6) . 26,394

St. Mary (F7) . 31,458

St. Tammany (J5) . 23,624

Tangipahoa (J5) . 45,511

Tensas (G3) . 15,940

Terrebonne (H8) . 35,880

Union (E1) . 20,943

Vermilion (E7) . 37,750

Vernon (C4) . 19,142

Washington (J5) . 34,443

Webster (C1) . 33,676

West Baton Rouge (G5) . 11,263

West Carroll (G1) . 19,252  
West Feliciana (G5) . 11,720  
Winn (D3) . 16,923

## Cities, Towns, and Villages

[Places marked with an asterisk (\*) were classified as urban in 1940]

Abbeville \* (E7) . 6,672  
Abita Springs (J5) . 528  
Alexandria \* (E4) . 27,066  
Angie (K5) . 187  
Arcadia (D1) . 1,601  
Arnaudville (F5) . 640  
Athens (C1) . 491

Baldwin (F7) . 984  
Basil (D6) . 1,132  
Baskin (F2) . 130  
Bastrop \* (F1) . 6,626  
Baton Rouge \* (B6) . 34,719

Benton (B1) . 517  
Bernice (D1) . 1,071  
Berwick (G7) . 1,906  
Bienville (D2) . 357  
Bogalusa \* (K5) . 14,604

Bonita (F1) . 422  
Bossier City \* (B1) . 5,786

Boyce (D4) . 732  
Breaux Bridge (F6) . 1,668

Broussard (F6) . 791  
Brusly Landing (G6) . 433

Bryceland (D2) . 139  
Bunkie \* (E5) . 3,575

Campiti (C3) . 1,004  
Carencro (E6) . 914

Castor (C2) . 244  
Chatham (E2) . 605  
Cheneyville (F4) . 913

Choudrant (D2, E2) . 438  
Church Point (E6) . 1,892

Clinton (G5) . 998  
Collfax (D3) . 1,354

Collinston (F1) . 482  
Columbia (E2) . 947

Converse (B3) . 314  
Cottonport (E5) . 1,196

Coushatta (C2) . 1,289  
Covington \* (J6) . 4,123

Crowley \* (E6) . 9,523  
Delcambre (F7) . 1,255

Delhi (F2) . 1,192  
Denham Springs (H6) . 1,233

De Quincy \* (C6) . 3,252  
De Ridder \* (C5) . 3,750

Dodson (D2) . 442  
Donaldsonville \* (H6) . 3,889

Dubach (D1) . 749  
Duson (E6) . 463

Elton (D5, D6) . 901  
Erath (E7) . 1,408

Eros (E2) . 289  
Estherwood (E6) . 539

Eunice \* (E5) . 5,242  
Evergreen (E5) . 384

Farmerville (E1) . 1,428  
Ferriday \* (F3) . 2,857

Forest Hill (D4) . 302  
Franklin \* (H7) . 4,274

Franklinton (J5) . 1,579  
Gibbsland (C1) . 1,023

Gilbert (F2) . 428

Glenmora (D5) . 1,352  
Goldonna (D2) . 256  
Grand Cane (B2) . 377  
Grand Coteau (E6) . 662  
Grayson (E2) . 407  
Greensburg (H5) . 389  
Gretna \* (J7) . 10,879  
Grosse Tete (G6) . 382  
Gueydan (E6) . 1,506

Hammond \* (J6) . 6,033  
Harrisonburg (F3) . 422

Haughton (B1) . 409  
Haynesville (C1) . 2,418

Hodge (D2) . 1,445  
Homer \* (C1) . 3,497  
Hornbeck (C4) . 481

Houma \* (H7) . 9,052  
Independence (J5) . 1,498

Iota (E6) . 1,000  
Jackson \* (G5) . 5,384

Jeanerette \* (F7) . 3,362  
Jena (F3) . 946  
Jennings \* (D6) . 7,343

Jonesboro \* (D2) . 2,639  
Jonesville (F3) . 2,080  
Junction City \* (D1, E1) . 355

Kaplan \* (E6) . 2,838  
Kenner (J7) . 2,375

Kentwood (H5) . 1,854  
Kinder (D1) . 1,415  
Krotz Springs (F5) . 630

Lafayette \* (E6) . 19,210  
Lake Arthur (D6) . 2,131

Lake Charles \* (C6) . 21,207  
Lake Providence \* (G1) . 3,711

Lecompte (F4) . 1,311  
Leesville \* (F5) . 2,829

Leonville (F6) . 451  
Lockport (H7) . 877

Logansport (B3) . 1,222  
Longstreet (B2) . 263

Loreauville (F6) . 490  
Lutcher (H6) . 2,167

McNary (D5) . 151  
Madisonville (J6) . 915

Mamou (E5) . 1,379  
Mandeville (J6) . 1,326

Mangham (F2) . 572  
Mansfield \* (B2) . 4,065

Mansura (E4) . 1,138  
Many (C3) . 1,474

Marion (E1) . 481  
Marksville (E4) . 1,811

Martha (C3) . 243  
Maurice (E6) . 420

Melville (F5) . 1,828  
Mermonteau (D6) . 571

Mer Rouge (F1) . 713  
Merryville (H5) . 1,216

Minden \* (C1) . 6,677  
Monroe \* (E1) . 28,309

Montgomery (D3) . 495  
Mooringsport (B1) . 748

Moreauville (F4) . 815  
Morgan City \* (G7) . 6,969

Morganza (F5) . 744  
Morse (D6) . 742

Mound (G2) . 145  
Napoleonville (G7) . 1,301

Natchitoches \* (C3) . 6,812

Newellton (G2) . 789

New Iberia \* (F6) . 13,747  
New Orleans \* (J7) . 494,537  
New Roads (G5) . 2,255  
Noble (B3) . 238

Oakdale \* (D5) . 3,933  
Oak Grove (G1) . 1,654

Oak Ridge (F1) . 373  
Oberlin (D5) . 962

Olla (E3) . 691  
Opelousas \* (E5) . 8,980

Palmetto (F5) . 444  
Parks (F6) . 460

Patterson (G7) . 1,800  
Pearl River (K6) . 612

Pineville \* (E4) . 4,297  
Plain Dealing (B1) . 1,085

Plaquemine \* (G6) . 5,049  
Plaucheville (F5) . 367

Pleasant Hill (B3) . 737  
Pollock (E3) . 317

Ponchatoula \* (J6) . 4,001  
Port Allen (G6) . 1,898

Port Barre (F5) . 850  
Quitman (D2) . 212

Rayne \* (E6) . 4,974  
Rayville (F2) . 2,412

Rieves (C5) . 120  
Runggold (C2) . 1,006

Robeline (C3) . 355  
Roseland (H5) . 873

Rosepine (C5) . 407  
Ruston \* (D1) . 7,107

St. Francisville (G5) . 821  
St. Joseph (G3) . 1,096

St. Martinville \* (F6) . 3,504  
Saline (D2) . 381

Scott (E6) . 407  
Shreveport \* (B2) . 98,167

Sibley (C1) . 405  
Simmsport (F5) . 1,215

Slaughter (C5) . 306  
Sidell \* (K6) . 2,864

South Mansfield (B2, B3) . 433  
Springhill \* (C1) . 2,822

Sulphur \* (F6) . 3,504  
Sunset (E6) . 630

Tallulah \* (G2) . 5,712  
Tangipahoa (J5) . 319

Thibodaux \* (H7) . 5,851  
Tioga (E4) . 1,300

Tullos (E3) . 589  
Varnado (K5) . 315

Vidalia (G3) . 1,318  
Ville Platte \* (F5) . 3,721

Vinton (B6) . 1,787  
Vivian (B1) . 2,460

Walker (H5) . 424  
Washington (E5) . 1,264

Waterproof (G3) . 592  
Welsh (D6) . 1,822

West Monroe \* (E1) . 8,560  
Westwego \* (J7) . 4,992

White Castle (G6) . 1,692  
Winnfield \* (D3) . 4,512

Winnboro \* (F2) . 2,834

Wisner (F3) . 617

Youngsville (E6) . 647

Zachary (G5) . 730

Zwolle (B3) . 1,500

<sup>1</sup> Population of Junction City, in Union County, Arkansas, 797 in 1940

---

# **The HISTORY of MAINE**

---

## **Reading Unit**

### **No. 18**

## **MAINE: THE PINE TREE STATE**

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

### **Interesting Facts Explained**

Where the Red Paint People lived, 8-148

The Indian tribes in Maine, 8-150-51

When the French first settled in Maine, 8-151

Maine, the first state to give a home to settlers, 8-151

Why Maine was not one of the "original states" of the Union, 8-153

How Maine's magnificent trees were used, 8-153

The first ship built in the colonies, 8-153

Maine, the vacation state, 8-155

### **Things to Think About**

What do we know about the Red Paint People?

Who was the first white man to discover the Maine coast?

How did "New England" get its name?

What surprised the Pilgrims when they landed at Plymouth

in 1620?

Which are the oldest towns in Maine?

Why did Maine turn to ship-building?

Which industries have failed in Maine?

### **Picture Hunt**

Which great cathedral was built recently? 8-151

What kinds of crops can be grown in Maine? 8-152-53

### **Related Material**

Who made the first steamboats? 10-218-20

How successful were the Vikings at shipbuilding? 10-166

How are logs sliced up into boards in sawmills? 9-255

How many trees are cut down each year to make lead pen-

cils? 9-258

The wealth of the great woods, 9-245-58

Why Americans do not speak French, 7-135-39

A famous son of Maine, 13-301-3

### **Practical Applications**

How was the white pine from the Maine forests used? 8-153

How did Maine's water power

help her to overcome industrial failures? 8-154

### **Leisure-time Activities**

PROJECT NO. 1: Read Long-fellow's "The Building of the Ship."

PROJECT NO. 2: Draw a map of Maine and mark on it the chief towns and rivers, 8-154.

---

## THE HISTORY OF MAINE

---



The capitol of the Pine Tree State is built of Maine's excellent granite. It occupies a prominent position in

Augusta, a city that is well known for the many periodicals that are published there.

### MAINE: *the Pine Tree State*

*In That Corner of Our Country Which Lies Farthest East  
the Visitor Finds a Beauty and an Individuality  
Which Lure Him Back Again and Again*

**T**HOUSANDS of years ago there lived in the northeast tip of our land an interesting and mysterious people. We know almost nothing about them. Their name, their language, their looks, their way of life, whence they came and whither they went—all are gone forever. But we know that once they were there, for they left their graves behind them. And learned men have given them a name; they are called the Red Paint People.

They must have been rather skillful in a good many ways. They knew nothing about the use of metal, but they made beautiful implements of stone, which they sometimes polished and decorated with delicate parallel lines running diagonally, often not more than a thirty-second of an inch apart. Many of their tools were ground to a fine sharp edge, and some are of a type not found elsewhere in

the world. No one knows where those ancient craftsmen could have got the flint and other stones that certain of their tools and weapons were made of.

So far as we can tell they knew nothing about the bow and arrow, but they have left knives and fearsome six-sided spearheads that are sometimes over sixteen inches long. Various of their sharp edged tools—gouges, hatchets, and the like—show that they were able workers in wood, and must have known how to make dugouts, bowls, implements of various kinds, and to carve themselves gods or totem poles. A certain number of long round stone needles, smooth and slender and sometimes without a hole, suggest that these long-forgotten men could make useful articles of skin or leather. It is harder to guess what use they found for the many stone pendants; some are round, some pear-shaped,

## THE HISTORY OF MAINE

and some long and flat, but all are made to carry a string. On the other hand it is easy to tell that certain kinds of stones were used for striking fire.

Whatever we know about this vanished people we have learned from their graves. In fact it is from their graves that they get their curious name. For a long time no one was able to account for the collections of stone objects which were found from time to time buried some thirty or forty inches beneath the surface of the earth. With the tools there was always a large quantity of bright red ocher (*ō'kêr*), a substance used in making paint. Finally bone dust and fragments of human bone were discovered in certain of the finds, and then learned men realized that they had here the graves of a very ancient people. From the ocher found in every grave they named the race the Red Paint People.

### The Mystery of a Vanished Race

Just how many years ago these long-vanished men lived in south-central Maine it is hard to say. They either were very numerous or they lived there a very long time, for already a good many of their cemeteries have been found—always near rivers. These burial places are most numerous along the Penobscot, but they have been discovered on the Kennebec and the Union, and on Pemaquid Pond, Bluehill Bay, and Frenchman's Bay. The people must have lived farther down in the valleys, for except in one instance no trace of their villages has been found. What could happen to wipe them out so completely? No one can surely say. Certainly they did not merge with any other people. But a very shrewd guess as to the fate that overtook them has been made by men skilled to decipher the history of the rocks. We can only trace that history in

outline here, and much must be filled in.

At the present day Maine, like the rest of New England, is a country of rugged uplands that gradually diminish in height until they reach the sea in the shape of bold headlands or pointed capes. Into these uplands the rivers have worn deep valleys, and above the upland level rise, here and there, rugged peaks, called monadnocks (*mô-nād'nôk*), which, as in the case of Mt. Katahdin (5,267 feet), may be nearly a mile high.

Everywhere are picturesque lakes and winding rivers and other signs that a glacier has passed this way.

Now these uplands are really the northern end of a belt of very hard and ancient rocks that reaches south as far as Alabama and forms the eastern section of the great Appalachian (*ăp'ă-lă'chî-ăn*) mountain system. Once they were much higher than they are to-day—as high as the peaks that rise above them. But busy rivers wore them down to a level plain, leaving only certain areas of more resistant rock standing out as

hills above the surrounding country. Then the whole region was lifted up, and rivers set to work once more to carve out valleys in the level upland. They had made excellent progress when their speed was arrested by the sinking of the whole region. Now the sea came in over the land and reached far up the river valleys in the form of estuaries (*ēs'chû-ă-rî*). What had been heights of land between the valleys now reached out as capes and promontories (*prôm'ûn-tô-rî*) into the sea. Detached hills were surrounded by water and turned into islands. That lowering of the land is what has given to Maine her very irregular coast line, her many excellent harbors, and her fine scenery. For though it is only 225 miles as the crow flies from one end of the Maine coast to the other, the actual length of the shore line is 2,500 miles.



This attractive building is part of the University of Maine, which is situated in the town of Orono, not far from Bangor. Other well-known colleges in Maine are Bowdoin, Bates, and Colby.

## THE HISTORY OF MAINE



Photo by Maine Development Comm.

Maine's fishermen have 2,400 miles of beautiful coastal waters in which to ply their romantic trade. The deeply indented coast line, considered so pic-

turesque by artists and summer visitors, has given rise to many useful harbors. One of these, with fishing boats tied up at the wharf, is shown here.

This sinking of the land has come in what learned men would call comparatively recent times. It was going on during the glacial period, when the ice was gouging out the valleys, scraping the fertile soil away from the rocks, and dumping mounds of rock and gravel in unexpected places. Later the land was elevated again, and then lowered to its present level, but it is thought that there has been little change in that level during the last three to five thousand years.

### The Red Paint People Are Lost

And now we come to the lost Red Paint People. We know that they did not live in Maine until after the glacier took its leave, but we know too that their graves must be several thousand years old. Is it not possible, learned men ask, that they may have had their homes far down in the river valleys, on lands that are now well under the sea? Those waves creeping upward year by year would have driven them back and back and have led them to move the graves of their dead well up out of reach of the water. And there are in fact signs that they made just some such wholesale removal of whole cemeteries—they must have believed in life after death, and since they probably wor-

shipped their ancestors, they would want to keep the graves unharmed. What accounted for the final disappearance of the race no one can say. It has been suggested that an earthquake caused by the raising and lowering of the earth's crust may have sent a tidal wave rushing up over the land and so have wiped them all out. But that is only a guess. The Red Paint People are lost, and their story is gone forever.

### The Red Men of Maine

When white men came to Maine the Indians were in possession—the Passamaquoddies (pās'ā-mā-kwōd'ī) on the St. Croix River, the Penobscots (pē-nōb'skōt) on the river bearing their name, and the Norridgewocks (nōr'īj-wōk) on the Kennebec. They belonged to the Abnaki (āb-nā'kī) tribe, and were part of the great Algonquian (āl-gōn'kī-ān) group which we have described in our story of Wisconsin. It is thought to have been the doughty John Cabot who first discovered this picturesque coast (1498) and claimed it for the English king; but he was followed by a little procession of other explorers, all of them hoping to find that much-sought-for Northwest Passage to the Orient, and all of them impressed by the riches to be

## THE HISTORY OF MAINE

taken from the forests and coastal waters of the new land. The Frenchman Cartier (kâr'tyā') had landed in Canada in 1535 and had claimed this whole coast for the French king. Thereafter French fishing vessels had come in increasing numbers, sometimes as many as 150 in a year, for then as now they found a valuable catch; and the Indians were glad to trade their beaver and otter skins for the wares the Europeans had to offer.

But it was not until 1604 that the French actually made their first settlement. One Sieur de Monts (syûr dē mōN) had been given a royal charter to all the land from what is now Philadelphia north to Cape Breton Island. At once he sailed to settle seventy-nine French colonists in his new domain, which the King had named Acadia. With him as lieutenant went the brave Champlain (shām'plān'). They planted a settlement in the summer of 1604 on St. Croix Island in the St. Croix (kroi) River. The little community had to stand a winter that was bitter even for Maine, and the minister and the priest—the settlement was founded in religious liberty—had a sorry task burying half the population, who died of scurvy. The colony was moved to Nova Scotia the next summer. In 1613 an expedition from Virginia destroyed the buildings that had been put up, but in 1798 the ruins that were still left helped to shed light on a boundary dispute between England and the United States by establishing beyond a doubt just what river it was that had seen that first settlement.

### The Mission on Mt. Desert

The same expedition from Virginia also captured and destroyed a fort that Jesuit (jĕz'û-It) missionaries had built (1609) on Mt. Desert Island. This mission was the only other French effort to gain a foothold on the Maine coast.

The English were more persistent. Both Champlain and an Englishman named George Weymouth (wā'mouth) had explored the coast in 1605, and Weymouth had carried home glowing reports. In 1607 the Plymouth Company, a group of English merchants, sent over 120 settlers who planted a colony at what is now Popham (pöp'ām) Beach, at the mouth of the Kennebec (kĕn'ĕ-bĕk) River. George Popham, their leader, died, and in 1608 the settlement came to an end; but the people of Maine can remember with pride that theirs was the first of the New England states to give a home to settlers.

Meanwhile English fishermen were coming constantly to fish in Maine waters, and often stayed the winter on Monhegan (mōn-hĕ'gān) Island. Though no permanent settlement had been planted Englishmen were always about. In 1614 Captain John Smith of Virginia sailed up the coast, planted a vegetable garden on Monhegan, and named the whole section New England. And English it was becoming to such an extent that when the Pilgrims landed at Plymouth in 1620 they were amazed to hear their own language on the lips of Samoset (sām'ō-set), the Indian chief who wel-



Photo by Maine Development Comm.

Out of the walls of this granite quarry at Vinalhaven, Maine, were hewn the tremendous pillars of the cathedral of St. John the Divine in New York City. Those who associate the building of great cathedrals with the Middle Ages only, have forgotten that this one, one of the largest in the world, is still not quite completed.

## THE HISTORY OF MAINE



Photo by Maine Development Comm

The fruit on display here does not seem to have suffered one whit from a short season, for in spite of her short

summers and severe winters, Maine is able to grow successfully several kinds of crops.

comed them. When they ran out of food they sent up for supplies to the English fishermen on Monhegan and were not denied. That little island is still a home for men who get their living from the sea.

### The Oldest Towns in Maine

It was in 1622 that Sir Ferdinando Gorges (gôr'jēs) and Captain John Mason were given a charter to the land between the Merrimack and the Kennebec, and in this new "Province of Maine," York (1624), Saco (sô'kō), Biddeford (bīd'ē-fērd), Falmouth—which later became Portland—and various other permanent settlements soon followed. In 1629 Gorges and Mason divided their territory between them. Gorges took the land between the Kennebec and the Piscataqua (pī's'kâ-tō'kwâ) and called it the county of Somerset; and Mason took the portion farther south and called it the county of New Hampshire.

Meanwhile Massachusetts was looking enviously at the land to the north, with its fish and forests and furs. There was a steady trickle of emigrants from her own colony to the sister colony—independent folk who sought in the Church of England settlements

of Maine the religious liberty that the stern Puritans denied them. A convenient interpretation of her charter made it possible for Massachusetts to claim nearly all of the Province of Maine, and bit by bit she annexed it until by 1658 she owned it all. A little later she added the land as far as the Penobscot, and by a new charter in 1691 the whole country, as far as the St. Croix River, became part of the Province of Massachusetts.

### The Valiant Men of Maine

Since the French claimed the territory between the St. Croix and the Penobscot, there were some stormy times ahead, in which Maine men fought valiantly, sending two successful expeditions (1690 and 1745) into Canada. They fought just as valiantly in the Revolutionary War; more than a thousand of them were with Washington that winter at Valley Forge. Falmouth was destroyed for refusing to ship England timber, Penobscot Bay was taken, and the little village of Machias (mâ-chī'ās), having captured two British ships, proceeded to stand off an attack from four more (1777), and fighting shoulder to shoulder with forty Passamaquoddy Indians, drove the fleet



## THE HISTORY OF MAINE

away. But because Maine was a part of Massachusetts, she was not one of the original states when the new government was set up.

From now on it became more and more clear that Maine and Massachusetts must sooner or later part company, but it was not until 1820 that the District of Maine became a separate state. She still disputed hotly for what she felt to be her rights in the long-drawn-out boundary contest between the United States and Great Britain, and at one time (1839) even girded herself for battle. But the "Aroostook War" was never fought, and in 1842 the Webster-Ashburton Treaty put an end to the dispute.

All this time Maine had been busily at work. As years went by, the fur trade naturally fell off, but the mother country's need of timber had been steadily increasing—in fact one of England's chief reasons for wanting territory in the New World had been her eagerness to supplement her own fast vanishing forests. For timber was as necessary to the people of Queen Elizabeth's day as coal and oil are to us. It was used for fuel and for building, but most important of all, it was used for ships—and England's navy was the very backbone of her power.

### The First Sawmill in America

So Maine's magnificent forests began to fall before the woodsman, to be made into boats. Her white pine gave the tallest and straightest masts to be found anywhere in the world. Every tree two feet in diameter or over was marked with an arrow and so set aside for the king. The first sawmill in America was built near York in 1623, and the next half century saw the building of twenty-four mills in Maine alone. Before

the Revolution most of the timber was shipped from Falmouth, but later Bangor (băn'gôr) became the world's largest timber port.

By 1830 Maine was producing more timber than any other state, and our own day has seen a still larger output, though other states have surpassed her. Maine produces over a million cords of pulpwood yearly and has a vast industry in the manufacture of all

kinds of paper, as well as in the making of an amazing number of small articles of wood. Her rivers give her abundant water power to operate the power plants from which electricity is carried to a multitude of factories, large and small, in cities and towns and little villages.

Nor has Maine wasted her timber as many other states have. As early as 1656 she began to

conserve her fine stands of spruce, fir, pine, cedar, hemlock, and various hard woods, and she figures that thanks to her program of reforestation her forests are now increasing rather than diminishing. Over four-fifths of her area is forest land, and wood is her greatest source of wealth. That is why she is called the Pine Tree State.

It will be easy to see that with their magnificent supply of timber and their many excellent harbors the staunch Maine folk, so many of whom were fishermen, should early have turned to shipbuilding. As early as 1608 the settlement at Popham built and launched a ship, the "Virginia of Sagadahoc" (săg'ă-dă-hôk'), the first ship to be built in the English colonies. It rode the waves for twenty years, and was the ancestress of many a fine sailing vessel that for 250 years made the shipyards of the Maine coast—and especially of Bath and Kittery—famous along the whole Atlantic seaboard. The coming of



Photo by Maine Development Council

Maine's richest land lies in Aroostook County, in the valley of the St. John and its tributaries. This is a view of one of the county's vast potato fields, which covers more than a hundred acres.

---

## THE HISTORY OF MAINE

---

iron ships dimmed their glory, though Kittery still boasts the Portsmouth Navy Yard and Bath has a thriving shipbuilding industry.

Maine has had other industries that have failed her. For a long time she manufactured large quantities of rum from the molasses her ships brought home from the West Indies in exchange for their cargoes of lumber and fish. But in 1884 she put an end to the industry when she passed her prohibition law. In the late nineteenth century she had four hundred tanneries, in which her own hemlock bark was used for the process; now she has four, for new methods of tanning have been invented, and the industry has gone elsewhere. In the olden days her lakes and streams yielded a huge crop of ice every winter, and the sale of it in states farther south netted a handsome profit. To-day artificial ice has largely replaced the product of Jack Frost, and Maine's thriving industry has passed away.

But the Maine Yankee is ingenious, and has not found it necessary to sit with folded hands because he was thrown out of work in two or three lines. Early in the nineteenth century he began to use the water power that Nature had so generously provided in the many rivers, with their frequent rapids and falls. To-day Maine ranks high as a manufacturing state. Fifty percent of her water power is still undeveloped; so she has a fine industrial career before her, with no cause to lament the fact that Nature gave her no coal and very little iron.

### What Are Maine's Chief Cities?

Millinocket with its paper mills; Lewiston and Waterville with their factories for making cotton and woolen goods; Sanford with manufactures of clothing, rugs, carpets, and other textiles; Biddeford with mills for making blankets; Auburn, on the Androscoggin (än'drös-kög'in) River, Bangor, and Augusta with boot and shoe factories; Bath with shipbuilding, and Eastport and Lubec (lū'bēk) with huge plants for canning sardines—these are only a few of the manufacturing towns. Augusta, the capital, is known as the home of a large number of periodicals.

Portland, the largest city, is not only the chief manufacturing center but a port where

goods are shipped abroad and where boats sail regularly for various Atlantic ports. Longfellow was born here and roamed its fine tree-shaded streets.

Maine is well served by railroads, and the Kennebec and Penobscot are navigable for some distance. The St. John River, draining Maine's gentle northern slope, is her only sluggish river.

### The Valley of the Peaceful St. John

Agriculture has never been Maine's chief occupation. The glacier robbed her of most of her rich top soil and left instead a mixture of clay and boulders which it packed down firmly into a stony substance in which little could be made to grow. But in Aroostook (ä-rōös'tōök) County, in the valley of the St. John and its tributaries, is some of the richest land in New England. There Maine raises an enormous crop of potatoes, her chief agricultural product. Of course the winters are very cold, and the summers too short and cool for many sorts of crops; but there is plenty of moisture—both rain and fog—to make things grow, and as a result Maine raises many garden vegetables to perhaps finer perfection than any other state. Her sweet corn and peas are unusually sweet, and are canned and shipped all over the land. Blueberries, beans, apples, and a variety of vegetables are marketed in this way. Hay, corn, oats, and buckwheat are other crops.

Maine cans a great many fish, too—especially lobsters, clams, and the increasingly popular Maine sardines; and her catch of other fish, such as cod, hake, haddock, smelts, and mackerel, is very valuable. The coast is dotted with little fishing villages, where, as for the past three centuries, salty fishermen lead lives that are one long contest with the treacherous sea.

### A Famous Island Quarry

Building stones—granite, limestone, and slate—are the state's principal mineral output, though the tourmaline and beryl found in Oxford County, the mineral waters bottled at various places, and clay to be used for building purposes are all valuable. Much of the limestone is made into lime. Maine granite is highly prized, and is taken from

## THE HISTORY OF MAINE

many places, especially along the coast. On Vinalhaven Island were quarried the great granite pillars for the cathedral of St. John the Divine in New York City. Sand and gravel, feldspar, peat, mica, quartz, and slate are other mineral products.

### Trout, Salmon, Moose, and Deer

One of Maine's most famous industries has been developed since 1870. She is known far and wide as a vacation state. Her cool summer climate, her magnificent coast, her 2,222 lakes and ponds, her woods, her mountains, her quaint villages, and her clear swift streams—all tempt summer visitors. Colonies of artists, of writers, of actors, or of musicians are scattered up and down the coast and among the inland lakes. One of the most famous beaches in the country is at Old Orchard. Mt. Desert Island, with its fashionable resort at Bar Harbor, is one of the best-known watering places on the Atlantic seaboard. Penobscot Bay is a favorite spot of yachtsmen. Fishermen angle in inland waters for salmon, trout, and togue—a sport that never fails, for the state restocks its lakes and streams with some 17,000,000 fish yearly. Hunters find grouse, woodcock, and ducks, as well as plenty of deer and bears. The killing of moose is now forbidden. Camps, especially for boys and girls, are scattered everywhere in Maine, but the Rangeley Lakes and Moosehead, with its three hundred miles of shore line and deep woods, are especially popular. The Appalachian Trail, that famous footpath extending for 2,050 miles along the crests of the mountain ranges all the way from Mt. Oglethorpe in Georgia, has its northern end at Mt. Katahdin (kā-tā'dīn) in Maine, where there is a state park and a sanctuary for all kinds of wild life.

Of course all this summer fun brings the state a handsome income and gives employment to a great many people. Just the

making of canoes is a big industry. Those of Old Town are famous, and are built, in part at least, by descendants of the very Indians who were living on the Penobscot when the white man came.

### Schooling and the Lighthouses

If we had more room we could tell in detail of Maine's excellent public school system, of the fine work she is doing in bringing learning to children growing up in lonely lighthouses or in the depths of the big woods. Since about a third of her people are employed in agriculture it is interesting to know that she probably outranks all other states in the percentage of farm boys and girls who go to high school. Only fourteen percent of her population is foreign-born, and most of those are Canadians. There are a number of excellent institutions of higher learning. Bowdoin (bō'dīn) was established as early as 1802. In 1915 Maine passed a workmen's compensation act, and in 1931 gave her whole administrative machinery a general overhauling in the interest of efficiency. Maine people are too thrifty and capable to be unprogressive.

### Maine and the Future

Of course Maine to a certain extent has suffered along with the rest of New England through the falling off of various industries and of her shipping. But she has had fine resources to fall back upon, and has been wise in using them. Lately her coastwise trade has come to life again, and dozens of dumpy little vessels have been furbished up and put back to work carrying wood for the wood pulp factories. She has fine water power and will doubtless develop new industries. That is why she faces the future with courage and confidence. Her sturdy people, full of iron and of that upstanding quality which we know as "character," could do no less.

## MAINE

**AREA:** 33,215 square miles—38th in rank.

**LOCATION:** Maine, the largest of the New England states, lies at the northeastern extremity of the country. West Quoddy Head, at 66° 56' 48" W. Long., is the easternmost point in the United States. Maine lies between that point and 71° 6' 41" W. Long., and between 43° 4' and 47° 27' 33" N. Lat. It is bounded on the northwest by Quebec and on the north and east by New Brunswick—both of them provinces of the Dominion of Canada. To the southeast lies the Atlantic Ocean, and to the west and southwest lies New Hampshire.

**PHYSICAL FEATURES:** The Maine surface is rugged, with a picturesque succession of gently rolling hills that grow higher as one goes inland until, in the north central part of the state, they rise to actual mountains—Saddleback Mountain, Mount Abraham, Mount Bigelow, Mount Blue, and Mount Katahdin, the highest point in the state (5,268 ft.). Among the hills run swift streams that give splendid water power. Of those that enter the Atlantic the most important are the Saco (104 m. long), which rises in the White Mountains of New Hampshire; the Androscoggin (about 171 m. long), which also rises in New Hampshire, and joins the Kennebec; the Kennebec (164 m. long); and the Penobscot (101 m. long). In the east the St. Croix (75 m. long) forms part of the boundary between Maine and New Brunswick, and in the west the Salmon Falls River forms part of the boundary between Maine and New Hampshire before it joins the Piscataqua, which is really a short tidal estuary. The northern part of the state is drained toward the north into the St. John River, a sluggish stream that flows across New Brunswick before it reaches the sea. Here on the north slope of the state the land is hilly except in the east, but it is poorly drained and swamps are common. Maine has 2,465 lakes, many of them extremely beautiful and very wild. Moosehead is the largest (about 120 m. long), but the Rangeley Lakes, Chesuncook Lake, Chamberlain Lake, and the Chiputenticook Lakes on the eastern border are all of good size. The coast of Maine is deeply indented with some 1,300 islands and fine harbors. Except in the southwest it is rocky and has very fine scenery. The distance from one boundary to the other along the coast is only 225 miles in a direct line, but the actual shore line measures 2,486 miles.

Mt. Desert Island, discovered and named by Champlain, is one of the largest islands on the Atlantic coast and is a fashionable summer resort.

Casco Bay, Frenchman's Bay, Passamaquoddy Bay, and Penobscot Bay are well-known harbors.

Nearly a tenth of Maine's area—3,145 square miles—is water. She has no irrigated land.

**CLIMATE:** Maine has long, cold winters and short, delightful summers. At Portland the January mean is 22° F.; the July mean, 68°. The record high there is 103°; the record low, -21°. The state's mean winter temperature is about 22°; the mean summer temperature, about 62°. The mean annual temperature is 42°, with the north slope about 5° cooler than the rest of the state. The climate is moist, with an annual rainfall of about 42 in. In winter the snow lies deep, with an annual fall of about 100 in. on the north slope. Fog is common along the coast.

**INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING:** Bates College at Lewiston, Bowdoin College at Brunswick, Colby College at Waterville, Nason College for women at Springvale, St. Joseph's College for women at Portland, and the University of Maine at Orono. There are state normal schools at Farmington, Fort Kent, Gorham, and Machias.

**CHARITIES AND CORRECTION:** The state maintains hospitals at Bangor and Augusta, and sanatoriums at Fairfield, Presque Isle, and Hebron. At West Pownal is a school for the feeble-minded; at Portland, a school for the deaf; and at Bath, a military and naval orphans' home. There is a state reformatory for boys at South Portland, and one for girls at Hallowell. At South Windham is the state reformatory for men, and at Skowhegan is the one for women. The state prison is at Thomaston. Maine does not inflict capital punishment.

**POLITICAL FACTS:** Maine is still governed under her original constitution of 1819, but it has been frequently amended. The law-making body consists of two houses: the Senate, elected for a two-year term; and the House of Representatives, also elected for two years. Revenue bills originate in the House. The Senate has the sole power to try impeachments. The sessions of the Legislature are held in January in alternate years and in times of emergency.

The executive department is headed by the governor, who is elected in alternate years by a plurality vote. In alternate years the two houses of the Legislature jointly elect a council of seven persons to advise and assist the governor; not more than one councilor may be chosen from any given senatorial district. The Legislature also elects the secretary of state and the treasurer, who serve for two years. The treasurer may not serve more than six successive years.

Judicial power rests with the supreme court and such courts as the Legislature may, from time to time, establish. The supreme court has five judges appointed by the governor for seven years. It meets yearly at Augusta, Bangor, and Portland. Kennebec and Cumberland counties each have a superior court with one judge appointed for a seven-year term. Judges and registers of probate are elected for four-year terms by a plurality of the voters in the counties which they serve. Municipal and police court judges are appointed by the executive of the municipality for four-year terms. The attorney general is chosen in alternate years by a joint vote of the Legislature.

All citizens of the United States may vote provided that they are over twenty-one, are not paupers or Indians who are not taxed, have resided in the state for a term of six months before their vote is cast, and are able to read and write the English language. Maine holds its state elections in even-numbered years on the second Monday in September.

A constitutional amendment adopted in 1907 provides that the people may exercise the veto power through referendum at general or special elections, and that they may initiate laws directly by petition. The Davies Direct Primary Election Law was voted in by referendum. It includes a stringent corrupt practices provision, and controls the amount spent by candidates and the method in which it is spent.

The state is divided into 16 counties, and these in turn are divided into districts, towns, and plantations. Plantations are unorganized townships of at least 200 inhabitants. They have charters, officials, and school councils, and are free from state taxation except by legislative order. Other unincorporated districts known as grants, surpluses, and tracts still remain from the old colonial organization. Such towns are not incorporated as cities, and are governed by boards of selectmen elected at annual town meetings. Cities and towns have the right to adopt a commission form of government.

State legislation regulates social and industrial welfare, with such laws as the one providing for workmen's compensation. In 1909 a state board of arbitration for labor disputes was created. There are antitrust and public-utility laws.

The capital of Maine is at Augusta.

## MAINE—Continued

**PARKS:** The Acadia National Park was created in 1919 and covers 28,420 acres. It occupies part of Mt. Desert Island and also a bold point on the mainland across Frenchman's Bay. Its most striking feature is the group of granite mountains upon the island, but the coast and marine life it preserves are of great interest. It was formerly known as the Lafayette National Park.

In 1931 and 1933 Percival Baxter, a former governor, gave the state a tract of over nine square miles. It includes Mt. Katahdin and is a recreation park, kept in its natural wild state. The gift provided that the park was to be kept as a sanctuary for wild birds and animals, and that no motor roads should be built within its boundaries. Now known as the Baxter State Park, it covers more than 116,000 acres and is still being added to. There are several other state parks, ranging in size from the Salmon Falls State Park of 80 acres to the Lake Saint George and Mount Blue State Parks, each over 5,000 acres in area.

Maine has 878,032 acres of national forest.

**GAME AND BIRD RESERVATIONS:** Moosehorn National Wildlife Refuge in Washington County and Widows Island Migratory Bird Refuge in Knox County both protect birds. There are many state preserves.

**NAME:** It is difficult to trace the name of Maine to its source, but certain incidents in the state's history throw light upon it. At an early date the French gave the name to the southern part of the region lying west of the Kennebec River. The country to the east they called Acadie. The word was first used in print in the grant which the English king gave to Sir Ferdinando Gorges and Captain John Mason on August 10, 1622. This was later confirmed by the King, when he stipulated that Gorge's portion of the mainland should forever after be called "the Province or County of Maine, and not by any other name or names whatsoever." The French doubtless used the title because it was the name of a county in France. The word comes from Old French, perhaps originally from the second part of the word "Cenomanni," the Latin form of a Celtic name for an ancient region in Northern France. In Old French the word, derived from the Latin "magnus," would mean "great, large, rich, and powerful." It is thought that the early fishermen of New England may have mistaken the meaning of the French name and have thought it to be the English word "main," or mainland, and so have used it to distinguish between the mainland and the islands offshore.

**NICKNAME:** Maine is known as the Border State, for it touches not only upon Canada but also upon the

Atlantic Ocean. It is called the Lumber State because it supplies the country with large amounts of lumber. Its magnificent pine trees, early used as masts for ships, have given it the name of the Pine Tree State. It is sometimes called the Polar Star State because of the North Star on its coat of arms and because of its northern position among the states in the Union. It is also called Vacationland, because so many people spend the summer months at various resorts throughout the state. The word "Vacationland" appears on auto license plates issued by the state.

The people of Maine have been called Foxes, because many of them live in the forests—and Lumbermen and Pine Trees for the same reason.

**STATE FLOWER:** Pine cone and tassel (*Pinus strobus*), chosen under the direction of the Maine Floral Emblem Society by popular ballot in 1894, and officially adopted by the Legislature in 1925.

**STATE SONG:** "The State of Maine Song," by Roger Vinton Snow, was officially designated as the state song by the Legislature in April, 1937. This song was an entry in a contest run by the Maine Publicity Bureau in 1931. It was chosen by vote of the judging committee and a poll of radio audiences from among 116 entries.

**STATE FLAG:** Blue, with knotted yellow silk fringe and white and blue cording. The state coat of arms is embroigered on both sides in colored silk. This flag was authorized by legislative action in 1909.

**STATE MOTTO:** "Dirigo," meaning "I direct" or "I guide." It is used in connection with the Polar, or North, Star shown on the coat of arms, the star which guides the sailor. The star and the motto suggest that a fixed purpose is the citizen's guide, and indicate that the State is the object toward which the patriot's exertions should be directed.

**STATE BIRD:** Chickadee, or black-capped titmouse, adopted by the Legislature in April, 1927.

**INTERESTING FACTS:** Maine observes New Year's Day, Washington's Birthday, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Armistice Day, Thanksgiving Day, Christmas Day, and Patriots' Day on April 19th, the anniversary of the Battle of Lexington.

Maine was the first state to enact a law prohibiting the sale of alcoholic liquors (repealed, October, 1934.)

A certain number of Pennacook Indians live in the state. In the northern part of the state is the Passamaquoddy Indian Reservation.

<b>Population of state, 1940, 847,226</b>		Sagadahoc (C 4) 19,123
		Somerset (C 3) 38,467
<b>Counties</b>		
Androscoggin (B 4) 76,679	Waldo (C 4) 21,159	
Aroostook (D 2) 94,436	Washington (E 3) 37,767	
Cumberland (B 5) 146,000	York (B 5) 82,550	
Franklin (B 4) 19,896		<b>Cities and Urban Villages</b>
Hancock (D 4) 32,422	Abbot Village (C 3) 552	
Kennebec (C 4) 77,231	Addison (E 4) 805	
Knox (C 4) 27,191	Albion (C 1) 974	
Lincoln (C 4) 16,294	Alfred (B 5) 1,039	
Oxford (B 4) 42,662	Allagash (C 1) 644	
Penobscot (D 3) 97,104	Andover (B 4) 757	
Piscataquis (C 3) 18,467	Anson (C 4) 2,130	
	Appleton (C 4) 641	
	Ashland (D 2) 2,457	
	Athens (C 4) 742	
	Auburn (B 4) 19,817	
	Augusta (C 4) 19,360	

Bailey Is. (C 5) 572	Bradley (D 4) 716
Baileysville (E 3) 2,018	Brewer (D 4) 6,510
Baldwin (B 5) 721	Bridgewater (E 2) 1,267
Bangor (D 4) 29,822	Bridgton (B 4) 3,035
Bar Harbor (D 4) 4,378	Bristol (C 5) 1,355
Bath (C 5) 10,235	Brooklin (D 4) 656
Beals (E 4) 513	Brooks (C 4) 744
Bellast (C 4) 5,540	Brooksville (D 4) 805
Belgrade (C 4) 1,046	Brownfield (B 4) 741
Benton (C 4) 1,290	Brownville (C 3) 1,914
Berwick (B 5) 1,971	Brunswick (C 5) 8,658
Bethel (B 4) 2,034	Bryant Pond (B 4) 895
Biddeford (B 5) 19,790	Buckfield (B 4) 903
Biddeford Pool (B 5) 528	Bucksport (D 4) 2,927
Bingham (C 3) 1,210	Burnham (C 4) 643
Blaine (E 2) 1,049	Buxton (B 5) 1,708
Blue Hill (D 4) 1,343	
Boothbay (C 5) 1,370	Calais (E 3) 5,161
Boothbay Harbor (C 5) 2,121	Camden (C 4) 3,554
Bowdoinham (C 4) 915	Canaan (C 4) 717
Bradford (D 4) 734	Canton (B 4) 706
	Cape Elizabeth (B 5) 3,172

# MAINE—Continued

Cape Porpoise (B5).....	690	Hancock (D4).....	761	New Canada (D1).....	633	Sedgwick (D4).....	718
Caribou (D2).....	8,218	Harmony (C4).....	788	New Gloucester (B5).....	2,234	Sherman (D3).....	1,058
Carmel (C4).....	870	Harpwell (B5).....	1,305	New Portland (B4).....	765	Sidney (C4).....	989
Casco (B4).....	890	Harpwell Center (B5).....	1,740	New Sharon (B4).....	761	Skowhegan (C4).....	7,159
Castine (D4).....	662	Harrington (E4).....	918	New Sweden (B2).....	844	Solon (C4).....	773
Castle Hill (D2).....	697	Harrison (B4).....	1,026	Newburgh (D4).....	591	So. Berwick (B5).....	2,546
Caswell (E1).....	650	Hartland (C4).....	1,240	Newcastle (C4).....	994	So. Brewer (D4).....	1,265
Charleston (C4).....	768	Hebron (B4).....	678	Newport (C4).....	2,052	So. Bristol (C5).....	582
Chebeague Is. (B5).....	558	Hermion (D4).....	1,182	Nobleborough (C4).....	665	So. Paris (B4).....	1,890
Chelsea (C4).....	2,280	Hiram (B4).....	787	Norridgewock (C4).....	1,511	So. Portland (B5).....	15,781
Cherryfield (E4).....	1,046	Hodgdon (E2).....	1,076	No. Anson (C4).....	875	So. Windham (B5).....	1,865
China (C4).....	1,252	Holden (D3).....	680	No. Berwick (B5).....	1,455	Southwest Harbor (D4).....	1,260
Chisholm (B4).....	790	Hollis (B5).....	1,111	No. Jay (B4).....	739	Springvale (B5).....	3,200
Clinton (C4).....	1,436	Hollis Center (B5).....	1,077	No. Kennebunkport (B5).....	866	Stacville (D3).....	717
Columbia Falls (E4).....	596	Hope (C4).....	524	No. Lubec (E4).....	633	Standish (B5).....	1,472
Connor (D2).....	739	Houlton (E2).....	7,771	No. New Portland (B4).....	600	Steep Falls (B5).....	579
Coopers Mills (C4).....	1,275	Howland (D3).....	1,189	No. Vassalborough (B4).....	845	Steuken (E1).....	690
Corinna (C4).....	1,515	Island Falls (D3).....	1,370	No. Yarmouth (B5).....	666	Stillwater (D4).....	685
Corinth (C4).....	954	Islesborough (D4).....	718	Norway (B4).....	3,649	Stockholm (D1).....	891
Cornish (B5).....	826	Jackman (B3).....	1,069	Oakfield (D2).....	1,059	Stockton Springs (D4).....	905
Cornville (C4).....	626	Jay (B4).....	2,858	Oakland (C4).....	2,730	Stonington (D4).....	1,493
Cumberland (B5).....	1,491	Jefferson (C4).....	938	Old Orchard Beach (B5).....	2,557	Strong (B4).....	1,007
Cumberland Center (B5).....	970	Jonesport (E4).....	1,715	Old Town (D4).....	7,688	Sullivan (D4).....	801
Cumberland Mills (B5).....	2,600	Keegan (E1).....	775	Orland (D4).....	1,015	Sumner (B4).....	541
Damariscotta (C4).....	844	Kennebunk (B5).....	3,698	Orono (D4).....	3,702	Tenants Harbor (C5).....	825
Danforth (E3).....	1,348	Kennebunkport (B5).....	1,448	Orrington (D4).....	1,517	Thomaston (C4).....	2,533
Deer Isle (D4).....	1,303	Kezar Falls (B5).....	650	Owls Head (C5).....	609	Tremont (C4).....	2,344
Dexter (C4).....	3,714	Kingfield (B4).....	860	Oxford (B4).....	1,316	Troy (C4).....	582
Dixfield (B4).....	1,790	Kittery (B5).....	5,374	Palermo (C4).....	527	Turner (B4).....	1,415
Dixmont (C4).....	576	Kitterypoint (B5).....	1,130	Palmira (C4).....	934	Union (C4).....	1,150
Dover-Foxcroft (C3).....	4,015	Lebanon (B5).....	1,452	Paris (B4).....	4,094	Unity (C4).....	935
Dresden (C4).....	631	Lee (D3).....	618	Parkman (C3).....	581	Van Buren (E1).....	5,380
Durham (B5).....	784	Leeds (B4).....	801	Parsonfield (B5).....	946	Vanceboro (B5).....	627
Eagle Lake (D1).....	1,891	Levant (C4).....	661	Patton (D3).....	1,548	Vassalborough (C4).....	1,951
E. Boothbay (C5).....	570	Lewiston (B4).....	38,598	Pejepscott (B5).....	528	Veazie (D4).....	597
E. Corinth (C4).....	550	Limerick (B5).....	1,080	Pembroke (E4).....	1,029	Vinalhaven (C5).....	1,629
E. Holden (D4).....	680	Limestone (E2).....	1,855	Penobscot (D4).....	680	Waldoboro (C4).....	2,497
E. Livermore (B4).....	2,025	Limington (B5).....	864	Perham (D2).....	689	Wallagrass (D1).....	1,123
E. Machias (E4).....	1,183	Lincoln (D3).....	3,653	Perry (E4).....	714	Warren (C4).....	1,458
E. Mad n (C4).....	610	Lincolntonville (C4).....	892	Peru (B4).....	965	Washington (D2).....	1,805
E. Millinocket (D4).....	1,663	Lincolntonville Center (D4).....	860	Phillips (B4).....	1,186	Washington (C4).....	689
Easton (D2).....	1,605	Linneus (E2).....	775	Phillipsburg (C5).....	1,020	Waterboro (B5).....	947
Eastport (F4).....	3,346	Lisbon (B4).....	4,123	Pittsfield (C4).....	3,329	Watertown (B4).....	836
Eddington (D4).....	571	Lisbon Falls (C5).....	2,000	Pittston (C4).....	1,114	Waterville (C4).....	16,688
Eliot (B5).....	1,932	Litchfield (C4).....	722	Poland (B4).....	1,441	Webster (B4).....	1,236
Ellsworth (D4).....	3,911	Littleton (E2).....	1,049	Poland Spring (B4).....	765	Wells (B5).....	2,144
Ellsworth Falls (D4).....	1,095	Livermore (B4).....	1,302	Portage (D2).....	932	W. Buxton (B5).....	580
Enfield (D3).....	979	Livermore Falls (B4).....	3,190	Portage Lake (D2).....	773	W. Enfield (D3).....	560
Eustis (B3).....	707	Lovell (B4).....	647	Porter (B4).....	892	W. Farmington (B4).....	685
Exeter (C4).....	751	Lubec (F4).....	3,108	Portland (B5).....	73,643	W. Gardiner (C4).....	867
Fairfield (C4).....	5,294	Machias (E4).....	1,954	Pownall (B5).....	575	W. Jonesport (E4).....	1,015
Falmouth (B5).....	2,883	Machiasport (E4).....	818	Presque Isle (E2).....	7,939	W. Kennebunk (B5).....	633
Farmingdale (C4).....	1,197	Madawaska (D1).....	4,477	Princeton (E3).....	1,009	W. Paris (B4).....	843
Farmington (B4).....	3,743	Madison (C4).....	3,836	Randolph (C4).....	1,612	W. Pembroke (E4).....	922
Ft. Fairfield (E2).....	5,607	Manchester (C4).....	626	Rangeley (B4).....	1,464	Westbrook (B5).....	11,087
Ft. Kent (D1).....	5,363	Mapleton (D2).....	1,354	Readfield (C4).....	986	Westfield (D2).....	735
Frankfort (D4).....	562	Mars Hill (E2).....	1,886	Richmond (C4).....	2,063	Whitefield (C4).....	962
Franklin (D4).....	742	Masardis (D2).....	601	Robbinston (E3).....	637	Wilton (B4).....	3,228
Freeport (B5).....	2,764	Mattawamkeag (D3).....	843	Rockland (C4).....	8,899	Windham (B5).....	2,381
Frenchville (D1).....	1,566	Mechanic Falls (B4).....	1,999	Rockport (C4).....	1,526	Windsor (C4).....	695
Friendship (C5).....	747	Medway (D3).....	623	Round Pond (C5).....	580	Windsorville (C4).....	595
Fryeburg (B4).....	1,726	Mexico (B4).....	4,431	Rumford (B4).....	10,230	Winn (D1).....	585
Gardiner (C4).....	6,044	Millford (D4).....	1,264	Rumford Falls (B4).....	8,847	Winslow (C4).....	4,153
Garland (C4).....	610	Millbridge (E4).....	1,318	Sabattus (B4).....	1,200	Winter Harbor (D4).....	518
Gorham (B4).....	3,494	Millinocket (D3).....	6,223	Saco (B5).....	8,631	Winterport (D4).....	1,572
Gouldsborough (D4).....	1,068	Milltown (E3).....	1,585	St. Agatha (D1).....	1,874	Winthrop (C4).....	2,508
Grand Isle (D1).....	1,574	Milo (D3).....	3,000	St. Albans (C4).....	950	Wiscasset (C4).....	1,231
Gray (B5).....	1,378	Minot (B4).....	674	St. David (D1).....	845	Woodland (D2).....	1,298
Greene (B4).....	865	Monmouth (B4).....	1,500	St. Francis (D1).....	1,489	Woodland (E3).....	1,197
Greenville (C3).....	1,955	Monroe (C4).....	665	St. George (C4).....	1,550	Woodstock (B4).....	913
Greenwood (B4).....	564	Monson (C3).....	977	St. John (D1).....	628	Woolwich (C5).....	1,144
Guilford (C3).....	1,752	Monticello (E2).....	1,504	Sanford (B5).....	14,886	Yarmouth (B5).....	2,214
Hallowell (C4).....	2,906	Montville (C4).....	605	Sangerville (C3).....	1,194	York (B5).....	3,283
Hamlin (E1).....	638	Mt. Desert (D4).....	2,047	Scarboro (B5).....	2,842	York Beach (B5).....	690
Hampden (D4).....	2,591	Mt. Vernon (C4).....	653	Searsmont (C4).....	542	York Harbor (B5).....	1,320
		Naples (B5).....	676	Searsport (D4).....	1,319		

---

# *The* HISTORY of MARYLAND

---

## Reading Unit No. 19

---

### MARYLAND: THE OLD LINE STATE

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

#### *Interesting Facts Explained*

How Maryland was founded, 8-158  
When the light of liberty was dimmed, 8-159  
Why Maryland was the last to agree to the Declaration of Independence, 8-160

When "The Star-Spangled Banner" was written, 8-160  
Maryland's sympathies in the Civil War, 8-160  
The importance of Baltimore, 8-160-61  
The haunt of wild ducks, 8-162

#### *Things to Think About*

What was the ideal of the early settlers of Maryland?  
What was the most important crop the early colonists grew?  
How was Maryland saved from some of the terrors that other colonists suffered?

When was Maryland's boundary dispute with Pennsylvania settled?  
What difference did the Machine Age make to Maryland?  
What important educational institutions are in Maryland?

#### *Picture Hunt*

What has made Johns Hopkins University famous? 8-160

What interest has Maryland taken in her roads? 8-161

#### *Related Material*

The great plantations, 8-408-9  
What kinds of ducks are to be found in the marshes of North America? 4-119-21  
How do clams make pearls? 3-261-62  
Colonial life in America, 7-145-55  
Creatures with only one foot, 3-151-60

A poet who taught at Johns Hopkins, 13-335  
What ships made American shipping famous in the middle of the nineteenth century? 10-216  
Which was the most popular of the American clipper ships? 10-172

#### *Practical Applications*

What enables Baltimore to transfer a cargo of grain in six minutes? 8-161

How do the farmers of "Delmarva" deal with their own problems? 8-162

#### *Leisure-time Activities*

PROJECT NO. 1: Read "The Walrus and the Carpenter," from Lewis Carroll's "Alice in Wonderland," or some of Sidney La-

nier's poems.  
PROJECT NO. 2: Find pictures of the clipper ships.

## MARYLAND: *the* Old Line State

*First Founded as a Home for the Oppressed, Maryland  
Has Always Liked to Blaze the Way, and To-day  
Is a Leader in Our Country's Trade*

**E**ARLY in the spring of 1634 two little boats, the "Ark" and the "Dove," sailed up the broad waters of Chesapeake Bay and anchored off what is now Blackiston's Island. The little craft were surely well named, for like the passengers in an earlier ark, the people on board had come to rest in a new land, where they hoped to find peace and an end of tribulation. Accordingly they sent out the "Dove" to see what the prospect might be; and after their leader, who went out on board her, had come back with a fair report, they made their way up the St. Mary's River to a spot they pronounced "so charming in its situation that Europe can scarcely show one to surpass it."

This enchanting place was a cleared tract which the Yao-comico (yā'ō-kōm'ī-kō) Indians were about to abandon and were glad to sell for an assortment of rakes, hoes, hatchets, and other humble farm implements. Here the colonists planted their first settlement, at the spot where St. Mary's City now stands. At the request of the King their colony was named "The Province of Maryland" in honor of his queen, Henrietta Maria.

And now the proprietor of the colony

embarked upon what, for those days, was a truly remarkable experiment. At a time when all Europe was torn with bitter strife between Catholic and Protestant, he dared to establish a community where people of all religions might live side by side in perfect friendliness, with complete separation of church and state. To most people of that time the idea was revolutionary and seemed absurd or even dangerous, though to us, who live in a better day, it is commonplace enough.

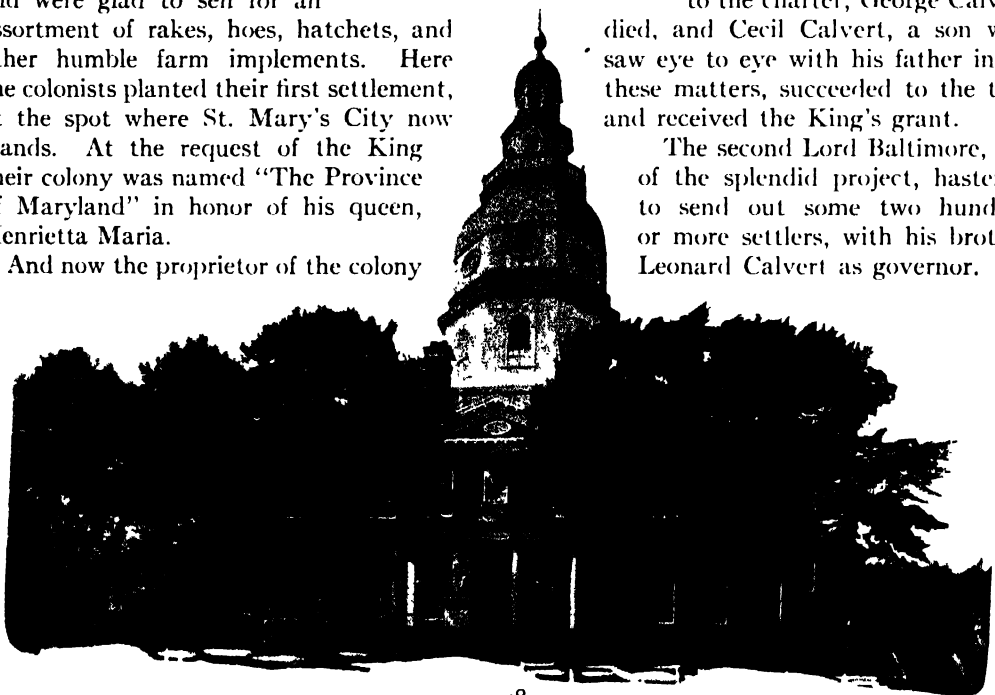
The founder of this noble scheme had been George Calvert, the first Lord Baltimore, a Catholic nobleman to whom Charles I, the

Annapolis, the capital of Maryland, is famous for its beautiful houses dating from colonial times. One of the most imposing of those old buildings is the statehouse, shown below. Here, in 1783, General Washington resigned his military commission to the Continental Congress.

English king, had given a grant of land in America, together with what was really absolute power to govern it as he would. But before the Great Seal had been affixed

to the charter, George Calvert died, and Cecil Calvert, a son who saw eye to eye with his father in all these matters, succeeded to the title and received the King's grant.

The second Lord Baltimore, full of the splendid project, hastened to send out some two hundred or more settlers, with his brother Leonard Calvert as governor. As





## THE HISTORY OF MARYLAND

had been planned, there were both Catholics and Protestants among the colonists, most of whom were men of humble birth. The Catholics had all suffered from the laws that had for some time been in force in England against followers of their religion. And both Catholics and Protestants were glad of a chance to be free of the old, bitter feud which had poisoned their lives for so long. As one might expect, members of many sects came to seek refuge in this haven of the oppressed. Puritans, Quakers, and people of other creeds, from France and Germany as well as England, found a cordial welcome at St. Mary's, the only place in the world where that was so. This fine friendliness remained the ideal of the colony for many years.

### The Light of Liberty Is Dimmed

But later immigrants could not see the light that led those first courageous souls. In 1692 the King set up his own government in the province, and the Church of England became the state church. A Calvert who was Protestant finally succeeded to the title of Lord Baltimore (1715) and was reinstated as proprietor of the colony, but sad to relate, in 1717 the colonial assembly refused Catholics all right to vote. Yet the good seed had been sown, and when the thirteen colonies founded our nation, they followed the lead of little Maryland and adopted a constitution which gave entire freedom to all religious creeds.

### The Burning Question of Quit-rents

From the first the Calverts, in spite of the great power that the King had put in their hands, had given the colonists a good many liberties. The most important was the right of holding a legislative assembly. As time went on and other proprietors succeeded, the settlers pressed for more and more power, and the usual wrangling developed between the governor and the people. In Maryland the great bone of contention was the "quit-rents"—a perpetual rental that owners of land had to pay to the proprietors. But little by little the determined settlers got things into their own hands.

Meanwhile the colony was prospering; it had prospered from the start. In their very

first autumn here the settlers had sold a shipload of grain to the people of Massachusetts Bay, who had sent back a shipload of salted cod in return. Very early the people of St. Mary's learned of the profits to be made from tobacco, and soon were raising it as their principal crop. For a while it took the place of money among them. All through the southern part of Maryland great slave-holding plantations, like those we have described in our story of Virginia, raised tobacco and shipped it, often from their own wharves, to England or other colonies. Maryland and Virginia paid the mother country better returns than any other of the thirteen colonies. They entered into no competition with her, and the ships that had sailed from here with tobacco or furs or sassafras root for medicine came back laden with English manufactured articles. Other colonies, especially in the West Indies, were glad to get Maryland pork or beef, timber and wheat and flour. In return New England sent her rum and fish, and the West Indies sent sugar and molasses.

### Keeping Indian Friendship

Lord Calvert's fair policy in dealing with the Indians saved the settlement from some of the terrors that other colonists suffered, especially in the early day. Maryland was inhabited by various small related tribes—the Yaocomicoes the Susquehannocks, the Patuxents, the Piscataways (pĭs-kăt'ă-wă), and the Nanticokes of the eastern part of the state—all of them members of the great Algonquian (ăl-gŏn'kĭ-ăn) group of Indians except the Susquehannocks, who were Iroquoian. In the eighteenth century western Maryland suffered as did Pennsylvania and Virginia in the French and Indian Wars.

William Claiborne, secretary of the Virginia colony, gave the Maryland colonists a good deal more trouble at the beginning than the Indians did. He had bought Kent Island in Chesapeake Bay and had started a settlement there (1631). He refused to recognize Lord Baltimore's right to rule it and for a long time actual warfare existed between his settlers and Lord Baltimore's government. Toward the close of the seventeenth century a boundary dispute developed with Pennsyl-

## THE HISTORY OF MARYLAND

vania. This was settled when Mason and Dixon, two English surveyors, came over (1763) to survey what has ever since been known as the Mason and Dixon line.

As the eighteenth century wore on, Maryland shared the general resentment against the laws Great Britain passed restricting colonial trade. She even had her own "tea party" when the people of Annapolis openly burned (1774) the "Peggy Stewart" because she had brought in tea as part of her cargo. But by now the Maryland colonists had been able to wrest so much power out of the hands of their proprietors that they hated to risk it by rebelling against England. For this reason they were the last to agree to the Declaration of Independence.

Once the step was taken, they supported the cause with splendid fervor. It was from the gallant service of troops in the Maryland line that the state got her title of the Old Line State. And it was because of the wise insistence of Maryland that all the colonies ceded their western lands to the new government. This was a powerful force in welding together what would otherwise have been a loose group of thirteen jealous little independent states.

The War of 1812 saw three Maryland towns burned by the British and Baltimore attacked by land and sea. It was during that siege that Francis Scott Key wrote "The Star-spangled Banner," under circumstances that we have described on another page of these books.

In the Civil War Maryland was torn as the nation was torn. The large slaveholders of

the tobacco plantations naturally sympathized with the South, but people in the north and west had for a long time been in favor of freeing the Negroes. The federal government quickly took possession of the state when the war broke out, and she remained on the Northern side until its close.

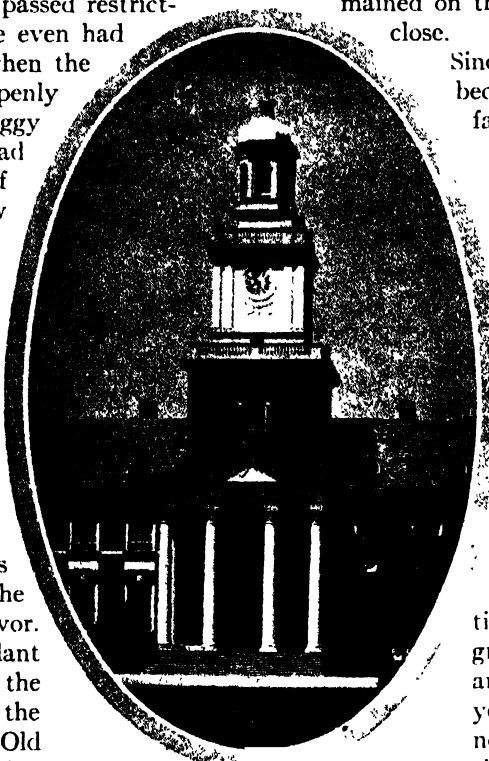
Since then Maryland has become an important manufacturing state. As early as 1730 a group of thrifty German settlers had begun to develop her industries. And at about the same time her people had turned to making large quantities of iron nails by hand. With the coming of the Machine Age Maryland began to use her valuable coal deposits to build up her industries.

Today her output of coal—from Garrett and Allegany (ă'ĕ-gă'nĭ) counties—and of sand and gravel, stone, lime, clay, and talc gives her a good yearly income, though she no longer ranks high among the nation's mining states.

Maryland's iron mines have not been worked to any great extent since the Revolution, for richer deposits have been found elsewhere.

It would be easy to predict that her abundance of coal and her excellent facilities for transportation would turn Maryland more and more to manufactures.

Baltimore, her chief city, has more than two thousand different products to her credit. Seated on her excellent harbor near the head of Chesapeake Bay, with a number of convenient railroads leading to the South and West, she has built up a foreign trade that is the second largest in the Western Hemisphere. Not only does she ship to all the important



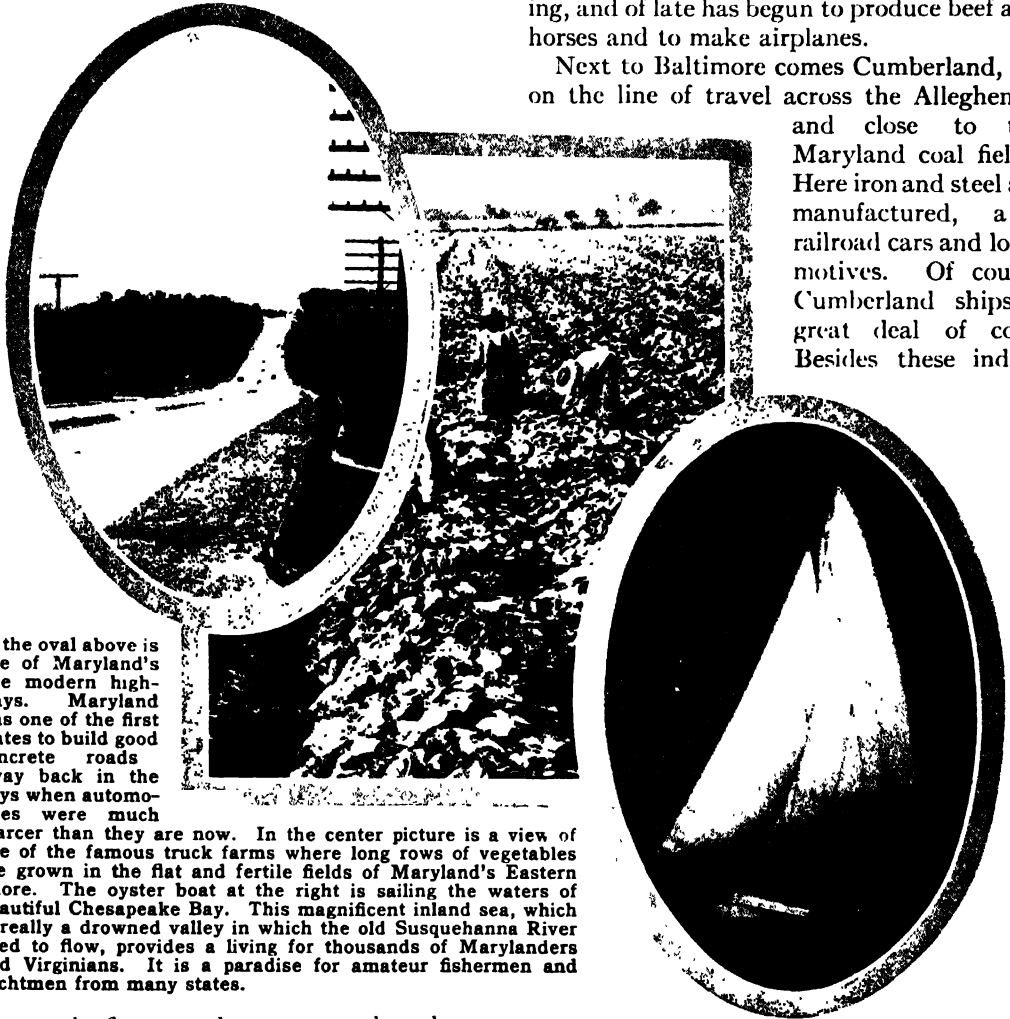
Above is Gilman Hall, one of the many fine buildings of the Johns Hopkins University in Baltimore. All are colonial in style, for they were built to harmonize with the famous old Carroll Mansion—now a museum—which was already standing on the tract of land which the university occupies. Many of our important universities began life as small colleges, but Johns Hopkins was a full-fledged university from the day it opened its door to students in 1876. It has always been best known for its distinguished training of graduate students. Its medical school, in another part of the city, is one of the most famous in the country.

## THE HISTORY OF MARYLAND

ports in the United States, but steamship lines carry her goods to nations all over the world. She has one of the largest coal-handling piers in the world, and her grain elevators,

the grocer's come from Baltimore's canneries. Tramp steamers bring her nitrates in great quantities to be turned into fertilizers. In addition she makes great quantities of clothing, and of late has begun to produce beef and horses and to make airplanes.

Next to Baltimore comes Cumberland, set on the line of travel across the Alleghenies and close to the Maryland coal fields. Here iron and steel are manufactured, and railroad cars and locomotives. Of course Cumberland ships a great deal of coal. Besides these indus-



In the oval above is one of Maryland's fine modern highways. Maryland was one of the first states to build good concrete roads away back in the days when automobiles were much

scarcer than they are now. In the center picture is a view of one of the famous truck farms where long rows of vegetables are grown in the flat and fertile fields of Maryland's Eastern Shore. The oyster boat at the right is sailing the waters of beautiful Chesapeake Bay. This magnificent inland sea, which is really a drowned valley in which the old Susquehanna River used to flow, provides a living for thousands of Marylanders and Virginians. It is a paradise for amateur fishermen and yachtsmen from many states.

among the finest on the eastern seaboard, can transfer a cargo of grain in six minutes. Early in the nineteenth century Baltimore was known far and wide for her beautiful clipper ships. To-day she is busy at ship repairing.

From mines in many different lands ore is brought to Baltimore's copper refinery, one of the world's greatest, and there a large percent of the country's refined copper is produced. Much of the United States' tinware comes from Baltimore and many of the hats that cover heads over the country are made there. Many of the cans on the shelves at

tries she makes cement, glass, plaster, fire brick, rubber tires, artificial silk, and tin plate.

Maryland's third city is Hagerstown (hā'-gē-z-toun), with a long list of varied products to her credit. Here bicycles are made, and incubators, automobiles, furniture, flour, shoes, chemicals, paper, silk, knitted goods, and sashes and doors.

In spring the lovely valley in which the town is built is fragrant with apple blossoms and in fall the barns are bursting with the

## THE HISTORY OF MARYLAND

huge crops raised in this fertile soil. All the upland section lying just to eastward of the Hagerstown Valley is covered with fine grain and stock farms; Garrett County specializes in sheep. For agriculture is still important in Maryland. Corn is the principal crop, with garden truck coming next. But wheat, hay, and tobacco all are valuable. Tobacco comes largely from the southern counties on the western shore of Chesapeake Bay. Just north of them vegetables, melons, and berries are grown. Other Maryland crops are oats, buckwheat, barley, potatoes, sweet potatoes, apples, peaches, and grapes.

Along the Eastern Shore—the name of the low-lying section east of Chesapeake (chēs'ā-pēk) Bay—truck and fruit farms are increasing rapidly. Here is fertile soil adapted to a variety of crops, a mild climate where stock can graze all the year, and a progressive farming population that has made up its mind to use its advantages intelligently. Farmers along the whole peninsula—which calls itself "Delmarva," from the abbreviations of the three states holding territory here—have banded together in their own interest. They send their own goods to market in their own trucks, which are kept going day and night to New York and Philadelphia. They buy and sell their own lands, and will have nothing to do with speculators. And they are introducing simple industries to keep the farm laborers busy during the winter months. Their peninsula, of which the town of Salisbury (sōlz'bēr-ī) is the center, is full of the gracious beauty that comes from old trees, old mansions, old towns, and a beautiful fertile country watered by lazy rivers.

The sea is another of Maryland's important sources of wealth. Chesapeake Bay oysters have long been famous, and crabs, clams, terrapin, shad, and striped bass are all valuable catches. Crisfield, on the Eastern Shore, is the country's center for crabs. Maryland takes great pains to conserve this natural wealth, as well as her abundance of game and the forests of pine, cypress, cedar, spruce, hemlock, beech, birch, and maple which cover a third of the state's land area. Chesapeake Bay, with its many rivers, is the haunt of thousands of wild ducks,

which attract the sportsman every winter.

The western part of the state has fine mountain scenery. Here the climate is colder in both winter and summer than it is in the lowlands to eastward. The three belts of the Appalachian (ăp'ā-lă'chĭ-ăn) mountain system, which we have described in our story of Pennsylvania, cross this little state and give it great variety. The southeastern half—known as "tidewater Maryland"—is a coastal plain which has been sunk sufficiently to let the sea into the river valleys to form the magnificent Chesapeake Bay, which is really the sunken valley of the Susquehanna (sūs'kwē-hăn'ā) River.

The Piedmont (pēd'mōnt) section lies northwest of the plain, with what is known as the "fall line" serving as its southeastern boundary. Along this line—which extends from Washington through Baltimore to a point just south of the state's northeastern corner—all the rivers tumble in rapids or cascades from the harder rocks of the elevated Piedmont Plateau (plā-tō') to the softer rocks of the coastal plain. For the soft rock has been worn away much faster than the hard rock of the plateau.

The Hagerstown Valley is part of the Great Appalachian Valley. West of it are the Appalachian ridges and the Alleghenies, which along the state's western border give way to the Appalachian Plateau. Except in the extreme west, where the rivers flow toward the Ohio, all the streams in the state are tributary to the Atlantic. The southern bank of the Potomac (pō-tō'mác) is the state's southern boundary.

Of course Maryland has recognized the value of education. Johns Hopkins University is one of our country's most important institutions for higher education, Goucher College is a well-known college for women, and there are numerous other educational institutions. The United States Naval Academy is at Annapolis, a beautiful old colonial town which, like Baltimore, was for a short time the capital of the United States. It now is the capital of Maryland, though the state's executive offices are all in Baltimore. That great city is growing fast in wealth and in the volume of her trade. Maryland's future prosperity seems assured.

## MARYLAND

**AREA:** 10,577 square miles—41st in rank.

**LOCATION:** Maryland is a South Atlantic border state, lying between 37° 53' and 39° 43' N. Lat. and between 75° 4' and 79° 29' W. Long. It is bounded on the north by Pennsylvania, on the east by Delaware and the Atlantic Ocean, on the south by Virginia and West Virginia, and on the west by Virginia and West Virginia.

**PHYSICAL FEATURES:** The Chesapeake Bay divides Maryland into two unequal parts, a smaller section to the east, known as the Eastern Shore, and a larger western section, known along the coast as the Western Shore. All the eastern part of the state is low, but it rises to the fall line, which marks the eastern edge of the more rugged Piedmont Plateau, where such ridges as Parr's Ridge reach an elevation of 800 or 900 feet. East of the fall line the rivers, such as the Patuxent, the Patapsco (80 m. long), and the Gunpowder (60 m. long), all flow into Chesapeake Bay; but the Monocacy (60 m. long), in the Piedmont section, flows southward into the Potomac (287 m. long), a fine river which rises in West Virginia and empties into the Atlantic. The Potomac's southern bank forms the southern boundary of Maryland, except for the short strip bounded by the District of Columbia, which lies on the river's northern bank. West of the Piedmont region lies the mountainous part of the state, with the Blue Ridge as an outpost. Just west of the Blue Ridge is the broad Cumberland Valley, and beyond it the Appalachian Mountains and, in the extreme west, a part of the Appalachian Plateau. The highest elevation here - or anywhere in the state - is Backbone Mountain (3,340 ft.). All the rivers of western Maryland enter the Potomac except the Youghiogheny (150 m. long), which finds its way northward to the Monongahela and the Ohio. The Susquehanna enters the northern end of Chesapeake Bay. Altogether Maryland has a water area of 2,386 square miles. Chesapeake Bay is of great importance both for fishing and commerce. Maryland has no irrigated land.

**CLIMATE:** At Baltimore the mean temperature for January is 34° F.; for July, 77° F. The record high is 105° F.; the record low, -7° F. The average annual temperature for the state is 53° to 54° F. The climate along the coast is humid, with mild winters and hot summers. Inland the weather is cooler and more bracing, and in the mountains the winters are cold and the summers delightful. The average annual rainfall for the state is about 43 inches.

**INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING:** The more important institutions are the College of Notre Dame of Maryland for women at Baltimore, Goucher College for women at Baltimore, Hood College for women at Frederick, Johns Hopkins University at Baltimore, Loyola College at Baltimore, Maryland College for Women at Luther, Mount St. Mary College at Emmitsburg, St. John's College at Annapolis, St. Joseph's College for women at Emmitsburg, St. Mary's Seminary and University at Roland Park and Baltimore, United States Naval Academy at Annapolis, University of Baltimore at Baltimore, University of Maryland at College Park and Baltimore, Western Maryland College at Westminster, and Woodstock College at Woodstock. There are state teachers' colleges at Frostburg, Salisbury, and Towson. For colored students there are the Coppin Teachers College at Baltimore, Maryland State Teachers College at Bowie, Morgan State College at Baltimore, and Princess Anne College at Princess Anne. There are junior colleges at Mount Washington, Catonsville, and St. Mary's City.

**CENTERS FOR THE PROMOTION OF THE ARTS**  
Peabody Institute for Education in Music, Baltimore

Maryland Institute for the Promotion of Fine and Mechanic Arts, Baltimore  
Walter's Art Gallery, Baltimore

**CHARITIES AND CORRECTION:** The state maintains two penal institutions, a home for the feeble-minded, a home for the deaf, three insane hospitals for white patients and one for colored, two general hospitals, three tubercular hospitals for white patients and one for colored, a training school for boys and one for girls. Various schools, hospitals, reformatories, and homes for children and for the infirm, receive state aid. Maryland inflicts capital punishment by hanging.

**POLITICAL FACTS:** Maryland is governed under the constitution of 1867, the fourth since the original one in 1776. It has been amended, by provisions allowing amendments to be passed by three-fifths of all members of the two legislative houses, followed by action by the people. Every twenty years from 1930 the question of calling a constitutional convention is to be laid before the people.

The legislature consists of a Senate, with members serving for four years, and a House of Delegates, with members elected every two years. Delegates are apportioned according to population. Early religious difficulties between Catholics and Protestants led to a provision that clergymen may not serve as senators or delegates, and the law still holds. The legislature meets in odd-numbered years, with sessions limited to 90 days and special sessions to 30 days.

Executive power rests with the governor, elected for four years. He must be at least thirty years of age and a five-year resident of the state. With the attorney-general, elected for four years, and a treasurer chosen by the legislature for two years, the executive department is complete.

The judiciary is headed by the court of appeals, composed of the chief judges of the first seven of the several judicial circuits and a judge from the city of Baltimore, especially elected. One of these eight men is appointed chief judge by the governor. There are eight judicial circuit courts of the state, with a chief and two associates for each. Baltimore constitutes the eighth judicial circuit. The orphans' courts are composed of three men for each county, elected for a term of four years. Circuit court judges are elected by the people for fifteen years or until they attain the age of seventy, when they must retire.

All citizens who have been residents of the state for one year and of the district for six months, may vote, provided they have never been convicted of larceny or other infamous crime. Former convicts may never again vote in the state unless pardoned by the governor.

A primary-election law was enacted in 1912, but it does not affect candidates from Washington, Howard, and Worcester counties. Provision also is made for presidential primaries. Any promise made by the wife of a candidate is considered to come from the candidate himself.

The local unit of government is the county, with commissioners as officers. Cities may adopt the commission form of government.

The capital of Maryland is at Annapolis.

**MONUMENTS:** Fort McHenry (48 acres) in Baltimore has been restored and is preserved as the birthplace of "The Star Spangled Banner." At Sharpsburg is a national cemetery on the site of the Battle of Antietam.

**GAME AND BIRD RESERVATIONS:** Blackwater Refuge protects birds and muskrats. Chincoteague Refuge and Susquehanna Refuge protect birds. Patuxent Research Refuge is an experiment station.

Maryland has 4,318 acres of national forest.

## MARYLAND—Continued

**NAME:** Attributed to George Calvert, the first Lord Baltimore, who in drawing up the charter left a place for the name. He preferred "Crescentia" or the "Land of Crescence," but left the actual privilege of choosing the name to King Charles I. The King expressed a wish for "Mariana," which was not used, since a Jesuit of that name had written against the monarch. Whereupon the king proposed "Terra Mariae" in English, "Maryland"—which was decided on and inserted in the bill. Thus the state is named after Henrietta Maria, queen of Charles I and daughter of Henry IV, king of France. The word "Mary," the same in meaning as the word "Miriam," is of Hebrew origin. This name, given to the sister of Moses, means "bitter; born when parents were in sore distress, at a time of bondage, or amidst bitter trials." The word "land" is purely Teutonic in origin; the English form is derived from the Anglo-Saxon word "lond" or "land."

**NICKNAMES:** Maryland is known as the Cockade State, from the patrician make-up of the Old Maryland Line, the young men of which wore brilliant cockades. It is also called the Monumental State, from the superior monumental trophies which give the same adjective to the city of Baltimore. The Old Line State is a common name for Maryland, which in the early colonial days was the dividing line between the crown land grants of William Penn and those of Lord Baltimore. Also the term comes from Maryland's having the only regular troops of "the line" in the Revolutionary War. They were held in high respect. Because of her many oyster fisheries Maryland is known as the Oyster State. She is sometimes called the Queen State from the fact of the origin of her name.

The people of Maryland are called Craw-thumpers and Oysters—the latter because of the oyster industry's importance, and the former because the Maryland fishermen first used that term as a nickname for lobsters, and afterward came to be known by themselves.

**STATE FLOWER:** Black-eyed susan (*Rudbeckia hirta*); approved in 1918.

**STATE SONG:** "My Maryland," written by James Ryder Randall in 1861, set to the German tune "O

Tannenbaum." While never officially adopted, it is universally admired and accepted as belonging to the state. The tune has been used by several other states for their state songs.

**STATE FLAG:** Quartered, the first and fourth with six vertical bars of gold and black, with a diagonal band upon which the colors are reversed, the second and third with red and white field charged with a Greek cross, its arms terminating in trefoils, all being as represented upon the escutcheon of the seal of Maryland.

**STATE MOTTO:** "Scuto Bonae Voluntatis Tuae Coronasti Nos," signifying "With the Shield of Thy Goodwill Thou Hast Covered Us," from the Latin version of the Bible. Also on the seal is the old Calvert motto, in Italian, "Fatti Maschii Parole Femine," meaning "Manly deeds, womanly words," or "Deeds are males; words, females."

**STATE BIRD:** Baltimore oriole; protected by legislative act but never officially adopted as the state bird.

**INTERESTING FACTS:** The first telephone message was sent from Baltimore to Washington in 1884.

Maryland is the only state whose capitol dates from colonial days.

Maryland had the first railroad, the first electric car, and the first telephone. And early in the last century she helped build the Cumberland, or National, Road, which connected Ohio and the West with a road already opened between Baltimore and Hagerstown. Before the day of railroads she was active in building canals; one of these, the Chesapeake and Delaware Canal between Chesapeake and Delaware bays, is still in use.

Maryland was the first state to pass a child-labor law.

Maryland observes New Year's Day, Washington's Birthday, Good Friday, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Columbus Day, Election Day, Armistice Day, Thanksgiving Day, Christmas Day, Maryland Day on March 25th, Defenders' Day on September 12th, and Repudiation Day on November 23rd.

<b>Population of state, 1940, 1,821,244</b>	Kent (G2) . . . . . 13,465
<b>Counties</b>	Montgomery (E2) . . . . . 83,912
Allegany (B1) . . . 86,973	Prince Georges (F3) . . . . . 89,490
Anne Arundel (F2) . . . . . 68,375	Queen Annes (G3) . . . . . 14,476
Baltimore (F2) . . . 155,825	St. Marys (F4) . . . 14,626
Baltimore City (F2) . . . . . 859,100	Somerset (H4) . . . 20,965
Calvert (F3) . . . 10,484	Talbot (G3) . . . 18,784
Caroline (H3) . . . 17,549	Washington (D1) . . 68,838
Carroll (E7) . . . 39,054	Wicomico (H4) . . . 34,530
Cecil (H1) . . . . 26,407	Worcester (J4) . . . 21,245
Charles (F4) . . . 17,612	
Dorchester (G4) . . 28,006	
Frederick (E2) . . . 57,312	
Garrett (A1) . . . . 21,981	
Harford (B1) . . . . 35,960	
Howard (F2) . . . . 17,175	

### Cities, Towns, and Villages

Aberdeen (G1) . . . 1,525
Accident (H1) . . . . 236
Annapolis * (G3) . . 13,069

Baltimore *	Charlotte Hall
(F2) . . . . . 859,100	(F4) . . . . . 82
Barclay (H2) . . . 119	Chesapeake
Barton (A1) . . . 781	Beach (F3) . . . 326
Bel Air (G1) . . . 1,885	Chesapeake City
Berlin (J4) . . . . 1,435	(H1) . . . . . 1,094
Betterton (G2) . . 221	Chestertown *
Bladensburg	(G2) . . . . . 2,760
(F3) . . . . . 1,220	Church Hill
Bloomington	(H2) . . . . . 316
(A2) . . . . . 338	Clear Spring
Boonsboro (D1) . . 938	(D1) . . . . . 500
Bowie (F2) . . . . 767	Colmar Manor
Brentwood (F3) . . 2,433	(F3) . . . . . 1,480
Brookville (E2) . . 262	Crisfield * (H5) . . 3,908
Brunswick *	Crumpton (H2) . . 243
(D2) . . . . . 3,856	Cumberland *
Burkittsville	(B1) . . . . . 39,483
(D2) . . . . . 177	
Cambridge *	Deer Park (A2) . . . 329
(G3) . . . . . 10,102	Delmar <sup>1</sup> (H4) . . . 1,184
Capitol Heights	Denton (H3) . . . . 1,572
(F3) . . . . . 2,036	
Cecilton (H2) . . . 498	East New
Centreville (G2) . . 1,141	Market (H3) . . . 267
	Easton * (G3) . . . 4,528

<sup>1</sup> Population of Delmar town, Sussex County, Del.: 881 in 1940.

# **MARYLAND—Continued**

Elkton * (H1).	3,518
Emmitsburg (E1) .	1,412
Fairmount Heights (F3)	1,391
Federalburg (H3)	1,748
Frederick * (E2).	15,802
Friendsville (A1)	569
Frostburg * (B1)	7,659
Funkstown (D1)	798
Gaithersburg (E2)	1,021
Galena (H2)	250
Garrett Park (E2)	406
Glen Echo (E3).	395
Goldsboro (H2) .	197
Grantsville (A1)	465
Greensboro (H3)	737
Hagerstown * (D1)	32,491
Hampstead (F1)	664
Hancock (C1)	940
Havre de Grace * (G1)	4,967
Hebron (H4)	804
Hillsboro (H3)	181
Hurlock (H3)	800
Hyattsville * (F3)	6,575

Indian Head (E3) .	1,104
Keedysville (D2)	404
Kensington (E2)	931
Kitzmillersville (H2) . . . . .	870
La Plata (F3)	488
Laurel * (F2)	2,823
Laytonsville * (E2)	127
Leonardtown (F4)	668
Lonaconing (B1).	2,429
Luke (A2)	988
Manchester (F1)	763
Mardela Springs (H4)	418
Marydel (H2)	78
Middletown (D2)	839
Midland (B1)	935
Millington (H2)	307
Mountain Lake Park (A2)	551
Mount Airy (E2)	791
Mount Rainier * (F3)	4,830
Myersville (D1)	310
New Market (E2)	360

New Windsor (E1)	529
Northeast ‡ (H1) .	1,328
Oakland (A2)	1,587
Ocean City (J4)	1,052
Oxford (G3)	826
Perryville (G1)	729
Pocomoke City * (H4)	2,739
Point of Rocks (D2)	370
Poolesville (E2)	204
Port Deposit (G1)	883
Preston (H3)	369
Princess Anne (H4)	942
Queenstown (B2)	275
Ridgely (H3)	920
Rising Sun (G1)	529
Riverdale (F3)	2,330
Rock Hall (G2)	781
Rockville (E2)	2,047
St. Michael's (G3)	1,309
Salisbury * (H4)	13,313
Secretary (G3)	344
Sharpsburg (D2)	834
Sharptown (H4)	653

Smithsburg (D1)	619
Snow Hill (J4)	1,926
Solomons (F4)	266
Sudlersville (H2)	292
Sykesville (F2)	806
Takoma Park (F2)	8,938
Taneytown (E1)	1,208
Thurmont (E1)	1,307
Trappe (G3)	296
Union Bridge (E1)	831
Upper Marlboro (F3)	565
Vienna (H4)	385
Walkersville (E2)	731
Washington Grove (E2)	160
Westernport * (A2)	3,565
Westminster * (F1)	4,692
Willards (J4)	285
Williamsport (D1)	1,772
Woodsboro (E1)	416
DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA	
Washington (E3)	663,091

‡ Name changed from North East in 1938.

---

# **The HISTORY of MASSACHUSETTS**

---

## **Reading Unit No. 20**

### **MASSACHUSETTS: THE BAY STATE**

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

#### ***Interesting Facts Explained***

Where the Pilgrims came in 1620, 8-165  
The world's first written constitution, 8-166  
How the Plymouth colony paid its debts, 8-166-67  
How the clergymen of Massachusetts Bay Colony ruled, 8-167  
How the Massachusetts Bay Col-

ony was organized, 8-171-72  
How the spirit of revolt against England grew, 8 172  
The beginnings of the textile industry in Massachusetts, 8-172  
Where two presidents of the United States were born, 8-174

#### ***Picture Hunt***

Which interesting buildings in Massachusetts were built in the eighteenth century? 8-165, 166, 167

What are the chief industries of Massachusetts? 8-170, 171, 172, 173, 175

#### ***Related Material***

Why has Miles Standish been called "the Captain John Smith of the Plymouth colony"? 7-145  
How we won our freedom, 7-157-59  
The tragedy of our abandoned farms, 7-466

Was John Quincy Adams related to the second president of the United States? 12-481  
Why has a good watch a number of "jewels"? 10-468  
Some writers of Massachusetts, 13-291, 297, 299, 303, 306, 308, 310, 311, 319, 322

#### ***Practical Applications***

What did away with the demand for whale oil? 8-168  
What made Boston the most im-

portant port in America in 1840? 8-170

#### ***Leisure-time Activities***

PROJECT NO. 1: Read Kipling's "Captains Courageous."  
PROJECT NO. 2: Read one of

L. M. Alcott's stories or Hawthorne's "House of the Seven Gables."

#### ***Summary Statement***

The Pilgrims, who came to Plymouth over three hundred years ago, founded the state of Massachusetts, which has done

much to shape the intellectual life of the nation and has played a vital part in the history of the United States.



---

## THE HISTORY OF MASSACHUSETTS

---



Photo by Sohelman Syndicate

From its vantage point on Beacon Hill the gilded dome of the State House can be seen from almost anywhere in Boston. This imposing building, which serves as the capitol of Massachusetts, was built in 1795 from designs by Charles Bullfinch, a noted architect of the period.

Since then it has been added to from time to time. In front of it stretches the public park called Boston Common, which, as early as 1634, was marked off to serve as a pasture and training field for the people of Boston. It has been the scene of stirring events.

### MASSACHUSETTS: *the BAY STATE*

*For Over Three Hundred Years a Steady Stream of Thrifty, Sturdy, Enterprising People Have Been Crossing the Atlantic to Settle in Massachusetts. What They Have Made of the Little State You May Read in the Pages Which Follow*

**N**O AMERICAN can read the story of the first settlement in Massachusetts without a sense of mounting pride. It makes little difference whether your family came over in the "Mayflower" or whether you arrived a year or two ago on a boat from Italy, whether your forbears hunted the wild boar in the German forests in the days of Charlemagne or tended their sheep on the hills of Palestine when David was king. The story belongs to no one racial group and no one national strain. But it does belong to America. And because Americans are descended from men and women who had the high hope and valiant purpose to leave the old behind and tempt the new, the story of the Pilgrims is the story of the forbears of

nearly every one of us in America to-day.

They were not a very worldly-minded folk, that little band of religious exiles who reached our shores late in the December of 1620. If they had been so, they would never have sailed in the autumn, with the wilderness winter ahead of them. About a third of them had left England for Holland to escape persecution, and had been living there for some twelve years. By now they had grown tired of foreign ways and longed to hear the sound of the English tongue once more. The rest of the band belonged to the same religious sect as their friends from Holland—"Separatists," they were called--and had suffered persecution in England as long as could be borne. "I will harry them out of the country,

## THE HISTORY OF MASSACHUSETTS

or else worse," King James the First had said. They had decided that they preferred the harshness of nature to the cruelty of their fellow men.

So they loaded their little possessions into the "Mayflower," and after a stormy voyage of over two months reached Cape Cod, so named by Bartholomew Gosnold (gōs'nūld), who had explored the coast in 1602. They touched at what is now Provincetown—to-day the seat of an artist's colony and a famous summer resort—but finally chose a site at Plymouth, and there they landed, 101 strong, including little Peregrine (pēr'ê-grīn) White, who had been born on ship-board.

But before quitting the tiny boat that had been their crowded home for so many days, they drew up and signed an agreement for their governance in the new land. That famous Mayflower Compact is usually considered to be the world's first written constitution—though its framers had no notion of the fact at the time. They were merely trying to safeguard the future of their colony.

### The First Winter

The first winter was a terrible one. Half the colony died, including John Carver, the governor. Sickness was everywhere. It was during the epidemic that Governor William Bradford, John Carver's successor, wrote, "Of a hundred persons scarce fifty remain. The living scarce able to bury the dead, the well not sufficient to tend the sick, there being, in their time of greatest distress, but six or seven, who spared no pains to help them." And he goes on to add that two of the six or seven were Elder William Brewster and Captain Miles Standish.

But those who had strength enough to work

built a few rude shacks and set up friendly relations with the Massachusetts tribe of Indians, whom they found on the land and from whom the state gets its name—which means "great hills." And when the "Mayflower" went back to England in the spring, no single settler went back with her.



This is the Old State House in Boston, built in 1748. Careful restorations have preserved its charming colonial appearance. It has been in its day a court house, a state house, and a town hall, but now it is used only as a museum.

At first the colonists worked their stony soil in common and divided its produce equally among them. Thousands of miles of stone walls, built of the rock dug out of their farms, tell only too plainly of the back-breaking toil those first farmers had to endure. To-day granite and trap rock are the only important minerals the state produces. Before long each man was assigned a little plot of his own and was allowed to keep what he grew on it.

Having suffered persecution for their own beliefs, the settlers had the courage to set up their new commonwealth in religious freedom and with complete separation

of church and state. They greatly preferred to receive settlers who thought as they did, but they did nothing to interfere with those who disagreed. No government in the world at that time was so liberal and so democratic.

The Plymouth colony never gathered together a great deal of wealth, but it was prosperous and happy, and free from the bitter quarrels that tore the less liberal settlements. The soil was barren, and did not seem "apte to beare olyves for oyle; all kinds of fruits; all kinds of oderiferous trees and date trees, cypresses, and cedars"—which an early voyager had described as growing in the New World. So in order to pay their debt to the company of London merchants who had financed them, the settlers opened a trading post in Maine, and by 1627 their cargoes of beaver skins, fish, and sassafras, at that time

## THE HISTORY OF MASSACHUSETTS



Cambridge can boast the oldest, and one of the leading, institutions of learning in the United States—Harvard University, which is now starting on its fourth century. Massachusetts Hall, the dignified old building shown

above, dates from 1720. It will tell you something of Harvard's colonial days, when its principal aim was "the education of the English and Indian youth in knowledge and godliness."

used for medicine, had wiped out their indebtedness. They were involved in the usual Indian troubles—the Massachusetts Indians belonged to the great Algonquian (äl-gön'-kī-än) group which we have described in our story of Wisconsin. But on the whole the life of the "Old Colony" was peaceful and independent until the English king in 1691 joined its people to the Massachusetts Bay Colony, which had its center at Boston.

### The Puritans of Boston

The men who settled Boston (1630) were of a very different temper. A number of them were well-to-do—the Plymouth colonists had all been poor. A few of the Boston settlers were even gentlemen of learning and culture, though of course the vast majority—there were nearly a thousand—were humble folk, like the people who came in the "Mayflower." But more than all this, the Boston settlers held very rigid religious views and were conservative politically. Their leaders—the Reverend John Cotton, Governor John Winthrop, John Endicott, Thomas Dudley, and the Reverend Richard Mather (mäth'ēr)

—had a profound dislike of democracy, only to be exceeded by their dislike of any religious view that was not their own.

So the great majority of the settlers had nothing to say in the government. For nearly half a century only about a fifth of the grown men might vote. And no one was allowed to hold religious views that conflicted in the slightest degree with those of their ministers, who were Puritan Nonconformists—still members of the Church of England but eager to change its practices in many ways.

### Rule by the Clergy

These clergymen ruled with a rod of iron. No one might openly criticize them, and no one might vote who did not pass certain strict tests for religious opinion. Roger Williams, Ann Hutchinson, and Henry Vane were soon banished for holding too liberal views. In 1644 a number of Baptists suffered very harsh treatment, and shortly after the middle of the century Quakers were flogged, branded, thrown into prison, and a few even put to death. For the Puritans did not intend to be interfered with. They had suffered

## THE HISTORY OF MASSACHUSETTS

bitter ridicule from the upper classes at home, and had finally left England in order to establish an ideal Bible commonwealth in the New World. Nothing was to thwart them in the working out of what had really been a very noble plan.

But happily for the march of civilization an intelligent people cannot be beaten into complete subjection for very long. The colonists themselves grew restive under the stern rule of their leaders, they sickened at the sight of the Quakers' sufferings, and as the young people grew up, they tended to look upon things more tolerantly. As early as 1634 people of broader mind had begun to leave Boston and settle in Connecticut and elsewhere, and by the next century the clergy had been robbed of much of their political power. It was now the merchants who were saying how things should go in the Bay colony.

Meanwhile Massachusetts had been growing more and more prosperous, and was welcoming more and more settlers, many of whom were entirely out of sympathy with the Puritan faith. Religious zeal had never been the only force to drive the capable Puritan folk across the sea. Prices had been going up in England, and many families in the middle and lower classes were feeling the pinch of straitened circumstances. All the emigrants to Massachusetts Bay hoped to make money; and the London company of Puritan merchants who financed them looked for a handsome return.

### The Men of Boston Put to Sea

As early as 1628 John Endicott had brought over some settlers who founded Salem with a view to building up a fishing company there. And later arrivals at the Bay, coming from a long line of ancestors used to the sound of the sea, soon learned that

New England waters would yield a better return than New England soil. Accordingly they turned to fishing, and, as one historian tells us, by the time of the Revolution half the young men of Massachusetts "were as much at home upon the sea as upon the land." The colony sent large cargoes of salt cod and other fish back to England. There they found a ready market, for the mother country had for some time been

buying two-thirds of her fish from the Dutch.

Late in the eighteenth century New England fishermen developed the whaling industry, and New Bedford, in Massachusetts, became the world's chief whaling port, though Nantucket and other ports sent out a goodly number of boats. It was an adventuresome calling, with the men who followed it sometimes as long as five years at

sea on a single voyage. The use of petroleum did away with the demand for whale oil, and the industry began to decline soon after the middle of the nineteenth century.

But to this day Massachusetts has a thriving industry in her fisheries, which are the largest in New England. Boston is the world's second fish market, ranking next to London; and Gloucester (glô's'tēr), founded in 1623, has the largest catch of any port in the United States. Here, among thousands of other summer visitors, are a great many artists, who come to paint the graceful boats or the cluttered wharves or the fishermen's cottages, some of them dating back to the seventeenth century. Writers too come to spin their tales about the hardy folk who look death steadily in the face as they ply their trade from Iceland to Virginia or in the dangerous waters of the Grand Banks, off Newfoundland. They have been admirably pictured in Kipling's "Captains Courageous."

So Massachusetts still keeps much of her



An old stone fence like the one above carries us back to the days of Massachusetts' early settlers. As those industrious and courageous people cleared the land for farming, they piled the rocks they found scattered endlessly through their fields into neat walls to serve as boundaries.

---

## THE HISTORY OF MASSACHUSETTS

---



Massachusetts is famous for its many excellent schools and colleges. The photograph above shows the hand-

some tower of one of the buildings of Wellesley College, a well-known college for women.

old love of the sea, and makes a large sum from her annual catch of cod, haddock, mackerel, herring, and halibut. That is why she still keeps in her statehouse at Boston a large mounted cod—laughingly known as “the sacred cod” but symbol of her prosperity.

### The Home of Famous Ships

Now fishermen must put to sea in boats—which in the early days were nothing but little wooden shells, pitifully frail in combat with the storms of the North Atlantic. To replace their short-lived craft and make them as seaworthy as might be, the men of the Massachusetts colonies set about the business of shipbuilding. Magnificent forests were about them on every hand, and—as you may read in our story of Connecticut—hardship and the wilderness soon sharpened their wits in a really wonderful way.

The largest trees were always marked with an arrow and so reserved to make masts for the king’s navy. But the colonists rebelled against the custom, and many a forest giant found its way into the hull of one of the

graceful ships that the builders of Massachusetts—and of all New England—soon learned to construct. Shipbuilding became one of the great industries of the colony; and before the coming of steamships closed the great majority of the shipyards, the little state was selling her clipper ships to all the western seafaring nations.

### Cargoes for the Clippers

Now these white-winged birds of the deep were meant for much more exciting work than bringing home cod. They were built for speed, and at the close of the eighteenth century were ranging as far as China and India for the cargoes of tea and other luxuries that the staid New Englanders were coming to prize as they increased in wealth and laid aside their Puritan ways. All up and down the Atlantic the trim boats sped, carrying fish, lumber, and provisions to southern colonial ports and to the West Indies. Fish, lumber, rum, and furs went to England—though the absence of long rivers leading from the coast inland made it hard for Massachusetts herself to trade much in

## THE HISTORY OF MASSACHUSETTS

furs, which had to be bought from the Indians by traders ranging far inland. Newfoundland was glad to buy Massachusetts provisions, and France and Spain to buy cod. Of the tragic triangle made in the trading of molasses, rum, and slaves you may read in our story of Rhode Island. In those days Boston distilled large quantities of rum.

Of course the ships never came home empty. From England they brought back all sorts of manufactured products; from Spain they brought wine; from the West Indies, molasses; and tobacco and perhaps rice from our southern ports. As years went by, especially after the Revolution, the people of Massachusetts had manufactures of their own to sell away from home. And like other colonists they were quite willing to enter into the slave trade.

### Fortunes in Strange Ways

Massachusetts kept her importance in commerce for a great many years. When the mother country passed laws restricting colonial trade, colonists up and down the whole Atlantic seaboard turned, without any apparent qualms of conscience, to smuggling, privateering—or the capture of enemy merchant vessels—and sometimes even to piracy. In this way large fortunes were brought together and many a family made its way into the colonial aristocracy.

After the Revolution Boston began to trade her various wares for the hides and furs of the Pacific coast and the goods of the Orient.

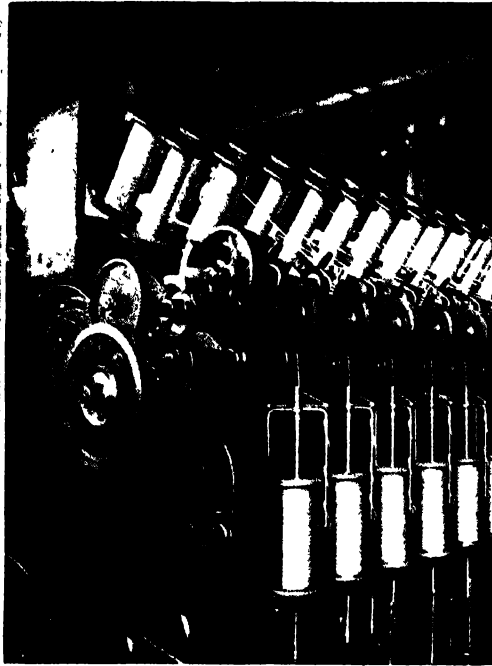
It was her trade in California hides that led to her great shoe manufactures. In 1840 the Cunard line chose Boston as the American terminus of the first trans-Atlantic steamship line, and she became the most important

port in America. But the state neglected to develop railway lines leading to the lands then being opened in the West, and by 1850 Boston's commerce had already begun to fall off, to be replaced by her growing manufactures.

To-day she has a large coastwise trade, and steamship lines to the chief European ports, South America, the Far East, and Australia. She still is among the largest wool markets in the world, London usually heading the list. However, many American cities exceed Boston in the

total volume of their foreign trade. To regain what she once had, Boston now has a long-term plan for modernizing her port.

Massachusetts, of course, has other ports. Fall River, headquarters for a well-known line of steamships, imports coal and oil and has an important trade through the Panama Canal. New Bedford ships large quantities of fish, carries on a trade in various commodities with other United States ports, and operates lines to Martha's Vineyard and Nantucket. Salem, important for commerce in colonial days and center of the witchcraft delusion in 1691, imports coal; Beverly imports Texas oil; and Plymouth has sizable herring fisheries. A canal through Cape Cod, between Sandwich and Buzzard's Bay, has shortened the distance from Boston to New



These gigantic spools and wheels are kept busy in the manufacture of woolens, which, along with cotton goods and worsteds, are among Massachusetts' leading products. The scene is from a textile mill.

## THE HISTORY OF MASSACHUSETTS

York and reduced the danger of the trip.

Bus and trolley lines link the many teeming manufacturing centers, and ample railway facilities connect them with more distant points. Of late Massachusetts, like all thriving industrial centers, has been shipping more and more goods by truck. She is one of the few states to have surfaced the entire length of her state roads.

When the Boston settlers first left England they brought with them a royal charter which gave to "The Governor and Company of the Massachusetts Bay in Newe England" various rights to settle and govern the new colony. The company was supposed to have its headquarters in London, where many of the members lived, but the leaders were shrewd enough to get permission to transfer the charter and management of the company to America. In this way what was really a commercial charter to a commercial company became the charter by which the new colony was free to govern itself. The Puritans were sober, religious folk, but they knew how to drive a shrewd bargain.

### The Habit of Independence

A great deal of power thus came into the hands of those determined leaders whom we have described--and we may be sure that they took all possible pains to see that it remained there. They never bothered the government at home!--and they were so far away and for a long time so unimportant that they attracted little attention. So they went their own way in almost complete freedom, and got so used to acting for themselves that they even coined their own money--some-

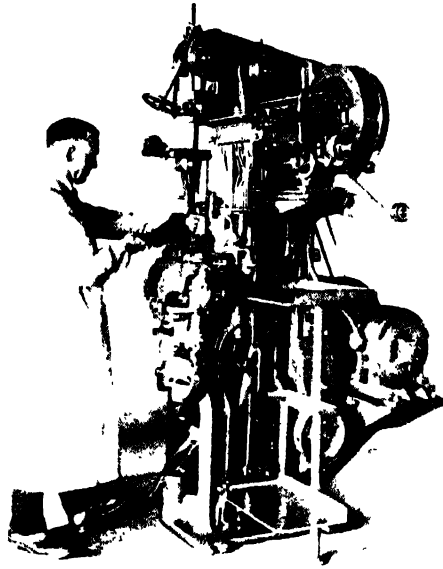
thing no king could tolerate. Before long their friends at home came into power under Cromwell and then of course the colonists were at liberty to govern in almost complete independence of the power across the sea.

There were few ties to bind them to England. They gradually broke entirely with the Church of England, setting up the Congregational church in its stead. They even raised and supported their own troops in their various Indian conflicts—which you may read of in our story of Connecticut—and showed what fighting material they had in the taking of Louisburg from the French (1745), during the French and Indian Wars.

They had organized their colony on the basis of the township, or "town," a unit which might contain a number of

little farming villages, always centering about a church. The town meeting was held annually to transact the business of the township, elect the officers and a board of "selectmen" to govern it, and choose its representative in the colonial assembly. This township system of local government was in force throughout New England, and still is in general use there. The affairs of the colony were handled by the governor, with his "assistants," and the colonial assemblies.

Now all this went smoothly enough until the Stuart kings came back to the English throne in 1660. They believed in the power of the crown, and began to make their ideas felt even across the Atlantic. The colonists resisted and evaded and played for time, but in 1684 their charter was annulled and a governor was appointed by the King. In 1686 the post was given to Sir Edmund Andros, a



Boot and shoe factories, and tanneries as well, are very important in Massachusetts. Here you see one of the many fascinating machines used in the shoe industry. This particular one nails heels to shoes.

## THE HISTORY OF MASSACHUSETTS

man who made himself so unpopular that when William III seized the throne in England (1688), the people of Boston rose and threw Andros into prison.

### The Spirit of Revolt

But the trouble went right on. Massachusetts received a new charter (1691), but her old liberties were gone. European nations had always looked upon colonies as a money-making device, to be operated for the benefit of the mother country. England, though better in this respect than some of the other nations, was grieved and amazed when her colonies in North America resented her interference with their trade, her hampering of their industries, and the taxes she laid upon them. There was constant friction everywhere, but worst of all in Massachusetts, where the colonists suffered most and had had their own way for so long. The story of their mounting ire, of the Boston Massacre, and of the Boston Tea Party you may read on other pages of these books. With the Battle of Lexington (1775), the Revolutionary War was on.

The story of that struggle and of Massachusetts' valiant part in it need not be told here. She furnished money and ships and men—and much of the revolutionary spirit that kept the cause alive when all seemed lost. For though political and religious liberty had not been her contribution to the New World, a spirit of independence was part of the very air she breathed. After the war was over, she played an important part in drawing up the federal constitution—though she might not have been so ready to submit to it had it not been for the threat of Shays's Rebellion, which we have told of elsewhere.

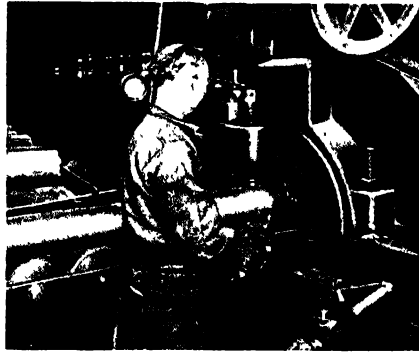
It was after the Revolution that Massachusetts began to turn her attention most seriously to manufactures. The idea was not

a new one. Her farmers had always used the winter months in the manufacture of homemade implements, tools, and furniture; and from an early day the fishermen of Essex County had been making shoes during the winter, when the weather was too stormy for boats to put to sea. The state's swift streams and waterfalls seemed made by Nature to turn factory wheels. And natural Yankee inventiveness led the men of Massachusetts—and of all New England—to look upon any bit of machinery with delight and fascination.

Before 1800 the first woolen and cotton mills were set up—the beginning of a textile industry in which Massachusetts long led all the other states. In the next forty years busy manufacturing towns were springing up on all the important rivers. The Merrimack, in its short course through New Hampshire and Massachusetts, is said to turn more spindles than any other river in the world. Lowell, with its great cotton mills; Lawrence, with its factories for making worsted goods; Haverhill (hāv'rīl), sometimes called the Slipper City, which makes a large part of the women's shoes worn in the United States, and Newburyport, with a variety of products—all these centers rely on the Merrimack for a large part of their power.

### Massachusetts' Many Wares

Of course those cities have many other industries as well. Lowell, which calls itself "the workshop of the world," has some of the world's largest hosiery and underwear mills. It turns out sailcloth, tanned leather, and pneumatic tubes in large quantities, as well as worsteds, boots and shoes, and an amazing variety of other articles. When the South began to cut into the city's cotton goods industry, the people of Lowell were intelligent enough to start a textile school (1895), to keep their chief manufacture from



The ignenuity of the people of Massachusetts is well shown in its great variety of industries. Above is a scene from a typical metal-working factory; it shows the machine which cuts the thread on the end of a pipe.



## THE HISTORY OF MASSACHUSETTS



These sturdy little fishing boats are tied up at the Boston fish pier, so that their owners may sell their catch in the largest fish market in the New World. Boats like these often stay out as long as several days—or

even a month—at a time. It depends upon how quickly their holds can be filled. Meanwhile their quick-witted skippers may have to deal with plenty of heavy weather and many a dense fog.

falling behind. Lawrence, on a series of waterfalls, makes paper and watches. Haverhill has a brick industry and manufactures woolen hats.

### **Silk, Paper, Shoes, and Leather**

But these are only a few of the great industrial centers in a state which, though it ranks forty-fourth in size, comes third in density of population and ranks high in the value of its manufactured output. Probably our country produces no purer silk than that manufactured at Holyoke, on the falls of the Connecticut River. Holyoke has large paper mills, also. Brockton long made more shoes than any other city in the world. Its factories specialize in men's shoes, while those at Lynn specialize in women's shoes. Malden is jokingly known as the Gum Shoe City. And many other towns engage in the manufacture of boots and shoes, in which Massachusetts formerly led the states. Since she is a home of this great industry, it is hardly strange that she should have vast tanneries, that Boston should be our country's greatest leather market, and that the state should lead the world in the production of machinery

used in manufacturing shoes and slippers.

Fall River, sometimes called our country's leading mill town, is one of its chief centers for cotton manufacture. Her good harbor and excellent water power make it possible for her to compete with cotton mills in the South in spite of the fact that she must import both coal and cotton. Besides her cotton manufactures she makes hats, shirts, and curtains, weaves silk, and refines oil. On the Taunton River she has a great plant for manufacturing electricity.

### **A Mile of Cloth a Minute**

New Bedford, another cotton manufacturing center, specializes in fine yard goods, which she turns out at the amazing rate of a mile a minute. Because she thus specializes she has suffered less from southern competition, which has practically wiped out whole towns in Massachusetts—though of late conditions have improved greatly. At New Bedford is the State Textile School.

Plymouth, besides having a thriving tourist trade, has the world's largest cordage works, in which she makes rope of fiber which Plymouth boats bring home from Yucatan. The

## THE HISTORY OF MASSACHUSETTS

historic harbor received its name from Captain John Smith, who explored the Massachusetts coast in 1614. Plymouth is a center for cranberries. Taunton manufactures a good many articles, with cotton goods, britania ware—made of an alloy of various metals—and stoves among her products.

Pittsfield, on the Housatonic (hōōs'ā-tōn'ik) River, turns out enormous electrical transformers, as well as other electrical apparatus, and besides manufacturing fine stationery, makes all the paper used by the United States government for its bonds and bank notes. Pittsfield also makes a variety of other articles—such as machinery, woolen goods, silk braid, and spool silk—and yet she finds time to entertain large numbers of visitors with her winter sports.

### The World's Largest Watch Factory

At Waltham is the world's largest watch factory. Gardner makes furniture, as well as baby carriages, oil stoves, silverware, and time clocks. Chicopee (chik'ō-pē), on the Connecticut and the rushing Chicopee River, has cotton mills and numerous other factories that turn out firearms, swords, automobiles, agricultural implements, and gymnasium apparatus.

Springfield, on the Connecticut River, has a large government factory for making small arms for the United States Army. She also makes automobiles, revolvers, electrical apparatus and equipment, foundry and machine-shop products, bread and bakery stuffs, confectionery, and paper goods; in all she turns out nearly fifteen hundred products. Because she is a center for railways, highways, and airways she ships her manufactures far and wide.

Fitchburg too makes revolvers, as well as paper, foundry and machine-shop products, woolen-worsted goods, shoes, shirts, yarn, axle grease, and brass articles. Attleboro makes jewelry. And dozens of other smaller towns have good-sized factories that keep up a merry hum to support the surrounding population. For Massachusetts has led all the other states in the manufacture, not only of various articles which we have named, but also of linen, leather belting, bicycles, motorcycles, stationery, fireworks, silverware,

sporting and athletic goods, and garters and suspenders. Lately she has added plastics.

Cambridge is the state's third largest city. Here Harvard was established and here the first printing press in America was set up. Cambridge still does a great deal of publishing and printing, and still is an important intellectual center, but to-day she has a busy industrial life as well, and makes machinery, rubber goods, candy, soap, bakery products, and scores of other articles.

### Busy Worcester

Worcester (wōōs'tēr), the second city, began to use her water power as early as 1800, and by 1825 she was making an amazing variety of useful articles. She had a canal to Providence in those days, and could ship her goods wherever she would. To-day she produces all sorts of manufactured articles in great quantities—machine tools, wire and wire products, mill machinery, envelopes, belts, grindstones, corsets, brooms, and automobile crank shafts. Massachusetts leads the world in making machinery for the manufacture of textiles.

Boston, the capital, is the state's principal city and largest manufacturing center. Her history is largely the history of the state, and both are closely woven into the history of the nation. Her industries would make a list much too long to print here. Among them are clothing, confectionery, boots and shoes, foundry and machine-shop products, bread and bakery products, cocoa and chocolate products, electrical apparatus and machinery, furniture, druggists supplies, and patent medicines. Besides this she has large printing, publishing, and meat-packing industries, and builds ships in the Charlestown Navy Yard.

### Birthplace of Two Presidents

Quincy, too, farther down the coast, has large shipyards, as well as important manufactures and quarries of the well-known Quincy granite. It was the birthplace of John Adams and John Quincy Adams, both of them president of the United States. Somerville, also near Boston, is another city with a large industrial output.

Of course Massachusetts has suffered with all New England through the closing of her

## THE HISTORY OF MASSACHUSETTS



Have you a pair of shoes waiting to be cut from one of these great hides? Perhaps not—yet almost certainly

you have already worn leather prepared in some Massachusetts factory much like the one above.

mills—we have discussed the problem in our story of New Hampshire. But the Bay State has been a leader in organizing the New England region for coöperative action, and is fast regaining her old prosperity. Her sturdy enterprise is leading her to develop new industries and new methods of organization.

### The Massachusetts Melting Pot

In reading our account of the many Massachusetts industries it must have occurred to you to wonder where the people came from to tend her millions of machines. The answer is that they came from all over the world, for of course the descendants of the Puritans would be far too few in number to create such a vast amount of wealth. About a quarter of her population is foreign-born, with Canadians far in the lead, and Irish, Italians, English, Poles, Russians, Swedes, Scotch, Portuguese, Germans, Czechoslovakians, Austrians, and Hungarians following in the order named. Nearly two-thirds of her inhabitants are foreign-born or of foreign descent.

This large immigration of foreigners coming to work in her mills has given Massachusetts a considerable educational problem. Yet her opportunities for learning are hardly to be equaled. From earliest days she has led in the quality of her primary education; and Harvard University, one of our greatest institutions for higher education, was founded

as early as 1636. It has been followed by a large number of other colleges. Williams College (1793), Amherst College, Boston University, Tufts College, Clark University, the Massachusetts Institute of Technology, Worcester Polytechnic Institute, Mount Holyoke College, Smith College, Wellesley College, and Radcliffe College, connected with Harvard—all are outstanding institutions. The last four are for women. The Boston Latin School is one of the oldest schools in the United States. Phillips Andover and Groton (grôt'un) are well-known private schools.

But in spite of all this effort there is considerable illiteracy, almost entirely among the foreigners. The fact that large numbers of children are employed in the cotton mills makes the problem doubly hard to handle. In Fall River over eighteen percent of the children between the ages of ten and fifteen go to work in the mills.

The presence of textile and certain other kinds of factories in which light skilled work is in demand has attracted a great many women workers to Massachusetts, with the result that women considerably outnumber men in the state's population.

Of course people who work in factories must live in or near towns. No other state has so many cities of more than 50,000 inhabitants. Less than ten percent of the population is rural, and there are not many states in which fewer people live on farms.

## THE HISTORY OF MASSACHUSETTS

But Massachusetts' crops still pay well. Hay leads, with tobacco and potatoes following. But corn and oats are of value. The state raises apples, grapes, and small fruits. Cranberries alone are an exceedingly valuable crop. The large demand from people living in cities has put life into the raising of garden truck and poultry, and into the dairying industry. As a result fewer young people are leaving the farms for the cities.

But the soil of Massachusetts will always be poor, and the winter climate too severe for many sorts of crops. The islands of Nantucket and of Martha's Vineyard are milder, and so are parts of the long sandy arm of Cape Cod, but the rest of the coast has fog.

Stone, sand and gravel, lime, clay, and clay products are the chief paying minerals.

### The People of the Uplands

The geological formation of Massachusetts is like that of the rest of New England, which we have described in our story of Maine. The highest elevations are in the Berkshire Hills, in the western part of the state; from there the land slopes gradually through irregular uplands to the narrow coastal plain. The Connecticut River divides the state as it flows through it from north to south, and in its valley contains the best farm land. In an early day its inhabitants were more closely allied in feeling with the people downstream in Connecticut than they were with the more conservative folk along the eastern coast. And the towns in the rugged hill country, where life was dangerous and a living hard to get, were always more democratic than the comfortable, well-to-do trading centers to eastward.

To-day the Berkshires attract a large summer population, as does the picturesque coast as well. Buzzards Bay is famous for yachting, and the beautiful old villages scattered over the state are a haven of rest to tired city people who love beauty and dignity and peace. It is said that during the warm months Massachusetts has a quarter more people than during the rest of the year. This in itself brings her a handsome income. Lately she has been developing winter sports as well.

Massachusetts has always held a leading position in the intellectual life of our country.

Her great names in learning, in statesmanship, in literature and the arts make an amazing list. Boston used to be called "the Hub" because of her importance. The New England writers were the leaders in our national literature, and the various Boston art collections are among the finest on this side of the Atlantic. The city has in the past shaped much of the intellectual life of America.

It is interesting that a state whose roots go so deep into the life and history of our country should now have so large a percentage of foreign-born citizens. But in that too she is typically American. It would seem a pity that the descendants of those courageous men and women who suffered so much to find freedom and opportunity should now be the ones to deny freedom and opportunity to others. Massachusetts has welcomed her new citizens, even though she could not understand their tongue, and has had fine success in teaching them to become Americans. Their record of patriotic effort during the World Wars was superb.

### The Gifts Our Immigrants Bring

And she expects fine things of them in serving other ideals that she holds dear. Many of them come from nations long famed in the arts, and into the bustle of the great industrial cities whose wealth they are helping to build they bring a love of beauty harking back to the castles and cathedrals, the folk songs and dances of nations far beyond the sea. Surely as they learn our ways they will give this instinct a new and forceful expression. For in the words of Mr. Franklin K. Lane, when he spoke of the artistic contribution of these foreign citizens: "All brought their music, dirge and dance, march and religious chant. . . . All brought their poetry, winged tales of men's many passions, folksongs and psalm, ballads of heroes and tunes of the sea, lilting scraps caught from sky and field, or mighty dramas that tell of primal struggles of the profoundest meaning. . . . All brought their art, fancies of the mind, woven in wood, silk, stone or metal."

From such priceless heirlooms these later pilgrims to Massachusetts will help build her a future worthy of her past.

## MASSACHUSETTS

**AREA:** 8,257 square miles—44th in rank.

**LOCATION:** Massachusetts is one of the New England states, lying approximately between 41° 15' and 42° 50' N. Lat. and between 69° 55' and 73° 30' W. Long. It is bounded on the north by Vermont and New Hampshire, on the east by the Atlantic Ocean, on the south by the Atlantic, Rhode Island, and Connecticut, and on the west by New York.

**PHYSICAL FEATURES:** East of the Connecticut River the land of Massachusetts is an upland that slopes gradually to the sea. West of the river are the fine Berkshire Hills, a part of the eastern belt of mountains that belongs to the Appalachian system. In this state they are divided into several small ranges, and in Mount Greylock rise to a height of 3,505 feet. Mount Tom, Mount Williams, Mount Toby, and Mount Holyoke are other well-known summits. Between the Connecticut River (407 m. long) and the Housatonic (148 m. long), both of which cross the state, run the Hoosac Hills, with an elevation of from 1,200 to 1,600 feet. Mount Lincoln, Mount Wachusett, and the Blue Hills are all east of the Connecticut. The southeastern part of the state is low and sandy. An irregular coast line gives Massachusetts many good harbors, among which Boston, Buzzard's Bay, Provincetown, Marblehead, and Gloucester are all well-known. Cape Ann in the north and Cape Cod in the south reach out long arms to inclose Massachusetts Bay. Cape Cod Bay lies within the circle of Cape Cod. Nantucket and Martha's Vineyard are large islands off the state's southern coast. Both of them have good harbors. The only river of importance in eastern Massachusetts is the Merrimack (110 m. long), which, though small, provides an abundance of water power. Massachusetts has 227 square miles of water, in which a large number of lakes are included. There is no irrigated land.

**CLIMATE:** The mean Jan. temperature at Boston is 28° F.; the mean July temperature, 72° F. The record high at Boston is 104°; the record low, -18°. The mean summer average for the state is 70°; the mean winter average at Williamstown is 23°. The annual rainfall varies between 38 and 48 inches. Massachusetts has long cold winters, short springs, and summers that are likely to be agreeable, though the temperature can go high at times. Fog is common along the eastern coast, and the northeast wind is considerably dreaded. The autumns are usually fine and bracing, especially in the western highlands. The southeast coast and the islands offshore are a good deal milder than the rest of the state, and less changeable.

**INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING:** Massachusetts maintains normal schools at Bridgewater, Fitchburg, Framingham, Lowell, North Adams, Salem, Westfield, and Worcester. Some of the country's leading junior colleges are located in Massachusetts. The Massachusetts School of Art at Boston gives training to teachers. Among colleges and universities are Harvard University at Cambridge, Amherst College at Amherst, Boston University at Boston, Boston College at Chestnut Hill, Williams College at Williamstown, Tufts College at Medford, Clark University at Worcester, the College of the Holy Cross at Worcester, Northeastern University at Boston, the Massachusetts Institute of Technology at Cambridge, the Massachusetts State College of agriculture at Amherst, the Worcester Polytechnic Institute at Worcester, American International College at Springfield, Atlantic Union College at South Lancaster, International Y. M. C. A. College at Springfield, Regis College at Weston, Simmons College at Boston, Wheaton College at Norton, Smith College at Northampton, Wellesley

College at Wellesley, Mount Holyoke College at South Hadley, Radcliffe College at Cambridge—the last seven are for women—and the Lowell Textile Institute. At Fall River and New Bedford there are other textile schools, and the state also has the Massachusetts Nautical School.

Massachusetts has more important libraries than any other state in the Union, and Boston has the largest free municipal library in the world. Every city and town in the state has a free public library. Among other well-known libraries in Massachusetts are the library of Harvard University, the State Library, the library of the Massachusetts Historical Society, the library of the New England Historical Genealogical Society, the Boston Athenaeum, the library of the American Antiquarian Society at Worcester, and the library of the Essex Institute at Salem.

**INSTITUTIONS FOR THE PROMOTION OF CULTURE AND OF THE ARTS:** The Massachusetts School of Art at Boston, the Boston Museum of Fine Arts at Boston, the art collection of Mrs. John L. Gardner at Boston, and the Museum of Natural History at Boston. Boston has one of the finest symphony orchestras in the world, as well as the New England Conservatory of Music. Every summer a music festival is held in the Berkshires at Lenox.

**CHARITIES AND CORRECTION:** The state maintains insane hospitals at Boston, Danvers, Grafton, Foxborough, Medfield, Northampton, Taunton, Westboro, and Worcester. At Monson is a hospital for epileptics. At Tewksbury is a state infirmary, and at Rutland, North Reading, Lakeville, and Westfield are sanatoriums for the treatment of tuberculosis. Boston has the Boston Psychopathic Hospital, and Norfolk also has a state hospital. The Perkins Institute for the Blind is a famous private institution. At Waverley, Wrentham, and Belchertown are schools for the feeble-minded. An industrial school for boys is maintained at Shirley and one for girls at Lancaster; at Canton is a hospital school for the care and training of crippled children. The Lyman School for Boys is a reformatory at Westboro; a similar farm for younger boys is maintained at Berlin. At Framingham is a reformatory for women, at Concord one for men. The state prison is at Charlestown, a prison colony at Norfolk, a prison camp and hospital at Rutland, and a farm for delinquents and defective criminals at Bridgewater. Massachusetts inflicts the death penalty by electrocution.

**POLITICAL FACTS:** Massachusetts still operates under the constitution of 1780, to which later amendments have been made. The legislature, called the General Court, meets annually and consists of two houses: the Senate, with 40 members elected for two years, and the House of Representatives, with 240 members elected every second year and apportioned to the various counties in the state.

The governor is elected in alternate years, and at the time of his election must have been a resident of the state for seven years. He has a council composed of eight members who, like other state officials, are elected in alternate years.

The governor appoints judicial officers with the consent of his council. They hold office during good behavior. The supreme judicial court is made up of a chief justice and six associates, and the superior court consists of a chief justice and 31 associates. Each county has a probate court and a court of insolvency, with the same judge and register.

All United States citizens may vote provided that they are not paupers or under guardianship, that they can read and write the English language, and have lived in the state one year and in the district six months.

## MASSACHUSETTS—Continued

Municipal governments may be established by the General Court in towns of more than 12,000 population. Unincorporated towns are governed by selectmen elected annually at town meetings. Cities and towns may adopt the commission form of government. The township form of government has come down from colonial days in Massachusetts.

The capital of the state is at Boston.

**NATIONAL HISTORIC SITES:** The Adams Mansion is preserved as the home of Presidents John Adams and John Quincy Adams. The Salem Maritime Site contains relics of early maritime history.

**GAME AND BIRD RESERVATIONS:** Monomoy National Wildlife Refuge in Barnstable County preserves birds, and Parker River Refuge in Essex County preserves birds and muskrats.

Massachusetts has 1,651 acres of national forest.

**NAME:** The name of the original colony was taken from the name of the bay, which in turn derived its name from the Massachusetts Indians, who peopled its shores in the early days. The tribe from which the name was taken lived around the so-called "great hills," which in the Indian language were called "massa," meaning "great," and "wachusett," signifying "a mountain place." John Cotton asserted that the name meant "a hill in the form of an arrowhead," but Roger Williams has written, "The Massachusetts were so called from the blue hills."

**NICKNAMES:** Massachusetts is called the Baked Bean State because Boston is famous for its baked beans. In the early Puritan days brown bread and baked beans were served as the regular Sunday meal, for they could be prepared on the Saturday before. They still are a common Saturday night dish in New England. That part of the state which was included within the original Plymouth colony is known as the Old Colony. Massachusetts is called the Bay State

from Cape Cod Bay, where early settlements were made. The Puritan State is a title that comes logically from the region's early settlement by Puritans.

The people of Massachusetts are called Baked Beans and Puritans.

**STATE FLOWER:** The mayflower (*Epigaea repens*), also commonly known as the trailing arbutus or the ground laurel; adopted in 1918.

**STATE SONG:** Massachusetts has no official state song, but "Massachusetts," with words and music by C. W. Krogmann, has been selected by the Massachusetts Federation of Women's Clubs and is sung throughout the state.

**STATE FLAG:** The flag bears on one side a representation of the coat of arms of the commonwealth on a white field, and on the other side a blue shield bearing a representation of a green pine tree on a white field; adopted in 1915.

**STATE MOTTO:** "Ense Petit Placidam Sub Libertate Quietem," signifying "With the Sword She Seeks Peace under Liberty"—attributed to Algernon Sydney, an English political writer (1622-1683); probably written by him in the album of the University of Copenhagen.

**STATE BIRD:** The veery was adopted by the State Federation of Women's Clubs as the state bird in 1931, but the chickadee has since displaced it.

**INTERESTING FACTS:** Massachusetts observes New Year's Day, Lincoln's Birthday by governmental proclamation, Washington's Birthday, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Columbus Day, Armistice Day, Thanksgiving Day, Christmas Day, Patriots' Day on April 19th, and Arbor and Bird Day on April 24th.

Population of state, 1940, 4,316,721	as urban in 1940 and 1930, those marked with an asterisk (*) were classified as urban under special rule]		
Counties			
Barnstable (G6) 37,295	Abington town * (F4) . . . . . 5,708	Braintree town * (E4) . . . . . 16,378	Fairhaven town * (F6) . . . . . 10,938
Berkshire (A3) 122,273	Adams town * (A2) . . . . . 12,608	Bridgewater town * (F3) . . . . . 8,902	Fall River (E6) 115,428
Bristol (E5) 164,637	Amesbury town * (F1) . . . . . 10,862	Brockton (E4) 62,343	Fitchburg (D2) 41,824
Dukes (F7) 5,669	Amherst town * (B3) . . . . . 6,410	Brookline town * (E4) . . . . . 49,786	Frammingham town * (E3) 23,214
Essex <sup>1</sup> (F2) 496,313	Andover town * (E2) . . . . . 11,122	Cambridge (E3) 110,879	Franklin town * (E1) . . . . . 7,103
Franklin <sup>2</sup> (B2) 49,453	Arlington town * (E3) . . . . . 40,013	Canton town * (E4) . . . . . 6,381	Gardner (D2) . . . 20,206
Hampden (B4) 332,107	Athol town * (C2) . . . . . 11,180	Chelsea (E3) 41,259	Gloucester (F2) 24,046
Hampshire <sup>2</sup> (B3) 72,461	Attleboro (E5) 22,071	Chicopee (B4) . . 41,664	Great Barrington town * (A4) . . . 5,824
Middlesex <sup>1</sup> (E3) . . . . . 971,390	Auburn town * (D4) . . . . . 6,629	Clinton town * (D3) . . . . . 12,440	Greenfield town * (B2) . . . . . 15,672
Nantucket (G1) 3,401	Ayer town * (D2) 3,572	Concord town * (E3) . . . . . 7,972	Haverhill (E1) 46,752
Norfolk (E4) 325,180	Barnstable town * (G4) . . . . . 8,333	Dalton town * (A3) . . . . . 4,206	Hingham town * (F3) . . . . . 8,003
Plymouth (F5) 168,824	Belmont town * (A6) . . . . . 26,867	Danvers town * (F2) . . . . . 14,179	Holyoke (B4) . . . 53,750
Suffolk (E3) . . . 863,248	Beverly (F2) 25,537	Dartmouth town * (E6) . . . . . 9,011	Hopedale town * (D1) . . . . . 3,113
Worcester <sup>2</sup> (D3) . . . . . 504,470	Blackstone town * (D4) . . . . . 4,566	Deerham town * (E3) . . . . . 15,508	Hudson town * (D3) . . . . . 8,042
Cities and Towns	Boston (E3) 770,816	Dracut town * (E2) . . . . . 7,339	Ipswich town * (F2) . . . . . 6,348
[All of the places shown below were classified		Dudley town * (D4) . . . . . 4,616	Lawrence (E2) . . 84,323
		Easthampton town * (B3) 10,316	Lee town * (A3) 4,222
		Everett (E3) 46,784	Leominster (D2) 22,226
			Lexington town * (E3) . . . . . 13,187

<sup>1</sup> Part of Essex annexed to Middlesex in 1933.

<sup>2</sup> Parts of Hampshire annexed to Franklin and Worcester in 1938.

# MASSACHUSETTS—Continued

Longmeadow town \* (B4) 5,790  
 Lowell (E2) 101,389  
 Ludlow town \* (C4) 8,181  
 Lynn (F3) 98,123  
  
 Malden (E3) 58,010  
 Mansfield town \* (E4) 6,530  
 Marblehead town \* (F2) 10,856  
 Marlboro (D3) 15,154  
 Maynard town \* (E3) 6,812  
 Medford (E3) 63,083  
 Melrose (E3) 25,333  
 Methuen town \* (E2) 21,880  
 Middleboro town \* (F5) 9,032  
 Milford town \* (D4) 15,388  
 Millbury town \* (D4) 6,983  
 Milton town \* (E3) 18,708  
 Montague town \* (B2) 7,582  
  
 Nantucket town \* (C7) 3,401

Natick town \* (E3) 13,851  
 Needham town \* (E3) 12,445  
 New Bedford (F6) 110,341  
 Newburyport (F1) 13,916  
 Newton (E3) 69,873  
 North Adams (A2) 22,213  
 Northampton (B3) 24,794  
 N. Andover town \* (E2) 7,524  
 N. Attleboro town \* (E2) 10,459  
 Northbridge town \* (D4) 10,242  
 Norwood town \* (E4) 15,383  
  
 Orange town \* (C2) 5,611  
  
 Palmer town \* (C4) 9,149  
 Peabody (F2) 21,711  
 Pittsfield (A3) 49,684  
 Plymouth town \* (F5) 13,100  
 Provincetown town \* (C4) 3,668

Quincy (E3) 75,810  
  
 Randolph town \* (E4) 7,634  
 Reading town \* (E2) 10,866  
 Revere (E3) 34,405  
 Rockland town \* (F4) 8,087  
 Rockport town \* (F2) 3,556  
  
 Salem (F2) 41,213  
 Saugus town \* (E3) 14,825  
 Somerset town \* (E5) 5,873  
 Somerville (E3) 102,177  
 Southbridge town \* (C4) 16,825  
 S. Hadley town \* (B3) 6,856  
 Spencer town \* (D4) 6,641  
 Springfield (B4) 149,554  
 Stoneham town \* (E3) 10,765  
 Stoughton town \* (E4) 8,632  
 Swampscott town \* (F3) 10,761

Taunton (E5) 37,395  
  
 Uxbridge town \* (D4) 6,417  
  
 Wakefield town \* (E2) 16,223  
 Walpole town \* (E4) 7,443  
 Waltham (E3) 40,020  
 Ware town \* (C3) 7,557  
 Watertown town (E3) 35,427  
 Webster town \* (D4) 13,186  
 Wellesley town \* (E3) 15,127  
 Westfield (B4) 18,793  
 West Springfield town \* (B4) 17,135  
 Weymouth town \* (F4) 23,868  
 Whitman town \* (F4) 7,759  
 Winchendon town \* (C2) 6,675  
 Winchester town \* (B5) 15,081  
 Winthrop town \* (F3) 16,768  
 Woburn (E3) 19,751  
 Worcester (D3) 193,694

---

# **The HISTORY of MICHIGAN**

---

## **Reading Unit No. 21**

---

### **MICHIGAN: THE WOLVERINE STATE**

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

#### ***Interesting Facts Explained***

Where the automobile industry thrives, 8-179  
The importance of the Great Lakes to Michigan, 8-179-80  
When Michigan belonged to France, 8-181  
When Cadillac founded Detroit, 8-181

When Michigan's real prosperity began, 8-182  
Michigan's quarrel with Ohio, 8-183  
The Battle Creek cereals, 8-183  
Michigan's heavy industries, 8-184-85

#### ***Things to Think About***

What nicknames have been given to Michigan?  
How did the glacier help the automobile industry in Michigan?  
Which Indian tribes lived in

Michigan?  
Who was Pontiac?  
When did Michigan become a possession of the United States?  
What was the "Walk-in-the-Water"?

#### ***Picture Hunt***

When was the University of Michigan established? 8-180  
What can be grown on Michigan

farms? 8-181, 182  
Where is the center of the automobile industry? 8-183, 184

#### ***Related Matériel***

Why the Americans do not speak French, 7-135-39  
Why has the wolverine an unattractive reputation? 4-359  
How have we made roads of water? 10-269-74  
Of what use are canals in irrigation? 10-540-42  
What discouraged inventors of

the automobile in England in the mid-nineteenth century? 10-278  
How many gasoline automobiles were there in the United States in 1896? 10-278  
What makes an automobile engine stall? 1-307

#### ***Practical Applications***

What did Michigan do with its lumber? 8-184  
What gave Michigan her suprem-

acy in the automobile industry? 8-185

#### ***Leisure-time Activities***

PROJECT NO. 1: Make a toy automobile, 14-38.  
PROJECT NO. 2: Read the

story of the tragedy of the American forests, 2-241-47.



## THE HISTORY OF MICHIGAN

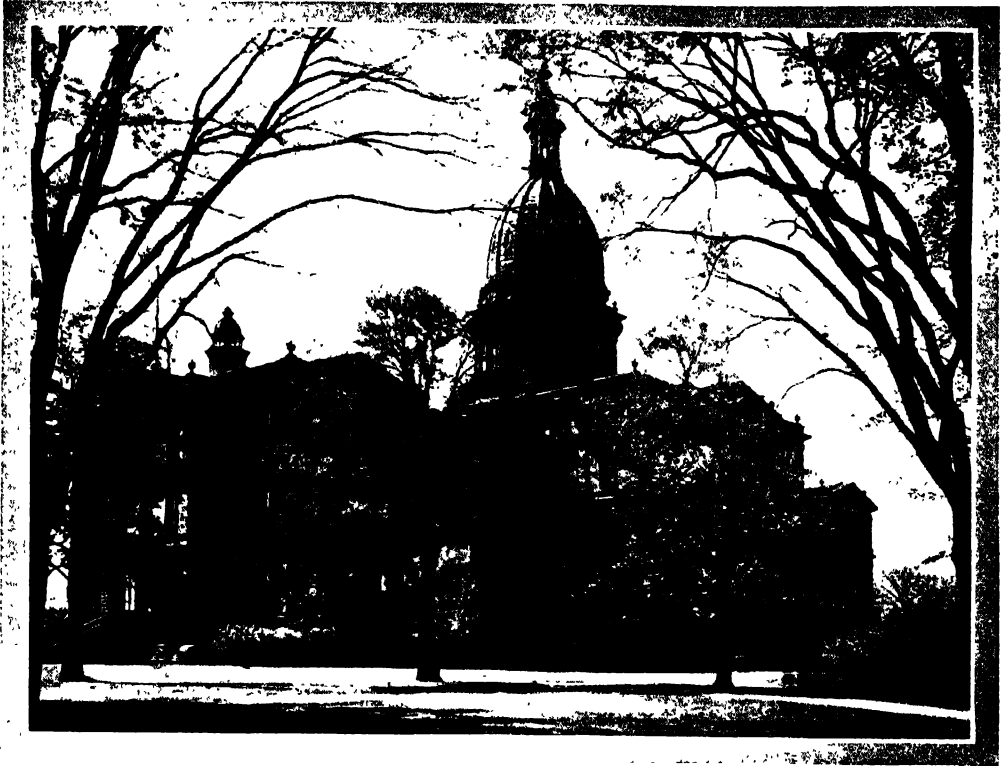


Photo by West Michigan Tourist & Resort Association

The site for the capital of Michigan was chosen in 1847, when the region was still heavily forested. Like other cities in the state, Lansing did not grow very fast

until the railroads came, bringing thousands of settlers with them. Then it began to prosper. The photograph above shows the capitol building at Lansing.

### MICHIGAN: *the* WOLVERINE STATE

#### *A Story That Tells How a Great State with a Varied Past Has Entered the Stirring Field of Modern Industry*

**M**ICHIGAN has one specialty but a good many interests. And because of her varied interests she has a variety of nicknames. She is most often known as the Wolverine State, for in the early day, when her lands were first settled, her deep, wide-spreading forests were filled with wolverines. In fact the woods were so full of fur-bearing animals that for many years trapping was her only important industry. Later she came to be known as the Lake State, for she is nearly surrounded by lakes and makes shipping upon them an important part of her business. No other state of her size can boast of 1,600 miles of coast line.

But the name which Michigan has most recently earned is perhaps the most fitting of all. We call her the Auto State from the millions of automobiles that are made in Detroit and Flint and others of her large cities. Wolverines no longer run wild over Michigan, and trading on the Great Lakes has settled down to a steady routine. But the growth of the automobile industry still goes on apace. It is the most interesting and important feature in Michigan life to-day. It is the thing that first comes to mind whenever we think of this busy state. Though there are a great many other interesting things to know about her, none of them are of such importance to the country

## THE HISTORY OF MICHIGAN



The University of Michigan, one of whose many buildings is shown here, was established in 1817 at Ann

Arbor, in the southeastern part of the state. It is one of the country's important universities.

at large as Michigan's automobile industry.

### The Busy Glacier

Strangely enough, the agent which is largely responsible for these prosperous motor factories disappeared from the earth at least thirty or forty thousand years ago. This was the glacier, which did a great deal of work on this particular piece of earth. First of all it gouged out deep hollows for the Great Lakes. Between the hollows it left two large peninsulas reaching into the lakes and surrounded by water on all sides. These make up the state of Michigan to-day. Thanks to the glacier's work she is easy to reach by water, either from the east or from the west. Then the glacier scraped most of the soil off the northern peninsula, which was high and rocky, and spread it in gently rolling hillocks of smooth rich loam over the flat southern peninsula. The northern peninsula was part of the ancient highlands that we spoke of in our story of Wisconsin. The southern peninsula is smooth and flat because

it once was the shore of an inland ocean which covered all of what is now the Mississippi Valley. With the lifting of the continent the ancient sea retreated toward the present Gulf of Mexico.

### Setting the Stage

But what has all this to do with automobiles? When the glacier scraped the dirt off Michigan's northern peninsula it uncovered the enormous beds of iron and copper ore which are worked there to-day. And when it spread this rich earth over the southern peninsula, it provided a rich surface for farms to raise food for the workers. Besides accomplishing these two things, the glacier flattened out the surface of Michigan so that trains and trucks could make straight, fast runs without having to avoid hills. Even on the northern peninsula, where Michigan is hilliest, the summits rarely rise more than 1,400 feet above the lake surface. In providing the Great Lakes the glacier presented the state with an abundance of cheap trans-

## THE HISTORY OF MICHIGAN

portation. The glacier did very little harm and a great deal of good when it pushed over the face of Michigan and changed the features about.

Who the original inhabitants of these two great peninsulas were we do not know. When the first explorers came, they found the region divided between several tribes of the Algonquian (ăl-gŏn'kĭ-ăn) group of Indians. The most important of these tribes were the Foxes, Hurons, and Ottawas. Originally they came from the valley of the St. Lawrence River, from which they had been driven by the hostile Iroquois (Ir'ô-kwoi) Indians.

The first white settlers and explorers in Michigan were the French, who were friendly to the the Algonquian tribes and helped their red-skinned allies to fight against the Iroquois, a large group of New York Indians who were in league with the English settlers. According to law

Michigan belonged to the king of France, but the English thought that by helping the Iroquois they could capture the country for themselves. The result was a long and bloody struggle marked by pitiless massacres and savage treachery.

### When Michigan Belonged to France

The story of these early days in Michigan forms a dark, disheartening picture. In lining their pockets from the wonderful resources of the country both the French and English governors were under the heel of rigid military domination. Worse still, the deadening system of selling to selfish or incompetent men the right to do all the

trading with the Indians in a specified area encouraged brutality and meanness. The French seem to have been the more fair and friendly in dealing with the Indians, while the English had a little more interest in settling the country. But for the most part, both French and English exploiters were brutal, greedy, and stupid. Their chief interest was in the money to be made from

the fur trade. To get it they made helpless drunkards of the Indians and left the country a savage wilderness. In the 147 years from 1613 to 1760, the period of French rule in Michigan, only one village of any importance was established. This was the village of Detroit, founded in 1701 by Cadillac (kă'dē'yăk'), one of the few able French governors.

Over the rest of Michigan's wide surface was nothing but wilderness. Here and there a few forts were scattered along the lake front, to serve as fur-trad-



Photo by Michigan State College

A great variety of vegetables grows in Michigan's fertile soil. The farmer in this picture is threading his way through rows of crisp celery.

ing posts. At Mackinac (măk'ĭ-nô), where the two peninsulas of Michigan all but meet, a mission was established (1668) by Father Marquette, who later explored the Mississippi River. For some time there was another wretched little settlement at Sault Sainte Marie (sôo' sânt mă'rĭ), where Lake Superior meets Lake Huron. But this was as far as French despotism could go in civilizing the wilderness of Michigan.

When the English conquered Quebec (1759) they took over all the region of New France, including Michigan. But their rule was even more hated than that of the French. They removed all civil courts and ruled by military law. In this way they

## THE HISTORY OF MICHIGAN

governed the French as well as the Indians. Many of the French settlers left the country, so heavy was the English hand. Some went south to New Orleans, others went off into the wilds of the north. Still others despaired of the New World altogether and returned to France. As for the Indians, they organized a desperate revolt under the leadership of an Ottawa chief named Pontiac (pōn'-tī-āk). For the entire summer of the year 1763 Detroit was besieged. All the other settlements in Michigan were burned to the ground, but Detroit held out till help arrived from the east. The revolt was crushed, and within two years Pontiac had made peace with the English. For the next thirty years the two peninsulas remained English trapping grounds.

In 1783, at the end of the American Revolution, the Treaty of Paris gave a great stretch of territory northwest of the Ohio River to the new nation. But the English governors were not eager to give up their posts, and the territory was very far from the political center of things. It was not until 1796 that Michigan became a possession of the United States in any real sense; in that year the American flag was first flown in Detroit. The rules for governing this Northwest Territory, as it was called, had been decided upon in 1787; but it was only in 1796 that they went into effect. Gradually the great mass of new territory was divided up into states, amid a good deal of confusion and squabbling. At one time Michigan was part of Ohio. At another time Indiana claimed her. Finally in 1805 she became a separate territory, covering much the same region that she covers now.

The government of Michigan was just getting nicely organized when in 1812 war once more broke out with the English. Michigan was at once attacked from the north. A mixed force of English and Indians swiftly overran the state, and conquered it in a short time. The fortress of Detroit surrendered without fighting, though it might easily have been defended. Many men thought that Michigan had been lost completely. But in September of 1813 Commo-

dore Perry won his great victory on Lake Erie, and the British retreated as fast as they had come. By 1815 the last Englishman had been driven out of the farthest corner of Michigan, and the territory became and remained the property of the United States.

It is from this period that we may count the real prosperity of Michigan. The new governor, Lewis Cass, was a capable, intelligent man; and he took the first steps toward developing the territory in a practical manner.

The interior of the state had long been considered a wilderness of bogs and swamps, unfit for any useful purpose. Now it was surveyed, laid out in farms, and sold to settlers. Roads were built, churches and schools were established.

### The "Walk-in-the-Water"

The population, stationary for some fifty years, doubled in the ten years from 1810 to 1820. In 1809 the first printing press had come to Michigan, and in 1817 the first newspaper was started. The next year the first steamboat, which was called the "Walk-in-the-Water," appeared at Detroit. You can imagine the amazement and excitement caused by all these new



Photo by Michigan State College

Apple trees and a number of other fruit trees find the cool climate of the Great Lakes region to their liking. The velvety peaches shown above grow in Michigan.

---

## THE HISTORY OF MICHIGAN

---

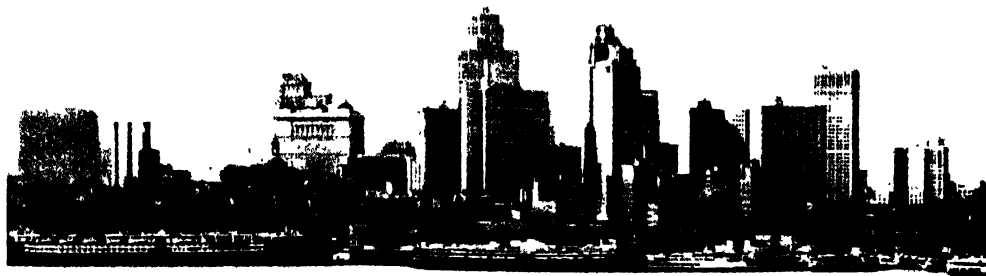


Photo by Detroit Convention & Tourist Bureau

The automobile industry centers in Detroit, our fourth largest city. Its tall office buildings form the back-

ground of this picture. In the foreground is the Detroit River, a busy, crowded waterway.

developments in a remote country settlement. It was a standing joke to tell any Indian who wanted to know what made the steamboat move, that it was drawn by a team of trained sturgeons!

### The Quarrel with Ohio

The movement to make Michigan one of the states of the Union was held up for some time by a quarrel with Ohio over the boundary line. At one time people grew so excited over the question that a little war was near to being waged! At last the citizens of Michigan were forced to accept a compromise which unjustly gave the city of Toledo to Ohio. But everyone was too busy developing the rich new state to cry long over spilt milk. In a short time the quarrel was forgotten, and in 1837 Michigan became a state, on friendly terms with all the other states.

The same year saw the establishment of the system of public education of which Michigan is so justly proud to-day. Grade and high schools financed by towns or counties supplied the educational groundwork, while the University of Michigan (1837), founded at Ann Arbor, became the center of higher education in the state. It was the first university in the country to grant degrees to women. The Michigan State College of Agriculture and Applied Science at East Lansing is the country's oldest agricultural college. In all branches

of education Michigan is one of the leading states, and her university is one of the finest in America.

But it was her farming that first brought Michigan an enviable reputation among her sister states. The rich, rolling countryside of her lower peninsula was ideal for the cultivation of wheat, one of her first big crops. Many states have now surpassed her in this phase, of agriculture, but at one time she was an important state in growing wheat. In the raising of small fruits, such as apples, peaches, grapes, pears, and cherries, Michigan has long been one of the leading states. She is fortunate in having a long, narrow strip of very fertile land stretching along the eastern shore of Lake Michigan. Here the warm winds which blow off the lake bring long, warm summers and excellent crops--hay, soybeans, beans, corn, oats, wheat, potatoes, buckwheat, sugar beets, and garden vegetables, as well as fruit. And nearly all the peppermint grown in the United States comes from Michigan. To be sure, no one of these crops brings her fame, but her agriculture is well rounded and self-sufficient. About half her land is under cultivation, she has a thriving dairy industry, and is easily able to supply most of her basic needs.

At Battle Creek, with its famous sanatorium, Michigan has built up a large industry in manufacturing cereal preparations, for

## THE HISTORY OF MICHIGAN



Photo by the Ford Motor Company

In this great plant at Detroit are manufactured some of the motor cars which have done so much to change our way of living. Highways have kept pace with the tremendously rapid growth of the automobile industry, so that now anyone with a car and money to buy gasoline can explore every part of the United States,

visit Canada, and travel in Mexico to within about a thousand miles of the Equator. Some day, perhaps not many years from now, when the Pan-American Highway is finished, we shall be able to drive all the way to Buenos Aires, and see the interesting ancient and modern civilizations of South America.

which she uses raw materials conveniently at hand in the great grain fields farther west. Many of these are health foods that are known all over the world. The milling of flour and making of bread are highly profitable food industries, and so are the production and packing of meat.

### The Great Industry at Grand Rapids

In clearing the way for Michigan's agriculture, the settlers had to destroy and also to create an industry. The industry they destroyed was the trapping of furs; the one they created was lumbering. We have spoken of the tremendous, impenetrable forests which once covered the peninsulas of Michigan. Before any agriculture was possible these forests had to be cleared away. How enormous the task was you may imagine from the fact that for thirty years Michigan cut more timber than any other state in the Union. From 1860 to 1890 the great hardwood forests of southern Michigan were ruthlessly chopped down. Even in 1900 the lumber industry was still producing goods worth twice as much as any other industry in the state. Some of this wood was used to make paper, especially at Kalamazoo (kă'l'ă-mă-zōō'). Some was shipped by boat or by rail to the East. But a great part was used in the huge furniture industry that centered around Grand Rapids. The remains of Michigan's great forests are to be found in countless tables, chairs, desks, and bookcases.

About the year 1900 it became clear that these Michigan forests were not limitless. The production of timber dropped rapidly; in ten years it fell off by almost a third. To-day it is less than a tenth of what it was in 1890. Only a small fraction of the original forest is left, and that is mostly on the northern peninsula, far from the manufacturing centers. Of course Michigan, like so many other states, has started to replant her timber. But though she is now replanting almost ten thousand acres every year, this new growth cannot be used for a long time. Michigan's great forests are gone forever, and with them most of her lumbering business.

### Where Does Michigan Get Her Wood?

It was easy for the lumbering interests to pick up their belongings and move off to new timber, but the furniture industry had been settled in Grand Rapids and in Grand Rapids it had to stay. Though we do not hear so much about it to-day as we did several years ago, because of the tremendous new industries which have come to Michigan, the furniture industry is still as big and as important as ever. The wood which is used must be brought from other states or from Canada. But the workmen in the factories of Grand Rapids are so expert and so efficient that the furniture center of the country is still in southern Michigan, even though the forests are found far to the west or south.

The manufactures by which the furniture

## THE HISTORY OF MICHIGAN

industry has been dwarfed are known as the "heavy industries." The largest and most important of them is the one which gives to Michigan its nickname of the Auto State. But the mining industry is also of tremendous importance; in a way it is responsible for the growth of the giant young automobile industry in Michigan.

### Some Famous Copper Mines

Nobody knows how long copper and iron had been mined and smelted on the shore of Lake Superior before the first white men came. The Indians knew well how to mine and purify the ore, so it must have been a very old industry. But real work in the Michigan mines did not start until 1845—possibly because men did not realize how rich the deposits were. Since then all the Michigan mines, but especially those that yield copper, have been enormous producers. For forty years, from 1847 to 1887, Michigan was the first copper producing state of the country; and from 1890 to 1901 she was supreme in iron mining. The copper mines of the Keweenaw Peninsula have been the richest in the world's history. For more than thirty-five years they produced half the copper mined in the country. Besides mining iron and copper Michigan produces salt and gypsum—she leads the states in both—petroleum, natural gas, stone, sand and gravel, magnesium, clay and clay products, natural gasoline, coal, peat, and silver.

The importance of the copper and iron mines lay not only in the large quantities of metal they turn out. Huge plants were needed to purify the metal into workable condition, and then to make it into useful articles. The development of Michigan's foundries and machine shops—which are part of her heavy industry—was certainly one of the main reasons for her supremacy in making automobiles. And more than that, these heavy industries called for railroads to transport their products quickly and safely. During the eighties and nineties Michigan bent all her energies to developing a railroad system that would meet the needs of heavy industry. Her success is shown by the 8,000 miles of railroad within her borders, and by her magnificent system of canals.

The great Sault Ste Marie Canal between Lake Superior and Lake Huron carries more shipping every year than does the Suez Canal; and the carefully dredged Detroit River is even busier transporting goods from Lake Huron to Lake Erie. All these improvements were brought about by the growth of Michigan's heavy industries; and the growth of her heavy industries was hastened by these improvements.

The beginnings of the automobile industry were small, but its growth has probably been more sensational than that of any other industry in the country's history. In 1900 just a little more than four thousand automobiles were made in the whole United States, and they sold for less than five million dollars. For the next twenty-nine years the record is one of constant and tremendous expansion. In 1929 no less than 5,600,000 cars and trucks were manufactured in the country, and they sold for more than \$3,500,000,000. The center of this industry has always been Detroit and its vicinity, though Flint is also an important manufacturing city. Michigan has always manufactured half or more than half of the automobiles produced in the United States; and fully a quarter of the wage earners in the state are engaged directly or indirectly in the automobile industry. In the making of engines, airplanes, and motor vehicles of all sorts Michigan is first among the states, and Detroit is the country's fourth city in size.

### The Great Financial Depression

You will notice that we spoke of the growth of the automobile industry as continuous until the year 1929. In that year, when the great economic depression settled upon the country, automobile production fell off a third. In 1931 total production was off another third, and a year or two later even fewer automobiles were being made. The reason, of course, was that for most people in the United States the automobile was a luxury. When hard times came, it was the easiest thing to do without. Besides, in those rash, thoughtless years before 1929, far more automobiles had been made than could possibly be sold. When nobody bought any of this huge stock of old cars, it was worse than

## THE HISTORY OF MICHIGAN



Picturesque, prosperous, inviting, the farms of Michigan add greatly to the wealth of the state, and find an

outlet for their produce in the busy factory towns where Michigan's heavy industries are carried on.

foolish to manufacture new ones. The years of the depression were lean ones indeed for the people of Michigan. Only the providential relief of the government saved many of her unneeded workingmen from starvation. But the depression lifted, and in 1936 more automobiles were manufactured than ever before in the country's history. The next year saw devastating automobile strikes.

In an important industrial center like Michigan we must expect to see such labor problems arising frequently in the future. The storm centers in the first strikes were Flint and Detroit. But the complex problems of our growing industries must be solved in many other places—at Battle Creek, with its tremendous cereal mills and thousands of workers, in the paper mills of Kalamazoo and the furniture companies of Grand Rapids. We can see easily enough that the copper mines of Calumet (kāl'û-mět) and the great ironworks around Marquette are tied up with the automobile industry, but the ties of business reach out in many other direc-

tions. Every important industrial city in Michigan, like every other city in the country, must face the same economic problems. The cement works at Jackson and the lumber and iron mills at Saginaw (säg'î-nô) must answer the questions which the factories of Flint and Detroit have answered. The state's industries—making automobiles, furniture, paper, chemicals, plastics, machinery, radios, business machines, refrigerators, food products, and clothing—have unified her life.

But Michigan has shown herself able to meet and overcome difficulties before. While she keeps to her present policy of fair-minded realistic coöperation between capital and labor, she can look forward to the future with confidence and hope. No greater opportunity could be offered to a state with Michigan's great and progressive educational system than to lead the way for healthy relationship between capital and labor. As long as the humane and realistic influence of her schools is felt in the capital at Lansing, her future would seem to be secure.



## MICHIGAN

**AREA:** 58,216 square miles—22nd in rank.

**LOCATION:** Michigan, one of the East North Central states, lies between 41° 44' and 47° 30' N. Lat. and between 82° 25' and 90° 31' W. Long. It is made up of two peninsulas separated from each other by the Strait of Mackinac. The lower peninsula is bounded on the northeast by Lake Huron; on the east by Lake Huron, Lake St. Clair, and Lake Erie, and by the Province of Ontario, in Canada, from which it is separated by the Detroit and the St. Clair rivers; on the south by Ohio and Indiana; and on the west and northwest by Lake Michigan. The northern peninsula is bounded on the north by Lake Superior; on the east by Lake Superior, Lake Huron, and Lake Michigan and by the Province of Ontario, from which it is separated by Whitefish Bay and St. Mary's River; on the south by Lake Huron and Lake Michigan; and on the southwest and west by Wisconsin.

**PHYSICAL FEATURES:** The southern part of Michigan is a rolling plain except where, along the southwestern shore of Lake Huron, there is a wide sandy beach and along the southeastern shore of Lake Michigan a belt of sand dunes. An upland some 400 to 600 ft. above the lake shore extends southwest from a point southeast of Saginaw Bay to the state's southern border. Northwest of it is a low depression once the bed of a glacial river in which is the valley of the Saginaw River and, extending westward, the valleys of the Maple and Grand rivers. Lake Erie is 572 ft. above sea level. The northern part of the southern peninsula rises to a low plateau, and in the northern peninsula this elevation becomes still more rugged until, in the northwest corner of the state, we find the Porcupine Mountains rising to a height of 2,023 ft. The state's average elevation is 900 ft. Lake Superior is 602 ft. above sea level. Ranges of high hills run east and west along the northern and southern shores of the upper peninsula east of Green Bay, and three other ranges run northeast and southwest in the western portion of this peninsula. The Porcupine Mountains are the most westerly of these three ranges; and the backbone of the Keweenaw Peninsula, west of Keweenaw Bay, is the central range—it extends southward across the state's southern border. These three ridges and Isle Royale to the north of them contain Michigan's copper. East of them is a rugged region of mountain, lake, and swamp that is known as the Marquette iron region. The Huron Mountains in this district are on an average as high as the Porcupine Mountains. South of the Marquette district is the Menominee iron district, a region of ridges running parallel east and west. The Gogebic iron district lies south of the copper ranges along the Wisconsin border. The Pictured Rocks are beautifully colored heights on Lake Superior.

Michigan's larger rivers are along the western side of the southern peninsula. Here are the St. Joseph (210 m. long), the Kalamazoo (200 m. long), the Grand (260 m. long), the Muskegon (200 m. long), the Marquette, and the Manistee (150 m. long), all of them emptying into Lake Michigan. On the eastern side of the peninsula the Saginaw River empties into Saginaw Bay and the Huron into Lake Erie. There are no rivers of importance in the northern peninsula; the Menominee (125 m. long) forms part of the boundary line with Wisconsin on its way to enter Green Bay. None of Michigan's rivers are now used for navigation, though a good many furnish excellent water power. The famous Sault Ste. Marie Ship Canal conveys ships around the rapids in the St. Mary's River, between Lake Superior and Lake Huron, and carries a heavier tonnage than the Suez. Another canal, through the St. Clair Flats, improves the passage from Lake Huron to Lake St. Clair, and a third crosses the Keweenaw Peninsula from Keweenaw Bay through Portage Lake to Lake Superior. All together Michigan has a coast line

of 1,600 miles, with some excellent harbors. Offshore are several thousand islands. The state also has thousands of fine, clear lakes. Its total water area is 500 square miles. This of course does not include the Great Lakes—Superior, with a total area of 31,820 square miles and a length of 350 miles; Michigan, with an area of 22,400 square miles and a length of 307 miles; Huron, with an area of 23,010 square miles and a length of 206 miles; and Erie, with an area of 9,940 square miles and a length of 241 miles. The only one of the Great Lakes which Michigan does not touch is Lake Ontario. The state has no irrigated land.

**CLIMATE:** Michigan has a severe though healthful climate. The summer is likely to have periods of extreme heat relieved by much delightful weather, and the winter is for the most part very cold. The mean annual temperature for the state is about 45° F., but there is a recorded high of 108° and a recorded low of -48°. At Detroit the mean January temperature is 24°, the mean July temperature 72°. The record high there is 105°, and the record low -24°. The southwestern part of the state, where the winds blow from Lake Michigan most of the time, has the most temperate climate in Michigan. The northern peninsula has the bitterest cold. Rain is fairly well distributed over the state, and on an average amounts to about 31 inches during the year. The shore of Lake Superior has very heavy snows.

**INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING:** The more important institutions in the state are Adrian College at Adrian, Albion College at Albion, Alma College at Alma, Aquinas College at Grand Rapids, Calvin College and Seminary at Grand Rapids, Detroit Institute of Technology at Detroit, University of Detroit at Detroit, Emmanuel Missionary College at Berrien Springs, Ferris Institute at Big Rapids, Hillsdale College at Hillsdale, Hope College at Holland, Kalamazoo College at Kalamazoo, Marygrove College for women at Detroit, Michigan State College at East Lansing, University of Michigan at Ann Arbor, Nazareth College for women at Nazareth, Olivet College at Olivet, St. Mary's College at Orchard Lake, Siena Heights College for women at Adrian, and Wayne University at Detroit. There are state normal schools at Kalamazoo, Marquette, Mt. Pleasant, and Ypsilanti.

**CHARITIES AND CORRECTION:** Michigan maintains a girls' training school at Adrian, a boys' vocational school at Lansing, a school for the deaf at Flint and one for the blind at Lansing, a state home and school for children at Coldwater, hospitals at Kalamazoo, Pontiac, Traverse, Newberry, and Ionia, a farm colony for epileptics at Wahjamega, an employment institute for the blind, a reformatory at Ionia, a home and training school at Lapeer, a children's institute at Ann Arbor, a house of correction and branch of the state prison at Marquette, and a state prison at Jackson. The state does not inflict capital punishment.

**POLITICAL FACTS:** Michigan is now governed under the constitution of 1850, which was revised in 1908. Laws are made by a legislature which consists of two houses: a Senate of 32 members elected for two-year terms from senatorial districts, and a House of Representatives made up of not more than 100 nor less than 64 members who are elected in the same way as the Senators. Sessions are held every second year.

The executive branch is headed by the governor, who serves for two years. He must be at least 30 years of age and must have been a citizen of the United States for at least five years and a resident of Michigan for two years before his election. Other elective officials are the lieutenant-governor, the secretary of state, the treasurer, auditor-general, attorney-general, and super-

## MICHIGAN—Continued

intendent of public instruction, all of whom serve two-year terms.

The judiciary is headed by a supreme court consisting of one chief justice and seven associates, all elected for eight years. The state is divided into judicial districts, with one circuit judge for each district unless other provision has been made. Each county has a probate court which also hears cases involving juvenile offenders. Circuit judges are elected for six years, probate judges for four years.

Voters must be citizens of the United States, must have lived in the state for at least six months and in the ward or township for twenty days, and must be twenty-one years of age or over.

Michigan has a direct primary-election law, with a provision which allows the voter to express a presidential preference. Initiative and referendum are provided for, and all elective public officials except judges may be recalled.

Each organized county is a corporate body with powers established by law. It may have a board of jury commissioners to be appointed by the governor if it so votes. A board of supervisors has general charge of the administration of the county. Cities inside the county are represented on this board. They may own and operate public utilities.

Anti-corporation laws are severe. There are also employers' liability laws, child labor laws, and other provisions to protect working people.

**PARKS:** Isle Royale National Park (1940) covers 133,839 acres of wild and rugged forest on the largest island in Lake Superior.

Michigan has 5,189,141 acres of national forest and a fine system of state parks.

**GAME AND BIRD RESERVATIONS:** The Huron National Wildlife Refuge (147 acres) in Marquette County preserves double-crested cormorants, herring gulls, and terns.

Seney National Wildlife Refuge (91,097 acres) in Schoolcraft County preserves geese, grouse, ducks, sandhill cranes, prairie chickens, and muskrats.

**NAME:** The state's name is known to be of Indian origin, though its actual source is unknown. As applied to the land area it first appears in congressional proceedings of 1804 which led to the act of 1805 establishing the Territory of Michigan. The state was named for the lake, whose name had seen a great variety of forms. It is known that the most northerly point of the southern peninsula of Michigan, together with the island near it, was long ago called "Mishi-maikin-nac" by the Indians. The words meant "a swimming tortoise, or turtle," for the spot when seen from a distance

looks like a huge turtle swimming. The Indians also had the word "mitchisawgyegan," meaning "a great lake." It is thought that either of these words may be the origin of the name of the lake.

**NICKNAMES:** Michigan is called the Auto State because of its large automobile factories and their vast output. It is also known as the Lady of the Lakes, from the great number of lakes inside its boundaries and the four Great Lakes on which it has a shore line. For the same reason it is known as the Lake State. It was nicknamed the Wolverine State from the large number of wolverines that used to live in its forests.

The people have come to be called Wolverines from an episode that took place about 1800, when an inn-keeper famous for his wolf steaks asked a young girl who had been eating lamb chops how she liked her wolf steak. She replied, "Then I suppose I am a wolverine?" The saying was taken up by all those who had eaten at the inn, and gradually was passed on from person to person and in this way the nickname came to be applied to the inhabitants of the state.

**STATE FLOWER:** Apple blossom; adopted in 1897.

**STATE SONG:** No song has been officially adopted, but Mrs. Henry F. Lyster's adaptation of the old German song "O Tannenbaum" has become popular "Michigan, My Michigan," with words by Douglas Malloch and music by W. Otto Miessner, is the song of the State Federation of Women's Clubs.

**STATE FLAG:** A blue field bearing the state coat of arms; adopted by the legislature in 1911.

**STATE MOTTO:** "Si Quæris Peninsulam Amoenam Circumspice," meaning "If you seek a pleasant peninsula look around you"—suggested by the inscription on the north door of St. Paul's cathedral in London: "If You Require a Monument (for me) Look around You," an inscription commemorating the architect, Sir Christopher Wren.

On the arms of the state is the word "Tuebor," taken from the motto of Viscount Torrington and meaning "I will defend." It refers to Michigan's frontier position—she is the northern guard of the Union.

**STATE BIRD:** Robin; adopted by a resolution of the Senate in 1931.

**INTERESTING FACTS:** Michigan observes New Year's Day, Lincoln's Birthday, Washington's Birthday, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Columbus Day, Election Day, Armistice Day, Thanksgiving Day, and Christmas Day.

Michigan has five Indian reservations: Bay Mills, Beaver Island, L'Anse, Ontonagon, and Potawatomi. On them are Chippewa, Ottawa, and Potawatomi Indians.

### Population of state, 1940, 5,256,106

#### Counties

Alcona (F4)	5,463	Calhoun (E7)	94,206	Grand Traverse (D4)	21,390	Kalkaska (D4)	5,159
Alger (C2)	10,167	Cass (D7)	21,910	(D4)	32,205	Kent (D5)	246,338
Allegan (D6)	41,839	Charlevoix (D3)	13,031	Gratiot (E5)	27,092	Keweenaw (A1)	4,004
Alpena (F3)	20,766	Cheboygan (E3)	13,644	Hillsdale (E7)	47,631	Lake (D5)	4,798
Antrim (D3)	10,964	Chippewa (E2)	27,807	Houghton (A2)	32,584	Lapeer (F5)	32,116
Arenac (F4)	9,233	Clare (E5)	9,163	Huron (F5)	130,616	Leelanau (D4)	8,436
		Clinton (E6)	26,671	Ingham (F6)	35,710	Lenawee (E7)	53,110
		Crawford (E4)	3,765	Ionia (D6)	8,560	Livingston (F6)	20,863
				Iron (A2)	20,243	Luce (D2)	7,423
		Delta (C3)	34,037	Isabella (E5)	25,982		
Baraga (A2)	9,356	Dickinson (D2)	28,731	Jackson (E6)	93,108	Mackinac (E2)	9,438
Barry (D6)	22,613			Kalamazoo (D6)	100,085	Macomb (G6)	107,638
Bay (E5)	74,981	Eaton (E6)	34,124			Manistee (C4)	18,450
Benzie (C4)	7,800	Emmet (E3)	15,791			Marquette (B2)	47,144
Berrien (C7)	89,117	Genesee (F5)	227,944			Mason (C5)	19,378
Branch (D7)	25,845	Gladwin (E5)	9,385			Mecosta (D5)	16,902
		Gogebic (A2)	31,797			Menominee (B3)	24,883

# MICHIGAN—Continued

Midland (E5)	27,094
Missaukee (D4)	8,034
Monroe (F7)	58,620
Montcalm (D5)	28,581
Montmorency (E3)	3,840
Muskegon (C5)	94,501
Newaygo (D5)	19,286
Oakland (F6)	254,068
Oceana (C5)	14,812
Ogemaw (E4)	8,720
Ontonagon (A2)	11,359
Oscoda (B5)	13,309
Oscoda (E4)	2,543
Otsego (E3)	5,827
Ottawa (C6)	59,660
Presque Isle (F3)	12,250
Roscommon (E4)	3,668
Saginaw (E5)	130,468
St. Clair (G6)	76,222
St. Joseph (D7)	31,749
Sanilac (G5)	30,114
Schoolcraft (C2)	9,524
Shiawassee (E6)	41,207
Tuscola (F5)	35,694
Van Buren (D6)	35,111
Washtenaw (F6)	80,810
Wayne (F6)	2,015,623
Wexford (D4)	17,976

## Cities and Villages

[Places marked with an asterisk (\*) were classified as urban in 1940]

Adrian * (E7)	14,230
Albion * (E6)	8,345
Algonac (G6)	1,931
Allegan * (D6)	4,526
Alma * (E5)	7,202
Alpena * (F3)	12,808
Ann Arbor * (G6)	29,815
Bad Axe * (C5)	2,624
Bangor (D6)	1,409
Baraga (A2)	1,110
Battle Creek * (D6)	43,453
Bay City * (F5)	47,956
Bechtel * (D5)	4,089
Belle Isle (E6)	1,286
Bellevue (E6)	1,011
Benton Harbor * (C6)	16,668
Berkley * (F6)	6,406
Berrien Springs (C7)	1,510
Bessemer * (F2)	4,080
Big Rapids * (D5)	4,987
Birmingham * (F6)	11,196
Blissfield (F7)	2,144
Bloomfield Hills (F6)	1,281
Bozette City * (E3)	2,904
Brighton (F6)	1,353
Bronson (D7)	1,871
Buchanan * (C7)	4,056
Cadillac * (D4)	9,855
Calumet (A1)	1,460
Caro * (F5)	3,070
Carson City (E5)	1,112
Caspian (A2)	1,797
Cass City (F5)	1,362
Cassopolis (C7)	1,488
Cedar Springs (D5)	1,101

Center Line * (C3)	3,198
Charlevoix (D3)	2,299
Charlotte * (E6)	5,544
Cheboygan * (E3)	5,673
Chelsea (E6)	2,246
Chesaning (E5)	1,807
Clare (E5)	1,844
Clawson * (F6)	4,006
Clinton (F6)	1,126
Clio (F5)	1,711
Coldwater * (D7)	7,343
Constantine (D7)	1,384
Coopersville (D7)	1,083
Corunna (E5)	2,017
Croswell (G5)	1,381
Crystal Falls * (A2)	2,641
Davison (F5)	1,397
Dearborn * (F6)	63,584
Decatur (D6)	1,599
Detroit * (F6)	1,623,452
Dexter (F6)	1,087
Dowagiac * (C7)	5,007
Dunder (F7)	1,699
Durand * (E6)	3,127
East Detroit * (F6)	8,584
East Grand Rapids * (D6)	4,899
East Jordan (D4)	1,725
East Lansing * (E6)	5,839
East Tawas (F4)	1,670
Eaton Rapids * (E6)	3,060
Leorse * (F6)	13,209
Escanaba * (B3)	14,530
Essexville (F5)	2,390
Ewart (D5)	1,335
Farmington (F6)	1,510
Fenton * (F6)	3,377
Ferndale * (F6)	22,523
Flint * (F5)	151,543
Flushing (F5)	1,806
Fowlerville (E6)	1,118
Frankenmuth (F5)	1,100
Frankfort (C4)	1,642
Fremont * (D5)	2,520
Galesburg * (D6)	1,040
Garden City * (C6)	4,096
Gaylord (E5)	2,055
Gladstone * (B3)	4,972
Gladwin (F5)	1,600
Grand Haven * (C5)	8,799
Grand Lodge * (E6)	3,899
Grand Rapids * (D6)	164,292
Grandville (D6)	1,566
Grayling (D4)	2,124
Greenville (D5)	5,321
Grosse Pointe * (G6)	6,179
Grosse Pointe Farms * (G6)	7,217
Grosse Pointe Park * (C6)	12,646
Hamtramck * (F6)	49,839
Hancock * (A1)	5,554
Harbor Beach (G5)	2,186
Harbor Springs (D3)	1,423
Hart (C5)	1,922
Hartford (C6)	1,694
Hastings * (D6)	5,175

Highland Park * (F6)	50,810
Hillsdale * (E7)	6,381
Holland * (C6)	14,616
Holly (F6)	2,343
Homer (E6)	1,145
Houghton * (A1)	3,693
Howell * (F6)	3,748
Hudson (E7)	2,426
Imlay City (F5)	1,446
Inkster * (B4)	7,044
Ionia * (D6)	6,392
Iron Mountain * (A3)	11,080
Iron River * (A2)	4,416
Ironwood * (F2)	13,369
Ishpeming * (B2)	9,491
Ithaca (E5)	2,000
Jackson * (F6)	49,656
Jonesville * (D6)	1,302
Kalamazoo * (D6)	54,097
Kalkaska (D4)	1,132
Kingsford * (B2)	5,771
Lake Linden (A1)	1,631
Lake Odessa (D6)	1,417
L. Anse * (A2)	2,564
Lansing * (E6)	78,753
Lapeer * (F5)	5,365
Laurium * (A1)	3,929
Lawton (D6)	1,134
Leslie (E6)	1,281
Lincoln Park * (F6)	15,236
Lowell (D6)	1,944
Ludington * (C5)	8,701
Manitoulin (E1)	1,173
Manchester (E6)	1,100
Manistee * (C4)	8,694
Manistiquic * (C3)	5,399
Manton (D4)	1,006
Marine City * (G6)	3,633
Marquette (G5)	1,161
Marquette * (B2)	15,928
Marshall * (E6)	5,253
Marysville (G6)	1,777
Mason * (E6)	2,867
Melvindale * (E6)	4,764
Menominee * (B3)	10,230
Midland * (L5)	10,230
Midland (F6)	2,414
Millford (F6)	1,633
Monroe * (L7)	18,438
Montague (C5)	1,099
Morenci (F7)	1,845
Mt. Clemens * (G6)	14,389
Mt. Morris (F5)	2,237
Mt. Pleasant * (E5)	8,413
Manistee * (C2)	4,409
Muskegon * (C5)	17,697
Muskegon Heights * (C5)	16,047
Nashville (D6)	1,279
Negaunee * (B2)	6,813
Newaygo (D5)	1,282
Newberry * (D2)	2,732
New Buffalo (C7)	1,190
Niles * (C7)	11,328
North Muskegon (C5)	1,694
Northville * (F6)	3,032
Norway * (B3)	3,728
Oak Park (F5)	1,169

Onaway (E3)	1,449
Ontonagon (G1)	2,290
Otsego * (D6)	3,428
Ovid (E6)	1,248
Owosso * (E5)	14,424
Oxford (F6)	2,144
Paw Paw (D6)	1,910
Petoskey * (E3)	6,019
Pinconning (E5)	1,027
Plainwell (D6)	2,424
Pleasant Ridge * (F6)	3,391
Plymouth * (F6)	5,360
Port Huron * (G6)	32,759
Portland (E6)	2,247
Quincy (E7)	1,333
Reading (E7)	1,059
Reed City (D5)	1,845
Richmond (G6)	1,722
River Rouge * (F6)	17,008
Rochester * (F6)	3,759
Rockford (D5)	1,773
Rockwood (F6)	1,147
Rogers City * (F3)	3,072
Romeo * (G6)	2,627
Roseville * (G6)	9,023
Royal Oak * (F6)	25,087
Saginaw * (F5)	82,794
St. Charles (E5)	1,300
St. Clair * (G6)	3,471
St. Clair Springs * (F6)	10,405
St. Ignace * (F3)	2,669
St. Johns * (E5)	4,422
St. Joseph * (C6)	8,963
St. Louis * (E5)	3,039
Saline (F6)	1,227
Sandusky (G5)	1,512
Sault Ste. Marie * (E2)	15,847
Scottville (C5)	1,162
Sebewaing (F5)	1,598
Shelby (C5)	1,367
South Haven * (C6)	4,745
Sparta (D5)	1,945
Spring Lake (C5)	1,329
Stambaugh (A2)	2,081
Sturgis * (D7)	7,214
Tawas City (F4)	1,075
Tecumseh * (F6)	2,921
Three Oaks (C7)	1,351
Three Rivers * (D7)	6,710
Traverse City * (D4)	14,455
Trenton * (F6)	5,284
Union City (D6)	1,339
Utica (G6)	1,022
Vassar (F5)	2,154
Vicksburg (D6)	1,774
Wakefield * (F2)	3,591
Watershet (C6)	1,193
Wayland (D6)	1,005
Wayne * (F6)	4,223
West Branch (E4)	1,962
Whitehall (C5)	1,407
White Pigeon (D7)	1,017
Williamston (E6)	1,704
Wyandotte * (F6)	30,618
Yale (G5)	1,489
Ypsilanti * (F6)	12,121
Zeeland * (C6)	3,007

---

# ***The HISTORY of MINNESOTA***

---

## **Reading Unit No. 22**

---

### **MINNESOTA: THE GOPIER STATE**

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

#### ***Interesting Facts Explained***

The gifts of the glacier to Minnesota, 8-190

Where the Sioux Indians lived, 8-190

How Minnesota became United States territory, 8-191

What crops are grown on the

Minnesota farms, 8-195

How the lumber of the state was wasted, 8-196

The Minneapolis Symphony Orchestra, 8-197

Minnesota's Scandinavian settlers, 8-197

#### ***Things to Think About***

Why is Minnesota called the North Star State?

How many lakes are there in Minnesota?

Who were the first white men to

come to Minnesota?

What areas were included in the Territory of Minnesota?

What two catastrophes did Minnesota have to face?

#### ***Picture Hunt***

What important buildings did Cass Gilbert design? 8-189

Why do the rivermen of Minnesota wear spiked boots? 8-

193

Where is most of our wheat grown? 8-195

#### ***Related Material***

America turns to the West, 7-213-16

Why do we call our era the Iron Age? 9-399

What people gave to the world its most useful metal? 5-114-15

What important things did Sir Henry Bessemer invent? 9-

403-5

What makes iron the world's most useful metal? 9-408

How do we know that men made bread away back in the Stone Age? 9-238

How is flour ground in a modern mill? 9-234-36

#### ***Practical Applications***

What makes Duluth an important transportation center? 8-192, 196

What is the purpose of the co-operative movement? 8-197

#### ***Leisure-time Activities***

PROJECT NO. 1: Read the story of how we find our iron and how we make it into steel, 9-398-408.

PROJECT NO. 2: Try grinding a handful of wheat between two stones to make flour.

## THE HISTORY OF MINNESOTA



Photo by the C. M. & St. P. Railway

The Minnesota capitol building, the beautiful and impressive structure shown above, was designed by Cass Gilbert, who designed the Woolworth Building

in New York City. It is built of Minnesota granite combined with white Georgia marble, and is one of the chief ornaments of St. Paul, the capital city.

### MINNESOTA: *the* GOPHER STATE

*Besides Supplying the Nation with Two of Its Most Important Necessities, the People of Minnesota Have Led the Way in One of the Interesting Social Experiments of Our Century*

**D**RAINED by magnificent rivers and gemmed with countless lakes, the great state of Minnesota lies close against our northern border, at the very heart of the continent. As befits the state that reaches farthest north, she is known as the North Star State, and wears the emblem of a star on her seal. The mother of rivers, she nurses in her wide embrace the infancy of three of the continent's great river systems—the Mississippi, the St. Lawrence, and the Red River of the North, which drains into Hudson Bay. Her great port of Duluth, one of the busiest in the United States, is seated at the head of our country's greatest inland water route, and within the state's borders lie three thousand miles of navigable waterways.

But more important than all this, she busies herself in turning out in large quantities certain basic products without which

our country would soon languish. Bread, butter, and milk—iron and lumber—they are not rare things like the fruits of California or the silver of Utah; nearly every state produces some or all of them. But they are products which the country needs and uses year after year, and if Minnesota were suddenly to stop producing her vast quantities of iron and flour, our whole national life would have to be reorganized. Hundreds of thousands of citizens would have to stop work or take up new occupations; our entire industrial system would be paralyzed. It is even possible that the United States would for a time cease altogether to be a first-rate power in world affairs. For those two products there can be no substitutes. So Minnesota is a state of great importance to all her sister states.

You may read the history of Minnesota's picturesque hills and level prairies in our

## THE HISTORY OF MINNESOTA

story of Wisconsin, for the two states have had much the same geologic history. Like Wisconsin, Minnesota boasts, in her northern part, a spur of the Laurentian (lô-rên'shĭ-ăn) Highlands, the oldest land on this continent—perhaps the oldest in the world. But now they are well worn down; the Misquah Hills, in the northeast corner of the state, are Minnesota's highest point, with an altitude of 2,230 feet. The water parting for the three great rivers is now a slight rise of land in the north-central part of the state.

After the laying down of the younger rocks which underlie the soil of southern Minnesota, the greatest force in forming the state's present land surface was the glacier. It created lakes and streams over the whole face of the country by gouging out holes in the ground and leaving bits of ice there to melt. Minnesota has more than 10,000 lakes to-day—so many that no one has gone to the trouble of counting them. Many of them are of exquisite beauty, and help to bring a handsome revenue from sportsmen and summer visitors. Deer, bear, elk, moose, and caribou live in those wild retreats—the first two are legal for hunting, though during a short season only.

### Gifts of the Glacier

The great sheets of moving ice also smoothed off the mountains in Minnesota and covered her surface with irregular piles of rich soil excellently adapted to growing grain. They left her a hilly state, though not a mountainous one. One little whim of the glacier should be mentioned because it

has been of great economic importance to man. You will notice, if you look at a map of Minnesota, that of all her big rivers only the Red River runs due north. Now as the glacier retreated toward the Arctic Circle, it uncovered the headwaters of the Red River before the stream's mouth was free of ice. In this way the upper part of the stream was

flowing freely long before the glacier which blocked the lower part was out of the way; a dam had been formed. The result was an ancient lake of great size in the northwestern part of what is now Minnesota and the northeastern part of what is now North Dakota. The lake lasted for many years, draining southward into the Gulf of Mexico. When the glacier melted at last, and the lake rushed away, a thick level coating of rich soil was left everywhere on the land where the lake had been. To-day this region is planted to wheat, for the fine

black soil, without stones or gravel, is perfectly adapted to wheat growing. Because Louis Agassiz (ăg'ă-sē) was the first to discover that the ancient lake had once existed, it has been named in his honor—Lake Agassiz.

The first modern inhabitants of Minnesota were probably the Sioux (sōō), or Dakota, Indians. As plain dwellers they preferred to live in the open, rolling country of the south and west, rather than in the heavily wooded, hilly regions to the north and east. When the Iroquois (ĭr'ô-kwoi) Indians, far to the east, started buying guns from the white men, they drove westward many of the tribes in Michigan, Illinois, and Ohio. Among those tribes were the Ojibwas (ô-jĭb'wă), or Chip-



The University of Minnesota is one of the large educational institutions of the Middle West, and one of the outstanding universities in the country. Its administration building is seen above.

## THE HISTORY OF MINNESOTA



Photo by the Saint Paul Association

St. Paul is sometimes called the Gateway to the Northwest. It is one of the large cities west of the Great Lakes, and has important railway connections

with the northern Pacific states. The picture above shows a section of its railway terminals, together with a glimpse of the Mississippi River.

pewas (chĭp'ĕ-wā), an Algonquian (ăl-gŏn'-kĭ-ăn) tribe who claimed to have come originally from the Atlantic coast, and to have been one with the Ottawas and Potawatamies (pŏt'ă-wŏt'ă-mĭ) in the St. Lawrence Valley.

### The First White Men in Minnesota

The first white men to come to Minnesota probably were two Frenchmen named Radisson (ră'dēs'sŏN') and Groseilliers (grŏ'zĕ'yă'), who had also done some exploring in Michigan. They spent the winter of the years 1658 and 1659 making treaties with the Sioux and Ojibwas in the region east of the Mississippi. In 1678 Daniel Greysolon (grĕ'sŏ'lŏN'), Sieur du Lhut (syŭr dŭ lŭt), a French trader, built a trading post where now stands the city of Duluth, named in his honor. He even went as far south as Mille Lacs (mĭl'lăk'), where he planted the flag of the "Grand Monarch," Louis XIV of France. Father Hennepin (hĕn'ĕ-pĭn), a Flemish missionary, discovered and named the Falls of St. Anthony. But though these men and other French traders did their best to establish permanent posts in Minnesota—which they

claimed as part of the vast territory of New France—they were unable to build anything which lasted beyond their own period of power in the west.

### A Land Unknown

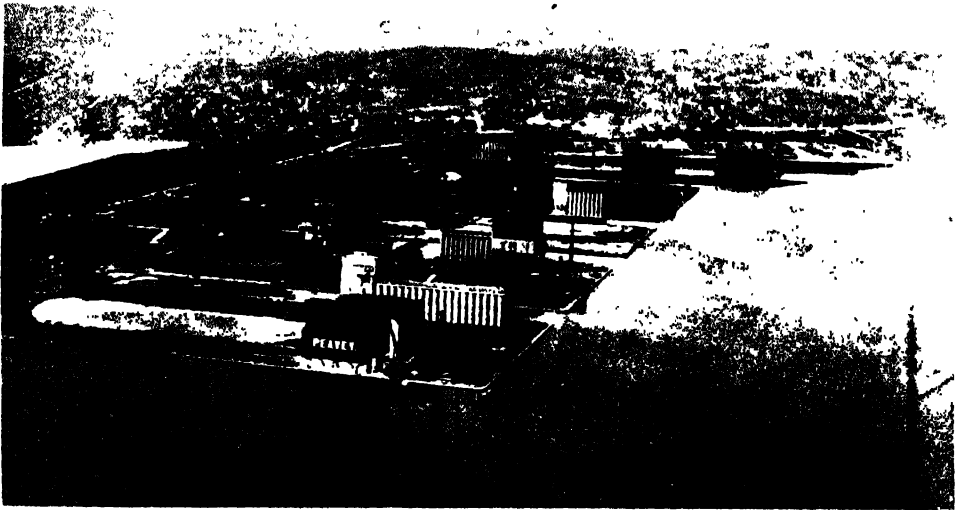
In 1763 the western part of the territory which is now Minnesota became the property of Spain, and the eastern part the property of Great Britain. In 1783 the eastern part was given to the United States by treaty, and in 1803 the western part came into her hands by the Louisiana Purchase. Of course those transfers of title made no real difference, for the few fur traders who knew the region kept coming to trade with the Indians no matter who owned the land, and nobody else bothered to come at all. In fact in the years 1805 and 1806 the United States had to send Lieutenant Zebulon Pike, the discoverer of Pikes Peak in Colorado, to find out just what there was in this great domain which the nation had just bought. Other explorers, among them Governor Lewis Cass of Michigan, made their way to Minnesota from time to time, generally to try to find the headwaters of the Mississippi River.

## THE HISTORY OF MINNESOTA



The iron ore of the Mesabi Range is so concentrated and so soft that these great shovels can scoop it up and load it into cars as fast as the machines can be made

to operate. The locomotive will take the cars to Duluth, where the ore can be dumped into the holds of gigantic ore steamers.



Photos by the Duluth C. of C.

Duluth's busy harbor, with its many capacious grain elevators, is shown in this picture.



## THE HISTORY OF MINNESOTA

But the soil of Minnesota was good, lumbering operations were being started around St. Anthony Falls, where Minneapolis now stands, and the easy transportation to this point at the headwaters of the Mississippi encouraged the growth of a little settlement there. Besides, it was a good base from which to explore the rich valley of the Minnesota River. So St. Anthony quickly became the important point in the territory. In 1820 Fort Snelling was begun nearby. In 1826 a number of refugees from the Red River colony, founded at Pembina (pěm'bĭ-nà), North Dakota, by Lord Selkirk, increased the size of Minnesota's leading settlement. And a few years later (1837) two treaties with the Indians put all the lands east of the Mississippi in the hands of the growing white population. It was in 1839 that the first settlers built their houses on the land where St. Paul now stands. The city of Minneapolis (1850) grew up across the river from the village of St. Anthony.

### The Great Rush for Land

All this time Minnesota had been passed about from one territory to another—from Louisiana to Michigan to Wisconsin to Iowa and back to Wisconsin again. Finally (1849) the Territory of Minnesota was organized; in it was included most of what is now North and South Dakota. According to the 1850 census there were just a few more than 6,000 people living in Minnesota, most of them to the east of the Mississippi but a few along the upper Red River. In 1851 the whole western part of the state was opened to immigrants, and just as in Iowa, thousands of people from the East rushed in to carve out farms in the new region. After six years of immigration another census was

taken to discover if Minnesota had the 60,000 settlers necessary for statehood. Much to everyone's surprise there turned out to be, not 60,000, but 150,000 settlers. So it was decided to make a state out of the territory at once, and in 1858 Minnesota was admitted to the Union.

And now, just as she was catching her breath after that first spurt of growth and was preparing for further steady development,

Minnesota had to face two great catastrophes—the Civil War and the Indian raids. Unlike Iowa, Minnesota suffered more from the Indians than from the Civil War. For while she was far from the southern battlefields, the Indians were close on her border. Knowing that she had sent off large numbers of her able-bodied men to fight, the wily red



Photo by the American Lumbermen

This riverman of Minnesota wears spiked boots, and carries a long pole with a hook at the end to help him keep his footing and direct the logs as they travel swiftly downstream.

men seized the opportunity to attack those who remained. The 1857 massacre at Spirit Lake in Iowa had shown them how defenseless the settlers were. In 1862 bands of Sioux all along the frontier began to attack the outlying farms. Meeting with easy successes here, they came on ever more ferociously, bringing terror and destruction to the Minnesota Valley. At last, after nearly a thousand white men had been killed, a volunteer army under Colonel H. H. Sibley defeated the Sioux under Little Crow at Wood Lake. The Indians were severely punished, their tribal life was broken up, and they were rendered quite helpless ever to disturb Minnesota again. During the bitter fighting of this frontier war, more than 25,000 Minnesota settlers were forced to leave their homes to seek safety elsewhere.

### Invading the Beavers' Home

With the end of the Civil War and the Indian War, Minnesota once again resumed

## THE HISTORY OF MINNESOTA

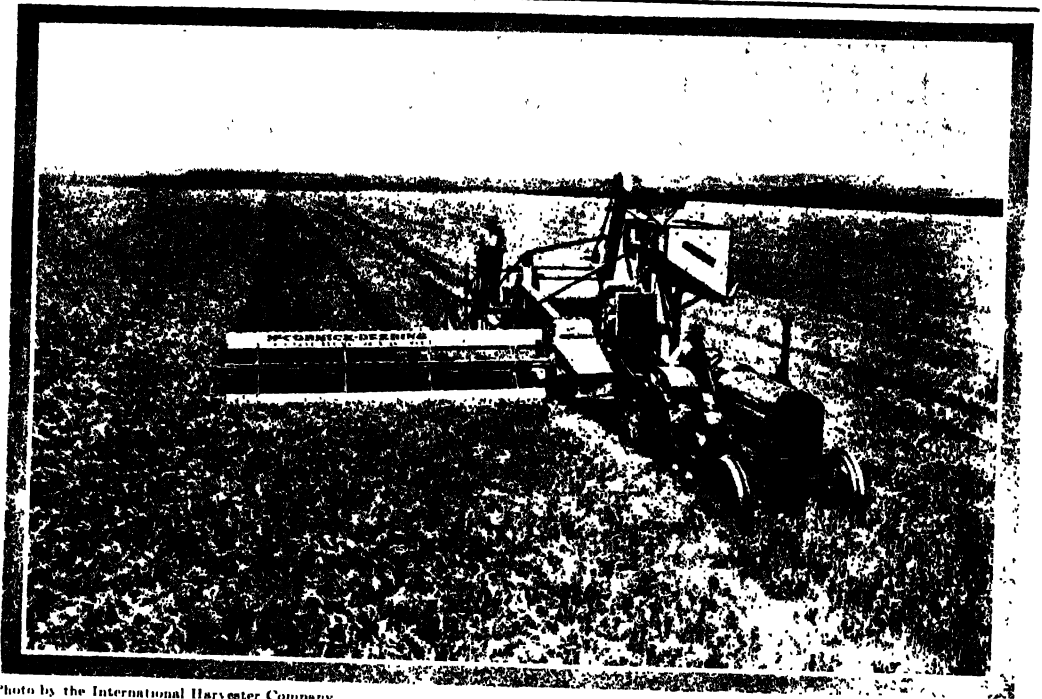


Photo by the International Harvester Company

The western third of Minnesota lies in the hard spring wheat belt—along with the Dakotas and part of Mon-

tana. The wheat that can be grown in this field in western Minnesota is as fine as any in the country.

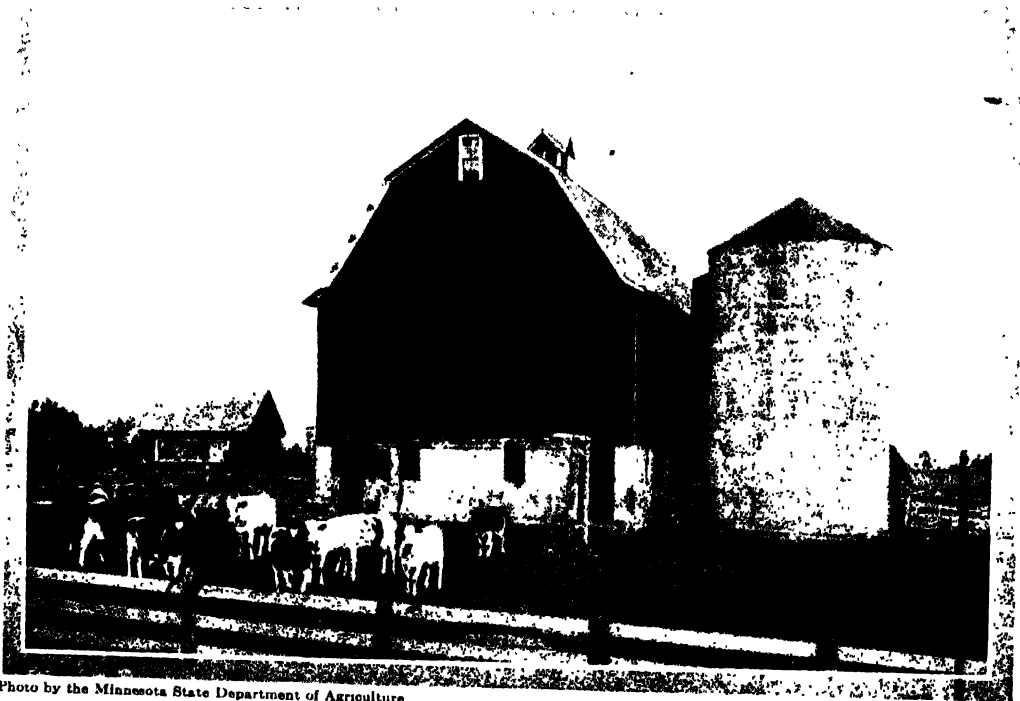


Photo by the Minnesota State Department of Agriculture

Dairying has grown steadily in Minnesota since the eighties, and is now one of the state's most important

enterprises. To-day Minnesota produces more butter than any other state in the Union.

## THE HISTORY OF MINNESOTA

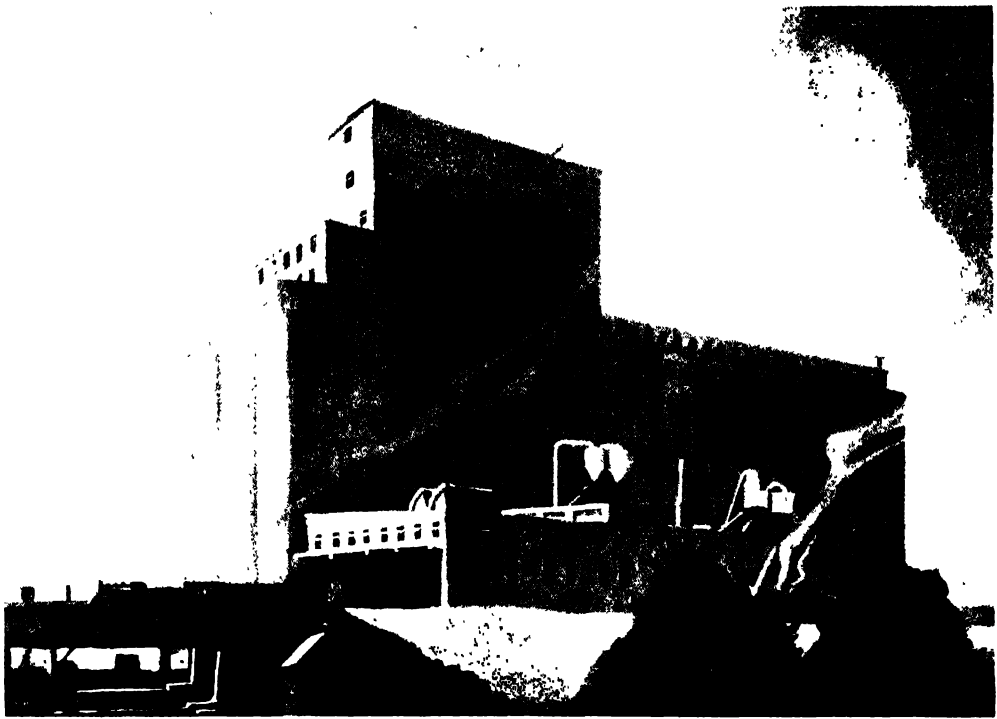


Photo by the Washburn-Crosby Company

The regions west, southwest, and south of Minneapolis grow most of the country's wheat; so it is not strange that, surrounded on three sides by grain belts, the

city should be one of the greatest flour-milling centers in the world. The picture shows one of the huge flour mills at Minneapolis.

her steady growth. The larger part of her soil was rich and fertile. Much of it was swamp land, but this did not go begging very long, for the settlers drained the swamps dry just as soon as all the other land was taken, and moved in where formerly only muskrats and beavers had lived.

### What Does Minnesota Raise?

For a good many years wheat was the leading crop of the state. In 1900 Minnesota was the first wheat-producing state in the country. But of late years the skillful Minnesota farmers have been advancing from single-crop farming to the planting of a variety of crops, the raising of live stock, and dairying. The acreage of wheat in Minnesota has been cut down until she no longer has a place among the important wheat producing states. Corn, oats, hay—all of them crops which have long been grown in the state, have surpassed wheat in value; and the

potato, a comparative newcomer which is grown in the sandy soil of the east-central region, has also come along rapidly until it is highly profitable. In barley, rye, oats, and flax Minnesota is now a leader among the states. In corn, her chief crop, she ranks third. She still grows spring wheat, and she raises a good many soybeans also—a profitable new crop. Her dairying and live stock industries become more and more important to her. In production of butter and butterfat she leads all the states in the Union, and she ranks high in the production of milk. Few states outrank her in the number of cattle, horses, sheep, and swine on farms. In the size of total income earned by farms she stands not far from the top. The raising of garden vegetables and fruit, especially apples and berries, is relatively new with her, but it has spread very fast. She also grows tobacco and buckwheat.

Minnesota's industries have been built up

## THE HISTORY OF MINNESOTA

around the natural resources which are so abundant all over the state. Ever since 1860 men had known of the great iron deposits in the northeastern section, especially in the Vermilion (vēr-mīl'yūn) Range, but it was not until 1844 that they began to work those beds. Later the rich Mesabi (mē-sā'bē) and Cuyuna (kī-ū'nā) ranges were opened up. By 1902 Minnesota ranked first among the states in the mining of iron ore, a position that she still holds. During World War II she mined 86% of the country's output. The ore that is easy to work is now nearly used up, but there are still vast reserves of iron in a mineral known as taconite (tā-kōn'it). The steel manufacturers are busy finding ways to use it profitably. Other minerals produced by this great mining state are manganese, sand and gravel, clay, and stone, especially limestone and granite.

### Tragic Waste

In lumbering Minnesota was once far more important than she is to-day, for like so many other states she has been reckless in squandering her great wealth of forest lands. Her fine stands of spruce, white pine, tamarack, and hemlock were once enough to lift her, in the years around 1900, to third place among the lumber-producing states. To-day she ranks only eleventh, though production of wood pulp and white pine is still important. Recently Minnesota has undertaken an enlightened system of reforestation, in order to repair the damage done in her years of heedless waste, and hopes are high that this will be accomplished before too many years have slipped by.

### The Twin Cities

In manufacturing Minnesota has built her system around the "Twin Cities" of Minneapolis and St. Paul, standing on opposite sides of the Mississippi River. Minneapolis was for many years the greatest flour milling center in the world. Here the St. Anthony Falls of the Mississippi River furnish enormous quantities of water power, and from 1870 on, a steady stream of golden wheat poured into her great grain elevators. Minnesota leads the country in flour production. The lumber mills of Minneapolis were long

of great importance, but dwindling forests shut off the supply of logs as the woods moved northward, and gradually her sawmills had to go out of business. The last one was closed in 1920. Minneapolis is also a great butter market, as well as the country's largest flaxseed market and its greatest producer of linseed oil and of the oil cake so widely used as a stock food. St. Paul, just down the river from Minneapolis and since 1849 the state capital, is also a great industrial city. As a wholesaling center she is the most important in that section which we know as the "old Northwest," while her stockyards are third in importance in the nation. Flour milling, automobile manufacture, and machine-shop work are other important St. Paul industries.

### A Great Port on an Inland Sea

Duluth is a great transportation center, especially for iron ore, wheat, butter and eggs, automobiles, and coal. By means of railways she taps the great agricultural regions to the west of her, both in the United States and Canada, and sends their produce cheaply down the Great Lakes to the busy manufacturing centers of the East. Her ores keep the great steel mills busy in Pennsylvania, Ohio, and Illinois for "It is cheaper to ship ore to factories near the coal beds than it is to bring coal to factories near the iron beds. The boats do, however, bring back large quantities of coal for use throughout the region. St. Cloud is a farming and dairying center and also quarries building stone, and Rochester is a flour-milling and agricultural center.

In education Minnesota is one of the most advanced states—only 1.3 percent of her citizens cannot read and write. Eight states have a better record. Just as in Iowa, this may be accounted for in large part by the generous aid given by the state to local schools and by the high standards of training for teachers. It is also worth remarking that both Iowa and Minnesota favor a few large central schools for the country districts, instead of many small, local schools. Among the institutions of higher education, the University of Minnesota, at Minneapolis, is the most important; it is one of the leading

## THE HISTORY OF MINNESOTA



Wherever you find a climate too cool for corn, with soil too sandy for the cereals, you will find the farmers planting their land to potatoes, as this Minnesota farmer has done. The world's great potato region is

Northern Europe, for the potato is a fine crop for crowded countries. It yields five times as many bushels per acre as wheat does. Germany leads, and by careful cultivation doubles our own yield per acre.

state universities in the country. Culturally, Minnesota is well advanced in many ways. The Minneapolis Symphony Orchestra is among the nation's finest orchestras.

The great bulk of Minnesota's foreign immigration was made up of Swedes, Germans, Finns, Norwegians, and Danes, with the Scandinavians in the lead. Now all those Scandinavian settlers had long traditions of popular rule behind them. Their willingness to experiment politically has made Minnesota the center of an American Farmer-Labor party. The program of the Farmer-Labor party can hardly be outlined here, but it is important to say that one of its chief aims is the organization of "consumer's coöperatives." It has formed organizations of small consumers—mostly from the farming and laboring classes—which own and operate stores, factories, railroad lines,

and similar enterprises for producing and distributing goods. Because the people who use the goods are the ones who own these projects, they do not try to make a profit, but operate the various businesses in such a way as to give the best possible service at the lowest possible price. Naturally, they have no incentive to make money off themselves. Of coöperatives in general we have spoken on other pages of these books. Minnesota's experience has already shown the scheme to be hard-headed and practical when run by hard-headed and practical men; and certainly its aims have a wide appeal. If Minnesota continues to make a success of her coöperative movement, we may look for a steady growth in coöperatives everywhere in the nation. Her able citizens have led the way in a vast and vital social experiment that is worth watching.

## MINNESOTA

**AREA:** 84,068 square miles—11th in rank.

**LOCATION:** Minnesota, one of the West North Central states, lies between 43° 30' and 49° 24' N. Lat. and between 89° 29' and 97° 15' W. Long. It is bounded on the north by Manitoba and Ontario, both of them provinces of Canada; on the east by Lake Superior and Wisconsin; on the south by Iowa; and on the west by North Dakota and South Dakota. It reaches the farthest north of any state in the Union, and is at the geographic center of North America.

**PHYSICAL FEATURES:** Minnesota is mostly rolling country or, in the south and central part, a level prairie. In the north-central portion of the state is a tract of somewhat higher land that forms the watershed for three great river systems of this continent. To the north the land is drained toward Hudson Bay, to the east toward Lake Superior and the St. Lawrence River, to the south toward the Mississippi and the Gulf of Mexico. It is here that the Mississippi rises—in a number of little lakes. The lowest elevation in Minnesota is along the shores of Lake Superior (602 ft. above sea level). The highest point is in the Misquah Hills in the northeast corner of the state, where there is a summit 2,330 ft. high. But a height of land in the southwest, known as the Coteau des Prairie, and the Mesabi Range in St. Louis County are nearly as high. The state has an average elevation of 1,200 ft. The Mesabi Range contains one of the world's greatest iron deposits; and the Vermilion Range to the east of it and the Cuyuna Range to the west are only a little less rich in iron ore.

The Mississippi (2,470 m. long), after flowing south-east through the state, forms part of the boundary between Minnesota and Wisconsin. It receives the St. Croix, which rises in northwest Wisconsin and flows 164 miles to join the Mississippi, forming meanwhile a large part of the boundary line between the two states. These two rivers were important transportation routes long before the white man came, and still carry traffic. The St. Croix may be navigated for about 50 miles above its junction with the Mississippi. The Mississippi is navigable to the Falls of St. Anthony at Minneapolis. The southern part of the state is largely drained by the Minnesota River (332 m. long), which rises in Big Stone Lake on the western border and empties into the Mississippi near the eastern boundary. In the southeast the rivers drain directly into the Mississippi. The Red River (545 m. long), often called the Red River of the North, forms part of the boundary between Minnesota and North Dakota, and flows north into Lake Winnipeg in Canada; from there its waters find their way to Hudson Bay. Along the state's northern boundary are a great many lakes and rivers. The largest are Lake of the Woods (1,485 sq. m.) and Rainy Lake (345 sq. m.); the two are connected by Rainy River, which forms the boundary between the United States and Canada. The state's rivers furnish fine water power. Minnesota has more lakes than any other state in the Union, with some 10,000 of them all together. The largest of those inside the state are Red Lake (400 sq. m.), Leech Lake (200 sq. m.), and Mille Lacs (200 sq. m.). Minnetonka, near Minneapolis, is a popular resort and is unusual for its very long shore line. All together the state has a water area of 3,824 square miles, not including its jurisdiction in Lake Superior. It has no irrigated land.

**CLIMATE:** The Minnesota climate has great extremes of heat and cold, but it is dry and healthful, and in spite of periods of high temperature there is much delightfully cool weather during the summer months. The northern and western portions are colder than the eastern and southern. In the south the mean annual temperature is about 45° F., but in the north it is in

many places only 37°. In the south the growing season is usually almost five months long, but in the north it may be as much as six weeks shorter. The mean January temperature at St. Paul is 13°, the mean July temperature 72°. The record high there is 104°, the record low -41°. The eastern part of the state gets more rain than the western part. In many places the average annual rainfall is about 31 inches, but other points have less than 25 inches. Everywhere there is enough rain for farming. The whole state is usually covered with snow most of the winter, and in the northeast there may be as much as 52 inches of it.

**INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING:** The more important institutions in the state are Augsburg College and Theological Seminary at Minneapolis, Carleton College at Northfield, College of St. Scholastica for Women at Duluth, Concordia College at Moorhead, Gustavus Adolphus College at St. Peter, Hamline University at St. Paul, Macalester College at St. Paul, University of Minnesota at Minneapolis, College of St. Benedict, for women, at St. Joseph, College of St. Catherine, for women, at St. Paul, St. John's University at Collegeville, St. Marys College for Men at Winona, St. Olaf College at Northfield, St. Teresa's College for Women at Winona, and the College of St. Thomas at St. Paul. Teachers' colleges have been established at Winona, Mankato, St. Cloud, Moorhead, Duluth, St. Paul, Minneapolis, New Ulm, and Bemidji.

**CHARITIES AND CORRECTION:** The state maintains asylums for the insane at Anoka, Hastings, and Willmar, and state hospitals at Fergus Falls, Rochester, Moose Lake, St. Paul, and St. Peter; a colony for epileptics at Cambridge; a school for the feeble-minded at Faribault; a school for the deaf and one for the blind at Faribault; a training school for boys at Red Wing; a home and school for girls at Sauk Center; a reformatory for women at Shakopee; a reformatory for men at St. Cloud; a prison at Stillwater, and a tuberculosis sanatorium at Aw-Gwa-Ching. Minnesota does not inflict capital punishment.

**POLITICAL FACTS:** Minnesota is governed under the constitution of 1857, which has often been amended. The legislature meets in alternate years and is made up of two houses: a Senate, composed of members elected for four years, and a House of Representatives, composed of members elected for two years. Senators and Representatives are apportioned according to population. Sessions last for 90 days. The executive powers rest with state officials headed by the governor; all are elected for two years except the auditor, who has a four-year term. The governor's veto power has been extended to include certain items in appropriation measures.

The judiciary is headed by the supreme court, which is composed of a chief justice and six associates—elected for a term of six years—and of two commissioners appointed by the district. The state is divided into judicial districts, each presided over by one or more judges, as designated by the legislature. Such judges are elected for six years. Each organized county has a probate court presided over by a judge elected for four years. The justices of the peace serve a term of two years.

Voters must be citizens of the United States twenty-one years of age or over, and must have lived in the state six months preceding the election. Indians of mixed or pure blood may vote if they have adopted the customs and habits of civilization.

Candidates for office are chosen in primary elections, with nonpartisan primary ballots for the judicial offices. The state has rigorous laws controlling election fraud, and betting on elections is prohibited.

## MINNESOTA—Continued

The unit of local government is the county. Cities have the power to adopt a home-rule charter. A city may be organized as a county if it can show that it has 20,000 inhabitants.

The capital of Minnesota is at St. Paul.

**MONUMENTS:** Pipestone National Monument near Pipestone contains an Indian pipestone quarry.

**GAME AND BIRD RESERVATIONS:** Mille Lacs National Wildlife Refuge in Mille Lacs County and Mud Lake Refuge in Marshall County protect a large variety of migratory birds. Rice Lake Refuge in Aitkin County, Talcot Refuge in Cottonwood County, Tamarac Refuge in Becker County, and the Upper Mississippi Wildlife and Fish Refuge in Houston, Winona, and Wabasha counties and extending into other states—protect birds and fur-bearing animals.

Minnesota has 5,041,765 acres of national forest.

**NAME:** Minnesota takes its name from the Minnesota River, which gave its name to the Territory of Minnesota. The word is borrowed from the Dakota Indians, and probably means "sky-tinted water," for "minni" is the Dakota word for "water," and though the meaning of "sota" is more in doubt, the various interpretations seem to suggest that it was used to refer to water that reflects the sky. Mrs. Moses N. Adams, widow of a venerable missionary to the Dakotas, illustrated the meaning of the word by relating that the Dakota women at various times dropped a little milk into water and called the cloudy liquid "min-ne-sota."

**NICKNAMES:** Minnesota is called the Bread and Butter State because of its leadership in producing flour and butter. This nickname was first used at the Pan-American Exposition at Buffalo in 1901. Minnesota is widely known as the Gopher State from the many striped gophers that lived on its prairies. Before 1857 it had been commonly called the Beaver State, but at that time a cartoon treating of a railroad construction bill then before Congress and ardently championed by the people of Minnesota, fastened the title of the Gopher State upon Minnesota. Its many lakes give it the title of the Lake State, and the large number of people from New England among its pioneers gave it the title of the New England of the West. From the star on its seal it is called the North Star State. Its importance as a producer of wheat has given it the name of the Wheat State.

The people of Minnesota are called Gophers.

**STATE FLOWER:** Pink and white moccasin flower (*Cypripedium reginae*); officially adopted in 1902. It is also known as the lady's-slipper and as the Indian shoe. Since it is a member of the orchid family it is sometimes called the wild orchid.

**STATE SONG:** The song of the state university "Hail! Minnesota," with words by Truman Rickard and Arthur Upson and music by R. E. Rickard—is usually taken to belong to the state as a whole and to all the people in the commonwealth. A. L. MacGregor's "Minnesota," and "Minnesota, All Hail," with words by Gertrude Thomas and music by Margaret Beaulieu, are also popular.

**STATE FLAG:** A white background bearing a blue circular design in the center of which is the state seal of Minnesota. On the outer circular plot so left are pictures of the white moccasin flower with its deep green leaves. Ribbon scrolls, the word "Minnesota," and nineteen stars indicative of the order of the state's admission to the Union, complete the flag. The dates "1858"—the date of admission—"1819"—the date of settlement—and "1893"—the date of the adoption of

the flag—are all conspicuous. The reverse side of the flag is dark blue. At the top of the flagstaff is the golden image of a gopher.

**STATE MOTTO:** "L'Etoile du Nord" a French phrase meaning "the North Star." The seal carries the words, "Quo Sursam Velo Videre," but this motto has never been used.

**STATE BIRD:** American goldfinch; chosen by the State Federation of Women's Clubs but not yet approved by legislative action.

**INTERESTING FACTS:** Minnesota observes New Year's Day, Lincoln's Birthday, Washington's Birthday, Good Friday, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Columbus Day, Election Day, Armistice Day, Thanksgiving Day, and Christmas Day.

Minnesota has a good many Indians, many of whom live on the following reservations: Boise Forte or Nett Lake, Cass Lake and Winnibigoshish, Fond Du Lac, Grand Portage, Leech Lake, White Earth, White Oak Point, Purchased Lands or Mille Lacs, and Red Lake. The Indians on reservations belong to the Chippewa and Sioux tribes.

Putting from Minnesota's northern border is an interesting tract of land that is known in the state as the Northwest Angle. Its area of some 600 square miles forms a strange little prong on the long straight line of our northern boundary—a wilderness of lake and forest inhabited by a mere handful of people and rarely visited by the sportsmen who might be expected to go there to hunt and fish. The southern two-thirds of the Angle is nothing but water, a part of the wild and beautiful Lake of the Woods, which lies partly in Canada and partly in Minnesota. The northern third—a region entirely cut off by water from the main body of our country—is a broad peninsula extending eastward into the lake from the Canadian province of Manitoba. Here is primeval forest, the home of moose and deer. On the north, Angle Inlet, which forms part of our country's northern border, separates the Angle from Ontario, which also bounds the tract on the east.

This remote land, though strange to us, is old to history. It was doubtless first visited by Frenchmen sometime in the 1600's, and by the middle of the next century had been thoroughly explored by them. At the western end of the Angle Inlet there is still an open clearing where once was the end of the Dawson Trail, which ran northwest to Winnipeg. Here, at the extreme northwestern corner of the Angle, stands an iron shaft to mark the spot where Manitoba, Ontario, and Minnesota meet. It is the northernmost point in the United States. Ten miles down the Inlet is the site of old Fort St. Charles, a trading post built by the French in 1732 but long since gone to ruin. The spot is marked by a flat rock still bearing traces of its old inscription. Beside the rock is a sign which reads, "Fondé 1732. Retrouvé 1908"—Founded 1732. Rediscovered 1908. With the disappearance of the fur traders the logs of the old fort fell to decay, and for 150 years its very site was lost. But then came monks from Winnipeg who found what traces of it were left and set up the sign to mark the spot.

Halfway down the Inlet is an airport, and near it a little schoolhouse, the northernmost in the United States. The post office for the region—and it too is the northernmost in the country—is at a trading post on an island near the mouth of the Inlet. Most of the people in the Northwest Angle make their living by fishing—for muskellunge and bass and pike and other smaller fish. Some day this remote wilderness will be invaded by sportsmen, for here is one of the few remaining fastnesses for the wild life with which our continent once was teeming.

# MINNESOTA—Continued

Population of state, 1940, 2,792,300					
Counties					
Aitkin (D4)	17,865	Redwood (B6)	22,290	East Grand Forks	
Anoka (D3)	22,443	Renville (C6)	24,625	(A3)	3,511
Becker (B4)	26,561	Rice (D6)	32,160	Edina * (D6)	5,855
Beltrami 1 (C2)	26,107	Rock (A7)	10,933	Ely * (F3)	5,970
Benton (D5)	16,106	Roseau (B2)	15,103	Eveleth * (E3)	6,887
Big Stone 1 (A5)	10,447			Excelsior (D6)	1,422
Blue Earth (C6)	36,203	St. Louis (E3)	206,917	Fairmont * (C7)	6,988
Brown (C6)	25,544	Scott (D6)	15,585	Faribault * (D6)	14,527
Carlton (E4)	24,212	Sherburne (D5)	10,456	Farmington (D6)	1,580
Carver (D6)	17,606	Sibley (C6)	16,625	Fergus Falls *	
Cass (C3)	20,646	Stearns (C5)	67,200	(A4)	10,848
Chippewa (B5)	16,927	Steele (D6)	19,749	Gilbert * (E3)	2,504
Chisago (E5)	13,124	Stevens (A5)	11,039	Glencoe (C6)	2,387
Clay (A4)	25,337	Swift (B5)	15,469	Glenwood * (B5)	2,564
Clearwater (B3)	11,153			Golden Valley	
Cook (G3)	3,030	Todd (C4)	27,438	(D6)	2,048
Cottonwood (B7)	16,143	Traverse (A5)	8,283	Grand Rapids *	
Crow Wing (C4)	30,226			(D3)	4,875
Dakota (D6)	39,660	Wabasha (E6)	17,653	Granite Falls	
Dodge (E6)	12,931	Wadena (C4)	12,772	(B6)	2,388
Douglas (B5)	20,369	Waseca (D6)	15,186	Hallock (A2)	1,353
Faribault (D7)	23,941	Washington (E5)	26,430	Hastings * (F6)	5,662
Fillmore (E7)	25,830	Watsonwan (C7)	13,902	Hibbing * (E3)	16,385
Freeborn (D7)	31,780	Wilkin (A4)	10,475	Hopkins * (D6)	4,100
Goodhue (E6)	31,564	Winona (F7)	37,795	Hutchinson *	
Grant (A5)	9,828	Wright (D5)	27,550	(C6)	3,887
Hennepin (D5)	568,899	Yellow Medicine		International	
Houston (F7)	14,735	(B6)	16,917	Falls * (D2)	5,626
Hubbard (C3)	11,085			Jackson * (C7)	2,840
Isanti (D5)	12,950	Cities, Boroughs, and		Janesville (D6)	1,296
Itasca (D3)	32,996	Villages		Jordan (D6)	1,422
Jackson (B7)	16,805	[Places marked with an		Keewatin (D3)	1,942
Kanabec (D5)	9,651	asterisk (*) were clas-		Kenyon (F)	1,530
Kandiyohi (B5)	26,524	sified as urban in 1940]		Lake City * (E6)	3,204
Kittson (A2)	10,717	Aitkin (A3)	1,938	Lake Crystal	
Koochiching		Artkin (D4)	2,063	(C6)	1,319
(D2)	16,930	Albert Lea (D7)	12,200	Lakefield (B7)	1,699
Lac qui Parle *		Alexandria *		Le Center 3 (D6)	1,232
(A6)	15,509	(B5)	5,051	Le Sueur (D6)	2,302
Lake (F3)	6,956	Anoka * (D5)	6,426	Litchfield * (C5)	3,920
Lake of the		Appleton (B5)	1,877	Little Falls *	
Woods 1 (C2)	5,975	Aurora (E3)	1,528	(C5)	6,047
Le Sueur (D6)	19,227	Austin * (E7)	18,307	Long Prairie	
Lincoln (A6)	10,797	Barnesville (A4)	1,450	(C5)	2,311
Lyon (B6)	21,569	Bayport * (E5)	2,633	Luverne * (E7)	3,114
McLeod (C6)	21,380	Belle Plaine (D6)	1,407	Madelia (C6)	1,652
Mahnomen (B3)	8,054	Bemidji * (C3)	4,427	Madison (A5)	2,312
Marshall (A2)	18,364	Benson * (B5)	2,729	Mahnomen (B3)	1,429
Martin (C7)	24,656	Blue Earth *		Mankato * (D6)	15,654
Meeker (C5)	19,277	(C7)	3,702	Marshall * (B6)	4,590
Mille Lacs (D5)	15,558	Bovey (D3)	1,355	Marose (C5)	2,015
Morrison (C5)	27,473	Brainerd * (C4)	12,071	Milaca (D5)	1,627
Mower (E7)	36,113	Breckenridge *		Minneapolis *	
Murray (B6)	15,060	(A4)	2,745	(D6)	492,370
Nicollet (C6)	18,282	Brooklyn Center		Montevideo *	
Nobles (B7)	21,215	(D5)	1,870	(B6)	5,220
Norman (A3)	14,746	Buffalo (D5)	1,695	Montgomery	
Olmsted (E7)	42,658	Buhl (E3)	1,600	(D6)	1,741
Otter Tail (B4)	53,192	Caledonia (F7)	1,985	Moorehead *	
Pennington (A2)	12,913	Cambridge (D5)	1,592	(A4)	9,491
Pine (E4)	21,478	Canby (A6)	2,099	Moose Lake	
Pipestone (A6)	13,794	Cannon Falls		(E4)	1,432
Polk (A3)	37,734	(E6)	1,544	Mora (D5)	1,494
Pope (B5)	13,544	Cass Lake (C3)	1,904	Morris * (B5)	3,241
Ramsey (D5)	309,935	Chaska (D6)	1,927	Mountain Iron	
Red Lake (A3)	7,413	Chatfield (E7)	1,640	(E3)	1,492
		Chisholm * (E3)	7,487	Mountain Lake	
		Cloquet * (E4)	7,304	(C7)	1,745
		Cold Spring (C5)	1,427	Nashwaak (D3)	2,228
		Coleraine (D3)	1,325	New Prague	
		Columbia		(D6)	1,645
		Heights * (D5)	6,035	New Ulm * (C6)	8,743
		Cromwell (E4)	7,161	Northfield * (D6)	4,533
		Crosby * (D4)	2,954	North St. Paul *	
		Crystal (D5)	2,373	(E5)	3,135
		Dawson (A6)	1,646	Olivia (C6)	1,788
		Detroit Lakes *		Ortonville (A5)	2,469
		(B4)	5,015	Osakis (B5)	1,483
		Duluth * (E4)	101,065	Owatonna * (D6)	8,694
				Park Rapids *	
				(C4)	2,643
				Paynesville (C5)	1,317
				Pelican Rapids	
				(A4)	1,560
				Perham (B4)	1,534
				Pine City (E5)	1,718
				Pipestone * (A7)	4,682
				Plainview (E6)	1,500
				Preston (E7)	1,447
				Princeton (D5)	1,865
				Proctor 4 (E4)	2,408
				Red Lake Falls	
				(A3)	1,530
				Red Wing * (E6)	9,962
				Redwood Falls *	
				(B6)	3,270
				Richfield * (D5)	6,750
				Robbinsdale *	
				(D5)	6,018
				Rochester * (E7)	26,312
				Roseau (B2)	1,775
				St. Charles (E7)	1,507
				St. Cloud * (C5)	24,173
				St. James * (C7)	3,400
				St. Louis Park *	
				(D6)	7,737
				St. Paul * (D6)	287,736
				St. Peter * (C6)	5,870
				Sandstone (F4)	1,559
				Sauk Centre *	
				(C5)	3,016
				Sauk Rapids *	
				(C5)	2,981
				Shakopee (D6)	2,418
				Shayton (B7)	1,587
				Sleepy Eye *	
				(C6)	2,923
				S. International	
				Falls (D2)	1,299
				S. St. Paul * (D6)	11,844
				Springfield (C6)	2,361
				Spring Valley	
				(E7)	2,133
				Staples * (C4)	2,952
				Stillwater * (E5)	7,013
				Thief River Falls *	
				(A2)	6,019
				Tracy * (B6)	3,085
				Two Harbors *	
				(F3)	4,046
				Virginia * (E3)	12,264
				Wabasha (E6)	2,368
				Wadena * (B4)	2,916
				Waite Park (C5)	1,427
				Warren (A2)	1,639
				Warroad (B2)	1,309
				Waseca * (D6)	4,270
				Waterville (D6)	1,600
				Wayzata (D5)	1,473
				Wells (D7)	2,217
				West St. Paul *	
				(D6)	5,733
				Wheaton (A5)	1,700
				White Bear Lake *	
				(D5)	2,858
				Willmar * (B5)	7,623
				Windom * (B7)	2,807
				Winnebago (C7)	1,992
				Winona * (F6)	22,490
				Worthington *	
				(B7)	5,918
				Zumbrota (E6)	1,386

1 Lake of the Woods organized from part of Beltrami in 1922  
2 Part of Lac qui Parle annexed to Big Stone in 1938

3 Name changed from Le Sueur Center in 1931  
4 Name changed from Proctorknott in 1939.



---

# **The HISTORY of MISSISSIPPI**

---

## **Reading Unit No. 23**

---

### **MISSISSIPPI: THE MAGNOLIA STATE**

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

#### ***Interesting Facts Explained***

Where rivers wander wherever they will, 8-200  
When the Mississippi goes on the rampage, 8-200  
The first settlers of Mississippi, 8-201  
When the Indians went to res-

ervations, 8-202  
How the Civil War ruined Mississippi, 8-203  
Where the forests are magnificent, 8-205  
The state's railroad system, 8-205

#### ***Things to Think About***

Which famous explorers came to Mississippi?  
What troubles did the French have with the Indians?  
When did the United States an-

nex the Mississippi district?  
Who worked on the cotton plantations in Mississippi?  
What fish are caught in the Mississippi fisheries?

#### ***Picture Hunt***

What interesting events have taken place at Jackson? 8-200  
How many pecans are grown along the Mississippi coast?

8 203  
What important industries are carried on in Mississippi? 8-204

#### ***Related Material***

The great plantations, 8-408-10  
How much "sediment" does the Mississippi River empty into the Gulf of Mexico every day? 1-49  
Which early French explorers found the Mississippi? 7-137-

39  
What names has the Mississippi been called? 7-213  
The plight of the farmer, 7-459  
Binding up the nation's wounds, 7 267-74  
When did steamboats first appear on the Mississippi? 7-214-15

#### ***Practical Applications***

What machine promises to create a new epoch in the South? 8-204

How does Mississippi meet the danger of flood? 8-205

#### ***Leisure-time Activities***

PROJECT NO. 1: Make a relief map of Mississippi, 8-200-1.

PROJECT NO. 2: Read the story of how rivers were formed, 1-47-49.

---

## THE HISTORY OF MISSISSIPPI

---



Photo by the Jackson C. of C.

Jackson, named for Andrew Jackson, is the capital of Mississippi. It was here, in the old state capitol, that the secession convention of 1861 was held, and

here too that Jefferson Davis made his last speech in 1884. The new state capitol, illustrated above, was finished in 1903.

### MISSISSIPPI: *the* MAGNOLIA STATE

*Because of Her Mild Climate and Fertile Soil, Mississippi Is More Completely Occupied with Farming than Any Other State in the Union*

**T**HE Father of Waters has numerous lusty sons—great rivers that water a large part of the continent. But in daughters he is not so well off. He has only one who bears his name, but she is very lovely. To him she owes much of her physical form and character, and his influence has been great not only in her early history but in her busy life to-day. For the state of Mississippi seems almost a part of the great river that forms her western boundary.

To begin with, the state lies in what is known as the "Mississippi embayment," where the Gulf coastal plain extends far inland along the river. The land here is all very level, as it is along the whole of the Gulf. It once was deposited under the sea by rivers, of which the Mississippi was of course the largest. Then, as the land was raised up by movements of the earth's surface, what had been sea bottom became

dry land, with the broad track of the river cutting through it. Only in the northern part of the state are there any hills to speak of, and those are never over 800 feet high. From them the land slopes to the Mississippi and the Gulf, where white sand lines the beach along what is known as Mississippi Sound.

Rivers wander wherever they will across this fertile lowland, and rivers there are in plenty. First, of course, there is the Mississippi itself, which in many places runs along the summit of a ridge which it has built up many feet above the land on either side. It carries traffic whenever it is asked to; and when it goes on the rampage at flood time—as it did, for instance, in 1927—it can do untold damage. Then there are the Tombigbee, the Tennessee, the Yazoo (yăz'-ōō), the Big Black, the Pearl, and the Pascagoula (păs'kâ-gōō'lâ), all of them large streams. The valleys in which most of them

## THE HISTORY OF MISSISSIPPI

run are wide and flat, made up of silt and rich mud which the rivers have dropped. An especially famous section of these river margins, or "bottom lands," is the region between the Mississippi and Yazoo rivers. These are called the Yazoo bottoms, or the Yazoo Delta, and are about fifteen feet below the low-water surface of the river.

The levees that help hold the water back are costly to build but well worth while, for the land is tremendously fertile. It is not strange that Mississippi has a larger proportion of farmers than any other state has. But when the first settlers came they must have despaired of ever making anything worth while out of those swamps, which then were a hopeless barrier to exploration.

For the first explorers who adventured into Mississippi did not go sailing quietly by on the great river. The famous Spaniard Hernando de Soto and his band of adventurers came cross-country from Florida, fighting their way through forests and hostile Indians, over rivers and mountains and obstacles of every sort. Late in 1540 they arrived in what is now Mississippi and crossed over the northern part, straight through the swamps and lowlands of the Yazoo River. Near Memphis they crossed the Mississippi and went on into Arkansas.

### The First Settlers

In 1682 La Salle (là sàl) sailed down the great river to its mouth and named all the land on either side of the stream "Louisiana," after King Louis XIV of France. Some seventeen or eighteen years later the French, under a man named Pierre Lemoyne d'Iberville (pyër lè-mwân' dé'bër'vèl'), succeeded

in founding their first colony at what is now Ocean Springs, on the shore of Biloxi (bì-lòk'sì) Bay. Several years later this colony moved eastward to Mobile Bay in Alabama. Using New Orleans as a center, the French continued to send a sprinkling of colonists into Mississippi. Fort Rosalie, where Natchez (näch'èz) now stands, Pascagoula,



This pillared structure is one of the buildings on the campus of the University of Mississippi, at Oxford, in the northern part of the state.

and St. Peter's Fort, near the mouth of the Yazoo, were the most important of these settlements. For a time the French had a good deal of trouble with the Indians, for the Choctaws (chòk'-tò), Creeks, and Chickasaws were powerful tribes. Finally the first permanent settlement was planted at what is now Biloxi (1720). In 1729 the Natchez Indians, allies of the Creek Confederacy, destroyed Fort Rosalie, killed two hundred persons, and captured five hundred prisoners. The French replied with

fierce attacks on Indian villages, and there was constant turmoil through the whole territory of Louisiana, which then included far more land than is covered by the modern state of that name. The Choctaws, Creeks, and Chickasaws all belonged to the large Muskogean (mùs'kò-jè'ân) family, to which the Seminoles (sēm'ī-nōl) of Florida also belonged. The Biloxis, in the extreme south, were members of the Siouan (sōō'ân) family.

On the whole, French rule was not very successful along the Mississippi River. The Indians were not friendly, and the French settlements did not prosper. In 1763 the English took over all the French holdings east of the Mississippi, and called the region the Province of West Florida. Then in 1781 the Spanish took over West Florida from the English, but the rule which they could provide was worse than that of the French

## THE HISTORY OF MISSISSIPPI



Photo by the Gulfport C. of C.

"Beauvoir" is the name of this pleasant house, built facing the beautiful waters of Mississippi Sound,

between Gulfport and Biloxi. At one time it was the home of Jefferson Davis.

or English, and in 1798 the United States annexed the whole section, organizing it into the Territory of Mississippi. But this territory did not reach all the way to the south, and in 1813 the United States quietly added the little neck of land which now extends along the Gulf of Mexico.

### Where the Settlers Came From

All this time Mississippi had been growing in numbers and fast settling down to the life of a civilized community. From all over the United States and from the distant shores of Europe as well, the rich lands along the river bottoms of Mississippi drew men to the new territory. England, Ireland, Scotland, and the colonies of Georgia, the Carolinas, and Virginia all sent many men. Even Connecticut and New Jersey in the far north contributed settlers. By 1832 both the Chickasaws and the Choctaws, the two great Indian tribes, had been moved out of the state and sent off to Indian reservations in what is now Oklahoma. By the year 1817 there were enough permanent settlers to

qualify the Territory of Mississippi as a state; and in the same year she was admitted to the Union. From a population of 8,850 in 1800, she grew to one of 130,621, more than fifteen times as great, by 1830. In 1880 her population rose to over a million for the first time, and in 1930 it was over two million.

As is usual with frontier states, Mississippi at first devoted herself almost entirely to farming. Because people had no means of transportation, they had to provide themselves at home with the things which are necessary to life, and naturally the first of those was food. So the first crops Mississippi began to raise were corn, oats, wheat, rice, sweet potatoes, and hay. But it did not take long for the settlers to discover that in the bottom lands along the rivers, and especially in the Yazoo Delta, they had what is almost certainly the finest cotton-growing land in the world. Even though there were no railroads to carry the cotton to the east, the Mississippi River provided an easy route to New Orleans, where ships

## THE HISTORY OF MISSISSIPPI

carried it to all the great markets of the world.

From the very first Mississippi used slave labor in great quantities to grow the cotton which formed her only important cash crop. Not only did she import thousands of Negroes from Africa, but she often used many of the Indians captured in Indian wars as workers in her cotton fields. From that time to this, Mississippi has had a larger colored than white population. To-day she is the last state where colored people outnumber whites. Though at present the white population is growing much faster than the colored population, in some of the western counties where cotton plays such an important part in the life of the people, there are four or five times as many Negroes as white people.

With her enormous slave population, Mississippi's early growth was swift, but her final fate was certain. Under the leadership of Jefferson Davis, later to be president of the Confederacy, the feeling for states' rights grew strong. Mississippi and South Carolina were the leading states in preaching that every state had a right to withdraw from the Union and to have complete control over its own internal affairs. When the Civil War came, Mississippi was one of the first states to secede and to take up arms. Battles were fought in all parts of her territory, thousands of her soldiers were killed, and untold damage was done to her property. The battles of Corinth, Fort Gibson, Jackson, and Vicksburg were all bloody and important engagements. But most of the damage was done by invasion, and by raids and counter-raids, when both armies were trying to ruin the country lest the other side should profit

from it. Add to this the fact that Mississippi was one of the worst sufferers from the Reconstruction, and you will see how completely prostrated she was after the Civil War. Giving to Negroes the right to vote and taking that right away from many of the white leaders encouraged race hatred; and the dishonest and corrupt state government soon put the state almost hopelessly in debt.

All the worst elements among the people came into power—the dishonest, disreputable whites and the conscienceless carpet-baggers, both of whom held sway by dominating the helpless, uneducated Negroes.

After the War and the Reconstruction, Mississippi took up her agriculture again, for it was the only large-scale occupation for which she was fitted. She had neither coal nor iron nor water power, but she did have a fertile soil. Of course cotton was still her chief crop; and because she spent all her energies on it to the exclusion of other crops, she was one of the worst sufferers in the great cotton depressions of the 1890's.

### Mississippi's Farmers

The same process which we described in our story of Georgia turned the farmers of Mississippi into tenants or "sharecroppers." In 1900, out of 220,803 farms, just 81,412 were worked by their owners or part owners. The rest were worked by tenants who paid cash or part of their crop for the use of their farms. In 1925, out of 257,228 farms, only 80,808 were worked by their owners—less than one-third. On other pages we have told of the evils of the system. As for the other crops besides cotton, they have always been mostly of a sort to be used at home—

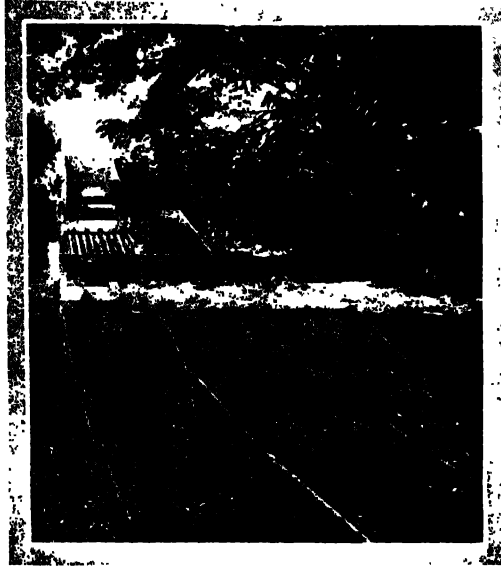


Photo by the Gulfport C. of C.

Several million pounds of pecans are grown every year along Mississippi's coasts. The fine paper-shell pecans in this picture are spread out on airing racks.

## THE HISTORY OF MISSISSIPPI

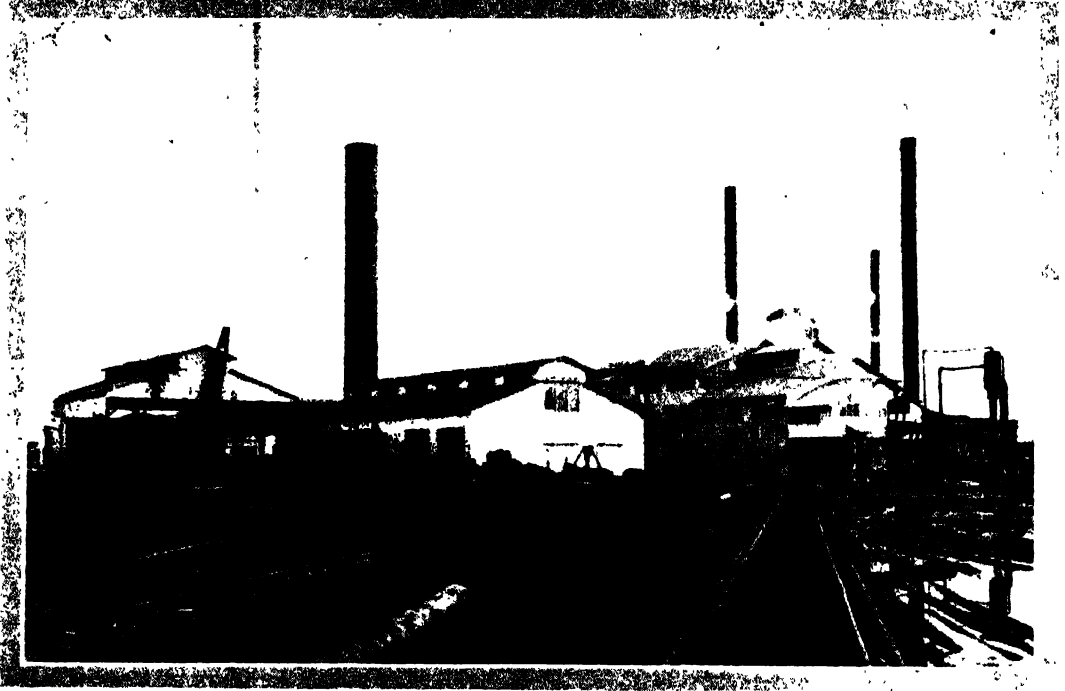


Photo by the Laurel C. of C

Mississippi owns valuable forests of pine and hardwood. Above is a lumber mill in operation at Laurel.



Photo by the Delta Experimental Station

This machine, the first successful cotton picker, was invented by two brothers, John and Mack Rust, and was first demonstrated in Mississippi in 1936. It

wound the cotton on revolving moistened spindles attached to an endless belt. Cotton pickers are now perfected and promise to bring a great change in the South.

## THE HISTORY OF MISSISSIPPI

corn, oats, wheat, sweet potatoes, rice, sugar cane, fruits, and vegetables. Recently the small vegetables which Mississippi grows have increased in importance, and farmers have begun to ship them out of the state. Meridian is a center of the state's truck-gardening section. Cotton—now beginning to be picked by machine—is still the state's great crop, but the farmers also rely on corn, oats, hay, soybeans, peanuts, pecans, white and sweet potatoes, peaches, and pears.

More important than any of the crops except cotton, the lumber and timber industry of Mississippi developed greatly after the turn of the century. Cypress, cottonwood, oak, gum, poplar, hickory, ash, elm, and maple are leading woods; but more important still are the great forests of yellow pine which cover the state. They provide timber and the great quantities of turpentine and resin which every year bring in large sums. In 1929 the state produced more timber than any other in the South and ranked third among the states of the nation in its production, while in turpentine and resin she ranked fourth. The timber centers of Mississippi are Jackson, the capital, Vicksburg, and especially Hattiesburg. Vicksburg and Jackson are also centers of Mississippi's other great industry, the manufacture of cotton by-products, such as cottonseed oil and cottonseed cake, which is used as a stock food. They manufacture a certain amount of cotton goods but for a long time were handicapped by the lack of cheap power. The development of electric power in the Tennessee Valley is expected to help Mississippi greatly. The state has built an artificial harbor at Gulfport, where boats now take on lumber, cotton, and other wares. Bulky, slow-going goods can go east by barge as far as Florida and west to Corpus Christi, Texas, on the Intracoastal Waterway inside the islands along the Gulf coast. The Mississippi Valley is in easy reach.

### Oysters and Shrimps

Mississippi's fisheries, her oldest industry and one of the most interesting, do not depend on such developments. Centering in the city of Biloxi, this industry specializes in catching and canning shrimps and oysters.

Of course it yields other valuable fish also.

Lately petroleum has brought the state wealth. Clay products, sand and gravel, and natural gas are other mineral products.

All the industries of Mississippi have benefited immensely by the growth of the state's railroad system. Because the rivers took care of transportation for a long time, the growth of railways was very slow; by 1850 the state had only 75 miles of railroad. But after the Civil War all that was changed, and by 1890 she had well over 2,000 miles. The working mileage of railroads to-day is nearly four thousand.

The destructive floods, especially of the Mississippi River, have been a great handicap to the steady growth of Mississippi. Many of the bottom lands, the Yazoo Delta in particular, are far below the level of the river, and only the great levee system, which holds the rivers back, keeps the whole region from lying under as much as fifteen feet of water all the time. The worst danger comes when the floods of the Ohio and Missouri rivers come pouring down the Mississippi at the same time or close together. Over these floods the state has no control. The most she can do is to keep her levees strong and high, and hope that a system of dams will soon be built to control the floods in the Ohio and Missouri river valleys.

### A Difficult Problem

Another of Mississippi's great problems has been in education. The Civil War left her with an enormous number of uneducated Negroes and no money to educate them. As always in states with a large country population and a high percentage of Negroes, illiteracy is extremely high. In 1930 it was the fourth highest in the nation, with 13.1 percent of her people unable to read or write. But this figure represents a large decrease since 1920, when illiteracy stood at 17.7. The improvement since 1900 is even more impressive. Forty percent of the state income goes for education. So Mississippi is making gallant progress with this huge task. With the spread of manufactures and the growth which should follow the completion of the Tennessee Valley developments, we may look for an even swifter advance.

## MISSISSIPPI

**AREA:** 47,726 square miles—31st in rank.

**LOCATION:** Mississippi, one of the East South Central group of states, lies between 30° 13' and 35° N. Lat. and between 88° 7' and 91° 41' W. Long. It is one of the Gulf states, and is bounded on the north by Tennessee, on the east by Alabama, on the south by the Gulf of Mexico and Louisiana, and on the west by Louisiana and Arkansas.

**PHYSICAL FEATURES:** All of Mississippi is low and fairly level, for it lies almost entirely in what is known as the Mississippi embayment of the Gulf coastal plain. Much of the western part of the state is below the level of the Mississippi River (2,470 m. long), which forms the state's western boundary. From the river and the Gulf the surface rises gradually in gently rolling hills toward the north and northeast, but nowhere is there anything that could be called a range of hills or mountains. The highest point in the state is in the northeast county, where there is an elevation of 806 feet. The average elevation is 300 ft.

Besides the Mississippi River, which may be navigated for its whole length along the state's western border, the important rivers are the Big Black (330 m. long) and the Yazoo (188 m. long), both tributaries of the Mississippi; the Pearl (490 m. long) and the Pascagoula, which enter the Gulf; and the Tombigbee (409 m. long), which drains the northeastern part of the state before it enters Alabama to make its way to the Gulf. The Pearl forms part of the boundary between Mississippi and Louisiana, and the Tennessee cuts off a tiny corner in the northeast between Mississippi and Alabama. The Pontotoc Ridge, a low elevation that extends from northeast Alabama southward into Choctaw County, forms the watershed between the Tombigbee and the rivers that flow to the west. In Choctaw County the ridge divides and the western arm serves as the divide between the Pearl and the rivers that enter the Mississippi, while the eastern branch divides the basin of the Pearl from that of the Pascagoula. An area of very low and fertile ground lying between the Yazoo and the Mississippi is known as the Yazoo delta. It covers about 7,000 square miles, and is mostly drained by the Yazoo River. The streams in this section are very sluggish, and have formed numerous oxbow loops and bayous. Dikes fifteen feet above the surface of the ground hold back the Mississippi. To the east of the delta is a belt of low hills cut by steep ravines. South of the delta these "cane hills" form bluffs along the Mississippi. East of the hilly belt are rolling prairies.

Mississippi has 85 miles of coast, with beaches of fine white sand and a low marshy tract behind them. A long row of narrow sand islands incloses the shallow Mississippi Sound. Though the Mississippi shore is broken by indentations, the rivers have clogged them with sand bars and there are no really good harbors. There are a great many bayous in the bottom land. Mississippi has 503 square miles of water. There is no irrigated land.

**CLIMATE:** Because it is near the sea, southern Mississippi has a mild, even climate. Inland the extremes are greater. At Vicksburg the mean January temperature is 48° F., the mean July temperature, 81°. The record high is 104°, the record low -1°. The mean annual temperature for the state is 64°, or 67° on the coast and 61° along the northern border. Rainfall is abundant, with an average of 51 in. for the state 54 in. in the south and 49 in the north. January, February, and March are the wettest months of the year, September and October the driest. The southeast winds prevail, but the southwest winds bring the rain. North winds are likely to be severe.

**INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING:** The more important institutions in the state are Millsaps College at Jackson, Mississippi College at Clinton, Mississippi State College at Starkville, Mississippi State College for Women at Columbus, the University of Mississippi at Oxford, Tougaloo College for colored students at Tougaloo. The state maintains teachers' colleges at Hattiesburg and Cleveland, and the Alcorn Agricultural and Mechanical College for Negroes at Rodney. There are women's colleges at Jackson and Blue Mountain.

**CHARITIES AND CORRECTION:** Hospitals are maintained at Jackson, Natchez, Vicksburg, Laurel, and Meridian; and insane asylums at Jackson and Meridian. A state tuberculosis sanatorium has been established at Magee. At Ellisville is a home for the feeble-minded and at Jackson are schools for the blind and for the deaf and dumb. An industrial school for delinquent and abandoned children is at Columbia, and the Jefferson Davis Soldiers' Home is at Biloxi. The state prison is at Jackson, and state farms for criminals are scattered throughout the state. Mississippi inflicts capital punishment by hanging.

**POLITICAL FACTS:** Mississippi is now governed under the constitution of 1890, the fourth since her admission to the Union. It has since been amended. Laws are made by a legislature consisting of two houses, a Senate and a House of Representative, both elected for four years. It meets in even-numbered years.

The executive officials are the governor, treasurer, auditor, lieutenant-governor, secretary of state, and attorney-general. All are elected for four years, and the first three may not hold their offices for two consecutive terms.

The judiciary is headed by a supreme court, which hears cases on appeal and is made up of six judges elected for a term of eight years. Besides this there are chancery courts having jurisdiction over cases in equity and circuit courts with common-law jurisdiction. Judges in these courts also are elected. The counties are divided into chancery and circuit districts, and for each a judge is chosen. In addition, each of the five districts into which a county is divided has two or more justices of the peace.

A voter must be at least twenty-one years of age, have lived in the state for two years, in the district one year, have registered and paid taxes for two years preceding the election, and be able to read or to understand the constitution of the United States when he hears it read. All voters must pay a poll tax.

A board of supervisors administers each of the five divisions into which a county is divided.

The capital of Mississippi is at Jackson.

**PARKS:** At Vicksburg is a national military park commemorating the Siege of Vicksburg. Here too is a national cemetery. At Tupelo and Bethany are national battlefield sites.

**MONUMENTS:** Ackia Battleground National Monument in Lee County is on the probable site of a fort where the Chickasaws turned back the French (1736).

**GAME AND BIRD RESERVATIONS:** Birds are protected in Noxubee Refuge, in Petit Bois Refuge, which extends into Alabama, and in Yazoo Refuge.

Mississippi has 2,777,325 acres of national forest.

**NAME:** Mississippi was named for the Mississippi River, which bears the name given it by the Indians. Originally the "i's" were pronounced like long "e's," but when they became shortened in the speech of the English settlers, the original French and Spanish spelling—"Misissipi"—was changed to the spelling



## MISSISSIPPI—Continued

we have today. We do not know the exact tribe that first used the word, but are reasonably sure that the meaning was "great river." The Indian form was possibly "meeche cebe" or "mescha cebe," in which "cebe" means "river" and the adjectives mean "great."

**NICKNAMES:** Mississippi is known as the Bayou State from the number of its bayous. The eagle on its coat of arms gives it the titles of the Border-eagle State and the Eagle State. Because it has a large number of groundhogs it is sometimes called the Groundhog State, and because large catfish are common in its swamps and rivers it is called the Mud Cat State. Its many beautiful magnolias give it the name of the Magnolia State. No one knows why it is called the Mud Waddler State.

The people of Mississippi are nicknamed Mud Cats, Mud Waddlers, and Tadpoles. The last title implies that they are young Frenchmen, for the French are sometimes called frogs from the fact that an ancient heraldic device used at one time by the Parisians bore "three toads." It is not certain how the term came to be applied to the people of Mississippi.

**STATE FLOWER:** Magnolia; chosen by the school children in 1900.

**STATE SONG:** Mississippi sings various songs. "Mississippi," with words by Mrs. Dunbar Rowland

and music by Walter B. Aiken, is a favorite with the people, as is a second song of the same name, the work of Perrin H. Lowrey and Mrs. De Witt Morgan.

**STATE FLAG:** A union square of red and blue upon a field divided into three bars of equal width colored red, white, and blue; the square contains thirteen stars.

**STATE MOTTO:** "Virtute et Armis," meaning "By Virtue and Arms"; probably suggested by the motto of Lord Gray de Wilton, "Virtute Non Armis Fido," or "I put my faith in virtue, not in arms."

**STATE BIRD:** Mocking bird; adopted in 1929 after a voting contest conducted by the Federation of Women's Clubs.

**INTERESTING FACTS:** Mississippi observes New Year's Day, Washington's Birthday, Independence Day, Labor Day, Armistice Day, Thanksgiving Day, Christmas Day, Robert E. Lee's Birthday on January 19th, Confederate Memorial Day on April 26th, and the birthday of Jefferson Davis on June 3rd.

The 1930 census showed Mississippi to have the lowest death rate and the highest birth rate of any southern state.

Mississippi had in 1937 nearly 2,000 Choctaw Indians living on lands purchased for their use.

### Population of state, 1940, 2,183,796 Counties

Adams (C7) . . .	27,238
Alcorn (H1) . . .	26,969
Amite (D8) . . .	21,892
Attala (F4) . . .	30,227
Benton (G1) . . .	10,429
Bolivar (D3) . . .	67,574
Calhoun (G3) . . .	20,893
Carroll (F3) . . .	20,651
Chickasaw (H3) . . .	21,427
Choctaw (G4) . . .	13,548
Claiborne (D7) . . .	12,810
Clarke (H6) . . .	20,596
Clay (H3) . . .	19,030
Coahoma (D2) . . .	48,333
Copiah (D4) . . .	33,974
Covington (I2) . . .	17,030
De Sota (F1) . . .	26,663
Forrest (F8) . . .	34,901
Franklin (D8) . . .	12,504
George (H9) . . .	8,704
Greene (H8) . . .	9,512
Grenada (F3) . . .	19,052
Hancock (F9) . . .	11,328
Harrison (G9) . . .	50,799
Hinds (D6) . . .	107,273
Holmes (F4) . . .	39,710
Humphreys (D4) . . .	26,257
Issaquena (C5) . . .	6,433
Itawamba (J2) . . .	19,922
Jackson (H9) . . .	20,601
Jasper (G6) . . .	19,484
Jefferson (C7) . . .	13,969
Jefferson Davis (F7) . . .	15,869
Jones (G7) . . .	49,227
Kemper (H5) . . .	21,867
Lafayette (G2) . . .	21,257
Lamar (F8) . . .	12,096

Lauderdale (H6) . . .	58,247
Lawrence (E7) . . .	13,983
Leake (F5) . . .	24,570
Lee (H2) . . .	38,838
Leflore (E3) . . .	53,406
Lincoln (D7) . . .	27,506
Lowndes (G4) . . .	35,245
Madison (E5) . . .	37,504
Marion (F8) . . .	21,085
Marshall (F1) . . .	25,522
Monroe (J3) . . .	36,648
Montgomery (F3) . . .	15,703
Neshoba (G5) . . .	27,882
Newton (G6) . . .	21,249
Noxubee (J4) . . .	35,669
Oktibbeha (H4) . . .	22,151
Panola (F2) . . .	34,421
Pearl River (I7) . . .	19,125
Perry (H8) . . .	9,292
Pike (E8) . . .	35,002
Pontotoc (G2) . . .	22,964
Prentiss (J1) . . .	20,921
Quitman (E2) . . .	27,191
Rankin (F6) . . .	27,934
Scott (F6) . . .	23,144
Sharkey (D5) . . .	15,433
Simpson (I7) . . .	22,024
Smith (F6) . . .	19,403
Stone (G9) . . .	6,155
Sunflower (F4) . . .	61,007
Tallahatchie (E3) . . .	34,166
Tate (F1) . . .	19,309
Tippah (H1) . . .	19,680
Tishomingo (J1) . . .	16,974
Tunica (E1) . . .	22,610
Union (H1) . . .	21,867
Walthall (E8) . . .	17,534
Warren (D6) . . .	39,595
Washington (D4) . . .	67,576
Wayne (H7) . . .	16,928

Webster (G3) . . .	14,160
Wilkinson (C8) . . .	15,775
Winston (G4) . . .	22,751

Yalobusha (I2) . . .	18,387
Yazoo (E5) . . .	40,091

### Cities, Towns, Villages

[Places marked with an asterisk (\*) were classified as urban in 1940]

Aberdeen * (H3) . . .	4,746
Amory * (J3) . . .	3,727
Bay St. Louis * (G10) . . .	4,138
Belzoni * (D4) . . .	3,789
Biloxi * (H10) . . .	17,475
Brookhaven * (E7) . . .	6,232
Canton * (F5) . . .	6,011
Charleston (E2) . . .	2,100
Clarksdale * (D2) . . .	12,160
Cleveland * (D3) . . .	4,155
Columbia * (I3) . . .	6,064
Columbus (J4) . . .	13,645
Corinth * (H1) . . .	7,818
Crystal Springs * (I6) . . .	2,855
Durant * (F4) . . .	2,510
Ellisville * (G7) . . .	2,607
Forest * (G6) . . .	2,735
Greenville * (C4) . . .	20,892
Greenwood * (E4) . . .	14,767
Grenada * (F3) . . .	5,831
Gulfport * (G10) . . .	15,195
Hattiesburg * (J3) . . .	21,026
Hazlehurst * (E7) . . .	3,124
Holly Springs * (G1) . . .	2,750

Indianola * (D4) . . .	3,604
Jackson * (E6) . . .	62,107
Kosciusko * (F4) . . .	4,291
Laurel * (G7) . . .	20,598
Leland * (D4) . . .	3,700
Lexington * (E4) . . .	2,930
Louisville * (G4) . . .	3,451
McComb * (E8) . . .	9,898
Macon (H4) . . .	2,261
Magnolia (E8) . . .	2,125
Meridian * (H6) . . .	35,481
Moss Point * (H10) . . .	3,042
Natchez * (C7) . . .	15,296
New Albany * (G2) . . .	3,602
Okolona (H2) . . .	2,117
Oxford * (F2) . . .	3,433
Pascagoula * (H10) . . .	5,900
Pass Christian * (G10) . . .	3,338
Philadelphia * (G5) . . .	3,711
Picayune * (I9) . . .	5,129
Port Gibson * (D7) . . .	2,748
Ripley (H1) . . .	2,011
Rosedale (C3) . . .	2,063
Sardis (F2) . . .	2,022
Starkville * (H4) . . .	4,900
Tupelo * (H2) . . .	8,212
Vicksburg * (D6) . . .	24,460
Water Valley * (F2) . . .	3,340
West Point * (H3) . . .	5,627
Winona * (F4) . . .	2,532
Yazoo City * (E5) . . .	7,258

---

# ***The HISTORY of MISSOURI***

---

## **Reading Unit No. 24**

---

### **MISSOURI: THE SHOW ME STATE**

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

#### ***Interesting Facts Explained***

The decisive moment in Missouri's history, 8-207  
When La Salle discovered Missouri, 8-208  
The early prosperity of St. Louis, 8-208  
Why slavery was encouraged in Missouri, 8-209  
The "Missouri Compromise," 8-209-10

When Germans settled in Missouri, 8-210  
Why the Mormons left Missouri, 8-211  
Missouri's part in the Civil War, 8-211  
The lead mines, 8-211-12  
Why the saying, "I'm from Missouri," became famous, 8-212

#### ***Picture Hunt***

What is the area of Bagnell Dam? 8-209

What is the "Tri-state" field? 8-211

#### ***Related Material***

What important river did La Salle discover? 13-486  
Why did the Mormons go to Utah? 7-243-44  
The story of coal, 9-435-47  
Of what use were mules in the mines? 9-444  
When was the Santa Fe trail opened? 7-231  
Why is a revenue stamp put on every package of cigarettes? 9-224  
How is Portland cement made? 9-383

What part did Whittier take in the anti-slavery campaign? 13-806-7  
What was the legend of the Mexican Fair God? 7-69  
America turns to the West, 7-213-16  
How was Lincoln educated? 12-526  
Where is tobacco raised? 9-222-23  
A famous citizen of Missouri, 13-327-30

#### ***Practical Applications***

How has Missouri's geographical position helped her industrial life? 8-212

What kind of spirit does Missouri rely on for her progress? 8-212

#### ***Leisure-time Activities***

PROJECT NO. 1: Draw a map of Missouri and mark on it: St. Joseph, Washington, St. Louis, Kansas City, Springfield, Joplin,

Jefferson City, the Missouri River, and the Ozark Mountains.  
PROJECT NO. 2: Read Mark Twain's "Huckleberry Finn."

## THE HISTORY OF MISSOURI



Photo by Jefferson City C. of C.

Jefferson City, the capital of Missouri, was named in honor of our third president. The capitol building,

shown above, dominates the city, which lies along the banks of the Missouri River.

### MISSOURI: *the* SHOW ME STATE

*Both Her Interesting History and Her Present Accomplishment  
Make Missouri One of the Important States in the Union.*

**T**HE Missouri of to-day is a rich and powerful state, strong and independent in all phases of her economic life. Her cities are flourishing and her industries productive, the fruits of her farms and of her mines are known in the four corners of the earth. Yet the decisive moment in her history, the one which fixed the course of her future—and, it may well be, the future of the whole United States as well—occurred when she was not yet even a state, but only a little backwoods territory on the edge of civilization. “Just as the twig is bent the tree’s inclined.” That crude, almost barbaric territory of Missouri (mī-zōōr’Y) has become an important state in a great Union; yet she still keeps the independence and the freedom from pretense which were her traits in early infancy. Self-reliant, prosperous, and enterprising, with feet firm on the ground, Missouri is typical of much that is best in American life.

The surface of the state is divided into three separate regions, or belts, running more or less east and west. In the northern part of the state, extending down to—and in the west across—the Missouri River, are the prairie plains of the Central United States—beautiful rolling country ranging from an elevation of about 1,200 feet in the northwest to some 500 feet in the northeast. All of the region north of the Missouri is covered with a thin layer of glacial drift, too shallow to change the outlines of the land to any great extent but very rich and fertile. To the south of the prairies, the picturesque Ozark (ō’z. -k) Mountains run northeast and southwest, from a point just south of St. Louis to the Arkansas border. This region is made up of many smooth, rounded peaks and rolling hills a little higher than those of the prairies. In the valleys are clear streams well stocked with fish the angler loves to catch. Grass and fruit trees grow well, and

## THE HISTORY OF MISSOURI

live stock and fruit raising are important industries. Tom Sauk Mountain, in Iron County, at the eastern end of this region, is the highest point in the state. Its 1,800 feet does not make a tremendous peak—but Missouri is far from being smooth, as Illinois is. The eastern and southeastern portions are the most level part of the state. There one finds flat lowlands, with many lagoons, creeks, and ponds along the Mississippi. So on the whole the state is highest in the center and in the southwestern corner, and slopes off in the northeast and southeast to a broad plain.

Over this land before the arrival of the white man ranged many different tribes of Indians—the Missouris, the Osages (ô-săj', the Shawnees, the Sauks and Foxes, the Iowas, Pawnees, Otos (ô'tô), and Paducahs (pă-dû'kă), among many others. They all were hunters of the buffalo, and farmers in a simple way. They had their villages, their fields, and their war tribes; but they were not at any time very powerful, as the Iroquois (îr'ô-kwoi) were in the East. The reason for this was that they were better hunters than farmers, and so preferred to wander about in search of the buffalo, instead of forming permanent villages and powerful federations. They never gave the white man the trouble that the Indians gave him in other states.

### When Missouri Was Part of Louisiana

The first white man to discover Missouri was La Salle (lâ sâl), when in 1682 he came sailing down the Mississippi to try to found a colony in Louisiana. For a long time Missouri was a part of the great region

which La Salle named "Louisiana"; but it was too far inland to be settled at once. It is probable that about 1735 a little fort was founded at St. Genevieve, on the Mississippi at a point where people crossed the river to go to the lead mines in the southeastern part of the state; but it was never of any partic-

ular importance. On the other hand the location of the second settlement in the state was as happily chosen as was possible at that time; for the little colony of St. Louis, founded in 1764 where the Missouri and the Mississippi join, has been amazingly successful. Perhaps the early prosperity of St. Louis was a happy accident of politics, since the liberal and intelligent Spanish rule which we have described in our story of Louisiana was just getting under way. But it is more likely that the little town's central position, at

the meeting of two great rivers running to north and south and west, had a good deal more to do with it. When the first Spanish official undertook to bring his country's government to St. Louis, in 1770, he found such a flourishing little French colony that it was necessary to carry on all official business in French.

But no matter what the language or what the government, American settlers had for some time been flocking in great numbers into the new lands across the Mississippi. Because they preferred to live in scattered farms rather than in huddled villages, the Americans gave the Spanish excellent protection against British and Indian raids; and the Spanish government was delighted to have them come to Missouri. By the early months of 1804, when "Upper Louisiana" was transferred to the United States



The University of Missouri, at Columbia, takes pride in giving its students practical training—especially in agriculture. The administration building is shown here.

## THE HISTORY OF MISSOURI



Photo by Union Electric Light & Power Company

**Bagnell Dam, completed in 1931, has created the Lake of the Ozarks, one of the largest and most beautiful artificial lakes in the world. This fine body of water, in the rugged, forested part of Missouri, has an area**

**of 95 square miles and is a popular summer playground, especially for those who live in St. Louis and Kansas City. The dam cost \$33,000,000, and was designed to furnish electric power.**

according to the terms of the Louisiana Purchase, there were about 10,000 settlers in the region north of present-day Louisiana, and almost 6,000 of these were Americans and their slaves.

### Why Slaves Were Brought to Missouri

Americans *and their slaves* for Missouri was from the very first a region where slavery was not only permitted but encouraged. For many years this Louisiana Territory, as it was called until 1812, was in great need of labor to do the exhausting work of opening up and settling the new country. Slave labor was the cheapest and easiest form of labor to get, and naturally it was in great demand. The unsettled conditions in Illinois, to the east, also encouraged the growth of slavery in Missouri. In Illinois it was for a long time uncertain whether slaves might be held or not; and the man who had a considerable amount of money already invested in slaves preferred to be sure he could keep them when he settled down. So he moved on to Missouri. After 1848, when Illinois passed a law forbidding slavery entirely, almost all the settlers from the

South passed straight through Illinois and came to Missouri. But by that time so many men were coming from the free states north of the Ohio that the new colonists of Missouri were just about equally divided as to the issue of slavery.

With the gradual pushing back of the Indians toward the west, the Missouri Territory, as it was now called, attracted more and more settlers, and soon was applying for statehood. The question now arose as to whether Missouri should be a slave or a free state. It aroused the widest concern over all the United States, for it involved the whole matter of slavery in public territories which had not yet become states, and the way in which it was decided would decide whether slavery was to be permitted in all the territory west of the Mississippi.

### The "Missouri Compromise"

After much heated discussion in Congress and the House of Representatives, a compromise was reached. Missouri was to be admitted as a slave state, with no law against slavery at all, for Congress had decided that it had no right to ask new

## THE HISTORY OF MISSOURI



Photo by Swift & Company

**These white-coated men are working in one of the meat-packing plants at Kansas City.**



Photo by the Missouri State Department of Agriculture

**Corn is the most important crop in Missouri. Other crops are wheat, oats, rye, and tobacco.**

territories to obey rules which did not apply to all the states of the Union alike. But it was decided that Maine was to be admitted with Missouri, and of course there was no sort of doubt that Maine would pass a law against slavery as soon as she was in the Union. In this way the balance between slave and free states would be kept exactly even. But more important than either of these provisions, slavery was to be prohibited forever in all the rest of the Louisiana Territory lying north of  $36^{\circ} 30'$ —that is, north of the southern boundary of Missouri.

### Missouri's Amazing Growth

And so in 1821 Missouri was finally admitted to the Union. The question of slavery rested more or less quietly for the next forty years, and meanwhile the growth of her trade up and down the Mississippi and between East and West took all Missouri's energies. Situated as she was, squarely at the crossing of those two great trade routes, Missouri—and St. Louis in particular—soon

developed into one of the outstanding trade centers of the country. Trade with Mexico and the Southwest, which was especially important, was carried on by caravans which followed the famous Santa Fe Trail. The river traffic with the Northwest was also heavy, though St. Joseph soon became the main center for this. As the state was more and more thickly settled, agriculture began to flourish. Corn, wheat, tobacco, cotton in the lowlands, and some fruits were the most important crops. Sheep and cattle herding were other industries to which Missouri was especially well suited; and the raising of mules has from earliest times to the present day been especially profitable. The Missouri mule was once a mainstay of our army. Helped on by these new developments, Missouri grew tremendously. Hundreds and thousands of foreigners—especially Germans after the failure of the German revolution of 1848—crossed the ocean and half the continent to settle in St. Louis and along the Missouri River. In 1820 Missouri had just

## THE HISTORY OF MISSOURI

over 60,000 inhabitants; ten years later her population was 140,455; and by 1860 it was well over a million.

An incident of the new immigration was the arrival of the Mormons from Ohio in 1832. Settling at Independence, near Kansas City, they soon aroused the anger of the other settlers by their much hated customs and sudden prosperity. Almost as soon as they arrived, plans were afoot to drive them out; and after five years of plunder, abuse, and persecution, the Mormons finally moved east to Illinois. We have already described the persecution they endured there before they turned westward to their present home in the state of Utah. The western border of the United States was a wild and lawless place in those days, where orderly government had only a slight hold on the rough frontiersmen. This is the only reason that

can be given for such cruel persecution of a religious sect in a country whose constitution establishes freedom of religion as a fundamental right of the people, and provides that its citizens shall be controlled by law, not by violence.

### Slave or Free?

When the Civil War broke out, Missouri was politically divided between the two sides, though there was a large popular majority in favor of the Union and freedom. A convention, called in 1861 to vote on the question of secession, voted 80 to 1 that Missouri had no reason to leave the Union. But the governor, a violent Southern partisan, refused to comply with President Lincoln's call for troops, and fled to the South with

most of the legislature and all the Confederate sympathizers he could collect. The result was a civil war inside the state. Late in 1861 the battle of Wilson's Creek, in the southwestern part of the state, ended in a victory for the Confederates. But early in 1862 a series of Northern victories drove the Confederates south into Arkansas, and except

for numerous raids, mostly along the western border, Missouri remained in Union hands until the end of the war. But this did not mean that she was idle. Her men fought on almost every important battlefield of the war, and she was one of the heaviest contributors of man power. Between 25,000 and 30,000 soldiers served the Confederate cause, and about 110,000 fought for the Union. For a border state with Missouri's relatively small population, this figure was amazing.

After the war Missouri escaped the Reconstruction which

did such harm to the Southern states, but she did so only by passing laws of her own against all who had encouraged the Southern cause. It was only in 1870 that the faction which fathered this violent attack on the defeated South was voted out of office and an era of peace and tolerance set in. It was in this period of calm that Missouri first set about developing her mines and other industries on a large scale.

One of the first things which had attracted men to explore Missouri was the silver and lead which the Indians claimed to have found there. The silver turned out to be a hoax—it came from Mexico!—but the lead mines were indeed in Missouri, and they could be worked on a profitable scale. St. Francois (frân'sis) County, in the eastern part of the



by the Missouri State Department of Agriculture

One of the most famous lead-zinc districts in the world lies in the Mississippi Valley and is known as the "Tri-state" field because it includes parts of Missouri, Oklahoma, and Kansas. The mine shown here is near Joplin, Missouri, in an important part of the Tri-state field.

## THE HISTORY OF MISSOURI

state, has mines which have been worked ever since the eighteenth century. In southwestern Missouri, around Jasper County, is the Tri-State Field of Missouri, Oklahoma, and Kansas, which supplies vast amounts of lead and zinc and which makes Missouri one of the outstanding producers of lead in the country. Coal, mined mostly in the northern and northwestern parts of the state, is a valuable mineral. Clay and stone, especially a fine limestone used in Portland cement and for general building purposes, are important. Missouri also yields lime, sand and gravel, barite, cobalt, copper, manganese, tripoli, tungsten, iron ore, silver, and the rare metal germanium.

### How Missouri Serves the Nation

In manufacturing, Missouri leads all the states west of the Mississippi except California. Slaughtering and meat packing, centered in St. Louis, make up one of her most important industries. Several hundred million dollars' worth of food products are made in Missouri every year. St. Louis makes the most of the coal so conveniently across the Mississippi River in Illinois. Then, too, abundant raw materials and large markets are close at hand. A leader among the country's manufacturing cities, St. Louis is famous for the processing of furs, and the making of shoes, boots, ladies' clothing, beer, automobiles, clay products, drugs, and lead, steel, and tobacco products. St. Joseph is a packing and cereal center. Kansas City, partly in Kansas, is the home of steel plants, airplane factories, and one of the nation's largest grain and live stock markets. It packs more meat than any other city in the world except Chicago. Springfield and Joplin are known for timber, dairying, and fruit-growing, and Joplin is the center of the Tri-State Field. In the little town of Washington are made most of the world's corncob pipes. Mexico is the center of the country's fireclay industry and the home of the largest fire-brick plant in the world.

In spite of the loss of twenty-five percent of her farm population during World War I, Missouri is still a leading agricultural state and has even been able to increase

her output, which is highly varied. She grows a great many chickens, turkeys, hogs, horses, and dairy and other cattle. Corn, oats, wheat, barley, sorghums, cotton, hay, sweet and white potatoes, tobacco, apples, peaches, pears, and grapes are all valuable crops. The value of her farm products leaped from 253 million dollars in 1939 to nearly 900 million just after World War II.

Thanks to a well-endowed, effective system of public education, only 2.3 percent of Missouri's people cannot read and write. The University of Missouri at Columbia and Washington University at St. Louis are both leading institutions of higher learning.

### How Missouri Moves Her Goods

Missouri was from the first perfectly situated to carry on river trade. The Missouri and the Mississippi provide fine broad highways of commerce, and the Mississippi still carries a good deal of traffic between St. Louis and New Orleans. In the nineteenth century Kansas City and Independence were starting points for many wagon trains which carried pioneers westward. Missouri has been a leader in the development of railroads. Although she is eighteenth in size among the states, nearly 7,000 miles of railways rank her high in railroad mileage, and Kansas City and St. Louis are both centers of rail and air transport. The Union Station in St. Louis is terminus for more railroads than any other station in the world. There are 16,000 miles of fine highways serving all parts of the state.

### Missouri's Boast

In 1899 a gentleman from Missouri, speaking in Philadelphia, uttered the historic sentence: "I'm from Missouri, and you've got to show me!" That sentence has become a byword and is regarded as typical of the independent, pioneering spirit of Missouri. It is not a rude or a noisy boast that Missouri makes, but rather an expression of honest skepticism and self-reliance, which will always be a wellspring of the progress which has made Missouri one of our most advanced states today and which opens to her a productive, prosperous, and happy future.



## MISSOURI

**AREA:** 69,674 square miles—18th in rank.

**LOCATION:** Missouri, one of the West North Central states, lies between 36° and 45° 35' N. Lat. and between about 89° 6' and 95° 47' W. Long. It is bounded on the north by Iowa, on the east by Illinois, Kentucky, and Tennessee, on the south by Arkansas, and on the west by Oklahoma, Kansas, and Nebraska.

**PHYSICAL FEATURES:** Most of Missouri is a rolling plain rising gradually toward the west, but in the southeastern and south-central part of the state the Ozark Mountains reach an elevation of from 1,100 to 1,600 feet above the sea. Their highest point is Tom Sauk Mountain (1,772 ft.), in the eastern part of the highland, where the low peaks and knobs are known as the St. Francois Mountains. Along the southern border the uplands are higher and more rugged. The lowest part of Missouri is in the broad plain of the Mississippi River, in the southeast corner of the state. Here a point on the St. Francis River is only 230 ft. above sea level. The average elevation of the state is 800 ft. North of the Missouri the land was once covered by the glacier.

All the drainage is into the Mississippi, sometimes directly and sometimes by way of the Missouri (2,475 m. long), which flows along the northern part of the state's western border and then turns east across the state to join the Mississippi. The Mississippi (2,470 m. long) forms the whole of the eastern boundary line, and may be navigated for its entire 500-mile course past the state. It is bordered by a fertile lowland plain in which, in the southern part of the state, are a large number of lagoons and swamps. Parts of the Osage River (500 m. long), which makes its way through the Ozarks from Kansas to the Missouri, are also used by boats for short distances. Since the Missouri may be navigated in its course across the state, Missouri has all together about 1,600 miles of navigable waterway. The Mississippi from St. Louis southward is used a good deal. Other rivers are the Grand (300 m. long), which rises in Iowa and flows southeastward to join the Missouri; the Gasconade (250 m. long), which rises in the south and flows through the Ozarks to the Missouri; and the St. Francis (425 m. long), which drains the southeastern corner and joins the Mississippi in Arkansas. Southern Missouri also has certain of the headwaters of the White River (690 m. long), an Arkansas stream that flows into the Mississippi. In the southwestern part of the state the water has carved out a large number of caves. There are not many lakes, though Bagnell Dam, across the Osage River, has formed one of the largest artificial lakes in the world—it is 129 miles long and covers more than 60,000 acres. All together Missouri has 404 square miles of water. There is no irrigated land.

**CLIMATE:** Missouri has a variable climate, with a considerable range of temperature, though the southeastern part of the state is somewhat warmer than the rest, and the northwest somewhat colder. Except in the Ozark Mountains the summers are hot and humid. The growing season averages 178 days. The annual mean temperature for the entire state is about 54° F. The January mean at St. Louis is 31°, the July mean 79°. The record high there is 108°, the record low -22°. The state averages 38 inches of rainfall a year. The southeast counties have 8 in. of snow a year, the northwest counties 30 in.

**INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING:** The chief are Central College at Fayette, Culver-Stockton College at Canton, Drury College at Springfield, Lindenwood College for Women at St. Charles, Lincoln University for colored students at Jefferson City, University of Missouri at Columbia and Rolla, Missouri Valley College at Marshall, Park College at Parkville, Rockhurst College at Kansas City, St. Louis University

at St. Louis, Fontbonne College for women and Maryville College for women, both conducted at St. Louis by St. Louis University, Tarkio College at Tarkio, Washington University at St. Louis, Webster College for women at Webster Groves, Westminster College at Fulton, and William Jewell College at Liberty.

Normal schools or teachers' colleges have been established at Kirksville, Warrensburg, Cape Girardeau, Springfield, and Maryville. There are also normal schools at the University of Missouri and at Lincoln University.

**INSTITUTIONS FOR THE PROMOTION OF THE ARTS:** The William Rockhill Nelson Gallery of Art and Atkins Museum was opened in Kansas City in 1933.

The St. Louis Art Museum is one of the best in the United States.

**CHARITIES AND CORRECTION:** The state has established insane hospitals at Fulton, St. Joseph, Nevada, and Farmington; a tuberculosis sanatorium at Mount Vernon; a home for orphans and neglected children at Carrollton; a colony for the feeble-minded and epileptic at Marshall; a school for the blind at St. Louis; a school for the deaf at Fulton; a Federal soldiers' home at St. James and one for Confederate veterans at Higginsville; reformatories at Algoa and Boonville; an industrial school for white girls at Chillicothe and one for Negro girls at Tipton; and a penitentiary at Jefferson City. Missouri inflicts capital punishment by hanging.

**POLITICAL FACTS:** Missouri is governed under its third constitution, which was adopted in 1875 and has been amended in important details. Laws are made by a General Assembly consisting of two houses: a Senate made up of members who are elected every four years from districts of approximately equal population; and a House of Representatives made up of members who are apportioned according to the population of the counties and are elected every two years. A Senator must be at least thirty years of age and must have been a qualified voter for three years; a Representative must be at least twenty-four years of age and must have been a qualified voter for two years.

The executive branch is headed by the governor, who must be at least thirty-five years of age and must have been a resident of the state for seven years. All state officers are elected for a four-year term, and the governor and treasurer may not be re-elected. All state officers except the lieutenant-governor must reside at the seat of government.

The judiciary is headed by a supreme court made up of seven justices. The state is divided into appellate districts, each one of which elects judges to serve on what are known as the courts of appeal; each of these courts has three judges. Besides this, there are district courts presided over by circuit judges elected for a term of six years. Each county has a probate court.

Voters must be United States citizens or must have declared their intention of becoming citizens. They must have lived in the county sixty days.

Counties must contain an area of at least 410 square miles. Townships may be organized whenever the majority of the legal voters of a county decide to do so. Cities having a population of more than 100,000 may form a charter for their own government.

The capital of Missouri is at Jefferson City.

**NATIONAL HISTORIC SITES:** The Jefferson National Expansion Memorial at St. Louis celebrates the nation's westward expansion.

**GAME AND BIRD RESERVATIONS:** Mingo Refuge protects waterfowl. Squaw Creek Refuge and Swan Lake Refuge protect birds and fur-bearing animals.

**MISSOURI—Continued**

**Missouri has 3,459,999 acres of national forest.**

**NAME:** "Missouri" is a name first given by the French to the Missouri River and to a tribe of Sioux Indians living along its banks. Later the state was named for the river. The meaning of the word is shrouded in mystery. What is probably the best explanation lies in the fact that the Nahcothah Indians called the country beyond the Missouri---and the river as well---"minnay shoshoh chray," three words that, taken in order, meant "water, muddy, hill." When the French came to the region about 1712 they followed their usual practice of abbreviating Indian words, and by cutting off the last four letters of the first two words and the first two of the last word they evolved the word "Mishoray." Later it took its present form. It does not, however, mean "muddy water," as people suppose. This notion came from the fact that the original Indian name for the river---"Pekitanoui" or "Pekitanou"---did mean "muddy water." But this is not the word from which the name "Missouri" was derived.

It has been said also that the word "Missouri" belonged to the dialect of the Illinois Indians and meant "wooden canoe." If that were true, the word as applied to the state would mean "the land of large canoes."

**NICKNAMES:** Missouri is called the Iron Mountain State from Iron Mountain in St. Francois County, a mountain that yielded huge quantities of ore. It is called the Lead State from its productive lead mines. From the Ozark Mountains it takes the name of the Ozark State; and because of its large mining interests it is called the Pennsylvania of the West. At one time Senator Thomas Hart Benton of Missouri received the nickname of "Bullion" because of the stand he took on the currency question. From this incident Missouri came to be called the Bullion State. It is called the Pike State from a corruption of "pikes," a word ap-

plied in California to the large numbers of immigrants who came from Pike County, Missouri, during the gold rush. This term may also have come into use during the Galena Mine incident of 1827, when it was said that Missouri had "taken a puke." Willard Vandiver, Representative from Missouri, in speaking before the Five O'Clock Club in Philadelphia in 1899, said, "I'm from Missouri and you've got to show me!" From this, Missouri came to be known as the Show Me State.

**STATE FLOWER:** Hawthorn; approved in 1923.

**STATE SONG:** No song has been officially adopted. The Missouri Daughters of the American Revolution have taken as their official state song the "Missouri State Song," by Lizzie Chambers Hull and Julie Stevens Baker.

**STATE FLAG:** Three stripes of red, white, and blue, and in the center a circle made up of a blue band inclosing the state coat of arms and twenty-four five-pointed stars.

**STATE MOTTO:** "Salus Populi Suprema Lex Esto," a sentence from Cicero meaning "Let the welfare of the people be the supreme law." The state also uses as a motto the phrase, "United We Stand, Divided We Fall" from George P. Morris's poem, "The Flag of Our Union."

**STATE BIRD:** Bluebird; adopted by the General Assembly in 1927.

**INTERESTING FACTS:** Missouri observes New Year's Day, Lincoln's Birthday, Washington's Birthday, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Columbus Day, Election Day, Armistice Day, Thanksgiving Day, Christmas Day, Jefferson's Birthday on April 13, Flag Day on June 14.

Population of state, 1940, 3,784,664		Counties	
Adair (D1)	20,246	De Kalb (B2)	9,751
Andrew (B2)	13,015	Dent (E4)	11,763
Atchison (A1)	12,897	Douglas (D5)	15,600
Audrain (E2)	22,673	Dunklin (F5)	44,957
Barry (C5)	23,546	Franklin (E3)	33,868
Barton (B4)	14,148	Gasconade (E3)	12,414
Bates (B3)	19,531	Gentry (B1)	13,359
Benton (C3)	11,142	Greene (C4)	90,541
Bollinger (F4)	12,898	Grundy (C1)	15,716
Boone (D2)	34,991	Harrison (C1)	16,525
Buchanan (B2)	94,067	Henry (C3)	22,313
Butler (F5)	34,276	Hickory (C4)	6,506
Caldwell (C2)	11,629	Holt (A1)	12,476
Callaway (E3)	23,094	Howard (D2)	13,026
Camden (D3)	8,971	Howell (E5)	22,270
Cape Girardeau (G4)	37,775	Iron (E4)	10,440
Carroll (C2)	17,814	Jackson (B2)	477,828
Carter (F4)	6,226	Jasper (B4)	78,705
Cass (B3)	19,534	Jefferson (F3)	32,023
Cedar (C4)	11,697	Johnson (C3)	21,617
Chariton (D2)	18,084	Knox (D1)	8,878
Christian (C5)	13,538	Laclede (D4)	18,718
Clark (E1)	10,166	Lafayette (C2)	27,856
Clay (B2)	30,417	Lawrence (C4)	24,637
Clinton (B2)	13,261	Lewis (E1)	11,490
Cole (D3)	34,912	Lincoln (F2)	14,395
Cooper (D3)	18,075	Linn (C2)	21,416
Crawford (E4)	12,693	Livingston (C2)	18,000
Dade (C4)	11,248	McDonald (B5)	15,749
Dallas (C4)	11,523	Macon (D2)	21,396
Daviess (C2)	13,398	Madison (F4)	9,656
Marion (E2)	31,576	Marion (E2)	31,576
Mercer (C1)	8,766	Miller (D3)	14,798
Mississippi (G5)	23,149	Moniteau (D3)	11,775
Monroe (D2)	13,195	Montgomery (E3)	12,442
Morgan (D3)	11,140	New Madrid (G5)	39,787
Newton (B5)	29,039	Nodaway (B1)	25,556
Oregon (E5)	13,390	Osage (E3)	12,375
Ozark (D5)	10,766	Pemiscot (G5)	46,857
Perry (G4)	15,358	Pettis (C3)	33,336
Phelps (E4)	17,417	Pike (E2)	18,327
Platte (B2)	13,862	Polk (C4)	17,400
Pulaski (D4)	10,775	Pulaski (D4)	10,775
Putnam (D1)	11,327	Ralls (E2)	10,040
Randolph (D2)	24,458	Ray (C2)	18,584
Reynolds (F4)	9,370	Ripley (F5)	12,606
St. Charles (F3)	25,562	St. Clair (C3)	13,146
St. Francois (F4)	35,956	St. Louis (F3)	274,230
St. Louis City (F3)	816,048	St. Genevieve (F4)	10,905
Saline (C2)	29,416	Schuyler (D1)	6,627
Scotland (D1)	8,557	Scott (G4)	30,377
Shannon (F4)	11,831	Shelby (D2)	11,224
Stoddard (G5)	33,009	Stone (C5)	11,298
Sullivan (C1)	13,701	Taney (C5)	10,323
Texas (E4)	19,813	Vernon (B4)	25,586
Warren (E3)	7,734	Washington (F4)	17,492
Wayne (F4)	12,794	Webster (D1)	17,226
Worth (B4)	6,345	Wright (D4)	17,967

# MISSOURI—Continued

Appleton City (B3) . . . 1,188	Eldorado Springs (B4) . . . 2,342	Liberty * (B2) . . . 3,598	Republic (C4) . . . 790
Ash Grove (C4) . . . 1,101	Ellington (F4) . . . 849	Lilbourn (G5) . . . 1,378	Rich Hill (B3) . . . 1,994
Aurora * (C4) . . . 4,056	Elsberry (F2) . . . 1,548	Linneus (C2) . . . 704	Richland (D4) . . . 985
Ava (D5) . . . 1,393	Elvins (F4) . . . 2,367	Lockwood (C4) . . . 841	Richmond * (C2) . . . 4,240
	Excelsior Springs * (B2) . . . 4,864	Louisiana * (E2) . . . 4,669	Richmond Heights (F3) . . . 12,802
Belton (B3) . . . 971	Fairfax (A1) . . . 813	Macon * (D2) . . . 4,206	Rock Hill (F3) . . . 1,821
Bernie (G5) . . . 1,160	Farmington * (F4) . . . 3,738	Malden * (G5) . . . 2,673	Rockport (A1) . . . 1,406
Bethany * (B1) . . . 2,682	Fayette * (D2) . . . 2,608	Mansfield (D4) . . . 922	Rolla * (E4) . . . 5,141
Bevier (D2) . . . 1,105	Ferguson * (F3) . . . 5,724	Maplewood * (F3) . . . 12,875	St. Charles * (F3) . . . 10,803
Bismarck (F4) . . . 1,302	Festus * (F3) . . . 4,620	Marceline * (D2) . . . 3,206	St. Clair (E3) . . . 1,410
Bloomfield (G5) . . . 1,208	Flat River * (F4) . . . 5,401	Marionville (C4) . . . 1,127	St. Ferdinand (F3) . . . 1,369
Blue Springs (B2) . . . 788	Fornfelt (G4) . . . 1,504	Marshall * (C2) . . . 8,533	St. James (E4) . . . 1,812
Bolivar * (C4) . . . 2,636	Fredericktown * (F4) . . . 3,414	Marshfield (D4) . . . 1,764	St. Joseph * (B2) . . . 75,711
Bonne Terre * (F4) . . . 3,730	Fulton * (E3) . . . 8,297	Marysville * (B1) . . . 5,700	St. Louis * (F3) . . . 816,048
Boonville * (D3) . . . 6,089	Gallatin (C2) . . . 1,642	Maysville (B2) . . . 1,026	Ste. Genevieve * (F4) . . . 2,787
Bowling Green (E2) . . . 1,975	Gideon (G5) . . . 1,606	Memphis (D1) . . . 1,935	Salem * (F4) . . . 3,151
Branson (C5) . . . 1,011	Glasgow (D2) . . . 1,490	Mexico * (E2) . . . 9,053	Salisbury (D2) . . . 1,759
Braymer (C2) . . . 975	Glendale * (F3) . . . 2,526	Milan (C1) . . . 2,016	Sarcoxi (B4) . . . 1,057
Breckenridge (C2) . . . 728	Golden City (B4) . . . 867	Moberly * (D2) . . . 12,920	Savannah (B2) . . . 2,108
Brentwood * (F3) . . . 4,383	Granby (B5) . . . 1,455	Monett * (C5) . . . 4,395	Sedalia * (C3) . . . 20,428
Brookfield * (C2) . . . 6,174	Grant City (B1) . . . 1,209	Monroe City (E2) . . . 1,978	Senath (F5) . . . 1,261
Brunswick (D2) . . . 1,749	Greenfield (C4) . . . 1,353	Montgomery City (E3) . . . 1,671	Seneca (B5) . . . 1,091
Bucklin (D2) . . . 842	Hamilton (B2) . . . 1,655	Morehouse (G5) . . . 1,598	Seymour (D4) . . . 751
Buffalo (C4) . . . 920	Hannibal * (E2) . . . 20,865	Mound City (A1) . . . 1,606	Shelbina (D2) . . . 2,107
Burlington Junction (A1) . . . 838	Hardin (C2) . . . 805	Mountain Grove (D4) . . . 2,431	Shelbyville (D2) . . . 756
Butler * (B3) . . . 2,958	Harrisonville (B3) . . . 2,322	Mountain View (E5) . . . 725	Sikeston * (B5) . . . 7,944
	Hayti * (G5) . . . 2,628	Mount Vernon (C4) . . . 1,982	Slater * (C2) . . . 3,070
Cabool (D4) . . . 1,069	Hermann (E3) . . . 2,308	Neosho * (B5) . . . 5,318	Smithville (B2) . . . 772
Cainesville (C1) . . . 765	Higbee (D2) . . . 877	Nevada * (B4) . . . 8,181	Springfield * (C4) . . . 61,238
California * (D3) . . . 2,525	Higginsville * (C2) . . . 3,533	Newburg (E4) . . . 1,006	Stanberry (B1) . . . 1,893
Camerton * (B2) . . . 3,615	Holden (C3) . . . 1,818	New Franklin (D2) . . . 1,144	Steele (G5) . . . 1,585
Campbell (F5) . . . 1,786	Hopkins (B1) . . . 834	New Hampton (B1) . . . 412	Stelville (E4) . . . 1,013
Canton (E1) . . . 2,125	Hornersville (F5) . . . 964	New Haven (E3) . . . 1,002	Stockton (C4) . . . 801
Cape Girardeau * (G4) . . . 19,426	Houston (E4) . . . 820	New London (E2) . . . 1,005	Sugar Creek (B2) . . . 1,638
Cardwell (F5) . . . 913	Humansville (C4) . . . 786	New Madrid (G5) . . . 2,450	Sullivan * (E3) . . . 2,517
Carl Junction (B4) . . . 1,039	Huntsville (D2) . . . 1,739	Norborne (C2) . . . 1,239	(C3) . . . 1,413
Carrollton * (C2) . . . 4,070	Illmo (G4) . . . 1,224	North Kansas City * (B2) . . . 2,688	Tarkio (A1) . . . 2,114
Cartersville (B4) . . . 1,582	Independence (B2) . . . 16,066	Novinger (D1) . . . 793	Thayer (E5) . . . 1,692
Carthage * (B4) . . . 10,585	Ironton (F4) . . . 1,083	Odessa (C3) . . . 1,881	Tipton (D3) . . . 1,219
Caruthersville * (G5) . . . 6,612	Jackson * (G4) . . . 3,113	Oregon (A2) . . . 978	Trenton * (C1) . . . 7,046
Cassville (C5) . . . 1,214	Jamesport (C2) . . . 761	Osceola (C3) . . . 1,190	Troy (F3) . . . 1,493
Centralia (D2) . . . 1,996	Jasper (B4) . . . 804	Owensville (E3) . . . 1,439	Union (E3) . . . 2,125
Chaffee * (G4) . . . 3,049	Jefferson City * (D3) . . . 24,268	Ozark (C4) . . . 961	Unionville (C1) . . . 2,052
Chambers (E3) . . . 771	Joplin (B4) . . . 37,144		University City * (F3) . . . 33,023
Charleston * (G5) . . . 5,182	Kahoka (E1) . . . 1,781	Pacific (I3) . . . 1,687	Urich (B3) . . . 465
Chillicothe * (C2) . . . 8,012	Kansas City * (B2) . . . 399,178	Palmyra (E2) . . . 2,28	Valley Park (F3) . . . 2,091
Clarence (D2) . . . 1,157	Kennett * (F5) . . . 6,335	Paris (E2) . . . 1,411	Vandalia * (E2) . . . 2,672
Clarksville (F2) . . . 879	Keytesville (C2) . . . 854	Parma (G5) . . . 1,181	Versailles (D3) . . . 1,781
Clarkton (F5) . . . 733	King City (B1) . . . 1,103	Pattonburg (B1) . . . 1,017	Warrensburg * (C3) . . . 5,868
Clayton * (F3) . . . 13,069	Kirksville * (D1) . . . 10,080	Pierce City (C5) . . . 1,208	Warrenton (E3) . . . 1,254
Clinton * (C3) . . . 6,041	Kirkwood * (F3) . . . 12,132	Perry (E2) . . . 830	Warsaw (C3) . . . 957
Cole Camp (C3) . . . 753	La Belle (E1) . . . 833	Perryville * (G4) . . . 3,907	Washington * (E3) . . . 6,756
Columbia (D3) . . . 18,399	La Grange (E1) . . . 1,222	Piedmont (F4) . . . 1,177	Waverly (C2) . . . 876
Concordia (C3) . . . 1,077	Lamar * (B4) . . . 2,992	Pilot Grove (C3) . . . 748	Webb City * (B4) . . . 7,033
Craig (A1) . . . 718	Lancaster (D1) . . . 886	Platt Grove (B2) . . . 1,915	Webster Groves * (F5) . . . 18,394
Crane (C5) . . . 913	La Plata (D1) . . . 1,421	Pleasant Hill (B3) . . . 2,118	Wellsville (E2) . . . 1,314
Crystal City * (F3) . . . 417	Lathrop (B2) . . . 1,049	Poplar Bluff * (F5) . . . 11,163	Wentzville (F3) . . . 752
Cuba (E3) . . . 933	Lebanon * (D4) . . . 5,025	Portageville (G5) . . . 2,107	Weston (B2) . . . 1,121
	Lees Summit (B3) . . . 2,263	Potosi (F4) . . . 2,017	West Plains * (E5) . . . 4,026
Deepwater (C3) . . . 956	Lexington * (C2) . . . 5,341	Princeton (C1) . . . 1,584	Willow Springs (E5) . . . 1,530
De Soto * (F3) . . . 5,121	Liberal (B4) . . . 771	Puxico (F5) . . . 792	Windsor (C3) . . . 2,373
Dexter * (G5) . . . 3,108			
Dixon (D3) . . . 741			
Doniphan (F4) . . . 1,604			
East Prairie (G5) . . . 2,469			
Edina (D1) . . . 1,637			
Eldon * (D4) . . . 2,590			

---

# *The* HISTORY of MONTANA

---

## Reading Unit No. 25

### MONTANA: THE TREASURE STATE

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

#### *Interesting Facts Explained*

Why the Sioux tribes in Montana were powerful and dangerous, 8-216

Why the Lewis and Clark expedition was romantic and exciting, 8-216

The fur trade, 8-217

When the gold rush took place, 8-217

When the Sioux, led by Sitting Bull, defeated General Custer, 8-218

When Montana was admitted to the Union, 8-218

Where sapphires are found, 8-218

Where Nature can be seen in her most majestic moods, 8-219

#### *Picture Hunt*

When did people begin to realize the richness of the copper deposits of the Butte district? 8-217

Where do the sheep find good grazing ground in Montana? 8-218

#### *Related Material*

Who rounded up the cattle on the western prairies? 9-318, 7-278

What expedition came to be called "the search for the Golden Fleece"? 9-392

Why have we set a high price on gold? 9-396

Where did the children of the Father of Waters get their

names? 7-213

One flag from ocean to ocean, 7-231-39

Who was General Custer? 7-280

Where is natural gas to be found? 9-455

Where do the finest sapphires come from? 9-433

#### *Practical Applications*

How have the automobile and the railroad helped in the opening up of Montana? 8-

215, 217

Why is Montana conserving her pine forests? 8-219

#### *Leisure-time Activities*

PROJECT NO. 1: Draw a map of Montana and mark on it the chief manufacturing and mining cities, and also the chief rivers

and mountains, 8-216, 219.

PROJECT NO. 2: Name some of the chief "red Indian" tribes, 7-89-90.

## THE HISTORY OF MONTANA



Photo by the Jornd Studio

The state capitol of Montana—shown here—is at Helena, in the heart of the state's richest mining

country. Helena began as a mining camp in 1864, when gold was discovered at Last Chance Gulch.

### MONTANA: *the* TREASURE STATE

*A Land of Gold and Silver, of Limitless Plains and Majestic Mountains, of Lonely Desert and Fertile Valley, of Coal and Wheat and Fruit and Sparkling Sapphires*

**T**HERE was a long time when Montana was the land of adventure and of wild romance. First the roaring life of her mining camps gave rise to countless tales of hardihood. For during the third quarter of the last century her yellow metal was a magnet to draw men of every stripe, and in the wild gulches and picturesque valleys where they gathered to take it from the earth, many a drama worked itself to a close, with no one but rough miners to tell the tale. In a place like that nearly anything can happen!

Then came the days of the boisterous Wild West. Indians, cowboys, buffaloes, and maidens in distress charged through the pages of hundreds of tales of adventure, and thrilled the audiences in moving-picture theaters throughout the land. As a matter of fact, the cowboy's life was full of toil and hardship, of long days and lonely nights spent under the stars. But the people "back East" never worried about that. To them

his day was one long round of adventure, and Montana was still the land where anything could happen.

It was not till the third decade of the present century that the myth died out. Perhaps it was the automobile that brought people to a soberer view. In it they went traveling across this magnificent state of rolling plain and mountain wilderness, to find a reality more beautiful and more enthralling than all the tales of it that had ever been told. Then they saw for themselves why Montana should have been called the Treasure State.

Like Wyoming and Colorado, and as her very name—meaning "mountainous lands"—would imply, Montana is thronged with mountains, most of them a part of the Rockies. These are in the western part of the state, and run roughly northwest and southeast. On other pages we have told of their formation. The eastern part of the state is a rolling plain, like the plains of the

## THE HISTORY OF MONTANA



Here is a view of the campus of the University of Montana. This, the largest of Montana's institutions

for higher learning, is at Missoula, in a region given over to agriculture and lumbering.

Dakotas to the east. In Montana they rise very gradually from a height of about 2,800 feet along the Dakota border to 4,000 or 5,000 feet in the west, where they merge with the foothills of the Rocky Mountains. Montana's plains are a great deal lower than the great plains of Wyoming and Colorado, and the Rocky Mountains themselves are a good deal lower here than they are farther south. The highest point, which is Granite Peak in the Beartooth Range, reaches a height of 12,850 feet, an elevation which a good many peaks of Colorado and Wyoming easily top. But the great difference in height between Wyoming and Montana is seen most clearly when one compares the average heights of the two states—about 3,400 feet for Montana and 6,700 feet for Wyoming.

### The Great Divide

To the east of the Rockies the streams of Montana drain into the Missouri River basin, which covers the eastern part of the state. In the west they drain through the Missoula (mī-zōō'lá) and the Flathead rivers into the Columbia River system. Because streams are so numerous and vegetation so scant in the eastern part of the state, the ground there is well cut up by gulches and ravines; here are a great many detached and steep-sided mountains called buttes (būt), and many bluffs and short ranges. It is a rugged country. But the Big Horn and the Little Belt mountains are the only large ranges outside the Rockies, so these eastern plains never are really mountainous country.

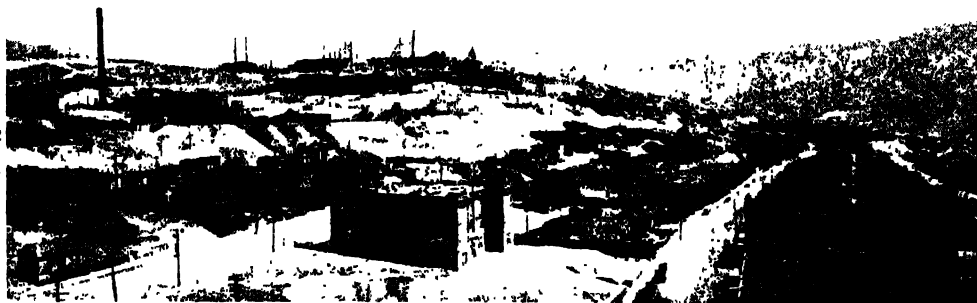
Among the Indian tribes of Montana the Sioux (sōō), who covered the eastern prairie regions, were the most powerful and danger-

ous. This was because, living in the open prairies where large combinations of tribes were possible, they could all fight together as a nation and drive out any invader. In the mountainous regions of the west the Blackfeet, Bannocks, and Flatheads could never band themselves together to resist the white man for any length of time. Of these the Blackfeet belonged to the great Algonquian (āl-gōn'kī-ān) family, and the Bannocks to the Shoshonean (shō-shō'nē-ān) family, who dwelt on the western plateaus. The Flatheads—so named because they deformed their childrens heads—belonged to the Salishan (sāl'ī-shān) group.

### Who Discovered Montana?

There have been a number of people who might claim the honor of discovering Montana. Perhaps a French explorer of note named La Vérendrye (vā'rōN'drē') passed through the region from Canada in 1742; perhaps Lewis and Clark, in 1805, were the first white men to see it, when they crossed Montana on their way to the Columbia River. As a matter of fact, the question is not so very important; for neither group of explorers did much that has been permanent. The Lewis and Clark expedition provided Montana with many of the names for her rivers and mountains; and of course the expedition itself was glorious. Over four thousand miles of unexplored land this dauntless party marched—through trackless forests and the homes of many unknown Indian tribes—to a great western river. And all with the loss of just one man! Few, if any, other exploring expeditions in the world's history have been so romantic and exciting.

## THE HISTORY OF MONTANA



Anaconda Copper Company

The Butte district in Montana is one of the most famous mining districts in the world. Copper was discovered here in the sixties— and gold and silver as well—but it was only after the coming of the railroad,

in 1881, that people began to realize how marvelously rich these copper deposits were. To-day Butte has some of the greatest copper mines in our country. Above are mines of the Anaconda Company.

But in 1807 Manuel de Lisa (*mä-nwěł' dā lē'sā*), the Cuban frontiersman whom we have spoken of in our story of Nebraska, built the first building in Montana, at the junction of the Yellowstone and the Big Horn rivers; and while his was not as exciting a business as the explorations of Lewis and Clark, it was just as important in the history of Montana. For Lisa settled in Montana in order to carry on a fur trade with the Indians—a fur trade which soon became highly profitable, especially in the mountains, where the beavers were plentiful.

### Montana's First Settlement

Soon after Lisa came, other fur traders began to make their way into the mountains, among them David Thompson of the Northwest Company, Kenneth McKenzie of the American Fur Company, and William H. Ashley, head of his own company. For many years the fur trade was the only occupation of any importance in Montana, and as this business called for friendly behavior towards the Indians, there were very few troubles with the red men. Father Peter John de Smēt (*dē smēt'*), a Belgian missionary, founded a mission among the Indians of Bitter Root Valley in 1841, and settlement began very slowly. Great care was taken not to anger the Indians and so cut off the valuable fur trade with them.

Suddenly, in 1857, a man named John Silverthorn turned up at Fort Benton on

the Missouri with many fat buckskin bags filled with gold dust which he had found in the mountains. And now nobody bothered about the feelings of the Indians, for all at once the gold rush was on. At Bannack in Beaverhead Valley, on Gold Creek and Bighole River and North Boulder Creek in Alder Gulch—where Virginia City grew in one year from a wilderness to a city of four thousand people—and at Last Chance Gulch—later to be known as Main Street in the respectable capital city of Helena (*hěł'ē-nā*)—at all these places and in hundreds more, settlements grew up, miners got together and started seeking the precious grains of gold, and the beginnings of civilization were planted in the wilds of Montana. The region was organized as a territory in 1864, with Virginia City as the capital.

### Sitting Bull's Great Victory

Perhaps the Indians should have been grateful to the white man for taking their lands and bringing them his civilization, but the fact remains that they were not. They resented it enormously. There is sure to be violence when many rough-and-ready settlers live together without any law to encourage honesty. And to this violence was soon added the raids of the warlike Sioux. Three or four generals tried to subdue the Indians, but without success; for those plains red men, with their fast little ponies and accurate rifles, were masterly fighters,

## THE HISTORY OF MONTANA

clever, bold, and swift, with a thorough knowledge of the country. In 1876 General George A. Custer, who had done so well against the Sioux in the Dakotas, met them again near the Little Big Horn River. Fighting furiously under their chief, Sitting Bull, the Sioux soon surrounded Custer and slaughtered his entire party. This was one of the great Indian triumphs, even though the white men were out-numbered forty or fifty to one. But a few months later a vigorous campaign by General Crook and General Miles ended the Indian danger and opened up the greater part of Montana to settlement. People came flocking in, and Montana was admitted to the Union as a state in 1889.

Just as in Wyoming and Colorado, the mining industry which was responsible for Montana's early prosperity has shifted its emphasis from gold and silver and precious metals, which are easy to transport, to the bulkier, less valuable minerals which are to be found there. The main reason for this change is, naturally, the growth of a good railway system, which now has more than five thousand miles of track and connects the state with almost every large market in the country. Montana's most valuable mineral product is copper, which during World War II brought her as much as \$35,000,000 in a single year. Nearly all the ore comes from a few square miles at Butte (būt), one of the greatest mining cities in the world. Here are headquarters for one of the world's largest copper companies. Its mines produced more than a quarter of

the nation's output of copper during the half century following their opening in the early 1880's. To-day Montana ranks third among the states in the production of copper.

Petroleum, coal, and natural gas follow copper in the value of their annual output. It is only of late years that Montana has pro-

duced oil in sizable quantity and she is far from the top among oil-producing states. For many years coal and lignite (līg'nīt), or brown coal, have brought her great wealth and should do so for years to come, for she is believed to hold over a tenth of the nation's coal reserves. She does not produce a great deal at present, for other coal-producing states are nearer the great centers where coal is used. Moreover, the railroads have long set higher freight rates for western states than for those in the East—a great handicap to western industry of every kind, especially in the Mountain states. Montana's natural gas is free of this hardship, for it is usually carried by

pipe lines from the fields where it is produced in the southeastern corner of the state.

Manganese ore, silver, zinc, lead, gold, sand and gravel, phosphate rock, sapphires, and stone are Montana's other paying minerals. She produces a little natural gasoline, clay, tungsten, and metals allied to platinum. An unusual feature of her mining industry is her output of precious stones, in which she leads all the states of the Union. These are all sapphires, which are found in Yozo, Rock, and Cottonwood creeks, in the central part of the state. There are none finer.

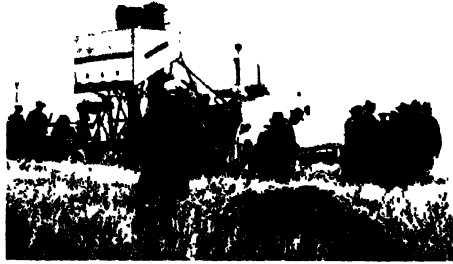


Photo by the International Harvester Company

The important northern belt of hard spring wheat covers the eastern half of Montana. Harvesting, shown in this scene, takes place in August. The enterprising farmer is using a combine, an ingenious machine that both harvests and threshes his crops.



Photo by the Montannans

Montana's valuable flocks of sheep spend spring and summer in the state's beautiful foothills and mountains, where they find good grazing ground.



---

## THE HISTORY OF MONTANA

---

After mining, stock raising was long the second most important industry of Montana. The rich prairies in the east, covered with tufts of bunch grass, have proved excellent ground for stock, though sometimes there is not enough rain to keep the grass from dying out. The early settlers were handicapped by having to drive their cattle all the way across the state of Wyoming to Cheyenne (shĭ-ĕn') in order to reach a railroad by which the cattle could be sent to market. After such a long journey over rough, dry country, the creatures were likely to make fairly poor meat. So Montana was quick to take up sheep raising, for wool could be shipped down the Missouri River by boat and go on from New Orleans to Boston. By 1900 the wool clip of Montana was bigger than that of any other state. Today, though she still ranks very high among the states in her production of sheep and wool, Montana has turned enthusiastically to cattle raising. In this industry she still stands far down in any list of the states, but the cattle she grows are over twice as valuable to her as her sheep. Similarly, in her output of poultry and dairy products the state has forged ahead rapidly in recent years, though she does not yet rank with the leaders.

### A State That Grows Fine Wheat

For a long time it was thought that farming in Montana could be carried on in most places only with the help of irrigation, which has been practiced since about 1890. But since about 1905 dry farming has come to be fairly common, though in it there is real danger of producing the "dust bowls" that have been so disastrous to some of Montana's neighbors. Wheat, hay, sugar beets, oats, potatoes, beans, corn, barley, flaxseed, and apples are the leading crops. Wheat, most profitable of all, brings in some tens of millions of dollars yearly. For by a happy combination of circumstances Montana wheat is some of the finest grown in the land. Every year a large part of it is ranked as being of the first grade.

Finally, Montana's forests are of great value, for they are made up largely of white pine, which is highly prized and will be

even more valuable in the future. Luckily Montana is conserving these riches. She always ranks far down in the list of the lumber-producing states, though she might easily cut much more.

### Montana's Great Smelting City

In manufacturing, Montana is not nearly so far advanced as her rich supplies of oil, coal, lumber, and water power might suggest. The smelting of metals, lumber and flour milling, and the manufacture of butter and cheese are the most important of her industries. Anaconda is the great smelting city, with a large percentage of the nation's copper supply and a good part of the world's product to her credit. Butte, while more important for her mines, also does some smelting; and Great Falls, which is also busy as an oil, cattle, wool and meat-packing center, has one of the country's largest copper mills. Billings is a shipping center for farm products, Missoula is a railroad and oil center, and Helena is important for her gold mines and her smelting. All together, Montana has built up manufactures that do great credit to a state so near to her pioneer days.

### A State of the Future

Her present position in education is more advanced than in manufacturing, and in it her future is just as bright. With an excellent school system, a high percentage of citizens who can read and write, and several fine colleges and universities, her educational outlook is one of general prosperity and growth.

In Glacier National Park, in the northwestern corner of the state, Montana has preserved magnificent scenery which equals the more widely known beauties of the Yellowstone. Here one may see Nature in her most majestic moods. Like Montana as a whole, this beautiful park will be more and more widely known as time goes on. For Montana is most decidedly a state of the future. She is a young state and comparatively undeveloped. With her natural riches, her great supplies of power, and her energetic citizens, she will do amazing things, once her full energies are unleashed.

## MONTANA

**AREA:** 147,138 square miles—3rd in rank.

**LOCATION:** Montana, one of the Mountain states, lies between 44° 26' and 49° N. Lat. and between 104° and 116° W. Long. It is bounded on the north by British Columbia, Alberta, and Saskatchewan, provinces of Canada; on the east by North Dakota and South Dakota; on the south by Wyoming and Idaho; and on the west by Idaho.

**PHYSICAL FEATURES:** Two-fifths of the surface of Montana is covered by the Rocky Mountains, which stretch in a number of magnificent ranges from northwest to southeast across the western and southwestern parts of the state. Eastward from the mountains the Great Plains slope gradually from a height of some 4,000 ft. to the state's eastern border, with here and there a mountain group, like the Rosebud Mountains, rising above them. The lowest point in the state, in one of the valleys in Flathead County, is 1,800 ft. above the sea. Along the eastern border the plains are some 2,000 ft. high. Montana's highest point is Granite Peak in Carbon County, which reaches an elevation of 12,850 ft. It is in the Beartooth Range, which, with the Absarokas, lies north of Yellowstone Park. The state's average elevation is 3,400 ft. The continental divide—that is, the imaginary line which separates the headwaters of the streams that flow toward the Pacific from the headwaters of those that flow toward the Atlantic or the Gulf of Mexico—extends along the boundary line between Montana and Idaho as far north as Ravalli County. There it swerves to the southeast—through the most rugged mountain masses in the state—into Deer Lodge and Silver Bow counties, but turns north again through Lewis and Clark County and passes through Glacier National Park to the Canadian border. In it there are peaks more than 10,000 ft. high, but most of it is much lower, and some of the passes are only 6,000 ft. high. Between the divide and the Bitterroot Mountains lies the Bitterroot Basin. Montana has some famous mountain ranges—the Bitterroots along the western border; the Cabinet Range to the north of them; the Kootenais in the northwest corner of the state; and the Mission Range, which rises to the east, on the other side of the valley in which is Flathead Lake (27 m. long and over 1,000 ft. deep), the largest lake in the state. Through this valley flows the Flathead River, which joins the Missoula to make Clark's Fork (505 m. long) of the Columbia River and so finds its way to the Pacific. The Missoula, in turn, is made up of the Hell Gate to the east and the Bitterroot, which comes up from the southern part of the Bitterroot Valley. Except for the Belly, Waterton, and St. Mary's rivers, which flow from Glacier Park northward toward Hudson Bay, all the rest of the state is drained into the Missouri (3,475 m. long). This great stream is formed by the union of the Gallatin (125 m. long), Madison (230 m. long), and Jefferson (150 m. long) rivers. It is joined by the Sun, Teton (160 m. long) and Marias (300 m. long) from the west, and later in its eastward course across Montana it is joined by the Milk (625 m. long), which drains the north-central part of the state. The Poplar and the Big Muddy come to the Missouri in the northeastern corner of Montana. The Arrow, the Judith, the Musselshell (300 m. long), and the Dry bring their waters to it from the south. And just beyond the state's eastern boundary it is joined by the Yellowstone (571 m. long), which rises in Wyoming and picks up the Big Horn (about 500 m. long), the Tongue (200 m. long), the Powder (375 m. long), and the Fulton—rivers that drain southern Montana. The Missouri is a navigable stream, and the Yellowstone, Madison, and Bitterroot are used for short distances. Montana has a large number of exquisite small lakes hemmed in by towering mountains. All together its water area is 866 square miles. There are wide tracts of irrigated land.

**CLIMATE:** Montana has a climate of great extremes, with severe cold in winter—as the high altitude and northern position would lead one to expect. The western part is a good deal warmer than the eastern part of the state, for it feels the effects of the Chinook, a warm, dry wind from the Pacific. In the mountain valleys the mean annual temperature is as high as 47° F., though in the northeast corner of the state it is only 37°. At Helena the mean January temperature is 20°, the mean July temperature 66°; the record high is 103°, and the record low -42°. The western part of the state also gets more rain than the eastern part. As much as 20 inches falls yearly in the northwest and on the higher mountains, but the Great Plains farther east have only 10 to 15 inches of rain a year. Fortunately most of this comes in the growing season.

**INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING:** The more important institutions in the state are Carroll College at Helena, Intermountain Union College at Great Falls, Montana State College of Agriculture and Mechanic Arts at Bozeman, Mount St. Charles College at Helena, Montana State University at Missoula, and the State School of Mines, a part of the state university, at Butte. At Dillon and at Billings are state normal schools.

**CHARITIES AND CORRECTION:** Montana maintains a hospital for the insane at Warm Springs, a tuberculosis sanatorium at Galen, a school for the deaf and blind and one for the feeble-minded at Boulder, an industrial school for boys at Miles City, a vocational school for girls at Helena, an orphans' home at Twin Bridges, a soldiers' home at Helena, and a prison at Deer Lodge. The state inflicts capital punishment by hanging.

**POLITICAL FACTS:** Montana is governed under the constitution of 1889, adopted when she became a state. It has since been amended to give the people the right of initiative and referendum and to give the vote to women. The last measure was passed some years before the national amendment was adopted. Miss Jeanette Rankin, representative in Congress from Montana (1916), was the first woman to sit in our national legislative body.

The laws are made by a legislature consisting of two houses: a Senate, made up of 56 members elected for four-year terms; and a House of Representatives, made up of 132 members elected for two years. Both Senators and Representatives must have lived for a year in the county or district from which they are elected. Legislative sessions must not exceed sixty days. The House alone has the power of impeachment, and the Senate is the court before which cases of impeachment are tried.

The executive power is headed by the governor, who, with the members of his staff, is elected for four years. The treasurer may not be reelected. The governor may not veto any measure referred to the people, and any other veto may be overridden by a two-thirds vote of both houses. Except for the special duties belonging to each executive office, the business of the state is carried on by boards made up of the executive officers.

The judiciary is headed by a supreme court made up of five judges elected for six years. Below this court are district courts, one for each of the twenty judicial districts into which the state is divided. Each district court is presided over by a judge elected for four years. Small cases are handled by justices of the peace and by similar courts in incorporated towns and cities. The legislature may increase or decrease the number of judicial districts if it sees fit.

Voters are United States citizens over twenty-one who have lived in the state a year before the date of election.

## MONTANA—Continued

A primary-election law modeled on the Wisconsin law provides for party nominations by direct vote of the people. Primaries are held seventy days before a general election, and nominations are made by petition. Voters are given an opportunity to express a presidential preference in the primaries held in years of presidential elections.

Counties are administered by a commission made up of three members elected for six years, together with a county clerk, treasurer, sheriff, and other necessary officers, who in cities of 2,000 or more are nominated by the direct primary method. Cities and towns may adopt the commission form of government.

The eight-hour-day law for employees is rigidly enforced, and the granting of injunctions in suits arising from labor disputes is prohibited.

The capital of Montana is at Helena.

**PARKS:** Glacier National Park, established in 1910 in northwestern Montana, contains 1,558 square miles of rugged mountain and valley, and scenery well-nigh unsurpassed in grandeur. Sixty small glaciers, 250 glacier-fed lakes of romantic beauty, forests and precipices and an abundance of interesting wild life attract the nature lover and the sportsman. Through it runs the Going-to-the-Sun Highway, one of the finest scenic roadways in the world and a magnificent feat of engineering. Across the Canadian boundary Glacier Park is joined by Waterton Lakes National Park, a superb park set aside by the Canadian government. Together the two parks form the Waterton-Glacier International Peace Park, established by the United States and Canada in 1932.

A very small portion of Yellowstone National Park extends over the Wyoming boundary into Montana. The Montana entrance to the park is at Gardiner.

**MONUMENTS:** The Big Hole Battlefield National Monument covers 5 acres in Beaverhead County and commemorates the site of the battle fought in 1877 between United States troops and a band of Nez Percé Indians.

The Lewis and Clark Cavern National Monument, which covers 160 acres in Jefferson County, contains one of the largest and most beautiful caverns in the world. The tract was named for the two famous explorers because its highest point overlooks fifty miles of the route taken by the Lewis and Clark expedition.

In the Crow Indian Reservation in Big Horn County is the Custer Battlefield National Cemetery, which contains the graves of 1,400 pioneers, many of whom died in combat with the Indians. Adjoining the cemetery is the site of the Battle of Little Big Horn, in which Custer's forces were wiped out in 1876.

Montana contains 19,000,194 acres of national forest, and large state preserves as well.

**GAME AND BIRD RESERVATIONS:** Benton Lake Refuge in Cascade and Chouteau counties, Black Coulee Refuge in Blaine County, Fort Keogh Refuge in Custer County, Hailstone Refuge and Halfbreed Lake Refuge in Stillwater County, Hewitt Lake Refuge in Phillips County, Lake Thibadeau Refuge in Hill County, Lamesteer Refuge in Wibaux County, Pishkun Refuge in Teton County, and Willow Creek Refuge in Lewis and Clark County protect a great variety of birds and waterfowl.

Birds of all kinds and mammals also ranging all the way from buffalo, deer, and antelopes to muskrats and badgers find safety in Bowdoin Refuge in Phillips County, Creedman Coulee Refuge in Hill County, Fort Peck Game Range in Valley, Garfield, Petroleum, Fergus, Phillips, and McCone counties, Lake Mason

Refuge in Musselshell County, Medicine Lake Refuge in Roosevelt and Sheridan counties, National Bison Range in Sanders and Lake counties, Nine-Pipe Refuge and Pablo Refuge in Lake County, and in Red Rock Lakes Migratory Waterfowl Refuge in Beaverhead County. All together Montana has, in these nineteen national wildlife refuges, well over a million acres where birds and mammals of all kinds can find safety.

**NAME:** The word "montana" is a Latin noun meaning "mountainous regions." It was used long ago by Latin authors in speaking of the mountainous lands of Western Europe. For this reason it seemed fitting that the mountainous region lying close to our northern border should be named "Montana" when it was organized as a territory. The suggestion came from James M. Ashley, who was chairman of the Congressional committee on territories. The name was kept when the territory became a state.

**NICKNAMES:** Montana is commonly called the Bonanza State, a name that probably originated with Judge John Wasson Weddy. It alludes to the state's many rich mines, for the Spanish word "bonanza" is used in this country to describe a rich body or pocket of ore, especially of gold or silver. Montana is also called the Treasure State for the same reason. Occasionally it is called the Stubtoe State - no one knows why.

**STATE FLOWER:** Bitterroot (*Lewisia rediviva*); adopted by the legislature in 1895.

**STATE SONG:** "Montana," with words by Charles C. Cohen and music by John E. Howard, has become the approved state song of Montana. It was the choice of a number of organizations.

**STATE FLAG:** A blue field upon which is the great seal of the state. The flag is set off by a gold fringe.

**STATE MOTTO:** "Oro y Plata," the Spanish for "gold and silver"; the phrase was chosen because mining was the chief industry in Montana in 1865, when the motto was chosen.

**STATE BIRD:** Meadow lark; chosen by the school children of the state in 1930 and approved by the legislature in 1931.

**INTERESTING FACTS:** Montana observes New Year's Day, Lincoln's Birthday, Washington's Birthday, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Columbus Day, Election Day, Armistice Day, Thanksgiving Day, and Christmas Day.

The state has a large number of Indians, and seven Indian reservations the Blackfeet, Crow, Flathead, Fort Belknap, Fort Peck, Rocky Boy's, and Tongue River. On these reservations live members of the Blackfeet, Crow, Flathead, Assiniboin, Gros Ventre, Sioux, Chippewa, Cree, and Cheyenne tribes.

At Hobson, twenty-six miles west of Lewistown, is the world's largest sapphire mine.

Near Glasgow in Valley County, at the headwaters of the Missouri River, is the Fort Peck Dam, one of the great government developments and the largest earth-filled dam in the world. Its total crest length is 4 miles, its average width at the base of the main structure is 3,500 feet, and its volume is 128,000,000 cubic yards. It was built mainly to control floods and improve navigation on the Missouri, where it maintains a 9 foot channel for the stream's entire length. It also generates electric power.

# MONTANA—Continued

<b>Population of state, 1940, 359,456</b>			
<b>Counties</b>			
Beaverhead (C4) 6,943	Ravalli (B3) . . . 12,978	Columbus (G4) . . . 962	Miles City * (L3) 7,313
Big Horn (J4) 10,419	Richland (M2) . . 10,209	Conrad (E1) . . . 1,471	Missoula * (C3) 18,449
Blaine (G1) 9,566	Roosevelt (L1) 9,806	Culbertson (M1) . 585	Moore (G3) . . . 241
Broadwater (E3) 3,451	Rosebud (K3) . . 6,477	Cut Bank * (D1) . 2,509	
Carbon <sup>1</sup> (G4) . . 11,865	Sanders (A2) . . 6,926	Darby (B3) . . . 481	Nashua (K1) . . . 943
Carter (M4) . . 3,280	Sheridan <sup>4</sup> (L1) . 7,814	Deer Lodge * (I3) . . . 3,278	Opheim (K1) . . 344
Cascade <sup>2</sup> (E2) 41,999	Silver Bow (D4) 53,207	Denton (G2) . . . 406	Outlook (M1) . . 204
Chouteau <sup>3</sup> (F1) 7,316	Stillwater (G4) . 5,694	Dillon * (D4) . . 3,014	
Custer (L3) 10,422	Sweet Grass (G4) 3,719	Dodson (H1) . . . 397	Philipsburg (C3) . . . 1,304
Daniels <sup>4</sup> (E1) 4,563	Teton <sup>11</sup> (D2) . . 6,922	East Helena (E3) 1,143	Plains (B2) . . . 621
Dawson (L2) . . 8,618	Toole (E1) . . . 6,769	Ekalaka (M4) . . 719	Plentywood (M1) . . . 1,574
Deer Lodge (C3) 13,627	Treasure (J3) . . 1,499	Eureka (A1) . . . 912	Polson (B2) . . 2,156
Fallon (M3) . . 3,719	Valley <sup>4</sup> (K1) . . 15,181	Fairview (M2) . . 901	Poplar (L1) . . 1,442
Fergus * (G2) 14,040	Wheatland (G3) 3,286	Forsyth (K3) . . 1,696	Red Lodge * (G4) . . . 2,950
Flathead * (B1) 24,271	Wibaux (M2) . . 2,161	Fort Benton (F2) 1,227	Ronan (B2) . . 1,032
Gallatin <sup>7</sup> (E4) 18,269	Yellowstone <sup>1</sup> (H3) . . . 41,182	Froid (M1) . . . 441	Roundup * (H3) 2,644
Garfield (J2) . . 2,641	Yellowstone Na- tional Park (part) <sup>12</sup> (F5) . . 43	Fromberg (H4) 533	Ryegate (G3) . . 348
Glacier (C1) . . 9,034		Geraldine (F2) . . 262	
Golden Valley * (G3) . . . 1,607	<b>Cities and Towns</b>	Glasgow * (K1) . 3,799	Saco (J1) . . . 452
Granite (C3) . . 3,401	[Places marked with an asterisk (*) were clas- sified as urban in 1940]	Gilendive * (M2) 4,524	St. Ignatius (B2) . . . 768
Hill * (F1) . . 13,304		Great Falls * (E2) . . . 29,928	Scoley (L1) . . 1,311
Jefferson (D3) 4,664	Albion (B3) . . . 281	Hamilton (B3) . 2,332	Shelby * (E1) 2,538
Judith Basin <sup>2</sup> (F2) . . . 3,655	Anaconda * (D3) 11,004	Hardin (J4) . . 1,886	Sheridan (D4) . 597
Lake * (B2) . . 13,490	Bainville (M1) 403	Harlem (H1) . . 1,166	Sidney * (M2) 2,978
Lewis and Clark (D2) . . . 22,131	Baker (M3) . . 1,304	Harlowtown (G3) . . . 1,547	Stanford (F2) . 529
Liberty * (E1) . . 2,209	Bearcreek (G4) 324	Havre * (G1) . . 6,427	Stevensville (B3) 703
Lincoln (E1) . . 7,882	Belgrade (E4) 618	Helena * (D3) . 15,056	Sunburst (E1) . 709
McCone (L2) . . 3,798	Belt (F2) . . . 744	Hingham (F1) . . 205	Terry (L3) . . . 1,012
Madison (E4) 7,294	Big Sandy (F1) 596	Hot Springs (B2) 663	Thompson Falls (A2) . . . 736
Meagher (E3) 2,237	Big Timber (G4) 1,533	Hysham (J3) . . 392	Three Forks (E4) 876
Mineral (A2) . . 2,135	Billings * (H4) . 23,261	Johet (H4) . . . 476	Townsend (E3) 1,309
Missoula * (B3) 29,038	Boulder (D3) . . 510	Judith Gap (G3) 212	Troy (A1) . . . 796
Musselshell * (H3) . . . 5,717	Bozeman * (E4) 8,665	Kalispell * (B1) 8,245	Twin Bridges (D4) . . . 534
Park <sup>7</sup> (F4) . . 11,566	Bridger (H4) . . 783	Laurel * (H4) . . 2,754	Valier (D1) . . . 641
Petroleum (H2) . . . 1,083	Broadview (H3) . 140	Lavina (H3) . . 199	Virginia City (E4) . . . 380
Phillips (H1) . . 7,892	Browning (C1) . 1,825	Lewistown * (G2) . . . 5,874	Walkerville (D3) 1,880
Pondera (D1) 6,716	Butte * (D3) . 37,081	Libby (A1) . . . 1,837	Westby (M1) . . 369
Powder River (L4) . . . 3,159	Cascade (E2) . . 419	Lima (D5) . . . 554	Whitefish * (B1) 2,662
Powell (D3) 6,152	Chester (F1) . . 548	Livingston * (F4) 6,642	Whitehall (D4) 818
Prairie (L3) . . 2,410	Chinook (G1) . . 2,051	Lodge Grass (J4) 839	White Sulphur Springs (F3) . . 858
	Choteau (D2) . . 1,181	Malta (J1) . . . 2,215	Wibaux (M2) . . 625
	Circle (L2) . . . 685	Manhattan (F4) 645	Winifred (G2) . 300
	Clyde Park (F4) 216	Medicine Lake (M1) . . . 396	Winnett (H3) . 399
	Columbia Falls (B1) . . . . . 637	Melstone (H3) . 203	Wolf Point (L1) 1,960

<sup>1</sup> Part of Yellowstone annexed to Carbon in 1925.

<sup>2</sup> Judith Basin organized from parts of Cascade and Fergus in 1920.

<sup>3</sup> Part of Chouteau taken to form part of Liberty in 1920, and part annexed to Teton in 1921

<sup>4</sup> Daniels organized from parts of Sheridan and Valley in 1920

<sup>5</sup> Part of Fergus taken to form Petroleum in 1925; part taken to form part of Judith Basin in 1920

<sup>6</sup> Lake organized from parts of Flathead and Missoula in 1923

<sup>7</sup> Parts of Gallatin and Park annexed to Yellowstone National Park in 1929, and part of Park annexed to Yellowstone National Park in 1932.

<sup>8</sup> Golden Valley organized from parts of Musselshell and Sweet Grass in 1920

<sup>9</sup> Liberty organized from parts of Chouteau and Hill in 1920, part of Hill annexed in 1921

<sup>10</sup> Petroleum organized from part of Fergus in 1925.

<sup>11</sup> Part of Chouteau annexed to Teton in 1921

<sup>12</sup> Yellowstone National Park geographically located within limits of Idaho, Montana, and Wyoming. Total population 459 in 1940. Parts of Gallatin and Park Counties annexed in 1929, and part of Park County annexed in 1932.

---

# The HISTORY of NEBRASKA

---

## Reading Unit

No. 26

---

### NEBRASKA: THE CORNHUSKER STATE

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

#### *Interesting Facts Explained*

The beauty of Nebraska, 8-223  
The Indian tribes of Nebraska, 8-224  
The first white man to come to Nebraska, 8-224  
Nebraska's first permanent settler, 8-224

When Nebraska was admitted to the Union, 8-225  
How industry and agriculture have helped Nebraska to prosper, 8-226  
Nebraska's political experiments, 8-227

#### *Things to Think About*

What parts of Nebraska are especially suited to agriculture?  
What is loess?  
What made Nebraska important in the gold-rush days?

Which trails followed the Platte River?  
How did Nebraska build a profitable agricultural system?  
What serious problems has Nebraska had to face?

#### *Picture Hunt*

What building is one of our country's finest architectural achievements? 8-222  
What grows on the broad Nebraska plains, where the bison

used to roam? 8-224  
What is the leading industry of Omaha, Nebraska? 8-226-27

#### *Related Material*

What were the prairies like when people crossed them on their way out West? 7-233  
What made the scant yields of the prairies profitable? 7-280  
What is grown on the Canadian prairies? 7-22  
What kinds of burrowing ani-

mals live on the western prairies? 4-370-72  
What wind is the terror of the prairies? 1-230  
When did the prairie "schooners" become boats? 10-153  
The Stars and Stripes are carried West. 7-231-39

#### *Practical Applications*

How did the railroads help Nebraska? 8-226  
How does Nebraska hope to get

cheaper, more sensible, and more democratic laws? 8-227

#### *Leisure-time Activities*

PROJECT NO. 1: Plant a tree.  
PROJECT NO. 2: Read the

story of the wild cousins of your dog, 4-299-309.

## NEBRASKA: *the* CORNHUSKER STATE

*Out of the Burning, Treeless Prairie Nebraska's Citizens Have  
Made a Land of Beauty and of Plenty*

**L**ONG and straight and level, the Nebraska road stretches ahead of the motor, a smooth ribbon of firm concrete. Lush farms, trim villages, contented herds, and stately groves of trees speed by. It is a land of progress and plenty. Why is the comfortable traveler never haunted by the memory of other men who traveled these same roads in days gone by?—gaunt, hungry men, who under a merciless sun plodded ankle deep in the sand across a barren plain where no tree broke the clear hard line of the horizon.

Day after day they came—those dauntless pioneers. Many of them brought their families in covered wagons that jolted along the trail to the accompaniment of bird cries and the wailing of children. Westward they plodded, into the sunset which has always beckoned man to new hopes and new achievements. They were the conquerors of a continent, and to-day their prairie schooners roll through the pages of our history books, as greatly honored as were the chariots of the warriors of old. They laid the foundation of the America that is such a comfortable place for you and me to-day. They plowed the land and dug the wells and laid out the towns that to-day are bustling with people. And in Nebraska they planted the thousands of trees that have given the scorching plains an air of comfort.

To-day Nebraska's fame and fortune are

The giant tower of Nebraska's capitol at Lincoln is topped by an aircraft warning beacon in the form of a man sowing seed. This building, designed by Bertram Grosvenor Goodhue, is one of the country's most beautiful capitols.

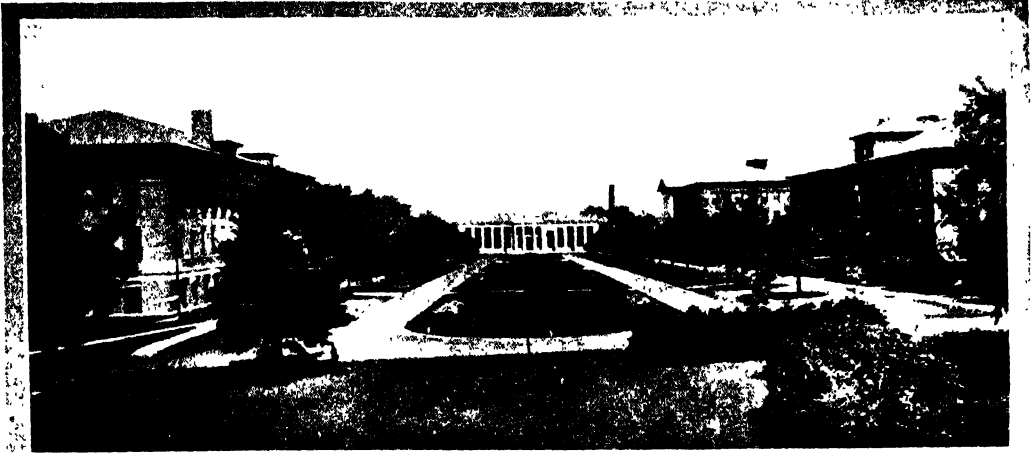
founded on the fact of her being in the heart of the prairies! Great forests could never grow on her land, no matter how many trees she planted—but other highly profitable and useful crops will flourish there. Nebraska has done well to make the best of the soil she was granted, without waiting for it to grow luxuriant forests. For the general scheme of the state is very much like the general structure of the two Dakotas, which we have described elsewhere. In the far west is a region of high plains and Bad Lands, untouched by the glacier—a barren, rugged section covered with ridges and peaks and deep valleys. A few trees grow here, mostly scrub pines on the higher ridges. In general the land is too rough and dry to support much vegetation, but where it can be cultivated and watered, crops grow abundantly. In this region is Nebraska's highest point, at Wild Cat Mountain (5,300 ft.) in Banner County. Here also the tributaries of the Missouri River have cut the landscape into rugged forms. Those tributaries are the Niobrara (nī'ô-brâr'â), the Republican, and the North and South branches of the Platte (plăt).

To the east of the high plains, which are really the foothills of the Rockies, the



Photo by Gendreau, N Y.

## THE HISTORY OF NEBRASKA



Some of the buildings of the University of Nebraska's excellent agricultural college are shown in this picture. The university also owns valuable farming land where

students can study agricultural problems at first hand and put into practice theories taught them in their classrooms. The whole state profits thereby.

whole north-central part of the state is covered with sand hills, heaped up by the restless winds that are always sweeping the western plains. Once these thousands of little hills—rarely more than fifty feet high—went pacing across the landscape at a fairly regular gait, just as sand dunes march along a seacoast. But mixed with the sand was a considerable quantity of dust, such as blows up in the “dust bowls” that we have described elsewhere; and when this soil was packed down and held in place by a growth of grass on top, it proved fairly fertile. That is why those hills are so solidly covered with grass that they have ceased to move about under the urging of the winds. From being barren “rolling stones” they have settled down to the quiet life of collecting growing things.

### Prairie Fires

This useful change of habit could not take place until men had put an end to the prairie fires that used to sweep the plains in frontier days, devouring every blade of grass for mile after mile. Now the once desolate sand hills are dotted with hundreds of little lakes and streams, and the region is full of charm and scenic beauty. Tired people come here in summer to rest, and sportsmen seek out secluded nooks to hunt and fish.

It is in the southern and eastern parts of the state that we find the region to which

Nebraska owes her reputation as a great agricultural state. Here a large part of the land is covered with a very rich and fertile soil known as loess (lō'ss), a rather puzzling soil with many peculiar characteristics. It is found in thick sheets on the surface of the ground and is full of the remains of many animals, mostly snails. It is divided into vertical columns, so that when a river cuts its way through a bed of loess the soil remains standing on each side in straight columns, much like a wall or like the Palisades along the New Jersey shore of the Hudson River. But most important of all, it is an extremely rich soil, generally dark brown or black.

### What Is Loess?

Some learned men believe that loess is the dirt deposited in dust storms of many ages ago; other scientists think that some sort of running water laid it down. Nobody can say for certain just how it came to be; but some of it, in Nebraska at least, seems to be a product of the glacier, even though in places it overlies glacial deposits. In fact marks of the glacier are to be seen on every hand in the eastern part of Nebraska. Between the rich loess, the fertile deposits of glacial drift, and the black soil which the Missouri and the Platte rivers have left in their valleys at flood time, eastern Nebraska is second to almost no other land in the world for inexhaustible fertility.

## THE HISTORY OF NEBRASKA

Over the rich prairie lands of this region there roamed, at the first coming of the white man, two groups of Indians, who were bitter enemies. These were the Caddo Indians, represented by the Pawnee Confederacy, and the Sioux (sōō), represented by the Santee (sǎn-tē') and Teton (tē'tōn) tribes of the Dakota branch, the Omaha and Ponca (pōng'kǎ) tribes of the Thegiha (thē-gī'hǎ) branch, and the Iowa, Oto (ō'tō), and Missouri tribes of the Chiwere (chī-wēr'ē) branch. In the far west were the Cheyennes (shī-ēn') and Arapahoes (ā-rāp'ā-hō), both of the Algonquian (āl-gōn'kī-ān) group.

It is said that the first white man to visit Nebraska was a Spaniard who came journeying over the desert plains from Mexico. This was the famous Coronado (kō'rō-nā'thō), who in

1541—or so he claimed—traveled as far north as the fortieth parallel, which runs along the southern border of Nebraska. There is some doubt as to whether he ever got so far, but in any case the whole matter is unimportant, for Coronado found only a few small Indian villages, and so returned almost at once without ever getting a glimpse of the seven great cities of the kingdom of "Quivira" (kē-vē'rǎ), for which he was looking.

### Who Was Nebraska's First Settler?

After this first visit, if it ever took place, more than 250 years went by before anyone else came to explore the country. And even when men did begin to find their way in, they were inclined to pass over the fertile plains as useless for farming, for at that time those

great expanses bore only wild grasses and flowers. Instead, the first explorers gave their whole attention to getting rich in other ways which were easier. In 1807 two brothers, Jean and Pierre Chouteau (zhōN-

pyēr shōō'tō'), went up the Platte River to trade with the neighboring Indians for furs; and in that same year the famous Cuban frontiersman Manuel de Lisa (mā-nwēl' dā lē'sǎ) became the first permanent settler of Nebraska when he built his shack at Bellevue, near the mouth of the Platte River. Of course the territory had been included in the Louisiana Purchase of 1803, and became part of the Louisiana Territory. Later this was known as the Missouri Territory, but when Missouri became a state in 1821, Nebraska was left practically without a



Photo by Omaha C of C

Here are the broad plains of Nebraska, once a vast pasture for herds of wild bison, but now the source of millions of bushels of corn, which we feed to the horses, cows, pigs, and chickens on our farms.

government—a typical frontier.

This accident soon proved quite an important matter, for though Nebraska was not thickly populated, she quickly became one of the most important travel routes to the West. When the great rush to California's rich valleys and gold mines began in 1848, the Platte River Valley was known as one of the quickest and easiest ways to get to the "Golden West." The Mormons, in their migration westward from persecution in Illinois, passed through Nebraska. Actually, almost all the well-known trails followed the Platte at least part of the way. Among these were the Old Oregon Trail, the California Trail, and the Old Salt Lake Trail. So many people passed along these paths that it was soon necessary to build depots where caravans bound for the west could stop for



## THE HISTORY OF NEBRASKA

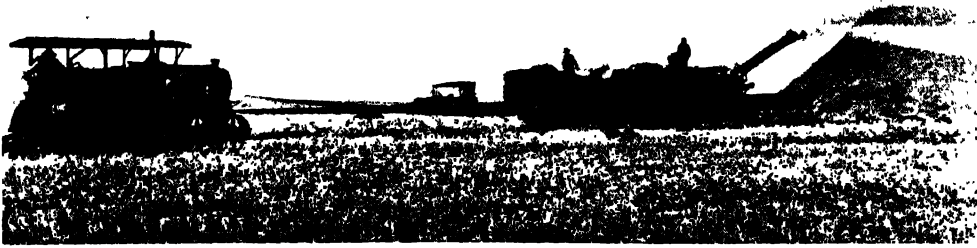


Photo by Omaha C. of C.

If you drive across Nebraska on a clear, hot July day, you will see many a threshing crew like this one hard at work under a blistering sun. The wheat will be

taken by truck to a grain elevator where it will be reloaded to freight cars, to be shipped to the great mills of the Middle West—or perhaps sent abroad.

food and drink and protection from Indians. At Bellevue, Plattsmouth, Nebraska City, and New Fort Kearney (kär'nī), frontier towns grew up almost overnight. During that great gold rush it was estimated that 50,000 people, with live stock and wagons, passed through Nebraska in a single year.

### The Lure of Free Land

Now some of those pioneering farmers, facing the hard, rough journey ahead to an uncertain goal and lured by the rich farm lands of Nebraska, decided to stop in the middle of this fertile plain. So many settlers were attracted by the new land that in 1854 Congress organized Nebraska as a territory. In 1867, after much revising of boundaries and delay because of the Civil War, she was admitted to the Union. Already she had shed her blood in its defense, for she sent over 3,000 men to fight on the Northern side.

The first thing to which Nebraska turned her attention after becoming a state was the work of building a profitable and sound agricultural system. Corn was from the very beginning her most important and valuable crop, for on the rich prairie lands of her eastern counties it grew with amazing speed and in huge quantities. By 1900 Nebraska had become the fourth corn-growing state of

the Union, and is still one of the leaders in this crop today, with third place, as a rule, in recent years. Others of Nebraska's paying grain crops are wheat, oats, and rye. And those great grassy plains of hers made it possible for her to lead the nation for many years in harvesting wild hay. She ranks high in her output of field hay, is now second or third in rye, and among the top eight states in wheat and oats. Corn alone has brought her well over \$200,000,000 in a year, and wheat \$125,000,000. Other important Nebraska crops are barley, sorghums, sugar beets, beans, potatoes, grapes, apples, and peaches. Sugar beets have been raised in the state ever since 1890, and have for a long time been one of the most important crops. The western part of Nebraska, in particular the region of the sand hills, is especially well adapted to growing sugar beets, and the state usually ranks fifth or sixth in the Union in their production. But they do not pay as grain crops do.

### Horses, Cows, and Swine

Of course her tremendous yields of grain and fodder make Nebraska a leading state in raising live stock. Dairy and poultry products also provide an important outlet for her immense quantities of grain. But important as these products are, they look small

## THE HISTORY OF NEBRASKA

In comparison with Nebraska's production of meat. In sheep she has not ranked very high recently. But in swine she is usually sixth or seventh among the states in the Union and she has a creditable position as a grower of horses and dairy cows. Only two or three states have more cattle.

Given a state in which grains, dairy products, and live stock are the leading products we shall expect to find the manufacturing industries depending on the agricultural output in which the state is so rich. Nebraska's slender mineral wealth—sand and gravel, stone, pumice, petroleum, and clay products—and her thinly scattered trees yield little wealth compared with her fields. But her central position and her fine shipping facilities, with thousands of miles of railroad, make it possible for her to send the products of her agriculture over the whole country.

### What Does Nebraska Manufacture?

So the most flourishing industries of Nebraska are meat packing, the manufacture of butter, cheese, and other milk products, and the milling of flour and grain. The largest slaughtering and packing plants in the state are at Omaha, an important railroad center that is also widely known as a cattle, hog, and grain market. Lincoln, the capital, has one of the largest creameries in the world, besides being a grain and flour center. Fruits, vegetables, pork, and flour and grain products are the contributions of Nebraska City, while Grand Island is famous for her great sugar-beet factories, her stockyards, and her market for horses, mules, and sheep. Kearney, near New Fort Kearney, the site of much fierce Indian

fighting in the early days of settlement, is now a grain, live stock, and poultry center, as is Fremont, another frontier town. Nebraska also makes furniture, textiles, machinery, steel products, clay products, and a great deal of industrial alcohol.

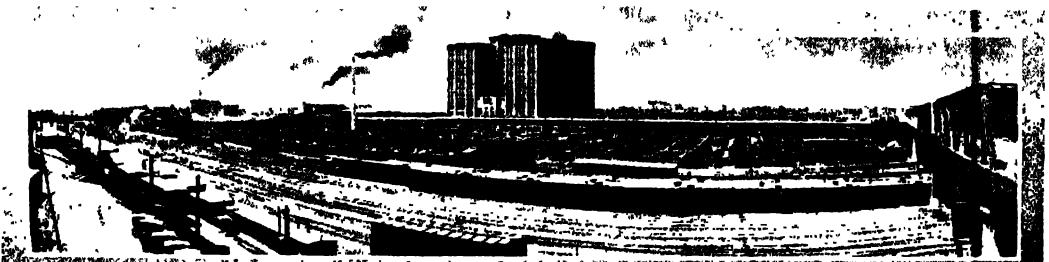
### The Land Boom of the '90's

With this sound mixture of industry and agriculture, the history of Nebraska has been one of almost continual progress and prosperity. In the early 1890's an immense boom carried land values far beyond any reasonable figures; and the unavoidable collapse brought on a period of painful reform and recovery. The "Dust Bowl," in which the wind can raise great havoc in the western part of the state, has also been a grave problem. But just as the depression of the nineties was overcome by hard work and steady plodding, so Nebraska has taken steady, careful steps to overcome this latest peril. Irrigation, particularly with the waters of the Platte River in the southwest, has proved to be of considerable value. Of course more fundamental reforms were needed; it would take ten Platte Rivers to irrigate the dust bowl properly. But both the state and the national governments are working on the larger questions of land reform, and just as in the Dakotas, we may expect to see a solution of some sort before long.

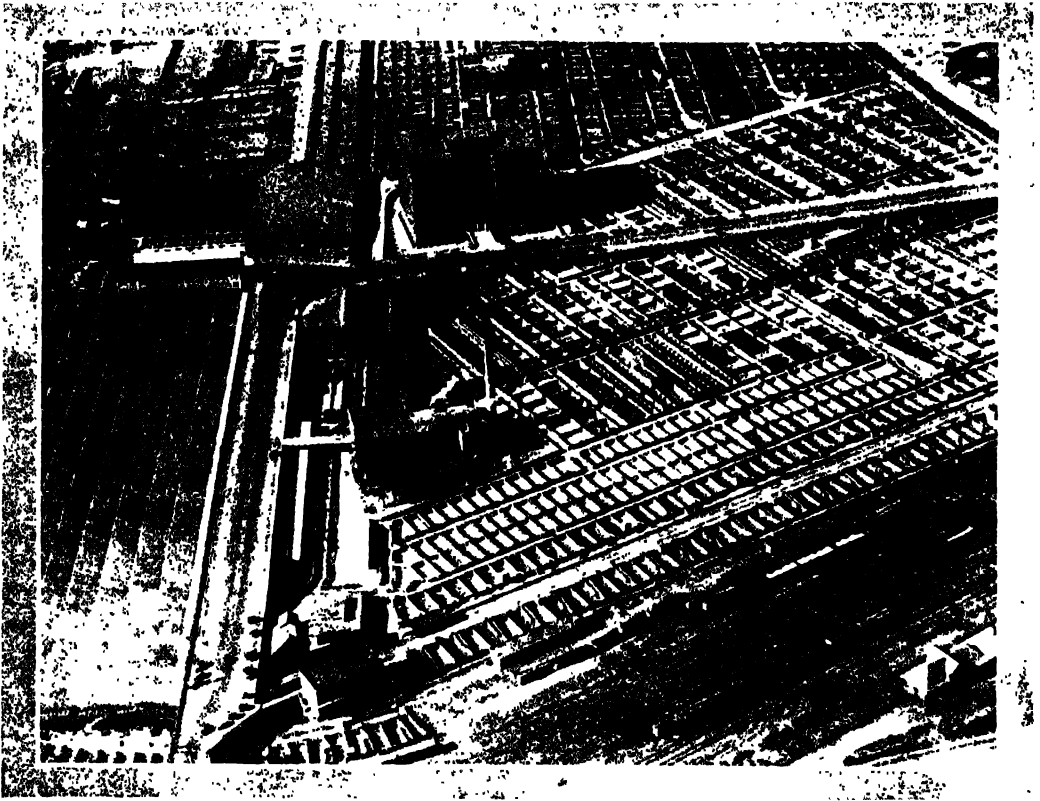
Educationally, Nebraska, like her neighbors on all sides, is one of the most advanced states in the Union. She has coöperated wholeheartedly with the national government in supplying most generous help to the local schools of the state, and as a result the percentage of

This is a view of the stockyards in Omaha, Nebraska's busiest city. Founded less than a hundred years ago and for a while—before the transcontinental railroad was pushed through—the end of the railway from the east, Omaha is now one of the country's greatest railroad centers and is one of the most important meat-packing centers in the world.

Photo by Lewis R. Bostwick



## THE HISTORY OF NEBRASKA



This gigantic checkerboard is a part of the stockyards at Omaha. Here motors and railroads unite to carry on the city's leading industry. In the olden days Omaha's position on the Missouri River helped to bring trade, but to-day the "big Muddy" is not often

asked to carry a cargo. Yet if Omaha's trade has left the water, it has made up for the loss by taking to the air. The city is an important center on one of the great transcontinental airways, and she has built a large airport for the use of planes.

citizens who do not know how either to read or write is among the lowest. It stood at 1.2 in 1930. There are a number of good institutions of higher learning in this forward-looking state.

Because of her high level of education Nebraska has not been afraid to try a certain number of interesting experiments. Lately she has organized a legislature consisting of a single house instead of the two houses found in other states. Because the old system of government was slow, cumbersome, expensive, and offered many opportunities to grafters and lobbyists, Nebraska in 1937 cut down the number of her lawmakers from 133 to 43, and elected them without reference to political party.

Instead of a house of representatives of 100 and a senate of 33 members, there is now a single lawmaking body, which has sole responsibility for making the laws to govern the state. The voters of Nebraska hope that this move will provide cheaper, more sensible, more democratic laws, that it will make the state government more responsive to the wishes of the citizens, and that it will free their legislature from the clutches of lobbyists and corrupt interests. If this experiment of Nebraska's meets with success, it is certain to be imitated by many of the states in the Union. The saving in time and money would be enormous. And that would merely mean that Nebraska has taken a place of leadership in yet another field.

## NEBRASKA

**AREA:** 77,337 square miles—14th in rank.

**LOCATION:** Nebraska, one of the West North Central states, lies roughly between 40° and 43° N. Lat. and between 95° and 104° W. Long. It is bounded on the north by South Dakota, on the east by Iowa and Missouri, on the south by Kansas and Colorado, and on the west by Colorado and Wyoming.

**PHYSICAL FEATURES:** Four-fifths of Nebraska lies in the Great Plains, but the easternmost fifth lies in the Prairie Plains, along with Iowa and Illinois and other states of the Mississippi Valley. The whole surface is a gently rolling plain that rises very gradually from the southeast toward the northwest. The lowest point is in Richardson County and is 825 ft. above sea level. The highest point, 5,300 ft., is in the Wildcat Mountains in Banner County. These mountains and also Pine Ridge, in the northwest corner of the state, are really foothills of the Rockies, and rise to heights of 5,000 ft. The state's average elevation is 2,600 ft. For the most part western Nebraska is a high treeless plain 3,000 or 4,000 ft. high and level except where rivers have cut deep canyons or where great buttes stand up above the surface of the table-land. In the northwest corner of the state is an area of about 1,000 square miles that belongs to the Bad Lands, which reach into the state from South Dakota. East of the high plains in the north central part of the state is an area of sandhills that begins near the point where the north and south branches of Platte River unite. Here are grassy hills and rich valleys dotted with pretty lakes. The rest of the state—in the eastern, central, and southern sections—is covered with a very fertile soil called loess, a delight to the farmer. Most of the loess region is gently rolling, though occasionally there are hills, as along the Missouri and Republican rivers.

Over this sloping plain that is Nebraska a number of rivers make their way, flowing in general from east to west and eventually draining into the Missouri (2,475 m. long), which forms the state's northeastern and eastern border. In the north is the Niobrara (431 m. long), which rises in Wyoming and joins the Missouri. Through the central part of the state flows the Platte (310 m. long), which is formed by the union of the North Platte (618 m. long) and the South Platte (424 m. long), both of which rise in Colorado. The Platte is Nebraska's most important river. Along its banks once lay the chief highway to the West. Though it is shallow it is often as much as a mile wide, and furnishes so much water to irrigation that it sometimes goes quite dry in the central part of the state. It too enters the Missouri, and is joined from the north by the Loup (300 m. long) and the Elkhorn (200 m. long), streams that rise in the sandhills. The south-central part of the state is drained by the Republican River (445 m. long), which flows across the Kansas border to join the Kansas River, a tributary of the Missouri. The Big Blue (300 m. long) enters Kansas farther to the east and also joins the Kansas River. In the southeastern corner of the state is the Nemaha (150 m. long), which enters the Missouri directly. The Missouri may be navigated for its 450 miles along the Nebraska border, but it is not greatly used. Various other streams occasionally carry boats for short distances. The state has a great many Artesian wells. All together Nebraska has a water area of 712 square miles, and thousands of acres of irrigated land. There are 206,026 acres of national forest.

**CLIMATE:** Nebraska has cold winters and hot summers, but the air is so dry and the sun shines so much of the time that the climate is very healthful. The mean annual temperature for the state is about 49° F., but the mean for January is 22°, and the mean for July as high as 74.6°. Omaha has a January mean of 22°, and a July mean of 77°. Its record high is 111°,

and its record low -32°. The growing season is 165 days long in the southeast, and 135 days in the northwest. Rainfall varies a great deal from year to year, though the seasons of drought seem to run in long cycles. The west is semi-arid, but farther east there is usually enough rain to support crops. The state is fortunate in that seven-tenths of the rain falls during the growing season. The normal mean annual rainfall for the entire state is about 23.5 inches, but any given year may have as little as 13.3 inches or as much as 35.6. The wind blows a great deal in Nebraska, usually from the northwest, though sometimes there are south and southwest winds from the Gulf of Mexico. When these winds come in winter they will melt the snow on even the coldest days.

**INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING:** The more important institutions are Creighton University at Omaha, Dana College at Blair, Doane College at Crete, Hastings College at Hastings, Midland College at Fremont, University of Nebraska at Lincoln, Nebraska Wesleyan University at Lincoln, Municipal University of Omaha, Nebraska Central College at Central City, Union College at Lincoln, and York College at York. State teachers' colleges are at Chadron, Kearney, Peru, and Wayne.

**CHARITIES AND CORRECTION:** The state maintains hospitals for the insane at Lincoln, Ingleside, and Norfolk; a hospital for the tubercular at Kearney; an orthopedic hospital at Lincoln; a school for the blind at Nebraska City, one for the deaf at Omaha, state industrial schools at Kearney and Milford, a girls' training school at Geneva, and a home for dependent children at Lincoln; an institution for the feeble-minded at Beatrice; soldiers' and sailors' homes at Grand Island and Milford; a reformatory for men at Lincoln, one for women at York, and a penitentiary at Lincoln. Nebraska inflicts capital punishment by electrocution.

**POLITICAL FACTS:** The present constitution of the state, though in reality an amended version of the constitution of 1875, represents such wide departures from the original document that since 1920 it has been practically a new constitution. Still other thoroughgoing changes have been made since that date. In 1935 the people voted to substitute a single house for the former two houses that made up the law-making body of the state. The new legislature has 43 members, instead of the 133 members who made up the old body. The legislators are not elected on party tickets.

The executive department consists of a governor, lieutenant-governor, secretary of state, auditor of public accounts, treasurer, superintendent of public instruction, attorney-general, and commissioner of public lands and buildings. All are elected for two years. The governor and lieutenant-governor must be thirty years of age or over. The treasurer may not serve two consecutive terms.

The judiciary is headed by a supreme court of seven elected justices. Beneath it are district and county courts, justices of the peace, police magistrates, and such other courts as may be created. Each organized county elects a judge every two years to preside over the county court. No state act may be declared unconstitutional by the supreme court except by the agreement of five of the members.

Voters must be citizens of the United States over twenty-one years of age, and must have lived in the state six months and in the county and voting precinct for a specified time.

All candidates for elective offices must be nominated in primary elections. Provision is made for the casting of a preferential vote for the presidency and vice presidency of the United States and for the United States senatorship. There is a stringent corrupt-

## NEBRASKA—Continued

practices law limiting and regulating the expenditures of candidates for office. The initiative and referendum have been adopted and are in full force.

The legislature may form new counties, but each county must have an area of not less than 400 square miles. Counties may be organized into townships if a majority of the voters in the county so decide. Cities of between 5,000 and 100,000 inhabitants may frame a charter for their government.

Property acquired by a wife after marriage remains her own separate possession. Equal suffrage legislation and the prohibition of the sale of alcoholic liquors preceded national legislation on those two issues.

The capital of Nebraska is at Lincoln.

**MONUMENTS:** The Scotts Bluff National Monument, in the Wildcat Range, overlooks the Platte Valley from a bluff 4,622 ft. high. It was a famous landmark in the days when emigrant wagons passed by on their way westward. The first homestead in the United States, taken out at Beatrice in 1863, is now the Homestead National Monument.

**GAME AND BIRD RESERVATIONS:** Crescent Lake National Wildlife Refuge in Garden County, Fort Niobrara Refuge in Cherry County, and Valentine Refuge in Cherry County protect a large number of migratory birds and various mammals, such as elk, buffaloes, antelopes, Texas long-horned cattle, beavers, and muskrats. Box Butte Refuge in Dawes County and North Platte Refuge in Scotts Bluff and Sioux counties protect birds of many sorts.

Nebraska has 207,209 acres of national forest.

**NAME:** The word "Nebraska" first appeared in print as the name of the Nebraska River, in the report rendered in 1843 by John C. Frémont, the explorer. In 1844 it was recommended that the region known as the Nebraska Country should be organized as a territory and that it should be called "Nebraska" from the great river that bisected it. The word is of Indian origin, and its meaning is somewhat uncertain. It may have come from "Nebrathka," the name the Otoe Indians gave to the Platte River; it means "flat water." Or the name may have come from "ni-ubthatka," a word used by the Omaha Indians; the first syllable, "ni," means "water" and the rest of the word means "spreading." It is also possible that "Nebraska" came from "Niobrara," the name of a river in the northern part of the state, perhaps derived from the

Omaha word that we have mentioned above. In any event the state's name would seem to mean "flat, or spreading water."

**NICKNAMES:** In 1895 the Nebraska legislature approved "the Tree Planters' State" as a title for Nebraska, since this is "preëminently a tree-planting state." Because there once were large numbers of antelopes on the prairies Nebraska has been called the Antelope State, and because its streams are darkened by the rich black soil that they carry along it has been called the Black Water State. From the nighthawk, which is locally known as the "bug eater" because it eats insects, Nebraska has been nicknamed the Bug-eating State. The football team of the University of Nebraska is known as the Cornhuskers, and from this nickname Nebraska takes her present title of the Cornhusker State.

The people of Nebraska are called Cornhuskers and Bug Eaters.

**STATE FLOWER:** Goldenrod; adopted by legislative act in 1895.

**STATE SONG:** "My Nebraska," by Theodore C. Diers, has been recently adopted as the state song by the legislature. "Dear Old Nebraska," words and music by Harry Pecka, is sung—as are certain other songs as well.

**STATE FLAG:** A field of national blue upon the center of which the great seal of the state is depicted in gold and silver; authorized in 1925.

**STATE MOTTO:** "Equality before the Law"; probably chosen because of the strong feeling against slavery on the part of those who selected the motto. The sentiment suggests the old legal maxim: "All men are equal before the natural law."

**STATE BIRD:** Western meadow lark; approved by the legislature in 1929.

**INTERESTING FACTS:** Nebraska observes New Year's Day, Lincoln's Birthday, Washington's Birthday, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Columbus Day, Armistice Day, Thanksgiving Day, Christmas Day, State Day on March 1, and Arbor Day on April 22.

Indians live on the Omaha, Ponca, Santee, Winnebago, and Iowa Reservations in Nebraska, and include members of the Iowa, Omaha, Ponca, Sioux, and Winnebago tribes.

Population of state, 1940, 1,315,834		Custer (E 3)	22,591	Hayes (C 4)	1,758	Nemaha (J 4)	12,781
Counties		Dakota (H 2)	9,836	Hitchcock (C 4)	6,404	Nuckolls (F 4)	10,446
Adams (F 4)	24,576	Dawes (A 2)	10,128	Holt (F 2)	16,552	Otoe (H 4)	18,994
Antelope (F 2)	13,289	Dawson (E 4)	17,890	Hooker (C 3)	1,253	Pawnee (H 4)	8,514
Arthur (C 3)	1,045	Deuel (B 3)	5,580	Howard (F 3)	8,422	Perkins (C 4)	5,197
Banner (A 3)	1,403	Dixon (H 2)	10,413	Jefferson (G 4)	15,532	Phelps (E 4)	8,452
Blaine (E 3)	1,538	Dodge (H 3)	23,799	Johnson (D 4)	8,662	Pierce (G 2)	10,211
Boone (F 3)	12,127	Douglas (H 3)	247,562	Kearney (F 4)	6,854	Platte (G 3)	20,191
Box Butte (A 2)	10,736	Dundy (C 4)	5,122	Keith (C 3)	8,333	Polk (G 3)	8,748
Boyd (F 2)	6,060	Fillmore (G 4)	11,417	Keyapaha (E 2)	3,235	Red Willow (D 4)	11,951
Brown (E 2)	5,962	Franklin (F 4)	7,740	Kimball (A 3)	3,913	Richardson (J 4)	19,178
Buffalo (E 4)	23,655	Frontier (D 4)	5,417	Knox (G 2)	16,478	Rock (E 2)	3,977
Burt (H 3)	12,546	Furnas (E 4)	10,098	Lancaster (H 4)	100,585	Saline (G 4)	15,010
Butler (G 3)	13,106	Gage (H 4)	29,588	Lincoln (D 3)	25,425	Sarpy (H 3)	10,835
Cass (H 4)	16,992	Garden (B 3)	4,680	Logan (D 3)	1,742	Saunders (H 3)	17,892
Cedar (G 2)	15,126	Garfield (E 3)	3,444	Loup (E 3)	1,777	Scotts Bluff (A 3)	33,917
Chase (C 4)	5,310	Gosper (E 4)	3,687	McPherson (C 3)	1,175	Seward (G 4)	14,167
Cherry (C 2)	9,637	Grant (C 3)	1,327	Madison (G 3)	24,269	Sheridan (B 2)	9,869
Cheyenne (A 3)	9,505	Greeley (F 3)	6,845	Merrick (F 3)	9,354	Sherman (E 3)	7,764
Clay (F 4)	10,445	Hall (F 4)	27,523	Morrill (A 3)	9,436	Sioux (A 2)	4,001
Collins (G 3)	10,627	Hamilton (F 4)	9,982	Nance (F 3)	7,653	Stanton (G 3)	6,887
Cuming (H 3)	13,562	Harlan (E 4)	7,130				

# NEBRASKA—Continued

Thayer (G4) . . .	12,262
Thomas (D3) . . .	1,553
Thurston (H2) . . .	10,243
Valley (E3) . . .	8,163
Washington (H3) . . .	11,578
Wayne (G2) . . .	9,880
Webster (F4) . . .	8,071
Wheeler (F3) . . .	2,170
York (G4) . . .	14,874

## Cities and Villages

[Places marked with an asterisk (\*) were classified as urban in 1940]

Ainsworth (E2) . . .	1,833
Albion (F3) . . .	2,268
Alliance * (B2) . . .	6,253
Alma (E4) . . .	1,272
Ansley (E3) . . .	753
Arapahoe (E4) . . .	1,002
Arnold (D3) . . .	884
Ashland (H3) . . .	1,709
Atkinson (F2) . . .	1,350
Auburn * (J4) . . .	3,639
Aurora (F4) . . .	2,419
Bassett (E2) . . .	931
Battle Creek (G3) . . .	702
Bayard (A3) . . .	2,121
Beatrice * (H4) . . .	10,883
Beaver City (E4) . . .	1,015
Bellevue (J3) . . .	1,184
Benkelman (C4) . . .	1,448
Bertrand (F4) . . .	615
Blair * (H3) . . .	3,289
Bloomfield (G2) . . .	1,467
Bridgeport (A3) . . .	1,520
Broken Bow * (E3) . . .	2,968
Burwell (E3) . . .	1,412
Callaway (E3) . . .	768
Cambridge (D3) . . .	1,084
Central City (F3) . . .	2,460
Chadron * (B2) . . .	4,262
Chappin (B3) . . .	1,093

Clarkson (G3) . . .	829
Clay Center (F4) . . .	715
Columbus * (G3) . . .	7,632
Cozad (E4) . . .	2,156
Crawford (A2) . . .	1,845
Creighton (G2) . . .	1,272
Crete * (H4) . . .	3,038
Culbertson (D4) . . .	815
Curtis (D4) . . .	952
David City (G3) . . .	2,272
Decatur (H2) . . .	905
Deshler (G4) . . .	1,037
Edgar (G4) . . .	708
Elgin (F3) . . .	853
Elm Creek (E4) . . .	730
Emerson (H2) . . .	879
Exeter (G4) . . .	841
Fairbury * (G4) . . .	6,304
Fairfield (F4) . . .	640
Farmont (G4) . . .	810
Falls City * (J4) . . .	6,146
Franklin (F4) . . .	1,272
Fremont * (H3) . . .	11,862
Friend (G4) . . .	1,169
Fullerton (G3) . . .	1,707
Geneva (G4) . . .	1,888
Genoa (G3) . . .	1,231
Gering * (A3) . . .	3,104
Gibbon (F4) . . .	836
Gordon (B2) . . .	1,967
Gothenburg (D4) . . .	2,330
Grand Island * (F4) . . .	19,130
Grant (C4) . . .	897
Hartington (G2) . . .	1,688
Harvard (F4) . . .	704
Hastings * (F4) . . .	15,145
Hay Springs (B2) . . .	819
Hebron (G4) . . .	1,909
Hemingford (A2) . . .	792
Holdrege * (E4) . . .	3,360
Hooper (H3) . . .	802
Howells (G3) . . .	861
Humboldt (J4) . . .	1,386
Humphrey (G3) . . .	841
Imperial (C4) . . .	1,195
Indianola (D4) . . .	800

Kearney * (E4) . . .	9,643
Kimball (A3) . . .	1,725
Laurel (G2) . . .	861
Lexington * (E4) . . .	3,688
Lincoln * (H4) . . .	81,984
Long Pine (E2) . . .	824
Louisville (H4) . . .	977
Loup City (F3) . . .	1,675
Lyons (H3) . . .	1,033
McCook * (D4) . . .	6,212
Madison (G3) . . .	1,812
Millard (G4) . . .	759
Minatare (A3) . . .	1,125
Minden (F4) . . .	1,848
Mitchell (A3) . . .	2,181
Morrill (D4) . . .	877
Mullen (C2) . . .	725
Nebraska City * (J4) . . .	7,339
Neligh (F2) . . .	1,796
Nelson (F4) . . .	963
Newman Grove (G3) . . .	1,036
Norfolk (G2) . . .	10,490
North Bend (H3) . . .	1,003
North Platte * (D3) . . .	12,429
Oakland (H3) . . .	1,380
Ogallala * (C3) . . .	3,159
Omaha * (J3) . . .	223,844
O'Neill * (F2) . . .	2,532
Ord (F3) . . .	2,240
Orleans (E4) . . .	815
Osceola (G3) . . .	1,039
Oshkosh (B3) . . .	910
Osmond (G2) . . .	796
Oxford (E4) . . .	1,141
Palisade (C4) . . .	799
Papillion (H3) . . .	763
Pawnee City (H4) . . .	1,647
Pender (H2) . . .	1,135
Peru (J4) . . .	1,024
Pierce (G2) . . .	1,249
Plainview (G2) . . .	1,411
Plattsmouth * (J3) . . .	4,268
Ponca (H2) . . .	1,003

Ralston (H3) . . .	834
Randolph (G2) . . .	1,094
Ravena (F4) . . .	1,429
Red Cloud (F4) . . .	1,610
Rulo (J4) . . .	808
Rushville (B2) . . .	1,125
St. Edward (G3) . . .	893
St. Paul (F3) . . .	1,571
Sargent (E3) . . .	847
Schuyler * (G3) . . .	2,808
Scottsbluff * (A3) . . .	12,057
Scribner (H3) . . .	904
Seward * (G4) . . .	2,826
Shelton (F4) . . .	983
Sidney * (B3) . . .	3,388
South Sioux City * (H2) . . .	4,556
Spalding (F3) . . .	830
Stanton (G3) . . .	1,526
Stromsburg (G3) . . .	1,127
Stuart (E2) . . .	760
Superior * (F4) . . .	2,650
Sutherland (C3) . . .	862
Sutton (G4) . . .	1,403
Syracuse (H4) . . .	982
Tecumseh (H4) . . .	2,104
Tekamah (H3) . . .	1,925
Tilden (G2) . . .	984
Trenton (C4) . . .	920
Valentine (D2) . . .	2,188
Valley (H3) . . .	985
Wahoo * (H3) . . .	2,648
Wakefield (H2) . . .	961
Walthill (H2) . . .	1,204
Wauneta (C4) . . .	770
Wausa (G2) . . .	732
Wayne * (G2) . . .	2,719
Weeping Water (H4) . . .	1,139
West Point * (H3) . . .	2,510
Wilber (H4) . . .	1,355
Winnebago (H2) . . .	800
Wisner (H3) . . .	1,256
Wood River (F4) . . .	829
Wymore (H4) . . .	2,457
York * (G4) . . .	5,383

---

# *The* HISTORY of NEVADA

---

## Reading Unit No. 27

### NEVADA: THE SAGEBRUSH STATE

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

#### *Interesting Facts Explained*

What makes Nevada a desert, 8-231-32  
When Spanish explorers and American fur trappers came over the sagebrush flats of Nevada, 8-232  
When Nevada became United States territory, 8-232  
When Nevada became a state,

8-232  
The famous Comstock Lode, 8-232  
Why Nevada has very few farms, 8-233  
Nevada, an important mining state, 8-234  
Nevada's Boulder Dam, the new wonder of the West, 8-234

#### *Things to Think About*

How does America show the way in which Nature obeys the law of averages?  
What is the Great Basin?  
On which side did the Nevada troops fight in the Civil War?  
Why has Nevada been called the Battle-born state?

How many farms are there in Nevada?  
What takes people to Reno?  
How did World War I help Nevada?  
Why is it important for our country to open up new and fertile land?

#### *Picture Hunt*

Who was Kit Carson? 8-230  
Why is the mining engineer very

important to Nevada? 8-231

#### *Related Material*

One flag from ocean to ocean, 7-231-39  
When was gold found in the Klondike? 9-393  
What did Columbus hope to find when he set out across the western ocean? 9-392  
Why did Humboldt set to work to learn all he could about lan-

guages and natural sciences? 13-422  
Our country's vanishing fertility, 7-466  
How are opals formed? 9-433  
What was the early story of the political party that followed Alexander Hamilton? 7-193-200

#### *Leisure-time Activities*

PROJECT NO. 1: Read the story of Baron von Humboldt, after whom the largest river in Nevada is named, 13-422-23.  
PROJECT NO. 2: Draw a map of California, Arizona, Utah,

Colorado, Nevada, and Wyoming, to show the area which is served by Boulder Dam; mark on your map the site of Boulder Canyon, where the dam is built.

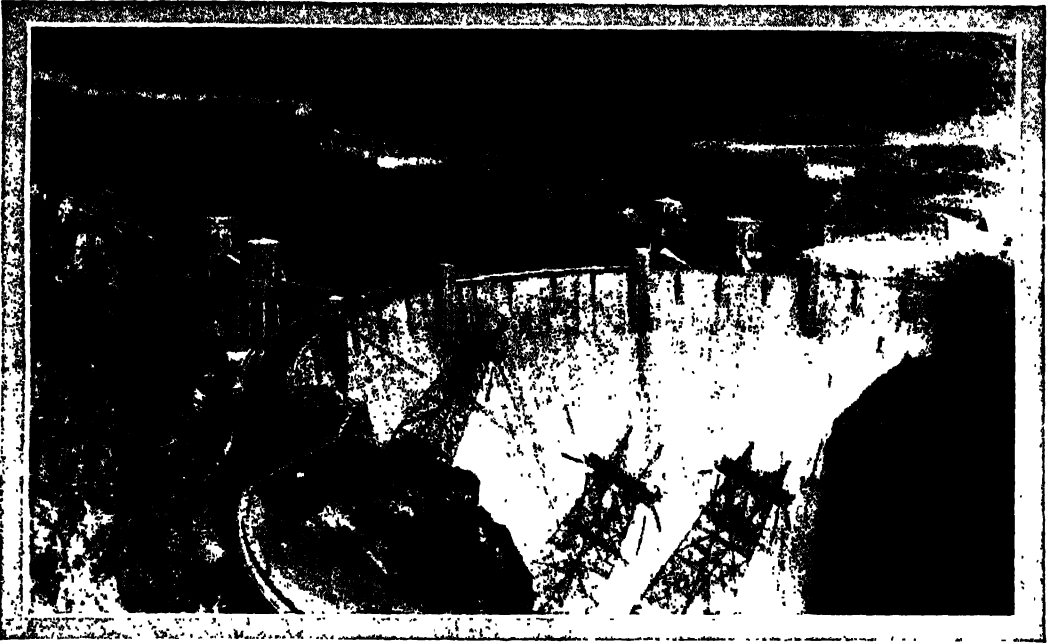


Photo by Nevada State Highway Department

This is the greatest dam in the world. Built across Boulder Canyon, between Nevada and Arizona, Hoover Dam harnesses the Colorado River. It has worked

great changes in Nevada. It has given Las Vegas, Nevada's second largest city, a rapid growth and has caused the birth of Henderson and Boulder City.

## NEVADA: *the* SAGEBRUSH STATE

*The Land of Desert and Startling Mirage Has Come  
into a Substantial Prosperity, with the Promise of a  
Shining Future*

**O**LD Mother Nature, canny and firm, has seen to it that her children shall never get anything for nothing. Often they try to outwit her and perhaps waste their lives in the effort, but no one has ever succeeded for long. For Nature will not allow it. She even obeys the rule herself. We see it working everywhere. The farmers of Iowa own a soil of amazing richness, but they can gather riches from it only by back-breaking toil. Even the man who lives by theft must go to such tremendous pains to get his booty, and must face so many dangers after he has it, that one wonders how he can fail to see that it would be much easier to earn an honest living.

And as we have said, Nature too seems to obey this law of averages. Nowhere is there

a more striking example of the fact than in our own great West. There we have scenery beautiful beyond the wildest dreams of the imagination, among mountains rich in ore and other precious resources. Yet for these glories the whole country pays a tremendous price in barren desert and rocky precipice. For the highest of these beautiful mountains, the Sierra Nevadas (sĭ-ĕr'ă nĕ-vă'dă) in eastern California and western Nevada, have made a desert out of what might be one of the richest and most flourishing parts of our land. What has happened in Nevada, the driest state in the Union, has happened over a wide area. For Nature pampers no one.

The greater part of Nevada lies in what is called the Great Basin, a vast high region 4,000 or 5,000 feet above sea level. As its



## THE HISTORY OF NEVADA



One of the buildings of the University of Nevada, at Reno, is shown above. Although the university is small, its school of mines is one of the best in the

country, as is fitting for an institution only some twenty-five miles from the famous Comstock lode. The mining engineer is very important to Nevada.

name implies, it is shaped like a huge basin—triangular in outline, with the tip reaching into southeastern California and the broadest part lying between the Sierra Nevadas and the Wasatch (wô'săch) Mountains. Scattered through this area are many long and narrow mountain ranges. Rivers are few and flow only after rains. Their water evaporates long before it reaches the boundaries of the basin, so that it never finds its way to the sea. The largest of them, Humboldt (hŭm'-bôlt) River—named after its discoverer, Baron Alexander von Humboldt, one of the world's greatest scientists—makes its way along for some three hundred miles. Actually, if all its twistings and turnings were unraveled, it would be found to flow much farther than that before coming to an end in Humboldt Lake. The area it drains is a land of startling beauty, splashed with every delicate color known to the painter's palette and shimmering in light that turns every mountain into half a dozen fantastic shapes.

### A Land of Salty Lakes

Other rivers besides the Humboldt flow down into this great depression—the Truckee, the Carson, and the Walker among them; and there are many stagnant lakes standing amid the desert sands. Pyramid, Carson, Winnemucca (wĭn'ê-mŭk'ă) and Walker are four of the larger ones, all of them much like Humboldt Lake, though not so big; that is to say, they are all shallow, slightly salty

because of the accumulation of minerals, and change greatly in size according to the season. Sometimes after a heavy rain the whole floor of the Great Basin is covered with lakes. Some of them are mostly mud; one in the northwestern part of the state is over five hundred miles long and nowhere more than a few inches deep. Others dwindle into salt marshes or into perfectly flat, glaring white stretches of salt-covered earth, called playas (plă'yă). With more rainfall the whole region would quickly fill up with water. In Utah there are the marks of an old lake which once was so large that it covered the greater part of Nevada.

### Why Is Nevada Dry?

If there were plenty of water to-day, it would first fill the basin and then would start flowing over the basin's edge at the lowest point. Before long it would cut a gap through the rim, and finally would form a river flowing straight out of the basin. Soon the region behind would again be dry land, well watered and fertile. So, you see, if it were not for those very high Sierra Nevada Mountains to the west, Nevada would be a land of gently rolling hills and prairies, with many long rivers flowing into the Colorado River, in the southern part of the state.

The work of the mountain ranges is simple but terribly effective. The rain-bearing winds in the western part of the United States come from the Pacific Ocean, carrying

## THE HISTORY OF NEVADA

their moisture over western California without much loss except for what they leave on the western slopes of the mountains along the coast. But finally they reach the Sierra Nevada Mountains, on the border line between California and Nevada. This range has many peaks over ten thousand feet high, and the rain-bearing clouds must drop some of their moisture in rising to get over those heights. So drop it they do, bringing greenery and lush vegetation to the western mountain slopes. But on the other side they have no moisture left for Nevada, or for any land to the east for a long way. So Nevada is a desert, a desert in what we might call a condition of arrested development. Because of the lack of rainfall very little weathering has taken place, and the outlines of the land have not been very completely rounded off.

### Nevada's First Settlers

Since the country is a desert, Nevada does not have much of a story until fairly recent times, when she took up irrigation and mining to support herself. The usual Spanish explorers and American fur trappers passed over the barren sagebrush flats from time to time, generally on their way to California. Of course they did nothing whatever about settling down; they did not even establish headquarters in Nevada, but left the land to wandering bands of Indians belonging to the great Shoshonean (shō-shō'nē-ān) group. By the same treaty which gave Utah to the United States after the Mexican War, Nevada became one of our possessions (1848), though for a long time she was considered a county of California. The California gold rush brought settlers in plenty thronging through Nevada, and a

few of them stopped and settled down on the eastern slope of the Sierras, on the Carson River, near Lake Tahoe (tä'hō). Meanwhile Nevada had become (1850) a part of the Territory of Utah—an arrangement which the settlers greatly resented, for they said the Utah government was too far away to provide good laws for them. It was not

until 1861 that Utah was divided, and the western portion was given the name of Nevada.

In 1861 a combination of events made it possible for Nevada to ask for statehood much earlier than would otherwise have been possible. First of all, the discovery of gold in the western part of the state, around Carson City, brought many prospectors and settlers. The great Comstock Lode, discovered in 1859,

proved the greatest strike of silver in the world's history; and in a short time Virginia City was the West's outstanding mining camp. Secondly, the Republican leaders in Congress found themselves in great need of extra votes. Nevada troops had fought for the Union, and the Territory was known to be safely antislavery—which meant Republican. So the Republican leaders made Nevada a state in 1864, with the understanding that her two votes were to be regularly cast for the Republican party. From this circumstance of her having been admitted to the Union during the bitterness of the Civil War, Nevada is sometimes called the Battle-born State.

### How Much Farm Land Has Nevada?

Now most new states to the eastward had devoted themselves to farming—but not so Nevada. Her agriculture and her manufactures are relatively of slight importance even to-day. There are only some 3,500



Photo by State Department of Agriculture

**These sturdy cattle are roaming the range in Nevada. Because they manage to grow healthy and strong on a meager diet of sparse browse plants, ranchmen of the West have found it very profitable to raise them.**

## THE HISTORY OF NEVADA



Above is a picture of an open-cut copper mine in Nevada. It is hard to estimate the size of this great

terraced pit until you see that the wormlike object at the bottom is a train!

farms in the state, with an output of perhaps \$25,000,000 a year. Most of them are very large, averaging some 1,700 acres to a farm, but the greater part of that acreage is useless. No other state has such a small proportion of its land in farms. Most of the valuable crops grow on irrigated land, of which there are some 850,000 acres. As a rule it lies in the few river valleys and along the eastern slope of the Sierra Nevadas. By far the most valuable of Nevada's crops is hay, which of course is fed to live stock. Wheat, potatoes, oats, and barley, plus a few insignificant truck crops, make up the rest of the paying crops. Sheep as a rule bring the state only a fraction of the income that cattle bring. As a matter of fact, cattle account for nearly half of all that portion of the state's income which comes from other sources than her mines. Of other live stock Nevada has very little.

### Where Copper Is Smelted

In manufacturing, Nevada is at present the least important of all the forty-eight states. The main industry is the smelting of copper, which is carried on for the most

part in the sections around McGill and Ely (ē'li), in the east. Reno (rē'nō), famous as a center for those wishing to take advantage of Nevada's easy divorce laws, has railway repair shops and does a very considerable tourist business, for the city is surrounded by magnificent scenery. Carson City, named for the great frontiersman, Kit Carson, has been the capital of Nevada ever since 1861, but except for a few railroad shops, her manufactures are of slight importance.

### Products of Nevada's Mines

In mining, the state's position is a very different one. Nevada's mineral deposits were developed late, and their yield grew quickly under the impulse of World War I. Production of gold, silver, copper, lead, and zinc increased until in the year 1917 they were together valued at \$54,425,000. The 1900 figure for these same five products was about \$5,000,000. Since 1917 there has been a sharp falling off in Nevada's mineral production. Gold is still mined in very considerable quantities but it has yielded to copper--and sometimes to zinc--in the income it brings. In fact, during the last

war it was mined largely as a by-product in the mining of humbler metals. Production in mines yielding gold or silver alone was greatly cut, for what the country needed was copper, zinc, and lead to carry on the war. Before that it had been the region around the famous Comstock Lode, at Virginia City on the eastern slope of the Sierra Nevadas, which had provided most of Nevada's output of gold. Copper is mostly in the eastern part of the state, around Ely. Zinc, silver, and lead, though not so important as they once were, still bring Nevada wealth, with tungsten a newcomer in the list. Mercury, magnesium, barite, and antimony are also mined—and turquoise and opals.

### Bringing Children to School

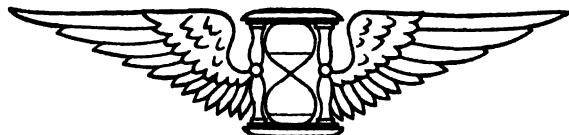
Educationally, Nevada is solidly if not brilliantly established in the middle rank of American states. Of her citizens, 4.4 percent cannot read and write. This is not a large proportion, but Nevada is still far from being at the top. Because of the great distances which often must be covered to bring children to school, Nevada spent more for each child's education in 1932 than did any other state in the Union. She is the most sparsely settled of all the states in the Union.

### Hoover Dam

Now it is interesting that not long ago many people thought of Nevada as a state hopelessly handicapped by various natural conditions—blessed, it is true, with a few mines which were already partly exhausted, but with little else. To-day all that is changed. New developments, in a part of Nevada of which we have said very little, have opened a bright future for the state. It is easy to guess that we are speaking of the region around the Colorado River in the southern part of Nevada. The development is the new wonder of the West—Hoover Dam.

At Boulder Canyon, in the Colorado River, is the loftiest dam in the world. It is 730 feet high—more than twice as high as Niagara Falls—and 1,000 feet long. Behind its enormous concrete mass there now lies a lake 115 miles long, and on an average two miles wide. We say "now lies," because, though the dam was finished in 1935, it was a long, long time, with the Colorado River flowing steadily into this basin, before the water rose to its final height. As for the uses of the dam, they are almost too great to estimate. It protects the lower reaches of the Colorado from ever again suffering from floods. It keeps millions of tons of rich silt from flowing off into the Gulf of California. It irrigates tremendous areas of land—more than two million acres—and generates unbelievable quantities of electric power—1,835,000 horse power—which benefits California, Arizona, Utah, Colorado, Nevada, and even Wyoming. Distant cities and farms are lighted by it, and wheels turned in distant factories. The new supplies of power and the new acreage of irrigated land which this magnificent engineering achievement has given to the state should be of enormous value to Nevada.

And so, they are not empty words when we say that Nevada has a shining future, one of vastly increased prosperity and usefulness. The hope of Nevada is founded, not on any visionary notion of getting something from Nature for nothing, but on the profits of men's labors. Her success will be a lesson to all of us that the only gift of value which Nature ever gives without asking for any return is a willingness to labor unceasingly at the task of improving ourselves and our surroundings. The work of man can make a blooming countryside out of a desert; and neglect can turn the garden spot of the world into a wilderness. Only such stories as that of Nevada can make us realize how completely wise and natural such a system is.



## NEVADA

**AREA:** 110,540 square miles—6th in rank.

**LOCATION:** Nevada, one of the Mountain states, lies between 35° and 42° N. Lat. and between 114° 2' and 120° W. Long. It is bounded on the north by Oregon and Idaho, on the east by Utah and Arizona, and on the southwest and west by California.

**PHYSICAL FEATURES:** Nevada lies almost entirely within the Great Basin region of our country, a large desert section between the Rockies and the Sierra Nevada Mountains. The Great Basin has no outlet to the sea, and its streams disappear in the sands or flow into salty lakes. In the northeast corner of Nevada the streams flow northward from an upland that lies in general east and west; all of them—the Owyhee, Little Owyhee, Salmon, and Bruneau—find their way to the Snake, a branch of the Columbia River, which has its mouth in the Pacific Ocean. In the same way the streams in the southeastern corner of the state flow southward from the highest part of the southern plateau and enter the Colorado River, which forms 150 miles of the state's southeastern boundary. The country it flows through in Nevada is mostly desert, but it does receive the Virgin River (200 m. long), a stream which rises in Utah and crosses a corner of Arizona before it reaches Nevada. Along Nevada's western boundary lies the high range of the Sierra Nevada Mountains, which reach into the state at only one point—along what are known as the Washoe Mountains. On the eastern slopes of the Sierras rise three fairly swift streams, the Truckee (120 m. long), the Walker, and the Carson (about 170 m. long). The Truckee, which rises in Lake Tahoe, had Pyramid Lake (31 m. long) as its natural outlet but is largely used for irrigation purposes. The other two rivers end in the lakes that are named for them.

Across the rest of Nevada's surface small streams wander listlessly and often disappear entirely in dry weather. The largest of them is the Humboldt River (290 m. long), which rises on the southern and western slopes of the water partings in the northeastern corner of the state and flows in general southwest, to end in Humboldt Lake. It is sometimes said that if this river were stretched out straight it would be the longest in the world. In time of rain it overflows into a great depression known as Carson Sink, near the foot of the Washoes. Here the plateau has an elevation of 3,850 ft. It rises gradually toward the east and south, until it reaches a height of 6,000 ft. near the state's eastern border. The whole surface is made up of barren plain and short mountain ranges that lie in general north and south. About half the land is plain and half mountain. Occasionally there are "mud lakes" that dry up and leave hard clay or deposits of dazzling white salts as smooth as a floor. A little northeast of Humboldt Lake the Humboldt Mountains, higher than most of the Basin ranges, gets enough water to serve as an important water parting. Another such range is the Toyabe Mountains in the central part of the state. On their western slopes—and on the eastern slopes of the Shoshones—the Rees River rises to take its way northward. Occasionally it reaches the Humboldt River, but usually it dies away in the sand. East of the Toyabe Mountains lies Smoky Valley, with its salt plain, or "alkali flat." In the northeastern part of the state are the East Humboldt Mountains, the most rugged in Nevada; some of their peaks reach a height of 12,000 ft. Here is the water parting for all the streams that flow westward. The eastern slopes furnish the water for numerous cold springs that form Ruby and Franklin lakes. The state has various hot springs. Nevada's finest lake, Tahoe, lies partly in California, among the high Sierras. It is famous for its beauty. The lowest point in the state is along the Colorado River, where the elevation is only 470 ft. The highest point is East Peak (13,145 ft.

high) in Esmeralda County. The state's average elevation is 5,500 ft. All together there are 739 square miles of water, and large areas of irrigated land, especially in the northern valleys, where most of the agriculture is at present carried on. This will of course change as the waters gathered into Lake Mead, formed by Hoover Dam, are spread over the desert.

**CLIMATE:** Nevada is said to be the driest state in the Union; she has sunshine almost every day in the year. Esmeralda County, in the southwestern part of the state, has only 3 inches of rain a year, and White Pine County, one of the wettest, has only 12. Between April and October, snow falls on the mountains and a little rain elsewhere in the state, but that is about the only moisture. Except on the mountain tops snow never lasts. The mean annual temperature for the state is 49° F., but the southwest is a good deal warmer than the north, and there are wide variations everywhere. At Winnemucca the mean January temperature is 29°, the mean July temperature 71°. The record high there is 108°, the record low -28°. Even in the Carson Valley frosts are common in June. The highest temperature ever recorded in the state is 119°, the lowest -42°. The very dry air makes these extremes quite endurable, and no one ever suffers from sunstroke. West winds are common in winter and spring.

**INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING:** The University of Nevada, at Reno, is the state's chief institution of learning. Connected with it is a normal school.

**CHARITIES AND CORRECTION:** Nevada has an industrial school for male delinquents at Elko, a state hospital for mental diseases at Reno, an orphans' home at Carson City, and a state prison at Carson City. The state inflicts capital punishment by administering a death-dealing gas.

**POLITICAL FACTS:** Nevada's constitution was adopted in 1864, when she became a state, but it has been amended in important ways. The laws are made by a legislature made up of two houses, a Senate and a House of Representatives, both together to number not more than 75 members and the Senate to have not less than a third nor more than a half of that number. Senators are elected for four years and Representatives for two. The legislature meets in alternate years.

The governor is the chief executive; he is assisted by the usual staff of state officers. The governor, the secretary of state, and the attorney-general form the board of state prison commissioners and the board of examiners. They have power to examine all claims against the state.

The judiciary consists of a supreme court, ten district courts, juvenile courts, and courts held by justices of the peace. The supreme court is made up of a chief justice and two associates, all elected for terms of six years. Each district court is presided over by a judge elected for four years.

Voters must be citizens of the United States, must be over twenty-one years of age, and must have lived in the state for six months and in the district or county for thirty days. Each voter must pay an annual poll tax for the maintenance of public roads.

Nevada grants her citizens the right of initiative and referendum, and every public officer in the state is subject to recall from office by the voters of the division from which he was elected. There are severe penalties for election fraud.

The law of Nevada makes divorce very much easier than it is in most of the states, with only a few weeks

## NEVADA—Continued

required to establish residence. Gambling was legalized in 1931.

The capital of Nevada is at Carson City.

**MONUMENTS:** Lehman Caves National Monument, near the eastern border in White Pine County, contains a limestone cave of great interest and beauty and also Mount Wheeler (13,047 ft. high), the second highest point in the state.

Nevada has 5,308,407 acres in national forest.

**GAME AND BIRD RESERVATIONS:** Anaho Island National Wildlife Refuge in Washoe County protects white cormorants, pelicans, and gulls. Boulder Canyon Refuge, on a government reclamation project in Clark County—and extending into Arizona—protects bighorn sheep and various kinds of birds. The Charles Sheldon Antelope Range in Washoe and Humboldt counties—and extending into Oregon—protects antelope and mule deer, sage hens, and waterfowl. The Desert Game Range in Clark and Lincoln counties, Fallon Refuge, on a government reclamation project in Churchill County, Railroad Valley Refuge in Nye County, Ruby Lake Refuge in Elko and White Pine counties, and Winnemucca Refuge in Pershing and Washoe counties, all protect birds of many sorts. In the Sheldon National Antelope Refuge in Washoe County antelope and mule deer and birds find safety.

**NAME:** Nevada's name was first suggested in 1858, when there was a project to form a new territory—"Sierra Nevada"—out of the western part of Utah. When the territory was finally organized in 1861 it was named "Nevada," and the people kept that name when they gained statehood. The title doubtless came from the name of the Sierra Nevada Mountains along the state's western border—they in turn had been named for a range of mountains in Spain. The word "nevada" is a Spanish adjective meaning "snow-covered" or "white as snow." It may also be a noun, in which case it means "snowfall."

**NICKNAMES:** Nevada is sometimes called the Battle-born State because it was admitted to the Union during the Civil War. It is called the Mining State and the Silver State in recognition of its important mining

industry, which was of great service to the Northern cause at the time of the Civil War. The great quantities of sagebrush growing on the deserts of Nevada have given the state the name of the Sage State or the Sagebrush State, and the large numbers of sage hens have led people to call her the Sage Hen State.

The people of Nevada are called Sage Hens, Diggers, and Miners.

**STATE FLOWER:** Sagebrush (*Artemisia tridentata*); adopted by the legislature in 1917.

**STATE SONG:** "Home Means Nevada," with words and music by Bertha Raffetto; officially adopted in 1933.

**STATE FLAG:** A field of solid cobalt blue in the upper left quarter of which are two sprays of sagebrush sheltering a five-pointed silver star. The word "Nevada" appears within the sprays. The words "Battle-born" appear in black capital letters on a scroll of golden yellow above the wreath.

**STATE MOTTO:** "All for Our Country," a phrase recommended to be placed on the state seal at the time when the seal was adopted.

**STATE BIRD:** Mountain bluebird; chosen by a vote of the citizens and school children in 1930 and 1931.

**INTERESTING FACTS:** Nevada observes New Year's Day, Lincoln's Birthday, Washington's Birthday, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Columbus Day, Election Day, Armistice Day, Thanksgiving Day, Christmas Day, and Admission Day on October 31.

Nevada has the following Indian reservations: Fallon, Fort McDermitt, Pyramid, Summit Lake, and Walker River. Besides this there are Indians living on lands that are not reserved. Most of the Nevada Indians are members of the Paiute, Shoshone, and Washo tribes.

The famous Hoover Dam, built by the federal government across the Colorado River near Las Vegas, Nevada, has been described on other pages. It is estimated that it will reclaim 160,000 acres of fertile desert soil in Nevada.

<b>Population of state, 1940, 110,247</b>	Lander (D3)	1,745	Washoe (B2)	32,476	Fallon (C3)	1,911
<b>Counties</b>	Lincoln (G5)	4,130	White Pine (G3)	12,377	Las Vegas * (F6)	8,422
Churchill (C3)	Lyon <sup>1</sup> (B3)	4,076	<b>Cities and Towns</b>		Lovelock (C2)	1,294
Clark (F6)			[Places marked with an asterisk (*) were clas- sified as urban in 1940 and 1930]		Reno * (B3)	21,317
Douglas (B4)	Mineral <sup>1</sup> (C4)	2,342			Sparks * (B2)	5,318
Elko (F1)	Nye (E4)	3,606			Wells (G1)	830
Esmeralda (D5)	Ormsby (B3)	3,209	Carlin (E2)	832	Winnemucca (D2)	2,485
Eureka (E3)	Pershing (C2)	2,713	Carson City (B3)	2,478	Yerington (B4)	964
Humboldt (C1)	Storey (B3)	1,216	Elko * (F2)	4,094		
			Ely * (G3)	4,140		

<sup>1</sup> Part of Mineral annexed to Lyon in 1933.

---

# ***The HISTORY of NEW HAMPSHIRE***

---

## **Reading Unit No. 28**

---

### **NEW HAMPSHIRE: THE GRANITE STATE**

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

#### ***Interesting Facts Explained***

The majestic mountains of New Hampshire, 8-236  
Where entertaining visitors is an important industry, 8-237  
How New Hampshire men became notable as seamen and shipbuilders, 8-238  
The first colonists to adopt a constitution of their own, 8-

238  
What saved New England in her gravest industrial crisis, 8-239  
What brought back prosperity to "the nation's workshop," 8-241  
Where Daniel Webster was born, 8-242

#### ***Things to Think About***

How did the settlers of New Hampshire first earn their living?  
What trouble did the early settlers of New Hampshire have with the Indians?  
What was the "Industrial Revolution"?

Which industries in New Hampshire have suffered severely in recent years?  
Why did the New Hampshire mills close?  
What change has taken place in the New Hampshire farms?

#### ***Related Material***

How the colonies were born, 7-121-33  
What was the part of the Industrial Revolution in America? 7-217  
How did the Industrial Revolution change life in England? 6-83-95

Why is Daniel Webster thought of as the greatest of our orators? 12-520-21  
What materials were used for writing before paper was invented? 9-273-74  
The tragedy of our abandoned farms, 7-466

#### ***Practical Applications***

What helped New Hampshire when she found her most important industries dying? 8-229

How did the business men of Manchester overcome the tragedy of the closing of the Amoskeag mills? 8-240-41

#### ***Leisure-time Activities***

PROJECT NO. 1: Read Nathaniel Hawthorne's "The Great Stone Face."

PROJECT NO. 2: Read Daniel Webster's "Reply to Hayne."



Photo courtesy of United States Forest Service

**New Hampshire in wintertime—a land of ice and snow and cloud-wrapped mountain peaks. On her rugged mountainsides skiers from all over the Northeast**

**have found the conditions that are ideally suited to their swift sport. Above is a picture of Tuckerman Ravine, near Mount Washington.**

### **NEW HAMPSHIRE: *the* GRANITE STATE**

#### ***How the Land of the White Mountains Built Up Its Great Industries and Weathered a Serious Crisis***

**C**ARVED in the side of the cliffs that overlook Franconia (fräng-kō'nĭ-ă) Notch in the White Mountains is a majestic face. It can be seen only in profile, and then only from afar, for its mighty features lose all human likeness for anyone near at hand. With tireless calm it surveys the valley, and has surveyed it so for countless years. Stories have grown up around it, and thousands of people come to look at it, for one of our greatest writers has made it famous in his tale of "The Great Stone Face." Not everyone can see in it the beauty that Hawthorne saw, but everyone feels its majesty—"awful but benignant, as if a mighty angel were sitting among the hills, and enrobing himself in a cloud vesture of gold and purple." "The Great Stone Face . . . was a work of Nature in her mood of majestic playfulness, formed on the perpendicular side of a moun-

tain by some immense rocks . . . It seemed as if an enormous giant, or a Titan, had sculptured his own likeness on the precipice. There was the broad arch of the forehead; . . . the nose, with its long bridge; and the vast lips, which, if they could have spoken, would have rolled their thunder accents from one end of the valley to the other." "All the features were noble, and the expression was at once grand and sweet, as if it were the glow of a vast, warm heart, that embraced all mankind in its affections, and had room for more."

But majestic as it may be, the Old Man of the Mountains is no more majestic than the mountains round it. Here in northern New Hampshire they are massed, all the towering summits of the Presidential Range, the Franconia Range, and the Carter-Moriah (mō-ri-ă) Range. Mount Washington is the high-



## THE HISTORY OF NEW HAMPSHIRE

est (6,288 ft.), but eleven others measure over 5,000 feet. Their masses are superb, their flanks adorned with forests, romantic valleys, deep ravines, and hundreds of tumbling streams and waterfalls.

With all this scenic beauty and her cool summer weather it is not strange that New Hampshire should be one of our most popular vacation states. Colonies of writers, artists, and sportsmen are scattered among her mountains and on the shores of her many lakes and rivers. Fine paved highways lead one in every direction. The state is like a beautiful park – and the entertainment of visitors is one of the chief industries.

But the sturdy folk of the Granite State have earned their bread in a number of other ways in the course of their long history. At first they got it by fishing and by trading for furs with the Indians. In fact the first settlement (1623) was made by a trading company at Little Harbor, now a part of the town of Rye. The coast had already been explored by various men—Pring (1603), Champlain (shāmp-lān'), and Captain John Smith—and, as we have told in our story of Maine, the Council for New England had been given a grant of the land (1620), and had transferred it (1622) to John Mason and Sir Ferdinando Gorges (gór'jēs), as part of the Province of Maine. In 1629 John Mason was given sole right to the territory between the Merrimac and the

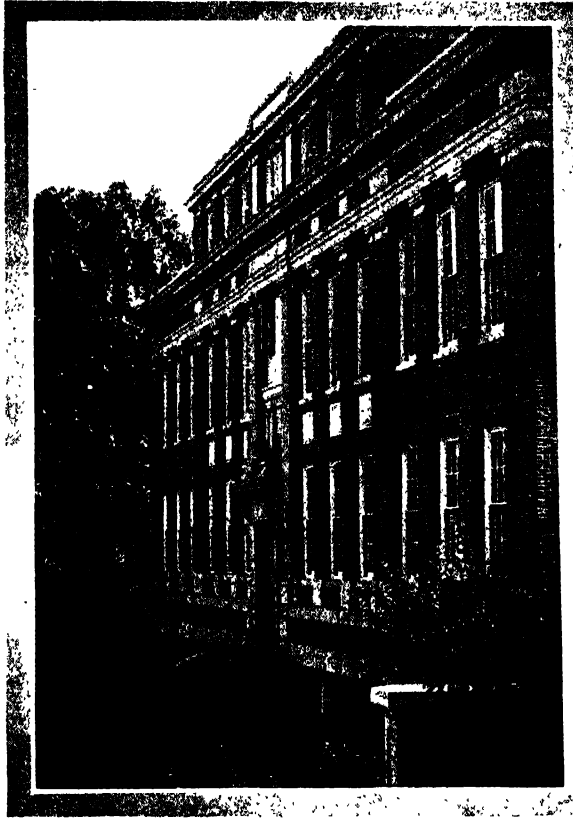
Piscataqua (pĭs'ká-tó'kwá), and named it New Hampshire, in honor of the county of Hampshire in England.

### Early Land Squabbles

Many other conflicting grants were made, and well-nigh endless were the quarrels that resulted. About the middle of the century Massachusetts extended her territory to take in the three settlements that by that time had found a foothold in New Hampshire territory—Dover (about 1623), Strawberry Banke (1630), and Exeter (1638). Strawberry Banke later became Portsmouth. It was not till 1679 that an heir of Mason made such a violent protest that New Hampshire became a separate province again.

Meanwhile the handful of settlers had been clearing and tilling the soil, which is fertile in the valleys of the Merrimac and

Connecticut rivers and will raise fairly good crops in the southeastern part of the state, where the country is lowest. Elsewhere the land is mountainous or, like the rest of New England, is covered by a stony clay that the glacier left. In our story of Maine you may read how the rocks of all New England have been formed by the hand of time, New Hampshire, with the rest. In fact, in the southern part of the state is Mount Monadnock (mō-nād'nōk), the very summit from which mountains of its type take their name. The ranges



This is the principal engineering building of the University of New Hampshire. Like the rest of the New England states, New Hampshire has never neglected to educate her children, and is well supplied with schools and colleges.

## THE HISTORY OF NEW HAMPSHIRE



Photo by Dunlap

Daniel Webster was born in this quaint old house in Salisbury, New Hampshire. The boy who was to become America's most famous orator must often have dipped

water out of the old well in the foreground, for there is no doubt that it served as the main water supply of the Webster family.

farther north have been folded and upheaved into their present shape, and carved by streams as well. The state is indebted to the glacier for its fine swift rivers and its six hundred beautiful lakes. Lake Winnepesaukee (wīn'ê-pê-sô'kê) is the largest, and with its 274 little islands is one of the most picturesque.

### The Call of the Sea

It was hard work for those first settlers to make the stubborn earth yield them a livelihood, and along the eighteen miles of shore the sea was always calling—a sound that is very sweet in the ears of Englishmen. More and more men were lured to follow it, and others who stayed at home set themselves to the building of boats that should be trim and swift and safe for their friends to sail in. In this way New Hampshire men became notable seamen and shipbuilders. Portsmouth has had a navy yard ever since the Revolution, and during World War I she was the chief center for building submarines.

Of course, like most of the colonists, the people of New Hampshire had serious trouble with the Indians, who were bitter and unhappy at being driven from their land. The

chief enemy was the Pennacooks, who had formed a confederacy of the tribes in the southern part of the state. North of them was a branch of the Abnakis (ăb-na'kī), a tribe centered in Maine. All these Indians belonged to the great Algonquian (ăl-gŏn'-kī-ăn) group, whom we have described in our story of Wisconsin. It was a good many decades before the Indians were subdued.

### A Proud Spirit of Rebellion

As might be expected, the hardy race that had settled the Granite State were quick to resent what they took to be the encroachment of Great Britain. As early as January, 1776, they adopted a constitution of their own—the first rebelling colony to do so. They had been the first to take up arms against the mother country, and soon won fame for their daring in the war that followed. The famous John Stark fought under a New Hampshire commission. The state was the ninth to ratify the constitution of the United States (June, 1788). Later New Hampshire merchants suffered heavily from the Embargo Act (1807), which tied up United States shipping.

But as time went by, the sea was to yield place to the rivers in the lives of New Hamp-

## THE HISTORY OF NEW HAMPSHIRE

shire folk. The late eighteenth century saw the coming of the machines—what historians always refer to as the Industrial Revolution. A country where farming paid as poorly as it did in New Hampshire would be sure to turn to this new source of wealth. Now the rivers came into their own and were set to work turning factory wheels. In 1804 the manufacture of cotton goods was begun, and for over a century the making of textiles was New Hampshire's chief manufacturing industry.

But then the industry fell ill, and along with the rest of New England New Hampshire began to see her trade slip gradually away. Textile mills were springing up in the South, where cotton and coal were to be had almost at the factory door. Labor there was cheap and electric power was plentiful. One by one textile mills over all New England began to close down. People were thrown out of work, and a good many could find no other work to do.

### New England's Ailing Industries

For a time during World War I and after, things improved, but in 1923 they started once more on the down grade—and at terrible speed. In the next ten years New England lost over 60 percent of her cotton mills. In 1904 she had turned out 51 percent of the country's cotton goods. In 1933 she was manufacturing only 20 percent of the national output. And it was not in textiles alone that she was hard hit. Her famous boot and shoe industry was gradually meeting heavier and heavier competition from factories springing up in Missouri, where hides

and coal were close at hand. Still other industries began to slip away to newer manufacturing centers, such as New York. The railroads gave rate preferences to other eastern ports, and New England shipping declined. As a result that single unhappy ten years following 1923 saw a falling off of 56

percent in the number of New England's wage earners. And wages dropped 70 percent. No section can stand such a state of affairs for very long.

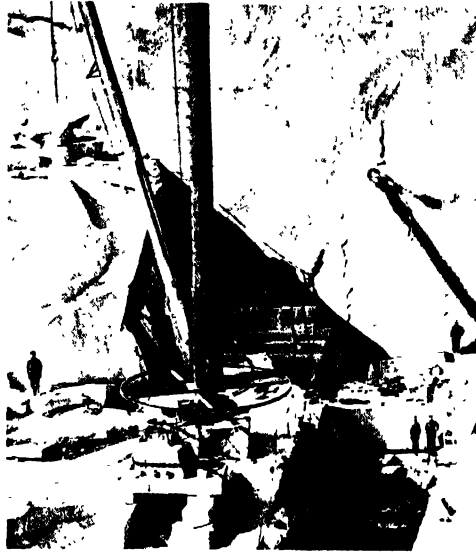
Now if you have read our stories of the various New England states you will have learned that no Yankee ever gave up a fight without a struggle. The famous Yankee grit was one of the most important foundation stones in the building of our nation. Time and again New England has seen her outstanding industries sicken and die. But she has always found

new ones. For you will remember that the Yankee not only has courage, he has ingenuity as well. He knows how to invent and contrive—and he has a great respect for knowledge.

### Meeting the Crisis

It was all these qualities that saved New England in this, her gravest crisis. Her leaders saw the need for united action, and drew up plans for organizing the region as a unit for coöperative measures. And they went earnestly to work to see what was wrong.

Of course there were all the unfavorable conditions we have already mentioned, but there were other troubles as well. Ever since the beginning of the twentieth century a



by Kimball

Here you see one of the deep granite quarries which have given New Hampshire the name of the "Granite State." This valuable rock, which was pushed up into the earth's crust while still in a molten state, is used wherever great strength and durability are needed.

## THE HISTORY OF NEW HAMPSHIRE

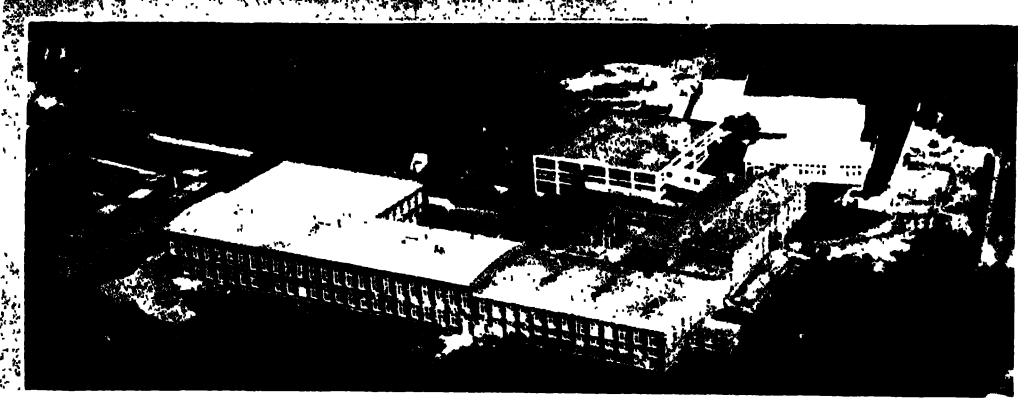


Photo by Putnam

This is a view of one of New Hampshire's paper mills, where, by an astonishingly swift process, wood pulp

is squeezed into paper. Paper making is one of New Hampshire's newer industries.

great change had been under way in the nation's industry. It has been called the Second Industrial Revolution, perhaps equal in importance to the great Industrial Revolution of the early nineteenth century, when machines took over much of the work of human hands. Certainly the later revolution affected nearly every phase of our national life, and ushered in our magnificent and bewildering twentieth century. This second great chapter in industrial development might be called the age of mass production. We have described it on other pages of these books.

### Causes of the Slump

Now New England, as you will remember, had been the country's workshop ever since earliest days. In the field of manufacture she had always been supreme. Perhaps because she had long set the standard in these matters she had grown to feel that her position was safe, no matter what happened. At any rate, she was slow to adopt the new principles of factory management, necessary for mass production, and she did not like the new methods of advertising. Her long supremacy and her long prosperity had made her conservative, and the bustling new ways seemed a little vulgar to her. The result was that she let much of her machinery get out of date, her output per worker fell behind the average for the country, and she could no longer meet the price level of factories organized for mass

production. So her customers drifted away. Her workers too grew dissatisfied, and there were expensive labor troubles.

### A Famous New England Mill

All this will explain why one mill after another had to close down. The crowning tragedy came when the great Amoskeag (*ăm'ūs-kĕg'*) mills at Manchester, New Hampshire, let their fires die out and their wheels come to a standstill (1935). They had been the largest cotton mills in the world, the very crown of New England's manufactures for well over a century. Twenty thousand people had gone daily to earn a living in those time-worn red brick buildings that stretch for a mile along both sides of the Merrimack River at Amoskeag Falls. There had been found the water power to turn the first machinery, away back in 1805. People hoped it would not be long before the wheels would turn again, but the next year the corporation that owned the mills went into bankruptcy. Fifteen hundred mill families were on relief—in a city of only seventy thousand inhabitants. The outlook for Manchester seemed pretty dreary.

### Ingenuity Finds a Way

But the spirit of Bunker Hill will never take defeat. In two months a group of Manchester's business men had bought the mills, intending to lease them by sections for the manufacture of a variety of products. The

## THE HISTORY OF NEW HAMPSHIRE



New Hampshire is rich in charming scenes like this one. Its green valleys shut away between rugged

mountain walls, are full of peace and quiet beauty, a haven of rest for tired city dwellers.

state had promised to help if necessary. Before the year was out four units were already humming again. Manchester knew that her future was secure, and began to look forward to a greater prosperity than she had ever known before. She is New Hampshire's leading manufacturing city and the industrial center of northern New England, with a great many kinds of manufactures, among them a large boot and shoe industry, which ranks next to textiles among the state's industries.

What had been happening in Manchester had been happening everywhere in New England. New industries of many different sorts—metal, rubber, rayon, glass—had been brought in to replace the old ones, industries of a high type, in which the skilled labor which New England is so justly proud of would be of more importance than the raw materials, which had to be shipped in. As the country recovered from the great industrial depression even the cotton mills began to find that they had more orders than they could fill, and a good many cities woke up to the fact that all their mills were whirring merrily. New methods, new management, new industries—in short, a new point of view—were bringing back prosperity to “the nation's workshop.”

During World War II New England was one of the country's busiest sources of supply.

As for New Hampshire, she has had a generous share in the revival. A number of other cities besides Manchester, all of them on rivers, can boast large factories—Nashua (nāsh'û-ā) with its great textile mills; Concord, the capital, with a varied output; Berlin on the Androscoggin (ān'drōs-kōg'in), which obligingly carries down logs to the town's big wood-pulp and paper mills; and Portsmouth, the state's only port. Berlin also has a lively winter carnival and is a center for winter sports; for New Hampshire winters, though very cold, are beginning to attract pleasure seekers much as the summers do. Franklin has large hosiery mills; Hinsdale manufactures lawn mowers; and numerous smaller places have a thriving industry of one kind or another.

The making of paper and wood pulp has come to rank third in New Hampshire's manufacturing industries, and the output of lumber and timber is important. Like so many other states New Hampshire cut most of the valuable forests that originally covered the state, but many former farms, abandoned because of their poor yield, have gone back

---

## THE HISTORY OF NEW HAMPSHIRE

to woodland, until now more than two-thirds of the land area is covered with trees.

It was with the opening up of the rich farming lands in the states to westward that New Hampshire began to lose her farmers. Theirs was the true pioneer spirit. With a courage as enduring as the granite of their native state they helped settle the great West and build the nation that we know to-day. In 1889 so many farms had been abandoned for richer lands that the state took measures to attract vacation folk to occupy them as summer homes. It was not long till the summer industry was well under way.

### What the Farmer Raises

All this tended to change the character of the farms that were left. The growing of grain gave way to dairying, the raising of fruit and vegetables, and the production of poultry and eggs. To-day the chief crop is hay, with corn, potatoes, oats, apples, and peaches following. Cattle, sheep, and potatoes come mostly from the upland region north and west of the mountains. Other products are raised south of the mountains, especially in the river valleys.

Though New Hampshire is called the Granite State she has had to yield to other states in the quantity of her output of granite. She still quarries it, and is justly proud of the fine quality of her stone. Feldspar, used in making pottery, and mica are among her most important mineral products, and she makes whetstones, grindstones, and similar articles. Sand and gravel bring a very good return, and her beryllium ore is important to the entire nation.

New Hampshire's fisheries have also fallen off, though lobster still remains a valuable catch. But her people are resourceful, as of old. They are stocking their streams with fish and preserving the birds and big game in their forests to attract the sportsman. Millions of dollars have been spent in building up the summer industry.

New Hampshire's rivers never fail her.

Four of the great streams of New England rise within her borders, and many others, fed by the heavy rainfall in the mountains, rush seaward with a swift, leaping current. Their water power has brought the state great wealth in the century that is passed, and in the age of electric power which we are now entering, they will be harnessed to manufacture electricity for cities near and far.

### The Home of Daniel Webster

It is hardly necessary to say that the hardy, intelligent race of English and Scotch-Irish who settled New Hampshire appreciated education. As early as 1633 they were establishing schools, which they continued to support throughout the whole colonial period. Phillips Exeter Academy (1781), a famous boys' preparatory school, was the first of a number of well-known endowed institutions, and Dartmouth College (1769), at Hanover, is one of the best-known men's colleges in the country. Among its famous graduates was Daniel Webster, who with Franklin Pierce was a native of New Hampshire. The little town of Peterboro was one of the first in the country to have a free public library supported entirely by taxation. To-day it boasts of the MacDowell Colony, established for creative artists by the widow of the great composer.

### Granite Lasts Forever

New Hampshire still maintains a high educational standard, and is doing her best to bring learning to the large number of French Canadians and other foreigners who have been coming into the state during the last half century. For as the old stock left the farms and went west, these new people came to work in the mills. They are hard-working and earnest, and as they have opportunity and education will learn to carry on the traditions of courage and endurance and enterprise which are the birthright of every son and daughter of the famous Granite State.

## NEW HAMPSHIRE

**AREA:** 9,304 square miles—43rd in rank.

**LOCATION:** New Hampshire, one of the New England states, lies between 42° 40' and 45° 18' 23" N. Lat., and between 70° 37' and 72° 37' W. Long. It is bounded on the north by Quebec, a province of Canada; on the east by Maine and the Atlantic Ocean; on the south and southeast by Massachusetts; and on the west and northwest by Vermont and Quebec.

**PHYSICAL FEATURES:** New Hampshire has the finest mountain scenery in the Northeastern United States. The White Mountains, broken up into a number of different ranges, rise in the north-central part of the state and extend in general southwest. The highest point is Mount Washington, which rises 6,288 ft. above sea level in the Presidential Range; but nine other peaks, also in the Presidential Range, are over 5,000 ft. high. Among them Adams, Jefferson, and Sam Adams are the highest. Southwest of the Presidential Range is the Franconia Range, with Crawford's Notch, 2,000 ft. deep, between them. East of the Presidential Range is the Carter-Moriah Range, with Carter Dome (4,860 ft.) as its highest point. Mount Lafayette (5,249 ft.) is the highest point on the Franconia Range. Between the Franconia and the Pemigawasset ranges is Franconia Notch, with the famous Great Stone Face overlooking it from Profile Mountain.

Through Crawford's Notch flow the Saco (104 m. long) and the Ammonoosuc (100 m. long). The first finds its way across the state of Maine to the Atlantic. The second joins the Coos and so makes its way to the Connecticut (407 m. long), which rises in the northern part of the state and along its western low-water line forms the boundary between Vermont and New Hampshire. Before it leaves the state to enter Massachusetts the Connecticut receives, through various streams, all the drainage from the western watershed of the White Mountains. The divide extends from the northeast corner of the state to the southwest corner. On the eastern side of the mountains the streams all make their way to the Atlantic Ocean. The most important of them are the Merrimack (110 m. long), which leaves New Hampshire to turn the mills of Massachusetts; the Saco; and the Androscoggin (171 m. long), another stream that flows through Maine. The Salmon Falls River forms part of the boundary line between Maine and New Hampshire, and enters the Piscataqua, which is really a short tidal estuary. Here in the southeast, where New Hampshire has 18 miles of seacoast, the land is a low plain, very different from the rugged uplands of central New Hampshire. West of these lowlands, in the southern part of the state, lies a low plateau. In the extreme north the state is covered with wide rolling valleys marked off by low ridges. The average elevation of the state is 1,000 ft. New Hampshire boasts some six hundred lakes and ponds, and has fine water power in her streams. All together she has 310 square miles of water, and no irrigated land. Some three-fourths of her surface is forested.

**CLIMATE:** New Hampshire has the long, cold winters of the Northern United States, but the summers are fine and the climate generally healthful. The mean Jan. temperature at Concord is 22° F.; the mean July temperature, 68°. The record high is 102°; the record low, -35°. The climate is milder along the seacoast than it is in the mountains. At moderate elevations inland the mean annual temperature is about 42°. The mean rainfall for the state is about 40 in. Snows are deep on the mountains and in the north. The northwest winds prevail.

**INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING:** Dartmouth College, at Hanover; St. Anselm's College, at Manchester; Mount Saint Mary College for women at Hooksett; Rivier College for women at Nashua, and

the University of New Hampshire at Durham. There are state teachers' colleges at Plymouth and Keene.

**CHARITIES AND CORRECTION:** The state maintains a hospital for the insane at Concord, a school for feeble-minded children at Laconia, an industrial school at Manchester, a soldiers' home at Tilton, a tuberculosis sanatorium at Glencliff, and a state prison at Concord. New Hampshire inflicts capital punishment by hanging.

**POLITICAL FACTS:** New Hampshire is governed under the constitution of 1783, which has been frequently amended. The law-making branch is made up of the Senate and the House of Representatives, together known as the General Court. It meets in alternate years on the first Wednesday in January. The Senate is made up of one member from each one of the 24 senatorial districts. The House is made up of members representing the towns and the wards of cities. Members of the General Court are elected for two years. The chief executive is the governor, who is elected every other year by a plurality vote. He must be at least thirty years of age and have lived in the state for seven years before his candidacy.

The state judiciary is made up of a supreme court, a superior court, and inferior courts. The first two are composed of a chief justice and four associates, all appointed by the governor for indefinite terms. The justices of the peace serve for five years.

The governor is advised by five councilors elected every other year. The secretary, treasurer, and commissary-general are chosen by joint ballot of the Senate and House.

To vote it is necessary to be a citizen of the United States, to be over 21 years old, to have resided six months inside the confines of the state and to be able to read the constitution in English and to write. The voter is exempted from the last two requirements if some physical disability makes it impossible for him or her to meet them.

The General Court of 1913 provided for the election of United States Senators by the people, and for the election by direct vote of delegates to the national nominating conventions.

In each county the treasurer, register of probate, solicitor, sheriff, and register of deeds are elected. The cities under the state law elect a mayor, a board of aldermen, and a common council.

New Hampshire has a child-labor law relating to all children under 14 and to illiterates under 16.

The capital of New Hampshire is at Concord.

**PARKS:** Waterville Notch, with 6,000 acres of primeval spruce, was in 1928 added to the White Mountain National Forest, which now covers 435,000 acres. The Great Stone Face in Profile Notch was also bought for a state park. The White Mountain National Forest Reservation was established in 1911 to protect the headwaters of many streams. All together New Hampshire has 806,323 acres of national forest.

**NAME:** Captain John Mason gave New Hampshire its name when he received a grant of the territory in 1629. Because he had been governor of Portsmouth, in Hampshire, England, he named his new domain in honor of his former home. The word "Hampshire" comes from an Anglo-Saxon word "Ham-tunscir." The first syllable means "home," "house," or "dwelling"; the second syllable was a word applied to a garden, field, or yard; and the last syllable was a word applied to a district, province, or shire—the original form of the modern word "shire."

**NICKNAMES:** New Hampshire is called the Granite State from the extensive granite quarries she possesses

## NEW HAMPSHIRE—Continued

She is called the Mother of Rivers because five of the important rivers of New England rise among her hills. From the White Mountains, which lie within her boundaries, she takes her name of the White Mountain State.

Because they live in the Granite State, the people of New Hampshire are called the Granite Boys.

**STATE FLOWER:** Purple lilac (*Syringa vulgaris*); adopted in 1919.

**STATE SONG:** "Old New Hampshire," with words by John F. Holmes and music by Maurice Hoffman, has been adopted by the Daughters of the American Revolution and the Confederate Music Clubs of New Hampshire.

**STATE FLAG:** A blue field, with a representation of the state seal in the center surrounded by a wreath of laurel leaves with nine stars interspersed; adopted in 1909, though it has been in use since 1784.

**STATE BIRD:** Purple finch; adopted in 1927 by the New Hampshire Federation of Women's Clubs.

**INTERESTING FACTS:** New Hampshire observes New Year's Day, Washington's Birthday, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Columbus Day, Election Day, Armistice Day, Thanksgiving Day, Christmas Day, and Fast Day usually on the last Thursday in April.

A certain number of Pennacook Indians live in New Hampshire.

<b>Population of state, 1940, 491,524</b>	Rockingham (G8)	58,142	Concord (G7)	27,171	Littleton town * (F4)	4,571
<b>Counties</b>			Derry town * (H8)	5,400	Manchester (G8)	77,685
Belknap (G6)	Strafford (G6)	43,553	Dover (J7)	14,990	Milford town * (G8)	3,927
Carroll (G5)	Sullivan (E7)	25,442	Exeter town * (J8)	5,398	Nashua (G8)	32,927
Cheshire (E8)	<b>Cities and Urban Towns</b>		Franklin (G6)	6,749	Newport town * (E6)	5,304
Cobb (C3)	* Classified as urban under special rule		Keene (E8)	13,832	Portsmouth (J7)	14,821
Grafton (F5)	Berlin (H3)	19,084	Laconia (G6)	13,484	Rochester (J7)	12,012
Hillsborough (F8)	Claremont town * (D6)	12,144	Lebanon town * (E6)	7,590	Somersworth (J7)	6,136
Merrimack (F7)						



---

# *The* HISTORY of NEW JERSEY ---

## Reading Unit No. 29

### NEW JERSEY: THE GARDEN STATE

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

#### *Interesting Facts Explained*

Why New Jersey is one of our most important states, 8-244  
Her dairying industry, 8-245  
Why New Jersey deserves her reputation as the Garden State, 8-245  
Manufacturing, New Jersey's chief occupation, 8-247  
Where our finest china is made, 8-247

Newark airport, the busiest in the world, 8-249  
The Dutch and Swedes in New Jersey, 8-250  
How New Jersey got its name, 8-250-51  
When Trenton was the national capital, 8-251  
When Princeton University was established, 8-251

#### *Things to Think About*

How popular are New Jersey's shore resorts?  
Why are there few good harbors along the New Jersey coast?  
What kinds of fish are caught in New Jersey?  
What is much of the fine sand of

southwestern New Jersey used for?  
What makes Newark a very important center?  
Which Indian tribes lived in New Jersey?  
What were the "Seven Sisters"?

#### *Related Material*

Colonial life in America, 7-145-55  
Why was President Cleveland called "a man four-square"? 7-289  
What was Henry Hudson looking for on his voyages of exploration? 13-475-77  
Where is "Lenox" china made?

12 61  
How did scientists start a new blueberry industry? 9-159  
How is silk thread made? 9-42-44  
What famous airplane flights were made in the years following World War I? 10-320-25

#### *Practical Applications*

How do commuters travel from New Jersey to New York? 8-248

How does New Jersey care for the education of her young people? 8-251

#### *Leisure-time Activities*

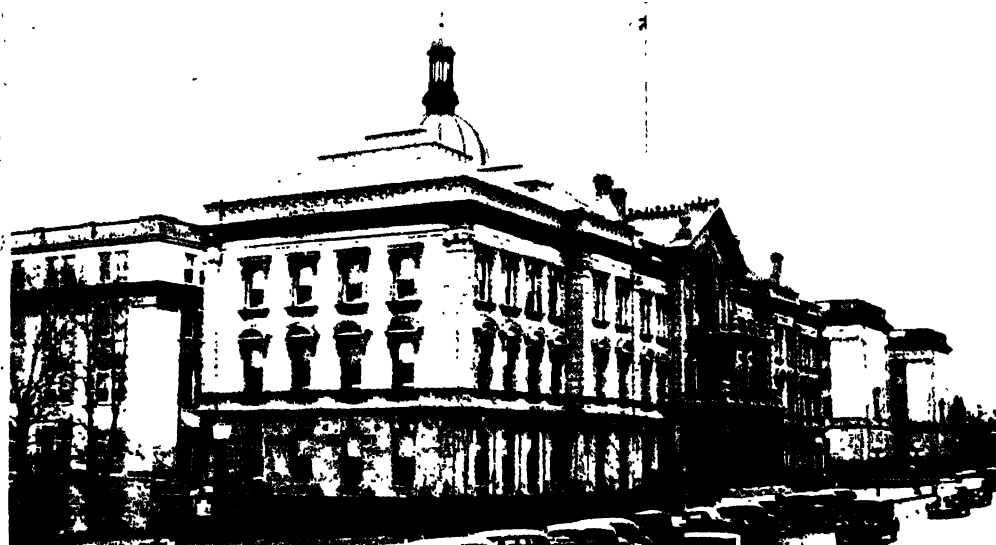
PROJECT NO. 1: Make a model of an airport, and place on it one or two model airplanes, 10-321.

PROJECT NO. 2: Find out what airplane markings mean, 10-327.

---

## THE HISTORY OF NEW JERSEY

---



Since 1790 New Jersey's state capital has been at Trenton, which once was proposed as the seat of our national government. Built at the head of navigation

on the Delaware River, Trenton is famous for its steel cables, its rubber manufactures, and its porcelain. Above is the capitol building.

### NEW JERSEY: *The GARDEN STATE*

*Busy Little New Jersey Makes Up in Energy for What She Lacks in Size and in Natural Resources*

**N**EW JERSEY is one of the tiniest states in the Union--and one of the most important. Her influence does not come from rich natural resources. She has no great stores of gold or silver, of iron or coal or wood; she has no vast farms or breath-taking scenery; she was not even blest with a brigade of tumultuous rivers to turn her factory wheels. Yet she ranks ninth among the states in population and sixth in industrial output and in the value of her exports. What is there to account for this amazing achievement?

The secret lies in the fact that New Jersey has always been seated squarely at the cross-roads. She is like a tiny shop on a very crowded corner. People are always passing, and sooner or later everybody has to go by. All the railroads entering New York City from the south and west have to cross New

Jersey, and in the other direction moves all the northern and eastern traffic into Philadelphia. Besides this vast procession of passengers and goods, there are the millions of holiday makers who go every year to have a good time on the New Jersey beaches. They too must have food and housing and all sorts of comforts--and all those things must be carried to them on New Jersey's three thousand miles of railway and her superb state motor highways. So central New Jersey is one of the busiest thoroughfares in the world.

But of course it was not enough that millions of people went by. To be of importance, New Jersey had to have something to offer them. She was presented by chance with a fine business site, next door to the great iron and coal deposits of Pennsylvania and sharing the world's greatest harbor; but she

## THE HISTORY OF NEW JERSEY

had to know how to take advantage of these opportunities. She has made good use of them. The multitude of New Jersey's industries prove the enterprise and initiative of her people. "Jerseymen" have never been afraid to work!

And what is it they work at? The list of their occupations is astoundingly varied. They farm, of course—wherever there is soil in which plants will grow men must follow Adam's example and delve in it. New Jersey's soil is very good in certain sections. The northern part of the state is rugged for the most part and often covered with oak and other deciduous trees. The soil here is partly glacial drift. But in the Kittatinny (kit'tin'y) Valley, southeast of the Kittatinny Mountains, are some of the largest farms in the state. Many of them are given over to dairying, for New Jersey sells a great deal of milk to New York City and Philadelphia.

Another fine dairying center lies in what is known as the "Cream Ridge" section, in the central part of the state east and northeast of Trenton. At Plainsboro is one of the country's biggest dairies. Vineland is the center for a thriving poultry and egg industry as valuable as the dairies are. The state's chief field crops are potatoes, hay, corn, oats, wheat, and barley.

New Jersey's most fertile soil and her finest crops are to be found in what is known as the marl belt, a narrow strip from ten to twenty miles wide stretching across the state

from Long Branch to Salem. Here in the limy soil, and in the sandier soil of certain districts further south, are mile after mile of truck gardens whose produce will go to the great neighboring cities to which New



This fine Gothic structure is one of the Princeton dormitories. It is surmounted by Russell Sage Tower. Princeton University was founded in 1746, and in all the time since, it has failed only once to hold a commencement. That was in 1777.

Jersey owes so much of her prosperity, or to the gigantic soup factories in Camden. Camden, Cumberland, Gloucester (glô'ster), and Salem counties raise just about all the vegetables listed in the seedsman's catalogue. And a fine sight it is to see those thriving acres of bright red tomatoes and peppers, purple eggplant, green cabbages and cauliflower, and sweet potatoes and beans—not to mention the onions and lettuce and cucumbers and sweet corn that go daily to market during the summer months. New Jersey justly deserves her reputation as the Garden State. Often these gardens are worked by foreigners, many of them Italians who bring to their work a skill they

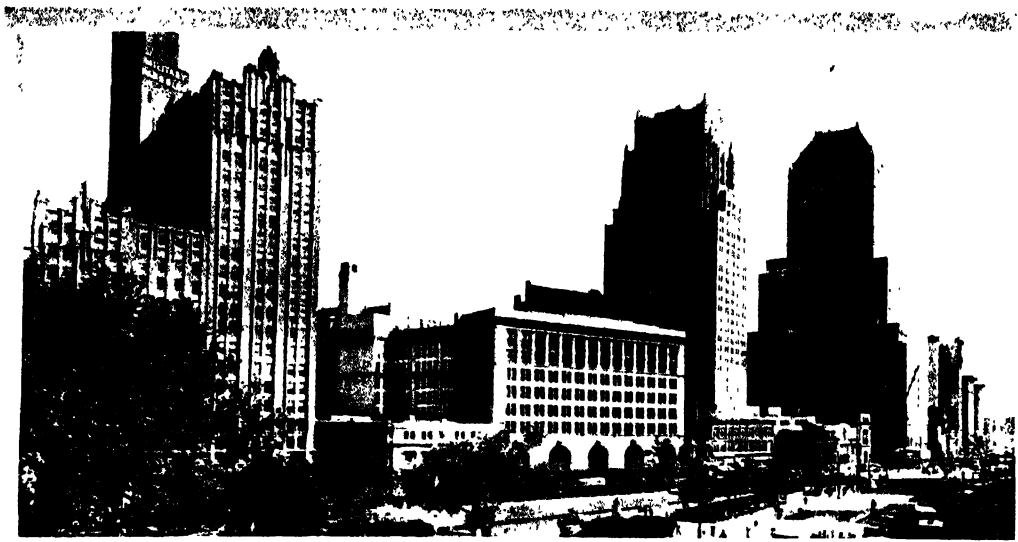
learned on the farms of Southern Italy.

New Jersey raises excellent peaches, too, as well as large quantities of strawberries, apples, pears, musk melons, watermelons, and grapes. Of late she has learned that blueberries will grow abundantly on the barren sandy soil in the southeastern part of the state, and there she has developed an industry that produces nearly all the country's crop of cultivated blueberries. In the same section are her cranberry bogs, where she raises a crop that is exceeded by only one other state.

---

## THE HISTORY OF NEW JERSEY

---



Newark was settled by Puritans in 1666, and since that far-off time has grown to be New Jersey's largest city. This view of Broad Street shows parks and skyscrapers, a fine department store, and the telephone building. Newark also has a university and one of the

finest public libraries in the country. It is an airport and railroad center, has the largest fine jewelry manufactures in the United States, produces a variety of leathers, and gave celluloid to the world. Experts believe that its growth has only just begun.

Whitesbog is the center of both the cranberry and the blueberry industries. New Jersey blueberries are a triumph for the grower, for some are five-eighths of an inch in diameter.

### Finding Health among the Jersey Pines

This sandy part of New Jersey is known as the Pines, for here are spreading forests of pitch pine, intermingled with a few other trees. Villages are pretty far apart on these pine barrens, but the invigorating fragrance of the woods attracts people to various health resorts like Lakewood. In this region is Lakehurst, a port for giant air craft. Inland from Barnegat (bär'nê-găt') Inlet and north of Mullica River, in the heart of the Pines, is a section of waste land known as the Plains. It covers about thirty square miles, a level expanse of sandy soil grown up to dense shrubs three or four feet high, with never a tree in sight. It is a strange, lonely place, but bright with color in spring and fall. New Jersey is doing all she can to protect her woodlands. They are all of second growth, but eventually they should be valuable.

If we were to motor from Raritan Bay down a magnificent highway that skirts New

Jersey's eastern shore, through a land of marsh and shifting dunes, we should pass for 120 miles through the site of another of her great industries. There is nothing so extensive of its kind in the world. The wide beaches and the cool breezes of the "Jersey shore" attract millions of people from New York and Philadelphia, in fact from the whole East, during the hot months. Atlantic City, one of the largest shore resorts in the United States, is a winter resort as well. For except on top of her northern mountains New Jersey has a mild climate, especially along the coast. So twelve million people come to Atlantic City every year, and walk along the famous Boardwalk that skirts the beach. Other millions go to Asbury Park, Ocean Grove, Long Branch, or Cape May. The whole coast is one continuous summer resort.

### The Harbor at Quaint Cape May

There are no fine harbors here; the coast is lined with sand bars and the tidal rivers are full of silt. From Bay Head, at the north end of Barnegat Bay, all the way down to Cape May is a continuous waterway inside the sand bars that lie offshore. Eventually, of course, it too will fill with sand and more

## THE HISTORY OF NEW JERSEY

land will have been formed. Cape May, by dint of dredging and the building of breakwaters, has the best harbor on New Jersey's eastern coast and has been able to keep her age-old fishing fleet. For a little fishing village was first established here by New England and Long Island whalers in the seventeenth century. To-day the quaint old town has a valuable catch of mackerel, bass, and various other fish.

New Jersey fishes with great profit to herself and to the great cities lying so near her. The large majority of her counties carry on the industry, with Cumberland County in the lead. Oysters are the most valuable part of the catch. They grow along the shores of Delaware Bay, and are brought into the town of Bivalve in great quantities. Shad too are caught in the bay; and along the coast are weakfish, bluefish, and sea bass.

The fertile soil of southwestern New Jersey is useful for other things besides the raising of crops. Here are deposits of silica (sil'ī-kā) used to make glass in the factories of Millville and Bridgeton, which turn out test tubes, bottles, window panes, and other useful articles. Much of this fine sand also goes into scouring soap, polishes, face powder, and pottery.

### Busy and Versatile Camden

And this brings us to New Jersey's chief occupation—the manufacture of such a multitude of articles that a volume would be needed to list them all. Camden alone has more than three hundred different industries. Into her huge soup factories is poured the produce of New Jersey's hundreds of market gardens, as well as other ingredients from every corner of the globe; and out of the factories go neatly labeled cans of soup to

practically every one of the civilized countries. Another of Camden's leading industries is the manufacture of radios and phonographs. She has one of the country's greatest shipyards; she makes shoes, patent leather, cigars, machinery, cork products, and linoleum; she turns out pens and books, and scores of other useful articles. Ocean liners sail up the Delaware to her door—which is just across the river from Philadelphia—and carry her products to the far corners of the earth.

Trenton, the state capital, also gives harbor to ocean-going vessels, and manufactures a goodly number of products for them to carry away. She has the largest potteries in the country,

and makes America's finest china. For the marl belt, which produces such fine crops, also is rich in clays that go to the making of all sorts of clay products—brick, tile, terra cotta, dishes, and bathroom fixtures. New Jersey ranks first in the mining of this valuable clay, and second in the manufacture of it. Perth Amboy, near the northern end of the marl belt, manufactures terra cotta, the bright colored tiling so much used in decorating modern buildings. Trenton, like other New Jersey cities, turns her hand to a great variety of trades. One of them is the spinning of many of the huge steel cables used in making the world's great bridges and in other construction.

Still more important as an industrial center is the city of Paterson (pāt'ēr-sūn). Here are the country's greatest factories for manufacturing silk and for dyeing and finishing textiles. The town is built at the falls of the Passaic (pā-sā'ik) River, which not only furnishes power but also supplies water that is chemically suited to the dyeing of silk. Paterson also manufactures motors for air-



These contented Holsteins live on one of New Jersey's dairy farms, and do their part in upholding the state's reputation for fine butter and cheese. The number of cattle in New Jersey has increased steadily in the last few years.

## THE HISTORY OF NEW JERSEY

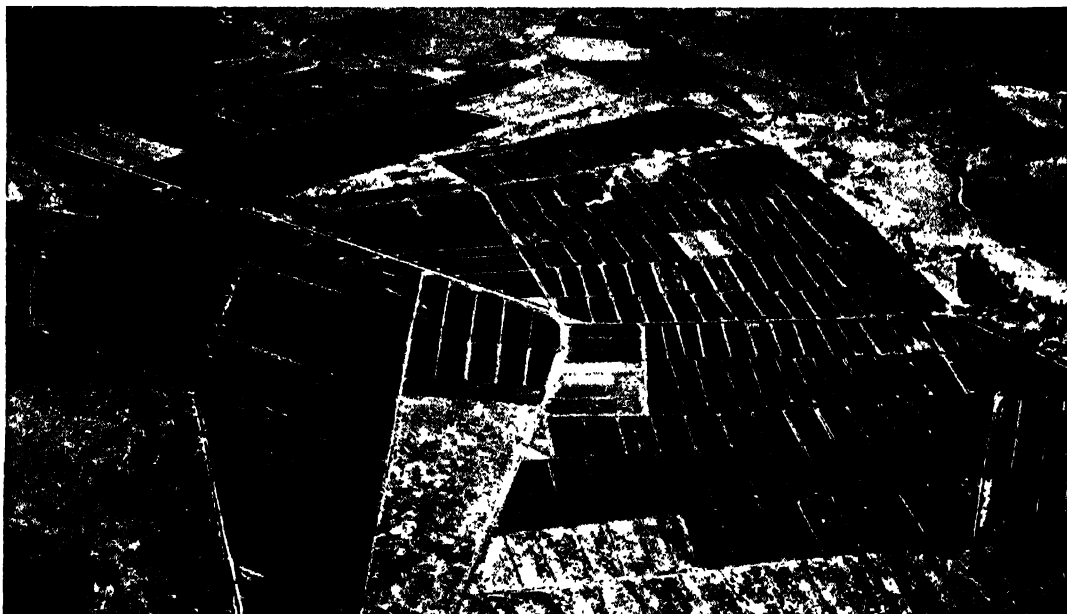


Photo from Ewing Galloway, N. Y.

The celery from these neat New Jersey fields will be served on the dining tables of New York and Philadelphia. For it is the markets in those great cities—

and in cities at home in New Jersey—that have turned a great part of the little state into a vast market garden. In the north are large dairy farms.

planes. Passaic, on the same river as Paterson, has extensive woolen mills.

population back and forth in record time every day.

### The Daily Tide of Commuters

Jersey City, which ranks second in New Jersey in the value of her manufactures, has a great variety of industries. She does a big business in printing, in slaughtering and meat packing, and in making soap and perfume. Since she is seated on New York harbor, across the Hudson from the city of New York, she is an important railway terminal, for only one railroad actually crosses the river. It is her task to care for most of the freight traffic coming to the great harbor from the south and west; and through her stations—and through those of Hoboken (hō'bō-kēn) and Weehawken (wē'hō-kēn)—pour the thousands of "commuters" (kō-mū'tēr) who make the daily trip from their homes in New Jersey to their work in New York City. Northeastern New Jersey is a kind of fireside for the vast city just across the river. Ferries, tubes, tunnels, and the great George Washington Bridge connect her with Manhattan, and many are the marvels of organization that help transport the huge

### An Industry in Every Town

Many of New Jersey's smaller cities boast one or more great factories. Kearny (kār'nī), just north of Newark, shares with Camden in the state's great shipbuilding industry; and many other towns turn out the smaller craft that New Jersey has built from earliest times. Kearny also has one of the world's largest plants for making telephone equipment. Phillipsburg manufactures pneumatic drills, Elizabeth has the largest sewing-machine factory in the country, New Brunswick makes surgical dressings and other medical supplies, Manville turns out more asbestos products than any other city in the United States, Plainfield makes printing presses and motor trucks, Bayonne (bā-yōn') has the largest oil refineries in the country and is the world's largest center for the industry, which leads all other manufactures in New Jersey. To the great refineries here and in other towns in northeastern New Jersey crude oil is piped from more than 1,700 miles away. Along Arthur Kill, the narrow stream between New

## THE HISTORY OF NEW JERSEY

Jersey and Staten (stăt'ĕn) Island, are great copper refineries, belonging to another of the state's leading industries. Even Atlantic City ships "salt-water taffy" to every corner of the globe.

But bigger than all these thriving cities, great and small, is the great manufacturing center of Newark (nū'ĕrk). Lately, it has been opened to ocean vessels through the development of Port Newark, on Newark Bay. The Newark airport is among the largest in the world. Into this great center pour by rail and boat raw materials from all over the world, to be made into thousands of different products. It would be impossible to give a list of them here, but among the most important are electrical equipment, paints and varnishes, leather, meats, chemicals, jewelry, foundry and machine-shop products, and bread and bakery products. Of late the city has developed facilities for building large air-conditioning plants.

Already Newark is a great city— and people skilled in such matters say she is only getting her start. When she has reached her heyday the uninteresting "Jersey meadows" lying around her, in times past the haunt of waterfowls and the once famous "Jersey mosquito," will be covered with busy streets and crowded highways. At present Newark looks out over the surrounding reaches and sees them plumed with smoke poured out by the chimneys of hundreds of factories.

### Among New Jersey's Wooded Hills

The mountainous section in the northwestern part of the state is free from all the bustle we have been describing. Here among the lakes and woods are camps and summer resorts beloved of the sportsman—charming

Lake Hopatcong (hō-păt'kōng) and High Point Park. Here too are the zinc mines of Franklin Furnace. New Jersey ranks high in the production of zinc, and mines some iron as

well. She makes Portland cement, and quarries trap rock, limestone, sandstone, and some granite.

Zinc pays best, but sand and gravel, stone, and iron rank well among her minerals.

The Kittatinny Mountains in the northwest are part of the great folded mountain ridges found in the central Appalachian (ăp'ă-lă'chĭ-ăn) mountain system; and the valley southeast of them is only a section of the Great Appalachian Valley that stretches all the way from Lake Champlain to northern Alabama. The layers of rock that make up the mountains and valley are very, very old, though younger than the crystalline (krĭs'tă-lĭn) rocks that have been worn down by streams into the

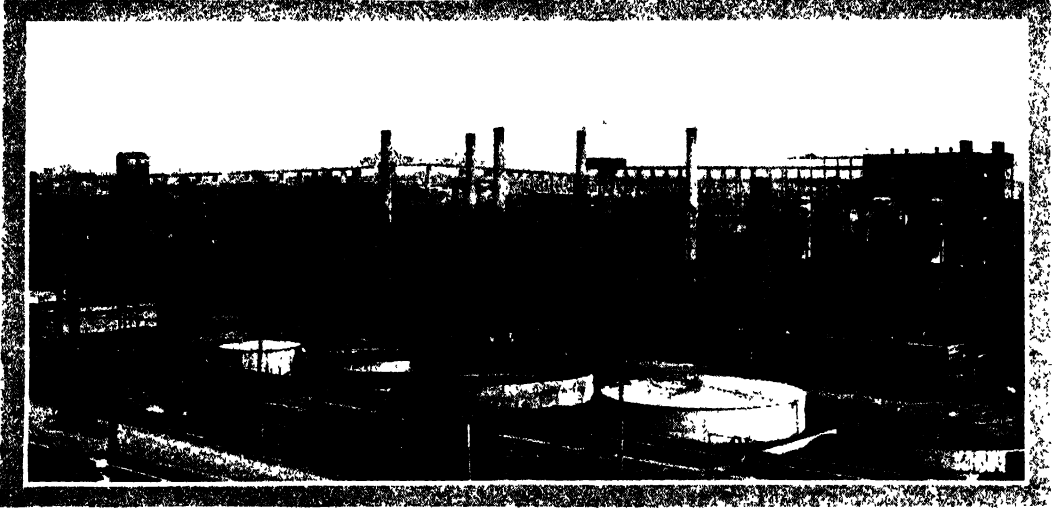
rounded mountains southwest of the valley. This crystalline section is referred to as the Highlands. Its rocks, which are exceedingly hard, form part of a long belt that stretches from New England to Alabama.

Southeast of the Highlands is a very ancient plain, known as the Triassic (tri-ăs'ĭk) lowland. Rivers have had time to cut into it deeply. Out of it at intervals rise ridges of very hard "trap rock," the only high hills in this section. Southeast of a line drawn roughly from Perth Amboy to Trenton is the level coastal plain, which is still in the making. This New Jersey coastal plain is unusually interesting because, as we say, it is "belted." A layer of resistant sandstone has been left standing in the form of a ridge that extends in general northeast and southwest. Weaker rocks inland from the ridge have been worn away, and through this inner lowland



One strongly suspects that the swimmer at the right is having his first taste of ocean bathing at this delightful beach in New Jersey.

## THE HISTORY OF NEW JERSEY



Photograph by Standard Oil Co. of New Jersey.

Anyone who has passed through New Jersey will recall such sights as this. Petroleum refining is New Jersey's leading industry, and her plants have been

expanded lately in an effort to increase the anti-knock constituents of motor fuel and give it greater mileage. In the distance is the famous Pulaski Skyway.

the Delaware River has carved its valley. The slope on the west side of the ridge is fairly steep, and the rivers fairly short; but on the seaward side the slope is gentle, and here the rivers are longer and more sluggish.

### The New Jersey of Long Ago

The busy little land that we have been describing has a venerable history. When the white men came they found it inhabited by the Delaware Indians, a branch of the Algonquian (äl-gön'kŭ-ăn) group of Indians, whom we have described in our story of Wisconsin. The Delawares were a warlike tribe, but on the whole fairly friendly to the new race—though they had much to complain of.

One Verrazano (vē'rät-sä'nō), a native of Florence sailing under the flag of France, was the first explorer to visit the coast, when he sailed into New York Bay in 1524. Others doubtless followed him, but no one showed much interest in the place until Henry Hudson in 1609 entered the Delaware, or "South," River, and then explored the Hudson, or "North," River. It was not long until the Dutch, who now came to settle New Amsterdam, were reaching out to found trading posts across the river at Paulus Hook (1633)—now Jersey City—and at the present Ho-

boken; they even went as far afield as to establish Fort Nassau (nä's'ō), at the present Gloucester, on the Delaware River. From their foothold on New York Bay they gradually spread up the Raritan (rär'ŭ-tăn) River.

But the Dutch were not to have everything their own way. Sweden wanted a share in the wealth of the New World, and after founding a settlement in Delaware, built (1643) a fort called Elfsborg near what is now Salem. At last England began to feel uneasy about this land which she regarded as her own, and tried unsuccessfully to settle it. The Swedes she did not have to worry about; they surrendered easily enough (1655) to a Dutch expedition from New Amsterdam. But the Dutch put up a stiff resistance, and the section remained part of New Netherland until the whole region came into the full possession of England in 1664.

### How New Jersey Got Its Name

Charles II, the king of England, gave all this section to his brother, the Duke of York, who promptly leased what is now New Jersey to Lord John Berkeley (bürk'ŭ) and Sir George Carteret (kär'tēr-ēt). It was named New Jersey in honor of Carteret, who had been governor of the island of Jersey and had entertained Charles there when the King



---

## THE HISTORY OF NEW JERSEY

was exiled from England during the Commonwealth.

Now settlers began to pour in. Puritans from New England planted little villages—Shrewsbury, Middletown, and Elizabethtown—in the eastern part, and gave the section a New England air which it wears to this day. To the western part came the Quakers, and eventually the western half of the province came into the hands of a group of Quakers headed by William Penn. Their first settlement was at Salem (1675); but other settlements followed, and even now this part of the state bears the same stamp that the Quakers gave to Philadelphia. A line drawn from Little Egg Harbor to a point a little north of the Delaware Water Gap, on the Delaware River, separated the provinces. East New Jersey had its capital at Perth Amboy, West New Jersey at Burlington. Finally the Quakers bought East New Jersey too, but the province continued to have two capitals. You may see certain of the old official buildings standing to this day.

### The Endless Colonial Wrangle

There was the usual wrangling between the settlers and their governors, until at last New Jersey became a crown colony under the governorship of the unpopular Sir Edmund Andros, who promptly annexed her (1688) to New England. His power was short, for when his royal patron, James II, was deposed from the English throne the irate people of Boston seized Andros (1689), and New Jersey was free again to be ruled by her proprietors. But the wrangling continued, and in 1702 she once again passed under the jurisdiction of the crown, with both east and west section ruled by a single government. The disputes continued as before.

At the time of the Revolution New Jersey was an important battle ground. The little colony even had her own private "tea party," when a group of citizens disguised as Indians burned (1774) a carload of tea that had been stored in a warehouse at Greenwich. The streets of Trenton ran red with blood on the night of December 31st, 1776, when Washington re-crossed the Delaware and overcame the Hessians there. Monmouth County and Morris County also share in these brave

memories. The Morristown National Historical Park is full of interest. Not far away, at Caldwell, Grover Cleveland was born. After the war was over, Trenton was for a time the national capital. New Jersey ratified the constitution in December, 1787. In the Civil War she ranged herself on the Northern side.

### What Are the "Seven Sisters"?

Before the Civil War the state had been busy building roads and bridges and railways and canals, and in clearing her land for farming. She had harnessed some of her water power, and had thriving iron mines. After the war her manufacturing developed by leaps and bounds. Laws were passed in favor of corporations, and many of them flocked to the state where profits came so easily. Finally the people of New Jersey were obliged to curb the powers of these great combines. In 1884 the state passed a law enabling her to collect a just tax from the railways, and in 1913, by a series of laws often referred to as the "Seven Sisters," the trusts were shorn of some of their enormous powers. A primary election law had already been passed (1911). As might be expected, New Jersey has a large working population, which she protects by a number of progressive laws.

### Famous Princeton

Education is well cared for in this busy little state. Princeton University, one of the most famous men's colleges in the country, was established in 1746, at Elizabeth. It was then called the College of New Jersey. The next year it moved to Newark, and in 1756 to Princeton; but it kept its original name until the close of the nineteenth century. Rutgers University was founded as Queen's College in New Brunswick in 1766. It is now the state university. Stevens Institute of Technology is one of our most important technical schools. In 1920 the Russell Sage Foundation, after a careful study of education throughout the United States, reported that New Jersey had the best public schools of any state east of the Mississippi. With her willingness to work and her chance to learn, this prosperous little state should have a future of fine achievement.

## NEW JERSEY

**AREA:** 7,836 square miles—45th in rank.

**LOCATION:** New Jersey, one of the Middle Atlantic states, lies between 38° 55' 40" and 41° 21' 22" N. Lat., and between 73° 53' 39" and 75° 35' W. Long. It is bounded on the north by New York State, on the east by New York State and the Atlantic Ocean, on the south by Delaware Bay, and on the west by Delaware and Pennsylvania.

**PHYSICAL FEATURES:** Most of New Jersey is low and flat, with an average elevation of only 250 ft. About half the state lies in the Atlantic coastal plain, with the Navesink Highlands just west of Sandy Hook and the Mount Pleasant Hills the highest points in the region. North of a line between Raritan Bay and Trenton the coastal plain gives way to more uneven country, which lies in three belts running northeast and southwest. The first belt is an ancient lowland of red sandstone; it is known as the Triassic Lowland, and has elevations up to 900 ft. From it rise ridges of hard trap rock, such as the Palisades along the west bank of the lower Hudson River, and the Watchung, or Orange, Mountains farther west. Northwest of the Triassic Lowland lie the Highlands, a rugged section in which is a series of parallel ridges left standing when an elevated plateau was cut up by streams. Northwest of the Highlands is the Kittatinny Valley; and northwest of that, cutting across the corner of the state, are the Kittatinny Mountains, part of the Appalachian ridges of Pennsylvania. Here is the highest point in New Jersey; it is known as High Point, or High Knob, and is 1,801 ft. above sea level.

A very small part of the state is drained into the Hudson River, in the northeast. The rest drains toward the Atlantic or the Delaware River (317 m. long), which, after rising in New York State, forms the boundary between New Jersey and Pennsylvania and finally enters Delaware Bay. It cuts through the Kittatinny Mountains at the picturesque Delaware Water Gap. Of the streams that enter the Atlantic the Passaic (100 m. long) and the Hackensack enter Newark Bay. The Hackensack rises in New York State. The Raritan finds an outlet in Raritan Bay. None of the other rivers in eastern New Jersey are so much as 40 miles long. The largest of them are the Maurice, which flows into Delaware Bay, and the Great Egg Harbor River and the Mullica, both of them emptying into the Atlantic. The Delaware receives nothing but small streams—Flat Brook west of the Kittatinny Mountains, the Pequest River from the Kittatinny Valley, and a number of creeks farther south. In the northeastern part of the Kittatinny Valley the Wallkill flows to the northeast into New York State. All through the Highlands and the northern part of the state are numerous lakes that are used for fishing and other sports. Lake Hopatcong is the largest; Greenwood Lake lies partly in New York. The Passaic River furnishes excellent water power at Paterson, where it falls for 70 ft. Along the coast of New Jersey are a great many tidal marshes lying behind barrier islands of sand that have formed offshore. Behind these islands a waterway for small boats has been dredged along the whole Jersey shore. It forms a part of the long Intracoastal Waterway that runs along the eastern coast of our country. All together New Jersey has 710 square miles of water. There is no irrigated land. New Jersey shares in New York harbor, and also has good harbors on the Atlantic, Delaware Bay, and Delaware River. The Delaware and the Hudson can be navigated for their full length along New Jersey territory—the Delaware for about 200 miles and the Hudson for about 50 miles.

**CLIMATE:** The nearness of the sea gives the southern part of the state a somewhat milder climate than points in the north which are farther inland and in

some cases a good deal higher. The mean annual temperature at Dover, in the north, is about 49° F., while Bridgeton, in the south, has a mean annual temperature more than six degrees higher. Shore resorts, such as Atlantic City and Cape May, are famous for their mild winter climate and their cool sea breezes in summer. The mean annual temperature at Atlantic City is 52°; the mean winter temperature 34°; the mean summer temperature 70°. The record high there is 104°; the record low, -9°. Dover has the same summer mean as Atlantic City, but its winter mean is 28°. Its record high is 102°; its record low, -13°. The annual rainfall for the state is about 48 in., with the higher inland sections moister than the coast. Atlantic City is famous for its sunshine.

**INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING:** The more important institutions are Drew University at Madison, Georgian Court College for women at Lakewood, New Jersey College for Women at New Brunswick, allied with Rutgers University, Newark College of Engineering at Newark, University of Newark at Newark, Princeton University at Princeton, Rider College at Trenton, Rutgers University at New Brunswick, College of St. Elizabeth at Convent Station, St. Peter's College at Jersey City, Seton Hall College at South Orange, Stevens Institute of Technology at Hoboken, and Upsala College at East Orange. There are teachers' colleges at Upper Montclair, Trenton, Glassboro, Newark, Paterson, and Jersey City.

**CHARITIES AND CORRECTION:** New Jersey maintains insane hospitals at Trenton and Greystone Park, a village for epileptics at Skillman, a sanatorium for tuberculous diseases at Glen Gardner, an industrial school for colored boys at Bordentown and one for girls at Trenton, a school for feeble-minded children at Vineland, a school for the deaf at Trenton, schools for the feeble-minded at Woodbine and New Lisbon, a training school for the feeble-minded at Totowa, soldiers' homes at Kearny and Vineland, state reformatories at Woodbridge and Annadale, a reform school for boys at Jamesburg, a prison farm at Leesburg, and a state prison at Trenton. New Jersey inflicts capital punishment by electrocution.

**POLITICAL FACTS:** New Jersey is governed under the constitution of 1844, which has since been amended. The legislature is made up of two houses, a Senate and a General Assembly. Each of the 21 counties elects a Senator to serve three years. The members of the Assembly are apportioned according to population and are elected each year. The legislature meets annually.

The governor is the supreme executive officer. He must be at least thirty years of age at election, must have been a citizen of the United States for at least twenty years, and a citizen of New Jersey for at least seven years. He is elected for three years and may not serve two consecutive terms. With the approval of the Senate he appoints the attorney-general, the prosecutor of pleas, the clerk and justices of the supreme court, the clerk and chancellors of the court of chancery, the secretary of state, many other officers, and certain commissions. The state treasurer and comptroller are chosen for terms of three years by the Senate and General Assembly in joint meeting.

The judiciary is highly complicated, with a court of errors and appeals as the highest court. It is composed of the chancellor, the justices of the supreme court, and six additional judges appointed for six years. Besides this there are a court of chancery with nine chancellors appointed for seven years, a prerogative court, a supreme court with a chief justice and eight associates appointed for seven years, a circuit court, and inferior courts. There are nine judicial districts, with

## NEW JERSEY—Continued

circuit courts held by a supreme-court judge in each county of a district.

Voters must be citizens of the United States, must be over twenty-one years of age, must have lived in the state one year, and in the county five months.

Direct primary elections are held to nominate the president and all state officers who are elected. All election officials must have passed civil service examinations. State officials are nominated by direct primary elections, and nominating petitions carry a statement as to whether the candidates for the state Senate and for the General Assembly would vote for their party's candidate for the United States Senate.

Local government is organized by counties, cities, townships, and boroughs, with local units privileged to employ the commission form of government. City and county officials are elected, but township control is vested in an annual town meeting. Various important labor and trust laws have been passed. The state maintains a police force.

The capital of New Jersey is at Trenton.

**PARKS:** Morristown National Historical Park, established in 1933, is on the site of the main encampment of the American armies during the winters of 1776-1777 and 1779-1780. The American base hospital was here throughout the Revolutionary War. Ford House, used by Washington as headquarters, is still standing and contains a valuable collection of relics.

The state maintains a park of 11,000 acres at High Point, in the northwestern corner of the state. It was the gift (1923) of Anthony F. Keuser, who has also erected a monument there to the soldiers and sailors of New Jersey. The park contains a museum.

New Jersey also has 1,700 acres in the Palisades Interstate Park.

**NATIONAL MONUMENTS:** The Statue of Liberty on Bedloe's Island in New York Bay.

**GAME AND BIRD RESERVATIONS:** The Killcockhook Refuge in Salem County and extending into Delaware protects ducks and muskrats. Brigantine Refuge in Atlantic County protects brant, greater snow geese, ducks, quail, terns, and shorebirds.

**NAME:** New Jersey received its name in the grant given in 1664 to the proprietors, Lord Berkeley and Sir George Carteret. The name was taken from the Island of Jersey, which Sir George Carteret had defended against the Long Parliament. The new-world province had formerly been called New Canary. Its Indian name was "Scheyichlie."

The word "Jersey" is probably another form of "Caesarea." In the language of the northern nations who overran England about the eighth century, "ey," the suffix in the word "Jersey," meant an island; and "jer" or "ger" is a contraction of "Caesar." So the name really meant "the island of Caesar" or "Caesar's Island." Other forms of the word are Gersey, Gearsey, Jarsey, Jarsy, Jarzie, and Jerseye.

**NICKNAMES:** New Jersey is called the State of Camden and Amboy from the time when the Camden and Amboy Railroad exercised great influence in the state. The immense quantities of clams that are found in New Jersey give it the name of the Clam State. It has been called the Foreigner State, or New Spain, because when Joseph Bonaparte fled from his throne in Spain he settled down in Bordentown, New Jersey, and built a palatial mansion there. He became a social leader in his vicinity, and neighboring states jeeringly referred to the people of New Jersey as "foreigners." Because New Jersey has so many thriving truck farms it is known as the Garden State. It formerly was called the Mosquito State because mosquitoes were abundant there. Its blue laws and the blue uniforms of its militia have given it the name of the Jersey Blue State.

The people of New Jersey are called Foreigners, Clam Catchers, Clams, Jersey Blues, and sometimes Spaniards.

**STATE FLOWER:** Violet; adopted by the Assembly in 1913.

**STATE SONG:** Although there is no official state song, the "Ode to Jersey," by Dr. Elias Carr, is widely known and is sung at school celebrations.

**STATE FLAG:** An act of the legislature in March, 1896, provided a flag of buff color with the state coat of arms in the center.

**STATE MOTTO:** "Liberty and Prosperity"; informally adopted in 1821. It probably came from an edition of the laws in that year.

**STATE BIRD:** New Jersey regards the eastern goldfinch as the bird most suited to be the emblem of the state.

**INTERESTING FACTS:** New Jersey observes New Year's Day, Lincoln's Birthday, Washington's Birthday, Good Friday, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Columbus Day, Election Day, Armistice Day, Thanksgiving Day, and Christmas Day.

<b>Population of state, 1940, 4,160,165</b>	Hudson (D2) 652,040	Union (D2) 128,344	Allenhurst (E3) 520
	Hunterdon (C2) 46,766	Warren (C2) 50,181	Allentown (C3) 766
<b>Counties</b>	Mercer (C3) 197,318		Alpha (B2) 2,301
Atlantic (C5) 124,066	Middlesex 2 (D3) 217,077	<b>Cities, Towns, Boroughs, and Villages</b>	Andover (C2) 512
Bergen (D2) 409,646	Monmouth 2 (D3) 161,238	[Places marked with an asterisk (*) were clas- sified as urban in 1940; those having two aster- isks (**) were classified as urban under special act.]	Ashbury Park * (D3) 14,617
Burlington (C4) 97,013	Morris (C2) 125,732		Atlantic City * (D5) 64,094
Camden 1 (C4) 255,727	Ocean 2 (D4) 37,706		Atlantic High- lands (D3) 2,335
Cape May (C5) 28,919	Passaic (D2) 309,353		Audubon * (B4) 8,906
Cumberland (B5) 73,184	Salem (B4) 42,274		Avon-by-the-Sea (D3) 1,211
Essex (D2) 837,340	Somerset (C2) 74,390	Absecon (C5) 2,084	Barrington (B4) 2,329
Gloucester 1 (B4) 72,219	Sussex (C1) 29,632	Allendale (D1) 2,058	Bayonne * (D2) 79,198

<sup>1</sup> Parts of Gloucester annexed to Camden in 1926 and 1931.

<sup>2</sup> Part of Monmouth annexed to Ocean in 1928, part of Middlesex annexed to Monmouth in 1939.

# NEW JERSEY—Continued

Beach Haven (D4)...	746	Fort Lee * (E2)...	9,468	Metuchen * (D2)...	6,557	Ridgewood * (D2)...	14,948
Beachwood (D4)...	650	Franklin * (C1)...	4,009	Middlesex * (D2)...	3,763	Riverdale (D2)...	1,110
Belleville * (D2)...	28,167	Freehold * (D3)...	6,952	Midland Park * (D2)...	4,525	River Edge * (D2)...	3,287
Belmar * (D3)...	3,415	Frenchtown (B2)...	1,238	Millburn town- ship ** (D2)...	11,652	Riverton (B3)...	2,354
Belvidere (B2)...	2,060	Garfield * (D2)...	28,044	Milltown * (D3)...	3,515	Rockaway * (C2)...	3,514
Bergenfield * (E2)...	10,275	Garwood * (D2)...	3,622	Gibbsboro (C4)...	713	Roseland (D2)...	1,556
Berlin (C4)...	1,753	Glassboro * (B4)...	4,925	Glen Gardner (C2)...	536	Roselle * (D2)...	13,597
Bernardsville * (C2)...	3,405	Glen Ridge * (D2)...	7,331	Montclair * (D2)...	39,807	Roselle Park * (B5)...	9,661
Beverly * (C3)...	2,691	Glen Rock * (D2)...	5,177	Montvale (D2)...	1,342	Rumson * (D3)...	2,926
Bloomfield * (D2)...	41,623	Gloucester city * (B4)...	13,692	Moonachie (D1)...	1,554	Runnemede * (E6)...	2,835
Blomingtondale * (D1)...	2,606	Guttenburg * (D2)...	6,200	Morris Plains (D2)...	2,018	Rutherford * (D2)...	15,466
Blomsbury (B2)...	704	Hackensack * (D2)...	26,279	Morristown * (C2)...	15,270	Salem * (B4)...	8,618
Logota * (D2)...	7346	Hackettstown * (C2)...	3,289	Mountain Lakes (A3)...	2,205	Sayreville * (D3)...	8,186
Boonton * (D2)...	6,739	Haddonfield * (B4)...	9,742	Mount Ephraim (B4)...	2,282	Secaucus * (D2)...	9,754
Bordentown * (C3)...	4,223	Haddon Heights * (B4)...	5,555	National Park (B4)...	1,977	Shrewsbury (D3)...	1,058
Bound Brook * (C2)...	7,616	Haledon * (D2)...	5,303	Neptune City (E3)...	2,392	Somerdale (E6)...	1,170
Bradley Beach * (D3)...	3,468	Hamburg (C1)...	1,116	Netcong (C2)...	2,157	Somers Point (C5)...	1,992
Branchville (C1)...	715	Hammoncton * (C4)...	7,668	Newark * (D2)...	429,760	Somerville * (C2)...	8,720
Bridgeton * (B5)...	15,992	Hampton (C4)...	864	New Brunswick * (D3)...	33,180	South Amboy * (D3)...	7,802
Brielle (D3)...	961	Harrington Park (D2)...	1,389	New Milford * (C2)...	3,215	South Bound Brook (C2)...	1,928
Brooklawn (B3)...	1,919	Harrison * (D2)...	14,171	New Providence (D2)...	2,374	South Orange * (D2)...	13,742
Burlington * (C3)...	10,905	Hasbrouck Heights * (D2)...	6,716	Newton * (C1)...	5,533	South Plain- field * (D2)...	5,379
Butler * (D2)...	3,351	Haworth (D2)...	1,419	North Arlington * (D1)...	9,904	South River (D3)...	10,714
Caldwell * (D2)...	4,932	Hawthorne * (D2)...	12,610	North Caldwell (D2)...	1,572	Spotswood (D3)...	1,201
Califon (C2)...	572	High Bridge (C2)...	1,781	Northfield * (C5)...	2,848	Spring Lake (D3)...	1,650
Camden * (B4)...	117,536	Highland Park * (C3)...	9,002	North Haledon * (D2)...	2,761	Stanhope (C2)...	1,103
Cape May * (C5)...	2,581	Highlands (E3)...	2,076	North Plainfield * (D2)...	10,586	Summit * (D2)...	16,165
Carlstadt * (D2)...	5,644	Hightstown * (C3)...	3,486	Northvale (E2)...	1,159	Sussex (C1)...	1,478
Carteret * (D2)...	11,976	Hillsdale * (D1)...	3,418	North Wildwood (C5)...	1,921	Swedesboro (B4)...	2,268
Chatham * (D2)...	4,888	Hoboken * (D2)...	50,115	Nutley * (D2)...	21,954	Tenafly (E2)...	7,413
Chester (C2)...	650	Hohokuk (D1)...	1,626	Oaklyn * (B4)...	3,869	Totowa * (D2)...	5,130
Clayton (B4)...	2,320	Hopewell (C3)...	1,678	Ocean City * (C5)...	4,672	Trenton * (C3)...	124,697
Clementon * (C4)...	2,866	Irvington * (D2)...	55,328	Oceanport * (D3)...	3,159	Tuckerton (D4)...	1,320
Cliffside Park * (E2)...	16,892	Jamesburg (D3)...	2,128	Ogdensburg (C1)...	1,165	Union Beach (D3)...	2,076
Clifton * (D2)...	48,827	Jersey City * (D2)...	301,173	Oradell * (D2)...	2,802	Union City * (D2)...	56,173
Clinton (C2)...	1,066	Keansburg * (D3)...	2,904	Orange * (D2)...	35,717	Ventnor city * (D5)...	7,905
Closter * (E2)...	2,603	Kearny * (D2)...	39,467	Palisades Park * (D2)...	8,141	Verona * (D2)...	8,957
Collingswood * (B4)...	12,685	Kenilworth (D2)...	2,451	Paramus * (D2)...	3,688	Vineland * (B5)...	7,914
Cranford town- ship ** (D2)...	12,860	Keyport * (D3)...	5,147	Park Ridge * (D1)...	2,519	Waldwick (D1)...	2,475
Cresskill (E2)...	2,246	Lakehurst (D3)...	827	Passaic * (D2)...	61,394	Wallington * (D2)...	8,981
Deal (D3)...	917	Lambertville * (C3)...	4,447	Paterson * (D2)...	139,656	Wanaque * (D1)...	3,143
Demarest (E2)...	1,165	Laurel Springs (B4)...	1,344	Paulsboro * (B4)...	7,011	Washington * (C2)...	4,643
Dover * (C2)...	10,491	Lawnside (B3)...	1,270	Peapack-Glad- stone (C2)...	1,354	Watchung (D2)...	1,158
Dumont * (E2)...	7,556	Leonia * (E2)...	5,763	Pennington (C3)...	1,492	Watchung town- ship ** (D2)...	14,363
Dunellen * (D2)...	5,360	Lincoln Park (B2)...	2,186	Penns Grove * (B4)...	6,488	Wenonah (B4)...	1,311
East Newark (D2)...	2,273	Linden * (D2)...	24,115	Perth Amboy * (D2)...	41,242	West Caldwell * (D2)...	3,458
East Orange * (D2)...	68,945	Lindenwood * (C4)...	2,552	Phillipsburg * (B2)...	18,314	Westfield * (D2)...	18,458
East Paterson * (D2)...	4,937	Linwood (C5)...	1,479	Pitman * (B4)...	5,507	West Long Branch (D3)...	2,030
East Rutherford * (D1)...	7,268	Little Ferry * (D3)...	4,545	Plainfield * (D2)...	37,469	West New York * (D2)...	39,439
Eatontown (D3)...	1,758	Little Silver (D3)...	1,461	Pleasantville * (C5)...	11,050	West Orange * (D2)...	25,662
Edgewater * (E2)...	4,028	Lodi * (D2)...	11,552	Point Pleasant (D3)...	2,082	West Paterson * (D2)...	3,306
Egg Harbor city * (C4)...	3,589	Long Branch * (E3)...	17,408	Point Pleasant Beach (D3)...	2,059	Westville * (B4)...	3,585
Elizabeth * (D2)...	109,912	Madison * (D2)...	7,944	Pompton Lakes * (D1)...	3,189	Westwood * (D2)...	5,388
Englewood * (E2)...	18,966	Magnolia (B4)...	1,552	Princeton * (C3)...	7,719	Wharton * (C2)...	3,854
Englishtown (D3)...	815	Manasquan (D3)...	2,340	Prospect Park * (D2)...	5,714	Wildwood * (C5)...	5,150
Essex Fells (D2)...	1,466	Manville * (C2)...	6,065	Rahway * (D2)...	17,498	Woodbine (C5)...	2,111
Fair Haven (D3)...	2,491	Maplewood town- ship ** (D2)...	23,139	Ramsey * (D1)...	3,566	Woodbridge- township ** (D2)...	27,191
Fair Lawn * (C2)...	9,017	Margate City * (C5)...	3,266	Raritan * (C2)...	4,839	Woodbury * (B4)...	8,306
Fairview * (D3)...	8,770	Matawan * (D3)...	2,758	Red Bank * (D3)...	10,974	Woodbury Heights (B4)...	1,137
Fanwood (D2)...	2,310	Maywood * (D2)...	4,052	Ridgefield * (D3)...	5,271	Wood Lynne * (D5)...	2,861
Far Hills (C2)...	574	Mendham (C2)...	1,343	Ridgefield Park * (D2)...	11,277	Wood-Ridge * (C3)...	5,739
Farmingdale (D3)...	609	Merchantville * (B4)...	3,679			Woodstown (B4)...	2,027
Fieldsboro (C3)...	537						
Flemington * (C2)...	2,617						
Florham Park (D2)...	1,609						

\* Name changed from Riverside in 1930.

---

# *The* HISTORY of NEW MEXICO

---

## Reading Unit No. 30

---

### NEW MEXICO: THE SUNSHINE STATE

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

#### *Interesting Facts Explained*

The charm of the oldest part of our country, 8-254  
What the Navajo reservation is like, 8-255  
Why the Indians built their homes on "mesas," 8-255  
Where sand dunes are as white as snow, 8-256  
How meat is cured in New Mexico, 8-257  
The very early inhabitants of

New Mexico, 8-257  
When Santa Fe was founded, 8-258  
When Mexico threw off the yoke of Spain, 8-259  
How New Mexico became United States property, 8-259  
Where the Indian population is increasing, 8-260  
The arts for which the Pueblo Indians are famous, 8-261

#### *Things to Think About*

What differences in language and customs may be found in an old country but not in a young one?  
What interesting facts do we know about the desert in New Mexico?  
What is the climate of New Mexico like?

How do we know that there was once a race of hunters in New Mexico?  
What is the history of the Pueblo Indians?  
What towns were linked by the Santa Fe Trail?  
Why do the Navajo Indian blankets take a long time to finish?

#### *Related Material*

What does the word "monsoon" mean? 1-231  
What is the legend of the willow-pattern plate? 12-59  
What stories have different peoples told of how the art of pottery began? 12-41-42  
One flag from ocean to ocean, 7-231-39  
Where does our best wool come from? 9-75

What is the legend of the Enchanted Mesa? 7-94-96  
Why was Coronado disappointed when he found the fabled Seven Cities of Cibola? 7-119  
How were the crops in the valley of the Nile watered? 10-539  
The story of the American Indians, 7-89-108

#### *Leisure-time Activities*

PROJECT NO. 1: Make a model of a pueblo.  
PROJECT NO. 2: Find out

what you can about Chinese pottery, 12-41-61.

## NEW MEXICO: *the* SUNSHINE STATE

*Indians, Spaniards, Mexicans, Americans, All Have Had a Hand in the Making of This, the Oldest and One of the Most Romantic Parts of the United States*

**O**UR country is still young, as countries go, and so, except for differences in geographical features, is much the same wherever you travel. In England or France or Italy the simple folk of one locality often cannot even understand the language spoken by the people living 150 miles away; and the customs of the two places will be so unlike that you would think they belonged to separate nations. Now America has no such striking differences. In spite of North and South and East and West we are all very much alike. Our clothes, our houses, our language, our customs are about the same everywhere.

But we have one section that has a personality all its own—a strange, foreign, romantic flavor, full of ancient charm and haunting beauty. It is the oldest part of our country, yet though it is thoroughly peaceful and contented, it is still untamed. Of course we are speaking of the Old Southwest, a section as much a part of the United States as Iowa or Massachusetts, yet in some ways a good deal more unlike them than England is. Here

Spain, so long the owner and ruler of the soil, has left her own peculiar mark, and here a still older people, the ancient and mysterious red men, still cling to their age-old way of life in spite of the white man's comings and goings.

So if you would like to travel abroad while staying safe at home, you cannot do better than visit New Mexico or Arizona—but especially New Mexico. For there, at Santa Fe (săn' tā fā'), was the capital of the great royal province that once belonged to the king of Spain. There, more than anywhere else in our great bustling land, the past beseeches you. It lays its ghostly hand on your arm at almost every turn. You do not have to go far from the hurrying modern cities to find yourself in a country where time seems to have stood still. Behind that turn in the road you will come upon an Indian pueblo (pwēb'lō); its mud-brick walls shine golden in the sun and melt into the golden rocks around them. Here the ancient

communal life goes on much as it did before the Spaniards came.

The second turn in the road will bring



Photo by the New Mexico Artists Bureau

Santa Fe, the beautiful capital of New Mexico, captivates everyone with its romantic charm. Ghosts of a stirring past still hover over the adobe houses and bright gardens of the "City of The Holy Faith." Spaniards in iron armor, gaunt friars, and bare-footed Indians were the first inhabitants. Then trappers and adventurers in buckskin pantaloons, with scalp knives and pistols tucked into their belts, came to trade and to dance the fandango with the dark-eyed Mexican maidens. Still later, traders from Missouri pushed through the difficult eight hundred miles of the Santa Fe trail to spread their wares before an excited throng who were glad to pay as much as three dollars a yard for cheap bright cotton goods! Then, during the war with Mexico, American troops arrived, and in 1846 General Kearny raised the American flag over the old Palace of the Governors and declared New Mexico a part of the United States.

Above is the state capitol.

## THE HISTORY OF NEW MEXICO



The Administration Building of the University of New Mexico is modern in construction, but its interesting exterior was made to imitate the old adobe style of

the Spanish period. The university is at Albuquerque, in the Rio Grande Valley—a modern, industrialized city, the largest in the state.

you to a bit of old Mexico. Here in the deep shadow of a thick-walled church stands a patient donkey. Heavy strings of bright red peppers hang from the projecting roof beams to dry in the sun. The air is full of the spicy scent of burning pine or juniper, lit to heat the primitive oven, of beehive shape, in which a Mexican woman is baking bread out of doors. If you happen to be near the Navajo (nā'vā-hō) reservation you will see plenty of its inhabitants, seated majestically on horseback or jogging along in their covered wagons. The women will wear the bright-colored velvet blouses and the full, flounced skirts that they copied long ago from the Spanish señoras. Men and women both will be magnificent with heavy strings of turquoise and shell, and with bracelets, belts, and earrings of silver.

### A Land That Is Strange and Grand

And all this will be in a setting at once bright and somber—strange and grand and full of startling shapes and colors. The land is extremely high and the air of amazing dryness. The average elevation in the state is 5,700 feet, and North Truchas (trōō'chās) Peak, the highest mountain, rises 13,306 feet above sea level. Several peaks are over 12,000 feet high. The northern part of New Mexico is a vast plateau (plā-tō'), or high tableland, made up of gently dipping layers of hard and soft rock out of which streams that as a rule flow only after a rain have sculptured great cliffs, tablelands, and deep canyons. Often, flat-topped high areas

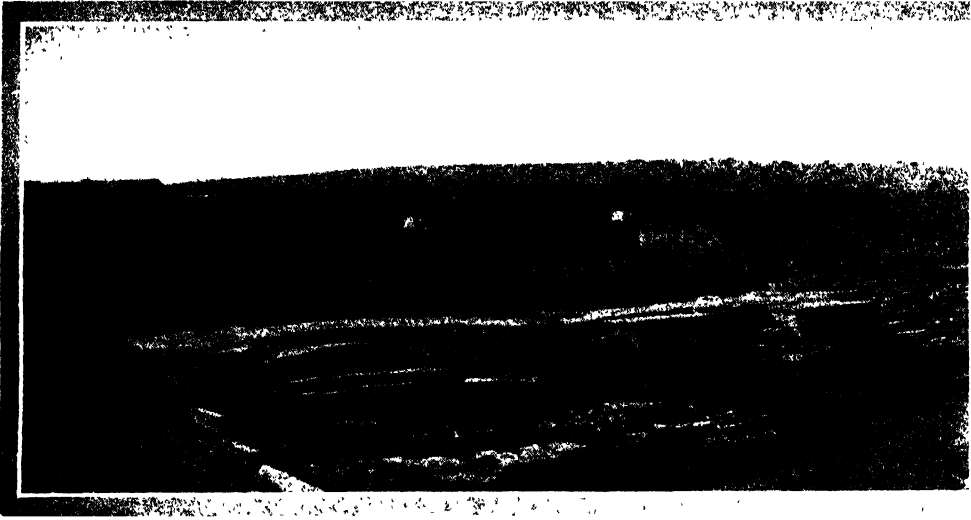
called "mesas" (mā'sä)—the word means "table"—are left standing quite alone by the carving of the streams. A harder layer of rock on top has kept them from being worn down to the level of the surrounding plain.

### Our Country's Oldest Towns

Long before white men came to the New World the Indians had learned that a mesa was an easy place to protect against invaders. So they cut little hand and foot holds in the sheer cliff sides and perched their mud-brick—or "adobe" (ā-dō'bē)—houses on the bare tops. And there many of them live to this day! When you visit New Mexico you will not want to miss seeing the ancient pueblo—or adobe village—atop the stern Acoma (āk'ō-mā) mesa. This is the very same mesa that Oñate visited in 1599 and had so much trouble conquering. It was old even then. Acoma is said to be the oldest inhabited town in the United States—but who is there to say which one of those ancient pueblos goes back the farthest?

Running more or less north and south through New Mexico are imposing mountain chains formed by various movements of the earth's crust. Some of them are a part of the Rocky Mountain system; west of the Rio Grande runs the continental divide. Here and there are high, pointed mountains, once volcanoes which long ago pushed their way through the earth's crust and poured out lava in great sheets over the tablelands and into the valleys. Much of the lava is very ancient, but some of it may have been

## THE HISTORY OF NEW MEXICO



Large stretches of New Mexico were dry and useless before settlers moved in and dug wells to tap underground waters, and built dams to irrigate the land. One famous stretch, ninety miles long and without a single spring, was called the *Jornada del Muerto*—

"Dead Man's Journey"—by the Spaniards, who no doubt had excellent reasons for giving it so grim a name. The dam pictured above is on the Pecos River in the dry southeastern part of the state. It is one of the works of the Bureau of Reclamation.

formed as recently as a thousand years ago, for the Indians have a legend which speaks of great "rivers of fire."

The southern part of the state is much lower than the northern part, with an average elevation of 3,000 feet. It is hotter and drier there, and the plants and animals are quite different from those in the more temperate highlands. And this is very important, for with irrigation the fertile soil can be made to grow all sorts of tropical fruits. As Nature manages things, this is the home of the cactus and other drought-resisting plants. In the southeastern corner of the state is a vast barren stretch of level land known as the Staked Plain, a part of the Great Plains region of our country. It is so dry here that almost nothing grows. On the western edge of this desert are the famous Carlsbad Caverns, which we have described on other pages.

### A Desert Snowy White

Another desert, the only one of its kind in the world, lies in the south-central part of the state. Here for three hundred square miles stretch dazzling sand dunes as white as the purest snow. But if you were to examine this sand under a microscope, you

would see that it is not made of the ordinary rounded quartz grains that we are used to. Each grain is a tiny crystal of gypsum (*jŭp'sŭm*)—a fine white flake with smooth sides. It is said that one can ski and toboggan on these dunes, just as if they were snow drifts! Not less interesting than this queer white world are the reptiles and insects that have made their homes here. To protect themselves from their enemies they have taken on the color of their surroundings and are completely white.

### What Is an "Alkali Flat"?

Through this part of the state there are many "alkali (*ăl'kă-lī*) flats"—that is, level stretches of salt and other minerals left by lakes which form in the rainy season but dry up as soon as the rains are over. Because they have no outlet they leave behind them, spread over the soil, all the minerals that the water held in solution. The same thing happens throughout the dry western states.

For as we have said, New Mexico is very dry, with only six inches of rain a year in some places in the south. Winds from the Pacific that make their way over the mountains bring a little moisture during a short



## THE HISTORY OF NEW MEXICO

rainy season in winter, and monsoons from the south bring a short rainy season in late July and August. These are not the widespread rains of the East, but local thunderstorms. Often one can stand in the hot sun in an area that is completely dry and watch many such storms going on around one. This is the time of year when bone-dry arroyos (ă-roî'ô)—or water courses—become raging torrents for a few hours. But in the dry season even such streams as do not disappear altogether, shrink to a mere trickle. Often one finds a large river bed without so much as a cup of water in it. If you ask what has happened to the stream, the people will reply that a cow must have come along and lapped it up! In spite of all this, New Mexico manages to have over fourteen inches of rainfall a year—more than her western neighbor, Arizona. But still one can cure meat without any salt, just by leaving it out in the sun; and the dry air has preserved for us much of the perishable goods of the prehistoric Indians.

A long time ago—but perhaps not so long ago as people used to think—when prehistoric animals such as the camel, the mammoth, and the giant ground sloth roamed the United States, there lived in New Mexico a race of hunters. No skeletons of these people have ever come to light, but their beautifully shaped flint weapons have been found embedded in the bones of the animals they hunted. These were first discovered in New Mexico, but they have since been

found in other states. Afterward came the "basket makers," a step more advanced than the men who lived before them. Then finally came the Pueblo peoples, with quite an advanced civilization and a remarkably organized community life. They built their beautiful little cities several stories high away up against the cliffs, in protected

canyons, and sometimes in tremendous caves shaped like an oyster shell.

They managed well in agriculture by irrigating the parched land. But sometime during the thirteenth century—perhaps because of a long drought or possibly because the Navajos and Apaches (ă-păch'ê) drove them out—they abandoned their canyon homes and took refuge on the mesas, often cultivating the land on the adjoining plains. There some of their descendants, the modern Pueblo Indians, live to this day, keeping many of their ancient customs and practicing the form of communism that has been handed down

to them over so many centuries. They do not belong to any one stock, but are made up of representatives of different tribes—Hopis (hō'pê), Zuñis (zōō'nyê), Keresans (kêr'ê-săn), and Tanoans (tă'nô-ăn), who have taken to a settled way of life.

### The Lure of Gold

Spanish explorers heard repeated tales of the tremendous riches to be found in the Indian country just north of old Mexico, and in 1536 a friar named Marcos de Niza (dă nê'thă) was sent from Mexico to see



Photo by Soil Conservation Service, U. S. Dept. of Agriculture

When the Spaniards moved into the Southwest they brought with them old-world sheep and cattle, as well as horses. These soon multiplied on the ranges, and became the mainstay of the inhabitants. But it remained for American "cow kings" and "sheep barons," at about the time of the Civil War, to turn cattle and sheep raising into a vast and profitable industry. The cattle above are grazing on an open range in New Mexico.

## THE HISTORY OF NEW MEXICO



Photo by Gallup C. of C

The Pueblo Indians of New Mexico have been living in communal "apartment houses" like this one for many hundreds of years. The sun-baked walls last well in this dry land, and merge in coloring with the surrounding rocks. The most exciting time to visit a pueblo is on the feast day of its patron saint, for then

the Indians put on their beautiful ceremonial costumes and dance for hours to the intoxicating throb of a drum. Their dances are many and varied and each has its appropriate costumes. The picture shows a view of San Ildefonso, a pueblo near Santa Fe. It is famous for its pottery.

what it was all about. He got as far as the Zuñi pueblos, and then hurried back with glowing tales of wealth in the "Seven Cities of Cibola" (sē'bō-lä). Accordingly the great Coronado (kō'rō-nä'thō) started out with a party in 1540 to conquer the region. He marched up the valley of the Rio Grande (rē'ō grän'dä), New Mexico's historic river which, flowing the full length of the state, has from earliest times seen processions of travelers follow its green banks along the trail between old Mexico and Santa Fe.

### What Were the Famous "Seven Cities"?

But the famous Spaniard met with bitter disappointment. His famous "Seven Cities" turned out to be the seven meager little pueblos of the Zuñi Indians. He conquered them and the other pueblos of Arizona and New Mexico, and set up headquarters near what is now Bernalillo (bēr'nä-lē'yō). Then, with a small party, he went on as far as Kansas, always searching for gold which he never found. Worn out and disgusted, he finally went back to Mexico again.

Some fifty-odd years later Juan de Oñate (hwän dä ò-nyä'tä) and his followers started

out from Mexico to settle this new land, which was expected to yield considerable wealth for the Spanish coffers. He planted his first settlement (1598) at San Juan de los Caballeros (sän hwän dä lös kä-bä-yä'rōs), and in 1609 he founded Santa Fe—the City of the Holy Faith—on the site of what had once been an Indian pueblo. It became the capital of all the province, which included Arizona and parts of other states. To-day the beautiful old town is capital of New Mexico—the oldest seat of government in the United States and the second oldest city founded by white men.

### The Old Royal Province

Then followed years when the province grew more and more Spanish, on the surface at least. Royal governors came and went, bringing their silver and household goods and their dark-haired, bejeweled ladies to the thick-walled palace in Santa Fe. Franciscan friars dedicated their lives to the dangerous work of converting the Indians, and built beautiful churches and missions, many of which stand to this day in the heart of the

## THE HISTORY OF NEW MEXICO

oldest pueblos. In 1680 the Indians, torn between their stern old beliefs and the strange new pitiful teachings, revolted against the new religion, which was so at odds with their tribal life, and drove out their pale-faced conquerors. But in 1696 the Spaniards under Diego de Vargas (dyä'gō dā vār'gäs) had reconquered the province, and life went on much as it had gone on before. To be sure, the region had only some 2,000 Spaniards altogether, but they led a colorful life on their ranches and in the capital at Santa Fe, and whenever they could, they brought to their desert homes the customs of old Spain. The fierce Navajos and Apaches, warlike hunters who had never settled down to the peaceful pueblo life, gave trouble from time to time, but for the most part life was pleasant, with a gay monotony born of the genial, healthful climate and distance from civilization.

In 1821 Mexico at last succeeded in throwing off the yoke of Spain and became a separate nation, with New Mexico as a northern province. But the change made little difference to the people of those little desert settlements. For them the chief change lay in the fact that now they could bring in openly the goods they had been getting from the American towns along the Missouri River. It was cheaper to buy from the East the various manufactured articles they needed from the outside world than it was to bring things up from Vera Cruz (vä'rä krōōs'), in old Mexico. So a thriving trade sprang up along the famous

Santa Fe Trail, which joined the old Spanish city to Independence and Kansas City, back in Missouri. By 1840 the wagon trains that went jolting along the trail were carrying westward nearly half a million dollars worth of goods a year, and were taking back the wool and pelts grown on the ranches that were scattered over the high plateaus.

About this time the Republic of Texas was claiming all the land west to the Rio Grande, and even tried to seize it by armed force. Two expeditions failed. But things went differently when war broke out between Mexico and the United States in 1846. Then General Kearny rode into Santa Fe and set up a military government of the whole territory, which became the legal property of the United States when the war came to a close in 1848. The brave old Spanish days were over. There was a good deal of disorder for several years, but Congress established the whole region as the Territory of New Mexico in 1850. In



Photo by Gallup C. of C.

This Indian girl of the Santa Clara pueblo carries her water jar on her head. The jar is of the simple shiny black ware made at the pueblo. Notice the girl's graceful and becoming costume. The white deerskin boots are a common article of attire among the Pueblo Indians.

1853 the Gadsden Purchase added a small piece of land which forms the present boundary with Mexico. Ten years later the territory was given the boundaries that the state now has. All of Arizona was then cut away. A small part of what is now Colorado had been sliced off two years before.

During the Civil War New Mexico saw a certain amount of bloodshed, but was taken by Northern forces in 1862. After the war the development of the region began in good earnest. Sheep and cattle raisers came flocking in, bringing their usual feud, which

---

## THE HISTORY OF NEW MEXICO

even resulted in bloodshed at the time of the Lincoln County War (1877-1880). In 1880 the railroads came, and with them the growth of mining and irrigation, for now the people of New Mexico, who had never been able to use their rivers for shipping, could at last find an easy market for their goods. More and more settlers came, as the Navajos and Apaches left off their warlike ways, and in 1912 New Mexico was admitted to the Union, the fourth in size among the states.

To-day grazing is New Mexico's most important industry. The mild, dry climate and the high, grassy plains, especially those in the east, make the state ideal for stock raising. The animals can be turned out to pasture all the year round; no winter shelter is needed. First come sheep—somewhat over 15,000,000 of them, with wool a very valuable product. Yet cattle and dairy products bring much more wealth to New Mexico than sheep do, and are increasing in importance. In 1934 the total value of live stock was \$26,800,000. To-day the income from cattle and dairy products alone is over \$60,000,000.

### Farms in the Desert

Agriculture depends largely upon the help of irrigation, though dry farming—which we have described on other pages—has been greatly developed. The national government has aided the state by building irrigation projects. The stupendous dam at Elephant Butte (büt), in the Rio Grande Valley, waters 180,000 acres of soil in New Mexico and Texas, and certain lands in Mexico besides. Artesian wells help a good many of the farmers in the southern part of the state. New Mexico's crops now have a considerable value. Hay, cotton, corn, oats, wheat, barley, sorghums, potatoes, apples, and grapes are the ones that bring most money. In spite of the rainless climate one may see broad alfalfa fields, orchards of apples and pears, and flourishing vineyards. Farmers are planting more and more cantaloupes and truck crops. The yucca, which needs no watering, is also coming to be important as a substitute for soap.

Mining has grown steadily in value; and vast undeveloped coal lands, containing 190,000,000,000 tons, and large deposits of

untouched gypsum promise future wealth. Until 1912 coal, mined in the north, ranked first among New Mexico's minerals, but since that time oil has taken first place, with potassium salts, copper, natural gas, zinc, coal, and natural gasoline following. Silver, gold, lead, turquoise, fluorspar, and tantalum are also mined. Silver City in the southwest is an important mining center.

### What Does New Mexico Manufacture?

Lumber is of no great financial significance, but along with coke, it has helped develop the chief manufacturing industries in the state. Wool-scouring factories are busy places, and manufacturing in general is spreading. A leading industry is the construction and repair of railway equipment. It is interesting to find that another of the state's industries is the repairing of automobiles. There is also a good deal of dairying.

The "Sunshine State" has had extreme difficulty with the problem of educating its varied population. The high percentage of citizens who cannot read and write 13.3 percent—results from the large number of Mexicans. These people have been handicapped by the disordered conditions that lasted so long in Mexico and by the fact that often they do not stay in either country very long. Their way of life is different from that of the native-born whites, and many of them speak only Spanish. The 35,000 Indians live on government reservations, where the schooling is good. For advanced students of all kinds there are good schools of higher learning.

### Famous Indian Potters

The Indian population of New Mexico is increasing, especially in the pueblos, for the United States government has in recent years been gradually closing some of the settlements in out-of-the-way localities in other parts of the country, and forming an organized settlement in the Southwest. Except for nine Hopi villages in Arizona, all of the Pueblo Indians live in New Mexico. They are diligent farmers, but their true fame rests on their pottery. One cannot travel many miles along the highway without coming on a little knot of Indian women by the roadside,

## THE HISTORY OF NEW MEXICO

selling the beautiful pottery which they have made and decorated so skillfully. The potter's wheel is often still unknown to them, and many of the pots are colored with a permanent dye which the Indians have made for centuries from roots and desert berries. The wonderfully inventive and complicated designs with which they cover their simplest pots are the envy and admiration of even the best white artists. In fact many artists and writers have come to Taos (tous), a famous pueblo in the mountains of the north, in order to draw inspiration from this ancient art that is still so wonderfully alive. What is probably the finest pottery of all comes from the pueblo of San Ildefonso (săn ěl'dă-fōn'sō), not far from Santa Fe, but many pueblos make bowls and plates and jars that are very beautiful. With the coming of the white artists Taos and the city of Santa Fe have become one of our country's most important centers of vigorous American art.

### Dances for the Rain Gods

If you have the good fortune to visit a pueblo at just the right time, you may see another art for which the Pueblo Indians are famous. They have kept the ancient custom of primitive dances and ceremonial rites, which are always exciting and colorful performances. Those festivals attract a great many tourists every year, especially to Gallup, where Indians from all the tribes meet to dance their tribal dances. For though the Indians have accepted Christianity, their ancient beliefs still strike deep, and they would feel thoroughly insecure if they failed to invoke the rain gods and other tribal deities that they feel have power to shape their lives.

The Navajo Indians are very different from their fierce forefathers of a few generations ago. They have become farmers and herdsmen, while as a side line they weave magnificent many-colored blankets. The weavers do their work with great speed and ease, yet each blanket takes a long time to finish, for the patterns are complicated and very delicate. The Navajos are also renowned for the carefully wrought silver ornaments which they stud with beautiful turquoise from New Mexico mines. The Apaches weave baskets, as do the Pueblos and Navajos. Like all the Indian works of art, these baskets are covered with handsome designs in dyes, and are beautifully shaped.

The visitor comes away from New Mexico with a feeling that the interesting culture of these Indians has given the state an especial charm. Indian ruins and Indian arts draw thousands of tourists every year, as also do the great Carlsbad Caverns. The mild, dry climate brings other hundreds who are seeking health, for the air of New Mexico is especially adapted to the healing of lung and throat diseases and of sinus infections. Fewer people die of lung diseases in New Mexico than in any other state. Santa Fe and Albuquerque (ăl'bû-kür'kê) are both famous resorts, where people come for rest and health and a glimpse of magnificent natural scenery. Albuquerque is New Mexico's largest city. It dates back to 1706, but to-day is a busy modern center for the state's transportation system, its herding and farming industries, and its manufactures. From this old town one may go to visit the yet older pueblo villages where the mysterious life of the red man still flows on in channels carved six or eight hundred years ago.



## NEW MEXICO

**AREA:** 121,666 square miles—4th in rank.

**LOCATION:** New Mexico, one of the Mountain states of the Southwest, lies between 31° 20' and 37° N. Lat. and between 103° and 109° W. Long. It is bounded on the north by Colorado, on the east by Oklahoma and Texas, on the south by Texas, and on the west by Arizona.

**PHYSICAL FEATURES:** In general New Mexico is a high rolling plateau from which rise various mountain chains running in general north and south. It lies mostly in the plateau region of the United States, at the southern end of the Rockies, but the section east of the mountains belongs to the Great Plains. Through the west-central part of the state runs the valley of New Mexico's principal river, the Rio Grande (1,800 m. long), whose branches have brought down sediment to build up a fertile valley floor. The river enters from Colorado and crosses the state on its way to the Gulf of Mexico. East of it the Sangre de Cristo Mountains extend into the state from the north and form the east wall of the San Luis Basin, through which the Rio Grande flows. On the mountains' eastern slopes rises the Canadian River (906 m. long), which flows eastward to join the Arkansas. Its waters eventually reach the Gulf of Mexico. Here too rises the Cimarron (600 m. long), another stream that joins the Arkansas. South of the Sangre de Cristo Mountains, which are the finest in the state, are two other mountain chains that form the divide between the Rio Grande and the Pecos (735 m. long), a stream that rises on the southern slopes of the Sangre de Cristo Range and flows south through the state to join the Rio Grande in Texas. East of it, in the southeast corner of the state, is a barren plateau that stretches eastward into Texas and is known as the Staked Plain, or Llano Estacado; it is about 3,000 ft. high. The continental divide lies west of the Rio Grande. The mountains there consist of a good many ranges, which in general run north and south. In the north are the San Juan Mountains, and south of them the Jemez. The divide follows the still lower ranges that lie to the west, for it is from their slopes that the streams flow west to join the Colorado and so find their way to the Pacific. In the north is the San Juan (360 m. long), which rises in Colorado and joins the Colorado River in Utah. Farther south are certain headwaters of the Little Colorado (300 m. long), which joins the Colorado in Arizona. And in the southeastern corner of the state is the Gila (630 m. long), which crosses Arizona before it enters the Colorado. The divide follows the Mount Taylor Mountains, the Chusca Mountains, and the Zufis, and then turns a little toward the southeast till it reaches the crest of the Black Range, which carries it on toward the state's southern border. North and west of the Black Range are the Mogollons, and east of it, across the Rio Grande, is the San Andreas Range. West of the Pecos, near the state's southern border, are the well-known Guadalupe Mountains, with the famous Carlsbad Caverns a little to the east of them. That part of New Mexico lying west of the Pecos and south of the main chain of the Rockies belongs to the Basin Range Province of our country. Here, between the scattering mountain masses, are small basins where the drainage is likely to be shut in by the surrounding heights. Often a lake forms on the basin floor in the rainy season, and when it dries up leaves a deposit of mineral salts behind it. These beds of salt and soda are known as "alkali flats." Volcanoes have been at work in various places in New Mexico. The northwestern part of the state has a good many lava flows, and noble Mount Taylor, over 11,000 ft. high, is an extinct volcano. The highest point in the state is North Truchas Peak (13,306 ft. high), in the Sangre de Cristo Range. The lowest point (2,876 ft.) is along the Pecos River on the state's

southern border. The average elevation is 5,700 ft. New Mexico has a great many mesas, or flat-topped hills that stand up above the surrounding plains like great tables. There are no lakes, and the little rivers, dwindling to nothing in the dry season, are of no use for navigation. Only the Rio Grande may be used by boats—flat-bottomed ones that can travel varying distances at certain seasons. Because in the flood season, when the snows melt on the mountains, this river deposits a great deal of rich silt, it is called "the Nile of New Mexico." The state has a good deal of irrigated land. There are 131 square miles of water.

**CLIMATE:** New Mexico has a climate that is a boon to people suffering from tuberculosis, sinus infections, arthritis, and similar diseases. There is a great deal of brilliant sunshine, but the air is light and dry, and the nights are always cool by reason of the state's high elevation. There are two rainy seasons, the principal one in July and August, when winds from the Pacific, already greatly dried in crossing the mountains, bring short thunder showers; and another period of rain in winter, when monsoon winds blow from a southerly direction. Most of their moisture has already been absorbed before they get to New Mexico, but like the winds of summer they drop the bulk of their load on the high mountain tops, with a little left over for the valleys. The state averages 15 inches of rain a year, but parts of the southern desert have as little as six inches yearly, while certain mountain regions have as much as 25 or 30 inches. Of course the mountains are cooler than the lowlands. Santa Fe, which lies where plain and mountain meet, has a mean Jan. temperature of 29° F. and a mean July temperature of 69°. Its record high is 97°, its record low -13°. Its mean annual temperature is about 49°. In the lower Rio Grande Valley the mean annual temperature is 60°, and the highest ever recorded is 106°. The valleys usually have about two snows a year, and these soon disappear. On the mountain tops the snows get very deep and little by little feed out their moisture to the rivers in the dry season. Those melting snows are a steady source of water to the state.

**INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING:** The chief institutions are the University of New Mexico at Albuquerque, the New Mexico School of Mines at Socorro, the state college of agriculture and mechanic arts near Las Cruces, the Eastern New Mexico Junior College at Portales, the New Mexico Normal University at Las Vegas, the state teachers' college at Silver City, the New Mexico Military Institute at Roswell, and a Spanish-American normal school at El Rio.

**CHARITIES AND CORRECTION:** New Mexico has an insane asylum at Las Vegas, a home for the deaf and dumb at Santa Fe, an institute for the blind at Alamogordo, a miners' hospital at Raton, a state reform school at Springer, an orphans' home at Santa Fe, a welfare home for girls under eighteen at Albuquerque, and a penitentiary at Santa Fe. New Mexico administers capital punishment by electrocution.

**POLITICAL FACTS:** New Mexico is still governed under her original constitution of 1911; there has been some slight amendment. Laws are made by a legislature consisting of a Senate of 24 members, who serve for four years, and a House of Representatives of 49 members, who serve for two years. The legislature meets every two years for a 60-day session.

The executive department consists of the governor and his staff, all of them elected for two-year terms and none of them eligible for any state office for two years after serving two consecutive terms.

## NEW MEXICO—Continued

The judiciary consists of a supreme court, district courts, probate courts, justices of the peace, and such other inferior courts as may be established by law. The supreme court is made up of three justices, the nine district courts of one judge each. Each county has a probate court.

The cities, townships, and counties have the usual local governments, and cities have the right to adopt the commission form of government; the city-manager form has not been legalized.

All citizens of the United States over twenty-one years of age are allowed to vote provided that they have lived in the state a year, in the county ninety days, and in the precinct thirty days before the time of election. All candidates for office are nominated at primary elections, and there are heavy punishments for bribery and corrupt practice in the casting of votes.

A modified form of the referendum is in force.

The State Corporation Committee has general control of corporations, and specific labor regulations govern working conditions. A state mounted police was established in 1919.

The capital of New Mexico is at Santa Fe.

**PARKS:** Carlsbad Cavern National Park, established in 1930 in the southeastern corner of the state, covers 71 square miles, and contains what are probably the most remarkable limestone caves in the world.

**MONUMENTS:** Aztec Ruins National Monument in the northwestern corner of the state preserves a large pueblo containing 500 rooms. The structure, which is of sandstone, was built in the shape of an "E" and is three stories high.

The Bandelier National Monument covers 27,049 acres of rugged mountain and canyon, the former abode of a prehistoric group of cliff dwellers, who have left their tiny caves carved into the face of the cliff and their communal earthworks in the valley of the canyon of the Rito de los Frijoles near Santa Fe.

Capulin Mountain National Monument covers 680 acres in Union County and contains Capulin Mountain, or El Capulin, a great volcanic cone of cinders that rises 8,000 feet above sea level.

Chaco Canyon National Monument covers 18,039 acres in San Juan County and contains the ruins of eighteen prehistoric Indian villages, representing the highest cultural advancement in the Southwest at that time. The largest pueblo was originally five stories high and contained 800 rooms, which gave shelter to some 1,200 people. It is built in the shape of a semicircle 667 ft. long and 315 ft. wide at its widest part.

El Morro National Monument covers 240 acres in Valencia County and contains an enormous rock of sandstone weathered into the shape of a castle. Long ago it sheltered various bands of explorers who carved their names and important historical inscriptions on its sides. Among them is an inscription left by Juan de Oñate.

Gran Quivira National Monument covers 451 acres in Socorro County and contains ruins of one of the most important early Spanish missions, together with what remains of a number of Indian pueblos.

White Sands National Monument covers 140,247 acres in Otero County and contains glistening white "sands" of gypsum, the most remarkable deposit of its kind in the world.

Gila Cliff Dwellings National Monument in Catron County lies in the wilderness area of the Gila National Forest and can be reached only by pack trip.

New Mexico has 10,257,263 acres of national forest.

**GAME AND BIRD RESERVATIONS:** Refuges protecting birds are Carlsbad Refuge in Eddy County, Mesilla in Dona Ana County—and extending into Texas—and Rio Grande in Sierra County. Birds and rare or fur-bearing mammals find safety in Bitter Lake Refuge in Chaves County, Bosque del Apache in Socorro County, and San Andres in Dona Ana County.

**NAME:** New Mexico's name is older than that of any other state except Florida. Though it is not quite certain who first applied it to this region, we believe that it was Antonio de Espejo, who in a narrative of 1583 gave the title to the country, which seemed to him to resemble in many ways the Mexico which had already been discovered. When the land was organized into a territory under the government of the United States it kept its old name, and when the Enabling Act for New Mexican statehood was passed in 1910, the new state was given the name of the territory. As a matter of fact the state was not admitted to the Union until 1912. It has been said that the region was once known as the Kingdom of San Francisco. There is a good deal of difficulty in tracing the word "Mexico" to its source, but there is evidence that it comes from the name of the ancient Mexican god Mexitli or Mexitl. He was also called Uitzilopochtli. "Co," the last syllable of the word, comes from the Sanskrit "ku," meaning "land." So the word "Mexico" probably means "the land of Mexitli" or of Mexitl.

**NICKNAMES:** New Mexico is called the Cactus State or the Land of the Cactus from the many cacti growing within its borders. The large numbers of Spanish-speaking people and its strong Spanish traditions have given it the name of the Spanish State. Because of its abundance of sunshine it is called the Sunshine State, and because of its fine climate and cheap land it is called the Land of Opportunity. Since it has had a good deal of influence on American art and literature and is the happy hunting ground of all those interested in American archaeology it is sometimes referred to as the Land of the Delight Makers.

**STATE FLOWER:** The yucca flower was selected by the school children of New Mexico and officially adopted in 1927.

**STATE SONG:** "O Fair New Mexico," by Elizabeth Garrett; adopted in 1917.

**STATE FLAG:** In 1915 the legislature of New Mexico approved a flag consisting of a yellow field in the center of which was the ancient Zia sun symbol in red, the two colors to reproduce the red and yellow of old Spain. The sun symbol consists of four groups of rays set at right angles, each group containing four rays.

**STATE MOTTO:** "Crescit Eundo," meaning "It grows as it goes"; taken from Lucretius' "De Rerum Naturae," Book VI, line 341.

**STATE BIRD:** The road runner.

**INTERESTING FACTS:** New Mexico observes New Year's Day, Washington's Birthday, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Columbus Day, Armistice Day, Thanksgiving Day, and Christmas Day.

At Los Alamos, in San Miguel County, is a government laboratory where atomic bombs are assembled and atomic research is carried on.

At Elephant Butte is the Elephant Butte Dam, one of the largest of the government dams and an important source of water for the Southwest.

New Mexico has many thousands of Indians living on government reservations. For the most part they are pueblo dwellers, and carry on their ancient Indian crafts. There are a large number of reservations:

## NEW MEXICO—Continued

Ute Mountain, Jicarilla, Mescalero, Navajo; and the pueblos of Acoma, Cochiti, Isleta, Jemez, Laguna, Nambe, Picuris, Pojoaque, Sandia, San Felipe, San Ildefonso, San Juan, Santa Ana, Santa Clara, Santo Domingo, Sia, Taos, Tesuque, and Zia. The Indians mostly belong to the Apache, Navajo, and Pueblo

peoples. Every year during the last week in August the Inter-Tribal Indian Ceremonial is held for three days at Gallup. Sometimes as many as twenty-four tribes take part. There are dances, athletic events, and exhibits of products of Indian art and handicraft. The ceremonial has done much to stimulate Indian art.

Population of state, 1940, 531,818							
Counties							
Bernalillo (C3)	69,391	Sandoval (C3)	13,898	Clovis * (F4)	10,065	Lordsburg * (A6)	3,101
Catron <sup>1</sup> (F3)	4,881	San Juan (A2)	17,115	Columbus (B7)	265	Los Lunas (C4)	686
Chaves (E5)	23,980	San Miguel (E3)	27,910	Deming * (B6)	3,608	Lovington (F6)	1,916
Colfax (E2)	18,718	Santa Fe (D3)	30,826	Des Moines (F2)	289	Magdalena (B4)	1,323
Curry (F4)	18,159	Sierra (B5)	6,962	Dexter (E5)	734	Maxwell (E2)	483
		Socorro <sup>1</sup> (B5)	11,422	Elida (F5)	330	Melrose (F4)	851
				Encino (D4)	652	Mosquero (F3)	742
De Baca (E4)	3,725	Taos (D2)	18,528	Espanola (C3)	643	Mountainair	
Dona Ana (C6)	30,411	Torrance (D4)	11,026	Estancia (C4)	668	(C4)	1,477
		Union <sup>2</sup> (F2)	9,095	Eunice (F6)	1,227	Portales * (F4)	5,104
		Valencia (B3)	20,245			Raton * (F2)	7,607
Eddy (F6)	24,311	Cities, Towns, and Villages		Farmington (A2)	2,161	Roswell * (E5)	13,482
Grant (A6)	20,050	[Places marked with an asterisk (*) were clas- sified as urban in 1940]		Folsom (F2)	360	Roy (E3)	1,138
Guadalupe (E4)	8,646			Fort Sumner			
Harding <sup>2</sup> (F3)	4,374	Alamogordo *		(E4)	1,669		
Hidalgo (A6)	4,821	(D6)	3,950	Gallup * (A3)	7,041	Santa Fe * (D3)	20,325
Lea (F6)	21,154	Albuquerque *		Grenville (F2)	143	Santa Rosa (E4)	2,310
Lincoln (D5)	8,557	(C3)	35,449	Hagerman (E5)	854	Silver City *	
Luna (B6)	6,457	Artesia (E6)	4,071	Hatch (B6)	822	(A6)	5,044
McKinley (A3)	23,641	Aztec (A2)	756	Hobbs * (F6)	10,619	Socorro * (C4)	3,712
Mora <sup>2</sup> (E2)	10,981	Bayard (A6)	764	Hope (E6)	289	Springer (E2)	1,314
Otero (D6)	10,522	Belen * (C4)	3,038	Hot Springs *		Taos (D2)	965
Quay (F3)	12,111	Capitan (D5)	932	(D3)	2,940	Texico (F4)	478
Rio Arriba (C2)	25,352	Carlsbad * (F6)	7,116	Jal (F6)	1,157	Tucumcari *	
Roosevelt (F5)	14,549	Carrizozo (D5)	1,457	Lake Arthur		(F3)	6,194
		Cimarron (E2)	744	(F5)	279	Tularosa (C5)	1,446
		Clayton * (F2)	3,188	Las Cruces *		Vaughn (D4)	1,331
				(C6)	8,385	Wagon Mound	
				Las Vegas city *		(E2)	979
				(D3)	5,941	Willard (C4)	462

<sup>1</sup> Catron organized from part of Socorro in 1921

<sup>2</sup> Harding organized from parts of Mora and Union in 1921



---

# **The HISTORY of NEW YORK**

---

## **Reading Unit No. 31**

---

### **NEW YORK: THE EMPIRE STATE**

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statisticl and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

#### ***Interesting Facts Explained***

Where the Five Nations of the Iroquois League held sway, 8-269  
How the adventures of Hiawatha became legendary, 8-270  
The first white man to see New York, 8-270  
The arrival of Henry Hudson, 8-271  
How Wall Street got its name, 8-273

Why Peter Schuyler took five Iroquois chiefs to England, 8-275  
When troubled times came to an end, 8-277  
New York's first railroad, 8-279  
How New York became the greatest manufacturing state in the Union, 8-280  
New York City, the greatest port in the world, 8-281

#### ***Picture Hunt***

What has enabled New York to build more skyscrapers than any other city? 8-267

What suspension bridge is longer than the George Washington Bridge? 8-270

#### ***Related Material***

Some famous sons of New York, 13-293-97, 324-25, 326-27, 425-26, 333-34, 336  
Colonial life in America, 7-145-55  
Who were the first to colonize the Cape of Good Hope? 5-476  
Why did Congress limit the number of immigrants who could come to America? 7-337  
The busy romance of the har-

bor, 10-243-50  
When did slums first appear in America? 7-283  
How is the best paper made? 9-276  
Where is marble found in the United States? 9-380  
What accident gave us the camera? 10-448  
The tragedy of our abandoned farms, 7-456

#### ***Practical Applications***

What has to be done for our immigrants? 8-278

What should be done for prisoners? 8-278

#### ***Leisure-time Activities***

PROJECT NO. 1: Read the story of "Rip Van Winkle," by Washington Irving.

PROJECT NO. 2: Make a model of a skyscraper.

## NEW YORK: *the* EMPIRE STATE

### *The Story of the Great State Which Has More Influence in the Affairs of Our Country than Any Other State in the Union*

**T**HERE is no way to say which is our country's greatest state, perhaps because there is no very good way to define greatness. Size, wealth, resources, natural beauty, culture—how shall we say which of these are most important? But under any rating New York State would come close to the top, for she ranks high on almost any count. As a matter of fact, in many ways she is worthy to be compared with various of the world's smaller nations. Her teeming population, her fabulous wealth, her busy industries, her wide influence in the affairs of the world would give her an enviable place even if she were an independent land. Perhaps that is why she is called the "Empire State," a very proud title indeed. It is not that she is supreme in any one respect. Her fruit industry alone would make many another state famous, yet in New York it is overshadowed by several other industries. The state's busy life is a good deal more varied than the life of many a country.

The title "Empire State" would lead one to think that New York was of gigantic proportions, covering as much territory as most nations. But this is not true. Actually, New York ranks twenty-ninth in size among the forty-eight states. This classes her with the smaller, rather than with the larger, states. But her triangular surface contains many different sorts of country and many different geological formations. The result is that, because of her va-

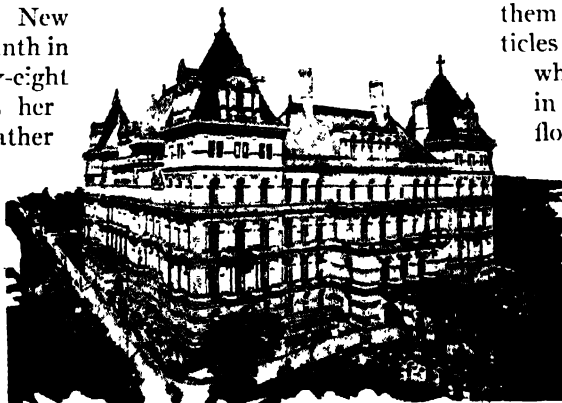
riety, she seems larger than she really is.

The oldest part of the state is a mass of very ancient mountains, the famous Adirondacks (ăd'ī-rŏn'dăks), which lie in the region north of the Mohawk River and east of Lake Ontario. Like the Superior oldland in northern Wisconsin, they are a part of the Laurentian (lô-rĕn'shĭ-ăn) Highlands of Eastern Canada, the oldest land on the continent --some say, in the world. Originally this mass of rock was like a great smooth bulge in the surface of the earth. It had been made out of melted rock, and as the rock cooled off, it was gradually cut up by the streams which flowed off it. To-day the country is very rugged, and full of lakes and streams. This is the highest section in the whole state. Mount Marcy reaches an elevation of 5,344 feet. All of the summits have been cut down greatly from their original height, so it is easy to imagine what tremendous peaks they once were. Now they are no longer jagged rock, but have been chiseled off by the wind and

rain till their crests are rounded and their great masses covered by soil deep enough to anchor fine forests. Of course the streams that carved them up carried them off, bit by bit, as particles of mud and sand,

which were spread out in layers on the ocean floor. Of course the layers differed in material and thickness. Later the particles hardened into rock which was eventually uplifted to form still more dry land. The newer rock then overlapped the

The capital of the Empire State lies on the Hudson River at a point reached by Henry Hudson more than three hundred years ago. A few of the quaint old houses built by the Dutch settlers are still standing at Albany to-day. The state capitol, shown below, is built of white granite, and dominates the city.



## THE HISTORY OF NEW YORK

ancient rocks that had been uplifted first.

In the southeastern part of the state, directly south of the Adirondacks and across the Mohawk River from them, is New York's second great group of mountains, the Catskills, with Slide Mountain 4,204 feet high. These hills were formed much later than the Adirondacks, and out of a very different sort of stone. The rocks of the Catskills are mostly limestones, sandstones, shales, and other rocks which were laid down in layers under the sea

and formed by pressure rather than heat. The rocks of the Adirondacks, on the other hand, are granites, gneisses (nīs), and crystalline (krīs'tāl-īn) rocks, which were formed by melting and then cooling.

The Catskill rocks are constructed on the principle of the snowball or the mud pie, while the Adirondack rocks are more like gelatine or some molten metal which grows solid as it cools.

Both the Adirondacks and the Catskills are famous summer resorts, with fine preserves

for hunting and fishing. They are heavily forested, and in the Adirondacks lumbering is the leading industry. Some iron is mined there, too. The Catskills have been partly cleared for farming, with a good many acres put into pasture land.

### How the Catskill Mountains Were Made

After the Catskill rocks were laid down under the sea which then covered New York, the whole land surface began to rise. From the bottom of the ocean layers of rock were lifted up suddenly—that is, in the course of a few million years!—to an elevation of three

or four thousand feet above the surface of the sea. They lay in a level upland, or plateau (plā-tō'), a continuation of the great Appalachian (āp'ā-lā'chī-ān) Plateau that we find in Pennsylvania. Many of them were soft and crumbly rocks, for they were not very old, geologically speaking, and had not been squeezed together for a very long period. If it had not been for one very tough and hard type of sandstone, the "Catskill sandstone," the whole huge mass of the

Catskill Mountains might have weathered away as fast as it was lifted up. As it is, wherever the Catskill sandstones come to the surface of the ground, the Catskill Mountains have not been worn down very far, even though many deep valleys have been cut out elsewhere. Because so much of the rock in these mountains is soft, they have taken on rounded shapes, instead of standing in the rugged summits which the hard Adirondack rocks formed. So those two mountain regions of New York are very different

in aspect, though both are very beautiful.

To the west and to the east and southeast of the Catskills, the surface of New York is much more level. To the west it slopes gradually in one great plateau to the shores of Lake Erie (ē'rī) and Lake Ontario (ōn-tā'rī-ō). This plateau, like the Catskill Mountains, has been greatly cut up by streams. Everywhere in New York there are rivers, valleys, and lakes—the gift of the glacier. Lake Champlain (shām-plān'), partly in Canada, is 125 miles long; and Lake George, the largest lake entirely within the state, is famous for its fine scenery.



Cornell, one of the country's leading universities, is built on a hilltop at Ithaca, New York, and overlooks the beautiful waters of Lake Cayuga, one of the Finger Lakes. Goldwin Smith Hall, one of the university's many buildings, is shown here.

## THE HISTORY OF NEW YORK



Photo by the Title Guarantee & Trust Company

On the sixteenth day of August, 1647, William Kieft, now removed from the office of governor, embarked on the "Princess Amelia" to set sail for Holland. He has paused beside his traveling chests to engage in conversation with his successor, Peter Stuyvesant, easily recognizable by his wooden leg. The spot

where they are standing was known as Weeper's Corner, now a part of downtown New York. But Kieft was never to reach Holland, for the captain, unlike most Dutch mariners, seems to have been a poor seaman, and the "Princess" was wrecked off the coast of England.

In the west-central part of the state is a series of beautiful long, narrow lakes, all lying north and south. They look as if some giant had dug long ditches in the earth with the five fingers of his hand, and for this reason they have been known as the Finger Lakes ever since anyone can remember. Even the Indians who lived around them thought they had been made by the five fingers of the Great Spirit.

### The Great Niagara Escarpment

Over this great western plateau, a harder, more resistant rock will be found among the soft rocks which make up most of the plain. Because those hard rocks do not weather away so fast, they stand out above the surface in great ridges and cliffs—or "escarpments." The Niagara limestone is one of these harder rocks. It forms the great cliff over which the Niagara River tumbles as Niagara Falls. Another important limestone is the Helderberg limestone, which has

made a huge cliff along the southern side of the Mohawk River and the western side of the Hudson River near Albany.

To the east and southeast of the Catskills there are many interesting and varied formations. The same folded rocks which become so important farther south, in Pennsylvania, Virginia, West Virginia, and Alabama, are found here in a broad valley which is part of the Great Appalachian Valley that extends all the way from Lake Champlain to northern Alabama. Just as in the south, this valley runs northeast and southwest.

### The Picturesque Hudson Highlands

East of the Appalachian Valley lies a group of picturesque hills known as the Highlands. They are made of ancient crystalline rocks a good deal like those in the Adirondacks. In New York State they form a narrow belt which crosses the Hudson River and runs north into Connecticut and Massachusetts. Here is some of the finest

## THE HISTORY OF NEW YORK



Photo by the Sobelman Syndicate

This is a view of the towering walls and deep canyons of downtown New York, where a large part of the world's business is transacted. Thirty-five of the city's skyscrapers are over five hundred feet high, with the number of their stories ranging from twenty-four to one hundred and two. The tallest of these, the Empire State Building and the Chrysler Building,

are not shown in the picture. The street at the left is Broadway, and the triangular open space is Bowling Green Park, where the old Dutch worthies used to play at bowls. New York has been able to outdo all other cities in the building of skyscrapers because Manhattan Island is underlain by hard rock, which gives the firm foundation these giants need.

## THE HISTORY OF NEW YORK

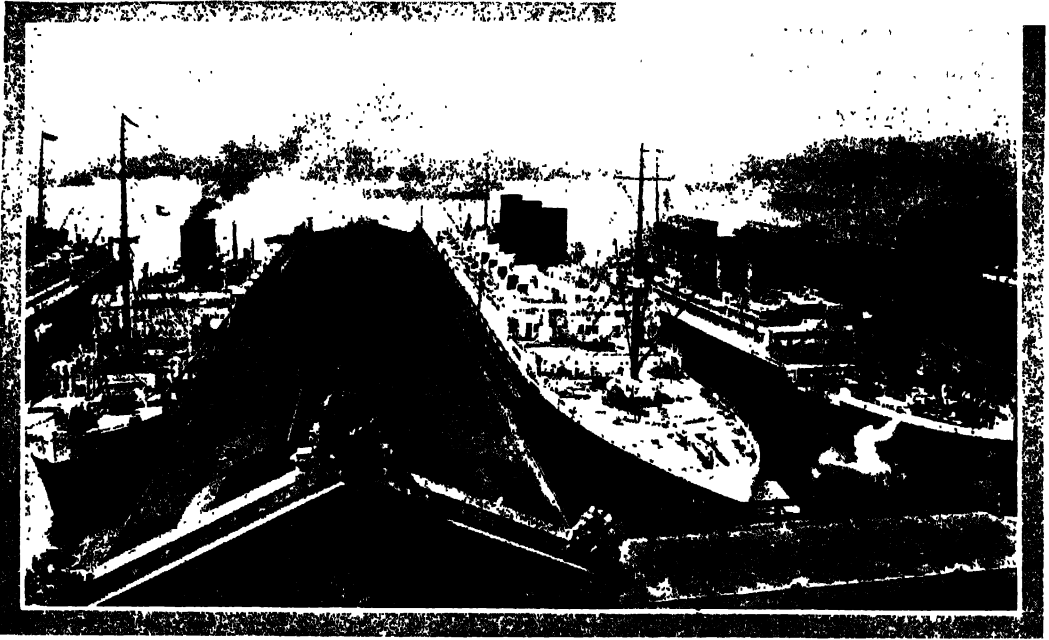


Photo by Port of New York Authority

Every year many thousands of ships enter New York Harbor from foreign lands. This does not include the large number of coastwise vessels that make the great city a port of call. But large and small, giant

liner or tiny tramp, New York has room for them all, for she is blessed with one of the most magnificent harbors in the world. Above is one of the busy piers on the North, or Hudson, River.

scenery in the state—along the Hudson River. The ground on which the heart of New York City stands—Manhattan Island—is an extension of this same belt of ancient rocks. It is as if the larger masses of rock to the north had sent down two long pointed prongs, one crossing the Hudson between Cornwall and Haverstraw and then running down into Pennsylvania, the other coming to an end in Manhattan Island.

### The Hudson's Famous Palisades

South of the Highlands, and west of the Hudson, is the northern end of a belt of very old sandstone which extends down into New Jersey. Out of it rise ridges of harder crystalline rock known as "trap rock." It is of that hard material that the famous Palisades (pāl'ī-sād') along the Hudson are made. In great columns, the rock forms rise like a wall several hundred feet high along the west bank of the lower river, in New Jersey.

Long Island is the only part of New York State lying in the Coastal Plains, which are so important in the states to the south. It

is thought that the belted coastal plain which we have described in our story of New Jersey may once have reached the full length of Long Island. But the earth sank, and let the ocean in behind the crest of the plain, forming Long Island Sound and leaving only the top of the ridge above water, to form this famous island. Here the land is for the most part flat, and almost entirely given over to farming and gardening. All up and down the shores are summer resorts, and in the Sound are famous oyster fisheries. Along the northern part of the island great piles of sand have been heaped up by the glacier, which covered nearly all of New York. In fact on the northern shore of Long Island are some of the finest examples of glacial moraine (mō-rān') and other sorts of glacial deposit to be seen anywhere in the world.

### The Mementoes of the Glacier

For that matter, the marks of the glacier are very clear everywhere in New York State. The trough of the Hudson River, which is so wide and deep that the river

## THE HISTORY OF NEW YORK

alone could not even half fill it, is the work of the glacier. While the land in the Catskills has been rising, the Hudson Valley has been sinking for many, many years. For this reason the sea now comes up into the valley almost as far as Albany (ól'bá-ní), and the old gorge of the river can be traced under the water far out under the ocean. The river water by itself would form a much smaller stream than the Hudson is. Other marks of the glacier are the rounded hills, deep valleys, and the thousands of beautiful waterfalls and lakes scattered over the rest of the state.

### Causes of New York's Greatness

The geography of New York State has probably been the single most important factor in her history. Truly, she has been wonderfully favored. Those long rivers, the Hudson and the Mohawk, give an easy route from the greatest harbor in the world to one of the world's greatest agricultural and manufacturing centers our own Middle West. Buffalo can gather together produce coming from this vast region by way of the Great Lakes, and ship it right through the heart of New York State down to the enormous market which is New York City. Anywhere else, traffic from the west must cross the mountains. To-day fully eighty percent of New York's vast population lives and works within ten miles of this great natural passageway. No wonder the various nations which have struggled to control America have always felt that if they held New York they held the key to the continent. She was a great prize, and everyone fought for her. Perhaps because of that, the beautiful Empire State has always been the home of the vigorous, the intelligent, and the successful.

### The Keepers of the Long House

For when the white man first discovered the Indians of New York State, he did not find a few feeble tribes who were easily frightened and quickly sent off into the dark forest to the west. New York was the seat of something like an empire, an empire with an ancient history and a truly remarkable culture. Here the Five Nations of the Iroquois (ír'ô-kwoi) League held sway, as they

had done for many years—perhaps ever since they had driven away the ancient mound builders, men whose strange mounds and forts are still scattered across the state.

The Iroquois were far from being savages. Politically they were the most advanced of any of the North American Indians. They lived in permanent villages, with houses of wood covered with bark. Those structures were called Long Houses, and long they were, for an Indian house—sometimes they measured as much as twenty by a hundred feet, with separate sections some six by eight feet square for each family. All the families living in a single house were related, usually through the mother's side. Because their kingdom too was a long one—at least four hundred miles from end to end—the Iroquois called themselves, by a kind of pun, "the Keepers of the Long House." There were five tribes among the People of the Long House. The fierce Mohawks (mō'hôk) lived farthest to the east—as far as Lake Champlain—and so their name among the Five Nations was "the Keepers of the Eastern Door." Then came the Oneidas (ô-ní'dá), the Onondagas (ôn'ôn-dô'gá), the Cayugas (kā-vôo'ga) and the Senecas (sên'ê-ká). Because they lived farthest to the west, the Senecas were called "the Keepers of the Western Door." All the Five Nations usually acted together, holding their councils by the shore of Lake Otsego (ôt-sē'gô) or Lake Onondaga.

### Who Were the Iroquois?

Besides the Five Nations there were other tribes belonging to the same great family. The group reached down into Pennsylvania and Maryland, where along the Susquehanna there was a branch known as the Susquehannocks, or Conestogas (kôn'ês-tô'gá). Then there were the Tuscaroras (tús'-kâ-rô'râ) in the Roanoke Valley of Virginia and North Carolina, and the Cherokees (chěr'ô-kē) farther to the south and to the west. Members of this great Iroquoian group were also scattered along both sides of Lake Ontario and Lake Erie, and occupied the banks of the St. Lawrence River as far down as Quebec (kwê-bêk'). The Five Nations united in bitter warfare against various

## THE HISTORY OF NEW YORK

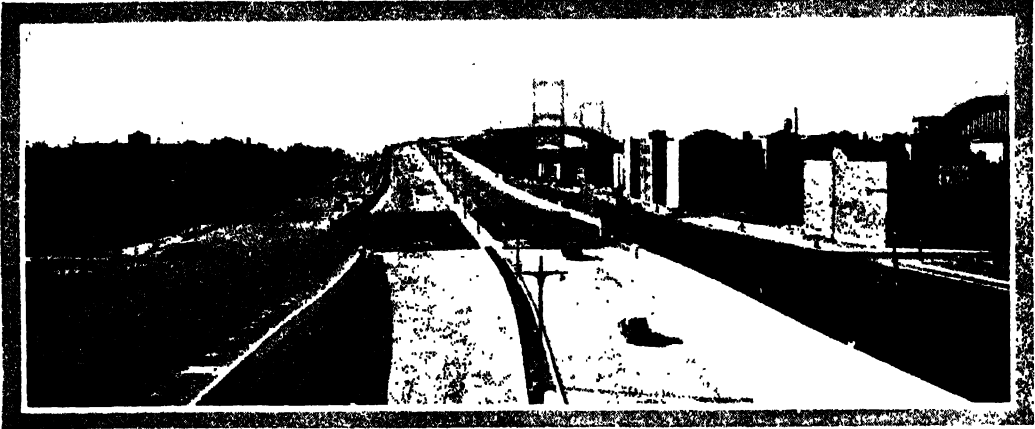


Photo by Triborough Bridge Commission

There are many impressive entrances to New York City—webs of steel that pass above her waterways and tubes of steel that bore underground through silt and rock. The Triborough Bridge, shown here, crosses the East River at Hell Gate. The George Washington Bridge, once the world's longest suspen-

sion bridge but now eclipsed by the Golden Gate Bridge at San Francisco, spans the Hudson. Two traffic tunnels connect the city with New Jersey—the Holland Tunnel, through which a million cars pass every month, and the new Lincoln Tunnel, both tremendous feats of engineering.

other members of the Iroquoian family, and against the Mohegans (mô-hë'găn)—or Mohicans (mô-hë'kăn)—who held the lower Hudson Valley, and the Delawares—or Lenapes (lën'â-pë)—centered in the Delaware Valley. The last two were Algonquian (ăl-gôn'kî-ăn) tribes.

### The Tribe of Hiawatha

In culture and intelligence the Iroquois were among the most highly developed of the North American Indians. They were excellent farmers as well as hunters, and became expert at growing fruit trees as soon as they had their first instructions from white men. Their artistic sense was acute. In fact they are still famous to-day for the beautiful patterns with which they decorate their pottery and birch-bark utensils. And their legends are truly noble stories, especially those dealing with the adventures of Hiawatha (hî'â-wô'thâ), the great Mohawk chief who was said to have founded the Five Nations. Yet in spite of all these achievements, it was a much less admirable quality that made the Iroquois famous. They were the fiercest and most savage fighters of all the North American Indians. They controlled the whole territory from Hudson Bay to North Carolina. The great forts which they built were the wonders of the Indian world, and often proved too strong even for

the white man. With bow and arrow—and then with the long frontier rifle—they were dead shots. For nearly two centuries after the coming of the white man, the Five Nations remained free and equal tribes, respecting the whites and very much respected by them. They reached the height of their power about 1700, and from that time they declined gradually till their ruin in the Revolutionary War.

The first white man to see New York was an Italian named Verrazano (vër'rât-să'nô). He entered the Hudson in April, 1524, and claimed this "beautiful lake" for the King of France, who had paid for his ships. But after this first trip, the French lost interest for a time in all settlements in the New World. Various men probably visited New York after Verrazano, but they left no record. The history of the state really begins in the year 1609.

### Champlain Angers the Iroquois

In 1609 two very important events took place on New York soil. Samuel de Champlain, a Frenchman of noble rank, came down the St. Lawrence River from the French colonies in Canada. In the northern part of New York State he found the Huron (hû'rôn) Indians, who at the time were fighting with the Five Nations and being beaten. They asked Champlain to help



## THE HISTORY OF NEW YORK



Photo by Buffalo C. of C.

Buffalo, one of New York State's most important manufacturing cities, lies at the eastern end of Lake

Erie. The picture shows the city's skyline and a view of the lake in the foreground.

them fight the Iroquois, and led him across Lake Champlain to where a war tribe of Iroquois was camped by the shore. After a short parley, Champlain fired on the Indians with his gun—the first the Iroquois had ever seen—and killed three chiefs.

### A Fateful Enmity

The rest of the band turned and ran, but they remembered Champlain and the French only too well. During the next hundred and fifty years, the Iroquois were never friendly with the French, but attacked them often, raided their forts, scalped their settlers, and finally helped the English to conquer the whole breadth of New France and add it to the English possessions.

The other great event of the year 1609 was the arrival of Henry Hudson, the English explorer who had been hired by the Dutch. After spending the summer of 1609 cruising off Virginia and Delaware in search of a passage to the Pacific Ocean, Hudson sailed up the river which to-day bears his name. In his ship the "Half Moon" he went as far as the point where Albany stands, and called the great stream the "North River"—he had

already called the Delaware the "South River." It would not be true to say that Hudson kept peace with the Indians. He fought with them several times, killed a number of them, and lost one of his own men. But the Indians with whom he fought were not the fierce Mohawks, or any others of the Iroquois. They were the weaker tribes who lived near the mouth of the river—the Mohegans and Manahatas (mä'ná-hä'tá). Those Indians soon gave up all thought of fighting when they saw what rich and fascinating stores of goods the Dutch had to trade.

### Why Early New York Was Dutch

As for the Iroquois, the Dutch were very careful not to anger them, and soon there were Dutch forts and the beginnings of Dutch settlements not only at the mouth of the river but also in Iroquois territory near Albany. During the winter of 1613 a Dutchman named Adrian Block lived in a log cabin on the tip of Manhattan (män-hät'än) Island, at the mouth of the Hudson, and explored the East River, the strait which connects Long Island Sound and New York Bay. Block Island to-day bears his name and

## THE HISTORY OF NEW YORK

honors his discoveries. Because of Henry Hudson's explorations the Dutch claimed the whole of what is now the Eastern United States between Philadelphia and Eastport, Maine. They called the land New Netherland, and in 1614 gave all rights to the fur trade there to a company of Dutch merchants who called themselves the New Netherland Company. In the same year the company sent out, under one Hendrik Christianson, a group of men who built a fort at Albany.

But for several years the men who came to Fort Nassau (nās'ō) at Albany, and to the two or three other little Dutch forts on the Hudson, were merely fur traders. In 1617 they made a fine contribution to the future when they arranged a great peace with the Five Nations at a point near Albany. This was the most important thing they did, for they were not settlers. But the religious and political wars which flamed up in Holland soon brought to New Netherland a good many who wished to escape the strife and to seek their fortunes in the New World. In 1623 the region was organized as a province and was put under the control of the West India Company, a group of Dutch traders who had been organized two years before and had been given the trading rights to the coast of both the Americas.

### Thirty Brave Dutch Families

Those merchants soon took action. In the very next year they sent out the good ship "New Netherland" with thirty families of settlers under one Cornelius Mey (mā). A good many of them went to Albany, and most of the rest to Connecticut and Delaware. Because the Dutchmen were sound business men they sent plenty of food to

the settlers. Dutch colonists never had to starve as English settlers starved in the New World.

In 1626 Governor Peter Minuit (mīn'ū-īt) arrived at Manhattan, with very wide powers to rule the promising new colony. One of the first things he did was to buy the island of Manhattan from the Manahata Indians for a few hatchets, beads, and other knickknacks, worth about \$24. He encouraged the growth of the little city of New Amsterdam at the foot of the island, and moved the center of the Dutch settlements down the river from Albany. Under Governor Minuit the colony was soon prospering, but many grievances arose among those who accused him of favoring one group over another. In 1632 he returned to Holland in disgrace, and the next two governors who came over nearly ruined the colony.



Courtesy Chamber of Commerce, Rochester, N. Y.

These girls are busy assembling cameras in a great Rochester factory, the largest of its kind in the world.

Wouter (vōō'tēr) Van Twiller, the second governor, was weak and helpless. He muddled the business of the colony and set the colonists to fighting one another. But William Kieft (kēft), who followed Van Twiller, was so reckless and stupid that in 1639 he involved the Dutch in a series of terrible wars with the Indians. Those wars reached a climax in 1643, a year which the Dutch always remembered as "the year of blood." Finally, the bitter complaints of the colonists succeeded in removing Kieft, and in his place there came a famous figure of early Dutch New York. This was hard-hitting old Peter Stuyvesant (stī'vĕ-sānt), also called "Old Wooden Leg" or "old Silver-nails" because of his silver-trimmed wooden leg. During the seventeen years of his rule, New Netherland flourished greatly. When he became governor (1647) there were less than

## THE HISTORY OF NEW YORK



Photo by New York State Department of Agriculture

**You cannot travel far in New York State without seeing herds of grazing cows like these, for the land produces**

**excellent fodder and dairying has become a leading industry in the state.**

1,500 people in the whole colony. When he surrendered Dutch America to the English, in 1664, there were well over 12,000.

### Where Wall Street Got Its Name

There had long been trouble between the Dutch and the English settlers of Connecticut, Rhode Island, and Massachusetts, for, as you will remember, the Dutch were claiming much of the country which the English claimed too. It really was a race between the two governments to see who could plant the most settlements and so possess the land. While both groups were prospering, and while the mother countries were at peace, the small clashes which took place were easily forgotten. But in 1654, when the Dutch and English were at war in Europe, the New Englanders at Boston planned a smashing attack on New Netherland. The Dutch had built a wall across the foot of Manhattan Island at the point where Wall Street now runs. This protected their little city on the landward side but left it exposed to attack from the sea. Only the news of peace in Europe saved the American settlements from actual fighting.

Ten years later, in 1664, there was no such happy and timely news. Even though the two nations were at peace at the time, the English gathered another fleet together and crossed the ocean. Here they collected a great number of Connecticut volunteers and sailed up to the astonished Dutchmen of New Amsterdam. Because the two nations were

supposed to be at peace, the Dutch had made no preparations for defense. Old Peter Stuyvesant wanted to stand by his guns even so, but the town would not stand with him. Rather than be pounded to bits by the guns of the English ships, it surrendered without firing a shot. In this peaceful manner the history of New Netherland comes to an end.

We may wonder of what importance the Dutch colonies in America were, and the truth seems to be that they were not very important. Their influence was at its strongest in New York State. There they laid the foundation of a commercial prosperity that was to grow to the vast proportions it has reached to-day. They were able business men, sober, thrifty, and fond of comfort. Because they never were Puritans they brought fine possessions from across the sea, and set their stamp upon the great city which they founded. New York has always been the most luxurious city on the eastern seaboard. But to-day it is mostly a few fine old houses and interesting old names—Yonkers, the Bowery, the Catskills, Kill van Kull, Spuyten Duyvel (spī'tēn dī'v'l), Van Cortlandt, Van Rensselaer, Roosevelt—that remind us of those good Dutch folk. For all practical purposes, it is as if they had never existed.

### In the Days of Peter Stuyvesant

But practical purposes are not the only important ones. Certainly old Dutch New York makes a very charming picture to look

---

## THE HISTORY OF NEW YORK

back upon. We may imagine the old pepper box of a governor, Peter Stuyvesant, stumping up and down the narrow streets of his little town in his broad-beamed Dutch breeches, receiving the respectful greetings of his subjects, while the sun flashed on the silver nails of his famous wooden leg. And even more charming to think of are the long summer evenings he spent, smoking his pipe and thinking of the business of the morrow, in that country estate, or "bouwerie" (bou'-ēr-ī), which is to-day an ugly slum. The little Dutch city of Nieuw Amsterdam—its Dutch spelling—must have been a delightful spot in those brave days. Some of the jolly, sensible humor of the Dutch seems to linger, even to-day, over the city and throughout the length of the great Hudson Valley. Our land would surely be a poorer and less joyous place without the histories of Rip Van Winkle or Ichabod Crane, the unhappy schoolmaster who was so tormented by that true Dutchman, Brom Bones.

### **New Amsterdam Becomes New York**

When the English seized New Amsterdam, their first task was to change it from Dutch to English. The colony had been taken over in the name of James, Duke of York, a brother of Charles II of England. Since the King had given him the whole territory, it was natural that the colony should be named "New York." The Duke of York had another title, the Duke of Albany. So Fort Orange became Fort Albany. These were the only Dutch names important enough to need changing. But the Dutch settlers could not be got rid of so easily as the Dutch names—and in fact nobody wanted to get rid of them. To do so would have been to make a wilderness of New York. For many years the Dutch language was spoken, not only in New York but also in Dutch settlements in New Jersey and in scattered centers along the Atlantic coast. There was even a period of about fifteen months, in 1673 and 1674, when the Dutch fleet, helped by the Dutch settlers on shore, captured and held the colony at New York for the Netherlands. But when peace came in Europe, the Dutch surrendered their colony to the English in return for settlements in other parts of the

world, especially in the East Indies. After that, Dutch influence in New York was a relic of the past.

### **New York's Early Boundaries**

The province which the English now governed was not very much like the New York State of to-day. It consisted of a narrow strip of land running up and down the Atlantic coast from Delaware to the middle of present-day Connecticut. To the west it had not been settled much farther than Albany. But New York took on her present shape with surprising speed. Gradually men ventured out into the unknown lands at the heart of the Iroquois empire. In 1678 Father Hennepin (hĕn'ĕ-pĕn) discovered the great falls of the Niagara River, and before long a good many settlers were moving up the Mohawk River and the streams which flow into it.

Now about this time the Duke of York began to find his new colonies a good deal of an expense. The trade in furs was no longer the only means of livelihood in New York State. As farms spread, the milling of grain was growing more and more important. That is the reason why the great seal of New York City bears two barrels of flour, together with two beavers, two Indians, and a windmill to represent Holland. But even so, the colony was not bringing in money to its noble overlord. The settlers had to buy most of their supplies from England, and even with their growing trade they did not produce enough to pay for those supplies. So when William Penn asked for a section in the southern part of the colony, James was only too eager to give it to him. In 1681 all that land which we know to-day as Pennsylvania was set aside; and a year later New Jersey also became a separate province. Within a few years New York had taken on very nearly the shape which she has to-day.

### **The Lordly Patroons**

The English rulers were very generous with New York lands, probably because they did not think the lands were worth very much. At any rate they gave away huge grants to their favorites. This was nothing new. The Dutch had given to a favored

## THE HISTORY OF NEW YORK

few, called "patroons" (pà-trōon'), enormous grants of land which the owner held in about the same way in which noblemen held their lands in Europe. If a patroon would agree to bring over fifty settlers inside four years he could have sixteen miles along a seacoast or river bank, or eight miles if he took land on both sides of a river. Inland, his holding stretched as far as he could occupy the soil. Over this princely manor he was practically a king. The names of those early patroons still cling to the land to-day, and we find places bearing the name of Van Rensselaer (văn rěn'-sē-lēr), Van Cortlandt, Philipse, and others, all of them hereditary land-holders.

This Dutch custom made it seem natural for a few favored Englishmen to receive huge grants during the colonial period. Land speculation was one of the quick ways to fortune, and many a family became wealthy and influential by it. The more democratic and devout settlers of New England often looked with a good deal of disfavor on their aristocratic, tolerant neighbors of the Hudson Valley. The interests of the two regions were not the same, perhaps because their histories were so different. At any rate there was never any love lost between New York and New England at any time in the colonial period. Not until after the Revolution did they forget their differences and become peaceful neighbors.

### The Services of Peter Schuyler

Meanwhile, like all the colonies New York grew steadily. In 1723 the population was about 40,000, twice as great as it had been twenty years before. In 1756 it was 96,000, and in 1773 it was 182,000. In the first

seventy-five years of the eighteenth century, the population increased over nine times! Of course a great many of those new colonists settled in the Hudson Valley, in the safe and comfortable sections where settlements had always been made. But a great many more of them moved out into the lands of the Iroquois and their neighbors. A number of German settlers took up land along the

Mohawk. The little town of Schenectady (skě-něk'tā-dī), which a raiding party of French and Indians had destroyed in 1690, was rebuilt and was soon flourishing. All through the Mohawk Valley, the natural trail to the west, little villages and towns were springing up, and the Iroquois soon began to feel that they were being pushed out by the English. The French were doing their best at this time to make friends with the Iroquois, and there was real danger of a

united attack on the English colonies. Only the remarkable ability of Peter Schuyler (skī'lēr), the leader of the Albany colony, kept the savages from joining the French to attack the English. Though he was himself a Dutchman, he took five Iroquois chiefs to England with him, to plead for aid against the French from the Queen. The Indians were very much impressed with England, and they were encouraged to help their "great white mother"—for at the time Queen Anne sat on the English throne—in the fight against the French. But they did not receive much assurance that their English friends would let them alone on their lands. In 1722 they felt themselves growing so weak that they admitted a new Iroquoian tribe, the Tuscaroras (tūs'kā-rō'rā), into their league. From this time on they were the Six, instead of the Five, Nations.



by General Electric Co. and N. Y. State Dept. of C.

In a huge plant in Schenectady these men are at work on the upper half of an 80,000-kilowatt turbine shell.

## THE HISTORY OF NEW YORK



Long Island, a narrow island 115 miles long, stretches eastward from New York City. It is known for its

many handsome estates— and for its prosperous duck farms, one of which is shown above.

Meanwhile the northern and western frontiers of New York were a continual battlefield. Raids of Indians and whites on both sides destroyed immense amounts of property, cost many lives, and kept settlers out of the rich regions of the west.

### The Bitter French and Indian Wars

In 1755 the army of General Braddock, in which George Washington was fighting, was almost massacred. In fact no single British expedition before 1758 was successful. The French captured many forts, and raided the rich Mohawk Valley without mercy. Finally, in 1758, after Pitt the Elder had been put in charge of English policy in London, the English tactics became intelligent enough to win some real victories over the French. In two short years, just when the cause seemed hopeless, the British generals won such smashing victories at Fort Frontenac (frōn'tē-nāk) and Quebec that they captured all of Canada. At last New York could feel herself safe from the ravages of warfare—or at least, so she thought!

But in truth the wars of New York were just beginning. The many taxes England

laid on colonial trade aroused great resentment. They were intended to pay for this last war with the French, which was fought in the interests of the colonies. But the Americans would have preferred to see the English paying for that war! All along, there had been the usual struggle between the people and the representatives of the English crown, with the people gradually getting more and more power into their own hands.

### Grievances of the Colonists

There had been many things to irritate them. The Navigation Acts of the seventeenth century had badly hampered the New York merchants in their trade, and as a result smuggling—and even actual piracy—had become respectable occupations. In that way some of the most influential families in New York laid the foundation of their fortunes. The Stamp Act (1765), meant to help pay for the colonial troops, annoyed the people greatly, and led New York to call a congress of the colonies to protest against it and to declare that taxation without representation was tyranny.

Finally, when New York refused to make

## THE HISTORY OF NEW YORK

certain appropriations demanded by parliament, the Townshend Acts were passed (1767). They contained new provisions for taxing the colonies and suspended the New York assembly until it should make those hated appropriations. The assembly had already given in, so it continued to meet, but New York merchants agreed not to import English goods, and there was less love than ever between the colony and the mother country.

### **Loyalists versus Patriots**

Yet in spite of all this, when the actual break came, New York at first was badly split, for the well-to-do preferred to remain loyal subjects of King George III. When the Second Continental Congress met at Philadelphia (1776) New York's delegates were exactly divided. Half were for King George and half were for independence. But a plot against the life of George Washington brought them to the American side.

Throughout the Revolutionary War New York was a storm center. By building a line of forts up the Hudson River from New York City to Lake Champlain the British hoped to cut off New England from the southern colonies. Then, at their own convenience, they could destroy the northern and southern armies, one after the other. In July and August of 1776 they captured New York City from Washington. But General Burgoyne (*bûr-goin'*), after starting south from Lake Champlain, had to surrender at Saratoga (*sâr'â-tô'gâ*). The American army had cut him off from all food supplies, and surrounded him in the wilderness.

### **The End of the Six Nations**

All through the rest of the war the British tried hard to set up this line from Lake Champlain to Manhattan. The Iroquois had clung faithfully to their old allies, and in 1778 beset the settlements up and down the Mohawk and Schoharie (*skô-hâr'î*) valleys and over all the northern part of the state. But the following year an American expedition through the Iroquois territory tore down their villages, burned their fields, and hunted down their war parties. This crushing blow destroyed the last remaining power of the

once-mighty Iroquois. Never again were they a power in American affairs. With their downfall, and with the failure of the British to hold that long line of theirs on the Hudson River, the turning point of the war might be said to have come. American successes at other points finally broke the back of the British power.

And now, with the end of the Revolutionary War, we come to the century and a half of continued progress which has raised New York to her present place in our country's life. Of course there have been disappointments and setbacks—many of them. For instance, there were the misdeeds of the famous "Tweed Ring," a political machine which under its leader, "Boss" Tweed, got control of New York politics in the 1860's and stole many millions of dollars. Unhappily, theirs has not been the only gigantic graft in our country's wealthiest state—good government can be gained only at the price of untiring watchfulness and effort on the part of the upright members of a community. But on the whole New York has progressed in scores of ways—in industry, in wealth, in population, in education, in culture. One could hardly make a complete list of her achievements.

### **Two Bad Setbacks**

But before we speak of them we should mention the two greatest hindrances to New York's continued progress. These were the Civil War and the great gold rush to California during the 1850's. The damage done by the Civil War it is easy to understand. To be sure, no real fighting took place on New York soil, but New York's losses in men, both in the actual fighting and in the great riots over the drafting of soldiers in New York City, were very heavy. Altogether, the state sent about 490,000 of her finest and strongest citizens into this bloody and heartbreaking struggle.

The setback New York suffered during the California gold rush may not be so easy to see at first glance. But when we remember that in their madness for gold many men went off leaving their farms deserted and their families to shift for themselves, we may understand the harm done to the state's

---

## THE HISTORY OF NEW YORK

agriculture. To be sure, competition from the new agricultural regions of the West was beginning to be felt in New York at the same time, so the blame does not fall entirely on the gold fever. But the gold rush must be held at least partly responsible for drawing thousands of farmers away from New York's fields. For a time the interior of the state was so desolate that it was known as "the region of deserted farms," and had no other name.

### New York's Many Problems

Of New York's other hardships and mis-haps we need say only a few words. As the financial and business center of the country, she has been hard hit in many of the depressions which descend regularly upon the country. But she has always come out of them, so far, and seems likely to do so for a long time to come. On the whole, New York is a good proof of the saying that it is a happy land which has no history.

Of course New York is not perfectly happy. There is much in her life that should be set right or improved. She has grave problems to meet in the handling of her vast stream of foreign immigrants. She must give them work and educate them and make them into Americans. She must wage a constant fight against the poverty that besets large numbers of people in her great cities. She must try to clear out the degrading slums where those unhappy people live, and to suppress the vice and crime that result from their condition. She must try to find the wisest way to deal with criminals, for she has come to realize that just to punish them is not enough. They should be reformed as well. She must try by wise laws to regulate the conditions under which millions work, and she must teach the people on her farms and the people in her cities to understand each other and to be generous toward each other's needs. She must wage constant warfare against corruption in her political life, for all the forces of greed gather together to exploit her. She must make wise laws relating to the business activities that are carried on inside her borders, for if things are badly managed in this great center of trade our whole country suffers, and other nations suffer as well.

Needless to say, New York has not solved all these pressing problems. But it is only fair to say that she is making an effort to solve them, and that the whole country is watching the results. No state has an economic, social, and political life of such importance to the nation.

### When New York Farmers Led the Union

But we must return to the story of her amazing growth. With the crushing of the Iroquois and the opening up of the fertile farm lands in the western part of the state, it was quite natural that the agriculture of New York should be the first industry to forge ahead. For many years New York was the first state in the Union in total agricultural production, and even in 1890 she was running second only to Illinois. At first, wheat, corn, potatoes, and oats were the leading crops. As transportation was improved through the construction of railroads, the growing of hay and the raising of live stock and dairy products were more and more important. By 1860 the cash value of the farms of New York was more than twice that of her nearest competitor, Illinois. Her production of hay, oats, potatoes, butter and cheese, and hops was greater than that of any other state in the Union; and she produced more barley and fruits than any other state. In the number of cows and horses within her borders she was second, and in the growing of buckwheat as well. In wheat she ranked only seventh.

### What Do New York Farmers Raise?

As the great productive areas of the West were opened up by the railroads, many of the agricultural products of New York lost their importance. For instance, from 1850 to 1889 New York grew about seventy percent of the country's hops. But after 1889 she suddenly declined rapidly in agriculture, and soon was producing less than half her former crop. American hops were now coming from the Pacific coast. In the growing of sheep, hogs, barley, wheat, and corn—in fact of almost all the grains—the same thing happened. New York lost ground steadily to the western states. On the other hand, the growth of the dairying business alone has



## THE HISTORY OF NEW YORK



Photo by Ne Department of Agriculture

A great many farms in New York State now raise a variety of vegetables. This photograph shows you

several acres of crisp cabbages growing on one of the state's many prosperous farms.

almost made up for these losses. New York's acreage of vegetables, such as onions, peas, beans, cauliflower, celery, carrots, lettuce, tomatoes, corn, parsnips, and rhubarb, has grown until she is a leading producer. And she raises corn, oats, wheat, buckwheat, barley, hay, tobacco, beans, and potatoes.

As a fruit-growing state New York, though so far north, has long been one of the most important. Apples, peaches, pears, grapes, berries, and other small fruits are among her most important crops. Orchards line the mild south shore of Lake Ontario, and vineyards flourish in the western part of the state and along the lower Hudson. In short, New York has been producing crops especially adapted to the city markets to which she must sell. Other states with greater size, more fertile soil, and more level ground can produce more wheat or corn. New York farmers prefer to do what they can do best. As a result, her agriculture is well able to weather periods of farm depression, such as the one in the thirties.

We have told of the importance of the railroads in New York history. But actually the railroads were mostly laid down along an older transportation route. This was the river system of New York, especially the Hudson and the Mohawk rivers. Along

them the earliest settlers had made their way inland, and along them every road that crossed New York was to travel until the time of the airplane. In 1825, six years before the first New York railroad was finished, the Erie Canal was opened. "Clinton's Ditch," as it was called, because it was the special pride of Governor De Witt Clinton, was from the first of tremendous importance. It created a continuous waterway from Buffalo to New York, along which almost all the great manufacturing cities of New York have grown up. In 1918 it was enlarged, and still carries great quantities of goods to-day. It is connected with a waterway that leads through the upper Hudson and beautiful Lake Champlain to the St. Lawrence River. Canals connect it with Oswego (ös-wē'gō), a busy port and manufacturing town on Lake Ontario, and with other points in the state.

### Where Was New York's First Railroad?

The railroad system of New York was not begun till after the canal system was well in operation, but it soon came to be the more important of the two. The first railroad in the state ran from Albany to Schenectady, a distance of about 15 miles. It was opened in 1831, and by 1850 it had reached out all the way to Lake Erie. In that year there

---

## THE HISTORY OF NEW YORK

were 1,361 miles of railroad in the state. Twenty years later the mileage stood at 3,928. And in spite of the buses, 1944 saw 7,653 miles in use. We have seen how important this railway system was to New York agriculture. Its importance to New York manufacturing was even greater.

### **Why New York Built Up Her Manufactures**

By 1830, when the first tiny railroad was about to go into operation, New York manufactures had already become the largest in the nation. But under the influence of the railway from Buffalo to New York a long line of manufacturing towns soon sprang into prominence. Buffalo, Rochester, Syracuse, Rome, Utica, Schenectady, Troy, Albany, and New York City itself all owe much of their prosperity to the railroad. Factories in New York no longer had to depend on the raw materials produced inside the state, but could bring them in from other states. There were other advantages, too. New York has excellent supplies of water power, and to-day ranks second in the amount of it that has been developed. Besides this, the great Pennsylvania coal beds are near at hand, to feed the factory fires.

The manufacture of clothing had been an important industry in New York ever since the early days before the Revolution. It was one of the first big industries in the state, and even in its infancy it was the most important one. The great crops of wool which the pastures of New York once produced encouraged its growth, and cotton could be brought in either by rail or direct from southern ports by boat.

### **Our Country's Great Brick-making Center**

Two other important early industries centered around the thick forests and the mineral deposits of New York. The white pine of the Adirondacks and the hard wood of the Catskills for a long time supplied some of the finest wood in the country. Furniture and planing mills took much of it, but in recent years almost all the timber cut has gone into the making of paper. Printing has become an important business in New York State. Of course most of the wood is now brought from other states or from

Canada, but at one time most of it came from New York mountains and valleys. Then, the clays of the Hudson Valley have for a long time been of great importance to the brick-making industry. In fact, the Hudson Valley makes more bricks than any other section of the country. Tremendous deposits of salt in the Onondaga region made New York for a long time the first state in salt production. At last Michigan passed her. Finally, New York's supplies of building stone are immense and very valuable. She mines several different sorts of limestone and sandstone, and has a little fine marble. She leads in talc. Petroleum pays her best, but cement, sand and gravel, natural gas, and zinc are profitable. She is reworking old Adirondacks iron mines that pay because they now yield titanium as well as iron.

### **Our Greatest Manufacturing State**

In manufacturing, New York leads the country. It would be hard to name a field of manufacture in which one or another of her cities is not active. Most of them have several industries. For instance, besides her importance as one of the world's greatest ports, the city of Buffalo has recently developed into an outstanding manufacturing city in many fields. She leads the world in flour milling, and makes other grain products out of wheat shipped by the Great Lakes from the western states. Iron and steel works, automobile and airplane factories, rubber mills, and packing and slaughterhouses carry on other important industries.

Rochester, favored by the great water power which the falls of the Genesee (jěn'ě-sě') River develop, manufactures clothing, electrical machinery, boots and shoes, and photographic materials. She is also famous for her many nurseries growing seeds, bulbs, and plants. The growing of flowers, plants, and trees has become one of the state's flourishing industries. At one time Rochester was the leading milling center of the United States, and was nicknamed "the Flour City." Later, when the mills became less important, she changed her name to "the Flower City." To-day she is known as "the Kodak City" because of her great factories for making photographic materials. Besides she leads

the country in making optical instruments. Syracuse, which started as the center of the salt industry in New York, to-day produces automobiles, bicycles, office furniture, and typewriters. Utica (ū'tī-kā) is known far and wide for her knitting and her cloth. She makes fully a third of the knitted underwear manufactured in the country, and also has a great many large cotton mills. Schenectady and Troy are important centers of transportation and for the manufacture of electrical equipment, and Troy alone makes nearly all the men's collars manufactured in the United States, as well as shirts, iron and steel, and chemical products. For many years around the middle of the last century Troy was the center of the iron and steel industry of New York.

#### **Gloves, Glass, Fire Engines, and Rugs**

Rome is called the Copper City because she makes about one-tenth of the nation's copper articles, and Cheversville turns out more gloves than any other city in the country. Elmira (ĕl-mī'rā) makes fire engines, Jamestown is famous as a center for producing metal furniture, and Amsterdam, near Schenectady, is the second largest rug-manufacturing center in the world. Corning makes very fine glass, and Oneida is famous as the home of an interesting experiment in community living and a beautiful brand of silver. As for Albany, besides having been the capital of New York ever since 1797, she is a great railroad and transportation center, and a port of growing importance, for ocean-going vessels can sail up the river right to her docks. The list of her manufactures is long and varied, but the most important are stoves, chemicals, paper, and hundreds of products made of chemical compositions.

#### **Elevators, Chemicals, and Shoes**

Niagara Falls manufactures various chemicals, Binghamton makes shoes, and Yonkers makes elevators. But it is quite useless to try to number the manufactures of New York State. For we have named industry after industry, city after city, and yet we have not even mentioned New York City, which is so much the greatest of all the cities of the United States.

In describing the industries of New York City we can only hope to touch a few of the most important ones. To begin with, Greater New York, with a population of seven and a half millions—including the city of Brooklyn, on Long Island, and various other centers—is the largest city in the Western Hemisphere, and the second largest in the world. Only London is larger. Those millions of New Yorkers are a little more than half the population of New York State. Besides this, New York is the greatest port in the world. She is seated on the world's finest harbor, and handles more tonnage than any other port, for several transcontinental railway lines empty their passengers and freight into her great terminals and carry back goods to the busy country that lies behind her. She is the greatest focus of trade routes in the world. Ever since the earliest days of her history, New York has been the financial center of the United States, and to-day the little region around Wall Street is the financial hub of the entire world.

#### **America's Greatest Manufacturing City**

But more than this, New York is our country's greatest manufacturing city. Her output of women's clothing reaches a value of well over \$1,000,000,000 in a normal year. Men's clothing brings in some \$375,000,000, and the output of newspaper and magazine publishing houses some \$350,000,000. Other important industries are book publishing, baking, meat packing, and the manufacture of millinery, each of them normally producing more than \$100,000,000 worth of goods a year. The retail business of Manhattan Island, on which New York City proper is built, is so tremendous that figures can hardly convey its size. When a single store takes in more than a million dollars every week, and there are over 100,000 stores, the amount of business transacted is clearly enormous. No other city in the country equals it. In fact it would be quite useless to try to list the number of ways in which New York leads other American cities, because the list would be so long as to be meaningless. One would be tempted to say that New York City led the nation in everything. That would be far from the truth, but on the other hand it is

---

## THE HISTORY OF NEW YORK

hard to exaggerate the tremendous importance and variety of this great beehive. There is a saying that "New York is not America," and of course that is clear enough. But it is just as true that America would be a very different place without New York City.

### Colleges, Libraries, Museums

We have not yet said anything about New York State's educational system, but it is easy to imagine that a state which leads in so many lines of endeavor would not be satisfied to lag far behind in education. New York's system of lower and higher education is among the best. The average salary of New York teachers is in normal times among the highest averages in the country. The rate of illiteracy is 3.7 percent. In view of the great number of immigrants entering New York, this is a very low percentage of citizens unable to read and write. In higher education the list of institutions is long and impressive. Columbia University (1754) in New York City is one of the oldest and most famous universities in the country, and Fordham and New York universities in New York City, Syracuse University at Syracuse, Colgate University at Hamilton, Cornell University at Ithaca (ith'â-kâ), Hamilton College at Clinton, and the College of the City of New York are all well-known and distinguished institutions. Among the best-known colleges for women are Vassar College at Poughkeepsie (pō-kîp'sî), Barnard College, allied with Columbia, Elmira College at Elmira, Wells College at Aurora, and Hunter College in New York City. At West Point is the United States Military Academy. But this by no means exhausts the list of sound educational institutions. Almost no other state has so many. In addition, the New York Public Library is second in this country only to the Library of Congress in size and excellence, and the museums and art centers of New York are known throughout the world. The Metropolitan Museum of Art,

the American Museum of Natural History, the Museum of Modern Art, and the Museum of the American Indian, all in New York City, are only a few of the most famous. The great metropolis is the literary, musical, and artistic center of the country. New York State has contributed a large number of distinguished men to the nation—among them, four presidents: Van Buren, Fillmore, and both the Roosevelts.

It is useless to try to exhaust the list of interesting things in New York State. There are the religious sects of the Genessee Valley, and the invention of baseball near Coopers-town by Abner Doubleday. There are the amazing skyscrapers and other engineering feats in New York City, and the magnificent scenery in many parts of the state. There are the theaters of Broadway—probably the greatest theatrical center in the world—and Ellis Island in New York Bay, where most of our great number of foreign immigrants first set foot on American soil. There are the Metropolitan Opera and a number of fine orchestras. There are the colorful centers of foreign population in the state's great cities—the Chinatowns and Jewish ghettos (gê'tō) and "Little Italys"—and especially Harlem, the great Negro section in New York City, where 200,000 colored people have gathered together in what is the largest Negro center in the world. The story of the Empire State is endless and always fascinating.

### New York's Destiny

But we must leave some part of this great tale for our readers to find out for themselves. It is a story without an end, for something new is being added to it every day. Just what New York will do with her future, no man can tell. Perhaps the highest hope we can hold for her is merely that she may continue as she has begun, prosperous and successful and forward-looking in everything she undertakes.



## NEW YORK

**AREA:** 49,576 square miles—29th in rank.

**LOCATION:** New York, one of the Middle Atlantic states, lies between 40° 29' 40" and 45° 0' 2" N. Lat., and between 71° 51' and 79° 45' 54" W. Long. It is bounded on the north by Lake Ontario and the Canadian provinces of Ontario and Quebec. On the east lies Vermont, Massachusetts, and Connecticut; on the south are the Atlantic Ocean, New Jersey, and Pennsylvania; and on the west are Pennsylvania, Lake Erie, the Province of Ontario, and Lake Ontario.

**PHYSICAL FEATURES:** The surface of New York is varied by two large mountain masses. The higher of these rises in the northeast and is known as the Adirondack Mountains. Here is Mount Marcy (5,344 ft. high), the highest point in New York. From the Adirondacks the land falls away gradually to the St. Lawrence River on the north, Lake Champlain and the Hudson River on the east, the Mohawk Valley on the south, and Lake Ontario on the west. South of the Mohawk and west of the Hudson is another group of mountains, the Catskills. They are lower than the Adirondacks and of different formation, for they really are the remaining summits in a high plateau that has been much dissected by rivers. Here the highest point is Slide Mountain (4,204 ft.). From the Catskills the plateau falls away gradually toward the west till it reaches the narrow coastal plain of Lake Erie; but toward the north it descends in a series of great steps to the shores of the Mohawk River and the narrow plain along the shore of Lake Ontario. One of these steps is known as the Helderberg Mountains, south of Albany. The two coastal plains are very fertile and have a milder climate than more elevated regions farther south. They are famous farming and fruit-growing sections. Southeast of the Catskills the northernmost of the Allegheny ridges of Pennsylvania enters New York State as the low Shawangunk Mountains. Southeast of the Shawangunk range is a fertile valley, the continuation of the Great Appalachian Valley and of the Kittatinny Valley in northern New Jersey. Another upland belt known as the Highlands rises southeast of this valley and extends into New Jersey on the southwest and into Connecticut on the northeast. A small area of ancient sandstone, known as the Triassic lowland, reaches from New Jersey into the southeastern tip of New York as far as the Hudson. In this ancient lowland are ridges of harder material called trap rock, and one such ridge forms the famous Palisades along the western bank of the lower Hudson.

Long Island, the largest island on the Atlantic coast, Manhattan Island, on which is New York City, and Staten Island, in New York Bay, all belong to New York State. The first and last are low and sandy, a part of the Atlantic coastal plain. Except for the Long Island shore, New York has only a very small strip of the Atlantic coast, but she has 75 miles on Lake Erie and 200 miles on Lake Ontario. Buffalo, on Lake Erie, is a busy port for ships bringing goods down the Great Lakes. A canal conveys smaller boats around Niagara Falls, a cascade in the Niagara River, which here is the boundary between the United States and Canada and connects Lake Erie with Lake Ontario. These famous falls come at the point where the river leaps over one of the great steps by which the plateau descends from the Catskills to the level of Lake Ontario.

The greater part of the drainage of New York is toward the St. Lawrence River (760 m. long), which forms the state's northwestern boundary as it makes its way from Lake Ontario (7,540 sq. m.) to the Gulf of St. Lawrence. If the chain of the Great Lakes, which are drained by the St. Lawrence, be included in its length, the result is a continuous waterway 1,900 miles long. In the St. Lawrence are some 1,500 islands known as the Thousand Islands. Most of the streams

that feed the St. Lawrence system are short, and a number of them enter it by way of Lake Ontario. Among the largest of the last group is the Genesee (144 m. long). The southwestern corner of the state is drained toward the Ohio River and thence to the Mississippi; the Allegheny River (325 m. long) enters the state from Pennsylvania and then leaves it again and flows south to join the Monongahela and form the Ohio. Farther east the Susquehanna (444 m. long), with its branches, drains the south-central part of the state before it enters Pennsylvania on its way to Chesapeake Bay and the Atlantic Ocean. Still farther east the Delaware River (296 m. long) gathers up various smaller streams bringing water from the southwestern Catskills and finally empties its load into Delaware Bay. Near the state's eastern border flows the Hudson (306 m. long), New York's principal river. It rises in a number of small lakes near Mount Marcy, and makes its way southward to New York Bay, where a sinking of the land has let the ocean into the river's mouth to form an estuary. This is the greatest harbor in the world. The Hudson may be navigated as far as Troy, 151 miles, and tides are felt to that point. Along that portion where the river cuts through the Highlands the scenery is very fine. The Hudson's largest tributary is the Mohawk (148 m. long), which enters it from the west. The Mohawk Valley has long been a highway to the interior of our country—the only good avenue through the Appalachian Mountains. It is through this valley that the Erie Canal (363 m.) is built. Other streams that enter the Hudson are the Hoosic (90 m. long), which rises in Massachusetts, the Pattenkill, and the Wallkill, which drains the Great Valley.

New York has a great many beautiful lakes and waterfalls. Lake Champlain, on the eastern boundary, is the largest, but it lies partly in Vermont and Canada; it is 125 miles long. Lake George, though smaller (36 m. long), is very beautiful. Through the central part of the state is a series of long and narrow lakes known as the Finger Lakes. Among the largest are Seneca, Cayuga, Canandaigua, Owasco, and Skaneateles. Chataqua Lake is in the southwestern corner of the state, and Oneida is northeast of the Finger Lakes. All together New York has thousands of lakes and ponds. Her total water area is 1,550 square miles. Half of the state's total boundary is water. There is no irrigated land except in insignificant cases.

**CLIMATE:** The climate of New York State is cold in winter and warm in summer, though on Long Island and in the neighborhood of New York City the ocean has a moderating influence. New York City has a January mean of 31° F. and a July mean of 74°. The record high is 102°, and the record low -13°, but as a rule the maximum for the summer is much lower, and in winter the thermometer rarely goes to zero. The heat, though not extreme, is likely to be oppressive by reason of the high humidity. Upstate the range is a good deal greater except along the shores of the Great Lakes, and snow falls to a depth of three or four feet. Everywhere in the state the climate is variable, for it is affected by the great cyclonic whirls that sweep across the continent. The average mean temperature for the year is about 45°, though it is often more than 50° in New York City. The average maximum summer temperature is 93°; the minimum in winter is below zero. The average yearly rainfall for the state is between 40 and 45 in., but it is only 30 in. in the vicinity of Lake Champlain, and over 55 in. at places in the southeast. New York City has an average of about 43 in., and among the world's great cities is remarkable for the number of sunny days it has during a year.

**INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING:** The more important institutions in the state are Adelphi College for women at Garden City; Bard College at Annandale-on-Hudson; Barnard College for women, a

## NEW YORK—Continued

part of Columbia University, in New York City; Brooklyn College in Brooklyn; University of Buffalo at Buffalo; Canisius College at Buffalo; Clarkson College of Technology at Potsdam; Colgate University at Hamilton; Columbia University in New York City; Cooper Union in New York City; Cornell University at Ithaca and New York City; D'Youville College for women at Buffalo; Elmira College for women at Elmira; Fordham University in New York City; Good Counsel College for women at White Plains; Hamilton College at Clinton; Hartwick College at Oneonta; Hobart College at Geneva; William Smith College for women, affiliated with Hobart, at Geneva; Houghton College at Houghton; Hunter College for women in New York City; Keuka College for women at Keuka Park; Long Island University in Brooklyn; Manhattan College in New York City; Marymount College for women at Tarrytown; the College of Mount St. Vincent, a college for women in New York City; Nazareth College for women at Rochester; the College of New Rochelle, a college for women at New Rochelle; the College of the City of New York in New York City; New York University in New York City; Niagara University at Niagara University; Polytechnic Institute of Brooklyn in Brooklyn; Pratt Institute, a technical school in Brooklyn; Queens College in Flushing; Rensselaer Polytechnic Institute at Troy; St. Bonaventure College and Seminary at St. Bonaventure; St. John's University in Brooklyn; St. Joseph's College for Women in Brooklyn; St. Lawrence University at Canton; the College of St. Rose, a college for women at Albany; Sarah Lawrence College for women at Bronxville; Skidmore College for women at Saratoga Springs; Syracuse University at Syracuse; Teachers College, a part of Columbia University, in New York City; Union College at Schenectady; Union Theological Seminary in New York City; United States Military Academy at West Point; Vassar College for Women at Poughkeepsie; the Wagner Memorial Lutheran College on Sta'en Island; Wells College for women at Aurora; Yeshiva College in New York City. There are also a number of junior colleges located in various parts of the state.

Normal schools are maintained at New Paltz, Brockport, Cortland, Fredonia, Geneseo, Oneonta, Oswego, Plattsburg, and Potsdam. Teachers colleges have been established at Albany and Buffalo.

**INSTITUTIONS FOR THE PROMOTION OF THE ARTS:** New York City and New York State are famed for their excellent museums and other foundations for furthering the arts. Some of the most famous institutions of this kind are the Metropolitan Museum of Art in New York City, the American Museum of Natural History in New York City, the Hispanic Society of America in New York City, the Museum of the American Indian in New York City, the New York Museum of Science and Industry in New York City, the Museum of the City of New York in New York City, the Museums of the Brooklyn Institute of Arts and Sciences, the Museum of Modern Art in New York City, the Cloisters in New York City, the Frick Collection in New York City, the Bache Collection in New York City, the Jewish Theological Seminary Museum of Ceremonial and Historical Objects in New York City, the New York Historical Society Gallery and Museum in New York City, the Whitney Museum of American Art in New York City, the Art Students' League in New York City, the school of the National Academy of Design in New York City, and the New York State Museum at Albany.

The New York Public Library in New York City ranks second only to the Library of Congress in Washington, D. C., for size, excellence, and perfection of equipment. The Pierpont Morgan Library is a famous private collection. The New York Philharmonic

Orchestra is one of the finest orchestras in the world, and the Metropolitan Opera in New York City is one of the world's finest operas. New York City has a number of fine orchestras and musical societies.

**CHARITIES AND CORRECTION:** New York maintains hospitals for the non-criminal insane at Binghamton, Buffalo, Central Islip, Queen's Village, Helms, Wingdale, Poughkeepsie, King's Park, Ward's Island in New York City, Marcy, Middletown, Pine Aire, Orangeburg, Ogdensburg, Utica, and Willard. For the criminal insane there are the Matteawan State Hospital at Beacon and the Dannemora State Hospital at Dannemora, and for defective delinquents there are institutions at Napanoch, Albion, and Woodburne.

There are state prisons at Attica, Auburn, Dannemora, Comstock, Wallkill, and the famous Sing Sing Prison at Ossining. A prison for women is maintained at Bedford. State reformatories are located at Elmira and Bedford Hills. The New York State Vocational Institution at West Coxsack trains delinquent boys over sixteen years of age, and those who are younger are sent to the New York State Training School for Boys at Warwick.

Other institutions are the state camp for veterans at Bath, a state school for the blind at Batavia, a training school for girls at Hudson, an agricultural and industrial school at Industry, a tuberculosis hospital at Ray Brook, an orthopedic hospital for children at West Haverstraw, the State Women's Relief Corps Home at Oxford, the Thomas Indian School at Iroquois, schools for mental defectives at Newark, Rome, Syracuse, and Letchworth Village, and the Craig Colony for epileptics at Sonyea. Under the control of the department of health is the State Institute for the Study of Malignant Diseases at Buffalo.

New York inflicts capital punishment by electrocution.

**POLITICAL FACTS:** New York is governed under the constitution adopted in 1894, the fourth since the original one of 1777. It has often been amended. A constitutional convention met to revise it in 1938. Laws are made by a legislature in which there are two houses, a Senate and an Assembly; the Senators are elected for two years and the Assemblymen for one year. The legislative districts are reapportioned every ten years. No person is eligible for the legislature who, at the time of his election or within 100 days prior to it, has been a member of any other governing group in the United States. Sessions of the legislature begin on the first day of January each year, and are not limited as to length.

In the executive department the governor, lieutenant-governor, comptroller, and attorney-general are elected by the people and serve four-year terms; the secretary of state is appointed. Other executive duties are carried on by more than 180 bureaus and commissions which are assigned to 19 executive departments—the executive department, the department of audit and control, of taxation and finance, of law, of state, of public works, of conservation, of agriculture and markets, of labor, of education, of health, of mental hygiene, of charities, of correction, of public service, of banking, of insurance, of commerce, and of civil service. The governor must be at least thirty years of age, and must have lived in the state five years.

The judiciary is headed by a court of appeals made up of a chief justice and six associate justices, elected for fourteen years. This court is almost entirely limited to deciding questions of law. The supreme court is made up of 125 justices elected for fourteen years, and from their number the governor chooses those justices who are to make up what is known as the appellate divisions of the supreme court. There are four of these divisions—each one assigned to one of

## NEW YORK—Continued

four sections of the state. It is their duty to hear cases that are appealed. The court of claims is made up of five justices appointed by the governor for a nine-year term; its duty is to hear private claims against the state. All justices must resign at the age of seventy. Besides these state courts each county has a court, with a judge who holds office for six years. From these courts cases may be appealed to one of the four appellate divisions of the supreme court. Surrogate courts have to do with the executing of wills and the settling of estates. Surrogate judges are elected for six years except in New York County, where the term is for fourteen years. Each town has justices of the peace and inferior local courts.

The chief units of local government are cities, incorporated villages, and towns. These are divided into three classes: the first class contains cities of 175,000 or more inhabitants, the second class 50,000 or more, and the third class all towns and villages of less than 50,000. Cities in each class organize their government according to certain general plans laid down by the legislature. All special laws must be approved by the mayor of the town.

Voters must be twenty-one, and must have been citizens of the United States for at least ninety days, inhabitants of the state for a year, of the county for four months, and of the election district for thirty days. Before voting they must prove that they can read and write. No person may vote who has been convicted of bribery or of crimes against the electorate. An absentee-voting law has been in effect since 1919. Independent nominations for office may be made by 6,000 or more voters. All state officers are elected under a primary election law. New York has two public service commissions, one for the first district—which is New York City—and the other for the rest of the state. These commissions have jurisdiction over all public-service corporations. There are various laws relating to labor, unemployment insurance, old-age pensions, and other matters of social welfare.

The capital of New York is at Albany.

**PARKS:** New York has 70 state parks. The Palisades Interstate Park, shared with New Jersey, stretches along the right bank of the lower Hudson as far north as Newburgh. Other state parks are scattered through Westchester County, north of New York City; or are situated at different places on Long Island, especially along the shore; or are in the Catskill and Adirondack mountains, the Thousand Islands, the Finger Lakes region, and other parts of upstate New York. The Adirondack Park or Forest Preserve is second only to Yellowstone Park in size.

At Saratoga Springs the state has created a modern watering place and health resort, with mineral baths and various other devices for administering treatments.

**NATIONAL MONUMENTS:** The Statue of Liberty on Bedloe's Island is in New York Harbor, but is technically within the confines of New Jersey. Father Millet Cross is a national monument at Youngstown in memory of a 17th century missionary to the Indians.

At White Plains, on a national battlefield site, is a monument commemorating the Battle of White Plains in the Revolutionary War. Federal Hall Memorial, marking the first seat of the federal government in New York City, is a national historic site, as are also the home of Franklin D. Roosevelt at Hyde Park and the Vanderbilt Mansion near it.

**GAME AND BIRD RESERVATIONS:** Fort Tyler and Shinnecock refuges in Suffolk County protect

birds, and Montezuma Refuge in Wayne, Cayuga, and Seneca counties protects birds and muskrats.

**NAME:** After Governor Stuyvesant's surrender of Fort Amsterdam to the English in 1664, the King of England gave a grant of the whole territory to his brother James, Duke of York and Albany. Richard Nicolls was made deputy governor, and out of compliment to the Duke he "directed that the city of New Amsterdam should be henceforth known as New York." He also gave the name of "Albania" to the region west of the Hudson, and "Yorkshire" to Long Island. In this way both the titles of the Duke were honored. Eventually the state came to be known by the name of its principal city. It is in this way that New York bears the name of the English county of York, from which the Duke took his title.

The word "York" comes originally from "eboracum," the Latin form of a Celtic word related to "labar," meaning "muddy bottom." In the Anglo-Saxon this appeared as "Eoforwic," or "wild-boar town." When the Danes came they found "Eoforwic" clumsy to say, and gradually came to pronounce the word "Jorwik." (The first letter had the sound of "y.") From this form it was an easy step to "York." The word "new" comes from the Anglo-Saxon "niwe" or "neowe," words with the same meaning.

**NICKNAMES:** New York is called the Empire State from its commanding position in wealth and trade. Its motto has given it the name of the Excelsior State.

New Yorkers are known as Excelsiors and Knickerbockers. The second term was coined by Washington Irving as the name of the supposed writer of his famous "History of New York."

**STATE FLOWER:** Rose; chosen by the school children in 1891 but never officially adopted.

**STATE SONG:** No song has ever been officially adopted. A number of different songs are popular, among them "New York, Our Empire State," with words by Etta H. Morris and music by Caroline Fitzsimmons.

**STATE FLAG:** A blue field in the center of which is the state coat of arms, with the motto "Excelsior" inscribed on a white ribbon scroll beneath it; adopted in 1901.

**STATE MOTTO:** The Latin word "Excelsior," meaning "still higher," "ever upward."

**STATE BIRD:** The bluebird, though never officially adopted, was shown to be the favorite in a contest carried on by the New York Federated Women's Clubs in 1927-1928.

**INTERESTING FACTS:** New York observes New Year's Day, Lincoln's Birthday, Washington's Birthday, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Columbus Day, Election Day, Armistice Day by a proclamation of the governor, Thanksgiving Day, and Christmas Day.

Ellis Island, in New York Harbor, is a place of detention for certain immigrants coming to the United States. The island is technically within the confines of New Jersey.

New York has eight Indian reservations: Allegany, Cattaraugus, Oneida, Onondaga, Oil Springs, St. Regis, Tonawanda, and Tuscarora. The Indians now living in New York are members of the Cayuga, Mohawk, Montauk, Oneida, Onondaga, Seneca, Shinnecock, and Tuscarora tribes.

# NEW YORK—Continued

## Population of state, 1940, 13,479,142

### Counties

Albany (F5)	221,315
Allegany (H6)	39,681
Bronx (G9)	1,394,711
Broome (E6)	165,749
Cattaraugus (F6)	72,652
Cayuga (D5)	65,508
Chautauqua (A6)	123,580
Chemung (D6)	73,718
Chenango (E6)	36,454
Clinton (G1)	54,006
Columbia (G6)	41,464
Cortland (D6)	33,668
Delaware (F6)	40,989
Dutchess (G7)	120,542
Erie (B5)	798,377
Essex (C2)	34,178
Franklin (F2)	44,286
Fulton (F5)	48,597
Genesee (B4)	44,481
Greene (F6)	27,926
Hamilton (F3)	4,188
Herkimer (F3)	59,527
Jefferson (E2)	84,003
Kings <sup>1</sup> (G9)	2,698,285
Lewis (B3)	22,815
Livingston <sup>2</sup> (C5)	38,510
Madison (E5)	39,598
Monroe (C4)	438,236
Montgomery (F5)	59,142
Nassau <sup>1</sup> (G9)	406,748
New York (G9)	1,889,924
Niagara (B4)	160,110
Oneida (4)	203,636
Onondaga (D5)	295,108
Ontario <sup>2</sup> (C5)	55,307
Orange (F7)	140,113
Orleans (B4)	27,760
Oswego (D4)	71,275
Otsego (E5)	46,082
Putnam (G8)	16,555
Queens <sup>1</sup> (G9)	1,297,634
Rensselaer (G5)	121,834
Richmond (F9)	174,441
Rockland (F8)	74,261
St. Lawrence (E2)	91,098
Saratoga (G4)	65,606
Schenectady (F5)	122,494
Schoharie (F6)	20,812
Schuyler (C6)	12,979
Seneca (D5)	25,732
Steuben (C6)	84,927
Suffolk (G9)	197,355
Sullivan (F7)	37,901
Tioga (D6)	27,072
Tompkins (D6)	42,340
Ulster (F7)	87,017
Warren (G3)	36,035
Washington (G4)	46,726
Wayne (C4)	52,747
Westchester (G8)	573,558
Wyoming (B5)	31,394
Yates (C5)	16,381

### Cities and Villages

[Places marked with an asterisk (\*) were classified as urban in 1940]

Albany * (G5)	130,577
Albion * (B4)	4,660
Amityville * (G9)	5,058
Amsterdam * (F5)	33,329
Auburn * (D5)	15,753
Babylon * (G9)	4,742
Baldwinsville * (D4)	3,840
Ballston Spa * (G4)	4,443
Batavia * (B4)	17,267
Bath * (C6)	4,696
Beacon * (G7)	12,572
Binghamton * (E6)	78,309
Brookport * (C4)	3,590
Bronxville * (E2)	6,888
Buffalo * (B5)	575,901
Canandaigua * (C5)	8,321
Canastota * (E4)	4,150
Canton * (F2)	3,018
Carthage * (E3)	4,207
Catskill * (G6)	5,429
Cedarhurst * (G9)	5,463
Cohoes * (G5)	21,955
Corinth * (G4)	3,054
Corning * (C6)	16,212
Cortland * (D5)	15,881
Croton-on-Hudson * (G8)	3,843
Dannemora * (G1)	4,830
Dansville * (C5)	4,976
Depew * (B5)	6,084
Dobbs Ferry * (G8)	5,883
Dolgeville * (F4)	3,195
Dunkirk * (A6)	17,713
East Aurora * (B5)	5,253
East Rochester * (C4)	6,691
East Rockaway * (G9)	5,610
East Syracuse * (D4)	4,520
Elmira * (D6)	45,106
Elmira Heights * (D6)	4,829
Endicott * (D6)	17,702
Fairport * (C4)	4,644
Falconer * (A6)	3,222
Farmingdale * (G9)	3,524
Floral Park * (G9)	12,950
Fort Edward * (G4)	3,620
Frankfort * (E4)	3,859
Fredonia * (A6)	5,738
Freeport * (G9)	20,410
Fulton * (D4)	13,362
Garden City * (G9)	11,223
Geneva * (C5)	15,555
Glen Cove * (G9)	12,415
Glens Falls * (G4)	18,836
Gloversville * (F4)	23,329
Goshen * (F8)	3,073
Gouverneur * (E2)	4,478
Gowanda * (B6)	3,156
Granville * (G4)	3,173
Great Neck * (G9)	6,167
Green Island * (G5)	3,988

Greenport * (H8)	3,259
Hamburg * (B5)	5,467
Hastings-on-Hudson * (G9)	7,057
Haverstraw * (G8)	5,909
Hempstead * (G9)	20,856
Herkimer * (F4)	9,617
Highland Falls * (F8)	3,711
Hoosick Falls * (G5)	4,279
Hornell * (C6)	15,649
Hudson * (G6)	11,517
Hudson Falls * (G4)	6,654
Ilion * (F4)	8,927
Irrington * (E1)	3,272
Ithaca * (D6)	19,730
Jamestown * (A6)	42,638
Johnson City * (E6)	18,039
Johnstown * (F4)	10,666
Kenmore * (B5)	18,612
Kingston * (G7)	28,589
Lackawanna * (B5)	21,058
Lake Placid * (G2)	3,136
Lancaster * (B5)	7,236
Larchmont * (F2)	5,970
Lawrence * (G9)	3,649
Le Roy * (C5)	4,413
Liberty * (F7)	3,788
Lindenhurst * (H5)	4,756
Little Falls * (F4)	10,163
Lockport * (B4)	21,379
Long Beach * (F6)	9,036
Lowville * (E3)	3,578
Lynbrook * (G9)	14,557
Lyons * (D4)	3,863
Malone * (F1)	8,743
Mamaroneck * (G9)	13,034
Massena * (F1)	11,328
Mechanicville * (G5)	7,449
Medina * (B4)	5,871
Middletown * (F8)	21,908
Mineola * (G9)	10,064
Monticello * (F7)	3,737
Mount Kisco * (G8)	5,941
Mount Morris * (C5)	3,530
Mount Vernon * (G8)	67,362
Newark * (C4)	9,646
Newburgh * (F7)	31,883
New Hyde Park * (F4)	4,691
New Rochelle * (G9)	58,408
New York City * (G9)	7,454,995
Bronx Borough	1,394,711
Brooklyn Bor.	2,698,285
Manhattan Bor.	1,889,924
Queens Bor.	1,297,634
Richmond Bor.	174,441
New York Mills * (E4)	3,628
Niagara Falls * (A4)	78,029
North Pelham * (G8)	5,052

North Tarrytown * (G8)	8,804
North Tonawanda * (B4)	20,254
Norwich * (E5)	8,694
Nyack * (G8)	5,206
Ogdensburg * (E1)	16,146
Olean * (B6)	21,506
Oneida * (E4)	10,291
Oneonta * (E6)	11,731
Ossining * (G8)	15,996
Oswego * (D4)	22,062
Owego * (D6)	5,068
Patchogue * (G9)	7,181
Peekskill * (G8)	17,311
Pelham Manor * (E3)	5,302
Penn Yan * (C5)	5,308
Perry * (B5)	4,468
Plattsburgh * (G1)	16,351
Pleasantville * (G8)	4,454
Port Chester * (G8)	21,073
Port Jervis * (F8)	9,749
Potsdam * (F1)	4,821
Poughkeepsie * (G7)	40,478
Rensselaer * (G5)	10,768
Rochester * (C4)	324,975
Rockville Centre * (G9)	18,613
Rome * (E4)	14,214
Rye * (G8)	9,865
Salamanca * (B6)	9,011
Saranac Lake * (F2)	7,138
Saratoga Springs * (G4)	13,705
Scarsdale * (E2)	12,966
Schenectady * (G5)	87,549
Scotia * (G5)	7,960
Sea Cliff * (G9)	4,416
Seneca Falls * (D5)	6,452
Sloan * (B5)	3,836
Solvay * (D1)	8,201
Southampton * (H9)	3,818
Spring Valley * (F8)	4,308
Suffern * (F8)	3,768
Syracuse * (D4)	205,967
Tarrytown * (G8)	6,874
Tonawanda * (B4)	13,008
Troy * (G5)	70,304
Tuckahoe * (G9)	6,563
Tupper Lake * (F2)	5,451
Utica * (E4)	100,518
Valley Stream * (F5)	16,679
Walden * (F7)	4,262
Walton * (E6)	3,697
Waterloo * (D5)	4,010
Watertown * (E3)	33,385
Watervliet * (G5)	16,114
Waverly * (D6)	5,450
Wellsville * (C6)	5,942
Westbury * (A6)	4,524
Whitehall * (G3)	4,851
White Plains * (G8)	40,327
Williston Park * (F4)	5,750
Yonkers * (G9)	142,598

<sup>1</sup> Parts of Queens annexed to Kings and Nassau in 1925 and 1928 respectively; part of Kings annexed to Queens in 1925. Part of Queens annexed to Kings, and part of Kings annexed to Queens in 1931.

<sup>2</sup> Part of Ontario annexed to Livingston in 1922.



---

# ***The* HISTORY of NORTH CAROLINA**

---

## **Reading Unit No. 32**

### **NORTH CAROLINA: THE TAR HEEL STATE**

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

#### ***Interesting Facts Explained***

The mystery of the "lost colony," 8-286

Why settlers were slow in coming to North Carolina, 8-287

The last of the pirates in North Carolina, 8-288

When Flora McDonald came to North Carolina, 8-290

Why the Regulators took the

side of the King in the Revolution, 8-291

When the ladies of Edenton agreed to give up drinking tea, 8-291

Where most of our drug plants grow, 8-294

North Carolina's highways, 8-295

#### ***Things to Think About***

Who was the first child of English parents to be born in America?

What do some people think happened to the "lost" settlers of Roanoke Island?

What kind of people were the early settlers of North Carolina?

Who was Flora McDonald, and how long did she live in America?

Why are mountaineers and inhabitants of rugged countries hard to tame?

Were the Regulators justified in feeling ill-used?

#### ***Picture Hunt***

How important is tobacco-growing for North Carolina? 8-289-90

What are "naval stores"? 8-292

#### ***Related Material***

The story of tobacco, 9-221-24

Who was "Bonnie Prince Charlie"? 6-125, 130

What kind of people were the Highlanders? 6-124

Who were some of the famous pirates? 10-170

The plight of the farmer, 7-459

A famous son of North Carolina, 13-341-43

The great plantations, 8-408-10

The story of Sir Walter Raleigh, 13-478-80

When brother fought with brother, 7-253-56

#### ***Leisure-time Activities***

PROJECT NO. 1: Make a relief map of North Carolina, 8-290-91.

PROJECT NO. 2: Read one or two of O. Henry's stories.

## NORTH CAROLINA: *the* TAR HEEL STATE

*Her History, Full of Romantic Incident, and Her Gallant and Successful Struggle against Adversity, Combine to Make North Carolina One of Our Most Interesting States*

**T**HE story of North Carolina opens with a mystery—the mystery of the famous “lost colony.” It was in 1587 that Sir Walter Raleigh sent out a colony of 121 men and women under Governor John White to found a settlement in that vast region which he had named “Virginia” in honor of Elizabeth, the Virgin Queen of England. As early as 1584 he had sent explorers to find out what the region was like, and had been so encouraged by their glowing report that the next year over a hundred men under Ralph Lane had come to Roanoke (rō’ō nōk’) Island, near the entrance to Albemarle (āl’bē-mār) Sound. But hunger and threatening Indians had been too much for them, and they all had sailed back to England with Sir Francis Drake in 1586.

The band that came out the following year landed at the same place, and there, soon after their arrival, was born Virginia Dare, the first child of English parents to be born in the New World. She was the daughter of Ananias Dare and his wife Eleanor, who was daughter to Governor White. But what became of the baby Virginia no one knows. Her grandfather soon sailed back to England for supplies, and was detained there for four years. When he finally returned to America not a person was to be found on Roanoke Island.

It had been arranged that if the colony moved away in his absence, they should carve on a tree the name of their destination,

and if they went away in distress they were to carve a sign which would tell him so. And sure enough, there on a tree was cut the word “Croatan” (krō’tăn’), the name of a tribe of friendly Indians who lived not far away. No sign of distress was carved beside

the word, and no sign of a struggle was to be found in what traces the little colony had left. So Governor White comforted himself with the thought that his settlers, hard pressed for food, had taken refuge with the tribe of friendly Indians. He never had a chance to hunt for them, for the captain of his ship insisted upon sailing back to England at once. And that is the end of the story of Raleigh’s lost colony.

Many people believe that the settlers did take refuge with the Indians and finally intermarried with them. In Cumberland and Robeson counties, in North Carolina, there lives a tribe of Indians many of whom have blue eyes and show other traces of white blood. They are known as Croatans, and some of them bear names which are the same as the names of some of Raleigh’s settlers. They say that they are descendants of that lost colony, but as to whether or not it is true, no one can say.

It was a long time before anyone else came to settle in North Carolina, and when settlers did come, they were not people from across the sea, but immigrants from the young colony just to the north. Twenty years after Raleigh’s lost colony had come to the New World, another group of Englishmen



Photo by Daniels Studio

Raleigh, the capital of North Carolina, was named for that brave explorer, Sir Walter Raleigh. The state capitol, shown above, has taken various of the buildings of classical times as its model. It was built in 1840 to replace an earlier building that was destroyed by fire.

## THE HISTORY OF NORTH CAROLINA

settled at Jamestown, in Virginia. They took up the fertile land along the banks of the streams, and before long began to look about for new bottom lands where they could raise tobacco and ship it easily to market. It was about 1653 that Roger Green came down into North Carolina to find himself a farm. A few years later George Durant (dû-rănt') followed him, and before long a number of families from Virginia were planting their crops on Albemarle Sound and along the rivers that flow into it. Durant's holding is known as "Durant's Neck" to this very day.

In our story of South Carolina we have told how King Charles II gave (1663) a great expanse of land, including what is now North and South Carolina, to a number of his favorites. And we have told there of the Fundamental Constitutions, an unwise

plan of government that those noble English gentlemen drew up. Now from the first the North Carolina settlers were sturdily independent, and refused to be governed by anyone but themselves. Governors who did not bow to their will had a pretty uncomfortable time, and usually went back home or were sent to prison.

### A People Determined to Be Free

Finally (1729) King George II bought back the territory from the "proprietors" to whom it had been originally granted, and the colony, with great rejoicing, became the property of the English crown. But though things improved greatly, the people kept on in their independent ways, and resisted any move that cut off their liberties.

Meanwhile settlers had been slow in coming. People from New England and others from Barbados (bär-bä'dôz), an English island in the West Indies, had tried their luck along the beautiful Cape Fear River, but none of them had stayed long. There were various reasons why settlers went elsewhere—

to Virginia or to the thriving settlement in South Carolina. In the first place the coast, though three hundred miles long, had no good harbors, and the rivers there were shallow. So the tobacco that everyone raised to sell abroad in exchange for manufactured articles, had to be carried on little boats to larger ports.

Naturally this was a great inconvenience to the planters. Back home in Virginia they had been able to load their tobacco on ocean-going vessels that sailed right up to the grower's private dock.

Since the colonists in

Virginia did not want to share the tobacco trade with the farmers in North Carolina, they refused to handle tobacco for their southern neighbors, who consequently had to do most of their trading through the shippers of New England. This reduced profits greatly. Besides tobacco they sold skins—especially deerskins—salt pork, salt beef, tallow, a little rice from the marshes that line the coast, lumber, staves, and tar and turpentine. Many of these products found their way to the West Indies.

In 1677 laws were passed in England putting a tax on all tobacco sent out of the colony, and forcing the settlers to trade with English merchants only. It is not hard to see that such laws were a great hardship to the colonists. Tobacco was the main



This interesting vine-clad structure is the earliest state university building in the country. It is a part of the University of North Carolina, and dates from 1793.

---

## THE HISTORY OF NORTH CAROLINA

product they had to give in exchange for the manufactured articles they needed, and the tax on it bore heavily upon them. Altogether, this was too much for the liberty-loving people along the Albemarle. When an officer was sent to collect the taxes and stop the New England trade, the people armed themselves, and under George Durant and John Culpepper advanced against the unfortunate officer and his forces, threw him into prison, and set up a government of their own under Durant.

### A Hearty Spirit of Rebellion

Culpepper's Rebellion, as it was called, cleared the air for two years. Then the proprietors sent out Seth Sothel, one of their own number, to govern their willful settlers. He proved to be everything the colonists did not like, and once again they rose under the leadership of George Durant, and drove their governor out of the colony.

For a time there was peace, but when the government made a move to establish the Church of England as the state church, those people who belonged to other sects rose up, threw out the governor, and set up Thomas Cary in his place. Cary's Rebellion (1708-1711) did not succeed. The Quakers were robbed of certain of their rights, and there was great bitterness between the two factions. Naturally the spirit of rebellion grew.

The Indians, smarting under the injustices they had suffered, took advantage of all these disorders, and under Hancock, chief of the Tuscaroras (tūs'kâ-rō'râ), they waged (1711-1713) bloody warfare with the white people. Besides the Tuscaroras, who lived along the Neuse (nūs) River and were related to the powerful Iroquois (îr'ô-kwoi) of New York, there were also certain members of the great Siouan (sōō'ân) family—the Tutelos (tōō-tā'lō), who had settled along the Roanoke and the Dan, and the Catawbis (kâ-tô'bâ), living along the Catawba River.

### The Defeat of the Tuscaroras

The Cherokees (chër'ô-kē), who inhabited the mountains along the western border and spread into a number of southern states, were also members of the Iroquoian family

and were the largest tribe in the Eastern United States. But there never was any love lost between them and the rest of the Iroquois and they kept clear of the uprising, though later, at the time of the French and Indian Wars and during the Revolution, they gave a great deal of trouble. In this earlier struggle there was heavy loss of life before the whites were successful. At last the Indians were hopelessly defeated at the fierce Battle of Contentnea Creek, and the Tuscaroras left the state to join their northern cousins and become the Sixth Nation of the Iroquois. We have told the story on other pages.

But even this was not the end of violence. That chain of narrow sandy islands which rims the coast of both the Carolinas is now the haunt of thousands of water fowl, but in the early eighteenth century it was the nesting place of a more savage race. Among the shallow sounds and inlets pirates took refuge, waiting to sally forth and pounce upon the richly laden ships that passed to and fro. Occasionally they descended upon a town for plunder, and treated the inhabitants with terrible cruelty.

### The Last of the Pirates

Two of those bold outlaws were especially famous for barbarity and daring. One, a brute named Edward Teach, commonly known as "Blackbeard," rose to fame about 1716, and had a very active career. At one time he accepted the King's pardon and settled down at Bath, in North Carolina, to lead an honest life. But he found decency too tame, and hoisted the black flag again. Finally (1718), after a terrific sea fight at Ocracoke (ô'krâ-kōk) Inlet, he was overcome and killed in a hand-to-hand combat by Lieutenant Maynard, who had been sent out for him by Governor Spotswood of Virginia.

As a companion in crime Blackbeard had had a wealthy and educated man named Stede Bonnet, once an officer in the English army. All the sailors on the South Atlantic dreaded to hear his name. But he too put to sea once too often. Captain William Rhett, sent out by the governor of South Carolina, tracked him down to his head-

## THE HISTORY OF NORTH CAROLINA

quarters in the Cape Fear River and took him to Charleston, where he was hanged. By 1730 the coast of North Carolina—and of the whole United States—had been cleared of pirates, and ships might come and go in safety. But for a long time simple folk kept hunting for buried stores of pirate gold, and whenever they told stories round the fireside of a winter evening, they recounted the doings of the bold sea robbers who for years had terrorized the whole Atlantic coast.

With the cleaning out of the pirates' dens peace came to North Carolina at last. And it was high time. In the first thirty years only some five thousand people had settled in the colony, and it was not till 1705 that the first town was built. This was at Bath, on the Pamlico (pām'li-kō) River, where a group of French Protestants had settled soon after Culpepper's Rebellion. Not long after the founding of Bath, the town of Edenton was built on the Chowan (chō-wōn') River, where there had been a settlement ever since 1658. Trade flourished there and Edenton soon became the little colony's chief town, though Bath was the capital.

But Edenton too was soon outdistanced by the little settlement of New Bern (1710), which thrifty Swiss and German immigrants built on a narrow piece of land between the Neuse and Trent rivers.

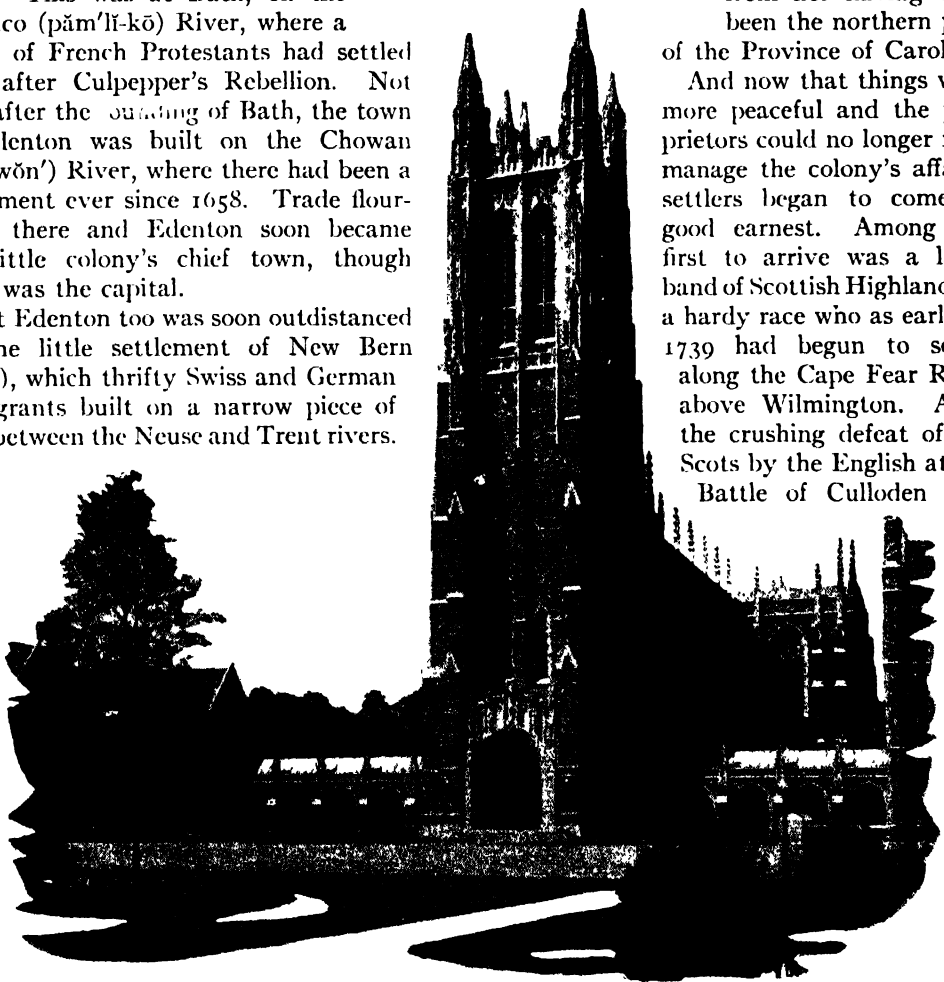
Before long, New Bern was made the colonial capital. It was not till 1725 that another settlement was attempted on the Cape Fear River. This finally became the town of Wilmington, the largest city in the province.

At the time when the king took over the colony there were 36,000 people in North Carolina. The colony had always been detached from South Carolina except on paper. The two colonies had been governed separately and had been far apart in sym-

pathy. In 1732 this difference was recognized when a boundary was set between them. North Carolina's nickname of the "Old North State" comes from her having once been the northern part of the Province of Carolina.

And now that things were more peaceful and the proprietors could no longer mismanage the colony's affairs, settlers began to come in good earnest. Among the first to arrive was a large band of Scottish Highlanders, a hardy race who as early as 1739 had begun to settle along the Cape Fear River above Wilmington. After the crushing defeat of the Scots by the English at the Battle of Culloden (kū-

In 1924 James B. Duke, who had made a vast fortune in tobacco, gave twenty million dollars to Trinity College—a small institution at Durham, North Carolina—on condition that its name be changed to Duke University. To-day this university is one of the richest and most promising schools of higher learning in the world. The chapel is shown below.



## THE HISTORY OF NORTH CAROLINA



Tobacco may tower high over a man's head, as it grows in North Carolina. It is there that our farmer is gathering the leaves that bring him cash to buy clothing, furniture, medicine, and farm machinery. For in North Carolina tobacco is one of the important "cash crops."

lōd'ēn) in 1746, they came in large numbers to a land more fertile and more sunny than their own wild highland moors. All through the valley of the Cape Fear and its tributaries they cleared their little farms, and then spread out westward through the counties near the southern boundary.

### The Beautiful Flora McDonald

Among those Scottish settlers was a famous woman whose name is among the most romantic in history. Beautiful Flora McDonald had helped "Bonnie Prince Charlie," who claimed the throne of England, to escape after his defeat at Culloden. She had smuggled him, disguised as her serving maid, to a place of safety, and for this act had been taken to London and thrown into the Tower. But when she appeared before the King she had defended herself so nobly that he had set her free. Later she came with her husband to North Carolina, and settled near Cross Creek, now known as Fayetteville. When the Revolution broke out, Flora McDonald, faithful to the pledge of loyalty which she had given the King in that famous interview, took his side in the conflict—as did most of the Highlanders. After the Scots had met defeat at the outbreak of the Revolution, she went back to Scotland, but her memory is still revered in North Carolina.

West of the Highlanders' settlement the land was taken up by sturdy Scotch-Irish, most of whom had come to North Carolina by way of Pennsylvania and Virginia. All through the middle of the century those liberty-loving folk were filtering down through the river valleys or working their way up from the port at Charleston. They took land all through the central part of the state, with Mecklenburg County as a center. There they established the town of Charlotte (1768).

Meanwhile thrifty Germans had been coming in ever since 1747. They bought (1751) 100,000 acres in the north-central part of the state, and began to clear it and build towns. Salem, now a part of Winston-Salem, was established by them in 1766.

### The Three Sections of North Carolina

All these people of the back country had the same spirit of independence as the earlier settlers near the coast, but they were far from having the same point of view. For like Virginia, North Carolina falls naturally into three sections running northeast and southwest. First, there is the level coastal plain in the eastern half, with its tidal marshes and part of the famous Dismal Swamp in the north. Next comes the hilly Piedmont (pēd'mōnt) Plateau (plā-tō'), with the "fall

## THE HISTORY OF NORTH CAROLINA

line" along its eastern edge running irregularly from Northampton County to Anson County. And last comes the high Appalachian (ăp'ă-lă'chĭ-ăn) Mountains in the west, with the Blue Ridge to the east of them and the Unakas (ŭ'nă-kă) on the western border. We have described these three belts in our story of Virginia. Some of the finest scenery in the East is in North Carolina, for this is the greatest massing of mountains in the Appalachians. Mount Mitchell (6,684 feet) is the highest point east of the Mississippi.

Now it is a well-known fact that mountaineers and all inhabitants of a very rugged country are hard to tame. They resent tyranny and hate an insult. And the people of the Carolina mountains felt that they had to stand altogether too much of both. Heavy and unjust taxes were laid on them—and they knew only too well that their hard-earned money often went into the pockets of the tax collectors instead of into the public coffers. Their relations with the wealthier lowlanders were much like those we have described in our stories of Virginia and South Carolina.

In the end their patience gave out. They organized themselves into bands (1768), and referring to themselves as "Regulators" they began a campaign to set things right. They appealed to the various officers, and finally to Governor Tryon (trĭ'ŏn), but nothing was done for them. Finally the governor sent an armed force against them, seized some of them at Hillsboro, and threw them into jail. The rest were commanded to go home. They obeyed, but by no means gave up the fight. Violence broke out during the year that followed, and at last Governor Tryon sent an army against the Regulators. A battle was

fought (1771) at Alamance (ăl'ă-măns) Creek, and the Regulators, running out of ammunition, were finally defeated.

Many of the men fighting against the "Regulation" were people in whom there burned a fierce hatred of oppression, but they knew that there is a great difference between liberty and violence, and were determined that order should be maintained. Before long, they were to bear arms themselves in the cause of liberty, for the Revolution was not far away. When it came, the Regulators

took the side of the King. They were sick of lowland justice, and gradually began to find their way across the western mountains—to settle what later became the state of Tennessee.

Now it was such independent folk as these that the British had been trying to tax for a long time past. They felt it only right that the colonies should help pay for the army that England sent over to help protect them. But the colonists did not see it so, and they resented the mother country's interference

with their trade. Since this was so, it will not surprise us to learn that the people of North Carolina were among the first to revolt. When the Stamp Act was passed they refused to buy the stamps for their official documents, and even put up an armed resistance when a British ship tried to cow them into submission. When the hated tax was laid on tea the ladies of Edenton met at the famous "Edenton Tea Party" (1774) and agreed to renounce entirely "that Pernicious Custom of Drinking Tea." All over the colony public meetings were held, and all who were not Tories agreed not to buy British goods.

When news of the Battle of Lexington



Photo by the N. C. State Dept. of Agriculture

All hands turn out to help pick cotton in the vast fields of North Carolina. This fluffy white crop will feed the state's many cotton mills.

## THE HISTORY OF NORTH CAROLINA



Photo by the Suddell Studios

North Carolina's forests provide lumber to be sawed into boards—about half of hard and half of soft woods.

Her trees also produce a steady supply of tar, turpentine, and resin often known as "naval stores."

reached North Carolina, the people of Mecklenburg County sent representatives to a meeting at Charlotte (May, 1775), where resolutions were passed declaring the colonies to be independent. And in April, 1776, a convention representing the whole colony was held at Halifax and unanimously declared North Carolina to be independent of Great Britain. No other colony had as yet dared take such a grave step.

### Two Important Battles

When war finally broke out, the governor of North Carolina planned to raise an army of Highlanders and Regulators to help the British seize the colony. But as the Highlanders were marching to Wilmington to join the British forces they were met by an army of "Patriots," as the American sympathizers were called, and were defeated at Moore's Creek Bridge (February, 1776). It was not a great battle, but it was important, for it saved North Carolina, and perhaps other southern colonies, from falling into the enemy's hands. Later, the important Battle of Guilford Courthouse (1781) was fought on North Carolina soil. In it, after a masterly

retreat, General Nathanael Greene held back the forces of Lord Cornwallis and prevented him from joining another British army farther north to attack Washington.

It was characteristic of the liberty-loving people of this little state that they at first refused to adopt the new constitution of the United States because it contained no Bill of Rights. As you know, the "Bill of Rights" is made up of the first ten amendments to the constitution. Its purpose is to safeguard the rights of citizens and of states. North Carolina finally came into the Union in 1789, and the Bill of Rights was adopted in 1791.

### Up Country vs. Low Country

After the Revolution the struggle between "Up Country" and "Low Country" continued with great bitterness. The planters along the coast, where it was easy to get goods to market, fought to prevent roads from being built into the hill country, for they did not want the competition of the up-country farmers. At last, in 1835, the western counties were granted their fair share of representatives in the state legislature, and were able



## THE HISTORY OF NORTH CAROLINA

to get the transportation they needed.

The Old North State did not grow so fast as many of the other states after the Revolution. Her lack of good harbors handicapped her trade, and because her trade was small she had no large cities and so was slow in developing manufactures—for factories spring up in centers of population, where labor is plentiful. Her people lived almost entirely by agriculture, just as they did in all the southern states, but North Carolina never had so many large slaveholding plantations as her neighbors had—we have described those little private kingdoms in our story of Virginia. In early times a law had forbidden any one man to hold more than 640 acres. Ways were found to get around the law, and some planters owned twenty or thirty thousand acres, with two hundred or more slaves. But at all times North Carolina had many small farmers who worked their own lands. In the early days they let their hogs and cattle and horses run wild in the

woods, to feed on roots and acorns. Once a year great droves of hogs were driven to market in Virginia—and “hog and hominy,” also known as “pork and grits,” became the main diet of the common people.

### The Shock of the Civil War

Into this peaceful existence the Civil War burst with terrible violence. North Carolina never had taken an extreme stand in the Southern cause, and did not withdraw from the Union until President Lincoln called upon her to send troops to its support. Then she joined her sister states of the South. During the conflict and during the Reconstruction she suffered as they did. There was never a great deal of fighting on her soil,

but she gave freely of her wealth and her manhood. After the war was over the vote was taken away from the educated white people, and the government was in the hands of uneducated Negroes, white “carpetbaggers” from the North, and “scalawags” (skāl’ă-wäg), or dishonest Southern whites. But in 1877 the native white people once again got control, and have kept it ever since.

After the war the state turned to the raising of cotton, though she by no means gave up tobacco—even to-day she and Kentucky vie for first place in its production. Then, too, as the pine forests in the coastal plain were destroyed to yield tar and turpentine, many small truck gardens were planted. The warm moist climate made it possible to grow early fruits and vegetables for sale in northern cities. To-day those little farms, which have replaced the plantations in the sandy soil along the coast, bring in a good return, though they need large quantities of fertilizer. Much of this the farmers must buy at the factories.

Over large areas the soil has been robbed of fertility—just as in many states—by failure to rotate crops or by wasteful cutting of forests. More land should be planted to grass and most of the idle and badly washed land turned to forest or pasture for stock, especially dairy cattle, which are sorely needed. More poultry is needed. Too many farmers plant nothing but tobacco or cotton and are ruined when that crop fails. And there are too many rented farms for the good of the land or the state. But fine work is being done, and when it is finished North Carolina should be an Eden. She is well within the region which has the most rainfall of any in the United States—unless one counts the western slopes of the mountains



Photo by North Carolina State News Bureau

Here is a view of a busy pulp mill in Plymouth near the mouth of the Roanoke River.

## THE HISTORY OF NORTH CAROLINA

along the Pacific coast. Her varied surface gives her every variety of climate, from the subtropical warmth of the coast to the cool mountain heights along her western border. Yet nowhere are there great extremes of heat or cold.

### **An Eden in the Making**

The result is that the state has more kinds of trees and plants than any other state in the Union: It is said that Mount Mitchell has a greater variety of plant life than the continent of Europe. In medicinal plants North Carolina leads all other states. Seventy-five percent of all the drug plants in the United States grow in the neighborhood of Asheville, and many farm families grow ginseng or golden seal—plants which may yield from \$2,000 to \$5,000 an acre. The sale of ornamental leaves is another source of income to certain of the farmers.

Even though the land could yield much more wealth than it does, a great deal has already been accomplished by the state's excellent program to promote scientific farming. Her dairies are fast growing in number and are proving to be highly profitable in various ways. Tobacco is her most valuable crop, but she has a good income from cotton, corn, hay, potatoes, wheat, oats, barley, peanuts, soybeans, sweet potatoes, pecans, apples, peaches, pears, and grapes.

It was about 1880 that North Carolina began to turn to manufacturing. The price of cotton had been high after the Civil War, and large numbers of people had stopped planting other crops and put their land into cotton. Then, in the seventies, the price had begun to fall, and the farmers saw their profits dwindle. What was to be done? One way to use the crop was to make it into cloth. So cotton mills sprang up, and at the end of twenty-five years the value of cotton manufactures alone was nearly two and a half times as great as the value of the whole manufactured output of North Carolina had been in 1880.

### **North Carolina's Busy Mills**

The manufacturing of the state's great tobacco crop began at about the same time, and also the making of all sorts of articles

out of the splendid forests that grew in the sandy lowlands and on the mountain sides. The result was that by World War II North Carolina, though she had been left poor in money and in manpower at the close of the Civil War, had climbed to twelfth place among the manufacturing states.

North Carolina has more cotton mills than any other state, and is one of the first three states in the making of cotton cloth. Much of this industry centers in Gaston County, in spite of the fact that the area contains no great cities, such as we should expect to find. Instead, it has a hundred busy mill villages, in which the people live and work while cultivating their little patches of land. This cheap way of living, together with the mild climate and the large numbers of poor workers, has made wages low—a great attraction to mill owners. Other attractions are an abundance of raw materials and magnificent stores of cheap electric power, furnished by the many tumbling streams in the mountains and the Piedmont district. In her supplies of electric power North Carolina is one of the leading states in the Union.

### **North Carolina's "Twin City"**

Even more important than the cotton mills are the tobacco factories, some of which are very famous. Four-fifths of the output comes from Winston-Salem, the state's leading city—really a "twin city" made up of the two towns of Winston and Salem. It is the world's greatest tobacco manufacturing center. Other important tobacco factories are at Durham, Statesville, Reidsville, and Greensboro.

The state's largest city is Charlotte, in Mecklenburg County, another busy cotton-manufacturing region. Cleveland and Alamance counties are also centers for cotton manufacture, which is scattered widely through the Piedmont section. Greensboro and Durham both have large cotton mills. And the state's various rayon mills are highly efficient. Wilmington, on the Cape Fear River, is North Carolina's chief port. Ships bring her molasses and chemicals to make fertilizer, and take away cotton. Raleigh, the state capital, has a varied list of manufac-

---

## THE HISTORY OF NORTH CAROLINA

tures. High Point makes furniture. And Asheville, in the heart of some of North Carolina's finest mountain scenery, is one of our country's most famous resorts, popular for over a century.

But none of these cities are very large. Now, as in the past, the people of North Carolina prefer to live in the country. They have many factories for manufacturing tobacco, cotton, furniture and other wood products, chemical fertilizer, food products, and cotton by-products, but these factories are not crowded into a few large cities.

### Mine and Forest and Stream

In the first part of the nineteenth century North Carolina took a good deal of wealth from her mines, especially in gold, but they are not worked much to-day. She leads the country in producing mica, which comes from the northeastern part of the mountain region, and is an important source of feldspar and lithium. She has valuable deposits of asbestos, bromine, a mineral used extensively in photography and metallurgy, coal, stone of various kinds, talc, and tantalum. Just now clay products, stone, and sand and gravel pay best. The forests of short-leaf pine in the coastal plain still yield tar, turpentine, and resin—known as “naval stores”—and large quantities of wood for making paper. The lower river courses and shallow coastal waters are fished with profit, especially for alewives, kingfish, and crabs.

In 1921 North Carolina passed a remarkable highway act, which was soon copied by other southern states. To-day some ten thousand miles of her state highway is surfaced—greatly to the advantage of business. The many tidal rivers give easy access to the Intracoastal Waterway, which runs for nearly fifteen hundred miles from northern New Jersey to Miami, and gives safe passage to small boats inside the rim of narrow islands along our southeastern coast. This is especially important in North Carolina, for

Cape Hatteras (hăt'ēr-ăs) is one of the most dangerous points to shipping on the Atlantic coast, and Cape Lookout and Cape Fear are not much better. Occasionally a hurricane sweeps up this coast, but it has usually lost much of its force before it gets so far north.

### In the Cause of Education

North Carolina's fine highways are standing her in good stead in a number of ways. She is taking long strides in education, and uses her paved highways for the buses which the state sends to carry children from the farms to the consolidated schools that are scattered through the rural districts. Her schools have a higher enrollment than those of any other state in the Southeast, and educational conditions, which have not been very good in the South generally, have improved greatly. North Carolina is one of the foremost of the states in the making of laws designed to improve the welfare of the great masses of her people. The University of North Carolina—chartered in 1789—at Chapel Hill, has long been doing magnificent work in making the need for such legislation known to the people, and the people have responded generously and intelligently. In the first twenty-five years of this century the total outlay for schools was multiplied by twenty-six. The state has an excellent program of vocational education. Duke University, at Durham, is another outstanding institution, with a promising future, for it is one of the richest universities in the world. North Carolina has given two presidents to the United States. They are James Knox Polk and Andrew Johnson.

### The Future of the Old North State

Such then is the Old North State to-day. Clearly, misfortune has not broken her early spirit, nor has time dulled it. May it bring her an ever increasing prosperity as she forges ahead in all good works.



## NORTH CAROLINA

**AREA:** 52,712 square miles—27th in rank.

**LOCATION:** North Carolina is a South Atlantic state, lying between 33° 51' and 36° 34' N. Lat. and between 75° 27' and 84° 20' W. Long. It is bounded on the north by Virginia, on the east and southeast by the Atlantic Ocean, on the south by South Carolina and Georgia, on the southwest by South Carolina, and on the west and northwest by Tennessee.

**PHYSICAL FEATURES:** The eastern half of North Carolina lies in the low and level coastal plain, where rivers are sluggish and long lines of sand bars lie along the shore. In the north these low sandy islands are well out to sea, and form the dangerous reefs known as Cape Hatteras and Cape Lookout. In the south Cape Fear is another point dangerous to shipping. Near the shore the coastal plain is very swampy, especially in the north, where the Dismal Swamp, which extends well into Virginia, has become famous. Inland from the coastal plain, which ends at the fall line, is a higher upland belt known as the Piedmont Plateau; and west of the plateau is a region of mountains belonging to the Appalachian system—the highest mountains in the Eastern United States. Among the most impressive groups are the Iron Mountains, the Bald Mountains, and the Great Smokies—all sections of the Unaka Range, which extends into Tennessee. In the Black Mountains is Mount Mitchell (6,684 ft.), highest point east of the Rockies. Other lofty peaks are Clingman's Dome (6,642) and Mount Guyot (6,621), both on the line between North Carolina and Tennessee. The fine Blue Ridge, which separates the Appalachian chains from the Piedmont Plateau, also has some high summits. North Carolina is noted for her beautiful scenery.

For her size North Carolina has a large water area—3,686 square miles. Behind the islands off the northern coast are the broad, shallow stretches of Albemarle, Pamlico, and other sounds. Some fifteen shallow lakes lie in the coastal marshes, the largest Lake Mattamuskeet, with an area of about 100 square miles. In the coastal plain the rivers all flow southeast. The most important are the Neuse (260 m. long), the Cape Fear (202 m. long), the Tar, and the Roanoke (380 m. long), which enters the state from Virginia. All these rivers rise in the Piedmont Plateau. The southeast slope of the Blue Ridge gives rise to the Broad (200 m. long), the Catawba (300 m. long), and the Yadkin (202 m. long), all of which reach the Atlantic in South Carolina—where the Yadkin is known as the Pee Dee. The Dan (180 m. long) finds its way from the Piedmont region into Virginia, where it joins the Roanoke. The Little Tennessee (150 m. long) and the French Broad (210 m. long) both rise west of the Blue Ridge and make their way into Tennessee, where their waters sooner or later join the Tennessee River and finally the Ohio and the Mississippi. The New River, farther north, also finds its way to the Ohio. Inside the islands along the coast runs the government's fine Intracoastal Waterway. North Carolina has no irrigated land.

**CLIMATE:** At Charlotte the mean Jan. temperature is 41° F.; the mean July temperature, 78° F. The record high is 103° F.; the record low, -5° F. In the east, along the coast, the climate is hot and humid, but it grows cooler and more bracing as one goes inland to higher levels, until on the mountain tops one finds cold winters and delightful summers. The mean annual temperature for the state is about 59° F. The average yearly rainfall is about 52 inches.

### INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING

University of North Carolina, Chapel Hill

North Carolina College of Agriculture and Engineering, Raleigh

North Carolina College for Women, Greensboro  
These three institutions are parts of the University of North Carolina.

State normal schools for white students are maintained at Greenville, Cullowhee, Boone, and Pembroke; for colored students at Winston-Salem, Elizabeth City and Fayetteville.

Other state institutions are the Agricultural and Technical College of North Carolina at Greensboro, and the North Carolina College for Negroes at Durham, both for colored students.

Among the privately endowed institutions are Atlantic Christian College at Wilson, Catawba College at Salisbury, Davidson College at Davidson, Duke University at Durham, Elon College at Elon College, Flora MacDonald College for women at Red Springs, Greensboro College for women at Greensboro, Guilford College at Guilford College, High Point College at High Point, Lenoir-Rhyne College at Hickory, Meredith College for women at Raleigh, Queens College for women at Charlotte, Salem College for women at Winston-Salem, and Wake Forest College at Wake Forest. Institutions for Negroes are Barber-Scotia College at Concord, Bennett College for women at Greensboro, Johnson C. Smith University at Charlotte, Livingstone College at Salisbury, St. Augustine's College at Raleigh, and Shaw University at Raleigh.

**CHARITIES AND CORRECTION:** Hospitals for the insane are maintained at Raleigh, Morganton, and Goldsboro. Other institutions are the Caswell Training School for mental defectives at Kinston, the North Carolina Orthopedic Hospital for crippled children at Gastonia, the School for the Blind and Deaf at Raleigh, the School for the Deaf at Morganton, the Soldiers' Home at Raleigh, the Confederate Women's Home at Fayetteville, the North Carolina Sanatorium at Sanatorium, the State Farm Colony for Women at Kinston, the Stonewall Jackson Training School for delinquent white boys at Concord, the Eastern Carolina Industrial Training School for delinquent white boys at Rocky Mount, the Morrison Industrial School for delinquent Negro boys at Hoffman, the State Home and Industrial School for white girls at Samarcand, a state training school for delinquent colored girls at Efland, the state prison at Raleigh, and the penal camps of the State Highway and Public Works Commission. North Carolina inflicts capital punishment by lethal gas.

**POLITICAL FACTS:** The present constitution was formulated in 1868 and amended several times according to the provision which makes it possible to call a constitutional convention whenever it is the wish of two-thirds of each house in the legislature and of a majority of the voters.

The General Assembly meets in odd-numbered years, with 50 members in the Senate and 120 in the House, all elected for two years. Senators must be 25 years of age or over and have lived 2 years in the state; representatives must have resided in their county at least 1 year before election.

Executive power is vested in the governor, lieutenant governor, attorney general, secretary of state, auditor, treasurer, superintendent of public instruction, and commissioners of labor, agriculture, and insurance, who serve 4 years. The last seven make up the governor's council of state. The governor has no veto and may not serve two successive terms.

The judicial power lies with the supreme court, superior courts, district courts, and justices of the peace, with such inferior courts as may be established by law. A chief justice and four associate judges elected for 8 years make up the supreme court. There are 20 judicial districts, for each of which a judge is elected for 8 years.

Every citizen of the United States who is 21 years of age and has resided in the state for 1 year and in

## NORTH CAROLINA—Continued

the precinct or other election district for 4 months, is eligible to vote, except those who have been convicted of a crime and those unable to read or write any section of the constitution on demand. Persons who deny the existence of a God are not permitted to hold office.

The legislature of 1915 passed a primary-election law applying to state officers, representatives in Congress, district officers, and members of the general assembly, with a preference to be expressed for president and vice president.

Each county has five commissioners, with a treasurer, a register of deeds, and a surveyor, all elected every second year.

The capital of North Carolina is at Raleigh.

**PARKS:** The Great Smoky Mountains National Park covers 686 square miles of North Carolina and Tennessee, of which 358 square miles are in North Carolina. The Great Smokies are the highest mountains east of the Black Hills in South Dakota and are very beautiful. One route of entry is a road from Asheville, a popular resort.

**MONUMENTS:** Kill Devil Hill Monument, where the Wright brothers made their first sustained airplane flight, is a National Memorial. Guilford Courthouse, at Greensboro, and Moores Creek, at Currie, are national military parks. Fort Raleigh, a national historic site, commemorates the first settlement (1587).

North Carolina has 3,593,436 acres of national forest.

**BIRD AND GAME RESERVATIONS:** Lake Matamuskeet Migratory Waterfowl Refuge (1934) covers 50,228 acres; Pea Island (1938) covers 5,880 acres; Swanquarter (1932) covers 15,501 acres; and the North Carolina Wildlife Management Area (1940), which is administered by the state under the federal government's Fish and Wildlife Service, covers 58,900 acres.

**NAME:** First given to the territory by Jean Ribault in 1562. Later, under King Charles I, the region was named "Carolana," and since the time of Charles II, has been "Carolina." King Charles I was naming the territory for himself in his grant to Sir Robert Heath in 1629, specifically referring to the coast and interior regions between the 31st and 36th parallels, though later "Carolina" came to be applied to the coastal domain and "Carolana" to the interior.

The New English Dictionary, an outstanding authority, derives "Carolina" from the expression "Carolus Magnus," the Latin name of Charlemagne. The English name Charles is derived from the Latin "Carolus," which is the latinized form of the German word "Carl," meaning "strong, stout, courageous, valiant."

**NICKNAMES:** North Carolina is called the Land of the Sky from its many lofty mountain peaks. It is also called the Old North State from its position as the more northerly of the two Carolinas. No one knows why it has been called the Rip Van Winkle State. The great quantities of turpentine produced from its pine forests have given North Carolina the name of the Turpentine State. The more humorous appellation of Tar Heel State comes from the bantering term given to those soldiers who successfully defended their posts and taunted the other regiments with quips suggesting that they use tar on their heels to make them stick better in the next fight.

The people are called Tar-heels and Tuckoes, the latter from an Indian word meaning "bread," and referring to a humble variety of bread once eaten by the common people.

**STATE FLOWER:** The General Assembly of 1941 designated the dogwood as the state flower of North Carolina.

**STATE SONG:** "The Old North State," with words composed by William Gaston and adapted by him to a German melody; adopted in 1927 by legislative act.

**STATE FLAG:** A blue union, containing in the center a white star with the letter N in gilt on the left and the letter C on the right. Above and below the star are scrolls commemorating famous dates in North Carolina's history. The fly consists of two equally proportioned bars, the upper red and the lower white.

**STATE MOTTO:** "Esse Quam Videri," meaning "To Be Rather than to Seem"—from Cicero's "De Amicitia."

**STATE BIRD:** The Carolina chickadee (*Parus carolinensis*), designated by vote of the people in 1931.

**INTERESTING FACTS:** The world's first successful airplane flight was made in North Carolina.

The state exceeds all other states in the Union in its percentage of native-born whites. Its families are larger than those of any state in the Union, with an average of 3.82 persons to each family.

North Carolina's losses in battle and from disease in the Civil War surpassed those of any other state.

North Carolina observes New Year's Day, Washington's Birthday, Independence Day, Labor Day, Election Day, Armistice Day, Thanksgiving Day, Christmas Day, Robert E. Lee's Birthday on Jan. 19, Easter Monday, the date of the passage of the Halifax Independence Resolutions on April 12, Confederate Memorial Day on May 10, and the anniversary of the signing of the Mecklenburg Declaration of Independence on May 20.

North Carolina has one Indian reservation, occupied by members of the Cherokee tribe.

Population of state, 1940, 3,571,623		Brunswick (D3) 17,125		Clay (A4) 6,405		Edgecombe (E2) 49,162	
Counties		Buncombe <sup>1</sup> (B4) 108,755		Cleveland (A2) 58,055			
Alamance (C1)	57,427	Burke (A2)	38,615	Columbus (D3)	45,663	Forsyth <sup>2</sup> (H1)	126,475
Alexander (A2)	13,454			Craven (E2)	31,298	Franklin (D1)	30,382
Alleghany (A1)	8,341	Cabarrus (B2)	59,393	Cumberland			
Anson (B3)	24,443	Caldwell (A2)	35,795	(D2)	59,320	Gaston (A2)	87,531
Ashe (A1)	22,664	Camden (F1)	5,440	Currituck (F1)	6,709	Gates (F1)	10,060
Avery (A1)	13,561	Carteret (F3)	18,284			Graham (A4)	6,418
		Caswell (C1)	20,032	Dare (G2)	6,041	Granville (D1)	29,344
		Catawba (A2)	51,653	Davidson <sup>2</sup> (B2)	53,377	Greene (E2)	18,548
Beaufort (F2)	36,431	Chatham (C2)	24,726	Davie (B2)	14,999	Guilford (C1)	153,916
Bertie (E1)	26,201	Cherokee (A4)	18,813	Duplin (E3)	39,739		
Bladen (D3)	27,156	Chowan (F1)	11,572	Durham (D2)	80,244	Halifax (E1)	56,512
						Harnett (D2)	44,236

<sup>1</sup> Part of McDowell annexed to Buncombe in 1925.

<sup>2</sup> Parts of Davidson and Yadkin annexed to Forsyth in 1921 and 1927, respectively.

# NORTH CAROLINA—Continued

Haywood (B4) . . . 34,804	asterisk (*) were clas-	Gastonia * (A2) . 21,315	Pineville (B2) . . . 1,144
Henderson (B4) . 26,049	sified as urban in 1940]	Gibsonville (C1) . 1,753	Plymouth (F2) . . 2,461
Hertford (E1) . . 19,352		Goldsboro * (E2) 17,274	
Hoke (C2) . . . . 14,937		Graham * (C1) . 4,339	
Hyde (F2) . . . . 7,860		Granite Falls	
		(A2) . . . . . 1,873	
Iredell (B2) . . . 50,424		Greensboro *	
		(C1) . . . . . 59,319	
Jackson (A4) . . . 19,366		Greenville * (E2) 12,674	
Johnston (D2) . . 63,798			
Jones (E2) . . . . 10,926			
		Hamlet (C3) . . . 5,111	
Lee (C2) . . . . . 18,743		Hazelwood (B4) . 1,508	
Lenoir (E2) . . . 41,211		Henderson *	
Lincoln (A2) . . . 24,187		(D1) . . . . . 7,647	
		Hendersonville *	
McDowell * (B4) 22,996		(B4) . . . . . 5,381	
Macon (A4) . . . 15,880		Hertford (F1) . . 1,959	
Madison (B4) . . 22,522		Hickory * (A2) . 13,487	
Martin (E2) . . . 26,111		High Point *	
Mecklenburg		(B2) . . . . . 38,495	
(B2) . . . . . 151,826		Hillsboro (C1) . . 1,311	
Mitchell (C3) . . 15,980			
Montgomery		Jonesville (B1) . . 1,733	
(C2) . . . . . 16,280			
Moore (C2) . . . 30,969		Kenly (D2) . . . . 1,095	
		Kernersville (B1) 2,103	
Nash (E1) . . . . 55,608		Kings Moun-	
New Hanover		tain * (A2) . . . 6,547	
(E3) . . . . . 47,935		Kinston * (E2) . 15,388	
Northampton			
(E1) . . . . . 28,299		La Grange (E2) . 1,647	
Onslow (E3) . . . 17,939		Landis (B2) . . . 1,650	
Orange (C1) . . . 23,072		Laurinburg *	
		(C3) . . . . . 5,685	
Pamlico (F2) . . . 9,706		Lawndale (A2) . 1,006	
Pasquotank (F1) 20,568		Leaksville (C1) . 1,886	
Pender (E3) . . . 17,710		Lenoir * (A2) . . 7,598	
Perquimans (F1) 9,771		Lexington * (B2) 10,550	
Person (C1) . . . 25,029		Lincolnton *	
Pitt (E2) . . . . . 61,244		(A2) . . . . . 4,525	
Polk (B4) . . . . . 11,874		Littleton (E1) . 1,200	
		Longview (A2) . 1,489	
Randolph (C2) . 44,554		Louisburg (D1) . . 2,309	
Richmond (C2) . 36,810		Lowell (A2) . . . 1,826	
Robeson (C3) . . 76,860		Lumberton *	
Rockingham		(D3) . . . . . 5,803	
(C1) . . . . . 57,898			
Rowan (B2) . . . 69,206		Madison (C3) . . 1,683	
Rutherford (A2) 45,577		Maiden (A2) . . . 1,803	
		Marion * (C4) . 2,889	
Sampson (C2) . . 47,440		Marshall (B4) . 1,160	
Scotland (C3) . . 23,232		Marshville (B3) 1,007	
Stanly (B2) . . . 32,834		Maxton (C3) . . 1,656	
Stokes (B1) . . . 22,656		Mayodan (C1) . 2,323	
Surry (B1) . . . . 41,783		Mebane (C1) . . 2,060	
Swain (A4) . . . . 12,177		Mocksville (B2) 1,607	
		Monroe * (B3) . 6,475	
Transylvania		Mooresville *	
(B4) . . . . . 12,241		(B2) . . . . . 6,682	
Tyrrell (F2) . . . 5,556		Morehead City *	
		(F3) . . . . . 3,695	
Union (B2) . . . . 39,097		Morganton *	
		(A2) . . . . . 7,670	
Vance (D1) . . . . 29,961		Mt. Airy * (B1) . 6,286	
Wake (D2) . . . . 109,544		Mt. Holly (A2) . 2,055	
Warren (D1) . . . 23,145		Mt. Olive * (D2) 2,929	
Washington (F2) 12,323		(B2) . . . . . 1,017	
Watauga (A1) . . 18,114		Murfreesboro	
Wayne (D2) . . . 58,328		(E1) . . . . . 1,550	
Wilkes (A1) . . . 43,003		Murphy (A4) . . 1,873	
Wilson (E2) . . . 50,219			
		Nashville (E2) . . 1,171	
Yadkin * (B1) . . 20,657		New Bern * (E2) 11,815	
Yancey (B4) . . . 17,202		Newton * (A2) . 5,407	
		North Wilkes-	
Cities, Towns,		boro * (A1) . . . 4,478	
Villages		Norwood (B2) . . 1,515	
[Places marked with an		Oxford * (D1) . . 3,991	
		Raeford (C2) . . . 1,628	
		Raleigh * (D2) . 46,897	
		Ramseur (C2) . . 1,220	
		Randleman (C2) . 2,032	
		Red Springs (C3) . 1,559	
		Reidsville * (C1) 10,387	
		Roanoke	
		Rapids * (E1) . . 8,545	
		Robersonville	
		(E2) . . . . . 1,407	
		Rockingham *	
		(C3) . . . . . 3,657	
		Rocky Mount *	
		(E2) . . . . . 25,568	
		Roxboro * (D1) . 4,599	
		Rutherfordton	
		(A2) . . . . . 2,326	
		St. Pauls (D3) . . 1,923	
		Salisbury * (B2) 19,037	
		Sanford * (C2) . . 4,960	
		Scotland Neck *	
		(E1) . . . . . 2,559	
		Selma (D2) . . . . 2,007	
		Shelby * (A2) . . 14,037	
		Siler City (C2) . . 2,197	
		Smithfield * (D2) 3,678	
		Southern Pines *	
		(C2) . . . . . 3,225	
		Southport (D4) . 1,760	
		Spencer * (B2) . 3,072	
		Spindale * (A2) . 3,952	
		Spring Hope	
		(D2) . . . . . 1,222	
		Spruce Pine (C4) . 1,968	
		Stanley (A2) . . . 1,036	
		Statesville * (B2) 11,440	
		Sylva (B4) . . . . 1,409	
		Tabor (D3) . . . . 1,552	
		Tarboro * (E2) . . 7,148	
		Taylorsville (A2) 1,122	
		Thomasville *	
		(B2) . . . . . 11,041	
		Troy (C2) . . . . 1,861	
		Tryon (C4) . . . . 2,043	
		Valdese * (A2) . . 2,615	
		Wadesboro *	
		(B3) . . . . . 3,587	
		Wake Forest	
		(D2) . . . . . 1,562	
		Wallace (E3) . . 1,050	
		Walnut Cove	
		(B1) . . . . . 1,084	
		Warrenton (D1) . 1,147	
		Warsaw (D2) . . . 1,483	
		Washington *	
		(E2) . . . . . 8,569	
		Waynesville *	
		(B4) . . . . . 2,940	
		Weldon (E1) . . . 2,341	
		Wendell (D2) . . . 1,132	
		Whiteville * (D3) 3,011	
		Wilkesboro	
		(A1) . . . . . 1,309	
		Williamston *	
		(E2) . . . . . 3,966	
		Wilmington *	
		(E3) . . . . . 33,407	
		Wilson * (E2) . . 19,234	
		Windsor (E1) . . . 1,747	
		Winston-Salem *	
		(B1) . . . . . 79,815	
		Zebulon (D2) . . . 1,070	

---

# ***The* HISTORY of NORTH DAKOTA**

---

## **Reading Unit No. 33**

### **NORTH DAKOTA: THE SIOUX STATE**

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

#### ***Interesting Facts Explained***

Why the land in North Dakota is mostly level, 8-298  
How the "Bad Lands" got their name, 8-299  
The first explorers in North Dakota, 8-299  
Why the Sioux resented the power of the white man, 8-300

How the Indian power was finally broken, 8-300  
How the railroads helped the steady growth of North Dakota, 8-300  
Grain and live stock, 8-301  
How droughts and dust storms have caused harm, 8-301

#### ***Things to Think About***

Who called the Dakota Indians the "Sioux"?  
What did the Indians trade for rifles?  
Why is North Dakota proud of her southwestern region?  
How many settlers were neces-

sary before a state could be admitted to the Union?  
What made the soil of North Dakota ideal for farming?  
What great mineral resources in North Dakota are as yet entirely undeveloped?

#### ***Related Material***

What animals give us most of the meat we eat? 9-325  
One flag from ocean to ocean, 7-231-39  
What did Louis Agassiz find out about the Ice Age? 13-431-33  
How did fur traders travel in Canada in the early days? 10-138  
What land was included in the

Louisiana Purchase? 7-206  
The story of a grain of wheat, 9-97-102  
How has machinery helped the farmer? 10-530, 7-452-53  
What is the story of Ceres? 9-118  
Where will wheat grow? 9-98  
The plight of the farmer, 7-458-60

#### ***Practical Applications***

What part did the railroads play in the settling of North Dakota? 8-300

Why have the farmers of North Dakota taken up the raising of live stock? 8-301

#### ***Leisure-time Activities***

PROJECT NO. 1: Draw a map of the United States and mark on it the territory included in the Louisiana Purchase, 7-206.

PROJECT NO. 2: Plant a few grains of wheat outdoors or in a pot and watch them grow.

### NORTH DAKOTA: *the SIOUX STATE*

*The Prairies of North Dakota Are a Part of the Great Granary of Our Nation, and the State's Energetic Citizens Make Good Use of Their Rich Loam to Help Feed the Rest of the World*

**M**ILE after mile of fields of waving wheat gleaming green or golden as far as the eye can see, an occasional trim grove set out in even rows to protect a comfortable farmhouse, a bright blue sky resting firmly on a level horizon, the cry of birds, the lowing of cattle, and the hum of a keen dry wind blowing steadily in your ears—that is North Dakota! The open prairie has a gay, sweet charm that, like the charm of the sea, gets into the blood of the man who has grown up to feel it, until he is smothered and homesick among inclosing hills. The horizon always beckons him—and always retreats. It is limitless.

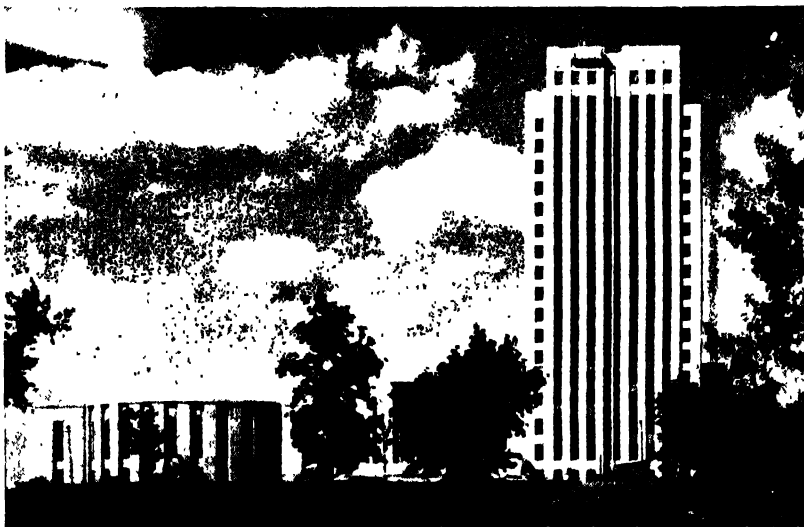
Because North Dakota is one of the prairie states, her land is level and fertile. She may be roughly divided into three separate plains, with cliffs, or “escarpments,” separating one from the other. Of these three plains the one farthest west is the highest and widest and the one farthest east the lowest and narrowest—only some thirty or forty miles wide. The Red River Valley, once the bed of Lake Agassiz, described in our story of Minnesota, makes up the eastern plain. It is from 800 to 1,800 feet high, while the plateau (plă-tô'), or high tableland of the Missouri, covering the western half of the state averages from

1,800 to 2,800 feet in height. Black Butte (büt), a summit in the far southwestern corner of North Dakota, rises 3,468 feet and is the highest point in the state.

The plain which lies between these two sections which we have just described is shaped like a V, and is more than twice as broad at the Canada border as it is at the South Dakota line. It is between 1,200 and 1,600 feet high; and since it is covered with irregular mounds of glacial drift it is known as the “drift plain.” Numerous lakes dot its surface, many of them salty or alkaline because they have no outlet. They are the home of game birds that draw hunters to the region in great numbers. As we go west in North Dakota, the plains not only rise higher and are wider, but the soil grows continually less productive and the climate drier. Both of the eastern plains are extremely fertile—the bed of Lake Agassiz is one of the richest bits of land in the world. A rich layer of soil left by the glacier covers these two sections. But the glacier never reached the region west and south of the

In using a building of modern type for her state capitol, at Bismarck, North Dakota is true to the spirit which inspired her early settlers and which characterizes her present citizens.

Photo by Keystone View Co.





## THE HISTORY OF NORTH DAKOTA

Missouri, and there the soft sands and clays, often parched for lack of rain, cannot support much vegetation. Only in a few sheltered little valleys is there enough grass for cattle raising. And so the wind and water have had a free hand, carving up this land into strange rugged valleys, ravines, and gulches. The irregular surface and the brilliant colors of the soft clays make it one of the strangest and most fascinating places in the country—as well as one of the most difficult to cross on foot. The lack of water and of fertile soil has kept this section desolate and uninhabited, worthy of the name which the first French explorers gave it—"the Bad Lands."

The first men to visit North Dakota were Frenchmen who, under La Vérendrye (*vā'rōN'drē'*), came down from Canada and, looking for a river flowing westward, reached the Black Hills in 1743. They discovered the Sioux (*sōō*), or Dakota, Indians—"Sioux" was the name given them by their enemies, "Dakota" the one by which they spoke of themselves. These wild tribes, strong, able, and fearless, were willing to trade furs and game for rifles with which to overcome their enemies and kill the buffalo.

Trading posts were established by the French, and later by the English; but in every case they were small affairs, built only for the moment. It is hardly worth while to give their names, they disappeared so soon; but of course they were for the most part along the various rivers which run in and out

of North Dakota. Even after 1803, when the Louisiana Purchase transferred North Dakota to the United States, and the government sent Lewis and Clark to explore the new area, no settlements were attempted for some time. The great fur companies of St. Louis—the Columbia Fur Company and the American Fur Company, in particular—kept sending their scouts and traders up the Missouri to bargain with the Sioux. But

actually the first settlement in North Dakota was made by an Englishman, and was quite accidental. It was led by Lord Selkirk, who in 1811 took a group of Scotch and Swiss colonists from Canada to Pembina (*pēm'bī-nā*) in the extreme northeastern corner of the state, in the rich Red River Valley.

Lord Selkirk thought he was settling in Canada, for the boundaries between the two countries had not yet been marked out, and he had to guess where they lay. By 1823 the colony had grown to number six hundred souls, and soon the whole northeastern region

to the west of the Red River was in touch with the American settlements in Minnesota. In fact in 1849 most of eastern North Dakota became part of the Minnesota Territory. In 1854 the western region, which until then had been simply unorganized land, became a part of Nebraska Territory, and remained so until 1861, when the Territory of Dakota was finally organized.

During all this period trouble with the Indians had hindered the growth of North Dakota. The Sioux resented the growing



Merrifield Hall is one of the buildings at the University of North Dakota, in Grand Forks. As early as 1801 a fur-trading post was established at this point on the Red River. To-day the busy city is a center for the spring wheat country. It ships large quantities of grain and distributes agricultural implements. Of late it has begun to manufacture beet sugar, using the beets that are grown in the surrounding country.

## THE HISTORY OF NORTH DAKOTA

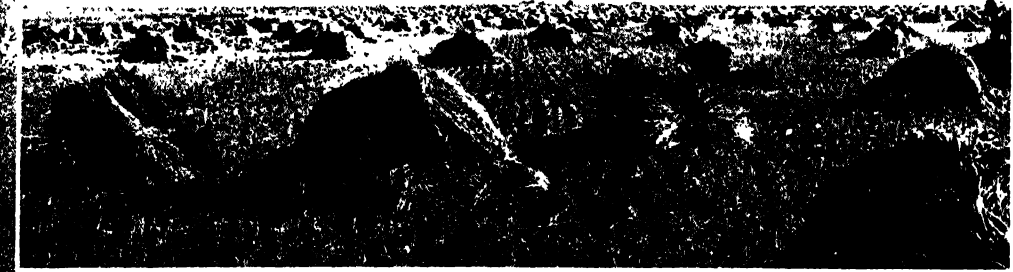


Photo by the Canadian Pacific Railway

Planted early in the spring this North Dakota wheat-field was ready for harvesting in August. Because it contains a large amount of protein and has a fine hard pith, this grain makes the best bread flour. The zone in which it is grown is known as the "hard spring

wheat belt," and includes both Dakotas, the eastern half of Montana, a narrow strip in western Minnesota, and a part of northeastern Nebraska. All these sections have a cool, moist spring followed by warm, dry weather--just the conditions for wheat.

power of the white man, and they found that under the deadly rifle fire of the white hunters, the herds of buffalo on which they depended for food were vanishing. As a result there were many squabbles with the new settlers, until the outbreaks of 1862 in Minnesota caused the white men to organize campaigns against the Indian raiders who were tormenting them so fiercely. In the years 1863 and 1864 Generals Sibley and Sully of Minnesota drove the hostile Sioux away from the settlements and into the Bad Lands south of the Missouri. A long campaign (1876-1891) finally broke the Indian power even here, and opened up the Bad Lands for their only useful purpose, the grazing of cattle.

### The Coming of the Railroads

All this while North Dakota was growing steadily. The completion of the first railroad in 1871, even though it only reached to the eastern border of the state, was an enormous encouragement to settlement. Thousands of colonists flooded the new Dakota Territory, in 1889 it was divided into a northern and a southern half, and in that same year North Dakota, having the necessary 60,000

settlers, was admitted to the Union. Wherever the railroads went, new settlements sprang up, and new settlers set to work to provide traffic for the railroads to carry. For as soon as men had an opportunity to see the soil of North Dakota and to test its qualities, they realized what extraordinary land they had here for farming. Nearly half the state was covered with black glacial soil, much of it quite free from rocks or forests or any sort of hindrance to agriculture. The railroads began competing with great zeal, each line trying to run its track through what would become the best wheat country. Some roads went so far as to offer special rates and other inducements to settlers who would open up farms near their stations. As a result North Dakota has to-day more than 600,000 inhabitants, and well over 5,000 miles of railway, which gives her excellent service in getting her grain and livestock products to market.

### A Great Wheat State

For those are her two great contributions to the nation. So perfectly is the state adapted to turning out these two products that it would be almost wasteful for her

## THE HISTORY OF NORTH DAKOTA

to bother much with other crops. No wonder North Dakota, with nothing else to distract her, became almost at once the outstanding grain state of the Union. To be sure, she has coal, clay, and natural gas, and her brown coal, or lignite (lig'nīt)—her most important mineral—may some day bring her great wealth. But as yet it is worked very little, and not much coal is mined. The clay bed only now being opened up will be more and more valuable. Just now sand and gravel yield an income second to coal. As for manufacturing, North Dakota has only recently begun to take an interest in it. Bismarck (biz'märk), the capital, Grand Forks, and Devils Lake are growing in importance, especially because of their dairy products and flour mills. Fargo, the largest city in the state, is a marketing and wholesaling city, a producer of brick, hardy fruits, and grain, and a distributing center for heavy farm machinery. But the state is mainly agricultural. Only New Mexico and Nevada have less manufacturing than North Dakota.

### A Leading Barley State

The produce of North Dakota's farms makes up for her lagging mines and factories. Wheat is of course the main crop, with nearly half the growing surface of the state devoted to it. Because wheat crops are variable, North Dakota does not always keep her rank among the wheat-growing states of the Union; but in the ten years from 1924 to 1934 she only twice fell below second place. Her wheat is especially rich in proteins (prō'tē-īn) and gluten (glōō'tēn), and because this is always taken into account when the crop is sold, the North Dakota farmers are paid more for their wheat than many other farmers are. Barley, corn, hay, oats, flaxseed, potatoes, and rye are other important crops. North Dakota is very likely to rank first in barley, flaxseed, and rye, and she far outdistances all other states in her production of spring wheat. After wheat barley is usually her crop of greatest value.

Coupled with this tremendous grain-growing industry is the raising of live stock, another business in which North Dakota is a leader. In most parts of the state it is carried on as a kind of secondary occupation,

something which is only incidental to the serious business of growing grain. But in the southeast, where a great deal of North Dakota's corn is raised, the growing of pigs has become the leading industry. And in the very rugged region of the southwest, where the soil is not fitted to farming, the grazing of cattle has become the largest, in fact almost the only, industry. The dairy and poultry products of the state, including butter, butterfat, chickens, and eggs, owe their present importance to a period of sudden rapid growth starting about 1900. Not many states manufacture more butter than North Dakota, and relatively a small number sell more butterfat.

### A Reviving Industry

After World War I the nation-wide depression in agriculture descended on North Dakota. As we have seen, it did not harm her wheat and grain production particularly, since she continued to lead the states. But in the production of beef cattle she not only failed to progress during the fifteen years from 1920 to 1935, but actually declined to some extent in the number of cattle produced. Because the price of mutton and wool returned to normal levels sooner than the price of cattle, North Dakota's production of those commodities grew rapidly. The return of agricultural prosperity encouraged North Dakota farmers to take up cattle production once again. They have suffered heavily from droughts, and from the dust storms which North Dakota's dry, strong winds are likely to stir up. But if they can get one year of good rainfall out of every five, their wide, rich fields will, it is said, grow enough grain to make up for the lean years.

In education North Dakota has done marvels, especially in view of her late settlement, her large foreign population, and the enormous percentage of her people who live outside the cities—a larger percentage than in any other state except Mississippi. The percentage of citizens who are unable either to read or write is one of the lowest in the country. The fact speaks well for the efficiency and high quality of her school system—and for the intelligence of her people.

## NORTH DAKOTA

**AREA:** 70,665 square miles—16th in rank.

**LOCATION:** North Dakota, one of the West North Central states, lies between 45° 55' and 49° N. Lat. and between 96° 25' and 104° 3' W. Long. It is bounded on the north by the Canadian provinces of Saskatchewan and Manitoba, on the east by Minnesota, on the south by South Dakota, and on the west by Montana.

**PHYSICAL FEATURES:** The surface of North Dakota rises as one goes westward. Along the eastern border is a level valley floor thirty or forty miles wide and between 800 and 950 feet above sea level. This is the fertile valley of the Red River of the North, the lowest part of the state; in Pembina County is a point with an elevation of only 790 feet above the sea. West of this broad valley lies a level or rolling plain from 1,300 to 1,650 ft. above sea level. It is shaped like a great V, with the point lying for some 70 miles along the state's southern boundary and the broad part of the V extending for about 200 miles along the northern boundary. The land is fertile and covered with farms, and because the glacier once extended over the region there are long lines of glacial deposit and a good many little lakes, many of them without an outlet and so fairly salty. West of this plain is the higher Missouri Plateau, which rises from the central plain in a steep ascent—the Coteau du Missouri—that curves through the state some fifty or sixty miles east of the Missouri River. Here the glacier never came, and the land is cut into steep hills, or buttes, and deep coulees and river valleys. The climate is too dry to allow of much vegetation, so the streams have had their way. Because crops are hard to raise here and the surface very rugged the section was long known as the Bad Lands, though the river valleys have enough grass to support cattle. Here are North Dakota's supplies of brown coal. The region is very picturesque and the soils very vivid and beautiful in their coloring. In general the elevation of this western plateau is from 1,800 to 2,800 ft. above sea level, but Black Butte, in the southwestern corner of the state, rises 3,468 ft. above the sea. Other high points in the western plateau are Sentinel Butte, Camel's Hump, and Killdeer Mountain. The Red River Valley is bordered in the north by steep wooded slopes known as the Pembina Mountains; and in the center of the state's northern border the Turtle Mountains form a small, rugged plateau that rises about 500 ft. above the surrounding plain. The average elevation of North Dakota is about 1,900 ft. That part of the state lying east of the Coteau du Missouri belongs to the prairie plains region of our country; the part west of it belongs to the great plains.

Along the state's eastern and northern borders the drainage is toward Hudson Bay, for the streams there find their way to the Red River of the North (355 m. long), which flows along the state's eastern boundary on its way to Lake Winnipeg in Canada. From there it is carried north into Hudson Bay. The Red River may be navigated from Fargo to Winnipeg. The Pembina, the Park, the Goose, and the Sheyenne (325 m. long) rivers are the most important of the tributaries of the Red River in North Dakota. In the northwest corner of the state the Mouse River (500 m. long) crosses the boundary from Canada—where it is known as the Souris, the French word for "mouse." After flowing in a great curve through the northern part of the state it once more crosses the Canadian boundary and flows north to join the Assiniboine, which enters the Red River in Canada. The most important river in North Dakota is the Missouri (2,475 m. long), which rises in Montana and flows in a great curve around the southwest quarter of North Dakota before it crosses the central part of the southern boundary into South Dakota. It is navigable for about 300 miles. From the west it receives the Little Missouri (560 m. long), the Cannonball, the Heart, and the Knife rivers. Halfway

between the Missouri and the state's eastern boundary the James River (600 m. long) flows southward and crosses into South Dakota, where it finally joins the Missouri. The region lying north of it, between the Pembina Mountains and the valley of the Mouse River, has no outlet to the sea. Here the drainage is all into the many small lakes scattered through the region. The largest of them is Devil's Lake, whose salt waters cover 400 square miles. In all those parts of the state where the glacier has left lakes there are small depressions where water is likely to gather and form bogs. All together the state has 654 miles of water. There are small tracts of irrigated land.

**CLIMATE:** The climate of North Dakota is one of great extremes, but the dry, bracing air makes it pleasant and healthful. Because of the state's distance from the sea and from any large body of water, there is nothing to prevent the temperature from going very high in summer and very low in winter. The mean annual temperature for the state is 39° F., with a difference of only 6° between the northern and southern borders. In general the temperature is higher in the west than it is in the east, and because the strong winds blow the snow from the western ranges the cattle can graze there all winter long. They suffer, however, during the blizzards. The state has a record low of -54°. At Bismarck the January mean is 8°, the July mean 70°. The record high there is 114°, the record low -45°. The winters are long, and spring and autumn very short. Killing frosts often come in June and early in September, but because the state is so far north there are a great many hours of sunlight during a day to ripen the crops. The average rainfall for the state is 18 inches—22 inches in the Red River Valley and 14 inches along the western boundary. Because most of the rain comes in spring and summer crops can be grown in many places where the annual rainfall would not normally be heavy enough to support them. As a rule not more than two inches of moisture falls during the winter. Crops may be injured by dry hot winds from the south in summer. Occasionally there is a hailstorm or a tornado.

**INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING:** The more important institutions in North Dakota are Jamestown College at Jamestown, North Dakota Agricultural College at Fargo, and the University of North Dakota at Grand Forks. State teachers' colleges have been established at Minot, Mayville, and Valley City; there is a normal school at Dickinson and a normal and industrial school at Ellendale.

**CHARITIES AND CORRECTION:** North Dakota has a hospital for the insane at Jamestown, a tuberculosis sanatorium at Dunseith, an institution for the feeble-minded at Grafton, a school for the deaf at Devils Lake, a school for the blind at Bathgate, a state training school at Mandan, a soldiers' home at Lisbon, and a penitentiary at Bismarck.

**POLITICAL FACTS:** North Dakota is governed under the constitution of 1889, which has had very few changes. Laws are made by a legislature consisting of a Senate of from 30 to 50 members and a House of Representatives of from 60 to 140 members. Senators are elected for four years and Representatives for two years. The legislature meets in alternate years for a regular session that must not exceed 60 days.

The executive branch is headed by the governor, who must be at least thirty years of age and must have lived in the state at least five years. He can veto appropriation bills and can remove county and municipal officers for certain specified causes. The other executive officers are the lieutenant-governor, secretary of state, auditor, treasurer, superintendent of public instruction, commissioner of insurance, three railroad commis-

## NORTH DAKOTA—Continued

sioners, and a commissioner of agriculture and labor. The governor and his staff are all elected for two years. Besides this there are a large number of executive boards or commissions.

The judiciary is headed by the supreme court, which hears cases only on appeal and exercises general superintending control over all inferior courts. It is made up of five judges elected for six years. The state is divided into 12 judicial districts, each one of which has its own court, with judges elected by the people. Each county has a probate court, which is a court of record. Townships and villages elect justices of the peace to preside over the local court.

Voters must be United States citizens at least twenty-one years of age and must have lived in the state for a year, in the county for six months, and in the precinct for ninety days. A civilized Indian may vote if he has severed his tribal relationship two years before the election.

The people have the right of initiative and referendum. Candidates are nominated in primary elections, after names have been proposed by petition. Provision is made for allowing the voter to cast a preferential vote for candidates for the presidency and the vice presidency. The nomination and election of judges and officials of public instruction is nonpartisan. Electors absent from the state may vote by mail.

Counties are administered by boards of supervisors.

The capital of North Dakota is at Bismarck.

**PARKS:** A law creating the Theodore Roosevelt National Memorial Park has been passed by Congress. It provides for a monument to be erected at Medora.

**MONUMENTS:** The Vérendrye National Monument covers 253 acres in Mountrail County, and includes Crowhigh Butte, from which Vérendrye, the first white man known to have visited this region, first looked westward across the country that lies beyond the Missouri River.

**GAME AND BIRD RESERVATIONS:** With seventy-seven national wildlife refuges North Dakota has by far the largest number of any state in the Union. All together they cover more than 300,000 acres, and lie in every section of the state. All but two counties in the northern half of the state contain at least one preserve. And with the exception of four counties all counties in the western half contain one. Most of the refuges protect birds, but seventeen protect mammals, especially muskrats. In certain of them deer, antelopes, beavers, and badgers find safety.

North Dakota has 764,425 acres of national forest.

**NAME:** North and South Dakota were named for the Dakota Indians, who were rather more widely known as Sioux. The word "Dakota" means "to be allied or joined together in friendly compact," and in sense is equivalent to "E Pluribus Unum," the motto on the seal of the United States. To the Indians the word

"Dahkota," or sometimes "Lakota," meant "friends" or "allies." The name came to be associated with the region when settlers came from St. Paul in 1857 and marked out claims in the section around Sioux Falls. They called their territory Dakota, and the same name was given to the Territory of Dakota when it was created by President Buchanan in 1861. The two states kept the name of the territory. The word has had various spellings.

**NICKNAMES:** North Dakota is called the Flickertail State from the common name for Richardson's ground squirrel, which jerks or flicks its tail while running. This squirrel is common in Dakota. North Dakota is called the Great Central State, probably because it is in the center of the great western wheat belt and contains several of the famous "Bonanza" wheat farms, very rich farms in the Red River Valley. The Indians who originally inhabited the land have lent it their name in the titles of the Sioux State and the Land of the Dakotas. North and South Dakota are sometimes referred to as the Twin Sisters.

**STATE FLOWER:** Wild prairie rose; adopted in 1907.

**STATE SONG:** The state song of North Dakota is entitled "North Dakota Hymn." The State Federation of Women's Clubs accepted "North Dakota State Song," by Margaret E. Plank.

**STATE FLAG:** A blue silk field with a border of knotted yellow fringe. In the center of each side is embroidered an eagle with outspread wings and open beak, his right foot grasping a sheaf of arrows and his left foot an olive branch. On his breast is a shield bearing red and white stripes, and in his beak is a scroll on which are the words "North Dakota." Above the scroll are thirteen stars. The whole device is surmounted by a sunburst.

**STATE MOTTO:** "Liberty and Union, Now and Forever, One and Inseparable," suggested by Webster's reply to Hayne and adopted at the time of the bitter struggle to preserve the Union.

**STATE BIRD:** The western meadow lark is the state bird of North Dakota—following a preference revealed by a questionnaire sent out by the State Federation of Women's Clubs.

**INTERESTING FACTS:** North Dakota observes New Year's Day, Lincoln's Birthday, Washington's Birthday, Good Friday, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Columbus Day, Election Day, Armistice Day, Thanksgiving Day, and Christmas Day.

In 1937 North Dakota had 11,000 Indians and five Indian reservations: Ft. Berthold, Devil's Lake, Lake Traverse (or Sisseton), Standing Rock, and Turtle Mountain. On these reservations were members of the Arikara, Gros Ventre, Mandan, Sioux, and Chippewa tribes. At Wahpeton is an Indian school.

<b>Population of state, 1940, 641,935</b>		Cass (G1)	52,849	Grand Forks		McKenzie (A3)	8,426
<b>Counties</b>		Cavalier (F2)	13,923	(G3)	34,518	McLean (C3)	16,082
Adams (B4)	4,664	Dickey (I4)	9,696	Grant (C4)	8,264	Mercer (C3)	9,611
Barnes (F4)	17,814	Divide (A2)	7,086	Griggs (F3)	5,818	Morton (C4)	20,184
Benson (E2)	12,629	Dunn (B3)	8,376	Hettinger (B4)	7,457	Mountrail (B2)	10,484
Billings (A3)	2,531	Eddy (E3)	5,741	Kidder (E4)	6,692	Nelson (F3)	9,129
Bottineau (D2)	13,253	Emmons (D4)	11,699	La Moure (F4)	10,298	Oliver (C3)	3,859
Bowman (A4)	3,860	Foster (I3)	5,824	Logan (E4)	7,561	Pembina (G2)	15,671
Burke (B2)	7,653	Golden Valley		McHenry (D2)	14,034	Pierce (E2)	9,208
Burleigh (D4)	22,736	(A4)	3,498	McIntosh (E4)	8,984	Ramsey (F2)	15,626

# NORTH DAKOTA—Continued

Ransom (G4) . . . 10,061	Des Lacs (C2) . . . 197	Kief (D2) . . . 159	Pisek (G2) . . . 242
Renville (C2) . . . 5,533	Devils Lake * (F2) . . . 6,204	Killdeer (B3) . . . 650	Plaza (C2) . . . 360
Richland (H4) . . . 20,519	Dickey (F4) . . . 203	Kindred (G4) . . . 450	Portal (B2) . . . 499
Rolette (E2) . . . 12,583	Dickinson (B4) . . . 5,839	Knox (E2) . . . 189	Portland (B2) . . . 551
Sargent (G4) . . . 8,693	Dodge (B3) . . . 234	Kramer (D2) . . . 220	Powers Lake (B2) . . . 464
Sheridan (D3) . . . 6,616	Donnybrook (C2) . . . 215	Lakota (F2) . . . 907	Ray (A2) . . . 579
Sioux (D4) . . . 4,419	Douglas (C3) . . . 313	La Moure (F4) . . . 990	Reeder (B4) . . . 263
Slope (A4) . . . 2,932	Drake (D3) . . . 654	Landa (D2) . . . 149	Regan (D3) . . . 148
Stark (B4) . . . 15,414	Drayton (G2) . . . 688	Langdon (F2) . . . 1,546	Regent (B4) . . . 261
Steele (G3) . . . 6,193	Dunn Center (B3) . . . 238	Lankin (G2) . . . 283	Reynolds (G3) . . . 315
Stutsman (F4) . . . 23,495	Dunseith (D2) . . . 719	Lansford (C2) . . . 300	Rhame (A4) . . . 283
Towner (E2) . . . 7,200	Dwight (H4) . . . 168	Larimore (G3) . . . 1,222	Richardton (B4) . . . 682
Trail (G3) . . . 12,300	Eckman (C2) . . . 66	Larson (B2) . . . 79	Rock Lake (E2) . . . 348
Walsh (G2) . . . 20,747	Edgeley (F4) . . . 803	Lawton (F2) . . . 210	Rogers (F3) . . . 174
Ward (C2) . . . 31,981	Edinburg (G2) . . . 378	Leal (F3) . . . 102	Rolette (E2) . . . 460
Wells (E3) . . . 11,198	Edmore (F2) . . . 453	Leeds (E2) . . . 782	Rolla (E2) . . . 1,008
Williams (A2) . . . 16,315	Egeland (E2) . . . 275	Lehr (E4) . . . 536	Rugby (D2) . . . 2,215
<b>Cities, Towns, Etc.</b>			
[Places marked with an asterisk (*) were classified as urban in 1940]			
Abercrombie (H4) . . . 215	Fairdale (F2) . . . 187	McClusky (D3) . . . 924	St. John (E2) . . . 517
Adams (F2) . . . 355	Fairmount (H4) . . . 705	McHenry (F3) . . . 250	St. Thomas (G2) . . . 503
Alexander (A3) . . . 415	Fargo * (H4) . . . 32,580	McVie (F3) . . . 548	Sanborn (F4) . . . 366
Alice (G4) . . . 181	Fessenden (E3) . . . 902	Maddock (E3) . . . 691	Sanish (B3) . . . 455
Alsen (F2) . . . 312	Fingal (G4) . . . 300	Makoti (C3) . . . 212	Sarles (F2) . . . 302
Ambrose (A2) . . . 294	Finley (G3) . . . 677	Mandan * (D4) . . . 6,685	Sawyer (C2) . . . 271
Amenia (G3) . . . 104	Flasher (C4) . . . 387	Manvel (G2) . . . 209	Scranton (A4) . . . 277
Amidon (A3) . . . 102	Flaxton (B2) . . . 362	Mapleton (G4) . . . 180	Selfridge (D4) . . . 329
Anamoose (D3) . . . 478	Forbes (F5) . . . 268	Marion (F4) . . . 242	Sentinel Butte (A4) . . . 256
Aneta (G3) . . . 509	Fordville (G2) . . . 449	Marmarth (A4) . . . 626	Sharon (G3) . . . 171
Antler (C2) . . . 254	Forest River (G2) . . . 207	Martin (D3) . . . 228	Shelton (G4) . . . 281
Ardock (G2) . . . 119	Forman (G4) . . . 500	Max (C3) . . . 423	Shermoo 1 (C2) . . . 390
Argusville (H3) . . . 145	Fortuna (A2) . . . 214	Maybass (C2) . . . 215	Sherwyne (E3) . . . 411
Arthur (G3) . . . 335	Frederia (E4) . . . 309	Mayville (G3) . . . 1,351	Sjouis (D2) . . . 259
Ashley (E4) . . . 1,345	Fullerton (F4) . . . 184	Maza (E2) . . . 66	Springbrook (A2) . . . 77
Ayr (G3) . . . 107	Gackle (E4) . . . 537	Medina (F4) . . . 500	Stanley (B2) . . . 1,058
Balfour (D3) . . . 193	Gardena (D2) . . . 125	Merricourt (F4) . . . 153	Stanton (C3) . . . 370
Barton (D2) . . . 157	Gardner (H3) . . . 103	Michigan City (E2) . . . 491	Starkweather (F2) . . . 295
Bathgate (G2) . . . 312	Garrison (C3) . . . 1,117	Milnor (G4) . . . 677	Steele (F4) . . . 721
Beach (A4) . . . 1,178	Gascoyne (A4) . . . 48	Milton (F2) . . . 310	Strasburg (D4) . . . 994
Bellevue (A4) . . . 870	Gladstone (B4) . . . 278	Minnewaukan (E2) . . . 521	Streeter (E4) . . . 647
Benedict (C3) . . . 167	Glenburn (C2) . . . 190	Minot * (C2) . . . 16,577	Sykeston (E3) . . . 273
Berlin (F4) . . . 132	Glen Ullin (C4) . . . 976	Minto (G2) . . . 630	Tagus (C2) . . . 140
Bertho (C2) . . . 428	Golden Valley (B3) . . . 400	Mohall (C2) . . . 687	Tappen (E1) . . . 323
Berwick (D2) . . . 92	Goodrich (D3) . . . 476	Monango (F4) . . . 175	Taylor (B4) . . . 251
Beulah (C3) . . . 942	Grafton * (G2) . . . 4,070	Montpelier (F4) . . . 133	Thompson (G3) . . . 276
Bimford (F3) . . . 311	Grand Forks * (G3) . . . 20,228	Mooreton (H4) . . . 146	Thorne (E2) . . . 45
Bisbee (E2) . . . 393	Grandin (H3) . . . 158	Mott (B4) . . . 1,220	Tioga (B2) . . . 385
Bismarck * (D4) . . . 15,496	Grano (C2) . . . 57	Mountain (G2) . . . 205	Tolley (C2) . . . 177
Bottineau (D2) . . . 1,739	Granville (D2) . . . 443	Munich (F2) . . . 216	Tolna (E3) . . . 172
Bowbells (B2) . . . 787	Great Bend (H4) . . . 198	Mylo (E2) . . . 89	Tower City (G4) . . . 364
Bowdon (E3) . . . 348	Grenora (A2) . . . 425	Napoleon (F4) . . . 982	Towner (D2) . . . 918
Bowman (A4) . . . 967	Hague (E4) . . . 442	Neche (G2) . . . 565	Turtle Lake (D3) . . . 632
Braddock (D4) . . . 185	Halliday (B3) . . . 395	Nekoma (F2) . . . 184	Tuttle (E3) . . . 357
Brinsmade (E2) . . . 206	Hamilton (G2) . . . 255	Newburg (D2) . . . 119	Underwood (C3) . . . 613
Brocket (F2) . . . 291	Hampden (F2) . . . 193	New England (B4) . . . 895	Upham (D2) . . . 243
Bucyrus (B4) . . . 117	Hankinson (H4) . . . 1,420	New Leipzig (C4) . . . 366	Valley City * (G4) . . . 5,917
Buffalo (G4) . . . 245	Hannaford (F3) . . . 405	New Rockford (E3) . . . 2,017	Van Hook (B3) . . . 329
Butte (D3) . . . 261	Hannah (F2) . . . 261	New Salem (C4) . . . 875	Valva (D2) . . . 1,017
Buxton (G3) . . . 404	Hansboro (F2) . . . 196	Niagara (G2) . . . 179	Venturia (E4) . . . 257
Calio (F2) . . . 98	Harvey (H4) . . . 1,851	Nome (G4) . . . 277	Verona (F4) . . . 201
Cando (E2) . . . 1,282	Hatton (G3) . . . 933	Noonan (A2) . . . 520	Voltaire (D2) . . . 101
Carpio (C2) . . . 322	Havana (G5) . . . 305	Northwood (G3) . . . 1,063	Wahpeton * (H4) . . . 3,747
Carrington (E3) . . . 1,850	Haynes (B4) . . . 210	Oakes (F4) . . . 1,665	Wallhalla (G2) . . . 1,138
Carson (C4) . . . 473	Hazleton (D4) . . . 500	Omamee (D2) . . . 123	Warwick (F3) . . . 224
Casselton (G4) . . . 1,358	Hazen (C3) . . . 662	Oriska (G4) . . . 217	Washburn (D3) . . . 901
Cathay (E3) . . . 189	Hebron (B4) . . . 1,267	Osnabrock (F2) . . . 269	Werner (B3) . . . 137
Cavalier (G2) . . . 1,105	Hettinger (B4) . . . 1,138	Overly (D2) . . . 125	Westhope (C2) . . . 460
Cayuga (G4) . . . 196	Hillsboro (G3) . . . 1,338	Page (G3) . . . 428	Wheelock (A2) . . . 94
Center (C3) . . . 509	Hoople (G2) . . . 346	Palermo (B2) . . . 178	White Earth (B2) . . . 272
Churchs Ferry (E2) . . . 244	Hope (G3) . . . 474	Park River (G2) . . . 1,408	Wildrose (A2) . . . 472
Cleveland (E4) . . . 246	Hunter (G3) . . . 414	Parshall (B3) . . . 570	Williston * (A2) . . . 5,790
Cogswell (G4) . . . 430	Inkster (G2) . . . 310	Pekin (F3) . . . 229	Willow City (D2) . . . 524
Columbus (B2) . . . 506	Jamestown * (F4) . . . 8,790	Pembina (G2) . . . 703	Wilton (D3) . . . 851
Conway (G2) . . . 120	Jud (F4) . . . 202	Perth (E2) . . . 145	Wimbledon (F3) . . . 357
Cooperstown (F3) . . . 1,077	Kathryn (G4) . . . 229	Petersburg (F2) . . . 285	Wing (D3) . . . 235
Courtenay (F3) . . . 297	Kenmare (B2) . . . 1,528	Pillsbury (C3) . . . 161	Wishek (E4) . . . 1,112
Crary (F2) . . . 267	Kensal (F3) . . . 356	Pingree (F3) . . . 167	Wolford (E2) . . . 206
Crosby (A2) . . . 1,404	Kermit (A1) . . . 22		Woodworth (E3) . . . 245
Crystal (G2) . . . 428			Wyndmere (G4) . . . 499
Davenport (G4) . . . 147			Zap (C3) . . . 574
Dawson (E4) . . . 263			Zealand (E5) . . . 489
Dazey (F3) . . . 215			

---

# **The HISTORY of OHIO**

---

## **Reading Unit**

### **No. 34**

---

## **OHIO: THE BUCKEYE STATE**

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

### ***Interesting Facts Explained***

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| The Indians and the Ohio River, 8-304                      | Ohio's important agricultural products, 8 308-9     |
| La Houtan's written record of exploration in Ohio, 8-305   | Where transcontinental airliners stop, 8-311        |
| When the red man fought the coming of the white man, 8-306 | Where merchant vessels are built, 8-312             |
| How Cincinnati got its name, 8-307                         | Why the people of Ohio are called "buckeyes," 8-312 |

### ***Things to Think About***

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| What does the word "Ohio" mean?                  | "get rich quick" in the early days?                          |
| Why is the Serpent Mound especially interesting? | What difference has the coming of the railroad made to Ohio? |
| Which Indian tribes lived in Ohio?               | Which presidents of the United States were born in Ohio?     |
| What was one of the best ways to                 |  |

### ***Picture Hunt***

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| How many buildings does the Ohio State University need for its student body? 8-305 | What are some of Ohio's important industries? 8-306-11 |
|--|--|

### ***Related Material***

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| One of Ohio's famous sons, 13-331-32   | What caused the death of President McKinley? 7-302              |
| What troubles did President Grant have with his name while he was young? 12-532-33 | What kind of a leader was President Taft? 7-310                 |
| Why do we honor President Hayes? 7-286   | Who was the "dark horse" candidate for president in 1920? 7-332 |
| Why was Garfield called a "dark horse" in the presidential election of 1880? 7-286 | A busy age in our history, 7-285-92                             |
|  | The story of rubber, 9-261-71                                   |

### ***Practical Applications***

- |                                     |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| How does Ohio move her goods? 8-310 | What kind of china is made in East Liverpool, Ohio? 8-311 |
|-------------------------------------|---|

## OHIO: *the* BUCKEYE STATE

*Named for the Beautiful River That Brought Her First Settlers,  
Ohio Stands as a Gateway to the Middle West, and Is  
an Embodiment of Its Sturdy Enterprise*

**B**ORN of countless mountain rills and foaming torrents, two broad rivers make their way down the western slopes of the Allegheny Mountains and through the rugged hill country of western Pennsylvania. As is the way of rivers, they are searching for the sea. But instead of taking the shortest route and turning east to the Atlantic, they are fated to travel two thousand miles to reach their journey's end. For these are the rivers that join at Pittsburgh to form the Ohio, a superb stream that for a century and a half has been carrying a generous share of the nation's traffic.

The Indians first knew and loved it. From them we have borrowed its name, meaning "great," or "beautiful," river. On its broad bosom their war canoes could take silent flight, and by way of its various tributaries the Indian braves frequently carried raiding parties into the colonies along the eastern seaboard. Portages between the headwaters of the Maumee and Wabash (wó'bāsh), the Maumee and the Great Miami (mī-ām'ī), the Sandusky and the Scioto (sī-ō'tō), the Cuyahoga (kī'á-hō'gá) and the Tuscarawas (tūs'ká-ró'wás) were in constant use long before the white man came.

Other "carries" to the east and

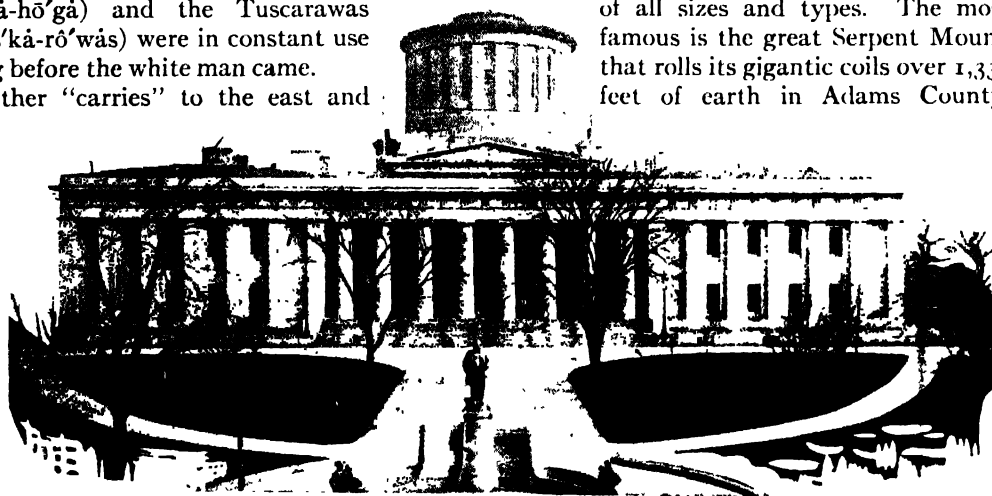
south connected the Ohio with the Atlantic seaboard. Many were the moccasined feet that wore the trails between the Allegheny (ál'ě-gā'nī) and the Susquehanna (sūs'kwě-hān'á) or the Juniata (jōō'nī-āt'á), between the Potomac (pō-tō'māk) and the Monongahela (mō-nōng'gá-hē'lá), between the James and the headwaters of the Kanawha (kā-nō'wá). Followed far enough westward the great stream brought the red-skinned traveler to the mighty Mississippi, and finally to the Gulf of Mexico.

It must have been by some such water route that the earliest people to leave a trace in the Ohio Valley first made their way there. We know very little about them, but learned men are fairly sure they were ancestors of some of the Indians living on this continent when the white man came. What little

knowledge we have has been gathered from the mounds left by these early peoples through the upper Mississippi and Ohio valleys. You may read of them in our story of Wisconsin.

The state of Ohio alone has some five thousand of those strange relics, of all sizes and types. The most famous is the great Serpent Mound that rolls its gigantic coils over 1,330 feet of earth in Adams County.

The state capitol dominates the two main streets of Ohio's bustling industrial city of Columbus. It is built of local gray limestone, the main part of it in simple Doric style. In its surrounding grounds are statues of famous Americans, many of them Ohio's native sons.





## THE HISTORY OF OHIO

Between its gaping jaws it holds what looks like a huge egg. There are mounds of several different kinds, all made by people who fall into three large groups and who lived and worked and builded and buried as much as two or three thousand years ago. They are thought to have been in Ohio until sometime in the fifteenth century.

But both they and their descendants had vanished by the time the white man came, and the country was a battle ground for a number of warring tribes who had arrived not long before. Up to the 1650's the Eries (*ē'ri*) held the territory south of the lake that is named for them, but the Iroquois (*ir'ō-kwoi*), a powerful group whom we have described in our story of New York, finally conquered and utterly destroyed the Eries, or Cat Nation.

Probably the first white men to tread the land of the Beautiful River were the adventuresome French fur traders who scoured the region of the Great Lakes buying pelts. There is good reason to believe that the French explorer La Salle landed on the south shore of Lake Erie in the winter of 1669-70, made his way to the Ohio, and sailed down it as far as the falls at Louisville. Another Frenchman named La Hontan (*lā ōn'tōN'*) left the first written record of exploration in Ohio territory (1688), and sometime in the 1680's a French trading post was established at the mouth of the Maumee. The French regarded Ohio as part of their great territory of New France.

But with the new century the English traders came, and the French found their ownership to be a matter of debate. Various seaboard colonies laid claim to the land on

one ground or another. And there were always the "original Americans" to be dealt with—Shawnees, who were working up from the South; Miamis, who were filtering into the western part of the state; Delawares, who were taking the river valleys toward the east; and Wyandots (*wi'ān-dōt*), in the north and northwest.

With the Wyandots were a large number of Hurons. The Shawnees, Miamis, and Delawares were members of the great Algonquian (*āl-gōn'ki-ān*) group of Indians whom we have described in our story of Wisconsin. The Wyandots, Hurons, and Eries were Iroquois. But all these tribes, as well as scattering remnants of several other tribes, were united in their hatred of the white men.

Yet the white men came on! At the close of the French and Indian Wars (1763) Great Britain came into full ownership of the territory beyond the Alleghenies, and then land-hungry settlers from the older colonies began to trickle across the mountain barriers. Already they had learned to follow the Indian trails and to use the natural routes of travel which the Indians had known for centuries. Now they gathered by the hundred upon the great river that beckoned them westward. As time went by, roads were built

overland to join the coastal towns with the eastern branches of the Ohio, and an ever-increasing stream of sturdy men and women came to load their pots and pans, their farm implements and little store of bedding on the flatboats that were to carry them downstream into the heart of the continent. With slow but steady pace the great river bore them to their new homes and their new task of build-



University Hall, shown above, is Ohio State University's oldest building. It dates from the time when the university was founded, in 1873, and its class rooms are still in use, although it is now only one of eighty buildings needed for the growing student body.

## THE HISTORY OF OHIO



This placid herd of cattle, grazing on one of Ohio's pleasant farms, owes its comfortable surroundings to a

moist and temperate climate and to the fertile soil brought down by glaciers.

ing a nation and conquering a continent.

It was not work for the faint-hearted. There had been a serious Indian uprising (1763) under a famous Indian chief named Pontiac; and again after the Revolution the red man made another desperate stand against the white invader. Both sides were guilty of some ghastly deeds. It was then that white men themselves wiped out the Indian missions that Moravians (*mō-rā'vī-ān*) from Pennsylvania—a German sect much like the Quakers—had founded in eastern Ohio. The mission established at Schoenbrun (*shūn'brōon*)—"beautiful spring"—in 1772 had been the first settlement in Ohio. Blood continued to flow until General Anthony Wayne defeated the Indians at the Battle of Fallen Timbers, near Toledo, in 1794.

Meanwhile the great river had never ceased to bring settlers in steady procession to the forests and prairies along its banks. Every eastern state sent its quota of men trained for the hard-hitting pioneer life. When at the time of the Revolution the various colonies claiming western territory had ceded their lands to the government, Connecticut had reserved a section in northeastern Ohio just south of Lake Erie. This was called the Western Reserve, and hither came men and women from Puritan New England—quiet, thrifty, pious folk, shrewd at driving a bargain. Moses Cleveland of Connecticut

led a band that founded (1796) the city which bears his name. Though Pennsylvania and New York sent settlers into this district, the people of New England were in the majority, and gave to the region a New England stamp which it wears even to this day.

Virginia too, when she ceded her western lands to the new government, had reserved a section between the Scioto and the Little Miami rivers, intending to grant it to her veterans of the Revolutionary War. Borne on the current of the great river there soon came settlers from Virginia and Kentucky and other parts of the South, and established, in the Virginia Military District, the present Manchester (1790) and Chillicothe (1796).

Meanwhile there had been founded (1783) in New England a commercial organization called the second Ohio Company—the first Ohio Company, founded around the middle of the century, had failed to plant any settlements. The second company did better. It bought cheaply from Congress a tract of one and a half million acres in the southern part of the state—there was wire pulling even in those days!—and in the spring of 1788 established the town of Marietta on one of the ancient mounds at a point where the Muskingum (*mūs-kīng'gūm*) River enters the Ohio. This little village, the first permanent settlement in Ohio, was named in honor of Marie Antoinette, the French queen who had

## THE HISTORY OF OHIO

befriended Benjamin Franklin when he went to France to plead our country's cause. The settlers, many of them veterans of the Revolutionary War, included a goodly number of cultivated men, graduates of Harvard and Yale. New England ideals and New England culture gave to the little frontier town on the bank of the great river a character and charm that was all its own.

Land speculation was one of the best of all ways to "get rich quick" in the early day. It was with such an end in view that John Cleves Symmes organized (1788) in New Jersey a company that planned to place settlers—largely from New Jersey and Kentucky—on a tract along the Ohio between the Great and the Little Miami rivers. Here Cincinnati (sîn'sī-nāt'ī) was founded (1789), and named for the Society of the Cincinnati, an organization of officers of the Revolutionary War formed (1783) just before the army was disbanded.

Still other settlers came, a varied populace—hearty, democratic, independent Scotch-Irish from western Pennsylvania and Maryland; pioneers of English stock from New York and New Jersey; small farmers who took leave of the South because of their hatred of slavery; English and Irish and Scotch from across the sea. All found their way down the broad highway of the Beautiful River, following each other as swiftly as waves across a field of wheat. They settled in various parts of the state, and by 1803 there were enough of them for Ohio to be admitted to the Union. Between 1763 and the time of the Revolution the land had been part of the Province of Quebec. Then it had been included in the great tract known as the

Northwest Territory. But now that it was to become an independent commonwealth, what name could be more fitting than the name of the great river that had already brought it so many men and would in the future bring it such amazing prosperity?

For the new state soon sprang into importance. To begin with, it had a fresh and fertile soil, spread out, except in the southeast, over gently rolling prairies and low hills.

Once the forests were cleared away, crops grew abundantly. As early as 1800 the hard-working pioneers were shipping pork, lard, flour, fowl, fruit, and cider down their great river and on to the Gulf. They used a primitive kind of ark, or "New Orleans boat," and broke it up when they reached the end of their journey. Keel boats and barges

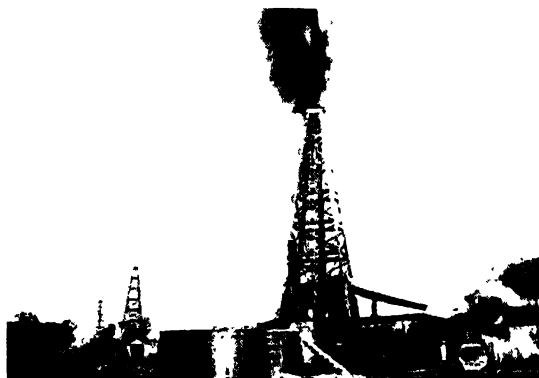


Photo by Ohio Oil Co.

You would hardly be likely to see a gusher like the one above if you were to visit Ohio's oil fields to-day. But back around 1900, when the petroleum industry was very young and Ohio led all the other states in oil production, such sights must have been fairly common. To-day Ohio ranks twelfth among the thirteen important oil-producing states.

often helped carry produce to market and brought back groceries and other articles too heavy to come overland from Philadelphia.

For their good soil the people of Ohio had the glacier to thank. Originally streams had carved out numerous valleys in the fairly level layers of rock that underly the western part of the state and join the rocks of the Allegheny Plateau in the eastern half. Then the glacier came and covered all but the southeastern quarter of Ohio with thick layers of fine rich soil that had been scraped from other regions farther north. It filled the valleys and buried many of the hills, leaving the country with a level surface except for a low watershed—called the Backbone Region—extending westward across the north central part of the state south of the Western Reserve. One of these glacial hills in Logan County is the highest point in Ohio (1,550 feet.)

## THE HISTORY OF OHIO

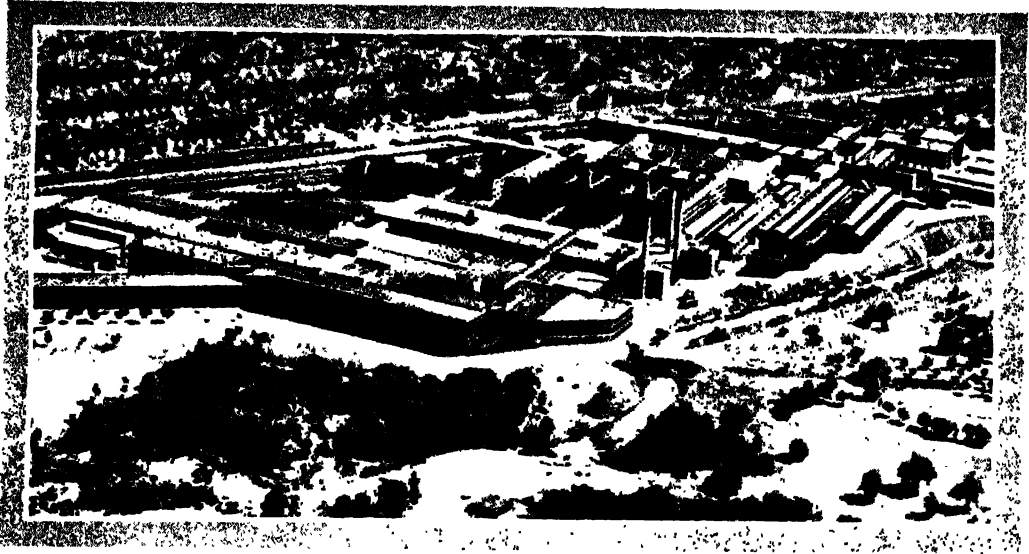


Photo by Willyn-Overland

This neat assemblage of factory buildings at Toledo is dedicated to one of Ohio's many important industries, the manufacture of automobiles. Toledo's maze of

railroads will make it easy to ship the finished machines to any part of the United States or to start them on their way to foreign countries.

The western part of the state belongs to the great central prairies, one of the most fertile parts of our land. Lying along Lake Erie is a level plain that once was the bed of Lake Erie. It widens to take in all the northwestern counties, which in the early day were known as the "Black Swamp," a place given over to mud and malaria. Once drained, the section was found to be very fertile.

### Where to Find Ohio's Coal

The southeastern quarter of Ohio never felt the glacier's leveling touch, but is rugged, like the rest of the Allegheny Plateau, which you may read of in our story of Pennsylvania. It has been carved into sharp ridges, with deep, narrow valleys between. Here are Ohio's rich coal deposits, but the section is poor for agriculture except in the river valleys.

By 1850 Ohio was leading all the states in the Union in agricultural production. She was first in corn, wool, horses, and sheep; second in wheat and cattle; and third in potatoes and oats. In spite of great extremes of heat and cold and much variable weather, she could grow all the great crops of the Temperate Zone, for she has abundant rainfall. For years she had been selling her flour

and whisky, her horses and cattle and pigs and pork in every corner of the land.

At first these products had gone to Montreal and New York by way of Lake Erie; to Baltimore and Philadelphia by way of the Ohio River and the National Road—now U. S. Route 40—which by 1837 had been finished almost across the state; to St. Louis and New Orleans by way of the Ohio. The great river carried enormous quantities of Ohio products to merchants in the South, and until the Erie Canal was opened across New York State (1825) the river was the principal highway of commerce between the eastern seaboard and the great new country west of the mountains.

### A Market Place for the Middle West

So important was its traffic that the enterprising people of Ohio had built two canals to connect it with Lake Erie—the Ohio and Erie Canal (1832) between Portsmouth and Cleveland and the Miami and Erie Canal (1845) between Toledo and Cincinnati. It is hard to exaggerate the importance of these canals in laying the foundation of Ohio's future greatness.

Cincinnati had now become a trading center for the whole Ohio Valley, "the Queen City of the West." Wagons and plows, mill-

## THE HISTORY OF OHIO

ing machinery and many other kinds of manufactured articles were going down the Ohio and the Mississippi to be sold through the South. The state was raising a great many hogs, and Cincinnati had built such a thriving meat-packing industry that she was called Porkopolis. Soon after 1830 large migrations of Germans had begun to arrive. They were intelligent, progressive folk who were leaving the Fatherland in search of greater political freedom. Especially after the German revolution of 1848 they came in great numbers, bringing their crafts, their learning, their music, and their political ideals. Until the Civil War Cincinnati was the cultural capital of the West. To-day she still keeps her early devotion to learning and the arts.

### "Cheesedom"

Of course the Germans went to other parts of the state as well, and helped greatly to build up Ohio's agriculture. By 1850 farmers were beginning to set machinery to work in their fields, and were learning to specialize in those crops which they found they could grow best. North-central Ohio, especially the Backbone Region, which had been settled largely by Germans from Pennsylvania, was now the great wheat center of the West. In fact wheat had often taken the place of money in Ohio's early days. The northeastern section—what had been the Western Reserve—had stocked its fine pasture lands with cattle and was doing so much dairying that it had come to be known as "cheesedom." It raised sheep too, but not so many of them as the section south of the "backbone" in the eastern part of the state. Here Ohio's wool trade was centered in Harrison County and the vicinity.

The south, especially the Miami and Scioto valleys, raised corn, and with corn, the beef cattle and hogs that were so important for food. The animals were fattened in the eastern part of the corn belt or in the Western Reserve, and when they were sleek and plump were gathered together into large herds and driven eastward over the

mountains to the great cities along the coast. The creatures had to be bred not only for flesh but for their marching powers, and many was the hog or steer that developed an unappetizing strength of muscle before he reached Philadelphia or Baltimore. Of course the railroads changed all that; they gave the eastern states a tenderer supply of meat and the Ohio farmer a quick access to market.

But even at the moment when Ohio had won her commanding place in agriculture her people had already begun to move westward to open up the great fields of Iowa and Kan-

sas and Nebraska. Her crops were as bountiful as ever, but gradually other states began to exceed her in output. She opened up her Black Swamp into rich farms, where she raised both wheat and corn, and wheat was now grown in the south as well as the north. The spread of railroads brought her close to the great markets, and the growth of agricultural schools gave her farmers scientific knowledge. But her agricultural reign was over.

To-day she grows a great many crops, with corn, wheat, hay, oats, buckwheat, sugar beets, soybeans, tobacco, potatoes, garden truck, apples, peaches, pears, and grapes leading. Live stock, poultry, and dairy products bring huge sums, for she ranks high among the states for her number of dairy



Photo by Firestone Tire and Rubber Co.

The photograph above, taken in a factory at Akron, shows one of the steps in making automobile tires. The whole country rides about on the output of this great "rubber city."

## THE HISTORY OF OHIO



This glowing scene shows you one of Ohio's many factories where steel is being turned into useful shapes.

Nearly all of the large cities of Ohio take part in the manufacture of iron and steel.

cows, and has more sheep than any other state east of the Mississippi. As more and more people crowd into her cities to work at the great machines, truck gardens are spreading. Strangely enough, Lake Erie so tempers the wintry blasts for the narrow, fertile plain along its shore that here asparagus is cut in midwinter to sell in northern city markets. Here too mushrooms are grown, and an abundance of flowers for the florist. And here are flourishing vineyards and peach orchards. Ohio's orchards and truck gardens supply the raw materials to keep the state's many canneries busy.

### The Work of Ohio's First Mills

But Ohio no longer depends chiefly on agriculture. Even before the Industrial Revolution—which we have told you of on other pages of these books—she was doing a good deal of manufacturing. By 1830 Steubenville (stū'bĕn-vīl) was known for its wool industry and Cincinnati for its cotton and woolen and flour mills, its boat-yards, its liquor distilleries, and its foundries. Zanesville too had a number of factories, among them important glassworks that are still in operation. And various other towns manufactured cotton or flour, for Ohio was blessed by nature with an abundance of rivers to furnish water power. By 1850 she

had taken fourth place among the states in manufactures.

And then the machines began to invade the land and the Industrial Revolution was on. Railroads threw out a network of branches until every corner of the state was bound to every other, and all were bound to the rest of the country. Ohio's goods were shipped far and wide.

### How Ohio Moves Her Goods

The great river still carried a busy traffic, and does to this day, but the 1850's saw the height of its glory. The color and romance of those brave steamboat days we have described elsewhere. Flatboats and arks and showboats and salesboats fitted with counters and a multitude of wares—all vanished with the coming of the locomotive. To-day the state is crossed by five trunk railways, and transcontinental air lines besides. Electric roads and buses connect even the small villages, and excellent highways open every corner of the state to automobiles—an important consideration in a section that has a large motor industry. Of thousands of miles of state highway, practically all have been surfaced. Things have changed a good deal since 1797, when the Zane brothers, a pair of dauntless pioneers, hacked out the first road, known as "Zane's Trace"—or "trail"—

## THE HISTORY OF OHIO

from Wheeling, West Virginia, through Zanesville and Chillicothe (chīl'i-kōth'ē) to Aberdeen.

Without her rivers and railways and highways and ports Ohio could never have earned her present rank as fourth among the manufacturing states. The manufacture of iron and steel is her most important industry—and one of the oldest.

She is fortunate in having a magnificent supply of coal—mostly mined in Athens, Belmont, Guernsey, Harrison, Jefferson, Perry, and Tuscarawas counties—and at one time mined a great deal of iron in the south. Ironton was known over the whole country for its great smelting plants.

To-day Cleveland imports more ore than any other port in the world. This comes down the Great Lakes and is manufactured at Cleveland, Youngstown, Canton, Steubenville, and Middletown, as well as in various other places.

Ore is landed at other Ohio ports too—Conneaut (kōn'ē-ōt'), Ashtabula (āsh'tā-bū-lā), Fairport, and Lorain (lō-rān')—and coal received by rail from Ohio and Pennsylvania is shipped to other lake ports from Fairport, Lorain, Sandusky (sān-dūs'kī), and especially from Toledo (tō-lē'dō). Sandusky, in addition to making a large number of useful articles, such as crayons, paints and chalks, and paper shipping cases, carries on the largest fresh-water fishing industry in the country. Whitefish, pike, yellow perch, and sheepshead are the principal part of her catch.

Toledo is one of the most important ports on the Great Lakes. She refines oil and carries on a thriving wholesale trade. She is a busy market for seed, hay, grain, and

winter vegetables, and is one of the largest railway centers in America. Among Ohio's cities, she comes third.

Columbus, the capital, is another busy railway center, and an important transfer point on the transcontinental airlines. Of course, she has large iron and steel manufactures—machinery, railway cars, automobiles—and a trade in all sorts of agricultural products from the fine farm lands around her. She manufactures a variety of cereal products.

Springfield, Canton, and Hamilton are other cities that take color from the fertile fields that lie about them. Springfield has a busy industry in raising flowers, and does a good deal of publishing. But like Canton and Hamilton she manufactures a great many iron and steel products—motor trucks, farm implements, playground equipment, and gas and steam engines.

Hamilton makes

three-fourths of the bank vaults and safes that keep the world's money, and turns out automobiles and machine tools besides. And Canton manufactures some fifteen hundred products—mostly of steel—that amaze one for variety. Safes, vaults, bridges, roller bearings, structural steel, steel furniture, toys, and watches are only a few of them. She makes china and brick tile besides.

For Ohio leads the country in the manufacture of pottery. The industry is centered in East Liverpool, though Zanesville, Cincinnati, and a number of other towns share in it. East Liverpool's factories turn out china in great quantities—the sort one can buy at the five-and-ten cent stores. A single factory may make as many as 120,000,000 pieces in a year. Of course fine pottery is made there



Photo by A. F. Sozlo from Gendreau, N. Y.

Under these big grinders a shiny store window may be in preparation, for they are busily putting a smooth finish on plate glass. The output of this factory in Toledo and of others like it makes Ohio the nation's leading state in the production of glass.

---

## THE HISTORY OF OHIO

too, and every other sort of clay product—tiles, brick, sanitary ware, and sewer pipes.

Ohio also leads the country in the manufacture of rubber. This industry has long had its center at Akron (äk'rŭn), a town that got its start from its position on an important portage. Since the growth of the automobile industry Akron, as well as various other Ohio cities, has manufactured innumerable tires. Altogether she makes some 32,000 rubber articles, and buys forty percent of the world's supply of rubber. In addition, she is our country's center for the manufacture of lighter-than-air craft.

Dayton, on the other hand, is the center for developing and testing all aircraft used in the United States Army. She manufactures iron and steel products, among them cash registers and electric refrigerators.

### The Gateway to the South

Cincinnati, for many years Ohio's largest city, now comes second in size. She still is "the Gateway to the South," for the United States government has carried out an extensive program of construction by which the Ohio River has been made navigable in dry seasons. Suitable construction also controls the disastrous floods that have done such terrible damage along its banks. So steel barges still leave Cincinnati's docks carrying bulky cargoes, such as coal, clay, sand, gravel, and cement.

Cincinnati's leading industrial product is soap, made in a section called Ivorydale. But like other Ohio cities she manufactures a great deal of iron and steel and also has other large industries.

### Ohio's Greatest City

Ohio's largest city is Cleveland. The manufacture of iron and steel is her greatest industry. She makes automobiles, electrical supplies, bridges, engines, car wheels, boilers, sewing machines, printing presses, farm implements, telescopes, steel wire, nails, bolts, and nuts. And she is one of our country's greatest centers for the construction of merchant vessels. Besides all these "heavy industries," she manufactures a great variety of other articles.

These are only the principal cities in the

great industrial beehive that is Ohio. For the state has many valuable resources. She leads the country in the production of lime. She produces petroleum in the east, south, and northwest. She has natural gas in the eastern, central, and northwestern sections. She quarries some of our country's best sandstone in Cuyahoga and Lorain counties. Part of it, known as Berea (bê-rĕ'ă) grit, is made into grindstones. Ohio also produces sand and gravel, salt, and magnesium.

Ohio's forests, like those of other states, were wasted in the early day. She still cuts some hardwood and white pine, and makes a tidy sum in maple sirup and sugar, but those fine stands of timber that past generations destroyed have never been replaced.

### A Famous Nickname

One early contribution of her forests is still untouched by time. From the handsome buckeye chestnut the state still takes its nickname. For one day long, long ago an Indian brave, looking with disgust on the vast proportions of a pioneer sheriff appointed to the task of keeping the frontier in order, gave an expressive grunt and said, "Ugh! Big buckeye!" And "buckeyes" the people of Ohio are called to this day.

The state has steadily marched ahead on all the avenues of progress. Her political life is full of excitement, and she has given birth to seven presidents—Grant, Hayes, Garfield, Benjamin Harrison, McKinley, Taft, and Harding. Even in very early days she embarked upon a splendid educational program, and has a large number of colleges and universities, among which Oberlin College, Western Reserve University, Ohio State University, Antioch College, Ohio Wesleyan, and the University of Cincinnati are probably the best-known. She was a pioneer in introducing the commission-manager form of government in her cities.

You may well visit Ohio some day—perhaps you know her already—and if you do, her charming towns with their tree-shaded public squares, her fine fields and farms, her busy, well-planned cities will show you what an alert American people can do when they have set their feet with determination upon the path of progress.



## OHIO

**AREA:** 41,222 square miles—34th in rank.

**LOCATION:** Ohio, one of the East North Central states, lies between 38° 27' and 41° 57' N. Lat. and between 80° 34' and 84° 49' W. Long. It is bounded on the north by Michigan and Lake Erie, on the east by Pennsylvania and West Virginia, on the south by West Virginia and Kentucky, and on the west by Indiana.

**PHYSICAL FEATURES:** Most of Ohio is a rolling plain, very level in the northwestern part of the state. But the southwestern corner is decidedly rugged, for the deeply dissected rocks of the Cumberland Plateau, farther south, reach northward across the Ohio border. They were never buried under glacial soil, as the rest of the state was. A range of low hills runs southwestward across the state from the northeast corner to the center of the western boundary. It is in this low watershed, in Logan County, that one finds the highest point in Ohio (1,550 ft.). The average elevation of the state is 850 ft., and its lowest elevation is 425 ft., at the mouth of the Great Miami River in the southwest. North of the watershed all the streams find their way to Lake Erie. Here are the Cuyahoga (200 m. long), with Cleveland at its mouth; the Black; the Vermilion; the Huron; the Maumee (175 m. long), which rises in Indiana and enters Lake Erie at Maumee Bay near Toledo; and the Sandusky (150 m. long), which flows into Sandusky Bay. Both the bays we have named are good natural harbors. All together Ohio has 230 miles of shore line on Lake Erie, and some excellent harbors there. South of the water parting the rivers all find their way to the Ohio sooner or later. In the northeast the Mahoning (100 m. long) flows eastward into Pennsylvania, where it helps to form the Beaver, a tributary of the Ohio. The Tuscarawas (125 m. long) joins with the Mohican to form the Muskingum (110 m. long), which enters the Ohio at the point where Marietta stands. West of the Muskingum is the Hocking (80 m. long), and beyond that the Scioto (237 m. long). The Great Miami (160 m. long) and the Little Miami (140 m. long) drain the southwestern part of the state. The Muskingum may be navigated for 100 miles. The Ohio (981 m. long) forms the state's southern boundary, and carries traffic for most of the 436 miles of its course along the Ohio boundary. Not counting its jurisdiction in Lake Erie, Ohio has 300 square miles of water, and no irrigated land.

**CLIMATE:** The climate of Ohio is healthful but has wide extremes of heat and cold. On the whole the region along Lake Erie, where the lake has a moderating influence, suffers less from this variation than the rest of the state does, but even Toledo has had a record high of 99° F. and a record low of -16°. The mean annual temperature for the whole state is about 51°, but it varies from 49.5° in the north to 53.5° in the south. The January mean at Cincinnati is 30°, and the July mean 75°. The record high there is 108°, and the record low -17°. The state has an average annual rainfall of 39 inches; the average is 11 inches greater at Marietta than at Toledo, where it is about 31 inches. Most of the winds come from the northwest or southwest.

**INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING:** The more important institutions in the state are the University of Akron at Akron, Antioch College at Yellow Springs, Ashland College at Ashland, Baldwin-Wallace College at Berea, Bluffton College at Bluffton, Bowling Green State University at Bowling Green, Capital University at Columbus, Case Institute of Technology at Cleveland, Cedarville College at Cedarville, University of Cincinnati at Cincinnati, University of the City of Toledo at Toledo, University of Dayton at Dayton, Defiance College at Defiance, Denison University at Granville, Findlay College at Findlay, Heidelberg

College at Tiffin, Hiram College at Hiram, John Carroll University at Cleveland, Kent State University at Kent, Kenyon College at Gambler, Lake Erie College for women at Painesville, Marietta College at Marietta, Mary Manse College for women at Toledo, Miami University at Oxford, College of Mount St. Joseph, for women, at Mount St. Joseph, Mount Union College at Alliance, Muskingum College at New Concord, Notre Dame College for women at South Euclid, Oberlin College at Oberlin, Ohio Northern University at Ada, Ohio State University at Columbus, Ohio University at Athens, Ohio Wesleyan University at Delaware, Otterbein College at Westerville, St. Mary's of the Springs, a college for women, at Columbus, Ursuline College for women at Cleveland, Western College for women at Oxford, Western Reserve University at Cleveland, Wilberforce University at Wilberforce, Wilmington College at Wilmington, Wittenberg College at Springfield, College of Wooster at Wooster, and Xavier University at Cincinnati. The state has thirty-eight institutions for the training of teachers.

**CHARITIES AND CORRECTION:** Ohio maintains insane hospitals at Athens, Cincinnati, Cleveland, Columbus, Dayton, Lima, Massillon, and Toledo; a hospital for epileptics at Gallipolis; homes for the feeble-minded at Columbus, Orient, and Apple Creek; a tuberculosis sanatorium at Mount Vernon; soldiers' and sailors' homes at Sandusky and Xenia; the Madison Home at Madison; a boys' industrial school at Lancaster; a girls' industrial school at Delaware; a bureau of juvenile research at Columbus; a reformatory for men at Mansfield and one for women at Marysville, a prison farm at London and a penitentiary at Columbus. At Columbus there is a school for the blind and one for the deaf. Capital punishment, electrocution.

**POLITICAL FACTS:** Ohio is governed under the constitution of 1852, which was revised in 1912 and has been amended since then. The laws are made by a General Assembly consisting of a Senate and a House of Representatives. The members are elected in alternate years for a two-year term, and are apportioned according to population.

The executive department is made up of a governor, a lieutenant-governor, a secretary of state, an auditor, a treasurer, and an attorney-general. They all serve two-year terms except the auditor, who serves for four years.

The judiciary is headed by the supreme court, which is composed of seven judges who are elected for six years. The state is divided into appellate districts, each district having one court of appeals consisting of three judges. At least one court must be held annually in each district. Each county elects a resident judge of the court of common pleas, and also has a probate court which, by vote of the electors, may be combined with the court of common pleas. Justices of the peace are elected for two or four years.

Voters must be over twenty-one years of age, must be citizens of the United States, must have lived in the state for at least one year, in the county for thirty days, and in the township, village, or ward for twenty days preceding the election.

All nominations for elective offices must be made at direct primary elections or by petition. Provision is made for a preferential vote for the nomination of the president and the United States senator. Direct primaries are not held to nominate township officers in municipalities of less than 2,000 population unless by petition of a majority of the electors. Registration is held annually in cities of more than 100,000 inhabitants, and every four years elsewhere. At the primary election held every fourth year following April, 1916, delegates and alternates are chosen by the direct vote

## OHIO—Continued

of the electors to go to the national conventions of the various political parties.

Municipalities may frame and adopt or may amend a charter, may operate public utilities, and have the privilege of initiative and referendum, and of the recall of officials.

In 1921 a legislative act combined all state administrative divisions and commissions into nine departments. In 1913 Ohio passed a workmen's compensation law providing for compulsory state insurance.

The capital of Ohio is at Columbus.

**MONUMENTS:** The Mound City Group of prehistoric Indian mounds near Chillicothe is a national monument. So is Perry's Victory Memorial at Put In Bay, commemorating a century of peace with Canada.

**GAME AND BIRD RESERVATIONS:** West Sister Island Refuge in Lucas County protects herons.

Ohio has 1,466,109 acres of national forest.

**NAME:** Ohio was named for the river that forms its southern boundary. The river received its name from the Indians. The Wyandotte word "O-he-zuh" was pronounced "Ohio" by the French fur traders, and meant in the French language "la belle rivière," or "the beautiful river." The name was officially attached to the region when Ohio became a state.

**NICKNAMES:** Ohio is popularly known as the Buckeye State, from an historical incident wherein an early sheriff—some say a judge of the first court conducted by the settlers at Marietta—was called "hetuck" by a group of Indians. The word meant "big buckeye," and referred to the officer's powerful stature. The buckeye horse chestnut is a common tree in Ohio. The nickname became common during the fierce political campaign of 1840. Ohio is also known as the Modern

Mother of Presidents, for a number of recent presidents have been born there or lived there at the time of their election to the White House. Because of its large number of settlers from New England Ohio has often been dubbed the Yankee State, especially by the people of Virginia and Kentucky.

The people of Ohio are often called Buckeyes.

**STATE FLOWER:** Scarlet carnation (of the genus *Dianthus*); adopted by legislative action in February, 1904.

**STATE SONG:** No song has ever been officially adopted, but "Beautiful Ohio," with words by Ballard Macdonald and music by Mary Earl, is a general favorite.

**STATE FLAG:** Three red and three white horizontal stripes, with a union of seventeen white five-pointed stars in a blue triangular field. The stars are grouped around a red disk superimposed over a circular white "O." The flag was adopted by legislative action in 1902.

**STATE MOTTO:** From the years 1866 to 1868 the state motto was "Imperium in Imperio," meaning "an empire within an empire." Since the repeal of the law by which this motto had been adopted, the state has had no official motto.

**STATE BIRD:** Cardinal; approved by the Assembly in 1933.

**INTERESTING FACTS:** Ohio observes New Year's Day, Lincoln's Birthday, Washington's Birthday, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Columbus Day, Election Day, Armistice Day, Thanksgiving Day, and Christmas Day.

<b>Population of state,</b> 1940, 6,907,612	<b>Guttensey (H5)</b> 38,922	<b>Ottawa (D2)</b> 24,360	<b>Ada (C4)</b> 2,368
<b>Counties</b>	<b>Hamilton (A7)</b> 621,987	<b>Paulding (A3)</b> 15,527	<b>Akron * (G3)</b> 244,791
<b>Adams (D8)</b> 21,705	<b>Hancock (C3)</b> 40,793	<b>Perry (F6)</b> 31,087	<b>Albion * (H1)</b> 22,405
<b>Allen (B4)</b> 73,303	<b>Hardin (C4)</b> 27,061	<b>Pickaway (D7)</b> 27,889	<b>Amherst * (I3)</b> 2,896
<b>Ashland (F4)</b> 29,785	<b>Harrison (H5)</b> 20,313	<b>Pike (D7)</b> 16,113	<b>Ashtabula * (I4)</b> 12,453
<b>Ashtabula (D3)</b> 68,674	<b>Henry (B3)</b> 22,756	<b>Portage (H3)</b> 46,660	<b>Ashtabula * (J2)</b> 21,405
<b>Athens (F7)</b> 46,166	<b>Highland (D7)</b> 27,099	<b>Preble (A6)</b> 23,329	<b>Athens * (B7)</b> 7,696
<b>Auglaize (B4)</b> 28,037	<b>Hocking (E7)</b> 21,504	<b>Putnam (B4)</b> 25,016	<b>Avon (E2)</b> 2,118
<b>Belmont (J5)</b> 95,614	<b>Holmes (G4)</b> 17,876	<b>Richland (E4)</b> 73,853	<b>Avon Lake (E2)</b> 2,274
<b>Brown (C8)</b> 21,638	<b>Huron (E3)</b> 34,800	<b>Ross (D7)</b> 52,147	<b>Barberton * (C)</b> 24,028
<b>Butler (A7)</b> 120,249	<b>Jackson (E7)</b> 27,004	<b>Sandusky (D3)</b> 41,014	<b>Barnesville * (H6)</b> 5,002
<b>Carroll (H4)</b> 17,449	<b>Jefferson (J5)</b> 98,129	<b>Scioto (D8)</b> 86,565	<b>Bay * (G3)</b> 3,356
<b>Champaign (C5)</b> 25,258	<b>Knov (F5)</b> 31,024	<b>Seneca (D3)</b> 48,499	<b>Bedford * (G3)</b> 7,390
<b>Clark (C6)</b> 95,647	<b>Lake (H2)</b> 50,020	<b>Shelby (B5)</b> 26,071	<b>Bellaire * (J6)</b> 13,799
<b>Clermont (B7)</b> 34,109	<b>Lawrence (E8)</b> 46,705	<b>Stark (H4)</b> 234,887	<b>Bellefontaine * (C5)</b> 9,808
<b>Clinton (C7)</b> 22,574	<b>Licking (E5)</b> 62,279	<b>Summit (G3)</b> 339,405	<b>Bellevue * (E3)</b> 6,127
<b>Columbiana (J4)</b> 90,121	<b>Logan (C5)</b> 29,624	<b>Trumbull (J3)</b> 132,315	<b>Berea * (G3)</b> 6,025
<b>Coshocton (G4)</b> 30,594	<b>Lorain (F3)</b> 112,390	<b>Tuscarawas (H5)</b> 68,816	<b>Bucley * (D6)</b> 8,705
<b>Crawford (E4)</b> 35,571	<b>Lucas (C2)</b> 344,333	<b>Union (D5)</b> 20,012	<b>Bluffton (C4)</b> 2,077
<b>Cuyahoga (G3)</b> 1,217,250	<b>Madison (D6)</b> 21,811	<b>Van Wert (A4)</b> 26,759	<b>Bowling Green * (C3)</b> 7,190
<b>Darke (A5)</b> 38,831	<b>Mahoning (J3)</b> 240,251	<b>Vinton (F7)</b> 11,573	<b>Bridgeport * (J5)</b> 4,853
<b>Defiance (A3)</b> 24,367	<b>Marion (D4)</b> 44,808	<b>Warren (B7)</b> 29,894	<b>Bryan * (A3)</b> 5,404
<b>Delaware (D5)</b> 26,780	<b>Medina (G3)</b> 31,034	<b>Washington (H7)</b> 43,537	<b>Bucyrus * (E4)</b> 9,727
<b>Erie (E3)</b> 43,201	<b>Meigs (F7)</b> 24,104	<b>Wayne (G4)</b> 50,520	<b>Byessville (G6)</b> 2,418
<b>Fairfield (E6)</b> 48,490	<b>Mercer (A4)</b> 26,256	<b>Williams (A2)</b> 25,510	<b>Cadiz * (J5)</b> 2,808
<b>Fayette (D6)</b> 21,385	<b>Miami (B5)</b> 52,632	<b>Wood (C3)</b> 51,796	<b>Cambridge * (C5)</b> 15,044
<b>Franklin (D6)</b> 388,712	<b>Monroe (H6)</b> 18,641	<b>Wyandot (D4)</b> 19,218	<b>Campbell * (E8)</b> 13,785
<b>Fulton (B2)</b> 23,626	<b>Montgomery (B6)</b> 295,480		<b>Canton * (H4)</b> 108,401
<b>Gallia (F8)</b> 24,930	<b>Morgan (G6)</b> 14,227	<b>Cities and Villages</b>	<b>Carey * (D4)</b> 2,984
<b>Geauga (H3)</b> 19,430	<b>Morrow (E4)</b> 15,646	[Places marked with an asterisk (*) were classified as urban in 1940]	<b>Carrollton * (H4)</b> 2,548
<b>Greene (C6)</b> 35,863	<b>Muskingum (G6)</b> 69,795		<b>Celina * (A4)</b> 4,841
	<b>Noble (H6)</b> 14,587		<b>Chagrin Falls * (H3)</b> 2,505
			<b>Chardon (H2)</b> 2,001

**OHIO—Continued**

Chillicothe * (B3)	9,043	Grandview		Napoleon * (B3)	4,825	Shaker Heights *	
Cincinnati * (E7)	20,129	Heights * (D6)	6,960	Nelsonville *		(G3)	23,393
Circleville * (E6)	7,982	Greenfield * (B7)	4,228	(F7)	5,368	Shelby * (E4)	6,643
Cleveland * (G2)	878,336	Greenville * (A5)	7,745	Newark * (F5)	31,487	Sidney * (B5)	9,790
Cleveland Heights * (G2)	54,992	Hamilton * (A7)	50,592	New Boston * (D8)	6,024	St. Euclid * (G3)	6,146
Clyde * (E3)	3,174	Hicksville * (A3)	2,549	Newburgh Heights * (G3)	3,830	Springfield * (C6)	70,662
Coal Grove (E8)	2,351	Hillsboro * (C7)	4,713	Newcomerstown * (G5)	4,564	Steubenville * (J5)	37,651
Coldwater (A4)	2,019	Hubbard * (J3)	4,189	New Lexington * (F6)	4,049	Strongsville (G3)	2,216
Columbiana * (J4)	2,687	Ironton * (E8)	15,851	New Philadelphia * (H4)	12,328	Struthers * (J3)	11,735
Columbus * (E6)	306,087	Jackson * (E7)	6,295	Newton Falls * (J3)	3,120	Sylvania (C2) ...	2,199
Conneaut * (J2)	9,355	Kent * (H3)	8,581	Niles * (J3)	16,273	Tallmadge * (G3)	3,452
Coshocton * (G5)	11,509	Kenton * (C4)	7,593	N. Baltimore (C3)	2,616	Tiffin * (D3)	16,102
Crestline * (E4)	4,317	Lakewood * (G3)	69,160	N. Canton * (H4)	2,988	Tiltonville (J5)	2,360
Crooksville * (F6)	2,890	Lancaster * (E6)	21,940	N. College Hill * (A7)	5,231	Tippecanoe City * (H6)	2,879
Cuyahoga Falls * (H3)	20,546	Lebanon * (B7)	3,890	N. Olmsted * (G3)	3,487	Toledo * (C2)	282,349
Dayton * (B6)	210,718	Leetonia (J4)	2,259	Norwalk * (E3)	8,211	Toronto * (J5)	7,426
Deer Park * (C2)	3,510	Lima * (B4)	44,711	Norwood * (B7)	34,010	Troy * (B5)	9,697
Defiance * (B1)	9,744	Lisbon * (J4)	3,379	Oakwood * (B6)	7,652	Uhrichsville * (H5)	6,435
Delaware * (D5)	8,944	Lockland * (A7)	5,601	Oberlin * (F3)	4,305	University Heights * (G3)	5,981
Delphos * (B4)	5,746	Logan * (F6)	6,177	Orvville * (G4)	4,484	Upper Arlington * (D6)	5,370
Dennison * (H5)	4,413	Lorain * (F3)	44,125	Ottawa (B3)	2,342	Upper Sandusky * (D4)	3,907
Dover * (G3)	3,200	Loudonville (F4)	2,334	Oxford * (A7)	2,756	Urbana * (C5)	8,335
Dover * (G4)	9,691	Louisville * (H4)	3,379			Van Wert * (A4)	9,227
East Cleveland * (G2)	39,495	Lowellville (J3)	2,359	Painesville * (H2)	12,235	Wadsworth * (G3)	6,495
East Liverpool * (J4)	23,555	Manchester (C8)	2,163	Parma * (G2)	16,365	Wapakoneta * (B5)	5,225
East Palestine * (J4)	5,123	Mansfield * (F4)	37,154	Paulding (A3)	2,044	Warren * (J3)	42,837
Eaton * (A6)	3,552	Maple Heights * (G3)	6,728	Perryburg * (C2)	3,457	Washington C. H. * (D7)	9,402
Elmwood Place * (A7)	4,248	Marion * (H4)	30,817	Piqua * (B5)	16,049	Wauseon * (B2)	3,016
Elyria * (F3)	17,866	Martins Ferry * (J5)	11,729	Pomeroy * (F7)	3,581	Wellington * (F3)	2,529
Euclid * (G2)	17,866	Marysville * (D5)	4,037	Port Clinton * (E2)	4,505	Wellston (E7)	5,537
Fairport * (H2)	4,528	Massillon * (H4)	26,644	Portsmouth * (D8)	40,466	Wellsville * (J4)	7,672
Fairview * (H5)	1,700	Maumee * (C2)	1,683	Powhatan Point (J6)	2,054	West Carrollton (B6)	2,176
Findlay * (C3)	20,228	Mayfield Heights * (G3)	2,696	Ravenna * (H3)	8,538	Westerville * (E5)	3,146
Fostoria (D3)	13,353	Medma * (G3)	4,359	Reading * (B7)	6,079	Wickliffe * (H2)	3,155
Franklin * (B6)	4,511	Miamisburg * (B6)	5,544	Rittman * (C4)	2,770	Willard * (E3)	4,261
Fremont * (D3)	14,710	Middleport * (F7)	3,356	Rocky River * (G3)	8,291	Willoughby (H2)	4,364
Gahon * (E4)	3,685	Middletown * (B6)	31,220	St. Bernard * (A7)	7,387	Wilmington * (C7)	5,971
Gallipolis * (F6)	3,832	Milford (B7)	2,139	St. Clairsville * (J5)	2,797	Woodfield (H6)	2,442
Garfield Heights * (C3)	16,989	Millersburg (G4)	2,339	St. Marys * (B4)	5,532	Wooster * (G4)	11,543
Geneva * (J2)	1,171	Mimerva * (H4)	2,937	Salem * (J4)	12,301	Wyoming * (A7)	4,466
Germantown (B6)	1,095	Mingo Junction * (J5)	5,192	Salineville (J4)	2,018	Xenia * (C6)	10,633
Gibsonburg (D5)	1,169	Montpelier * (A2)	3,703	Sandusky * (E5)	24,874	Youngstown * (J3)	167,720
Girard * (J3)	9,805	Mt. Gilead (E4)	2,008	Sebring * (H4)	3,302	Zanesville * (F6)	37,500
Glendale (A7)	2,359	Mt. Healthy * (A7)	3,997	Shadyside * (J6)	4,048		
Glouster * (F6)	847	Mt. Vernon * (F5)	10,122				

# **The HISTORY of OKLAHOMA**

## **Reading Unit**

**No. 35**

### **OKLAHOMA: THE SOONER STATE**

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

#### ***Interesting Facts Explained***

When Oklahoma was to be a refuge for the Indians, 8-315  
What the soil of Oklahoma is like, 8-316  
How grants of land were made to the Indian tribes, 8-317  
Why the Indians did not occupy all the land given them, 8-317  
Why Congress bought land back

from the Indians, 8-317  
Who the "Sooners" were, 8-318  
When Oklahoma was admitted to the Union, 8-318  
Mineral resources of the state, 8-319  
How wealthy Indians spent their money, 8-320

#### ***Things to Think About***

Which Indians were living in Oklahoma in 1834, and which tribes moved in?  
Which Indian tribes were given grants of land?  
Is it right to speak of "Indian givers"?  
Why is Oklahoma called the "Sooner" state?

Which of Oklahoma's resources is most useful to the country?  
Where do the raw materials come from that Oklahoma uses in her manufacturing?  
What makes Oklahoma's educational record especially admirable?

#### ***Related Material***

What is the largest game bird in the world? 9-358  
What is petroleum and how did it first get into the earth? 9-449-50  
What did James Young produce when he "refined" petroleum? 9-450  
What kinds of vegetables did the

Indians grow? 9-104, 148  
Our country's vanishing fertility, 7-455, 456  
Why was President Harrison called "a man four-square"? 7-289  
Why was Cleveland not elected president in 1888? 7-289

#### ***Practical Applications***

How can the oil under the capitol building in Oklahoma City be recovered? 8-317

What training is being given to the Indians? 8-320

#### ***Leisure-time Activities***

PROJECT NO. 1: Make a list of the Indian tribes which came to Oklahoma to settle, 8-317.  
PROJECT NO. 2: Draw a map

of Oklahoma and mark on it the chief towns. Also make a list of the chief commercial interests of each of these towns, 8-319.

## THE HISTORY OF OKLAHOMA

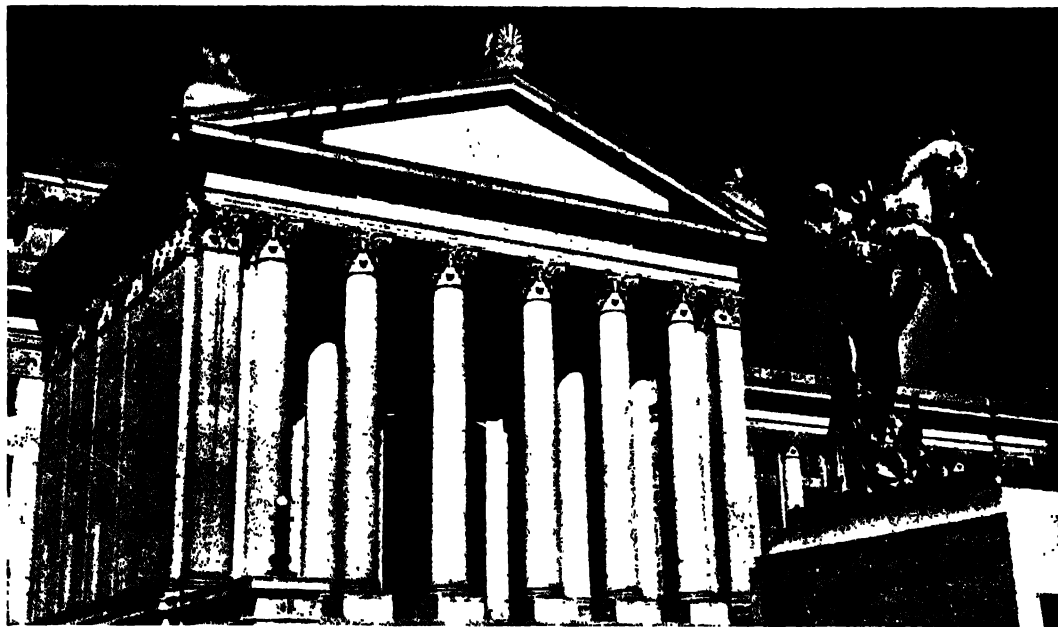


Photo by H. C. Lanks from Keystone View Co.

When settlers poured into Oklahoma many stopped on the present site of Oklahoma City. Here today, be-

fore the state capitol, stands a statue of a cowboy on his rearing horse, a symbol of the state's brave past.

### OKLAHOMA: *the* SOONER STATE

#### *The Tale of How a Wild Youth among the States Grew Up*

**I**T IS a sad reflection on the justice of the white man that he has invented the term "Indian giver." The truth is that, all along, the shoe has been on the other foot! For it was the white man who took back from the Indian the gifts which had seemed to be freely bestowed. Of course the white man defends his use of the term by explaining that the Indian gave up land and then wanted it back. But for the most part the Indian gave up his hunting grounds only when he was forced to do so, and when he demanded them back he asked only for what he felt to be his own. When it is all boiled down, the term "Indian giver" as applied to the red man is only an excellent example of the old trick of taking a man's goods and then shouting "Thief!" when he demands them back. Nowhere is the white man's idea of a gift better illustrated than it is in his treatment of the Indians to whom he gave the state of Oklahoma (*ō'klā-hō'mā*)—at first known as Indian Territory—for a

permanent home. But all that must come later in our story.

Oklahoma's history does not go back very far. She is a young state. In 1803 she was bought by this country from France—a part of the Louisiana Purchase—but no one knew much about the land that was some day to be Oklahoma, for no one had explored it up to that time. In 1834 Congress, still ignorant as to what the region was like, set aside all of Oklahoma except the narrow strip in the northwest which to-day forms the "pan-handle" of the state. The whole territory was to be a refuge for the Indian tribes who had been forced out of their homes farther east and so had been left with no place to live. At that time only a few Kiowa (*kī'ō-wā*), Apache (*ā-päch'è*), and Comanche (*kō-măn'-chê*) Indians made their homes in Oklahoma; so there was plenty of room for the new settlers. The whole country which is now Oklahoma was given the name of the Indian Territory, and red men from all over the

## THE HISTORY OF OKLAHOMA



The University of Oklahoma, at Norman only a few miles south of the capital, is by far the largest of the

institutions for higher learning in the state. Above is its business administration building.

country were here offered peace and security from any further trouble with the whites. The first Indians to move in were several hard-pressed southern tribes, especially the Cherokees (chĕr'ô-kĕ), Creeks, Seminoles (sĕm'y-nôl), Choctaws (chôk'tô), and Chickasaws; they arranged themselves in the sort of country that was most to their liking and settled down.

### The Mountains of Oklahoma

The land which the Cherokees and Creeks found when they crossed the border into their new homes was not very exciting to look at. In the east was an outpost of the Ozark (ô'zârk) Mountains, heavily wooded and well watered by streams, altogether a very pleasant and comfortable place in which to live. A few other scattered hills, the Wichita (wich'y-tô') Mountains to the southwest and the Chautauqua (shâ-tô'kwâ) Mountains to the northwest, are more ragged and bare. These hills are set on a broad plain, which slopes gently from northwest to southeast, just as it does in Kansas and Nebraska. In the northwest a lofty tableland reaches its highest point at 4,978 feet, but along the banks of the Red River, in the extreme south-

east, the land is only about 350 feet above sea level.

This wide-spreading Oklahoma plain is for the most part made up of very gently sloping, rolling ground. At several spots in the west there are plains of salt, probably the remains of old salt lakes like Great Salt Lake in Utah. The water has dried up and left the salt in a thick layer over the ground. There is not enough of it to be of any great importance commercially, but the very fact that it is not washed away by rains shows how dry the western part of the state must be. Most of the soil of Oklahoma is a dark red loam, with occasional patches of black soil in the river valleys and here and there bits of wind-blown loess (lô'ĕs), a very finely powdered soil which we have described on other pages.

### The Western Plains

In the western part of the state there is too little rainfall for farming, though the soil there is as good as it is farther east. There has never been very much vegetation covering those western plains; in spite of the many rivers—the Red, Arkansas, Canadian, Cimarron (sĭm'â-rôn'), and Washita (wôsh'y-tô)—are the most important—there has never

## THE HISTORY OF OKLAHOMA

been enough water for agriculture and never much irrigation. A thin carpet of grass, most of which dries up in summer, is all the earth can support. This was, in part, the land on which the United States government began to gather all the unwanted Indians from over the whole country. With the promise of free transportation and free land they were encouraged to come and settle here in what was, after all, pretty much of a desert. We need not wonder if many of those parched acres remained untouched by Indian settlers.

Still, there were many parts of the state which were more inviting than the western prairies; and soon a good many tribes were flocking to the Indian Territory. The Cherokees were given the northern portion, the Choctaws and the Chickasaws the southern portion, and the Creeks and Seminoles the middle part. But those lands did not remain long in the hands of their original owners. All sorts of small grants were continually being made—to the Seminoles in 1866, to the Sauks and Foxes in the next year, to the Osages (ô-sāj'), Kansas, Potawatomis (pôt'-â-wôt'-â-mī), Shawnees, and Wichitas in 1871, to the Pawnees in 1876, to the Poncas (pöng'ká) and Nez Percés (nā' pēr'sā') in 1878, to the Otos (ô'tô) and the Missouris in 1881, and to the Iowas and Kickapoos in 1883. The Kiowas, Comanches, and Apaches were also taken care of. The Comanches belonged to the great Shoshonean (shô-shô'-nā-ăn) group of Indians, tall, heavy-featured hunters coming from the western plateaus. This great family included the Utes (ût), Shoshones (shô-shô'nê), Bannocks, and Piutes (pī'ût), and even had, in the Hopis

(hō'pê), a few representatives who had settled down to a farming life in the pueblos of the Southwest. The Apaches belonged to the southern branch of the Athapaskan (ăth'-ă-pās'kăn) group—an Indian people from Northwestern Canada. The Navajos (nā'vâ-hô) are for the most part of the same stock.

In spite of all the new settlements which we have just mentioned, the Indians refused to spread out and take possession of the lands which had been given to them. They left huge regions quite vacant, they did not dig mines or start large farming projects. Instead they lived in their little villages of tents, doing some farming and enough hunting to get along. Of course there were plenty of white men looking longingly across the borders of the rich Indian Territory and complaining of the careless way in which the Indians were treating this land of theirs. The grumblings



Phot. by Socony Vacuum Oil Co.

Oil wells in the heart of a city are indeed a strange sight! Not long ago oil was discovered at Oklahoma City, and drilling operations began around the state capitol itself—as you may gather from the picture. If the number of derricks is any indication, we may be sure that none of the oil will be neglected; it will even be possible to recover oil from under the capitol building by drilling at an angle.

were loud enough to make quite a noise in the capital at Washington. The soil did not now seem so useless for agriculture as it had seemed years before, when the Indians were first told to settle here.

### The Promise of Riches

And still more important, very encouraging rumors were going about to the effect that there were rich mineral deposits—especially oil—to be found under Oklahoma's dusty surface. So more and more pressure was brought on President Benjamin Harrison to make him take back this gift from the Indians and open up the Territory to white settlers. In 1889 a huge tract in the middle of Oklahoma was purchased from the Indians for the amazing price of about seventy-five cents an acre. To-day plain

## THE HISTORY OF OKLAHOMA

---



Photo by the Department of Agriculture

Dust storms in the western part of Oklahoma, as in the whole of the area that we once called the Dust Bowl, wiped out many a peaceful scene like this one. Before farmers started plowing the land, the sparse native grasses were enough to hold down the soil. But as soon as this thin grass cover was broken and

seasons of heat and drought followed, high winds drew the dry earth into swirling, terrifying clouds and everything alive had to run for shelter. With careful planting and terracing this stricken land has been redeemed and made useful again. It is no longer a menace to neighboring areas.

farm land in Oklahoma, not counting deposits of coal, oil, natural gas, zinc, and lead, averages \$60 or more an acre in value.

### Free Land

Most of the Indians sold their lands. Only the Osages held to the greater part of their territory. Then President Harrison announced that at 12 o'clock noon, April 22, 1889, the land of Oklahoma would be opened for settlement. April 22 was very hot, with a pitiless sun in the sky, but 20,000 people were lined up waiting on the borders of the new territory. A whole troop of United States cavalry was on hand to keep them from crossing the line too soon. Just at noon a trumpet blast let them loose, and the dense, struggling mob dashed straight into the heart of the new territory. One can easily imagine the disputes and fights over duplicate claims, the heartbreaks and the triumphs of that exciting day. The air was hot, the sun was high, and water was scarce. Many a man must have felt discouraged indeed as he looked over the plot of dusty grass that had fallen to his lot, and doubtless many would willingly have traded half their acres for a pleasant little spring of cold, fresh water and a few green trees. A good many had sneaked by the guards and had got in to take up the best claims before the rest were admitted. Such people were called "Sooners," and from them the state jokingly got its nickname. But though

there was plenty of disappointment, not many of the settlers went back home. Instead, more kept coming, and by 1890 there were enough of them to organize their section of the Indian Territory into the Territory of Oklahoma. In 1907, after the few remaining Indian territories and the "pan-handle" in the northwest had been thrown open to settlers, Oklahoma was admitted to the Union.

### What Does Oklahoma Grow?

Most of the agriculture of Oklahoma must take into account the fact that nowhere in the state is the rainfall heavy, while in the west it is too scant for regular farming. In the east Oklahoma's farms made amazing progress. Corn, wheat, and oats were at first her most important and valuable crops, with hay, fodder, rye, barley, tobacco, and cotton of less importance. Then, during the twenties, cotton became the most valuable crop, with wheat ranking second. But of late years Oklahoma has planted a good deal less cotton, and wheat has regained the lead by a very wide margin. As a rule the state ranks third or fourth among the states in her output of wheat. Other important crops are corn, oats, barley, sorghums, flaxseed, hay, pecans, peanuts, sweet potatoes, white potatoes, peaches, pears, and grapes. Live stock, and dairy and poultry products are also of great value. In the growing of sorghums Oklahoma is one of the leading states. In the number of her cattle



## THE HISTORY OF OKLAHOMA

she ranks eighth or ninth, but she has not many sheep.

The live stock and dairying interests of Oklahoma are centered in large measure in the western part of the state; consequently they were the first to be hit by the great droughts whose terrible effects we have described in our stories of Kansas, Nebraska, and the Dakotas. Here in particular—in northern Texas and western Oklahoma—the suffocating dust storms were so fierce as to leave only a few thin rabbits and bedraggled crows in the midst of a region which, with a fair amount of rainfall, might easily be one of the most fertile sections in the land. The problem was solved under the federal government's program of scientific reclamation.

It is this widespread lack of moisture which, in spite of great natural advantages, has kept Oklahoma from devoting more of her time to farming. Perhaps this has been for the best after all; for the state has had plenty of other sources of wealth. Her mineral resources are fabulously rich. Even before she became a state in 1907 they had raised her to a position among the leading states in the country in mineral output. Today she still ranks high in her production of a number of minerals, and every year wins vast wealth from her mines and oil wells.

### The Great Oil Fields

The first mineral product to attract great attention in Oklahoma was her petroleum; it still is by all odds the most valuable as well as the most famous of her products. Oklahoma oil fields are known over all the country, for tremendous pipe lines make her oil available to every state in the land. For a long time Oklahoma's production of petro-

leum gave her first rank among the states, but since the early 1920's she has gradually dropped back into third or fourth place. In 1933 Oklahoma produced more than 182 million barrels of oil; the average from 1926 to 1930 was more than 235 million barrels. Second in value to petroleum and

closely associated with it is Oklahoma's production of natural gas. In this commodity, as well as in natural gasoline and zinc—her third and fourth most important products—she is a leading state. She also ranks high in asphalt and lead. Other important minerals are coal—found mostly in the east—glass sand, and clay products.

In manufacturing, Oklahoma depends for raw materials on the products of her mines and forests and on her agriculture. Oklahoma City, since 1910 the state capital, is a cotton-ginning center and a great manufacturer of cotton by-products,

mostly cottonseed oil and cottonseed cake. She is a busy market for horses and mules, and a thriving meat-packing center. Here, too, many oil companies have their headquarters. But the great oil city of Oklahoma is Tulsa, so widely known for her great output of petroleum that she is sometimes called "the oil capital of the world." Many oil refineries and pumping stations are in Tulsa (tŭl'sā), and nearby coal mines help to give cheap power to her machine shops and miscellaneous manufactures. Muskogee (mŭs-kō'gē) is a railroad center and has a large output of cotton, oil, and glass. Okmulgee (ōk-mŭl'gē), Bartlesville, Ardmore, and Ponca City are other famous oil towns. The more important cities for cotton and other farm products are Enid (ē'nīd), Shawnee, McAlester (māk-āl'ēs-tēr), Chickasha (chĭk'ā-shā), and Law-

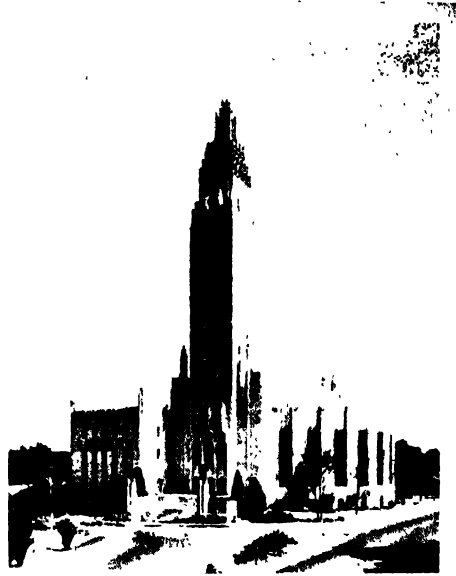


Photo by Tulsa Chamber of Commerce

Tulsa, in the heart of the oil country and supplying equipment to many of the big oil companies that have their offices there, is often called the "Oil City." This is a view of a splendid church the people of Tulsa have recently built.

## THE HISTORY OF OKLAHOMA



Though Oklahoma is not one of the leading cotton states, cotton fields like the one above are a common

sight there. For they flourish well under the Oklahoma sun, and furnish one of the state's leading crops.

ton. In response to the demands of these many flourishing cities and important industries, Oklahoma has developed a fine railroad system connecting her with every important market in the country.

### A Fine Educational Achievement

Educationally, Oklahoma comes close to the high standard of the three states to the north—Kansas, Nebraska, and South Dakota. Her percentage of citizens who cannot read and write is only 2.8, a fine record for any state, and quite amazing for one which has been so recently settled and which has such a high percentage of Indians and of scattered farm dwellers. An interesting problem has arisen in connection with the Osages, who, you will remember, kept much of their land. When the great oil boom of the 1920's struck Oklahoma, those Indians suddenly became millionaires. In one year they received \$22,000,000. Of course they had no very clear idea of how to use it. Some of them spent their money for an amazing array of articles; one family, for instance, enjoyed riding about the countryside in a huge black hearse with feathers and silver trimmings. Of course those helpless millionaires offered

a tempting opportunity to rascals of every sort; and it has been a great problem to train them—and indeed the Indian race as a whole—to the proper uses of money and other devices of civilization. It is experience, not intelligence, that they lack.

### The Dauntless Pioneer

The story of Oklahoma has not always been a pretty or an inspiring one. The ignorant Indians were often cheated out of their lands by very shabby tricks; and the manner of the opening of the country to white settlement showed the greedy and self-seeking qualities of the frontier in their worst light. But these were the faults of the nation at large, rather than of Oklahoma. And through the whole story, depressing as it is in its earlier parts, the indomitable strength and energy of the pioneer shines out on every page. The faults of Oklahoma have been, at worst, the excesses of youth, which experience has already set right; her virtues are the American virtues of courage, strength, forthrightness, and untiring labor. And it is her virtues by which she will be remembered in every land where the products of her mines or of her farms are known.

## OKLAHOMA

**AREA:** 69,919 square miles--17th in rank.

**LOCATION:** Oklahoma, one of the West South Central states, lies between 33° 35' and 37° N. Lat. and between 94° 29' and 103° W. Long. It is bounded on the north by Colorado and Kansas, on the east by Missouri and Arkansas, on the south by Texas, and on the west by Texas and New Mexico.

**PHYSICAL FEATURES:** Most of Oklahoma is a vast rolling plain that rises gently toward the north and west. There are four mountainous sections: the wooded Ozark Mountains, which extend from the center of the eastern boundary southwestward about halfway across the state; the Chautauqua Mountains, which lie in the western part of the state, in Blaine and Canadian counties; the Wichita Mountains, a succession of rugged summits that rise in the southwestern part of the state; and the Arbuckle Mountains, a high table-land that lies near the southern border west of the Washita River. The highest point in the state is in the northwest, in Cimarron County, where Black Mesa is 4,978 ft. high. It lies in the high treeless plains that cover the western part of the state, they belong to the great plains region of our country. The lowest point in Oklahoma is in the southeast corner, where the elevation is only 300 ft.; the average elevation of the state is 1,300 ft. Between the Neosho and the Arkansas rivers is a region where streams have carved out steep canyons, buttes, and mesas; and in the dry northwestern section are several flat salt plains, among them the Big Salt Plain, which stretches for eight miles along the Cimarron River and at certain points is as much as two miles wide.

Most of Oklahoma's larger rivers follow the general slope of the land and flow from northwest to southeast. Along the southern boundary flows the Red River (1,018 m. long) for almost the entire length of the state. From Oklahoma it receives the North Fork in the west; the Washita (500 m. long), which rises in Texas; and the Kiamichi, which rises in Arkansas. It carries their waters to the Mississippi. The Arkansas River (1,450 m. long), which rises in Colorado and enters Oklahoma from Kansas, gathers up the drainage of the greater part of Oklahoma as it flows across the northeastern corner of the state on its way to the Mississippi. From the north it receives two streams that rise in Kansas, the Verdigris and the Neosho (460 m. long). From the west and southwest it receives the Salt Fork, which rises in Kansas; the Cimarron (600 m. long), which rises in New Mexico; and the Canadian (906 m. long), another stream that has its headwaters in New Mexico. The Arkansas may be navigated by small boats for most of its 360 miles through the state. The Canadian is used for local traffic for about 75 miles. If the season is not too dry, the Red River may be navigated for about 400 miles. None of Oklahoma's streams will carry boats of any size. All together the state has a water area of 643 square miles, and a good deal of irrigated land.

**CLIMATE:** Oklahoma has great extremes of temperature, but the climate is dry and the heat and cold are not uncomfortable. In general the western part of the state is cooler and drier than the east, for it is higher and is farther away from the Gulf of Mexico. The north-west has a mean annual temperature of 57° F. and a mean annual rainfall of 19 inches, but in the southeast the mean annual temperature is 62°, and the mean annual rainfall is 35 inches. Oklahoma City has a January mean of 36°, and a July mean of 81°. The record high there is 109°, the record low -17°. The mean annual rainfall for the entire state is about 32 inches, but the east gets 12 inches more a year than the west.

**INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING:** The more important institutions are the Catholic College of

Oklahoma, a college for women, at Guthrie, the Oklahoma Agricultural and Mechanical College at Stillwater, Oklahoma Baptist University at Shawnee, Oklahoma City University at Oklahoma City, Oklahoma College for Women at Chickasha, University of Oklahoma at Norman, Panhandle Agricultural and Mechanical College at Goodwell, Phillips University at Enid, University of Tulsa at Tulsa, and the Agricultural and Normal University for colored students at Langston. Teachers' colleges are at Edmond, Ada, Tahlequah, Alva, Durant, and Weatherford. The state maintains sixteen junior colleges.

**CHARITIES AND CORRECTION:** Oklahoma maintains schools for dependent white children at Pryor and Helena; a home for deaf, blind, and orphaned colored children at Taft; an institute for the feeble-minded at Enid; insane hospitals at Norman, Vinita, Taft, and Supply; tuberculosis hospitals at Tahlequah, Sulphur, and Clinton; the University hospital at Oklahoma City; a home for Confederate soldiers at Ardmore and one for Union soldiers at Oklahoma City; industrial schools for delinquent girls at Tecumseh and Taft; industrial schools for delinquent boys at Helena and Boley; a reformatory at Granite; and a penitentiary at McAlester. The state inflicts capital punishment by electrocution.

**POLITICAL FACTS:** The constitution under which Oklahoma is governed was adopted in 1907 and has an unusually wide scope. It includes many provisions that are often left to legislatures to enact. The laws are made by a legislature which meets in alternate years and is composed of two houses: a Senate consisting of not more than 44 members, who are elected to represent the senatorial districts into which the state is divided; and a House of Representatives consisting of not more than 109 members, who are elected to represent the various counties in the state. Senators serve for four years, and half the Senate is elected every two years. Representatives serve for two years.

The executive authority rests with the state officers: a governor, lieutenant-governor, secretary of state, attorney-general, treasurer, superintendent of public instruction, the commissioners of labor, of charities, of corrections, and of insurance, and a mine inspector and state examiner. All serve four-year terms. The governor, secretary of state, auditor, and treasurer may not serve two consecutive terms.

The judiciary is headed by a supreme court made up of a chief justice and four associates, all elected for six years. The state is divided into twenty districts, each one except the thirteenth district presided over by a judge who is elected for four years; in the thirteenth district the judge serves for only two years. In each county is a court of record, presided over by a judge who is elected for two years and who hears cases in probate. There are also justices of the peace, with two for each city of more than 2,500 inhabitants.

Each county is a corporate body, administered by three commissioners and assisting county officials. The privilege of initiative and referendum is granted to voters in municipalities.

Voters must be citizens of the United States, must be over twenty-one years of age, and must have lived in the state for one year, in the county for six months, and in the election precinct for thirty days preceding the election. Persons of Indian descent are not debarred from voting.

All nominations for public office are made in primary elections or by petition. Provision is made for the naming of a first and second choice in the election of United States senators.

## OKLAHOMA—Continued

A corporation commission has general charge of railways and oil pipe lines. There are child-labor laws and workmen's compensation laws.

The capital of the state is at Oklahoma City.

**PARKS:** Platt National Park, in the southern part of the state, was established in 1902, and covers 1.42 square miles. In it are a number of medicinal springs that are open to the public.

Oklahoma has 344,269 acres of national forest.

**GAME AND BIRD RESERVATIONS:** Salt Plains National Wildlife Refuge in Alfalfa County and Tishomingo National Wildlife Refuge in Johnston and Marshall counties protect birds.

Wichita Mountains Wildlife Refuge in Comanche County protects birds and buffalo, elk, antelopes, Texas long-horned cattle, and deer.

**NAME:** When the bill which created the Indian Territory (1834) was going through Congress the Commissioner of Indian Affairs suddenly asked what the new territory was to be called. Allen Wright, the Choctaw delegate, impulsively answered, "Okla homa!" But the Cherokee delegates disapproved and the matter was dropped. Later, however, the word was written into the Choctaw-Chickasaw Treaty of 1866, when regulations were laid down for the intertribal commonwealth. And when a new territory was set up in this region in 1890 it was named the Territory of Oklahoma. The name was kept when the territory became a state. "Oklahoma," which is of Choctaw origin, comes from two Indian words—"okla," meaning "people," and "humma" or "homma," meaning "red." So the word means "red people" or "red men."

**NICKNAMES:** Oklahoma is called the Sooner State from the fact that when the new land was thrown open to settlers a large number of people crossed the boundary before the time set by law and so were able to take up the best claims. These people were known as "sooners." The state is also known as the Boomers'

Paradise because, since the territory was opened up for settlement in 1889, great numbers of "boomers"—or "boosters," as we should be more likely to say today—have poured into it to make their fortunes from its rich resources.

**STATE FLOWER:** Mistletoe; adopted in 1893 by the territorial legislature.

**STATE SONG:** "Oklahoma, a Toast" is the Oklahoma song, but the people of Oklahoma sing a number of other songs honoring their state.

**STATE FLAG:** A red field bearing in the center a five-pointed white star edged with blue, with the numeral 46 in blue in the center of the star; adopted by the legislature in 1915.

**STATE MOTTO:** "Labor Omnia Vincit," meaning "Labor conquers all things"; from Virgil's Georgics, Book 1, line 145.

**STATE BIRD:** The bobwhite was chosen in a contest sponsored by the State Federation of Women's Clubs.

**INTERESTING FACTS:** Oklahoma observes New Year's Day, Washington's Birthday, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Columbus Day, Election Day, Armistice Day, Thanksgiving Day, Christmas Day, and Jefferson's Birthday on April 13th.

Oklahoma has a large number of Indian reservations and a large Indian population. The reservations are: Cheyenne and Arapaho, Kiowa, Wichita, Osage, Kaw, Oakland (Tonkawa), Otoe, Pawnee, Ponca, Eastern Shawnee, Miami, Ottawa, Peoria, Quapaw, Seneca, Wyandotte, Iowa, Kickapoo, Potawatomi, Sac and Fox, and Shawnee. On these reservations live members of tribes for which the reservations are named, and also members of the Caddo, Comanche, and Delaware tribes. The so-called Five Civilized Tribes—the Cherokees, Chickasaws, Choctaws, Creeks, and Seminoles—do not live on reservations. Oklahoma has two government sanatoriums and two government hospitals for Indians, as well as government schools.

Population of state, 1940, 2,336,434							
Counties							
Adair (G3)	15,755	Cotton (C4)	12,884	Jefferson <sup>1</sup> (D4)	15,107	Noble (D2)	14,826
Alfalfa (C2)	14,129	Craig (F2)	21,083	Johnston (E4)	15,960	Nowata (F2)	15,774
Atoka (E4)	18,702	Creek (E3)	55,501				
		Custer (C3)	23,068	Kay (D2)	47,084	Okfuskee (E3)	26,279
Beaver (A1)	8,648			Kingfisher (D3)	15,617	Oklahoma (D3)	244,159
Beckham <sup>1</sup> (B3)	22,169	Delaware (G2)	18,592	Kiowa <sup>2</sup> (C4)	22,817	Okmulgee (F3)	50,101
Blaine (C3)	18,543	Dewey (C3)	11,981			Osage (E2)	41,502
Bryan (E5)	38,138			Latimer (F4)	12,380	Ottawa (G2)	15,849
		Ellis <sup>3</sup> (B2)	8,466	Le Flore (G4)	45,866		
Caddo (C3)	41,567	Garfield (D2)	45,484	Lincoln (E3)	29,529	Pawnee (E2)	17,395
Canadian (D3)	27,329	Garvin (D4)	31,150	Logan (D3)	25,245	Payne (D2)	36,057
Carter (D4)	43,292	Grady (D4)	41,116	Love <sup>4</sup> (D5)	11,433	Pittsburg (F4)	48,985
Cherokee <sup>2</sup> (F3)	21,030	Grant (D2)	13,128			Pontotoc (E4)	39,792
Choctaw (F4)	28,358	Greer (B4)	14,550	McCain (D3)	19,205	Pottawatomie	
Cimarron (B5)	3,654			McCurtain (G4)	41,318	(E3)	54,377
Cleveland (D3)	27,728	Harmon <sup>4</sup> (B4)	10,019	McIntosh (F3)	24,097	Pushmataha	
Coal (E4)	12,811	Harper (B2)	6,454	Major (C2)	11,946	(F4)	19,466
Comanche (C4)	38,988	Haskell (F3)	17,324	Marshall (E4)	12,384		
		Hughes (E3)	29,189	Mayer (F2)	21,668	Roger Mills <sup>7</sup>	
				Murray (D4)	13,841	(B3)	10,736
		Jackson (B4)	22,708	Muskogee (F3)	65,914	Rogers (F2)	21,078

<sup>1</sup> Parts of Beckham acquired by Collingsworth and Wheeler Counties, Tex., due to relocation of one hundredth meridian (U. S. Supreme Court decision of Mar. 17, 1930)

<sup>2</sup> Part of Cherokee annexed to Wagoner in 1924

<sup>3</sup> Parts of Ellis acquired by Hemphill and Lipscomb Counties, Tex., in 1930 due to relocation of one hundredth meridian

<sup>4</sup> Parts of Harmon acquired by Childress and Collingsworth Counties, Tex., in 1930, due to relocation of one hundredth meridian

<sup>5</sup> Part of Jefferson annexed to Love in 1923

<sup>6</sup> Part of Kiowa annexed to Tillman in 1924.

<sup>7</sup> Parts of Roger Mills acquired by Hemphill and Wheeler Counties, Tex., in 1930, due to relocation of one hundredth meridian

# OKLAHOMA—Continued

Seminole (E3) 61,201  
Sequoyah (G3) 23,138  
Stephens (D4) 31,090  
  
Texas (B5) 9,896  
Tillman \* (C4) 20,754  
Tulsa (F2) 193,363

Wagoner \* (F3) 21,642  
Washington (F2) 30,559  
Washita (C3) 22,279  
Woods (C2) 14,915  
Woodward (B2) 16,270

## Cities and Towns

[Places marked with an asterisk (\*) were classified as urban in 1940]

Ada \* (E4) 15,143  
Afton (G2) 1,261  
Alex (D4) 544  
Allen (E4) 1,389  
Altus \* (B4) 8,593  
Anadarko \* (C3) 5,579  
Antlers \* (F4) 3,254  
Apache (C4) 1,047  
Ardmore \* (D4) 16,886  
Arnett (B2) 529  
Asher (E3) 507  
Atoka \* (F4) 2,548  
Avant (E2) 501

Barnsdall (E2) 1,831  
Bartlesville \* (F2) 16,267  
Beaver City (C5) 1,166  
Beggs (E3) 1,283  
Bennington (E4) 513  
Bethany \* (D3) 2,590  
Billings (D2) 661  
Binger (C3) 840  
Bixby (F3) 1,291  
Blackburn (E2) 1,116  
Blackwell \* (D2) 8,537  
Blair (B4) 570  
Blanchard (D3) 1,139  
Borse City (B5) 1,144  
Bokchito (E4) 581  
Bokoshe (G3) 690  
Boley (E3) 942  
Boswell (F4) 962  
Boynton (E3) 842  
Bristow \* (E3) 6,050  
Britton (D4) 2,239  
Broken Arrow (F2) 2,074  
Broken Bow (G4) 2,367  
Buffalo (B2) 1,209

Cache (C4) 620  
Caddo (E4) 954  
Calera (E5) 597  
Calvin (E4) 589  
Canton (C2) 775  
Carmen (C2) 818  
Carter (B3) 535  
Cement (C4) 1,039  
Chandler \* (E3) 2,738  
Checotah (F3) 2,126  
Chelsea (F2) 1,642  
Cherokee \* (C2) 2,553  
Cheyenne (B3) 1,070  
Chickasha \* (D3) 14,111  
Claremore \* (F2) 4,134  
Cleveland \* (E2) 2,510  
Clinton \* (C3) 6,736  
Coalgate (E4) 2,118

Colbert (E5) 602  
Collinsville (F2) 1,927  
Comanche (D4) 1,533  
Commerce (G2) 2,422  
Copan (F2) 549  
Cordell \* (C3) 2,776  
Covington (D2) 780  
Coweta (F3) 1,455  
Crescent (D3) 1,301  
Cushing \* (E3) 7,703  
Cyril (C4) 972

Davenport (E3) 975  
Davidson (B4) 507  
Davis (D4) 1,698  
Dawson (F2) 1,086  
Delaware (F2) 542  
Depew (E3) 876  
Dewar (F3) 778  
Dewey (F2) 2,114  
Dill (B3) 511  
Drumright \* (E3) 4,303  
Duncan \* (D4) 9,207  
Durant \* (E5) 10,027  
Dustin (F3) 652

Edmond \* (D3) 4,002  
Eldorado (B4) 929  
Elk City \* (B3) 5,021  
El Reno \* (D3) 10,078  
Enid \* (D2) 28,081  
Erick (B3) 1,591  
Eufaula (F3) 2,355

Fairfax (E2) 2,327  
Fairland (G2) 786  
Fairview (C2) 1,913  
Fletcher (C4) 789  
Fort Cobb (C3) 699  
Fort Gibson (F3) 1,233  
Fort Towson (F4) 501  
Frederick \* (B4) 5,109

Gage (B2) 681  
Garber City (D2) 1,086  
Geary (C3) 1,634  
Getcho (C3) 607  
Grandfield (C4) 1,116  
Granite (B4) 1,058  
Grove (G2) 1,093  
Guthrie \* (D3) 10,018  
Guymon (B5) 2,290

Haileyville (F4) 1,183  
Hammon (B3) 705  
Harrah (D3) 620  
Hartshorne \* (F4) 2,596  
Haskell (F3) 1,572  
Hcaldton (D4) 2,067  
Hcavener (G4) 2,215  
Helena (C2) 776  
Hennessey (D2) 1,342  
Henryetta \* (F3) 6,905  
Hinton (C3) 842  
Hobart \* (B3) 5,177  
Holdenville \* (E3) 6,632  
Hollis \* (B4) 2,732  
Hominy \* (E2) 3,267  
Hooker (C5) 1,146  
Howe (G4) 640  
Hugo \* (F5) 5,909  
Hydro (C3) 759

Idabel \* (G5) 3,689  
Jay (G2) 741

Jenks (F2) 1,026  
  
Kaw City (E2) 809  
Kellyville (E3) 647  
Keota (G3) 525  
Kingfisher \* (D3) 3,352  
Kiowa (F4) 802  
Konawa (E4) 2,205  
Krebs (F4) 1,436

Lamont (D2) 577  
Langston (D3) 514  
Laverne (B2) 816  
Lawton \* (C4) 18,055  
Lecley (B3) 574  
Lehigh (E4) 519  
Lexington (L3) 1,084  
Lindsay (D4) 1,792  
Locust Grove (F2) 545  
Lone Wolf (B4) 783

McAlester \* (F4) 12,401  
McCurran (G3) 870  
McLoud (D3) 616  
Madill \* (E4) 2,594  
Mangum \* (B4) 4,193  
Marietta (D5) 1,837  
Marlow \* (D4) 2,899  
Maud (E3) 2,036  
Maysville (D4) 880  
Medford (D2) 1,121  
Meeker (E3) 502  
Miami \* (G2) 8,345  
Minco (D3) 921  
Mooreland (B2) 811  
Morris (F3) 1,197  
Mounds (E3) 627  
Mountain View (C3) 1,075  
Muldrow (G3) 638  
Muskogee \* (F3) 32,332

Newkirk (D2) 2,283  
Noble (D3) 536  
Norman \* (D3) 11,429  
Nowata \* (F2) 3,904

Oilton (E2) 1,225  
Okeene (C2) 1,079  
Okemah \* (E3) 3,811  
Oklahoma City \* (D3) 204,424  
Okmulgee \* (F3) 16,051  
Olustee (B4) 570  
Osage City (E2) 628

Paden (E3) 620  
Panama (G3) 880  
Pauls Valley \* (D4) 5,104  
Pawhuska \* (F2) 5,443  
Pawnee \* (E2) 2,742  
Perkins (D3) 728  
Perry \* (D2) 5,045  
Picher \* (G2) 5,848  
Pittsburg (F4) 689  
Ponca City \* (D2) 16,794  
Pond Creek (D2) 1,019  
Porter (F3) 562  
Porum (F3) 502  
Poteau \* (G3) 4,020  
Prague (E3) 1,422  
Purcell \* (D3) 3,116

Quapaw (G2) 1,054  
Quinton (F3) 1,245  
Ralston (E2) 621

Ramona (F2) 574  
Ringling (D4) 902  
Roff (E4) 705  
Roosevelt (B4) 744  
Rush Springs (D4) 1,422  
Ryan (D4) 1,115

Salina (F2) 687  
Sallisaw (G3) 2,140  
Sand Springs \* (E2) 6,137  
Sapulpa \* (E3) 12,249  
Sasakwa (E4) 532  
Sayre \* (B3) 3,037  
Seiling (C2) 629  
Seminole \* (E3) 11,547  
Sentinel (B3) 1,088  
Shattuck (B2) 1,275  
Shawnee \* (E3) 22,053  
Shidler (E2) 718  
Skiatook (F2) 1,496  
Snyder (C4) 1,278  
Spiro (G3) 1,041  
Stigler (F3) 1,861  
Stillwater \* (D2) 10,097  
Stillwell (G3) 1,717  
Stonewall (E4) 761  
Stratford (E4) 896  
Stringtown (F4) 718  
Stroud (E3) 1,917  
Sulphur \* (E4) 4,970

Taft (F3) 772  
Tahlequah \* (G3) 3,027  
Tahmina (F4) 1,057  
Tecomseh (E3) 2,042  
Temple (C4) 1,313  
Terral (D4) 521  
Texhoma \* (B5) 577  
Thomas (C3) 1,220  
Tipton (B4) 1,470  
Tishomingo (E4) 1,951  
Tonkawa \* (D2) 3,197  
Tulsa \* (F2) 142,157  
Tuttle (D3) 940

Valliant (F4) 551  
Verden (C3) 575  
Vian (G3) 941  
Vici (B2) 617  
Vinita \* (F2) 5,685

Wagoner \* (F3) 3,535  
Walters (C4) 2,238  
Wapanucka (E4) 730  
Watonga \* (C3) 2,821  
Waurika (D4) 2,451  
Waynoka (C2) 1,584  
Weatherford \* (C3) 2,504  
Weleetka (E3) 1,904  
Wellston (D3) 607  
Westville (G2) 716  
Wetumka (E3) 2,340  
Wewoka \* (E3) 10,315  
Wilburton (F4) 1,925  
Wilson (D4) 1,700  
Wister (G4) 763  
Woodward \* (B2) 5,406  
Wynnewood (D4) 2,318  
Wynona (E2) 810

Yale (E2) 1,407  
Yukon (D3) 1,660

\* Population of Texhoma town, Sherman County, Texas in 1940.

---

# **The HISTORY of OREGON**

## **Reading Unit No. 36**

---

### **OREGON: THE BEAVER STATE**

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

#### ***Interesting Facts Explained***

Mt. Hood, Oregon's beautiful mountain, 8-325  
The first white man to come to Oregon, 8-326  
When the high seas were opened to American traders, 8-326  
How Astoria got its name, 8-326  
The meaning of "Fifty-four forty or fight," 8-327  
The Indians in Oregon, 8-327

How the Chinooks gave their name to a warm, dry wind, 8-327  
When gold was found in Oregon, 8-328  
Why the early settlers turned to farming, 8-328  
Where horses run wild, 8-329  
Why Portland is a very important city, 8-330

#### ***Things to Think About***

How does the beauty of America differ from that of England or the Continent?  
How varied is the scenery and climate of Oregon?  
What is the "Inland Empire"?  
When did the question of the boundary between Canada and the United States become acute?

Why did the Hudson Bay Company discourage settlement in the Northwest?  
Why were the Yakonans and Chinooks known as "Flathead Indians"?  
By what route is Oregon lumber now taken east?  
The expedition of Lewis and Clark.

#### ***Related Material***

The story of the salmon, 3-245-50  
What little animals belong to the squirrel tribe? 4-364-73  
How do the beavers make their lodges? 4-373-76  
What rival fur-trading companies wanted to control the Oregon country? 7-231  
Why are the salmon protected by law? 8-14  
What ruins make the Rhine espe-

cially romantic? 10-356  
One flag from ocean to ocean, 7-231-39  
Who was the bravest of the sea dogs? 12-404-5  
How is rainfall measured? 1-254  
How has man learned to outwit Nature? 1-254  
What does the name "Chinook" mean? 1-231

#### ***Leisure-time Activities***

PROJECT NO. 1: Make a list of the Indian tribes which settled in Oregon, 8-327-28.

PROJECT NO. 2: Read Theodore Roosevelt's "Winning of the West."

---

## THE HISTORY OF OREGON

---



Photo from Frederic Lewis

There are still alive to-day a few of the pioneers who settled in the Oregon country after a perilous trek in oxcart or prairie wagon across the Great Plains—or after a long and trying sea voyage around the Horn. These brave people have seen a vast wilderness be-

come a thriving state dotted with important cities. Their manufactures and farming products are known throughout the nation. All this achievement is shadowed forth in the new state capital at Salem—a building of grace and dignity and power.

### OREGON: *the* BEAVER STATE

*Holding to a Sound Prosperity on the One Hand and to a Fine Sense of the Beautiful on the Other, Oregon Is Leading the Way in Working Out a Balanced Way of Life for the American People.*

**T**HERE is probably no country in the world more interesting to live in than the United States is to-day. There are a number of reasons for this, but one is to be found in the fact that this land of ours is passing through a good many different stages of development all at the same time. That is because parts of it are new and parts are old. In eastern states like New York and Virginia—in the Hudson River Valley and the valley of the James—we may visit regions with a history that goes back three hundred years. There, and in New England, and in many other places along the eastern seaboard, one finds that gentle, persuasive charm which belongs to all old places where a great many people have lived for a long time and where a great deal has happened.

The land shows that it has been loved and tended for many generations, and the towns, no matter how busy, have spots that tell wistfully of the past. In beauty of this sort the magnificent valley of the Hudson suggests the still more ancient charm of the English Thames (tēmz) or the German Rhine.

But the United States has a beauty of still a different kind—one which is hard to find in the older countries of Europe. It is the bold, romantic, rugged beauty of such wildernesses as the Rocky Mountains or the great deserts of the Southwest. There civilization is new, and man, though he is tolerated by Nature, has never succeeded in taming her. Those are places that people seek out when they want to escape from the pressure of life, for in those vast spaces the world of

## THE HISTORY OF OREGON

men and all its pettiness can be left behind.

Now in between these two extremes of civilization and wilderness there lie many stages of industrial development, all of them interesting and important to our national life. And in the states along the Pacific coast one gets the whole range within the compass of a few hundred square miles.

California, for instance, has a history going back to the days of the Spanish conquest of the New World, and all three Pacific states have untouched wilds within sight of fields so lush and villages so charming that very little in the way of cultivation remains to be done.

A striking example of this variety is to be found in Oregon. Here are the busy cities of the East aglow with all the romantic freedom of the West. They are beautiful and energetic and exciting, like the beautiful and interesting state of which they form a part. For this is one of the states that is

most amazing in its variety. The southeast is largely desert, a part of the Great Basin, which we have described in our story of Nevada. Here there are places that get only two inches of rain a year. The surface is uneven, with a good many north-and-south ranges, many of them a result of faulting—that is, the rocks along one side of a great crack in the earth's surface have been lifted up, and the mountains that were born in this way have a very steep face toward the east and a long, gentle incline on their western side. A good many ranges in the Rockies have been made in this way; the same process produced the Sierra Nevadas.

Over the entire surface of this section lies a layer of dust and volcanic ash, which blows about in every strong wind that moves over it, just as it does in the "dust bowls" farther east. And like those other dust bowls, this region is being slowly stripped of a layer of very rich and fertile soil, containing minerals of great value to plant life and lacking only

water to make it immensely fertile. The few rivers flow only after a rain, and then wander slowly into small salty lakes or shallow mud flats. In the northeastern part of the state the Blue Mountains form the center of a somewhat less barren region, and here there is more life and greater prosperity, especially along the river.

Anyone who has read our story of Nevada will look at once for mountains to the west of this arid region in eastern Oregon—and mountains he will find! As a matter of fact, they are the glory of the state. Toward the southern part of Oregon they seem to

form only one range, a very wide and confused mass known as the Klamath (klām'āth) Mountains. To the north, the Klamath Range divides into two ranges, the Coast Range and the Cascade Range, named for the fine cascades that come tumbling down its sides. The Coast Range is very old and well worn down. It never reaches a height of even 5,000 feet. In general it runs fairly close to the shore of the Pacific, without any great change of direction.

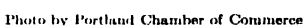
The Cascade Range lies about a hundred miles inland, and is much more impressive. Many of its peaks are ancient volcanoes which are no longer active, the same vol-



Oregon has a fine school system and is justly proud of the number of her young people who have graduated from high school and gone on to colleges and universities. Above is a view of the Administration Building of the University of Oregon, at Eugene.



1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 50 51 52 53 54 55 56 57 58 59 60 61 62 63 64 65 66 67 68 69 70 71 72 73 74 75 76 77 78 79 80 81 82 83 84 85 86 87 88 89 90 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 99 100 101 102 103 104 105 106 107 108 109 110 111 112 113 114 115 116 117 118 119 120 121 122 123 124 125 126 127 128 129 130 131 132 133 134 135 136 137 138 139 140 141 142 143 144 145 146 147 148 149 150 151 152 153 154 155 156 157 158 159 160 161 162 163 164 165 166 167 168 169 170 171 172 173 174 175 176 177 178 179 180 181 182 183 184 185 186 187 188 189 190 191 192 193 194 195 196 197 198 199 200 201 202 203 204 205 206 207 208 209 210 211 212 213 214 215 216 217 218 219 220 221 222 223 224 225 226 227 228 229 230 231 232 233 234 235 236 237 238 239 240 241 242 243 244 245 246 247 248 249 250 251 252 253 254 255 256 257 258 259 260 261 262 263 264 265 266 267 268 269 270 271 272 273 274 275 276 277 278 279 280 281 282 283 284 285 286 287 288 289 290 291 292 293 294 295 296 297 298 299 300 301 302 303 304 305 306 307 308 309 310 311 312 313 314 315 316 317 318 319 320 321 322 323 324 325 326 327 328 329 330 331 332 333 334 335 336 337 338 339 340 341 342 343 344 345 346 347 348 349 350 351 352 353 354 355 356 357 358 359 360 361 362 363 364 365 366 367 368 369 370 371 372 373 374 375 376 377 378 379 380 381 382 383 384 385 386 387 388 389 390 391 392 393 394 395 396 397 398 399 400 401 402 403 404 405 406 407 408 409 410 411 412 413 414 415 416 417 418 419 420 421 422 423 424 425 426 427 428 429 430 431 432 433 434 435 436 437 438 439 440 441 442 443 444 445 446 447 448 449 450 451 452 453 454 455 456 457 458 459 460 461 462 463 464 465 466 467 468 469 470 471 472 473 474 475 476 477 478 479 480 481 482 483 484 485 486 487 488 489 490 491 492 493 494 495 496 497 498 499 500 501 502 503 504 505 506 507 508 509 510 511 512 513 514 515 516 517 518 519 520 521 522 523 524 525 526 527 528 529 530 531 532 533 534 535 536 537 538 539 540 541 542 543 544 545 546 547 548 549 550 551 552 553 554 555 556 557 558 559 560 561 562 563 564 565 566 567 568 569 570 571 572 573 574 575 576 577 578 579 580 581 582 583 584 585 586 587 588 589 590 591 592 593 594 595 596 597 598 599 600 601 602 603 604 605 606 607 608 609 610 611 612 613 614 615 616 617 618 619 620 621 622 623 624 625 626 627 628 629 630 631 632 633 634 635 636 637 638 639 640 641 642 643 644 645 646 647 648 649 650 651 652 653 654 655 656 657 658 659 660 661 662 663 664 665 666 667 668 669 670 671 672 673 674 675 676 677 678 679 680 681 682 683 684 685 686 687 688 689 690 691 692 693 694 695 696 697 698 699 700 701 702 703 704 705 706 707 708 709 710 711 712 713 714 715 716 717 718 719 720 721 722 723 724 725 726 727 728 729 730 731 732 733 734 735 736 737 738 739 740 741 742 743 744 745 746 747 748 749 750 751 752 753 754 755 756 757 758 759 760 761 762 763 764 765 766 767 768 769 770 771 772 773 774 775 776 777 778 779 780 781 782 783 784 785 786 787 788 789 790 791 792 793 794 795 796 797 798 799 800 801 802 803 804 805 806 807 808 809 810 811 812 813 814 815 816 817 818 819 820 821 822 823 824 825 826 827 828 829 830 831 832 833 834 835 836 837 838 839 840 841 842 843 844 845 846 847 848 849 850 851 852 853 854 855 856 857 858 859 860 861 862 863 864 865 866 867 868 869 870 871 872 873 874 875 876 877 878 879 880 881 882 883 884 885 886 887 888 889 890 891 892 893 894 895 896 897 898 899 900 901 902 903 904 905 906 907 908 909 910 911 912 913 914 915 916 917 918 919 920 921 922 923 924 925 926 927 928 929 930 931 932 933 934 935 936 937 938 939 940 941 942 943 944 945 946 947 948 949 950 951 952 953 954 955 956 957 958 959 960 961 962 963 964 965 966 967 968 969 970 971 972 973 974 975 976 977 978 979 980 981 982 983 984 985 986 987 988 989 990 991 992 993 994 995 996 997 998 999 1000 1001 1002 1003 1004 1005 1006 1007 1008 1009 1010 1011 1012 1013 1014 1015 1016 1017 1018 1019 1020 1021 1022 1023 1024 1025 1026 1027 1028 1029 1030 1031 1032 1033 1034 1035 1036 1037 1038 1039 1040 1



ago they were busy pouring lava and ash over the countryside that they now ornament. Mount Hood, shown in the picture, is fifty miles from Portland. Its peak, white with perpetual snow, rises to a height of 11,253 feet. Like other volcanoes it is very graceful in outline and in proportion.

mountains to the east of it bring down the moisture from the winds blowing in from the Pacific, and send it in rivers down to the valley, which in this way is well watered—a very paradise of green.

Oregon is blessed with many rivers, of which the most important are the Columbia, with its tributaries—the Deschutes (dā'-shōōt'), John Day, Willamette, and Umatilla (ū'mā-tīl'ā)—and the Snake, with its tributaries—the Owyhee (ō-wī'hē), Malheur (mā-lōor'), Burnt, Powder, and Grande Ronde (gränd'rōnd'). The Columbia in particular is a noble stream, which carries traffic all the way from the Idaho line to the sea. It leads straight into the heart of what is known as the "Inland Empire," a fertile region in eastern Washington, eastern Oregon, and northern Idaho. The Snake River too can be navigated. All these streams give Oregon reserves of water power equaled by few other states. We have spoken of the great dam at Bonneville in our story of Washington.

Between the Coast and the Cascade Ranges runs a famous valley some two hundred miles long and about thirty miles wide. It takes its name from the Willamette (wĭ-lăm'ët) River, which runs its full length. As we should expect, the lofty summits of those

## THE HISTORY OF OREGON

The first white man to come to Oregon was probably a Spaniard, Bartolome Ferrelo (bär-tō'lō-mā fēr-rā'lō), who came sailing up the coast during the year 1543. Other explorers touched the region later, among them Sir Francis Drake (1579). But none of the early explorers seem to have done much more than visit the extreme southwestern tip of the state before turning back in fear or discouragement. In 1775 the Spaniards formally took possession, just at the time of the American Revolution. At first glance it would seem unlikely that the turn of events in the East could have had much to do with Oregon. Americans did not even know that such a place existed. Yet the Revolution had an important effect

on that far western land. For it opened up the high seas to American traders, and encouraged them to go wherever they pleased.

### John Jacob Astor's Company

Naturally it was not long before American ships were sailing up the coast to Oregon to trade with the Indians for beaver skins, and then taking the beaver skins to China and Japan, to trade them for the products of the Orient. In 1791 an American merchant, Captain Robert Gray, discovered the Columbia River and gave it its name; and Lewis and Clark came down the Columbia in 1805 and 1806, exploring the territory as they came. In 1811 the famous American Fur Company, then under the direction of its founder, John Jacob Astor, founded the first American settlement at the mouth of the great river, and called it Astoria.

But meanwhile the English had not been blind to the riches of Oregon. During the

war of 1812 they sent troops down to the Columbia River and took possession of Astoria, renaming the post Fort George. When the war was over, the question of the boundary between Canada and the United States became acute. The United States

offered to draw the boundary line where it now stands at the forty-ninth parallel—but England refused. And so, in 1818, a compromise was reached by which both countries occupied this northwestern region together, and put off a final decision as to the boundary until the future.

Now it was the policy of the Hudson Bay Company, which controlled the fur trade of the Northwest, to discourage settlement, in order to maintain these

lands as a vast preserve for trapping beaver. The policy worked well enough—Oregon is still known as the Beaver State, so famous were her pelts—but there was one little slip. American settlers were free to enter the state, and enter they did, to settle up and down the inviting Willamette Valley. To the eternal honor of the English traders, and especially of the English governor, Dr. John McLoughlin—"the Father of Oregon"—it must be said that they not only did nothing to discourage American settlers, but often helped and encouraged them, even though it was against English interests. Soon there were many more Americans than English in Oregon, and the time seemed ripe for a permanent peaceful settlement of the Oregon question.

### "Fifty-four Forty or Fight!"

As soon as a national issue was made out of the question, a great many politicians saw their chance to make a reputation. Then there was a great beating of drums and blow-



Photo by the United States Department of Agriculture

These rows of Logan blackberries are growing in the Willamette Valley, where so much of Oregon's famous fruit is raised.

## THE HISTORY OF OREGON



Photo by Portland Chamber of Commerce

**Dairying is another of Oregon's important concerns. This herd of Holstein cattle is grazing on a ranch that**

**lies in one of those small but very fertile valleys that cut the coast of the state.**

ing of bugles. It suddenly became a matter of national honor that the United States should receive all the land of the Northwest, as far as Alaska. "Fifty-four forty or fight" was the slogan, meaning that the United States was ready to fight for all the land south of the parallel of 54 degrees, 40 minutes. But when the politicians were swept into office on this platform, they soon found it wiser to settle the question peaceably, and in 1846 the present boundary line was set. The rush of settlers was immediate, helped as it was by the California gold rush, and in 1848 Oregon was organized as a territory. The first immigrant train arrived over the famous Oregon Trail in 1842. In 1853 the northern part of the territory, the present state of Washington, was cut off, and in 1859, Oregon became a state.

### Oregon's Indian Tribes

The Indians never gave the trouble in Oregon that they gave in certain other states. A number of the great Indian groups—classified on the basis of language—were represented here. The tall, well-formed, but coarse-featured people of the Shoshonean (shō-shō'nē-ān) and Shahaptian (shā-hāp'ti-ān) families lived in the eastern part of the state. The Shahaptians were represented by such tribes as the Nez Percé (nā' pēr'sā'), the Umatillas, the Walla Wallas, and the Kli-

kitats (klīk'ī-tāt), who at one time crowded certain tribes of the Kaloopian family out of the Willamette Valley. The Shahaptians occupied the upper reaches of the Columbia River, as far as the point where the city of The Dalles (dālz) now stands. There they often had dealings with the Chinooks (chī-nōk'), a group of Indians who controlled the river's mouth and had wide dealings with the whites. Their name has been given to a queer jargon—a mixture of their own tongue with a large number of English, Spanish, and French words. It was in general use for trading all up and down the coast and well inland.

### What Is the "Chinook"?

The Chinooks also gave their name to the warm dry wind that makes its way down the eastern slopes of the Cascade Range and other mountains farther inland. It has lost its moisture in climbing the Cascades, but it still holds much of the heat it picked up from the waters of the Pacific, and so makes fruit raising possible in eastern Oregon, Idaho, and even in western Montana. West of the Cascades the climate is moist, and so mild that the thermometer rarely goes down to freezing. Flowers never stop blooming in Portland. East of the mountains the air is very dry and the extremes of temperature much greater.

## THE HISTORY OF OREGON

In southern Oregon, along the coast and a little inland, was a branch of the Athapascans (ăth'ă-păs'kăn); the Kootenays (kōō-tē-nā) were among them. And inland were two fierce tribes—the Klamath (klä'măt) and Modoc (mō'dōk) Indians—that centered around Klamath Lake and belonged to what is known as the Lutuamian (lōō'tōō-ăm'ī-ăn) family. The Modocs made a business of capturing members of certain weaker tribes in northern California and selling them as slaves to the various Indians that came to The Dalles to trade. The Klamaths gathered the seeds of water lilies growing in Klamath Lake and used them for food.

A number of Indian groups lived along the central and northern Oregon coast, among them the Yakonans (yă-kō-năn), who, together with the Chinooks and other peoples to the north, had the practice of flattening their babies' heads in front until the skulls were permanently deformed. For this reason they were known as "Flathead Indians."

### When Gold Was Discovered

Like most western states, Oregon was explored for her furs but settled for her minerals. Gold strikes, especially the strike of 1861, along the John Day and Powder rivers in the northeastern part of the state, brought thousands of settlers thronging to Oregon, to share in the sudden wealth. For a time Oregon mined a good deal of gold and silver, and later, after the opening of the railroads, of copper, lead, and zinc as well. For lead, zinc, and silver are found together. In 1902

gold and silver production stood at about \$1,828,000 for gold and \$58,000 for silver. Lead and zinc were not even worth as much as silver. So, all together, Oregon's mineral production has never really entitled her to high rank among the mining states.

But Oregon has not even kept the position

she once had in mining. To-day stone is the most valuable of all her mineral products; and while some of her volcanic "tuff," in the eastern plains, is very fine building stone—light in weight, easily worked, and durable—it is not the sort of product to make her rich. Clay and clay products are next to stone in value, and are followed by mercury, chromite, and gold. Antimony, zinc, copper, and lead are produced in tiny quantities. But all in all, Oregon, in spite of the fact that she has ample stores of iron, coal, and other important minerals, is not and

never has been a great mining state. The settlers who came to seek gold were compelled to turn to something else. And the fact that they did so is the reason for Oregon's present prosperity.

The first thing the settlers of Oregon turned to was farming. The dry land to the east of the Cascades is used chiefly for grazing live stock, except in the valley of the Columbia River in the northeast and in other places where irrigation has created the great wheat fields of Oregon. For Oregon is one of the famous wheat-growing regions of the world. Cattle, sheep, and horses are the most important live stock which Oregon raises to-day. But she does not rank high among the states in any of them. Cattle are by all odds the



Photo by Portland Chamber of Commerce

Centering in Astoria, at the mouth of the Columbia River, are some of the world's greatest salmon fisheries. Here every year, when the salmon begin their strange migration into fresh waters, thousands of cases of the fish are packed. Of course the government keeps a watchful eye on the industry, for only a certain number of fish may be taken. The rest must be allowed to climb the great river to spawn.

## THE HISTORY OF OREGON



Photo by the American Lumberman

More than twenty varieties of valuable trees grow in Oregon's truly magnificent forests. Above is a view

of a modern logging camp near Bond. It must look like paradise to the lumberjacks of early days.

most valuable to her. In fact they are worth five times as much as sheep, horses, and hogs put together. She usually ranks third or fourth among the states in the value of her turkeys. Many of her horses run wild in the valleys and deserts of the eastern part of the state, and are caught and sold when fully grown. Beef cattle, too, are raised in the east, but dairying is carried on in the fertile land west of the Cascade Range. Oregon manufactures a great deal of cheese, and sells it, together with butter and eggs and chickens, to the people who live in the cities all along the Pacific coast.

### Thanks to Irrigation!

As we have said, Oregon is one of the great wheat-growing regions of the world. It is mostly irrigation which makes this crop possible. Dry farming is sometimes successful in the flat, volcanic lands between the Blue Mountains and the Cascades. It has been declining of late years, under the influence of drought and low farm prices, and the farmers who practiced it have suffered. But irrigation has gone steadily ahead, and Oregon weathered the farm depression of the twenties more successfully than other states did. Dams in the Owyhee and Columbia rivers have extended the irrigation system

greatly, and make the perils of dry farming unnecessary. After wheat, the products of Oregon are extremely varied. Hay, hops, potatoes, oats, corn, and barley, all are important and valuable, and the average yield of corn is very high. But the crop for which Oregon is nationally famous is her fruit. Her apples have long been valuable and of excellent quality. Plums, prunes, peaches, pears, cherries, grapes, and strawberries she raises in large quantities. She and Washington supply the country's output of filberts and she and California its walnuts. Hardly another state produces fruits of such variety and excellence as Oregon. They grow in all the western valleys—along the Willamette, the Rogue, and the Hood rivers—and in the sheltered valleys of the Blue Mountains.

### A Fifth of the Nation's Timber!

Another industry to which the disappointed gold hunters of Oregon turned was lumbering. In 1933 Oregon produced more than two and a quarter *billion* board feet of timber—much of it the finest fir, hemlock, cedar, and pine. Such a figure is quite unbelievable; it is like the figures in which we measure the distance to the stars, so big we cannot understand what it means. Yet Oregon has been producing at least this much

---

## THE HISTORY OF OREGON

timber—occasionally as much as four and three-fourth billion feet—for twenty years now, and she still has a fifth of the nation's timber—the largest supply of standing timber of any state in the Union. How magnificent, then, the original generosity of Nature must have been! To-day a large part of this great output goes by way of the Panama Canal to the Atlantic seaboard or to Europe.

### Where the Salmon Run

Still another industry of Oregon lies in her wonderful fisheries along the Columbia River. Here the lordly salmon, which for most of the year live quietly in some undiscovered depths of the Pacific, swim up the river to lay their eggs in the headwaters of the Columbia. Led on by some mysterious instinct, they breast the current every year, undaunted by waterfalls or nets or natural enemies such as seals and otters. Nearly 16,000,000,000 pounds of fish were caught in 1933, and they were worth more than \$874,000,000. The salmon fisheries of Astoria are among the world's greatest, and Oregon salmon is known as a delicacy the world over. It is the most valuable product of the country's excellent fisheries. Salem is famous for canning it.

### "The Rose City"

Finally, as if all these superlatives were not enough, Oregon is one of the great manufacturing states of the Union, and has a manufactured output which is constantly growing. The leading industries center around the state's lumber yield, with the great city of Portland the outstanding industrial city. In it are gathered fully half of Oregon's manufactures. Almost everything that can be made of wood, from portable churches to shingles, is made in Portland. In addition, grain, meat, iron and steel, and woolen products are produced there, and as a seaport Portland is one of the most important in the entire country. She is seated on the Willamette, near the mouth of the Columbia, and receives by river and by rail the produce of the Inland Empire. Constant dredging of the Columbia River has had its effect, and

since the World War the commerce handled by Portland—the "Rose City"—has increased many times.

Other lumber-working cities of importance are Eugene, Klamath Falls, Baker, Corvallis (kōr-vāl'is), Oregon City, Marshfield, Astoria, and Salem, the capital. Most of these cities are centers of fruit and grain production as well. Melford, in the Klamath Mountains, is world-famous for the wonderful pears she grows and cans. Of course canneries for fruit, vegetables, and salmon flourish in many places. Astoria is famous all over the world as a port, as a lumber-working center, and, of course, for the enormous quantities of delicious salmon she catches and cans. Over 3,600 miles of railway and several ports, on the Columbia River and the seacoast to the south, keep Oregon in easy communication with every corner of the world.

### A Magnificent Record

Educationally, Oregon is one of the most advanced states in the nation. In 1930 only Iowa had a lower percentage of citizens who could not read and write, bettering Oregon's figure of 1 percent by just two-tenths of a percentage point. Oregon may well be proud of her brilliant and democratic school system. She has a number of good colleges and universities as well.

And so we must picture Oregon as a state moving at top speed, tremendously busy and rich and powerful, and at the same time exceedingly beautiful. That is one thing which makes her quite different from many of our other busy and powerful states. In some mysterious fashion she seems to have combined a true and delicate sense of the natural beauties of her surroundings with an energy and enthusiasm of which even the most highly industrialized state might be proud. It is a combination of qualities which is being watched everywhere with interest. The way of life of the whole United States may some day be modeled on the life which to-day is being worked out in the busy state of Oregon.

## OREGON

**AREA:** 96,981 square miles—9th in rank.

**LOCATION:** Oregon, one of the Pacific states, lies between 42° and 46° 18' N. Lat. and between 116° 33' and 124° 32' W. Long. It is bounded on the north by Washington, on the east by Idaho, on the south by Nevada and California, and on the west by the Pacific Ocean.

**PHYSICAL FEATURES:** The surface of Oregon falls naturally into two parts. North and south across the western third of the state stretch the Coast Range and the Cascade Range, with a fertile valley between them. In the south, in the region of the Rogue River, they merge into a great mountain mass known as the Klamath Mountains, which extend into California and in turn merge with the northern end of the Sierra Nevadas. The Coast Range, which has its crest about twenty miles back from the sea, runs parallel to the coast of Oregon, and sends out spurs that cross the sandy beaches and reach into the ocean, where they form small bays. The highest summit in the range is under 4,100 ft. The Cascade Range, named from its many waterfalls, is much higher. In it are Mount Hood (11,253 ft. high), the highest point in the state, and Mount Jefferson, Mount Adams, and the Three Sisters, all of them snow-capped peaks nearly as high as Mount Hood. Between the Coast Range and the Cascades is the fertile Willamette Valley, which reaches two-thirds of the way down the state from the northern border. A number of small streams have cut their way through the Coast Range on their way to the sea—the Rogue (220 m. long), Coquille, Umpqua (200 m. long), and Nehalem. The Willamette Valley is drained northward by the Willamette River (190 m. long), a tributary of the great Columbia River (1,214 m. long). The Columbia rises in Canada, and after making its way south and across Washington it turns to the west and forms a large part of the boundary between Washington and Oregon as it flows toward the Pacific.

East of the Cascades the surface of the state changes entirely in character. Here is a high plateau broken by a good many mountains and reaching elevations of 5,000 ft. Because the west winds lose much of their moisture when they climb the wall of the Cascade Range, this part of the state is for the most part very dry. In the northeast are the Blue Mountains, with an average elevation of 6,000 ft. The western part of this mountain group is drained into the Columbia by the John Day River (281 m. long) and its tributaries. The Umatilla drains the northwestern slopes of the Blue Mountains. A little west of the mouth of the John Day the Columbia receives the Deschutes (250 m. long), a stream that comes up from the south with waters gathered from the eastern slopes of the Cascades. The eastern part of the Blue Mountains and the region directly south of them is drained into the Snake River (1,038 m. long), which crosses Idaho from Wyoming and forms part of the boundary between Idaho and Oregon. From Oregon the Snake receives the Grande Ronde (175 m. long) and the Powder in the north and the Burnt and Malheur in the central part of the state. Oregon's dry southeastern corner—often called the Snake River Plains—is drained northward into the Snake by the Owyhee (250 m. long). Just east of the main chain of the Cascades in the southern part of the state is the beautiful valley of the Klamath River (250 m. long), which gathers the drainage from the eastern slopes of the southern Cascades and after flowing through Upper and Lower Klamath lakes makes its way through northern California to the Pacific. All the rest of south-central Oregon belongs to the Great Basin province of the United States, a desert region which has no outlet to the sea. Its level plain is broken by frequent short ranges of mountains, all of them lying north and south.

Across it wander listless rivers that either dry up in the dry season or empty into salt lakes that are likely to disappear and leave a layer of minerals spread out on the sand. In Oregon the plains between the mountain ranges are partly covered with lava and other volcanic material. In all, the state has about 16,000 square miles in the Great Basin, with the Steens Mountains the most important ridge in the region and Malheur, Harney, Albert, Warner, and Summer lakes the most important outlets for streams. Toward the center of the state the Basin region is so dry that a large section there is known as the Great Sandy Desert. East of the Steens Mountains is a mud flat called the Alvord Desert. In spring it becomes a shallow lake a foot or two deep and as much as sixty square miles in area, but when the rains cease the water dries up. Crater Lake, Oregon's most interesting lake, is described a little farther on. All together Oregon has 1,092 square miles of water and large tracts of irrigated land. The Columbia may be navigated for 400 miles from the sea, and the Snake River for about 200 miles between various points, though its usefulness depends upon the season. Canals make it possible to navigate the Willamette as far as Eugene. The average elevation of Oregon is 3,300 ft.

**CLIMATE:** Because the high crests of the western slopes of the Coast Range and the Cascade Mountains catch most of the moisture that the winds bring in from the Pacific, the western third of Oregon has a moist climate and a great deal of rain. The winds are warmed by their long journey over the sea, and so keep the state from suffering the extremes of temperature that are found in other northern states, such as Minnesota and the Dakotas. Along the coast, especially, the climate is always mild. The thermometer there never goes so low as zero nor so high as 100° F., and the rainfall is very heavy—it averages 138 inches a year. The Willamette Valley is a little warmer in summer and colder in winter, but even there the thermometer rarely goes below freezing. There is less rain than along the coast, especially in the southern part of the valley, where the average is 20 in. a year. Portland, at the northern end, has 45 in. a year. The mean January temperature at Portland is 39°, the mean July temperature 67°. The record high there is 104°, the record low -2°. East of the Cascades the extremes are much greater and the rainfall much lighter, on an average. Summer temperatures there are often very high and winter temperatures very low. Places in the Great Basin get as few as 2 in. of rain a year, but points in the Blue Mountains may have as much as 25 in. The Columbia River Valley in this part of the state has from 10 to 15 in. a year.

**INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING:** Cascade College at Portland, Lewis and Clark College at Portland, Linfield College at McMinnville, Marylhurst College at Marylhurst, Mt. Angel College and Seminary at St. Benedict, the University of Oregon at Eugene, Oregon State College at Corvallis, Pacific College at Newberg, Pacific University at Forest Grove, the University of Portland at Portland, Reed College at Portland, and Willamette University at Salem. There are a number of state normal schools.

**CHARITIES AND CORRECTION:** Oregon has a school for the blind and a school for the deaf at Salem, a trades school for the blind at Portland, an industrial school for girls at Salem, a training school for boys at Woodburn, tuberculosis hospitals at Salem and The Dalles, other state hospitals at Pendleton and Salem, and a school for the feeble-minded at Salem. The state penitentiary is at Salem. Capital punishment has been abolished.

**POLITICAL FACTS:** Oregon is governed under her original constitution of 1857, which has been amended

## OREGON—Continued

in many important ways. The laws are made by a legislature meeting in January in alternate years and consisting of two houses: a Senate made up of thirty members elected for four years, and a House of Representatives made up of sixty members elected for two years. Members of the legislature must be at least twenty-one years of age and must have lived in the state at least a year.

The executive branch is headed by the governor, who must be at least thirty years of age and must have been a resident of the state for at least three years preceding his election. He is elected for four years, and may hold office for no more than eight years out of any twelve. The secretary of state and the treasurer are also elected for four years, and may not serve two consecutive terms.

The judiciary is headed by a supreme court made up of a chief justice and six associate justices, all elected for six years. A circuit judge holds court twice a year in each one of the counties in the judicial district which he has been elected to preside over. In addition each county elects a county judge to preside for six years over a county court, which tries certain criminal and civil cases and serves as a court of probate—that is, it sees that wills are properly carried out. A criminal case is one which involves a violation of some law passed to protect from injury either the individual citizen or the community at large. A civil case relates to the private rights of an individual or individuals in the community, and does not involve criminal proceedings.

Voters must be United States citizens at least twenty-one years old and must have lived in the state for six months preceding the election.

Municipalities may exercise the power of initiative, referendum, and recall. All campaign expenses in the state are strictly regulated. An industrial welfare commission has control of employment and workmen's compensation.

The capital of Oregon is at Salem.

**PARKS:** Crater Lake National Park is in the southern part of Oregon, high in the Cascade Range. The lake, which is more than 6,000 ft. above sea level, was formed by the accumulation of waters in a vast crater caused by the collapse of a great volcano in prehistoric times. In places it is some two thousand feet deep, with lava cliffs towering as high as two thousand feet above it.

**MONUMENTS:** Oregon Caves National Monument in Josephine County contains remarkable galleries extending for many miles and not yet fully explored.

Oregon has 17,311,036 acres of national forest.

**GAME AND BIRD RESERVATIONS:** Cold Springs National Wildlife Refuge in Umatilla County, Lower Klamath Refuge in Klamath County—and extending into California—McKay Creek Refuge in Umatilla County, Oregon Islands Refuge in Curry County, Thief Valley Refuge in Baker and Union counties, and Upper Klamath Refuge in Klamath County protect a great variety of birds—the white-fronted goose, cackling goose, pintail, mallard, gadwall, redhead, ruddy duck, California quail, sandhill crane, shoveller, and other waterfowl and shorebirds.

Cape Meares Refuge in Tillamook County protects shorebirds, band-tailed pigeons, and black-tailed deer. The Charles Sheldon Antelope Range in Lake County and extending into Nevada—protects antelope, mule deer, sage hens, and waterfowl. The Hart Mountain National Antelope Refuge, covering 226,891 acres in Lake County, protects antelope, mule deer, sage hens, and valley quail. Malheur Refuge, covering 174,366 acres in Harney County, protects the whistling swan, snow goose, white-fronted goose, pintail, sage hen,

valley quail, sandhill crane, white pelican, shore-birds, antelope, and mule deer. Three Arch Rocks Refuge in Tillamook County protects cormorants, gulls, murrelets, puffins, and sea lions.

Oregon has, all told, 477,325 acres in national preserves and protects many rare birds and mammals.

**NAME:** Oregon's name was first applied to the Columbia River, and then to a vast territory having no definite boundaries and known in general as the "countries of the Columbia." When part of the region was organized as a territory it was called the Territory of Oregon, and when it gained statehood, it kept the name. The word was first used by Jonathan Carver in a treatise on the "interior parts of North America," published in London in 1778, and was perhaps a corruption of "Ouragon" or "Ourigan," a term used by Major Robert Rogers, the English commandant of a trading post in Michigan at the time of Carver's journey. Major Rogers may have had the word from French-Canadians, but it is more probable that he had learned it from the Sioux Indians. William Cullen Bryant, in his poem "Thanatopsis," did much to popularize the name. It is not certain just what the word meant. It may be a corruption of the French word "ouragan," meaning "windstorm," "hurricane," or "tornado"—for the river was thought to flow through a region frequently visited by tornadoes. Or it may have come from a Shoshone Indian expression, "ogwa pe-on," meaning "river of the west"—the same expression may be interpreted "undulating water." The Shoshone language also has the phrase "oyer-ungon," meaning "place of plenty." Another theory suggests that the word "Oregon" may have come from the Spanish word "orejones," meaning "big ears"—a term that could well have been applied by the Spaniards to the Indian tribes whose warriors enlarged their ears by "loads of ornaments."

**NICKNAMES:** Oregon is called the Beaver State, not only because it formerly produced a large number of beaver skins but also with an implied reference to the industry of its inhabitants. The hardness of its early settlers gave it the title of the Hard-case State, but it is more commonly called the Web-foot State—a reference to its abundant rainfall, which is highly acceptable to web-footed creatures.

The people of Oregon are called Web-feet and Beavers.

**STATE FLOWER:** Oregon grape (*Berberis aquifolium*); adopted in 1899.

**STATE SONG:** "Oregon, My Oregon," with words by J. A. Buchanan and music by Henry B. Murtagh; officially adopted in 1927.

**STATE FLAG:** A navy blue field upon one side of which is the state escutcheon supported by thirty-three gold stars; above the escutcheon are the words "State of Oregon" in gold letters, and below the escutcheon the date "1859." On the reverse side of the flag is the representation of a beaver in gold.

**STATE MOTTO:** The state seal bears the words "The Union," but "Alis Volat Propriis"—meaning "She flies with her own wings"—was the motto of the Territory of Oregon and is generally considered to be the motto of the state.

**STATE BIRD:** Western meadow lark; chosen in 1927 by a vote of the school children and in the same year proclaimed the state bird by the governor of Oregon.

**INTERESTING FACTS:** Oregon observes New Year's Day, Lincoln's Birthday, Washington's Birthday, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Columbus Day, Election Day, Armistice Day, Thanksgiving Day, and Christmas Day.



# OREGON—Continued

Oregon has the following Indian reservations: Fort McDermitt, Klamath, Grande Ronde, Siletz, Umatilla, and Warm Springs. On them, and on certain public lands, live members of the Klamath, Modoc, Paiute, Pit River, Calapooya, Chastacosta, Chepenafa, Chero-

kee, Clackamas, Galice Creek, Joshua, Kus, Meguenedon, Rogue River, Tututni, Umpqua, Umatilla, Cayuse, Walla Walla, Tenino, or Warm Springs, and Wasco tribes.

Population of state, 1940, 1,089,684									
Counties									
Baker (H3)	18,297	Baker * (H3)	9,342	Halfway (H3)	416	Oregon City *			
Benton (B3)	18,629	Bandon (A4)	1,004	Halsey (B1)	305	(C2)	6,124		
		Banks (B2)	247	Hammond (B1)	422	Oswego (C2)	1,726		
		Bay City (B2)	379	Harrisburg (B3)	622				
		Beaverton (C2)	1,052	Heppner (F2)	1,140	Paisley (E5)	237		
		Bend * (D3)	10,021	Hermiston (F2)	803	Pendleton * (G2)	8,847		
		Bonanza (D5)	233	Hill-boro * (C2)	3,747	Philomath (B3)	856		
		Brownsville (C3)	784	Hood River *		Phoenix (C5)	432		
		Burns * (F4)	2,566	(D2)	3,280	Pilot Rock (G2)	358		
		Butte Falls (C5)	339	Hubbard (C2)	387	Portland * (C2)	305,394		
				Huntington (H3)	741	Port Orford (A5)	755		
		Canby (C2)	988			Prairie City			
		Canyon City		Independence		(G3)	647		
		(G3)	312	(B3)	1,372	Prineville (E3)	2,358		
		Canyonville (B5)	255	Ione (F2)	262				
		Carlton (B2)	864			Rainier (C1)	1,183		
		Cascade Locks		Jacksonville (C5)	761	Redmond (D3)	1,876		
		(D2)	701	Jefferson (C3)	479	Reedsport (A4)	1,421		
		Central Point		John Day (G3)	708	Richland (H3)	254		
		(C5)	906	Jordan Valley		Rogue River			
		Clatskanie (B1)	708	(H5)	274	(B5)	383		
		Coburg (B1)	456	Joseph (H2)	593	Roseburg * (B4)	4,924		
		Columbia City		Junction City					
		(C2)	327	(B3)	1,187	St. Helens * (C2)	4,304		
		Condon (E2)	856			Salem * (B3)	30,908		
		Coquille * (A4)	3,327	Klamath Falls		Sandy (C2)	473		
		Cornelius (B2)	637	(D5)	16,497	Scappoose (C2)	336		
		Cornucopia (H2)	355			Scio (C3)	351		
		Corvallis * (B3)	8,392	Lafayette (B2)	409	Scotts Mills (C2)	227		
		Cottage Grove *		La Grande (G2)	7,747	Seaside * (B1)	2,902		
		(B4)	2,626	Lakeview (E5)	2,466	Sheridan (B2)	1,294		
		Cove (H2)	321	Lebanon * (C3)	2,729	Sherwood (C2)	447		
		Creswell (B4)	497	Lexington (F2)	223	Silverton * (C3)	2,925		
				Long Creek (F3)	238	Springfield *			
		Dallas * (B3)	3,579	Lostine (H2)	204	(B3)	3,805		
		Dayton (B2)	506			Stanfield (F2)	241		
		Drain (B4)	597	McMinnville *		Stayton (C3)	1,085		
		Dufur (D2)	392	(B2)	3,706	Sublimity (C3)	280		
		Dundee (B2)	209	Madras (D3)	412	Sumpter (G3)	420		
				Marshfield * (A4)	5,259	Sutherlin (B4)	525		
		Eagle Point (C5)	243	Maupin (D2)	267	Sweet Home (C3)	1,090		
		Eastside (A4)	638	Medford * (C3)	11,281				
		Echo (F2)	280	Merrill (D5)	648	Talent (C5)	381		
		Elgin (H2)	997	Milton (G2)	1,744	The Dalles *			
		Empire (A4)	665	Milwaukie (C2)	1,871	(D2)	6,266		
		Enterprise (H2)	1,709	Mitchell (E3)	219	Tillamook * (B2)	2,751		
		Estacada (C2)	526	Molalla (C2)	907	Toledo (B3)	2,288		
		Eugene * (B3)	20,838	Monmouth (B3)	965	Troutdale (C2)	211		
				Monroe (B3)	311	Turner (C3)	414		
		Fairview (C2)	305	Moro (E2)	309				
		Falls City (B3)	715	Mosier (D2)	216	Umatilla (F2)	370		
		Florence (A3)	458	Mt. Angel (C2)	1,032	Union (H2)	1,398		
		Forest Grove		Myrtle Creek					
		(B2)	2,449	(B4)	441	Vale (H4)	1,083		
		Fossil (E2)	532	Myrtle Point		Vernonia (B2)	1,412		
		Freewater (G2)	825	(A4)	1,296				
						Waldport (A3)	630		
		Gaston (B2)	333	Nehalem (B2)	247	Wallowa (H2)	838		
		Gearhart (B1)	319	Newberg * (C2)	2,960	Warrenton (B1)	1,365		
		Gervais (C2)	332	Newport (A3)	2,019	Wasco (E2)	303		
		Gladstone (C2)	1,629	North Bend *		West Linn (C2)	2,165		
		Glendale (B5)	557	(A4)	4,262	Weston (G2)	498		
		Gold Hill (B5)	536	North Powder		West Salem (B3)	1,490		
		Grants Pass *		(H2)	376	Wheeler (B2)	259		
		(B5)	6,028	Nyssa (H4)	1,855	Willamina (B2)	677		
		Grass Valley				Woodburn (C2)	1,982		
		(E2)	204	Oakland (B4)	367				
		Gresham (C2)	1,951	Ontario * (J3)	3,551	Yamhill (H2)	418		
						Voncalla (B4)	277		
		Haines (H3)	377						
Cities and Towns									
[Places marked with an asterisk (*) were classified as urban in 1940]									
Adams (G2)	169								
Albany * (B3)	5,654								
Amity (B2)	545								
Arlington (E2)	609								
Ashland * (C5)	4,744								
Astoria * (B1)	10,389								
Athens (G2)	513								
Aurora (C2)	228								

1 Part of Polk annexed to Lincoln in 1925. 1

---

# **The HISTORY of PENNSYLVANIA**

---

## **Reading Unit No. 37**

---

### **PENNSYLVANIA: THE KEYSTONE STATE**

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

#### ***Interesting Facts Explained***

How the Quakers lived when they came to Pennsylvania, 8-334  
Earlier settlers and traders, 8-334  
How Penn founded Philadelphia, 8-334  
Who the Pennsylvania Dutch were, 8-335  
The Mason and Dixon line, 8-336

When the Declaration of Independence was signed at Philadelphia, and the United States constitution was framed, 8-336  
Where Pennsylvania settlers moved, 8-337  
Pennsylvania's busy industries, 8-337-39  
How the forests are being saved, 8-339-40

#### ***Picture Hunt***

What does the name "Philadelphia" mean? 8-335  
Which Indian tribes lived around

the picturesque streams of Pennsylvania? 8-339

#### ***Related Material***

A great citizen of Pennsylvania, 12-463-68  
The father of Pennsylvania, 12-461-62  
What things could Franklin do well? 12-464-65  
What three important documents did Franklin sign? 12-468  
How does the American constitution differ from the British? 7-356

How we won our freedom, 7-157-59  
What part of Germany did the Moravians invade? 6 207  
How was steel used for making fire? 10-332  
Why is William Henry Stiegel remembered? 12-36  
The story of iron and steel, 9-398-408

#### ***Practical Applications***

Is the Golden Rule practical in everyday life? 8-333-34  
What has Pennsylvania done to

overcome the destruction of her forests? 8-339

#### ***Leisure-time Activities***

PROJECT NO. 1: Make a list of Quakers who have played an

important part in our national life.

---

## THE HISTORY OF PENNSYLVANIA

---



Photo by Gendreau N.Y.

Neatly as a knife through cheese the Delaware River has cut this deep gorge in the Kittatinny Mountains. It is known as the Delaware Water Gap and is a fa-

mous resort for sightseers. Other rivers in eastern Pennsylvania have imitated this masterpiece of carving and have created numerous "gaps" in the Alleghenies.

### PENNSYLVANIA: *the* KEYSTONE STATE

*With Her Rich Resources and Her Excellent Situation for Trade  
Pennsylvania Is One of the Greatest States in the Union*

IF YOU believe that men live together more happily when they may think and act for themselves, that they think and act more reasonably when they may discuss their views freely, that they get justice for themselves only when they show justice to others, and that square dealing is better than any amount of sharp practice in bringing prosperity—if you are convinced of all these things you will be glad to read the story of the colony that William Penn planted in the wilderness west of the Delaware River.

Now of course there were other American colonists who professed to believe in the Golden Rule. Since they were devout Christians they could say by heart Jesus' famous statement of it: "All things whatso-

ever ye would that men should do to you, do ye even so to them." But strange as it may seem, they never, in their heart of hearts, believed that it would work in daily life. They never could see that it applied both ways, and that it would automatically bring to themselves the same advantages it gave to others. We mustn't blame them for their blindness. It takes a highly civilized and intelligent man to believe that, even from a selfish point of view, the Golden Rule is sound policy. In spite of the teaching of the church, few Christians in all the past two thousand years have felt that the Golden Rule was a practical thing, and as a result many of them have gone on lying and cheating and killing, persecuting and oppressing and enslaving.

---

## THE HISTORY OF PENNSYLVANIA

But the Quakers who settled Pennsylvania really believed that the Golden Rule was a sound rule of government for a commonwealth. They had fled to this country to escape religious persecution, and unlike the Puritans of New England, they gave religious freedom to all comers. They had been forbidden to say what they thought at home, but here they let everyone speak his mind freely. They believed all men to be brothers, so they treated the astonished Indians with the most careful justice. They believed that it was wrong to kill, so they carried on no wars and indulged in no massacres. Their colony prospered from the start, and during the years when they were in control of its affairs they had no trouble with the Indians—mostly Delawares—and little bloodshed or violence. By the close of that period the people of Pennsylvania had won from their proprietors—the descendants of William Penn—more liberty than almost any other colony had won. They had had to fight for the right to tax the proprietors, but in the end the Golden Rule had paid them handsomely.

### The Settlement at Upland

They had not been the first to settle in their new land. Dutch and English traders had begun to come as early as 1623, and in 1643 a colony of Swedes built a fort on Tinicum Island, near the present Chester, and planted a permanent settlement on the

mainland at Upland. They named their little settlement New Gottenberg, and thought of it as part of the colony of New Sweden, which they were building up along the Delaware River. But in 1655 they were conquered by the Dutch, who added this whole section to New Netherland; and Dutch it remained until the English took New Amsterdam (1664) and forever ended Dutch power on this continent.

Meanwhile the Quakers, or Society of Friends, had been having a hard time in England, and their leader George Fox had formed a plan to found a colony where they might go to live in peace. Among their number was a wealthy young man named William Penn, son of a distinguished English admiral. You will find his story on other pages of these books. The King had owed Penn's father money, and was more than glad when Penn suggested that the debt be paid with a large tract of land across the seas. Penn had

planned to name the country "Sylvania," but the King wanted to honor Penn's father by adding his name to the word; so Pennsylvania, or "Penn's Woods," it is to this day.

Penn lost no time in founding the long-dreamed-of colony. In 1682 he took out a band of colonists and founded Philadelphia, "the City of Brotherly Love," on an excellent site on both the Delaware and the Schuylkill (skōōl'kīl) rivers. The King's charter had given him almost unlimited power, and he in turn gave his settlers more privileges than



If you like to read accounts of the way in which learned men are digging up the past, you will often have heard of the University of Pennsylvania. For its scholars have been carrying on important excavations among the ancient ruins in Palestine and Mesopotamia. This fine institution is one of the oldest universities in the United States, and its medical school, founded in 1765, was the first in the country. College Hall, above, is one of the main buildings of the campus.

## THE HISTORY OF PENNSYLVANIA



Photo by Karl F. Lutz

From the art museum in Fairmount Park, in Philadelphia, one has this fine view of the city's sky line. Philadelphia is the third largest city in the United States, and is famous for its ship-building and metal

industries. It played an important part in the early history of our country, and was once the capital of the state and of the nation. Translated, its name means "the city of brotherly love."

settlers had in any other American colony.

### Who Are the "Pennsylvania Dutch"?

At once unhappy folk from near and far began to flock to this new land of gentleness and justice and freedom. From many lands they came—members of many different religious sects. A large number of Welsh Quakers came to Montgomery and Delaware counties, where Welsh place names abound to this day. Germany sent various sects more or less like the Quakers. There were the Moravians (*mô-râ'vî-ăn*), who settled Nazareth and Bethlehem; the Lutherans and others, who took up farms along a line back of the Quaker settlements, in the rich valley southeast of the mountain ranges; and the Mennonites, who under an able leader named Pastorius (*pàs-tô'rî-ŭs*) settled at Germantown (1683) and began with old-world thrift to build up a number of busy industries. Germantown's modern textile mills are descended from the looms of those first linen weavers who brought their craft to the wilderness of a strange New World. And the thrift of the "Pennsylvania Dutch," as the

descendants of the German settlers are called, is known over the whole United States.

### Sturdy Men of the Frontier

Back of all these peaceful people, in the valleys between the mountain ranges, Scotch-Irish later took up land and began to conquer the frontier. They were by nature active and aggressive, with ideals that were very different from those of the Germans and Quakers. Their hard pioneer life, far from centers of civilization, put them out of sympathy with the people in the older settlements, who in turn failed to understand the dangers and problems of the frontier. Their ministers told them that the Quakers were wicked to treat the Indians so well, and that it was the duty of Christians to exterminate the savages. It is not hard to guess that trouble with the Indians began soon after the new immigrants arrived—and it was not smoothed out when Penn's heirs stooped to double dealing with the red men. Between the lawless Scotch-Irish and the peaceable Quakers there was constantly growing friction, especially since the Quakers,

## THE HISTORY OF PENNSYLVANIA

increasing in wealth, dealt more and more unfairly with the unlettered men of the frontier.

The many boundary disputes were hard enough to settle. The line between Pennsylvania and Maryland was fixed when two English surveyors, Mason and Dixon, were brought over to establish it (1763-1767). Later the Mason and Dixon line became famous in our history when it came to be regarded as the boundary between the slave and free states. Connecticut had long claimed the Wyoming Valley in northeastern Pennsylvania, and had even sent in settlers, who refused to be dislodged. This dispute was settled by arbitration (1783). Pennsylvania bought from the federal government her little triangle of land on Lake Erie, and in this way provided herself with

a port on the Great Lakes. As we shall see, that little piece of ground, with its single port at Erie, has brought her handsome returns.

### A Fort That Washington Built

The trouble with the Indians came to a head in the French and Indian Wars, and terrible was the bloodshed. Elsewhere we have told how Washington was sent to build a fort at what is now Pittsburgh, and how the French captured it and named it Fort Duquesne (dōō-kān'); and we have told of Braddock's disastrous defeat. It was not till the close of Pontiac's Rebellion (1763) that the state was safe for white people in the more outlying settlements.

All through these times there was growing

enmity between the Quakers and the Scotch-Irish pioneers, who resented the fact that the Quakers refused to take up arms. At last (1764) the backwoodsmen marched on Philadelphia, and only Benjamin Franklin's tact

kept them from fighting. This was the end of Quaker control in the colony. It had been growing more and more unfair.

But now another storm cloud began to loom over the horizon. Everywhere in the colonies people were growing dissatisfied with British rule. In this crisis Pennsylvania was indeed the keystone. Without her help the war could hardly have been won, and yet the colony was full of people lukewarm to the cause—British sympathizers, who mostly were prosperous members of the Church of England; Quakers and Mennonites and others,

who disapproved of war under any circumstances; and a good many who simply preferred to let well enough alone.

The patriots were able to bring the colony in on the side of the rebels, but when the British took Philadelphia and spent the winter there (1777-1778), the loyalists entertained the troops royally while Washington's army was starving at Valley Forge. A number of important battles were fought in Pennsylvania, and the Continental Congress sat in Philadelphia. There the Declaration of Independence was signed, and there the United States constitution was framed. Except for one short interval Philadelphia was capital of the new little republic until the government was moved to Washington (1800). But of all Pennsylvania's services to



Photo by Bethlehem Sta

To make steel ingots in these blast furnaces, great quantities of iron and coal are needed. Pennsylvania can supply both, and that is why she has become the home of the steel industry. The output of steel is constantly growing, to meet the needs of the motor, armament and building industries.

## THE HISTORY OF PENNSYLVANIA



Pennsylvania alone has coal fields large enough to be the envy of most nations. Her deposits of hard coal, in the eastern part of the state, are the largest in the world; some of the seams have been worked almost a thousand feet below sea level. In the western part

of the state are her vast stores of soft coal, so valuable to industry. The picture above shows one of the great devices which load coal on barges for shipment. Every year more and more coal is taken from the mines, though oil is competing sharply.

the Revolutionary cause, there were none more notable than her contribution of that wise and generous patriot Benjamin Franklin.

### The Coal Mine at Mauch Chunk

Almost as soon as the struggle was over the new state set to work to make her fortune. As early as 1790 she began to mine coal near Mauch Chunk, and only a few years later a number of towns started manufacturing iron. These are still her two largest industries. Hardy settlers took up land on the western side of the mountains—and thousands of descendants of the older stock moved on into the new lands of Ohio and the Mississippi Valley, or into the back country of Virginia and Carolina. Pennsylvania has sent out more pioneers than any other state.

But people from many nations came to take their places, especially Irish to work in the mines. And wives and daughters of miners made excellent workers in the little textile mills. As a result Pennsylvania to-day has thriving weaving and knitting industries in silk, wool, and cotton. Some of the largest hosiery factories in the world are at Reading, and the state is a leader in the manufacture of hosiery, lace, and silk.

At the same time she had to find ways to

carry her raw materials and to get her goods to market. She built roads and bridges and canals, and of course made all possible use of her rivers. Her mining industry could never have grown so fast if short railroads had not been built to carry the coal and iron from the mines to the rivers, which took the load the rest of the way to Philadelphia. Later the railroads replaced the rivers as carriers. To-day, of course, trucks are carrying a goodly share of the vast annual load, and to help them the state has laid out one of the most extensive highway systems in the country.

### Riches Underground

The amount of work Pennsylvania accomplishes in a year is truly stupendous. Only Texas surpasses her in the production of minerals. Of these coal makes up more than three-fourths of the whole output, but iron is valuable, and in limestone and other building stones she leads the states. She has in Northampton, Lehigh (lē'hī), and York counties the most productive slate quarries in the country; she comes next to Maine in feldspar; she outranks all other states in the value of her clay products; and she has a great deal of natural gas. Though her oil

## THE HISTORY OF PENNSYLVANIA

wells are by no means so productive as they were, they are once again important since her engineers have found a way to force the oil out by pumping water into the sands where it lies. The oil rises to the top of a column of water which is forced up a pipe set into the center of the deposit. She also refines large quantities of oil.

Hard coal comes from the eastern part of Pennsylvania, where almost the whole of our country's supply is found. Scranton is the world's greatest center for mining it, and has large steel, silk, and lace mills besides. Soft coal—in greater quantity than in any other state—is found in the west and is of excellent quality. Some of it is especially good for manufacturing into gas, and other deposits of it make very fine coke, of which Pennsylvania produces more than any other state. Oil too has come in large quantities from the section west of the mountains; and it is there that natural gas is found.

### A Giant Industry

Iron has been mined in various parts of the state, but to-day most of the iron ore for Pennsylvania's great smelting industry is taken from the earth in northern Minnesota and is shipped down the Great Lakes to that useful port at Erie, which handles an enormous tonnage in the course of a year. Pennsylvania leads all the states in the manufacture of pig iron; she produces over a quarter of the country's pig iron and a third of its steel. Pittsburgh is her greatest smelting center, but a host of other cities are important in the industry—New Castle, Johnstown, Bethlehem, Reading, and Harrisburg are only a few. Her eastern centers for

the industry import their iron ore from South America.

The industry was once confined to the east, but when it was found that soft coal could be used in the manufacture of pig iron, many big foundries moved west to be near the soft-coal beds.

To-day the western section is conveniently located for receiving ore from the Great Lakes by way of the port at Erie and for shipping the manufactured product down the Ohio River. Pittsburgh has grown like a young giant and has a great many industries, ranging from the making of air brakes and many other kinds of machinery to the canning of huge quantities of food. Conveniently seated on her broad rivers, she even carries on a foreign commerce by way of New Orleans. No other city in the world can

equal her in the smelting and manufacture of metals. And Pennsylvania leads all the states in the rolling of steel and the manufacture of zinc.

### What Is Glass Made Of?

We have mentioned only the more important mineral products. Lehigh and Northampton counties, with Easton as a center, do a huge business in Portland cement, in which Pennsylvania now stands second. You will notice that Easton took the precaution of seating herself on two important rivers. Limestone for use in the iron industry and for various other industrial purposes is found in a good many places, and in days gone by Dauphin County supplied the brown sandstone to make row upon row of the brown stone houses, all exactly alike, for which Philadelphia is famous. Brick and tiles and



Photo by National Petroleum News

Pennsylvania oil wells, like this one, pump enough petroleum every year to give the state ninth place among the oil-producing states. But more than that, Pennsylvania oil cannot be surpassed for quality.



---

## THE HISTORY OF PENNSYLVANIA

---



The Pennsylvania uplands are full of beautiful scenes like this one on the Juniata River. The swift stream has carved itself a valley among the mountains, and has spread the valley floor with silt in which the farmer likes to grow his crops or plant the pastures for his stock. It is a beautiful country, half wild, half

tame. Time was when Pennsylvania's picturesque streams were the haunt of Indians—the peaceable Delawares and the more warlike Susquehannocks, or Conestogas, who were members of the Iroquois family that occupied New York State. But they have all been gone for many a year.

pottery are made in various cities from clay found within the state; and from glass sand that Pennsylvania finds in both the east and west she makes enormous quantities of glass. The village of Creighton, near Pittsburgh, has one of the largest plate glass factories in the world. Besides all these minerals Pennsylvania has graphite, soapstone, and phosphate rock.

### Second in Manufacturing

It is not strange, then, that with her wealth of raw materials, her vast quantities of coal for firing her furnaces, and her excellent situation for selling her wares all over the world, Pennsylvania should have become one of our greatest manufacturing states. Only New York excels her. In a large number of our country's major industries she holds first place, and there is not room to list all the products that she produces in larger quantities than any other state. Philadelphia is her greatest manufacturing city, with a variety of output that is amazing. From her port on the Delaware River she sends her wares all over the world. Her leading exports are oil, coal, grain, and flour. And her ships come laden with iron ore and iron manufactures, chemicals and drugs, sugar for her gigantic refineries, hemp, jute, flax, and a host of other products to be fed to the state's thousands of hungry machines and hungry

people. Besides this she does a large business in printing and publishing books and magazines.

### Linoleum, Watches, and Chocolate

And there are numerous other manufacturing cities that we have not mentioned. Lancaster is known for her linoleum and her watches. Altoona, Meadville, Dunmore, and Chambersburg make or repair railway cars. Hershey has a chocolate factory so vast that to tell of its output would sound like a fairy tale. McKeesport, Clairton, Allentown, Lebanon, Phoenixville, Danville, Chester, York, Jeannette, Williamsport, and Erie all employ large numbers of people at their machines. Pennsylvania has a great many knitting mills, especially for making hosiery, and she manufactures many textiles.

But it is to think of a land of forests and farms as well. Like so many other states Pennsylvania let her timberlands be slashed without mercy. But in more recent years she has been extremely intelligent in conserving and replanting them. Now half her area is grown up to woods, mostly small timber as yet, but some day it will be very valuable. Already her thousands of acres of saplings are helping to control the disastrous floods that have been only too frequent in her larger rivers.

Her program for restocking the forests with

## THE HISTORY OF PENNSYLVANIA

game and the streams with fish has also been extremely successful. Pennsylvania has won back a large measure of her early charm for sportsmen and naturalists. Several hundred bears and many thousand deer are shot there every year. The state even maintains a school for fishermen in the trout season.

### Apples, Peaches, Grapes

The farms too are beautiful to see, and there are a great many of them, for, thanks to her good soil and a climate that is temperate save in the mountains, Pennsylvania raises large crops of many kinds—as well as a great deal of livestock, especially in the southwest. Since she grows most of the food that she feeds to her stock her chief crop is hay, with corn, oats, wheat, and barley following. She ranks second in growing buckwheat, and also has large harvests of potatoes and tobacco—the last mostly from Lancaster County. Adams County leads in apples and Erie County in grapes. Peaches and pears grow in the south, and dairying, which is very important, is most common in the north. The state has a large crop of small fruits and berries, which ripen well in its warm summer sun.

### Chester Valley

The richest soil is found in the southeastern part of the state—Chester Valley—and in the southeastern part of what is called the Great Valley, a portion of that long valley extending from Lake Champlain (shām-plān') all the way down to northeastern Alabama. The southeastern corner of the state is a very old plain—called the Triassic (trī-ās'ik) lowland—which has been cut by streams into gentle hills. North and west of it is a chain of higher rounded hills known as the South Mountains. These are a part of the long southeastern mountain belt extending the whole length of the Appalachian (āp'ā-lā'chī-ān) mountain system. The northern end forms the uplands of New England; the southern end is in Alabama. The rocks are very, very old and very hard, and were not laid down in layers. Just here this "Piedmont (pēd'mōnt) belt" is lower than to the north and south.

Northwest of this belt lies the Great Valley, here known as the Cumberland Valley, where a long belt of weaker rocks in the Appalachian mountain system has been worn away. And northeast of the valley are the high mountain ranges; they consist of layers of rock—younger than the Piedmont belt—which have been folded into ridges by gigantic pressure and then worn down so that the hard layers remain and form long ranges. These mountains are the highest in the state, with very picturesque scenery, especially where the rivers have cut deep V-shaped notches through the ridges, as at the Delaware Water Gap. Northwest of the ridges the rock layers were not folded, but are spread out flat in what is called the Allegheny (āl'ē-gā'nī) Plateau (plā-tō'), a high upland that has been carved into deep valleys by streams. In the northeast this plateau forms what are known as the Pocono (pō'kō-nō) Mountains, a famous playground in summer. In the northwestern corner of the state the land slopes down to the fertile coastal plain of Lake Erie.

### Building for the Future

The state whose birth took place under the wise care of Benjamin Franklin has always had a deep respect for learning. She has ninety-five institutions of higher education, many of them notable. The University of Pennsylvania, founded (1740) as a small academy at Franklin's suggestion, the University of Pittsburgh, the Carnegie Institution of Technology, Pennsylvania State College, Haverford, Swarthmore, and Bryn Mawr, a college for women, are among the most famous. The Keystone State maintains her position of importance by intellectual as well as by industrial activity. She had troubles in the great economic depression of the 1930's, and overproduction of oil closed many of her coal mines, throwing thousands upon thousands of miners out of work. But during World War II her various useful industries were set going at top speed, and no hands were idle. The world needs her products—and the principles of William Penn and Benjamin Franklin should work as well to-day as they did in centuries gone by.

## PENNSYLVANIA

**AREA:** 45,333 square miles— 32nd in rank.

**LOCATION:** Pennsylvania, one of the Middle Atlantic states, lies almost entirely between 39° 43' 26.3" and 42° N. Lat., though the small triangle on Lake Erie extends to 42° 15' N. Lat. The southern boundary lies along the famous Mason and Dixon line. The state extends from 74° 43' to 80° 31' 36" W. Long. It is bounded on the north by Lake Erie and New York; on the east by New York and New Jersey; on the south by Delaware, Maryland, and West Virginia; and on the west by West Virginia and Ohio.

**PHYSICAL FEATURES:** The southeast corner of Pennsylvania lies in an ancient plain which is known as the Triassic Lowland and is low and flat. In the northwest corner is another narrow plain, where the state has nearly forty miles along the shore of Lake Erie. Northwest of the Triassic Lowland runs a belt of very hard rocks that were originally a higher plateau but have been worn down to rounded summits. They are known as the South Mountains, and are divided into two sections, one to the north and one to the west of the Triassic plain. Mostly these hills are low, but near the Maryland border they rise to a height of 2,100 ft. Northwest of the South Mountains runs a higher mountain belt averaging fifty miles in width and consisting of ridges and valleys. Like the South Mountains the second belt, known as the Allegheny Mountains, runs northeast and southwest across the state. It varies in altitude from 1,400 to 2,000 ft., but in places rises over 2,400 ft. above sea level. In this great mountain section the tops of the ridges are fairly even in height for long distances. The valleys are usually narrow. This "central province" of Pennsylvania merges into the Pocono Mountains in the northeast, a plateau that has not been greatly dissected by rivers; it covers Wayne, Pike, Monroe, and the eastern part of Carbon County, and is a continuation of the Catskill Plateau in New York. Northwest of the Allegheny ridges lies the Allegheny Plateau, which covers the rest of the state. It is a rugged, forested region full of deep valleys and high crests; in the north its average elevation is between 2,400 and 2,500 feet, but it is lower in the south and west. The highest point in Pennsylvania is Negro Mountain (3,213 ft.) in Somerset County. Just east of the Allegheny ridges runs a broad and fertile valley, lying between the Blue Mountains and the South Mountains. It is known as the Cumberland or the Lebanon Valley, and is part of the Great Appalachian Valley.

Pennsylvania is bounded on the east by the Delaware River (296 m. long), which rises in New York and finds an outlet in Delaware Bay. The lowering of the land has let the ocean into the bay to form an estuary. This makes it possible for ships to ascend the river and gives to Philadelphia a good harbor for ocean-going vessels, an important element in her trade. Both the Lehigh (100 m. long) and the Schuylkill (131 m. long) and a number of small streams as well—carry the drainage of eastern Pennsylvania into the Delaware River. Most of the northeast part of the state drains into the Susquehanna (444 m. long), which enters from New York State and makes its way southward to the Maryland border and Chesapeake Bay. It crosses the Allegheny ridges in a series of narrow and picturesque "water gaps" where the scenery is very fine. It receives most of the drainage from the central mountains of the state, and is joined by a large number of other rivers, among them the West Branch and the Juniata (150 m. long). The Allegheny (325 m. long) and the Monongahela (128 m. long) drain most of the Allegheny Plateau. They finally unite at Pittsburgh to form the Ohio (981 m. long), which eventually joins the Mississippi and so is carried to the Gulf of Mexico. Along the central part of the

southern border a few small streams find their way south to the Potomac, and along the shore of Lake Erie the drainage is into the lake. Near the northern boundary in the central part of the state are the headwaters of the Genesee (144 m. long), which flows across New York State to Lake Ontario; its waters finally make their way to the Atlantic by way of the St. Lawrence River. Pennsylvania has no large lakes, and what small ones she has are mostly in the Pocono Plateau. All together the state has a water area of 294 square miles. There is no irrigated land.

**CLIMATE:** Southeastern Pennsylvania has a mild climate, with a mean annual temperature of 52° F. At Philadelphia the mean January temperature is 33°, the July mean 76°. The record high is 106°, the record low -11°. The mountains are much cooler in summer except in the valleys, where the heat often is 8° or 10° higher than on the crests. The mean annual temperature of the central province is 50°, and of the northwest 47°, though along Lake Erie it is two degrees higher. The average annual rainfall for the state is 44 inches.

**INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING:** State normal schools and teachers' colleges have been established at Bloomsburg, California, Clarion, East Stroudsburg, Edinboro, Indiana, Kutztown, Lock Haven, Mansfield, Millersville, Shippensburg, Slippery Rock, West Chester, and Cheyney, the last being for colored students.

Other institutions are Albright College at Reading, Allegheny College at Meadville, Beaver College at Jenkintown, Bryn Mawr College at Bryn Mawr, Bucknell University at Lewisburg, Carnegie Institute of Technology at Pittsburgh, Cedar Crest College at Allentown, Chestnut Hill College at Chestnut Hill, Dickinson College at Carlisle, Drexel Institute of Technology at Philadelphia, Dropsie College at Philadelphia, Duquesne University at Pittsburgh, Elizabethtown College at Elizabethtown, Franklin and Marshall College at Lancaster, Gannon College at Erie, Geneva College at Beaver Falls, Gettysburg College at Gettysburg, Grove City College at Grove City, Haverford College at Haverford, Immaculate College at Immaculate, Juniata College at Huntingdon, Lafayette College at Easton, La Salle College at Philadelphia, Lebanon Valley College at Annville, Lehigh University at Bethlehem, Lincoln University for colored students at Lincoln University, Marywood College for women at Scranton, Mercyhurst College at Erie, College Misericordia at Dallas, Moravian College and Theological Seminary at Bethlehem, Moravian College for Women at Bethlehem, Mount Mercy College at Pittsburgh, Muhlenberg College at Allentown, Pennsylvania College for Women at Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania Military College at Chester, Pennsylvania State College at State College, University of Pennsylvania at Philadelphia, University of Pittsburgh at Pittsburgh, Rosemont College at Rosemont, St. Francis College at Loretto, St. Joseph's College at Philadelphia, St. Vincent College at Latrobe, University of Scranton at Scranton, Seton Hill College for women at Greensburg, Susquehanna University at Selingsgrove, Swarthmore College at Swarthmore, Temple University at Philadelphia, Thiel College at Greenville, Ursinus College at Collegeville, Villa Maria College for women at Erie, Villanova College at Villanova, Washington and Jefferson College at Washington, Waynesburg College at Waynesburg, Westminister College at New Wilmington, and Wilson College for women at Chambersburg.

**INSTITUTIONS FOR THE PROMOTION OF THE ARTS:** The Academy of Fine Arts in Philadelphia is the oldest art institution in the United States; it originated in 1791. The Pennsylvania Art Museum is also at Philadelphia, and nearly forty other art

## PENNSYLVANIA—Continued

schools and museums. The same city has the Philadelphia Orchestra, one of the greatest orchestras in the world, and the Curtis Institute of Music.

**CHARITIES AND CORRECTION:** Pennsylvania maintains surgical and medical hospitals at Ashland, Blossburg, Coaldale, Conneville, Hazelton, Locust Mountain, Nanticoke, Philipsburg, Scranton, and Shamokin. Hospitals for mental disorders are at Allentown, Danville, Fairview, Harrisburg, Norristown, Torrance, Warren, and Wernersville. At Selinsgrove is a colony for epileptics, and at Pennhurst, Polk, and Laurelton are institutions for mental defectives. There are penal institutions at Philadelphia, Graterford, Pittsburgh, and Rockview, and an industrial reformatory at Huntingdon. At Muncy is an industrial home for women and at Morganza a training school. The state supports three hospitals for tuberculosis, two state hospitals for veterans and their children, five schools for the deaf, and two for the blind. Pennsylvania inflicts capital punishment by electrocution.

**POLITICAL FACTS:** The present constitution of Pennsylvania was adopted in 1873, and has been freely amended. The laws are made by a General Assembly meeting in odd-numbered years and made up of two houses. The members of the Senate serve a four-year term, and are not all elected at once half of them take office every two years. Members of the house are apportioned among the counties according to a fixed ratio, and serve for two years.

The governor and his staff head the executive department. None of the elective officials except the secretary of internal affairs may serve two consecutive terms. The governor serves for four years, and with the advice of the Senate appoints the secretary of the commonwealth, the attorney-general, and the superintendent of public instruction.

The judiciary is headed by a supreme court and a superior court, each made up of seven judges. The supreme court judges are elected for a term of twenty-one years and all other judges for ten years. These are both courts of appeal. Each county with 40,000 or more inhabitants makes up a separate judicial district and elects one or more judges for that district. In the County of Philadelphia judicial powers are vested in five separate courts of equal jurisdiction, each court composed of three judges. In addition to this there are special courts, such as magistrates' courts, orphans' courts, courts of oyer and terminer, and justices of the peace.

A voter must have been a citizen of the country for at least a month, a resident of the state for one year, and of the election district for two months, and, if the voter is over twenty-two years of age, he must have paid a state or county tax within two years.

With the exception of the presidential electors, all candidates of political parties for all elective offices are nominated at primary elections. Provision is made for a preferential vote for president in the primaries. Elected officers of cities of the second class and judges of the courts of record are nominated and elected by nonpartisan ballots.

The units of local government are counties, cities, incorporated boroughs, and townships. Three county commissioners and three county auditors are elected for terms of four years except in counties of 100,000, which have a comptroller.

The capital of Pennsylvania is at Harrisburg.

**PARKS:** The Gettysburg National Military Park commemorates the famous Battle of Gettysburg fought on this site during the Civil War. There is also a national cemetery here.

**MONUMENTS:** Fort Necessity, a national battlefield site near Uniontown, marks a fort built by Washington. Hopewell Village, with early ironworks, and the Old Philadelphia Customs House are national historic sites.

Pennsylvania has 746,703 acres of national forest.

**NAME:** Pennsylvania was named (1681) by King Charles II in honor of the father of William Penn. Penn himself had thought to name his grant New Wales, since, as he said, it was "a pretty, hilly country," but the King insisted upon paying tribute to Penn's father. The name is made up of two words. The first—"penn (pen)"—is an old Celtic or Welsh term and means a "head" or "headland." "Sylvania" is a modern form made out of the Latin word "sylvanus," which means "relating to a forest." This in turn comes from the Latin word "silva," meaning "a wood." So the meaning of the name is "Penn's woods," or—going back to origins—"a wooded headland."

**NICKNAMES:** Pennsylvania is called the Coal State, the Oil State, and the Steel State because it boasts these three great industries. Various reasons have been given for its title of the Keystone State. The term is said originally to have come from the fact that the state's initials were upon the keystone of the arch on the Pennsylvania Bridge in Washington, D.C., when the national government was moved there. Twelve other stones made up the arch, representing the rest of the thirteen colonies. It is also said that the term comes from the fact that John Morton, representing Pennsylvania, was the last to vote for the Declaration of Independence and so decided the matter by making Pennsylvania the thirteenth stone in the arch—that is to say, the keystone. When the term is used now it suggests that Pennsylvania and its industries are essential to the nation. Pennsylvania is also called the Quaker State by reason of its early settlement by Quakers and the large numbers of them who now live within its borders.

Pennsylvania's great hide and tanning industries have given its people the nickname of Leatherheads. As admirers of William Penn they have been called Pennamites. And they are called Quakers from the large Quaker population in the state.

**STATE FLOWER:** Mountain laurel; adopted by the General Assembly in 1933.

**STATE SONG:** Though it has never been adopted officially, the best-known and most widely used song is "Pennsylvania," with words and music by Edgar M. Dilley.

**STATE FLAG:** A blue ground, with the coat of arms of the state embroidered in the center on both sides; approved in 1907.

**STATE MOTTO:** "Virtue, Liberty, and Independence," though it was specified as the motto in the original description of the seal, does not at present appear on the seal. The motto "Liberty and Independence" would refer to Pennsylvania's active struggle in the cause of freedom.

**STATE BIRD:** Ruffed grouse (*Bonasa umbellus*); chosen by the legislature in 1931.

**INTERESTING FACTS:** Pennsylvania observes New Year's Day, Lincoln's Birthday, Washington's Birthday, Good Friday, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Columbus Day, Election Day, Armistice Day, Thanksgiving Day, Christmas Day, and Flag Day on June 14.

The Cornplanter Indian Reservation in Pennsylvania is the home of members of the Seneca tribe.

# PENNSYLVANIA—Continued

<b>Population of state, 1940, 9,900,180</b>	<b>Union (G5)</b>	<b>20,247</b>	<b>Duquesne * (B6)</b>	<b>20,693</b>	<b>Oil City * (B3)</b>	<b>20,375</b>	
<b>Counties</b>	<b>Venango (B3)</b>	<b>63,958</b>	<b>Duryea * (K3)</b>	<b>8,275</b>	<b>Old Forge * (K3)</b>	<b>11,892</b>	
Adams (G8)	Warren (C2)	42,789	Easton * (L5)	33,589	Olyphant * (K3)	9,252	
Allegheny (A5)	Washington (A7)	210,852	Edwardsville * (K4)	7,998	Palmerton * (K5)	7,475	
Armstrong (C5)	Wayne (L2)	29,934	Ellwood City * (A5)	12,329	Philadelphia * (L8)	1,931,334	
Beaver (A5)	Westmoreland (C7)	303,411	Erie * (A1)	116,955	Phoenixville * (K7)	12,282	
Bedford (E7)	Wyoming (J3)	16,702	Etna * (B6)	7,223	Pittsburgh * (B6)	671,659	
Berks (K6)	York (H5)	178,022	Farrell * (A4)	13,899	Pittston * (K4)	17,828	
Blair (E6)			Frackville * (J5)	8,035	Plymouth * (K4)	15,507	
Bradford (H2)			Franklin * (B3)	9,948	Pottstown * (K7)	20,194	
Bucks (L7)					Pottsville * (J6)	24,530	
Butler (B5)					Punkatunney * (D5)	9,482	
Cambria (D6)					Quakertown * (L6)	5,150	
Cameron (E3)					Rankin * (B6)	7,470	
Carbon (K5)					Reading * (K6)	110,568	
Centre (F5)					Rochester * (A5)	7,441	
Chester (K8)					St. Marys * (D3)	7,653	
Clarion (C4)					Sayre * (J2)	7,569	
Clearfield (D4)					Scranton * (K3)	140,404	
Clinton (F3)					Shamokin * (H5)	18,810	
Columbia (H4)					Sharon * (A4)	25,622	
Crawford (A2)					Sharpsburg * (D6)	8,202	
Cumberland (G7)					Shenandoah * (J5)	19,790	
Dauphin (H6)					Somerset * (C7)	5,430	
Delaware <sup>1</sup> (L8)					South Williamsport * (G4)	6,033	
Elk (D3)					Steelton * (H7)	13,115	
Erie (A2)					Sunbury * (H5)	15,462	
Jayette (B8)					Swissvale * (C3)	15,919	
Forest (C3)					Swoyersville * (K4)	9,234	
Franklin (F8)					Tamaqua * (K5)	12,486	
Fulton (E8)					Tarentum * (B6)	9,846	
Greene (A8)					Taylor * (K3)	9,002	
Huntingdon (E6)					Throop * (C2)	7,382	
Indiana (C5)					Titusville * (B3)	8,126	
Jefferson (C4)					Turtle Creek * (C3)	9,805	
Juniata (G6)					Tyrone * (E5)	8,845	
Lackawanna (K3)					Uniontown * (B8)	21,819	
Lancaster (J7)					Vandergrift * (B6)	10,725	
Lawrence (A5)					Warren * (C2)	14,891	
Lebanon (H6)					Washington * (A7)	26,166	
Lehigh (K6)					Waynesboro * (G8)	10,231	
Luzerne (K4)					West Chester * (K8)	13,289	
Lycoming					West Hazleton * (J5)	7,523	
McKean (D2)					West Pittston * (K4)	7,943	
Mercer (A4)					West View * (A5)	7,215	
Mifflin (I6)					Wilkes-Barre * (K4)	86,236	
Monroe (L4)					Wilksburg * (B6)	29,853	
Montgomery (L7)					Williamsport * (G4)	44,355	
Montour (H4)					Wilson * (B6)	8,217	
Northampton (L5)					Windber * (D7)	9,057	
Northumberland (H5)					Winton * (K3)	7,989	
Perry (G6)					Yeadon * (L8)	8,524	
Philadelphia <sup>1</sup> (L8)					York * (H8)	56,712	
Pike (L3)							
Potter (F2)							
Schuylkill (J5)							
Snyder (G5)							
Somerset (C8)							
Sullivan (H3)							
Susquehanna (K2)							
Tioga (G2)							

## Cities, Boroughs, and Towns

[Places marked with an asterisk (\*) were classified as urban in 1940, those having two asterisks (\*\*) were classified as urban under special rule]

Abington town ship ** (L7)	20,857
Aliquippa * (A5)	27,023
Allentown * (L6)	96,904
Altoona * (E6)	80,214
Ambridge * (A6)	18,968
Archbald * (K3)	8,296
Arnold * (D2)	10,898
Ashland (J5)	7,045
Beaver Falls * (A5)	17,098
Bellevue * (A6)	10,488
Berwick * (J4)	15,181
Bethlehem * (L6)	58,490
Blakely * (K3)	8,106
Bloomsburg * (J4)	9,799
Braddock * (B6)	18,326
Bradford * (D2)	17,691
Brentwood * (B6)	7,552
Bristol * (M7)	11,895
Brownsville <sup>2</sup> (B7)	8,015
Butler * (B5)	24,477
Canonsburg * (A7)	12,599
Carbondale * (K3)	19,371
Carlisle * (G7)	13,984
Carnegie * (A6)	12,663
Chambersburg * (F8)	14,852
Charleroi * (B7)	10,784
Cheltenham town ship ** (L7)	19,082
Chester * (L8)	59,285
Clairton * (D4)	16,381
Clearfield * (E4)	9,372
Coatesville * (K8)	14,006
Collingdale * (L8)	8,162
Columbia * (H7)	11,547
Connellsville * (B7)	13,608
Conshohocken * (L7)	10,776
Coraopolis * (A6)	11,086
Crafton * (A6)	7,163
Danville * (H5)	7,122
Darby * (C5)	10,334
Dickson City * (K3)	11,548
Donora * (B7)	13,180
Dormont * (A5)	12,974
Du Bois * (D4)	12,080
Dunmore * (K3)	23,086

Glassport * (B7)	8,748
Greensburg * (B7)	16,743
Greenville * (A3)	8,149
Hanover * (H8)	13,076
Harrisburg * (H7)	83,893
Hazleton * (K5)	38,009
Homestead * (B6)	19,041
Huntingdon * (E6)	7,170
Indiana * (C6)	10,050
Jeannette * (B7)	16,220
Johnstown * (D7)	66,668
Kingston * (K4)	20,679
Kittanning * (D5)	7,550
Lancaster * (J7)	61,345
Lansdale * (L7)	9,316
Lansdown * (C5)	10,837
Lansford * (K5)	8,710
Larksville * (K4)	8,467
Latrobe * (C7)	11,111
Lebanon * (J6)	27,206
Lewistown * (F6)	13,017
Lock Haven * (G4)	10,810
Luzerne * (K4)	7,082
McKeesport * (B6)	55,355
McKees Rock * (A6)	17,021
Mahanoy City * (J5)	13,442
Meadville * (A3)	18,919
Middletown * (H7)	7,046
Millvale * (B6)	7,811
Milton * (H5)	8,313
Minersville * (J5)	8,686
Monaca * (A5)	7,061
Monessen * (H7)	20,257
Monongahela * (B7)	8,825
Mount Carmel * (J5)	17,780
Munhall * (B6)	13,900
Nanticoke * (J4)	24,387
New Brighton * (A5)	9,630
New Castle * (A4)	47,638
New Kensington * (B6)	24,055
Norristown * (L7)	38,181
Northampton * (L5)	9,622
North Brad dock * (A5)	15,679

Punkatunney * (D5)	9,482
Quakertown * (L6)	5,150
Rankin * (B6)	7,470
Reading * (K6)	110,568
Rochester * (A5)	7,441
St. Marys * (D3)	7,653
Sayre * (J2)	7,569
Scranton * (K3)	140,404
Shamokin * (H5)	18,810
Sharon * (A4)	25,622
Sharpsburg * (D6)	8,202
Shenandoah * (J5)	19,790
Somerset * (C7)	5,430
South Williamsport * (G4)	6,033
Steelton * (H7)	13,115
Sunbury * (H5)	15,462
Swissvale * (C3)	15,919
Swoyersville * (K4)	9,234
Tamaqua * (K5)	12,486
Tarentum * (B6)	9,846
Taylor * (K3)	9,002
Throop * (C2)	7,382
Titusville * (B3)	8,126
Turtle Creek * (C3)	9,805
Tyrone * (E5)	8,845
Uniontown * (B8)	21,819
Vandergrift * (B6)	10,725
Warren * (C2)	14,891
Washington * (A7)	26,166
Waynesboro * (G8)	10,231
West Chester * (K8)	13,289
West Hazleton * (J5)	7,523
West Pittston * (K4)	7,943
West View * (A5)	7,215
Wilkes-Barre * (K4)	86,236
Wilksburg * (B6)	29,853
Williamsport * (G4)	44,355
Wilson * (B6)	8,217
Windber * (D7)	9,057
Winton * (K3)	7,989
Yeadon * (L8)	8,524
York * (H8)	56,712

<sup>1</sup> Part of Delaware County annexed to Philadelphia, and part of Philadelphia annexed to Delaware County, in 1927.

<sup>2</sup> South Brownsville and Brownsville boroughs consolidated as Brownsville borough in 1933.

<sup>3</sup> Parnassus and New Kensington boroughs consolidated as New Kensington borough in 1931.

# ***The HISTORY of RHODE ISLAND***

## **Reading Unit No. 38**

### **RHODE ISLAND, OR "LITTLE RHODY"**

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

#### ***Interesting Facts Explained***

How Roger Williams founded a colony at Rhode Island, 8-343  
When Williams got a charter for the Rhode Island colony, 8-344  
Why Rhode Island has a stony clay, 8-344  
The old whaling industry, 8-344-

45  
Where the first spinning jenny in the United States was set up, 8-345  
The famous "Narragansett pacers," 8-346  
How the workers of Rhode Island are protected, 8-346

#### ***Things to Think About***

How did Providence get its name?  
Why was there no trouble with the Indians in Rhode Island?  
What famous people came to Rhode Island in order to be free?

What part did Rhode Island traders take in the slave trade?  
How many people are there to the square mile in Rhode Island?  
When were property qualifications for voting abolished?

#### ***Picture Hunt***

What stirring days has Brown University seen? 8-344

How was Nature kind to Rhode Island? 8-345

#### ***Related Material***

Why was Roger Williams banished from Massachusetts? 7-126  
Why did workmen break Hargreaves' spinning jenny? 10-340-41  
What kind of looms do the American Indians use for rug making? 10-345  
Colonial life in America, 7-145-

55  
The largest living mammals, 4-441-48  
Did whales ever live on land? 4-442  
How big are American lobsters? 3-185  
Some recent problems in New England, 8-239-41  
How weaving is done, 10-342-45

#### ***Practical Applications***

How well did Roger Williams' principles work in his dealings with the Indians? 8-343-44

What machinery helped to establish the textile industries of Rhode Island? 8-345-46

#### ***Leisure-time Activities***

PROJECT NO. 1: Make a small

hand loom and weave a little mat.

## THE HISTORY OF RHODE ISLAND



Photo by Seibelman Syndicate

Built of sturdy granite and firm marble this huge structure, the Statehouse of Rhode Island, towers impressively over Providence, the second most im-

portant city in New England, and one of its busiest industrial centers. But in spite of its bustling air it still boasts many a relic of the past.

### RHODE ISLAND, or "LITTLE RHODY"

*The Smallest State in the Union Is One of the Busiest—  
and One of the Most Independent!*

**W**HEN Roger Williams was driven out of the Massachusetts Bay Colony in the dead of winter, 1636, he doubtless felt that a great calamity had come upon him. The wilderness lay all about—and boats did not sail daily for Europe in those brave old days. But freedom to seek God in his own way was dearer to the saintly man than mere physical comfort ever could be. So he refused to take back any of the statements that had so outraged the good folk whose minister he had been, and sought a new home in the wilderness.

The result of his heroism is to be seen even to this day. For when in June of 1636 he founded his settlement of Providence—so

named out of thankfulness for God's care and guidance—he laid the foundation of a colony which through all its history was to stand foursquare for independence and religious freedom. True to her inherited principles Rhode Island—or "little Rhody," as people affectionately call her—though the smallest state in the Union, has gone her way with no apologies for her size, and has had an influence out of all proportion to her area.

As if indeed blessed by the Power that its founder so ardently worshiped, the settlement prospered from the start. There was no trouble with the Indians under the standards of justice held to by Roger Williams. One

---

## THE HISTORY OF RHODE ISLAND

---

of the things that had angered the people of Massachusetts was his belief that the red men should be paid for the land that had been snatched away from them. Williams bought the land he settled on, and treated its former owners fairly, with the result that the Narragansett (năr'ă-găn'sët) Indians, among whom he lived, were always his staunch friends. They belonged to the great Algonquian (ăl-gôn'-kî-ăn) group, whom we have described in our story of Wisconsin; and so great was their trust in Williams that they let him persuade them to take sides with the white men against other Algonquian tribes who attacked (1636) the colonists in Massachusetts.

The promise of religious freedom naturally attracted unhappy folk from far and near. Among them was the famous Anne Hutchinson, who with William Coddington and John Clarke helped to found Portsmouth in 1638.

The next year Clarke and Coddington established Newport. In 1644 Williams was able to get a charter for the three settlements under the name of "The Providence Plantations in the Narragansett Bay." A later charter referred to the colony as "Rhode Island and the Providence Plantations," and it was in this way that the little state finally came to take its name from the island upon which Portsmouth and Newport had been built.

### Rhode Island's Rocks and Sea

At first, of course, the settlers had all they could do to grow the food they had to eat. The soil was anything but rich. Like the rest of New England the state consists

of very old and hard rocks that countless ages ago were worn down to a level plain and then uplifted and cut by rivers into rolling hills and valleys. A sinking of the land let the sea run up into the river valleys and form the ragged coast line which you see on the map. We have described the process at length in our story of Maine.

Like Maine, Rhode Island was trod under foot by the glacier, which left a stony clay instead of a rich top soil.

It was natural, then, that the settlers should turn to some occupation that paid them better than farming—and they did not have far to go. Their sheltered harbors whispered of the sea, and their hard pioneer life had taught them to wield an axe or hammer as easily as you and I can handle a pencil. They built themselves boats and ventured forth to fish and to carry on trade. By 1700 the change was well under way, and by 1750 large

boats were being built at Newport.

### The Old Whaling Industry

Those must have been picturesque craft, intended to weather the storm and make good speed if need be. Some of them were stout whalers, for well into the nineteenth century Narragansett Bay had a thriving whaling industry. Others were little fishing boats that earned a meager but steady livelihood for their hardy owners. In fact, Rhode Island still makes a tidy sum from her lobster catch and from other deep-sea fish.

And then there were the faster ships that brought riches to any owner who was not too dainty of conscience to engage in the slave trade. Those hulls were rarely empty. Off to



Photo by Brown University

This ivy-covered building, University Hall at Brown University, has seen stirring days. During the Revolution it served as barracks and hospital for American and French soldiers. Built in 1770, it is one of the oldest college buildings in America, and a fine example of the early Georgian style of architecture.



## THE HISTORY OF RHODE ISLAND



Photo by Museum of Natural History

If Nature was unkind to New England in failing to give her good farming lands, she made up for it by providing swift streams to supply abundant water

power. One such stream, shown above, turned the wheels of this old mill at Pawtucket, Rhode Island, the birthplace of the American cotton industry.

Africa they would go with a cargo of rum. This was exchanged for poor black wretches to be sold in the West Indies, where the space was filled with molasses to be taken home and made into more rum to be exchanged for more slaves to be exchanged for more molasses. Enormous profits were piled up on every voyage—and the slave trade soon became thoroughly respectable!

### A Respectable Form of Piracy

Then if a good ship were lucky enough to capture an enemy merchantman richly laden, the ship's owner got most of the spoils—and no one ever worried over the fact that this was really piracy. So commerce thrived in Rhode Island, as in all New England, and fish and agricultural products were constantly exchanged for the products of ports farther south.

With her love of independence and her thriving trade Rhode Island was not likely to be slow in joining the cause of American freedom. When the "Gaspee," a British vessel sent to enforce the hated Navigation Acts, grounded in Narragansett Bay (1772), the irate colonists burned her to the water's edge. Later, Rhode Island saw plenty of fighting, and Newport was occupied by the

British for several years. But when it came to ratifying the constitution of the new nation, her old traditions of independence prompted the little colony to hold out, and it was not until the senate passed a bill to cut off her trade with the other twelve states that she finally could make up her mind to agree to join them (1790).

Though Nature was anything but lavish in her treatment of Rhode Island, and denied fertile soil, valuable timber, and rich deposits of ore, she was considerate enough to bestow an ample supply of water power. Rhode Island rivers are short and unimportant, but they are swift. It was natural, then, that with the coming of the Industrial Revolution they should be set to work turning the wheels of the strange new machines that were to bring the state even more wealth than her commerce had brought.

### Our Country's First Spinning Jenny

The first spinning jenny in the United States was set up in Providence in 1787, and the manufacture of cotton cloth was at once under way. Before long, wool too was being spun, and a factory for making woollen goods was established (1804) at Peacedale. Then power looms were introduced, and by 1825

## THE HISTORY OF RHODE ISLAND

the making of textiles was a well established industry. The manufacture of jewelry and silverware also came to be important soon after the Revolutionary War.

As the years went by, manufacturing constantly increased, until, to-day Rhode Island is a-whirl with turning wheels. All but 2.5 percent of her people live in cities, and the greater part of them get their living in one way or another from the busy mills. She is the most densely populated state in the Union, with over 560 persons per square mile; and in proportion to her population she has the biggest industrial output. Only a few states can exceed her in the value of the cotton, worsted, and silk goods produced. They make up nearly half the value of all her manufactured products. But jewelry still is very important.

### New Competition

To be sure, the cotton mills of the South have of late years cut into Rhode Island's trade pretty heavily, for they have the advantage of cheap raw materials and cheap labor; but she has been able to compete by manufacturing her own machinery and by training workers in textile schools until they can produce a very high grade of goods. She probably will be forced to vary her manufactures more and more.

### Busy Cities

Some of these manufactures find their way out of the state on the ships that sail from Providence, which has a busy harbor and distributes oil through all New England, as well as importing coal and lumber. Newport too, though one of the most fashionable summer resorts in the United States, has a good deal of shipping. Providence, the capital, Woonsocket, Pawtucket, and Central Falls are the chief manufacturing cities. On the whole the state has given up trade for industry; her cities are not favorably situated to be great railroad centers, and her harbors are too shallow for vessels.

Rhode Island to-day has little time or taste for farming, and ranks last among the states in her agricultural output, though she does raise hay, potatoes, corn, oats, apples, and grapes. Thanks to her nearness to

the sea her climate is milder than that of northern New England, and her rainfall is abundant. Most of her hay and oats go to feed her live stock, which is more valuable than her crops. She produces a little granite, sand and gravel, and graphite, and summer visitors bring money to places like Newport and Narragansett, but most of her income is earned by her machines.

### The Famous Narragansett Pacer

Time was when southern Rhode Island had a goodly number of large farms very different from the little plots to be found in the rest of New England. The owners too were unlike the Puritan folk around them, for they were Episcopalians, largely from the South, and out of sympathy with stern Puritan ways. They bred a famous strain of horses known as "Narragansett pacers," and sold them far and wide in the day before the stagecoach, when everyone traveled on horseback. But the Narragansett pacers, like the pleasure-loving men who bred them, are now a thing of the past.

### The Spirit of Little Rhody

Rhode Island, though established in religious liberty, has been slow in granting political equality. It was only in 1928, after years of struggle, that property qualifications for voting were completely abolished and the large cities given a fairer representation. In 1935 the state government was thoroughly overhauled. To-day the state protects her workers by a workmen's compensation law and a mothers' aid law. She furnishes her people with an excellent opportunity for education, and in Brown University (1764) has one of the oldest educational institutions in the country. She long ago recognized that freedom, to be of value, must go hand in hand with knowledge. Along with the rest of New England she has had grave problems of late, as you may learn on other pages of these books. Her big textile mills were closed down, and thousands of people thrown out of employment. But once again the wheels are turning merrily, and she is learning to adapt herself to new conditions. Such has always been the spirit of Little Rhody.

## RHODE ISLAND

**AREA:** 1,214 square miles—48th in rank. Its greatest length is 48 miles; its greatest width, 37 miles.

**LOCATION:** Rhode Island, one of the New England states, lies between  $41^{\circ} 18'$  and  $42^{\circ} 3'$  N. Lat. and between  $71^{\circ} 8'$  and  $71^{\circ} 53'$  E. Long. It is bounded on the north and east by Massachusetts, on the south by the Atlantic Ocean, and on the west by Connecticut.

**PHYSICAL FEATURES:** Rhode Island is a low plain with rounded hills. The average elevation is 200 ft., and the highest point is at Durfee Hill (805 ft.). The rivers are short but swift and good sources of water power. The shore line is long, for a sinking of the land has let the sea into the river valleys, forming bays and inlets. Narragansett Bay extends 28 m. inland and contains several islands, including Rhode Is. (15 m. long, 3 m. wide) and Conanicut Is. Block Is. lies 10 m. off the coast. Into Narragansett Bay flows the Providence River, which receives the Pawtuxet and the Blackstone (70 m. long). The Pawcatuck River runs southwest and forms the boundary with Connecticut briefly before entering the Atlantic. Mount Hope Bay, an arm of Narragansett Bay, is the estuary of the Taunton River, which enters from Massachusetts. The Sakonnet River, a long bay, separates Rhode Island, also called Aquidneck, from the mainland. Narragansett Bay is hemmed in by Sakonnet Pt. on the east and Pt. Judith on the west. Along the southern coast are inlets, and scattered over the state are many lakes. The water area is 156 sq. m.

**CLIMATE:** Rhode Island has less extreme temperatures than much of the rest of New England. Providence has a mean summer temperature of  $70.9^{\circ}$  F. and a mean winter temperature of  $29.3^{\circ}$ . Its mean annual temperature is  $49.8^{\circ}$ . Its record high is  $100^{\circ}$ ; its record low,  $-27^{\circ}$ . Annual rainfall is about 48 in.

**INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING:** At Providence are Brown University and its women's component, Pembroke College, Bryant College, Catholic Teachers College, Providence College, the Rhode Island College of Pharmacy and Allied Sciences, and the Rhode Island School of Design. The state maintains Rhode Island State College at Kingston and Rhode Island College of Education at Providence.

**CHARITIES AND CORRECTION:** At Howard the state maintains a hospital for the insane, an infirmary, a reformatory for women, a school for boys, and one for girls, and the state prison. There is a school for the feeble-minded at Exeter, a home and school for children and a school for the deaf at Providence, a soldiers' home at Bristol, and a tuberculosis sanatorium at Wallum Lake. Rhode Island does not inflict capital punishment.

**POLITICAL FACTS:** Rhode Island is governed under the constitution of 1842, as amended. Laws are made by the General Assembly, consisting of the Senate, made up of the lieutenant-governor and one member from each town and city, and the House of Representatives, made up of not more than 100 members elected on the basis of population. Each city and town sends at least one member, but none is allowed more than a fourth of the total number.

The executive branch consists of the governor, lieutenant-governor, secretary of state, attorney general, and general treasurer. They are elected every two years at town and district meetings.

The supreme court consists of 5 judges, one of them the chief justice, elected by the General Assembly. The superior court is made up of 7 justices. The state is divided into 12 judicial districts, each presided over by a justice. Providence has a special police court. The district judges hold juvenile courts.

Any citizen of the United States may vote in the state elections if he is of age and has satisfied residence requirements in the state and town. Municipal elections are restricted to those who have paid a tax on property valued at \$134 or more, which excludes many voters in factory towns. State officials are nominated at state conventions. All adult males pay a poll tax of \$1, which is used for public schools.

The capital of Rhode Island is at Providence.

**NAME:** The general court of Aquidneck changed the island's name in 1644 to the "Isle of Rhodes or Rhode Island." In 1663 the title of "Rhode Island and Providence Plantations" was given to the colony. It has never been changed. Probably the name is of Dutch origin, meaning "Red Island," from the Dutch "Roodt Eylandt," a name given to the place by the Dutch navigator Adrian Block, who was impressed by the red clay along the island's shores. From Verrazano's "Revelation" comes evidence that the island was named for its supposed resemblance to the Greek island of Rhodes. The name may then mean "Island of Roses," from the Greek "Rhodos" or "Rhodes."

**NICKNAMES:** Rhode Island is called Little Rhody, for it is the smallest of the states. It is also known as the Plantation State, from its official title.

The use of arms of the gunflint pattern in the Dorr Rebellion of 1842 gave the people the name Gunflints.

**STATE FLOWER:** Violet, chosen in 1897.

**STATE SONG:** "Rhode Island" is the state song. "My Rhode Island," by Maianna Tallman and Mrs. R. L. Chase, and other songs are popular.

**STATE FLAG:** White, bearing in the center on each side a golden anchor, with a blue ribbon beneath it and the motto, "Hope," in golden letters—the whole surrounded by a circle of thirteen gold stars.

**STATE MOTTO:** "Hope," expressive of the spirit of the settlers who framed their government in the face of royalist opposition. Its use with the anchor may refer to Hebrews VI, 19: "Hope we have as an anchor of the soul."

**STATE BIRD:** Bobwhite.

**INTERESTING FACTS:** Newport is famous for yacht races, and is the scene of the races for the "America's" cup. It is a fashionable summer resort.

Rhode Island observes New Year's Day, Washington's Birthday, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Columbus Day, Election Day, Armistice Day, Thanksgiving Day, Christmas Day, and Rhode Island Independence Day on May 4.

<b>Population of state,</b> 1940, 713,346	Washington (B4) 32,493	Cranston (C2) 47,085	Providence (C2) 253,504
<b>Counties</b>	<b>Urban Places</b>	East Greenwich town (C3) 3,842	Warren town (C3) 8,158
Bristol (C3) 25,548	Barrington town (C2) 6,231	East Providence town (C2) 32,165	Warwick (C3) 28,757
Kent (B3) 58,311	Bristol town (C3) 11,159	Newport (C4) 30,532	Westerly town (A4) 11,199
Newport (C3) 46,696	Central Falls (C2) 25,248	Pawtucket (C2) 75,797	West Warwick town (B3) 18,188
Providence (B2) 550,298			Woonsocket (B1) 49,303

---

# ***The HISTORY of SOUTH CAROLINA***

---

## **Reading Unit No. 39**

### **SOUTH CAROLINA: THE PALMETTO STATE**

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

#### ***Interesting Facts Explained***

When Charleston was the great port for all the southern colonies, 8-349

When South Carolina wanted to be independent, 8-351

How the men of South Carolina drove the British out, 8-352

When South Carolina was the

political and economic leader of the South, 8-353-54

How South Carolina has fought her way back to prosperity, 8-355

Where tourists like to come in springtime, 8-355

#### ***Things to Think About***

Who were the first white men to come to South Carolina?

Why did John Locke's Fundamental Constitutions fail?

What places are named after King Charles II?

Who was John C. Calhoun?

What led to the ruin of South Carolina?

Of what importance is cotton to South Carolina?

#### ***Picture Hunt***

When do visitors like to come to Charleston? 8-352

Where is cloth made in South

Carolina? 8-353

Which are South Carolina's most important crops? 8-351, 354

#### ***Related Material***

Our country's vanishing fertility, 7-455, 465-70

The plight of the farmer, 7-459

The story of cotton, 9-27-34

What is the difference between the British and the American constitutions? 7-356

South Carolina's sister state, 8-286-95

Binding up a nation's wounds, 7-267-74

Why was Andrew Jackson called "Old Hickory"? 12-511-13

Wealth from the woods, 9-245-58

The great plantations, 8-408-10

A foe of slavery, 13-317-19

#### ***Practical Applications***

What has helped South Carolina to develop her manufactures? 8-355

Why did the South Carolina cotton bring the highest prices in the market? 8-354

#### ***Leisure-time Activities***

PROJECT NO. 1: Make a relief map of South Carolina, 8-

352.

## THE HISTORY OF SOUTH CAROLINA



Photo by the Columbia C. of C.

When the people of South Carolina decided in 1786 that Charleston was too far away from the center of things to be the seat of government, they laid out a

city in the woodlands of the middle of the state, and called the new capital Columbia. The capitol building at Columbia is shown above.

### SOUTH CAROLINA: *the* PALMETTO STATE

*The Tale of an Historic State That Has Suffered Tragic Misfortune but Is Once More Building Up a Prosperity Founded on Her Fine Natural Resources*

**T**IME was when South Carolina was one of the richest colonies in North America. Furs, deerskins, rice, tobacco, indigo, hemp, and even a little tea were shipped to England from the busy harbor at Charleston, and brought a handsome cash return to the planters who had raised them. In that day Charleston, the colonial capital, was the great port for all the southern colonies. Her wharves were crowded with provisions—salt pork, butter, hides—bound for the islands of the West Indies, and white-winged boats brought back manufactured articles from Europe and New England. At the time of the Revolution she was one of the richest and most splendid cities in America, with a brilliant and highly cultivated society. Here was one of the first theaters on the continent. Here were libraries, and a genuine interest in music.

And here was an aristocracy more exclusive than any in the colonies. The story of the downfall of all this stirring prosperity is one of the most tragic chapters in American history. Happily, the chapter is now closed, and South Carolina is once more on the road to wealth. But we must tell the story from the beginning.

The first white men to visit South Carolina were some Spaniards who sailed up the coast from Cuba in 1521. Five years later a little group of Spaniards stayed for a few months on Carolina soil. In 1562 a party of Huguenots (*hū'gē-nōt*)—or French Protestants—started a settlement on the marshy little island of Parris at the mouth of Port Royal Sound. But the little Fort Charles, founded by their leader, Jean Ribaut (*zhôN rē'bō'*), did not last very long. The year after it was established, the colonists he had

## THE HISTORY OF SOUTH CAROLINA

left there mutinied and sailed away. The life was too hard and the discipline too severe for them. No other permanent settlements were attempted for a long time, and at last the English claimed the region. In 1663 King Charles II gave to the Earl of Clarendon and seven others of his favorites all the land on the American continent between the thirty-first and thirty-sixth parallels. The new owners named the country "Carolina," and at once set about getting colonists to work their new lands. Lord Ashley, one of the proprietors to whom the land had been granted, got the help of the great English philosopher John Locke in drawing up what they thought would be an ideal form of government for this new land. But since neither of the distinguished English gentlemen had any notion of what life in a wilderness was like, their Fundamental Constitutions, as the document was called, never would work at all. For one thing, it was altogether too aristocratic. It provided for a hereditary nobility and various other Old World institutions that had no place in a new country. The document was never anything but a hindrance, and in thirty years was discarded altogether.

### "King Charles's Town"

Meanwhile the matter of settling Carolina went very slowly. In 1670 the southern part—which finally became South Carolina—was settled by a colony of some two hundred people led by one William Sayle. They established themselves at Albemarle (ălbě-mărl) Point, on the right bank of the Ashley

River, but ten years later the advantages of the neck of land between the Ashley and Cooper rivers became so clear that the colony moved over to the site where the present city of Charleston stands. Charleston, of course, is named after King Charles, just as "Carolina" is taken from the Latin form of his name, "Carolus." The owners made a point of showing their gratitude in the names they gave their settlements.

As new settlers arrived they spread out up and down the coast from Charleston, until by 1700 the colony numbered 5,500 souls. Many of them were English settlers who came up from the island of Barbados (băr-bă'dōz), which had been growing crowded. Others were persecuted French Protestants, a thrifty, able stock whose French names became important in the colony and in the young nation to be formed later.

But quarrels soon began to disturb the peace of the growing settlement. The proprietors, or owners, were too proud

and domineering to suit the settlers. They placed an annoying tax on the land, and tried (1704) to force all the people of the colony to conform to the services of the Church of England. The plan was defeated only by a vote of the English Parliament. Then, a little later (1715), other difficulties arose. The Indians of South Carolina had always been few and very friendly. Although in the back country, where there were mountains, woods, and game, the Cherokees (chěr'ō-kē) were numerous and powerful, the white settlements did not reach back into that part of the country for some time, and the Indians of the tidewater lowlands were few and feeble.



The University of South Carolina, during part of its history called "South Carolina College," was opened at Columbia in 1805. Here is a view of its charming old library.

## THE HISTORY OF SOUTH CAROLINA



Photo by the Columbia C of C

As you drive through the southern states at cotton-picking time, you will see many a scene like the one shown in the picture above, and from time to time the

road before you will be dotted with feathery wisps of white that have been blown loose by the wind. South Carolina is an important cotton-raising state.

These were Catawbas (ká-tó'bá)—of the great group that the Sioux (sōo) belonged to—and in early years the Shawnees, members of the Algonquian (ăl-gŏn'kĭ-ăn) group. The Shawnees soon moved westward. All went well until in 1715 the Spanish settlers in Florida excited the Yemassee tribe to attack the English, and the proprietors refused to send any help to the colonists. Worse still, they insisted on repealing laws which the colonists proposed for the good of the settlement. In 1719 a genuine little revolution took place, and South Carolina threw off the yoke of the rulers King Charles had given her. As a result, the colony at once came under the control of the royal power and no longer had to obey the orders of private owners.

### Why Are There Two Carolinas?

And now South Carolina began to grow in numbers and wealth. Strictly speaking, she and North Carolina had always been one colony, though the two settlements were so far apart—both in geography and in point of view—that they had been governed separately. In 1730 a boundary was drawn between them, though it had a way of shifting about until 1815. There was little in common between the two colonies.

As South Carolina's prosperity became greater, her citizens grew more and more strong-willed in insisting upon their rights. Long before any of the other twelve colonies had any such ideas, South Carolina was dis-

satisfied with royal control and was clamoring for independence. The power of the popular party was always growing, at the expense of the royal power and the power of the governor. The growing of rice and of indigo, in those days greatly used in making dyes, had become very important industries in South Carolina, and the introduction of cattle and live stock was tending to make the settlers even more independent financially. As they grew in numbers, they felt themselves freer to do what they liked. Many Germans and Scotch-Irish filtered into the region from the colonies farther north, and spread through the back country. With the settlement of Georgia there was less danger of raids from hostile Indians, and meanwhile news of the fertile, cheap lands of South Carolina spread more and more widely through the northern colonies. In 1775 the population of South Carolina was just seven times what it had been fifty years before. There had been trouble with the Cherokees (1760-61), but the white men had triumphed. It was at about this time that Andrew Jackson was born, in Union County.

Such was South Carolina when the war of the American Revolution broke out. Perhaps she would have made more money if she had remained loyal to King George, for she had been greatly favored in the way of lighter taxes and freer trade, but her principles called her to the American cause. The many Loyalists within the state made her part a particularly bloody one. In 1776 the

## THE HISTORY OF SOUTH CAROLINA

British fleet tried to attack Charleston, but was driven off. Later in the war (1780) the British did at last succeed in taking the city. When that happened the men of South Carolina began to fight in earnest. Like Virginia, South Carolina is divided into three sections, the Coastal Plain, the Piedmont (pēd'mōnt) Plateau (plā-tō'), and the Appalachian (āp'ā-lā'-chī-ān) Mountain region, a small section in the northwestern corner of the state. The hill men living in the higher land in the interior had little sympathy with the lowlanders, and had not done much fighting in the early years of the war. But when Charleston fell to the British—Charleston, the pride of the whole colony!—they were aroused. In little bands the mountain men gathered together and began to raid the British forts and outposts. One night they would attack here, the next night somewhere thirty miles away. Sumter, Marion, and Pickens were famous leaders of those little bands which annoyed and delayed the British generals, without fighting any big battles. In the end, without any one really important struggle, the mountain men of South Carolina managed to drive the British out of their territory. This was an important climax in the war, for it kept the southern wing of the British army from joining the northern wing and crushing Washington's handful of troops. For that reason the battles of

Cowpens and King's Mountain are engagements that Americans remember.

During the Revolution, South Carolina suffered greatly. She had been one of the richest of the colonies, and she had contributed generously to the American cause. As they retreated slowly out of the state, the British had captured or destroyed immense amounts of property—and because of the two evenly divided factions, Loyalists and Americans, the loss in men had also been heavy. Yet when she ratified the constitution in 1787, the prospects were bright for South Carolina's future. The petty squabbles between the "Up" and the "Low" Country were certainly not grave enough to hinder her recovery. In 1832 South Carolina showed her independent spirit by calling a convention on the subject of certain tariffs which were unpopular with her farmers. The convention decided that the tariff act was unconstitutional, and declared that the state would not obey it. A compromise was soon reached, and South Carolina won something of a moral victory. From this time on, she took the place of Virginia as a leader of the South. That is,

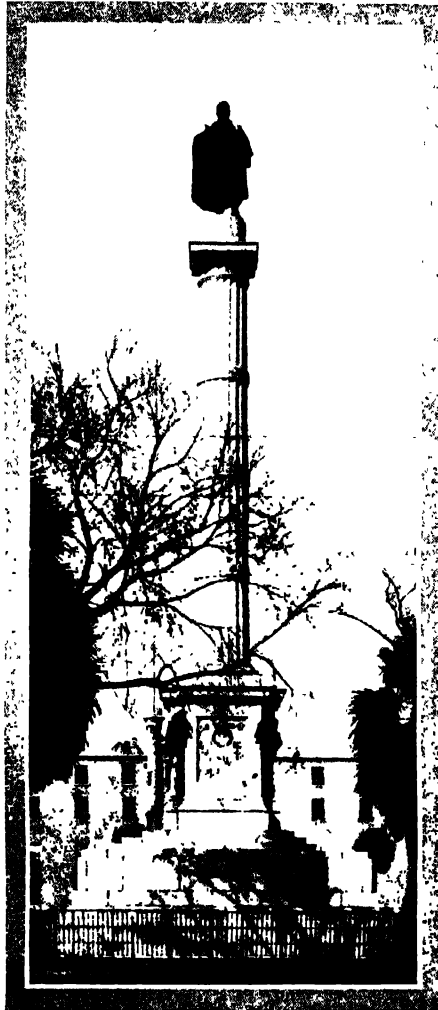


Photo by the Charleston C. of C.

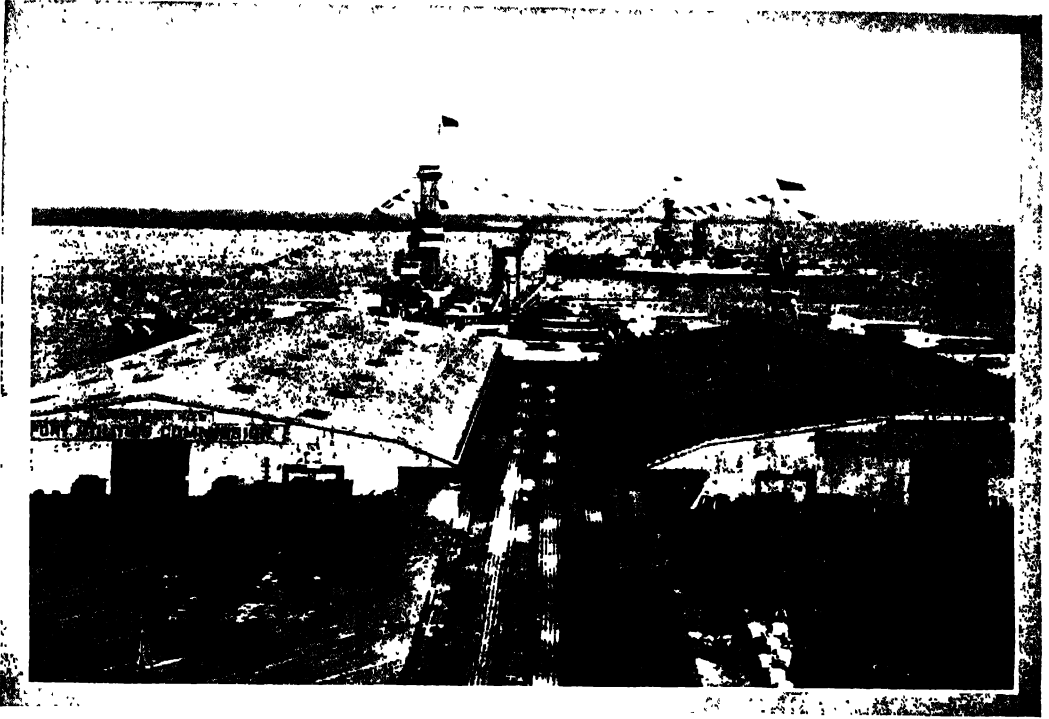
This monument was set up at Charleston in memory of South Carolina's brilliant statesman, John Caldwell Calhoun.

Charleston's beautiful old houses and gardens and its gracious dignity and charm attract many visitors to this old colonial city—especially when the azaleas and magnolias are in bloom.

under the able leadership of John C. Calhoun (kāl-hōon') she stood for the rights of the individual states as opposed to the high tariffs which the manufacturing interests of the North wanted. She was on a path that finally led to disaster.



## THE HISTORY OF SOUTH CAROLINA



Once the greatest port of the whole South, Charleston is still an important shipping center, and her piers

are built to accommodate large vessels. One of the busiest of them is shown in the picture above.

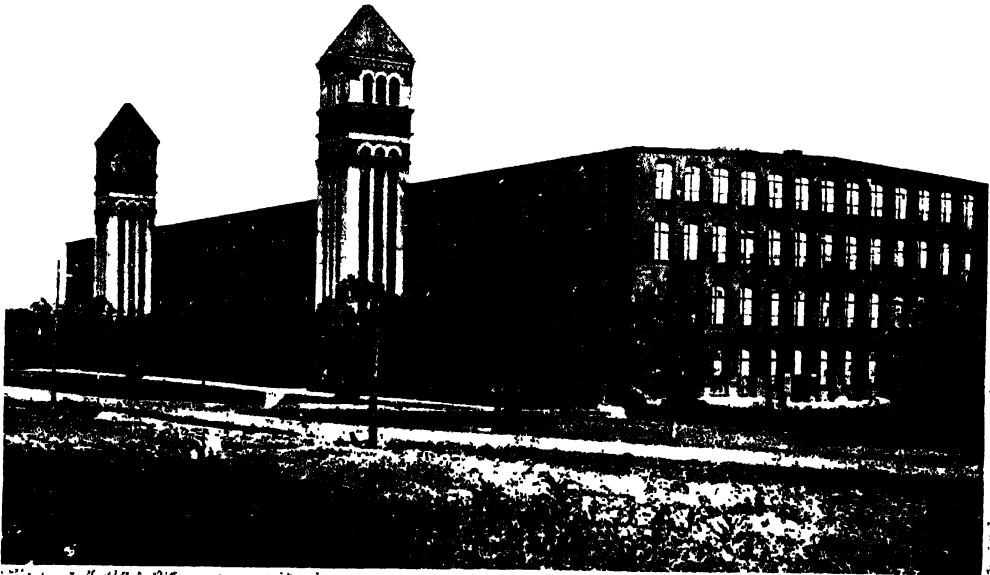


Photo by the Charleston C. of C.

South Carolina ranks high among the states in the output of her mills. The textile mill shown here is

at Columbia, which, like other cities of South Carolina, is a center for making cloth.

## THE HISTORY OF SOUTH CAROLINA



Photo by R. J. Reynolds Company

Tobacco, cotton, and corn are South Carolina's most important crops. The tobacco field above lies in the

Piedmont section, a cooler upland region that lies inland from the hot coastal plain.

And South Carolina was not only the political leader of the South. She was its economic leader as well. At the beginning of the Civil War the little state was enjoying a prosperity such as she had never known before. The growing of cotton was a flourishing industry, for in the counties of Beaufort (bū'fērt) and Charleston grew a wonderfully long-fibered cotton plant which made the finest, softest cloth of any cotton in the world. This sea-island cotton, as it is called, was famous all over the country, wherever cotton was bought and sold, and brought the very highest prices.

### Prosperity before the War

Corn, wheat, hay, tobacco, and potatoes, white and sweet, were others of South Carolina's crops. In the rich swamp lands which lined her seacoasts, slave labor was used to its best advantage in cultivating the crop of rice, one of the largest in the country. Charleston was famous for the rice she exported. A certain amount of cattle grazing was carried on in the open regions of the higher country. The yellow pine forests of South Carolina yielded turpentine and resin, as well as timber, and her fisheries and orchards were productive and valuable.

This was the happy and prosperous state on which the Civil War descended in 1861, in all its terrible fury. Manufactures were beginning to spring up, especially those treating the by-products of cotton, but in comparison with South Carolina's agriculture they were unimportant. Few large battles were fought within her borders, yet it is doubtful if any state came out of the Civil War and the Reconstruction, which followed, so terribly and completely devastated as South Carolina. Out of a white population of 291,300, she sent over 71,000 soldiers to the front. Of these soldiers more than twenty percent died of disease or in battle. The finest men of South Carolina were struck down, leaving behind the very old, the feeble, and the very young. Those who survived the disease, the hunger, and the enemy's bullets, came back to find their homes and fields entirely destroyed, their state hopelessly in debt, and a hostile group in control of their government. Sherman, marching north from Georgia, had passed through South Carolina like a destructive whirlwind. Nothing was left, the land was desolate.

So the fine old mansions along the Ashley

## THE HISTORY OF SOUTH CAROLINA

River fell into decay. The farms, long worn out with the endless planting of tobacco and cotton, no longer paid as they had paid in the past. With the passing of slave labor the rice vanished from the marshes—to be replaced by the palmetto which gives the state its name, and by great live oaks draped in long festoons of Spanish moss. Along the barren islands that rim the shore—once the haunt of pirates who preyed on the busy shipping—the sand dunes marched. They march there still. Everywhere people were poor. The Negroes starved.

### The Terrible "Reconstruction"

To rebuild seemed hopeless, far worse than exploring and settling a new region. The government was in the hands of colored people who could not read and write and of corrupt Northern adventurers who were kept in office merely by the force of Federal troops. Dishonesty was so open and shameless that few even pretended to care about honest state government. The debt of the state had been large at \$5,000,000 in 1868; by 1872 it was \$18,000,000. Most of this vast sum had gone into the pockets of grafting and dishonest officials from the North.

### Some Pressing Problems

After the overthrow of this corrupt government, politics in South Carolina was made up, for a long time, of small factional squabbles like those between the Up Country and the Low Country. There was bitter feeling between the white people and the Negroes. There are more Negroes than whites in the state, but the white people gained control and have kept it. The problems have been many and difficult. In struggling to educate her people to be intelligent and law-abiding citizens, South Carolina has had to contend with misgovernment and pressing racial problems for many years. Yet she has made real progress. Whereas the percentage of citizens who could not read and write was 35.9 in 1900 and 25.7 in 1910, it had been lowered to 14.9 in 1930. Of course, this is still much higher than the average for the rest of the states, and the rate is much higher for colored people than for whites. In 1900 the rate for Negroes was 52.8 percent

and for whites 10.5 percent. In 1930 this had sunk to 26.9 for Negroes and 5.1 percent for whites.

But in spite of all the sad handicaps which the Civil War brought upon her, South Carolina has with staunch courage fought her way back to prosperity. In the years since 1900 her advance has been noteworthy. Her manufacturing interests, now greater than her agriculture, have grown at a great rate, and for the first time she has been using the large stores of water power which the streams of her rugged uplands can develop. Northern capital has been coming in, to take advantage of the fact that here are abundant raw materials, cheap power, a climate mild enough to keep living costs down, and labor so plentiful that wages are low. Already South Carolina ranks first among the states in the Union in the output of her cotton mills, and nearly all her big cities engage in cotton manufacture to some extent. Anderson, Rock Hill, Greenville, Spartanburg, and Columbia, which has been the capital ever since 1790, all spin and weave cloth, and certain cities make clothing. Charleston is a trading and shipping center of great importance, a market for cotton and cotton by-products, especially cottonseed oil, and a considerable producer of fertilizer.

### South Carolina To-day

For several years around 1910 South Carolina was one of the leading states in the production of phosphate rock for fertilizer, but the supply has fallen off. Clay and clay products, stone, and sand and gravel are her chief paying minerals. Lumber and timber products are valuable. Great paper mills have sprung up, and the fisheries, especially at Beaufort and Charleston, are constantly growing. The state has come into great favor as a winter resort. Aiken, Beaufort, and Charleston all attract large numbers of tourists, especially in spring, when marvelously beautiful gardens make the place a fairyland. The state no longer raises rice, but she has added oats, barley, pecans, peanuts, peaches, pears, and grapes to her list of crops. And her herds of cattle are constantly growing. She is at last regaining her lost prosperity.

## SOUTH CAROLINA

**AREA:** 31,055 square miles—39th in rank.

**LOCATION:** South Carolina, one of the South Atlantic states, lies between  $32^{\circ} 2'$  and  $35^{\circ} 17'$  N. Lat. and between  $78^{\circ} 30'$  and  $83^{\circ} 20'$  W. Long. It is bounded on the north and northeast by North Carolina, on the southeast by the Atlantic Ocean, and on the southwest and west by Georgia.

**PHYSICAL FEATURES:** Most of South Carolina lies in the low, flat coastal plain and in a rolling upland region known as the Piedmont Plateau. The coast, which is some 200 miles long, is marshy for at least ten miles inland, and along the southern part are a great many islands. The land rises gradually to what is known as the fall line, where the harder rocks of the Piedmont Plateau begin. The elevation of the plateau is about 500 ft. along this line, which runs from Augusta, Georgia, through Columbia and Camden up to the northeast corner of the state. The plateau, which has been greatly dissected by rivers, rises to 1,000 ft. in the northwest. Here it meets the Blue Ridge, a part of the Appalachian mountain system. The Blue Ridge forms the northwest border of the state, and at certain points reaches an elevation of over 3,000 ft. Sassafras Mountain (3,548 ft.) is the highest point in South Carolina. The mean elevation of the state is 350 ft.

The high northwest corner of the state gives rise to some of South Carolina's most important rivers, which find their way southeast to the Atlantic. Here in the northwest the Chattooga forms the boundary with Georgia and enters the Tugaloo, another river that flows along the boundary and helps to form the Savannah (314 m. long). The Savannah forms the rest of the boundary line between the two states. The Combahee (140 m. long) and the Edisto (150 m. long) both rise in the coastal plain and enter the Atlantic northeast of the Savannah. But the Santee (143 m. long), which, with its branches, drains about half the state, has its headwaters in the mountains, for it is formed by the union of the Wateree (300 m. long): called the Catawba in North Carolina—and the Congaree (60 m. long), and the Congaree in turn is formed by the union of the Broad (200 m. long) and the Saluda (20 m. long). The Wateree and the Broad rise in the mountains of North Carolina, but the Saluda's headwaters are in the northwest corner of South Carolina. North of the Santee the Black River (150 m. long) lies entirely in the coastal plain, and the same is true of the Great Pee Dee and its branches—the Little Pee Dee, the Waccamaw (550 m. long), and the Lynch (140 m. long). But the Great Pee Dee is really a continuation in South Carolina of a stream that rises in the mountains of North Carolina and is known there as the Yadkin. The total length of the stream is 435 miles. In the coastal plain all these rivers are sluggish and likely to overflow their banks, but in the Piedmont Plateau they are swift and give good water power. South Carolina has no lakes of note, but along the coast are many bays and inlets which give the state plenty of good harbors. Behind the islands offshore runs the Intracoastal Waterway that our government is building along the eastern coast of the country. The state has 494 square miles of water. There is no irrigated land.

**CLIMATE:** The temperature in South Carolina depends on situation and elevation. The coast is moist and semitropical. At Charleston the mean January temperature is  $50^{\circ}$  F., the mean July temperature  $81^{\circ}$ . The record high there is  $104^{\circ}$ , the record low  $7^{\circ}$ . But these figures fall as one goes inland. The Piedmont region is a good deal more bracing than the coast, and the mountains are cool in summer and cold in winter. The mean annual temperature in the coastal plain is  $66^{\circ}$ , but for the whole state it is about  $63^{\circ}$ .

The winters are mild, and places like Beaufort and Aiken are popular winter resorts. The mean annual rainfall for the state is nearly 48 in. Snow is not often seen in the southern coastal plain, but several inches of it may fall in other parts of the state. The growing season lasts 245 days along the coast; occasionally hurricanes strike this region, but as a rule they have spent their force.

**INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING:** The more important institutions in the state are the College of Charleston at Charleston, The Citadel at Charleston, Clemson Agricultural College at Clemson, Coker College for women at Hartsville, Converse College at Spartanburg, Erskine College at Due West, Furman University at Greenville, Greenville Women's College, a part of Furman, at Greenville, Lander College for women at Greenwood, Limestone College for women at Gaffney, Newberry College at Newberry, Presbyterian College at Clinton, South Carolina State College at Orangeburg, University of South Carolina at Columbia, Winthrop College for women at Rock Hill, Wofford College at Spartanburg, the Agricultural and Mechanical College for colored students at Orangeburg. In 1898 the first textile school in the United States was opened at Clemson to train technical mill workers and foremen.

**CHARITIES AND CORRECTION:** South Carolina has a school for the deaf and blind, training schools for the feeble-minded, two sanatoriums for the tuberculous, a state hospital, the Confederate Infirmary, the John de la Howe Industrial Schools, industrial schools for white and for colored boys and girls, the Fariwold Industrial School, the Catawba Indian Schools, and a state penitentiary. The state inflicts capital punishment by electrocution.

**POLITICAL FACTS:** South Carolina has had six constitutions, and is at present governed under one adopted in 1895. It has since been amended. Laws are made by a General Assembly which meets every year in January. It is composed of two houses, a Senate and a House of Representatives. The Senate contains 46 members, one from each county, elected for a four-year term. The House contains 124 members elected for two-year terms and apportioned according to population. The governor, who heads the executive branch, serves for four years, as other state officers do, and he may not be reelected.

The judiciary is headed by a supreme court with one chief and four associate judges elected by the General Assembly for ten-year terms. The fourteen circuit judges are elected in the same way, and serve for four years. Justices of the peace are appointed by the governor. Two circuit courts make up a court of common pleas.

Voters must have lived in the state for two years, in the county for one year, and in the polling precinct for four months, and must have paid a poll tax six months before any election. Ministers and teachers may vote after a six-months' residence if they are otherwise qualified. Idiots, paupers, convicts, and the insane are disqualified. Strict literacy tests are given to voters, though an applicant may be allowed to cast a vote if he pays taxes on property assessed at \$300 or more. The unit of local government is the county, which must contain at least one one-hundred-and-twenty-fourth of the population, must have assessed taxable property amounting to at least \$1,500,000, and must not be less than 400 square miles in area. No city or town may be organized without the consent of the majority of the electors.

Divorce is not permitted for any cause. No person who denies the existence of a God may hold office under the constitution. Corporation and anti-discrim-

## SOUTH CAROLINA—Continued

ination laws are stringent. Many laws have been passed tending toward the prevention of lynching.

The capital of South Carolina is at Columbia.

**MONUMENTS:** Castle Pinckney, near Charleston, an historical fortification, is a national monument.

King's Mountain, near King's Creek, is a national military park, and at Cowpens, near Spartanburg, is a national military site.

**GAME AND BIRD RESERVATIONS:** Cape Romain National Wildlife Refuge in Charleston County protects black ducks, teal, scaup, wild turkeys, brown pelicans, shorebirds, terns, deer, raccoons, and sea turtles. Carolina Sandhills Refuge in Chesterfield County protects wood ducks, quail, and wild turkeys. Santee Refuge in Clarendon and Berkeley counties protects waterfowl, mourning doves, herons, raccoons, and others. Savannah Refuge in Jasper and Beaufort counties and extending into Georgia protects birds mentioned above, white ibis, and raccoons.

There are 1,422,604 acres of national forest.

**NAME:** The origin of the name has been fully discussed under North Carolina.

**NICKNAMES:** South Carolina is called the Iodine State from the iodine-producing plants that grow abundantly there. It is also called the Palmetto State from the large number of palmettos growing along the coast. Its fine rice crop gives it the title of the Rice State. A class of very poor people who live on its sandy ridges give it the name of the Sand-lapper State, for they are sometimes said to lap up sand for food. Because of its large areas of swampy land South Carolina is called the Swamp State.

The people of South Carolina have a great many

nicknames. They are, for instance, called Clay-eaters, Palmettos, Ricebirds, Sandhillers, and Weasels. The last term applies especially to the people living in out-of-the-way parts of the state, but all the titles are applied particularly to the poorer classes of white people.

**STATE FLOWER:** Yellow jasmine; chosen by a selected legislative commission in 1924.

**STATE SONG:** "Carolina" is the state song, but "South Carolina," with words by Henry Timrod and music by Erroll Hay Colcock, is frequently sung.

**STATE FLAG:** A blue field with a palmetto tree in the center and a crescent near the staff in the upper corner; adopted by legislative action in January, 1861.

**STATE MOTTO:** South Carolina has two mottoes. One is "Animis Opibusque Parati," meaning "Ready in Soul and Resource"—taken from Virgil's Aeneid. The other is "Dum Spiro, Spero," meaning "While I Breathe, I Hope"—referring to the figure of Hope on the state seal. Two other Latin mottoes appear on the state seal, but the two just cited are more definitely the official ones of the commonwealth.

**STATE BIRD:** The mocking bird is the state bird, though the Carolina wren was adopted (1931) by the South Carolina Federated Women's Clubs.

**INTERESTING FACTS:** South Carolina observes New Year's Day, Washington's Birthday, Good Friday, Independence Day, Labor Day, Election Day, Armistice Day, Thanksgiving Day, Christmas Day, Robert E. Lee's Birthday on January 19, Jefferson Davis's Birthday on June 3, and Confederate Memorial Day on May 10.

A certain number of Catawba Indians live in the state.

<b>Population of state, 1940, 1,899,804</b>		Fairfield (C2)	24,187	Pickens (B2)	37,111	Bamberg * (C3)	3,000
<b>Counties</b>		Florence * (E2)	70,582	Richland * (D3)	104,843	Barnwell (C3)	1,922
Abbeville (B2)	22,931	Georgetown (E3)	26,352	Saluda (C2)	17,192	Batesburg * (C3)	2,933
Aiken (C3)	49,916	Greenville (B2)	136,580	Spartanburg		Beaufort * (D4)	3,185
Allendale (C4)	13,040	Greenwood (B2)	40,083	(C2)	127,733	Belton (B2)	2,119
Anderson (B2)	88,712	Hampton (C4)	17,465	Sumter (D3)	52,463	Bennettsville *	
		Horry (E3)	51,451	Union (C2)	31,360	(E2)	4,895
Bamberg 1 (C3)	18,643	Jasper (C4)	11,011	Williamsburg *		Bethune (D2)	620
Barnwell (C3)	20,138	Kershaw 2 (D2)	32,913	(E3)	41,011	Bingham (E2)	101
Beaufort (D4)	22,037	Lancaster (D2)	33,542	York 3 (C2)	58,663	Bishopville *	
Berkeley 2 (E3)	27,128	Laurens (B2)	44,185			(D2)	2,995
Calhoun (D3)	16,229	Lee 2 (D2)	24,908			Black-burg (C1)	1,917
Charleston 1		Lexington * (C3)	35,994			Blackstock (C2)	175
(E4)	121,105	McCormick 5				Blackville (C3)	1,456
Cherokee 3 (C1)	33,290	(B3)	10,367			Blaney (D2)	146
Chester (C2)	32,579	Marion (E2)	30,107			Blenheim (E2)	237
Chesterfield (D2)	35,963	Marlboro (E2)	33,281			Bluffton (D4)	459
Clarendon 4 (D3)	11,500	Newberry 4 (C2)	33,577			Bonneau (E3)	493
Colleton 1 (D4)	26,268	Oconee (A2)	36,512			Bowman (D3)	799
Darlington (E2)	45,198	Orangeburg (D3)	63,707			Branchville (D3)	1,351
Dillon (E2)	29,625					Brunson (C4)	542
Dorchester (D3)	19,928						
Edgefield 5 (C3)	17,894						

### Cities and Towns

[Places marked with an asterisk (\*) were classified as urban in 1940]

Abbeville * (B2)	4,930	Calhoun (B2)	761
Aiken * (C3)	6,168	Calhoun Falls	
Allendale (C3)	2,217	(B2)	1,832
Anderson * (B2)	19,424	Camden * (D2)	5,747
Andrews * (E3)	2,008	Cameron (D3)	624
Appleton (C3)	198	Campobello (B1)	389
Aynor (E3)	537	Carlisle (C2)	303

<sup>1</sup> Part of Colleton annexed to Bamberg in 1920

<sup>2</sup> Part of Berkeley annexed to Charleston in 1921

<sup>3</sup> Part of York annexed to Cherokee in 1921

<sup>4</sup> Part of Clarendon annexed to Sumter in 1921, and part of Sumter annexed to Clarendon in 1922.

<sup>5</sup> Part of Edgefield annexed to McCormick annexed to Edgefield, in 1921

<sup>6</sup> Part of Williamsburg annexed to Florence in 1921

<sup>7</sup> Part of Kershaw annexed to Lee in 1921, and part of Lee annexed to Kershaw in 1925

<sup>8</sup> Parts of Lexington annexed to Newberry and Richland in 1920 and 1922, respectively

# SOUTH CAROLINA—Continued

Cayce (C3) .. 1,476	Greenville * (B2) 14,734	Monetta (C3) 242	Scotia (C4) . . . 238
Central (B2) 1,496	Greenwood * (B2) 13,020	Mount Carmel (B2, B3) 114	Scranton (E3) 438
Chapin (C2) 311	Greer * (B2) 2,940	Mount Croghan (D2) 209	Seiglingville (C3) 143
Chappells (C2) 195	Hampton (C4) 997	Mount Pleasant (E4) 1,698	Sellers (E2) 681
Charleston * (E4) 71,275	Hardeeville (C4) 1,361	Mountville (C2) 139	Seneca (B2) 2,155
Cheraw * (E2) 4,497	Harleyville (D3) 381	Mullins * (E2) 4,392	Sharon (C2) 388
Chesnee (C1) 827	Hartsville * (D2) 5,399	Myrtle Beach (F3) 1,597	Silverstreet (C2) 146
Chester * (C2) 6,392	Heath Springs (D2) 570	Neeses (C3) 164	Simpsonville (B2) 1,298
Chesterfield (D2) 1,263	Helena (C2) 497	Newberry * (C2) 7,510	Smoaks (D3) 168
Clinton * (C2) 5,704	Hemingway (E3) 536	Nichols (E2) 292	Smyrna (C1) 133
Clio (E2) 821	Hickory Grove (C1) 272	Ninety Six (B2) 1,453	Snelling (C3) 128
Clover * (C1) 3,067	Hilda (C3) 246	Norris (B2) 177	Society Hill (E2) 687
Columbia * (C3) 62,396	Hodges (B2) 303	North (C3) 733	Spartanburg * (C2) 32,249
Conway * (E3) 5,066	Holly Hill (D3) 1,062	North Augusta * (C3) 2,629	Springfield (C3) 786
Cope (D3) 280	Honea Path * (B2) 2,765	Norway (C3) 488	Starr (B2) 349
Cordova (D3) 139	Inman (B1) 1,115	Olanta (E3) 515	Summerton (D3) 958
Coronaca (B2) 192	Iva (B2) 1,285	Olar (C3) 528	Summerville * (D3) 3,023
Cottageville (D4) 544	Jefferson (D2) 547	Orangeburg * (D3) 10,521	Summit (C3) 73
Cowpens (C1) 1,343	Johnsonville (E3) 464	Pacolet (C2) 352	Sumter * (D3) 15,874
Cross Hill (C2) 525	Johnston (C3) 1,100	Pageland (D2) 989	Swansea (C3) 950
Darlington * (E2) 6,236	Jonesville (C2) 1,182	Pamphco (E3) 555	Sycamore (C3) 324
Denmark (C3) 2,056	Kershaw (D2) 1,264	Parkville (B3) 168	Tatum (E2) 181
Dillon * (E2) 3,867	Kinards (C2) 234	Patrick (D2) 270	Timmonsville (E2) 1,979
Donalds (B2) 271	Kingstree * (E3) 3,182	Pavville (D3) 191	Trenton (C3) 408
Due West (B2) 593	Kline (C3) 282	Peak (C2) 147	Troy (B2, B3) 224
Dunbarton (C3) 231	Lake City * (E3) 2,522	Pelton (C3) 212	Turkeyville (D3) 234
Duncan (B2) 631	Lamar (D2) 921	Pendleton (B2) 1,278	Ulmers (C3) 169
Easley * (B2) 5,183	Lancaster * (D2) 4,430	Perry (C3) 141	Union * (C2) 8,478
Eastover (D3) 473	Landrum (B1) 1,289	Pickens (B2) 1,637	Vance (D3) 125
Eau Claire * (D3) 3,508	Lane (E3) 297	Pinewood (D3) 456	Varnville (C4) 917
Ebenezer (E2) 409	Latta (E2) 1,334	Plum Branch (B3) 142	Wagener (C3) 588
Edgefield (C3) 2,119	Laurens * (B2) 6,894	Pomaria (C2) 263	Walhalla * (A2) 2,820
Edgemoor (C2) 217	Leesville (C3) 1,217	Port Royal (D4) 342	Waterboro * (D4) 3,373
Ehrhardt (C3) 407	Lexington (C3) 1,033	Princeton (B2) 167	Waterloo (B2) 150
Elko (C3) 206	Liberty (B2) 2,240	Prosperity (C2) 719	Wellford (B2) 454
Ellenton (C3) 532	Lincolnton (D3) 261	Reevesville (D3) 217	West Greenville (B2) 2,233
Ellott (D2) 270	Little Mountain (C2) 251	Reidville (B2) 214	Westminster (A2) 2,014
Elloree (D3) 1,123	Livingston (C3) 178	Richburg (C2) 183	West Union (A2) 449
Estill (C4) 1,280	Loris (F2) 1,238	Ridgeland (D4) 1,021	White Rock (C2) 141
Eutawville (D3) 496	Lowndesville (B2) 201	Ridge Spring (C3) 661	Whitmire * (C2) 3,272
Fairfax (C4) 1,379	Luray (C4) 162	Ridgeville (D3) 593	Williams (D3) 218
Florence * (E2) 16,054	Lynchburg (D2) 382	Ridgeway (D2) 408	Williamston * (B2) 2,509
Foreston (D3) 210	McBee (D2) 587	Rock Hill * (C2) 15,009	Walliston (C3) 1,107
Fort Mill * (D1) 2,919	McClellanville (E3) 431	Rowesville (D3) 402	Windsor (C3) 151
Fountain Inn (D2) 1,346	McColl (E2) 2,391	Ruby (D2) 337	Winnabow * (C2) 3,181
Furman (C4) 380	McCormick (B3) 1,456	St. George (D3) 1,908	Woodford (C3) 211
Gaffney * (C1) 7,636	Manning (D3) 2,381	St. Matthews (D3) 2,187	Woodruff * (C2) 3,508
Georgetown * (E3) 5,559	Marion * (E2) 5,746	St. Stephens (E3) 1,185	Yemassee (D4) 684
Gilbert * (C3) 153	Moncks Corner (E3) 1,165	Salley (C3) 443	York * (C2) 3,495
Glenn Springs (C2) 134		Saluda (C2) 1,516	Zion (E2) 216
Govan (C3) 113			
Gray Court (B2) 401			
Greeleyville (E3) 633			

\* Returned as Lewiedale in 1930.

---

# ***The HISTORY of SOUTH DAKOTA***

---

## **Reading Unit**

**No. 40**

**RANGE 40**

### **SOUTH DAKOTA: THE COYOTE STATE**

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

#### ***Interesting Facts Explained***

South Dakota, a prairie state, 8-358  
How the Missouri River divides South Dakota into two sections, 8-359  
The Bad Lands, 8-359  
French fur traders and the Sioux Indians, 8-359  
When Lewis and Clark explored

South Dakota, 8-360  
How Custer freed South Dakota from the Indian raids, 8-360  
When the Dakotas were admitted to the Union, 8-361  
South Dakota's excellent schools, 8-361  
What a "dust bowl" is like, 8-363

#### ***Picture Hunt***

Why are the Bad Lands said to be "like a museum of the life of thousands of years ago"? 8-360

What did Gutzon Borglum carve out on the granite walls of Mount Rushmore? 8-361

#### ***Related Material***

Which is the finest of all wild oxen? 4-390  
In what ways do the antelopes resemble the deer? 4-415  
America turns to the West, 7-213-16  
What do we learn from fossils? 3-62-63  
How are canyons formed? 1-18  
How was a deer frozen in an old-time logging camp? 9-246

What important things do our great forests give us? 9-245-58  
What is done in a modern mine to save gold from being wasted or lost? 9-394  
What difference does a dry, hot climate make to trees and plants? 2-197  
Our country's vanishing fertility, 7-455, 465-70

#### ***Practical Applications***

How did the coming of the steamboat on the Missouri help the fur trade? 8-360  
What has been done to overcome

the "dust bowls" of South Dakota and other regions? 8-363

#### ***Leisure-time Activities***

**PROJECT NO. 1:** Draw a map of South Dakota and mark on it the chief rivers, the Black Hills, the Bad Lands, and the cities, Pierre and Lead.

**PROJECT NO. 2:** Make a copy of the table illustrating when the various forms of life were first found in the record of the rocks, 3-64.

---

## THE HISTORY OF SOUTH DAKOTA



Various fur-trading posts were built in an early day along the Missouri River near the present site of Pierre, the capital of South Dakota; but the city itself

was not laid out until 1880. The picture shows the state capitol, and beyond it the rolling prairie land so characteristic of most of the state.

### SOUTH DAKOTA: *the* COYOTE STATE

*The Fertile Soil and Never Failing Sun of South Dakota Have Attracted Thousands of Farmers to This Land of Golden Wheat and Golden Ore*

**C**LOSE against our northern border, at the very heart of our continent, lie two states so much alike in appearance, occupation, and history that they are often spoken of as the Twin Sisters. Both are farming states, and both specialize in the production of grain. Both have the same stimulating climate, with clear skies, keen dry winds, cold winters, and warm summers. Both have been settled by a hardy race of men, who have had to withstand grasshoppers and flood and drought, boom time and depression, in order to build up a civilization that is eager for progress and devoted to education. But each state has plenty of features that are all its own, and the differences between North and South Dakota are as important as the similarities. We shall speak here of the more southerly of these

twin states, and of her rôle in our nation.

South Dakota, like North Dakota, is of course a prairie state. In the east she forms a part of the Prairie Plains region, and in the west a part of the Great Plains. Both these regions consist of rolling prairie lands covered with low, irregular hills; flat or very slightly sloping beds of rocks underly the whole. At several points, especially in the east, long lines of low hills form dividing lines between river systems. In the extreme northeast one such modest range is called the Coteau des Prairies (kó'tō' dě prā'ri), or the "prairie divide," which forms a divide between the tributaries of the Minnesota and James rivers. Then, in the central part of the state is another ridge, called the Coteau du (dü) Missouri, which serves as a dividing line between the James and the Missouri rivers.



## THE HISTORY OF SOUTH DAKOTA

The Missouri River, which runs up and down the state roughly northwest and southeast, divides South Dakota's surface into two very different sections. To the east, where the glacier deposited thick layers of rich soil, the earth is fertile enough to support vegetation of every sort. Here are the greater number of South Dakota's farms, set in a countryside dotted over with lakes and streams; here are towns and a few small cities. It is a flourishing, comfortable, prosperous community.

Just as in North Dakota, the land west of the Missouri was untouched by the glacier; it is too dry and unproductive to raise good crops, and the action of water has cut it up into ravines and gulches. It was once called the Bad Lands. Five great tributaries of the Missouri which flow east and west have carved deep canyons and gorges out of the soft clays and sands. These five rivers are the Grand, the Moreau (mô-rô'), the Cheyenne (shī-ēn'), the Bad, and the White rivers. It is silt from those five rivers that colors the Missouri such a deep yellow, and deepens the color of the chocolate Mississippi below St. Louis, where the Missouri joins it.

### One of Nature's Museums

Along the course of the White River, which has worn the deepest valley of all the five streams, are thousands of ancient fossils, a shadowy picture of the wild life which covered the region long before the glacier came. So many thousands of stony skeletons have been unearthed here that exploring scientists have imagined some great catastrophe to have overwhelmed the land long ages ago. Otherwise it is hard to account for the destruction and burial of

such an enormous number of these strange and fascinating ancient creatures.

Finally, in the southwest corner of the state, where they partly reach over the border into Wyoming, lie the Black Hills, a tremendous dome-shaped uplift of very complicated rocks. Originally this layer of

rock must have looked, in bird's-eye view, very much like a tremendous egg lying with just a little of its surface sticking out above the level of the surrounding earth. But wind and water have sliced off a section of this protruding bulge so as to lay open part of the interior of the egg and part of its complicated structure. This job has been very irregularly done, however, and as a result the region contains not only the highest but also the most rugged and uneven ground in the state. Harney Peak in these hills reaches a height of 7,242 feet— a real mountain. The ragged and heavily wooded countryside provides for South Dakota a magnificent vacation resort of great charm and



The building above is the entrance to the Gymnasium and Armory of the University of South Dakota, at Vermilion in the southeast corner of the state.

unusual scenic beauty.

The first explorers to visit South Dakota came with Louis-Joseph La Vérendrye (vā-rôN'drē'), who came (1743) from Canada to visit this part of New France. Other French fur traders followed, coming up the Missouri or down the Red River of the North or westward along the Minnesota. All were eager to buy pelts from the Sioux Indians. Just as in most of the prairie states, the Sioux (sōo) held absolute sway over the plains, hunting the buffalo, antelope, and elk, and sending war parties against any tribe that dared to question their power. One of the most interesting of the Sioux tribes were the Mandans, who lived along the Missouri River in the Dakota country. They were the

## THE HISTORY OF SOUTH DAKOTA



Photo by the Rine Studios

Few travelers would have cared to cross the dry gulches and knife-edged divides of what were once the Bad Lands. But to-day we can drive through the most spectacular part of them on a broad highway, and admire their startling sculpturing and lovely rainbow colors without feeling the slightest discomfort. These layers of sand and clay are sometimes quite wide and sometimes so narrow that they seem like ribbons stretching across the land. They were laid down in river flood-plains in the Tertiary, the period which

began after the dinosaurs had died out, and which closed with the coming of the great Ice Age. In this material are found the bones of a variety of strange animals—mostly mammals—no longer living to-day. Early ancestors of the dog and bear family, three-toed horses about the size of sheep, camels, and tremendous creatures distantly related to our modern rhinoceros—all these are fossils which the fine clays have preserved. The brilliant earth is like a museum of the life of thousands of years ago.

only Sioux who had taken up agriculture. Behind a high stockade of posts they gathered their villages of stout round houses with cone-shaped roofs. Most of the Sioux lived in earth-covered lodges in winter and in cone-shaped, skin-covered teepees in summer. A teepee differed from the eastern wigwam in that it was portable.

During 1804 and 1805 Lewis and Clark, who had been sent to explore this region acquired (1803) so recently from France in the Louisiana Purchase, passed through the country of the Sioux and left us the first really reliable description of it. Soon afterward the American Fur Company, in the management of which John Jacob Astor played so large a part, undertook to found permanent settlements in South Dakota. The use of the steamboat, which made its first trip up the Missouri in 1831, brought St. Louis and other points of civilization to the south and east within easy reach and helped the fur trade greatly. Fort Pierre (1817), across the Missouri from the site of Pierre (pēr), the present capital of South Dakota, was soon a flourishing little

frontier settlement with a promising future.

But the fur trade died out around 1855, and the Civil War and the attacks of the ferocious Sioux Indians brought progress almost to a standstill in South Dakota. The raids of the Sioux were especially deadly. From 1863 to 1865 the redskins attacked the few scattered settlements in the eastern part of the state with great regularity and terrible effect. Under Spotted Tail, Red Cloud, and Sitting Bull they terrorized the feeble settlements of South Dakota long after other states had driven them out. Especially in 1867 and the period from 1875 to 1896, when they were fighting not only for their freedom but for their very lives as well, their raids spread havoc and terror all along the frontier. General George A. Custer, who later died so heroically battling the Sioux in Montana, was chosen in 1873 to free the Dakota settlements from the Indian raids. In the course of his campaign he discovered the Black Hills, and he also discovered the fact that gold was lying hidden there. And gold there was! It was not long before the whole frontier knew of it. The

## THE HISTORY OF SOUTH DAKOTA

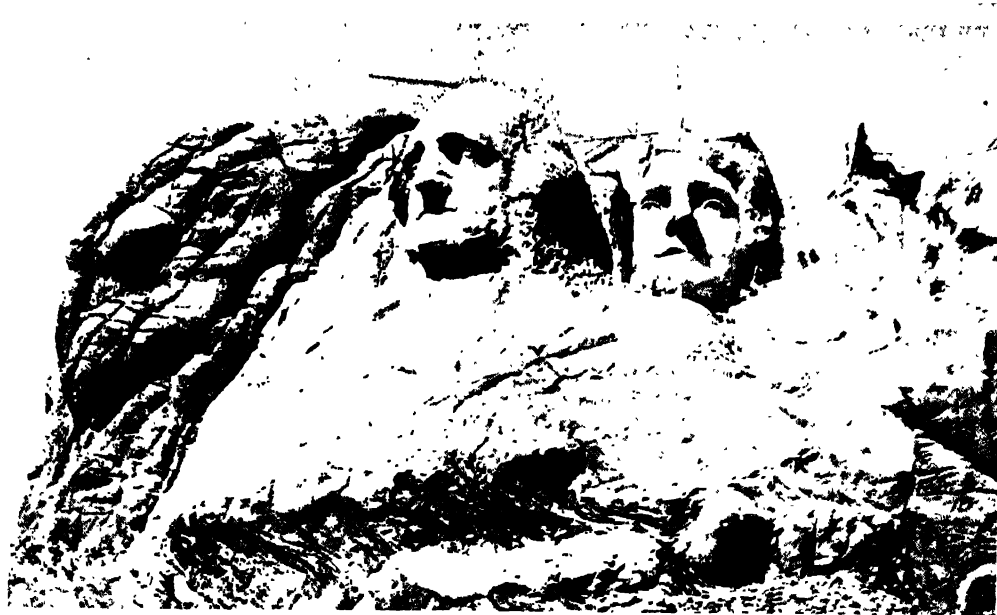


Photo by the Rose Studio

From the granite walls of Mount Rushmore in South Dakota was hewn a colossal memorial to four famous Americans who helped to make the United States a great nation. You can easily recognize the majestic countenances of Washington and Jefferson, although they are not quite finished. Later the sculptor, Gutzon

Borglum, and his helpers added the faces of Abraham Lincoln and Theodore Roosevelt. These tremendous heads, which measure sixty feet from crown to chin, were cut exactly to scale from small models in the artist's studio. An inscription carries a brief history of the country written by Calvin Coolidge.

completion of a railroad (1873) from Chicago to Sioux City, Iowa, helped bring the people in; General Custer's victory over the Sioux gave the settlers courage; and the lure of the bright yellow metal drew them like moths to a flame. The population, largely drawn from foreign lands, grew rapidly during this time, which is known as the "boom years." And as it grew, a desire for statehood grew with it. In 1887 the two states of North and South Dakota were cut out of the Dakota Territory, and in 1889 they were both admitted to the Union as separate states.

From this period dates South Dakota's school system—one of the most effective and excellent in the country, as the state's low percentage of citizens who do not know how either to read or write proves so well. As in North Dakota this figure of 1.2 percent is all the more remarkable in view of the overwhelming numbers of people living on farms. It is very hard to put good schools within reach of children living in scattered farmhouses. The state has a number of

thriving schools of higher education as well.

Of course, like most of her neighbors, South Dakota has always been for the most part an agricultural state. She ranks high in the percentage of people living on farms. The fertile glacial drift, made even richer by occasional deposits of vegetable mould, is ideal soil for farming. Wherever the water supply is sufficient, agriculture flourishes. But unlike her sister state to the north, South Dakota has had and still does have mining and lumbering industries. The largest and most valuable of these interests centers around that discovery of General Custer's—the gold deposits in the Black Hills. Here, at the little city of Lead (léd), near the famous old frontier town of Deadwood, was the largest gold mine in the United States. This was the famous Homestake Mine, which has been worked continuously ever since 1884. Nowadays gold is mined mostly in connection with copper and lead. But though it is not worked to capacity the rich vein holds gold in first place in

---

## THE HISTORY OF SOUTH DAKOTA

---

the list of the state's minerals. Yet it is a strange fact that for ten years after its discovery this enormous source of wealth was hardly scratched. Poor railroad and river transportation held up development until 1884, when the mine suddenly blossomed forth as one of South Dakota's most productive sources of income. Other minerals that pay well are stone, clay, and sand and gravel.

### **Factory Materials from the Farms**

In manufacturing South Dakota, like her sister state, depends largely on the produce of her farms for raw materials. Butter, cheese, and other milk products share first importance with flour, feed, and other grain products. But unlike North Dakota, South Dakota has forests, mostly yellow pine and spruce, in the Black Hills region. The value of her timber products is not tremendous, but it is well worth counting. The only manufacturing city of importance is Sioux Falls, where the falls of the Big Sioux River furnish abundant supplies of water power for slaughterhouses, wood-working factories, and dairies. On the whole, South Dakota's manufactures are fairly well scattered over the state, but are not of great importance. In 1939 only four states had a manufactured output of lower value.

### **Wheat vs. Corn**

All this means that South Dakota depends greatly upon her agriculture. Wheat, hay, corn, oats, and barley are by far the most important of her crops, together yielding as much as \$370,000,000 in a year. Wheat was at first by far the largest crop in the state. Very little corn was grown, for the standard varieties could not stand the severe climate. But about 1900 new varieties of corn were developed, and the crop became for a time the most valuable one in the state. To-day it again is leading. Potatoes, flaxseed, rye, vegetables, and hardy fruits are other less important crops which South Dakota raises successfully.

Hand in hand with the growing of grain and forage goes the raising of live stock. Pigs and dairy cattle, first raised in the southeastern part of the state, have become steadily more important, and now are found

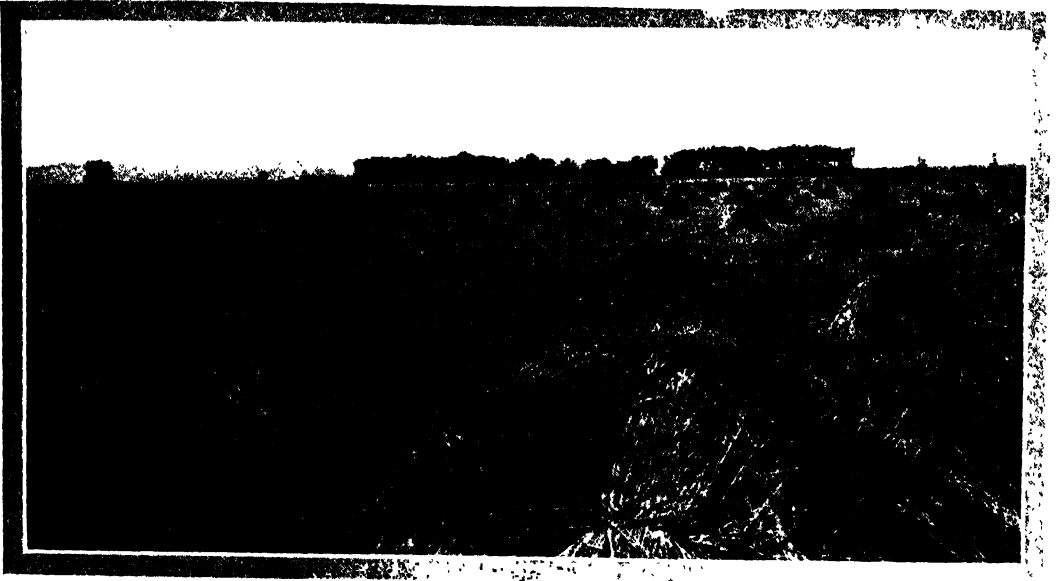
everywhere except in the worst sections of what used to be called the Bad Lands. In her output of butter South Dakota is not a leading state but she holds a creditable place and reaps a good profit for her labor. In the same way she ranks well in the number of cattle growing on her farms. In the west, where the ground is rough and forage is scanty, sheep are more profitable than cattle, for they are hardy, can devour low and very tough grass, and can take care of themselves without very much supervision. Even more important, the price of wool and mutton did not drop so fast in the great agricultural depression following World War I as did the prices of other live stock. As a result sheep have become more and more important in South Dakota.

### **How a Dust Bowl Is Made**

Like many of the neighboring prairie states, South Dakota has so many lakes and so many rivers that one might wonder how her supply of water could ever fail. Yet lately the matter has become a question of burning importance—not only for South Dakota but for the whole nation to answer. In the first place many of the rivers of South Dakota, and of the plains as a whole, run in deep, narrow valleys or canyons which they have cut for themselves during the centuries. It is extremely hard to get any water out of them and up to a level where it can be used on the land. Another difficulty lies in the fact that these rivers are very changeable. Just after a rain they are raging torrents, but after a few weeks of dry weather they are sadly shrunk and discouraged little brooklets, just about big enough to wash your hands in. Such temperamental streams as this are of little practical value.

These conditions bring results that are very unhappy for the farmer. When it rains the whole country is covered with water, the dry clays and unprotected sands are carried away in the boiling torrents which fill every little valley, and so, bit by bit, the whole countryside washes away down the rivers and into the Gulf of Mexico. This is bad enough. But when the Middle West has a drought lasting week after week, as happened in the years from 1931 to 1936, the results

## THE HISTORY OF SOUTH DAKOTA



For mile after mile the great wheatfields are spread out over South Dakota's prairies. Wherever you look they run away to the horizon, a tossing sea of green in early summer, a shimmer of gold as the season

advances—and when harvest comes, the promise of plenty that goes with crowded shocks waiting to be threshed. Only occasionally is there a grove, set out to shelter the farmer's house.

are even more tragic. The whole land—crops, weeds, soil, vegetation of every sort—dries up completely. The cattle that graze on the plains keep all the grass clipped short, and under the blazing summer sun the few remaining wisps are burned to a crisp. Wheat soon dies beneath the blistering rays. Then the winds that are always blowing across those open plains start whipping up the dust. The heavens are dark with flying dirt, sand is in your face, your eyes, your nose and lungs. It is in your food, it is in the water you try to drink. The whole countryside is an inferno of hot black dust which blasts and withers every living thing. A region where dust is whipped up by the winds in this way is called a "dust bowl." In the 1930's parts of the Dakotas made one of the country's dust bowls. Another was in western Kansas, Oklahoma, and northern Texas, and a third in Utah. That men ever managed to live under such conditions is a tribute to the unconquerable courage of the human race. But they could not endure it forever. After a time thousands moved away from that furious desert land which little by little had been spreading over large parts of the states we have mentioned.

Of course there was a remedy for this condition, just as there is a remedy for nearly every human difficulty. The land had to be planted with sturdy grass, perhaps at first with weeds, which the hot sun and lack of moisture could not kill. The number of cattle pasturing on the range had to be reduced, and the acreage of corn and wheat cut down in favor of harder grasses which would hold the soil in place. This meant that some people had to move away from the plains of South Dakota and live elsewhere until the land was renewed. Dams and other developments in the river valleys helped prevent floods, just as they have done in the Tennessee Valley. All of these many developments—the finding of new homes for the people, the planting of grass, and the building of dams—were arranged by the government. When these developments had freed the afflicted parts of South Dakota from the double threat of flood and dust, her plains once again blossomed like the proverbial rose, and together with other parts of the Dust Bowl she once more took her place in the van of the country's progress toward an ever greater prosperity for every section of our nation.

## SOUTH DAKOTA

**AREA:** 77,047 square miles—15th in rank.

**LOCATION:** South Dakota, one of the West North Central states, lies between  $42^{\circ} 28'$  and  $45^{\circ} 57'$  N. Lat. and between  $96^{\circ} 26'$  and  $104^{\circ} 3'$  W. Long. It is bounded on the north by North Dakota, on the east by Minnesota and Iowa, on the south by Nebraska, and on the west by Wyoming and Montana.

**PHYSICAL FEATURES:** Most of South Dakota is a broad, rolling plain, the eastern part of the state lying in what we know as the prairie plains region of the United States and the western part in the great plains. The land rises gradually from east to west, with the lowest part of the state (962 ft.) at the eastern border, on Big Stone Lake, and the highest part (about 3,500 ft.) along the western border. In the southwestern corner of the state is a mountainous section 4,000 or 5,000 ft. high and known as the Black Hills. Here, at Harney Peak (7,242 ft.), is the highest point in South Dakota. Southeast of the Black Hills, along the upper part of the White River, is a highly weathered section of very picturesque formation. It was once called the Bad Lands, and contains a great many fossils.

Most of the state is drained into the Missouri River (2,475 m. long), which crosses the central part of the state from north to south on its way from Montana to the Mississippi River. In the center of South Dakota it swerves eastward and forms part of the state's southern boundary. Boats use it to some extent for about 300 miles. From the west the Missouri receives a number of rivers: the White River (325 m. long), which rises in Nebraska and is occasionally used by boats for short distances; the Cheyenne, which rises in Wyoming as two separate streams that flow about 350 miles before they unite in South Dakota to form the main body of the river 290 miles above its junction with the Missouri; the Moreau, or Owl, River; and the Grand River (200 m. long). The Cheyenne is sometimes used by boats for short distances. The eastern part of the state is drained almost entirely into the Missouri by the Big Sioux River and the James, or Dakota, River (600 m. long), which rises in North Dakota and flows southward through South Dakota to join the Missouri on the southern border. It follows what was once the bed of a very long and narrow lake—Lake Dakota—that stretched almost across the state. The Big Sioux (300 m. long) forms the southern part of the boundary between South Dakota and Minnesota. It too is used by boats occasionally. A low divide—the Coteau du Missouri—lies between the James and the Missouri. Only the northeastern corner of the state lies outside the drainage basin of the Missouri. There Big Stone Lake (25 m. long) forms the headwater of the Minnesota River, which flows east into the Mississippi. Lake Traverse (27 m. long) empties into the Bois de Sioux River, which flows north into the Red River of the North, and so finally reaches Hudson Bay. Some low hills—the Coteau des Prairies—running across the northeastern corner of the state, act as a watershed. The eastern part of the state has fertile, level river valleys and a large number of small lakes. All in all it is very different in character from the deeply dissected plateau that lies along the western border, where rivers have cut deep canyons and steep buttes, or abrupt hills, rise from the level of the plain. All together South Dakota has a water area of 747 square miles. There is a good deal of irrigated land. In the James and Missouri valleys are a great many Artesian wells.

**CLIMATE:** South Dakota has a climate of great extremes, though it is bracing and healthful, for the air is clear and dry. In winter the thermometer goes very low, and in summer there are periods of great heat. The northeastern part of the state has the lowest temperatures, with a mean annual temperature of  $42^{\circ}$  F.;

the warmest section is in the southwest, where the annual mean is  $48^{\circ}$ . At Pierre the mean January temperature is  $16^{\circ}$ , the mean July temperature  $75^{\circ}$ . The record high there is  $115^{\circ}$ , the record low  $-40^{\circ}$ . These great extremes result from the relatively high altitude of the state and from its distance from the ocean or any other large body of water. The growing season is about four months long in the north and about five months long in the southeast. The east has plenty of rain for crops, but the west is much drier. In the southeast the rainfall averages 30 inches a year, but in the northwest it is only 14 inches. The annual average for the whole state is about 20 inches. South Dakota has a great deal of clear, sparkling weather.

**INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING:** The more important institutions in the state are Augustana College at Sioux Falls, Dakota Wesleyan University at Mitchell, Huron College at Huron, South Dakota School of Mines and Technology at Rapid City, South Dakota State College of Agriculture and Mechanic Arts at Brookings, the University of South Dakota at Vermillion, and Yankton College at Yankton. There are a number of normal schools in various parts of the state.

**CHARITIES AND CORRECTION:** South Dakota maintains a hospital for the insane at Yankton, a tuberculosis sanatorium at Sanator, a training school for delinquent boys and girls at Plankinton, a home and school for the feeble-minded at Redfield, a school for the blind at Gary, a school for the deaf at Sioux Falls, and a penitentiary at Sioux Falls. The state does not inflict capital punishment.

**POLITICAL FACTS:** South Dakota is governed under the constitution of 1889, which has since been amended. Laws are made by a legislature consisting of two houses—a Senate made up of not more than 45 nor less than 25 members, and a House of Representatives made up of not more than 135 nor less than 75 members. Both Senators and Representatives must be at least twenty-five years of age. Regular sessions of the legislature are held in alternate years and may not last longer than 60 days except in cases of impeachment.

The executive branch is headed by the governor, who, together with the rest of the state officials, is elected for two years. The state treasurer may not serve two consecutive terms. The governor's veto power does not extend to measures passed by popular vote.

The judiciary is headed by a supreme court made up of five judges elected for a six-year term. It hears cases only on appeal. The state is divided into twelve judicial circuits, with one or more judges elected to preside over each for a term of four years. Each county has a county judge elected for two years, and smaller units of population elect justices of the peace to hear minor cases.

Voters must be United States citizens over 21 years of age, or foreigners who have declared their intention of becoming citizens and have lived in the country 2 years. All voters must have lived in the state for six months, in the county for thirty days, and in the precinct for ten days.

In 1898 South Dakota passed a law giving the people the right of initiative and referendum. This means that the voters may introduce a new measure into the legislature with a view to making it a law, and also that the legislature may refer a law to the people by providing for a popular vote upon it. South Dakota was the first state to pass such a law. As few as five percent of the voters may propose a measure.

All candidates for elective offices within the state and also for the United States senatorship are nominated at primary elections. Cities may surrender their

## SOUTH DAKOTA—Continued

charters and organize under a general law. The state has laws protecting labor, and a system of farm laws which has become of interest to the whole country.

The capital of South Dakota is at Pierre.

**PARKS:** Wind Cave National Park, established in 1903, is a limestone cavern in Custer County. It covers 28,000 acres and contains several miles of galleries and numerous chambers of interesting and unusual formation. It takes its name from the fact that strong currents of air blow alternately in and out of the entrance to the cave.

Custer State Park, covering 123,000 acres in the Black Hills, is one of the largest state parks in the United States, and contains a great deal of very fine scenery. In it is Game Lodge, known as the "Summer White House" of President Coolidge.

**MONUMENTS:** Fossil Cycad National Monument covers 320 acres in Fall River County and contains numerous fossils of an extinct flowering tree fern of the Mesozoic age.

Jewel Cave National Monument covers 1,275 acres in Custer County and contains a beautiful limestone cavern that is famous for its crystals and its interesting formation.

Badlands National Monument, covering 122,972 acres in Jackson and Pennington counties, contains interesting examples of erosion and remarkable fossil deposits.

The Rushmore National Memorial has been carved from the solid granite of Mount Rushmore (6,200 ft. high) in Pennington County, in the southern part of the Black Hills. Gigantic figures of Washington, Jefferson, Lincoln, and Theodore Roosevelt have been cut in the mountainside by the sculptor Gutzon Borglum.

South Dakota has 2,205,250 acres of national forest.

**GAME AND BIRD RESERVATIONS:** Bear Butte Refuge in Meade County, Belle Fourche Refuge on a reclamation project in Butte County, Eagle Creek Refuge in Todd County, Lake Andes Refuge and Lake Arconge Refuge in Charles Mix County, and Twin Lakes Refuge in Miner County protect birds. Lacreek Refuge in Bennett and Mellette counties, Sand Lake Refuge in Brown County, and Waubay Refuge in Day County protect birds, deer, and muskrats.

**NAME:** The origin and meaning of the name have been discussed in connection with North Dakota.

**NICKNAMES:** South Dakota's large number of Artesian wells led people to call her the Artesian State, and the large numbers of coyotes gave her the name of the Coyote State. Because she has many northerly gales laden with stinging snow she has been nicknamed the Blizzard State, and her high percentage of sunny days in a year have given her the title of the Sunshine State. Because of her ability to support a growing population in comfort she is sometimes known as the Land of Plenty. North and South Dakota together are frequently called the Twin Sisters.

**STATE FLOWER:** American pasque flower (*Pulsatilla hirsutissima*); officially adopted in 1903. The word "pasque" means "Easter," and has been applied to the flower because of its early blooming. The motto accompanying the flower is "I Lead," and refers to the fact that the pasque flower is the first to blossom on the prairies in springtime.

**STATE SONG:** "Hail, South Dakota," with words and music by Willis E. Johnson, was adopted by the legislature in 1943, after having for some time been in use on official occasions.

**STATE FLAG:** A blue field bearing in the center a blazing sun in gold with the words "South Dakota" above it in gold letters and below it the words "Sunshine State." On the reverse of the blazing sun the great seal of South Dakota is printed in dark blue.

**STATE MOTTO:** "Under God the People Rule"; accepted in 1885.

**STATE BIRD:** Ring-necked pheasant, adopted by the legislature in 1943.

**INTERESTING FACTS:** South Dakota observes New Year's Day, Lincoln's Birthday, Washington's Birthday, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Election Day, Armistice Day, Thanksgiving Day, and Christmas day.

South Dakota has a very large Indian population and a number of Indian reservations—the Crow Creek, Lower Brule, Pine Ridge, Rosebud, Yankton, Standing Rock, Lake Traverse or Sisseton, and also purchased lands. On the various reservations live members of tribes belonging to the great Sioux family of Indians. Most of them are engaged in agriculture and in the raising of live stock. At Pierre is an Indian school.

Population of state, 1940, 642,961							
Counties							
Armstrong <sup>1</sup> (D3)	42	Codington (G3)	17,014	Hanson (G4)	5,400	Mellette (D4)	4,107
Aurora (F4)	5,387	Corson (C2)	6,755	Harding (A2)	310	Miner (G3)	6,836
		Custer (A4)	6,023	Hughes (D3)	6,624	Minnehaha (H4)	57,697
				Hutchinson (G4)	12,668	Moody (H3)	9,341
				Hyde (E3)	5,113		
		Davison (F4)	15,336	Jackson <sup>1</sup> (C4)	1,955	Pennington <sup>4</sup>	
		Day (G2)	13,565	Jerauld (F3)	4,752	(A3)	23,799
Beadle (F3)	19,648	Deuel (H3)	8,450	Jones (D4)	2,509	Perkins (B2)	6,585
Bennett (C4)	3,983	Dewey (C2)	5,709			Potter (D2)	4,614
Bon Homme		Douglas (F4)	6,348	Kingsbury (G3)	10,831	Roberts (H2)	15,887
(G4)	10,211	Edmunds (E2)	7,814				
Brookings (H3)	16,560			Lake (G3)	12,412	Sanborn (F4)	5,754
Brown (F2)	29,676	Fall River <sup>2</sup> (A4)	8,089	Lawrence (A3)	19,093	Shannon <sup>2</sup> (B4)	5,166
Brule (E4)	6,195	Faulk (E2)	5,168	Lincoln (H4)	13,171	Spink (F3)	12,527
Buffalo (E3)	1,853			Lyman (E4)	5,045	Stanley <sup>1</sup> (D3)	1,959
Butte (A3)	8,004	Grant (H2)	10,552			Sully (D3)	2,668
		Gregory (E4)	9,554	McCook (G1)	9,793		
Campbell (D2)	5,033			McPherson (E2)	8,353	Todd <sup>3</sup> (D4)	5,714
Charles Mix (F4)	13,449	Haakon (C3)	3,515	Marshall (G2)	8,880	Tripp <sup>3</sup> (E4)	9,937
Clark (G3)	8,955	Hamlin (G3)	7,562	Meade (B3)	9,735	Turner (G4)	13,270
Clay (G5)	9,592	Hand (E3)	7,166				

<sup>1</sup> Armstrong unorganized; attached to Stanley County for judicial purposes, reported as part of Ziebach County in 1920.

<sup>2</sup> Shannon County unorganized, attached to Fall River County for judicial purposes.

<sup>3</sup> Washabaugh County unorganized; attached to Jackson County for judicial purposes.

<sup>4</sup> Washington County unorganized, attached to Pennington County for judicial purposes.

<sup>5</sup> Todd County unorganized; attached to Tripp County for judicial purposes.

# SOUTH DAKOTA—Continued

Union (H5) . . . . .	11,675	Custer (A4) . . . . .	1,845	Kimball (F4) . . . . .	997	Rosholt (H2) . . . . .	362
Walworth (D2) . . . . .	7,274	Dallas (E4) . . . . .	278	Labolt (H2) . . . . .	127	Roslyn (G2) . . . . .	253
Washabawh * (C4) . . . . .	1,980	Dante (F4) . . . . .	118	Lake Andes (F4) . . . . .	785	Roswell (G4) . . . . .	96
Washington * (B4) . . . . .	1,789	Davis (G4) . . . . .	230	Lake City (G2) . . . . .	168	St. Lawrence (F3) . . . . .	297
Yankton (G5) . . . . .	16,725	Deadwood * (A3) . . . . .	4,100	Lake Norden (G3) . . . . .	463	Salem (G4) . . . . .	1,185
Ziebach * (C3) . . . . .	2,875	Dell Rapids (H4) . . . . .	1,706	Lake Preston (G3) . . . . .	886	Scotland (G4) . . . . .	1,204
<b>Cities and Towns</b>		Delmont (F4) . . . . .	461	Lane (F3) . . . . .	214	Selby (D2) . . . . .	599
Places marked with an asterisk * were classified as urban in 1940]		De Smet (G3) . . . . .	1,016	Langford (G2) . . . . .	452	Seneca (E2) . . . . .	243
		Doland (F3) . . . . .	542	Lead * (A3) . . . . .	7,520	Sherman (A4) . . . . .	158
		Dolton (G4) . . . . .	121	Lebanon (E2) . . . . .	310	Sinai (G3) . . . . .	182
		Draper (D4) . . . . .	190	Lemmon (B2) . . . . .	1,781	Sioux Falls * (H4) . . . . .	40,832
		Dupree (C2) . . . . .	460	Lennox (H4) . . . . .	1,164	Sisseton * (G2) . . . . .	2,513
		Eagle Butte (C2) . . . . .	374	Leola (F2) . . . . .	795	South Shore (H2) . . . . .	296
		Eden (G2) . . . . .	171	Lesterville (G4) . . . . .	229	South Sioux Falls (H4) . . . . .	591
		Edgemont (A4) . . . . .	1,002	Letcher (F4) . . . . .	344	Spearfish (A3) . . . . .	2,139
		Egan (H3) . . . . .	418	Lily (G2) . . . . .	158	Spencer (G4) . . . . .	617
		Elk Point (H5) . . . . .	1,483	Loyalton (E2) . . . . .	89	Springfield (G5) . . . . .	667
		Elkton (H3) . . . . .	779	McIntosh (C2) . . . . .	626	Stickney (F4) . . . . .	361
		Emery (G4) . . . . .	482	McLaughlin (D2) . . . . .	660	Stockholm (H2) . . . . .	114
		Erwin (G3) . . . . .	182	Madison * (G3) . . . . .	5,018	Strandburg (H2) . . . . .	177
		Esmond (G3) . . . . .	96	Marion (G4) . . . . .	765	Stratford (F2) . . . . .	205
		Estelline (H3) . . . . .	627	Martin (C4) . . . . .	1,013	Sturgis * (A3) . . . . .	3,008
		Ethan (G4) . . . . .	324	Marvin (H2) . . . . .	164	Summit (G2) . . . . .	459
		Eureka (E2) . . . . .	1,457	Meckling (G5) . . . . .	114	Tabor (G5) . . . . .	391
		Fairburn (A4) . . . . .	120	Mellette (F2) . . . . .	332	Tea (H4) . . . . .	165
		Fairfax (F4) . . . . .	318	Menno (G4) . . . . .	966	Timber Lake (C2) . . . . .	512
		Fairview (H4) . . . . .	150	Midland (C3) . . . . .	282	Tolstoy (E2) . . . . .	171
		Faith (B2) . . . . .	522	Milbank * (H2) . . . . .	2,745	Trent (H4) . . . . .	240
		Farmer (G4) . . . . .	130	Miller (F3) . . . . .	1,460	Tripp (G4) . . . . .	913
		Faulton (E2) . . . . .	747	Mission Hill (G5) . . . . .	195	Tulare (F3) . . . . .	244
		Flandreau (H3) . . . . .	2,212	Mitchell * (F4) . . . . .	10,633	Turton (F2) . . . . .	180
		Florence (G2) . . . . .	254	Mobridge * (D2) . . . . .	3,008	Twin Brooks (H2) . . . . .	121
		Fort Pierre (D3) . . . . .	764	Monroe (G4) . . . . .	219	Tyndall (G5) . . . . .	1,289
		Frankfort (F3) . . . . .	335	Montrose (G4) . . . . .	506	Utica (G5) . . . . .	95
		Frederick (F2) . . . . .	422	Morristown (C2) . . . . .	217	Valley Springs (H4) . . . . .	396
		Freeman (G4) . . . . .	976	Mound City (D2) . . . . .	195	Veblen (G2) . . . . .	486
		Fruitdale (A3) . . . . .	89	Mount Vernon (F4) . . . . .	405	Verdon (I2) . . . . .	65
		Fulton (G4) . . . . .	168	Murdo (D4) . . . . .	680	Vermillion * (H5) . . . . .	3,324
		Garden City (G3) . . . . .	272	Naples (G3) . . . . .	84	Viborg (G4) . . . . .	659
		Garretson (H4) . . . . .	666	Newark (G2) . . . . .	147	Vienna (G3) . . . . .	313
		Gary (H3) . . . . .	566	New Ellington (H2) . . . . .	344	Vilas (G4) . . . . .	91
		Gayville (G5) . . . . .	278	Newell (A3) . . . . .	683	Virgil (F3) . . . . .	145
		Geddes (F4) . . . . .	581	New Underwood (B4) . . . . .	214	Volga (H3) . . . . .	632
		Gettysburg (E2) . . . . .	1,324	Nisland (A3) . . . . .	212	Volin (G5) . . . . .	292
		Glenham (D2) . . . . .	131	Northville (F2) . . . . .	223	Wagner (F4) . . . . .	1,319
		Goodwin (H3) . . . . .	152	Nunda (G3) . . . . .	147	Wakonda (G4) . . . . .	451
		Gregory (E4) . . . . .	1,246	Oacoma (E4) . . . . .	197	Wall (B3) . . . . .	500
		Grenville (G2) . . . . .	260	Oelrichs (A4) . . . . .	212	Wallace (G2) . . . . .	193
		Groton (F2) . . . . .	946	Oldham (G3) . . . . .	386	Ward (H3) . . . . .	84
		Harrisburg (H4) . . . . .	241	Olivet (G4) . . . . .	242	Watertown * (H3) . . . . .	10,617
		Harrold (E3) . . . . .	229	Omaha (D3) . . . . .	597	Waubay (G2) . . . . .	882
		Hartford (H4) . . . . .	647	Orient (E3) . . . . .	250	Webster (G2) . . . . .	2,173
		Hayti (G3) . . . . .	370	Ortley (G2) . . . . .	184	Wentworth (G4) . . . . .	303
		Hazel (G3) . . . . .	182	Parker (G4) . . . . .	1,214	Westington (F3) . . . . .	516
		Hecla (F2) . . . . .	555	Parkston (G4) . . . . .	1,305	Westington (F3) . . . . .	516
		Henry (G3) . . . . .	322	Peever (H2) . . . . .	272	Westington (F3) . . . . .	516
		Hermosa (A4) . . . . .	121	Philip (C3) . . . . .	833	Wetmore (F3) . . . . .	1,352
		Herreid (D2) . . . . .	592	Pierpont (G2) . . . . .	362	Wetonga (F2) . . . . .	109
		Herrick (E4) . . . . .	246	Pierre * (D3) . . . . .	4,322	White (H3) . . . . .	559
		Hettingland (G3) . . . . .	199	Plankinton (F4) . . . . .	694	White Lake (F4) . . . . .	496
		Highmore (E3) . . . . .	1,136	Platte (F4) . . . . .	1,017	White River (D4) . . . . .	562
		Hillsview (E2) . . . . .	160	Pollock (D2) . . . . .	527	White Rock (H2) . . . . .	220
		Hitchcock (F3) . . . . .	246	Presho (D4) . . . . .	568	Whitewood (A3) . . . . .	267
		Hosmer (E2) . . . . .	579	Pringle (A4) . . . . .	273	Willow Lake (G3) . . . . .	427
		Hot Springs * (A4) . . . . .	4,083	Pukwana (E4) . . . . .	258	Wilmot (H2) . . . . .	628
		Hoven (E2) . . . . .	369	Ramona (G3) . . . . .	265	Winfred (G4) . . . . .	245
		Howard (G3) . . . . .	1,193	Rapid City * (A3) . . . . .	13,844	Winner (E4) . . . . .	2,426
		Hudson (H4) . . . . .	478	Ravinia (F4) . . . . .	155	Witten (D4) . . . . .	9
		Humboldt (G4) . . . . .	417	Raymond (G3) . . . . .	206	Wolsey (F3) . . . . .	410
		Hurley (G4) . . . . .	586	Redfield (F3) . . . . .	2,428	Woonsocket (F3) . . . . .	1,050
		Huron * (F3) . . . . .	10,843	Ree Heights (E3) . . . . .	258	Worthing (H4) . . . . .	291
		Interior (C4) . . . . .	182	Rehance (E4) . . . . .	219	Yale (G3) . . . . .	156
		Ipswich (E2) . . . . .	1,002	Reverio (H2) . . . . .	325	Yankton * (G5) . . . . .	6,798
		Irene (G4) . . . . .	391	Rockham (F3) . . . . .	220		
		Iroquois (G3) . . . . .	413	Roscoe (E2) . . . . .	608		
		Isabel (C2) . . . . .	490				
		Java (E2) . . . . .	493				
		Jefferson (H5) . . . . .	469				
		Kadoka (C4) . . . . .	464				
		Kennebec (E4) . . . . .	390				



---

# *The HISTORY of TENNESSEE*

---

## Reading Unit No. 41

---

### TENNESSEE: THE VOLUNTEER STATE

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

#### *Interesting Facts Explained*

Why Tennessee is called the "Volunteer State," 8-366  
The happy hunting ground of the Indians, 8-367  
When Sir Walter Raleigh was given Tennessee, 8-367  
The first white settler, 8-368

When Tennessee settled down to farming, 8-369  
The battlegrounds of the Civil War, 8-370  
Why there have been no floods for some years in Tennessee, 8-371

#### *Things to Think About*

Which rivers flow through Tennessee?  
Which explorers came to Tennessee?  
How many settlers did Tennessee need to become a state?  
Why did the railroads spread

with tremendous speed in Tennessee?  
How did the Ku Klux Klan start?  
What is the Tennessee Valley Authority trying to do?

#### *Picture Hunt*

When did Nashville become the capital of Tennessee? 8-366  
What does the Tennessee Valley Authority project include? 8-

368  
What are the chief industries of Tennessee? 8-369, 370, 372

#### *Related Material*

When brother fought with brother, 7-253-65  
What turbulent water does Boulder Dam control? 1-370  
Why must the bottom of a dam be thicker than the top? 1-366  
Which dam has turned thousands

of arid acres in Arizona into fertile farms? 10-542  
Why does our country need to open up new fertile land? 7-465-70  
Which is the greatest lake ever made by man? 10-272-73

#### *Practical Applications*

What has made Chattanooga one of the most important manufacturing centers of the South? 8-371

What do the government engineers hope to do with the electric power in the Tennessee Valley? 8-372

#### *Leisure-time Activities*

PROJECT NO. 1: Make a drawing or clay model of the

Roosevelt Dam, 10-539.

## THE HISTORY OF TENNESSEE



Photo by Nashville Chamber of Commerce

This beautiful old house, known as the Hermitage, was the home of Andrew Jackson. It stands near

Nashville, Tennessee, one of the most important educational and commercial centers in the South.

### TENNESSEE: *the* VOLUNTEER STATE

*Always Gallant, Always Enduring, the People of Tennessee  
Are Living Up to Their Traditions of the Past by  
Blazing a New Trail into the Future*

**T**ENNESSEE'S story of the past centers around the valiant part she played in the Civil War. Because she sent so many of her sons to fight for the Confederate cause she is still called the "Volunteer State"; and most of her great traditions deal with the characters and battles of Civil War days. But if present developments bear their fruit, this nickname from a tragic past will some day be forgotten. Just what Tennessee (tĕn'ĕ-sĕ') will then be called we cannot tell. It will probably be a peaceful nickname—and a very complimentary one. For Tennessee to-day is the scene of one of the greatest and most fascinating peacetime experiments in the history of our nation. If this great effort succeeds, as seems very likely, Tennessee will find herself far more famous than any number of wars, no matter how heroic, could ever make her.

Like Kentucky, Tennessee is divided into three great sections, east, middle, and west.

In the eastern section are the mountains, the Allegheny (ăl'ĕ-gă'nĭ) and Cumberland belts. Here the Great Smokies form the highest part of the state, and give Tennessee some of the finest scenery in the East. Many of their peaks reach a height of more than 6,000 feet. West of the Great Smokies is the fertile valley of East Tennessee, a part of the great Appalachian (ăp'ă-lă'chĭ-ăn) Valley which runs through the whole length of the Appalachian mountain system. Across the valley rise the Cumberland Mountains, to be followed by the Cumberland Plateau (plă-tō'), a region full of steep intersecting valleys, wild and romantic and beautiful.

Beyond the Cumberland Plateau the Highland Rim Plateau stretches out northward into Kentucky. This upland plain slopes gently to the north and west, and in the center has been worn down into a great oval depression, corresponding to the Lexington Plain in Kentucky. Here too is a blue-grass

## THE HISTORY OF TENNESSEE

region such as we have described in our story of Kentucky. In this Central Basin, with its fine pastures and rich farm land, stands Nashville, the capital city. The western section of the state is covered by still another plateau, the Western Tennessee Plain, a part of the ancient coastal plain of what was once the Gulf of Mexico. From its rocky heights west of the lower Tennessee River its slopes very gradually to the westward, to the narrow strip of rich bottom land which borders the Mississippi. This last low belt of ground is the plain which the river has made for itself. The Western Tennessee Plain ends in a high, steep cliff overlooking the low river valley. The interesting story of Reelfoot Lake, at the northern end, is told on other pages.

Tennessee is a state of many rivers. The Cumberland River enters from Kentucky at about the middle of the northern border. It runs in a very irregular half circle until at a point 130 miles to the west, it flows back into Kentucky. The Tennessee River follows very much the same course, except that it rises in the farthest northeastern corner of the state, instead of in Kentucky, and describes a half circle so large that it runs down into the northern part of Alabama, and even continues far enough west to cut a little corner off Mississippi. Then it flows straight north across Tennessee and into Kentucky. Both rivers—and some of their branches—

may be navigated for their whole length in Tennessee; and Nashville, Chattanooga, and Knoxville are all ports of entry for foreign commerce that comes by way of the Mississippi and the Ohio.



The University of Tennessee is at Knoxville, a city which has a pleasant setting on the banks of the Tennessee River in the mountainous part of the state. The university's Liberal Arts Building is shown here.

There was never any single group of Indians which owned all of Tennessee. The eastern part of the state was a happy hunting ground which the Cherokees (chěr'ō-kē), Creeks, Choctaws (chōk'tō), Chickasaws, and Miamis (mī-ām'ī) all held in common. In the central part of the state the Iroquois (īr'ō-kwoi) had at least driven away all the other Indians, even if they had not settled there themselves; and in the western part the Chickasaws made their home.

The first white man to see Tennessee was Hernando de Soto, the Spanish explorer who came up the Mississippi River as far, probably, as the present site of Memphis in 1541. But he at once crossed the river into Arkansas, and so departed from Tennessee without ever seeing more than a corner of it. In 1584 the English king granted the land to Sir Walter Raleigh. Many years passed, during which only a few scattered explorers saw this wild country of forest and swamp. Among

them were Marquette (mār'kēt') and, later, La Salle (lā sāl'), who built (1682) Fort Prud'homme (prü'dôm') near the present Memphis. Later Frenchmen set up Fort Assumption on the spot where Memphis

## THE HISTORY OF TENNESSEE



Photo by TVA.

This is a view of Norris Dam, across the Clinch River in Tennessee, one of the great dams recently built by the national government to help work out some of the vexing problems that confront many parts of the country. Norris Dam is only a single unit in the government's great construction project in the Tennessee Valley. The work is under the direction of a government agency known as the Tennessee Valley Authority—the TVA. When the project is finished there will be twenty-seven dams across the Tennessee and its tributaries. One of them is Wilson Dam, built some years ago at Muscle Shoals in Alabama. The dams not only control the floods that have so long ravaged the Tennessee Valley, but also provide cheap electricity for countless farming communi-

ties, and by a system of navigation locks will make this river into one of the great inland waterways of the world. As part of its program for flood control the TVA has been obliged to ask for the cooperation of individual landholders throughout the whole section. Agricultural methods must be improved; soil erosion must be checked through terracing, the sowing of cover crops, the planting of forests, and the use of better fertilizer. The TVA produces improved fertilizers at Muscle Shoals. When work in the Tennessee Valley is finished, the life of a whole vast region will have been remade, and prosperity will have been brought to many thousands of people. It is our country's first attempt at regional planning—a great experiment in national cooperation.

stands. In 1750 Dr. Thomas Walker came through the Cumberland Gap and down the Cumberland River and named them both for the Duke of Cumberland.

### The First White Settler

Finally the Iroquois gave up their lands to the English, and in 1769 a man named William Bean built a cabin on the Watauga (wō-tō'gā) River in the northeastern corner of the state. This was the first settlement in Tennessee. Later many men who became involved in the struggle over high taxes and dishonest officials in North Carolina moved off into this region, thinking it was part of the state of Virginia. When the boundary was surveyed and it became plain that the country belonged to North Carolina, there was great embarrassment. North Carolina

would have nothing to do with those scattered little settlements, and the settlers had to form their own government, which they called the Watauga Association.

### Driving the Redcoats Back

The American Revolution drew the frontiersmen closer to North Carolina, and for a time their country was known as the Washington District or Washington County of North Carolina. This added security brought a good many new settlers, even though the war was calling able-bodied men into service. By 1780, when the British under Major Patrick Ferguson tried to attack South Carolina from the rear, there were fully five hundred mountain men in Tennessee to drive the redcoats back.

After the war North Carolina offered to

---

## THE HISTORY OF TENNESSEE

---



Photo by the Seaboard Airline

**This Tennessee cotton field will help supply the great textile mills in such centers as Nashville and Knoxville.**

**Like most of the states of the South, Tennessee raises a good deal of cotton and tobacco.**

give these mountain colonies of hers to the national government. The colonists were highly indignant at being cast off in that way, but once more they set about forming a new state. In 1785 they elected a governor, called together a legislature, and announced the new state of Franklin. But after much bickering, it was decided that Tennessee should be a territory until she had enough settlers to be a state. Many struggles with the Indians and with the Spanish settlements farther south along the Mississippi kept the territory in turmoil for years to come. But in ten years Tennessee had the 60,000 settlers she needed to become a state, and in 1796 she was admitted to the Union.

### **What Were the Frontier Crops?**

And now, amid disputes over boundaries, wildcat banking schemes, and general confusion and disorder, Tennessee started to grow and prosper. By 1800 she was pretty well covered with settlers; and schools, churches, and roads were growing fairly common. In 1819 the city of Memphis was founded, though at first it was thought to be in Mississippi. At last the boundaries were straightened out and marked off, and Tennessee settled down to the serious business of farming. For the most part, she raised the usual frontier crops of corn, hay, potatoes, live stock, and a little wheat.

Later, when transportation became easier and men grew to know the soil better, tobacco, fruits, and fine live stock, especially blooded horses, were raised. In the fertile, level land along the Mississippi cotton was planted. To-day oats, barley, soybeans, peanuts, sweet potatoes, apples, peaches, pears, and grapes are other important crops.

### **Why Tennessee Had to Have Railroads**

Railroads made rapid progress in Tennessee, for the three sections of the state were all so different that they had a great deal to exchange. To bind them together they soon felt a need of good transportation. So the railroads spread with tremendous speed.

At this time the state was forging ahead rapidly in education. By 1845 a free school system had been established which, together with Tennessee's several institutions of higher education, gave promise of great things in this new state. The University of Nashville (1785), Washington and Tusculum College (1794), Cumberland University (1842), the University of Tennessee (1794) - first known as Blount College, and then as East Tennessee College and many others all were giving instruction soon after Tennessee ceased to be a frontier state. Since 1800 many other institutions of higher education have been opened in Tennessee, notably Vanderbilt University and Fisk University.

---

## THE HISTORY OF TENNESSEE

---



Photo by the American Lumbermen

Here are logs freshly cut in one of Tennessee's magnificent forests, of which the state is justly proud. As the farmers of the South become convinced of the dangers of one-crop farming, they will turn more and more to the riches of their forests—particularly to their pines, which have proved to be much more valuable than people used to think. For wood is the chief source of cellulose, the substance from which many interesting synthetic products, such as artificial silk, have been

made. And, of course, wood is always in demand for the paper industry. There is a great deal of useless, cut-over land in the South to-day which could very well be planted to young trees that will some day have great value. Farmers can cut their wood when farm work is light, and for every large tree cut, a small one can be planted. In this way the forests will not be destroyed, but can be made into a perpetual source of wealth—for ourselves and for coming generations.

at Nashville. Yet in spite of this growth, it cannot be said that the educational system of Tennessee has prospered. In 1900 her illiteracy stood at 20.7 percent; and even in 1930 she was still finding it hard to educate her people; 7.2 percent could not read and write. Clearly some blight had fallen upon her.

### A Grave Decision

Of course we all know that this great blight was the Civil War. Ever since she had been settled, Tennessee had been slaveholding territory. When North Carolina granted her to the federal government in 1790, slavery was provided for within her borders. When the great question arose again in 1860, Tennessee wanted to stay in the Union; but her large holdings in slaves decided her. President Lincoln's call for troops forced a popular election, and the vote was overwhelmingly for the Confederacy. On June 24, 1861, the governor of Tennessee proclaimed her secession.

After Virginia, Tennessee was the chief battle ground of the war. The bloody battles of Chickamauga (chĭk'ā-mō'gā), Fort Donelson, Shiloh (shĭ'lō), Franklin, and Chattanooga were fought on her soil, and were among the fiercest of the war. Gradually the Federal armies forced the Con-

federates to the eastward and out of the state. By the end of 1864 all of Tennessee was held by Federal troops.

During the war the soldiers of Tennessee were famous for the reckless bravery with which they fought. The state furnished 115,000 soldiers to the Confederates, and over 31,000, mostly from the mountainous eastern part of the state, to the Union. The property damage was appalling. When the war was over, the state government was almost hopelessly in debt and Tennessee's fortunes looked desperate. And the years of the Reconstruction were hard ones, so confused and hopeless that out of the bitterness was born (1865) the powerful and lawless Ku Klux Klan (kū klŭks klăn). Starting as a joke near Pulaski (pŭ-lās'kĭ), Tennessee, this organization to terrorize Negroes and "carpetbag" officials spread over all the South. It was the only recourse of the helpless, exhausted Confederacy—a result of all the injustice the southern people had suffered after the war.

### A Brave Achievement

Still, no state in a free country can be kept at the bottom of the ladder for very long. Tennessee had suffered greatly during the war and the Reconstruction; but gradually she began to pull herself together.

---

## THE HISTORY OF TENNESSEE

---

The scars remained for a long time, but when we consider the marvels she has accomplished, the failures seem unimportant.

The great strides which Tennessee has made since the Civil War have been mostly in the fields of mining and manufacturing. Agriculture has advanced too, but not at the same rapid pace. Coal, which is of very fine grade, is the most important of her minerals. The beds lie in a belt running northeast and southwest under the Cumberland Plateau, in the eastern part of the state. Zinc, from eastern Tennessee, is the state's second mineral in importance. Copper mines in Polk County once supplied the Confederacy with plenty of copper, but now yield very little. The same mines contain a little gold and silver. The iron-producing country is mostly around Chattanooga, where ore of great value was once mined. To-day the deposits are nearly exhausted, but in 1902 Tennessee ranked fifth among the states in iron production. She also quarries a great deal of building stone, especially fine marbles, which are found in Knox County and the vicinity, and are very beautifully colored and very valuable. In marble production she holds a high place. Another important mineral product is phosphate (fös'fāt) rock, which is made into fertilizer. It comes from the south-central part of the state. Aluminum is produced also.

### What Are Tennessee's Busiest Cities?

The industries of Tennessee first centered around the task of producing food for her settlers. Even to-day the manufacture of food preparations is of great importance. Hominy and flour grist are the finished products. So much corn and wheat are needed for this industry that it is necessary to import grain from the north and west. Her location close to the southern cotton fields and her ample supplies of coal have made Tennessee a center for the milling and knitting industries. Knoxville and Nashville are the cities which specialize in this, though both manufacture an amazing number of other articles as well. Knoxville is also an important mining center. Because of the hydroelectric power furnished by the Tennessee River, Chattanooga (chăt'â-nōō'gâ)

is one of the most important manufacturing centers in the South, with a list of well over a thousand articles to her credit. Machinery of various kinds is in the lead. Thick forests of excellent hardwoods have also made Tennessee famous for her lumber, and to-day Memphis is the leading hardwood market of the country. Much of this lumber goes to make paper; and Nashville is an important publishing center. Tennessee is especially fortunate to have had, since 1907, one of the most intelligent forestry laws of any state in the country. Memphis, one of the leading cities of the South, is famous as a cotton market, and has many mills manufacturing cottonseed oil and other by-products of cotton. She is a traffic center of great importance and does a huge business in distributing goods. Her business as a Mississippi port has greatly increased.

Tennessee's leading manufactures are chemicals and textiles. Most famous by far are the materials for creating atomic energy which come from the plant at Oak Ridge.

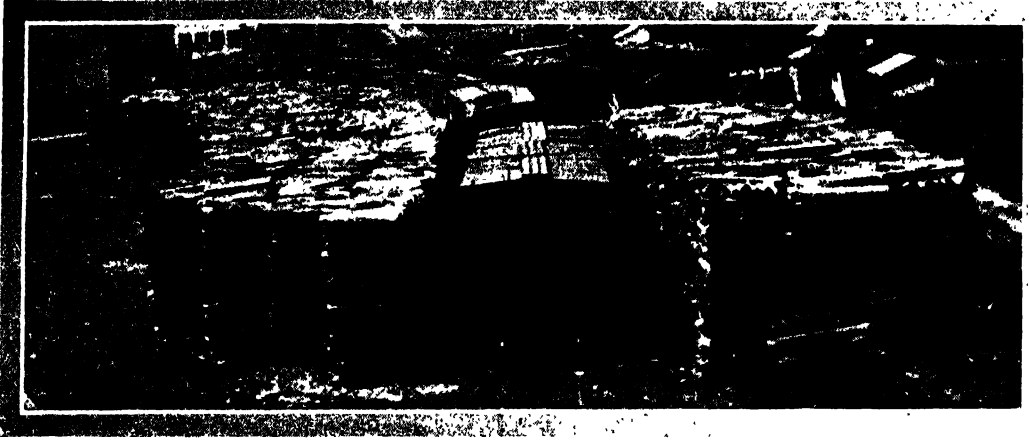
If our story ended here, we should leave you with a picture of a modest, flourishing little state, busy and prosperous enough but not, after all, unusually important. But our story cannot end here, for we must tell of the recent events which have made Tennessee one of the most exciting places in the whole country. These are the developments which the federal government is carrying out in the Tennessee Valley.

### Tennessee's Proud Destiny

In our stories of Indiana and Kentucky we described the ravages caused by the floods of the Ohio River. For several years now there have been no floods in Tennessee, for the reason that across all the big rivers of the Tennessee Valley the United States has built huge dams. Wilson Dam, at Muscle Shoals, Alabama, was finished in 1925. Norris Dam, on the Clinch River; Wheeler Dam, just above the great Muscle Shoals project; and Pickwick Dam, near Pickwick Landing, Tennessee, are later structures. These dams have done away with floods in the Tennessee Valley. But they have done a great deal more.

For the matter has become far more im-

## THE HISTORY OF TENNESSEE



These piles of wood are made up of chestnut logs that have been gathered to supply one of Tennessee's busy

industries. The bark will be removed and made to yield a substance used in the tanning of leather.

portant than simply the keeping down of floods in Tennessee. Water flowing over a dam can produce electric power. And electric power can make a nation rich and prosperous. Now two and a half million people live in the Tennessee Valley, on some of the finest land with the finest climate in the country. Warm, moist winds from the Gulf bring them abundant rainfall, and fruit tree walnuts, pecans, and many other crops grow plentifully. This valley should bloom like a rose, yet lately many parts of it were poor and wretched. There were various reasons for this condition. The people were often ignorant and poverty-stricken; they did not know how to use the land and could not buy the tools and materials to do better work even if they had the knowledge. Because they had grown the same crops year after year without enough fertilizer, the soil was exhausted in many places. Often it washed away in streams and gulleys because the farmers did not know how to stop erosion. These problems, in part a result of the Civil War, Tennessee shared with other southern states.

### The T. V. A.

Now the Tennessee Valley Authority, as authorized by Congress in 1933, is an experiment to see what can be done to remedy the conditions we have described. The dams which stop floods and erosion are sources of unbelievable amounts of electric power,

which is sold cheaply throughout the Tennessee Valley. This has encouraged industries to settle there and provide many comforts which the sturdy and proud inhabitants of the primitive Tennessee mountain villages have never known. More important still, the government engineers are turning this power to the manufacture of cheap fertilizer, with which the Tennessee Valley is being restored to its natural fertility. The life of a whole people is being changed from poverty to plenty. Both in agriculture and in industry the Tennessee Valley should become a model for the rest of the United States to copy. Of course the developments are important in themselves; but they will be far more important if they show a way of more ample life by which the whole American people can live in freedom from poverty and waste. It is one of the greatest projects in improvement ever undertaken in our country.

So this is why the state of Tennessee is so vitally important to-day why all the other states of the Union are looking to her for instruction and guidance. History is being made within her borders, history as fascinating and splendid as any in the whole life of our nation. It is a mighty opportunity to be offered to any state, and we may feel confident that Tennessee will make the most of it. If she succeeds, she will earn the thanks of the entire nation. Her success will be the success of the American people. It is a proud destiny for the Volunteer State.



## TENNESSEE

**AREA:** 42,246 square miles 33rd in rank.

**LOCATION:** Tennessee, one of the East South Central states, lies between 35° and 36° 40' N. Lat. and between 81° 37' and 90° 28' W. Long. It is bounded on the north by Kentucky and Virginia, on the east by North Carolina, on the south by Georgia, Alabama, and Mississippi, and on the west by Arkansas and Missouri.

**PHYSICAL FEATURES:** The surface of Tennessee is a good deal like the surface of Kentucky in that it may be divided into three belts that run in general northeast and southwest across the state. In the east are some of the highest mountains in the Appalachian system, lying in a belt some ten or fifteen miles wide and commonly divided into a number of different ranges the Unakas, the Great Smokies, the Bald Mountains, the Iron Mountains, the Roan Mountains, and the Stone Mountains, all of them strung along the eastern border. The scenery is superb, especially in the Great Smokies. In Sevier County is Clingman's Dome (6,643 ft.), the highest point in the state. West of this mountain belt lies a broad valley from which rise narrow parallel ridges. It is part of the Great Appalachian Valley and is known as the Valley of East Tennessee. It is drained to the south by the Tennessee River (652 m. long), which is formed by the union of the French Broad River (210 m. long) and the Holston River (235 m. long). The French Broad rises in North Carolina, and the Holston in Virginia. After leaving the state the Tennessee flows in a great curve through northern Alabama and enters Tennessee again about 120 miles from the western border. It flows north across the state and joins the Ohio.

West of the Valley of East Tennessee the Cumberland Plateau rises sharply. It has an average elevation of some 1,800 ft., and in the northern part slopes toward the northwest. It is formed of level layers of rock, and in the west is cut by streams into narrow, deep valleys between sharp ridges that are all about the same height. West of the Cumberland Plateau lies the Highland Rim Plateau at an elevation of about 1,000 ft., in the central part of the state. In it the Central Basin has been hollowed out a vast oval depression with a width of about 60 miles at its widest part. Its average elevation is about 500 ft., and it stretches almost across the state from northeast to southwest, a rolling plain that rises in a sharp ascent to the level of the Highland Rim Plateau. The city of Nashville lies near its northwestern border. The northern part of the central section of Tennessee is drained by the Cumberland River (687 m. long), which rises in Kentucky, flows in a great curve through northern Tennessee, and re-enters Kentucky on its northerly course to join the Ohio.

West of the lower Tennessee is a section belonging to what is known as the Mississippi embayment of the Gulf coastal plain. From the Tennessee it rises rather sharply westward and then sinks gradually until it reaches the present flood plain of the Mississippi River. There it breaks off sharply in bluffs 150 to 200 ft. high. The land along the Mississippi is often swampy, and is the lowest part of the state, with an elevation at one point of only 182 ft. In the northwest is Reelfoot Lake, the only large lake in Tennessee. It is 18 miles long and 3 miles wide at its widest part. Of its interesting formation we have spoken on other pages. The extreme western part of the state is drained by short streams flowing into the Mississippi. Other important rivers in the state are the Duck (200 m. long), which enters the lower Tennessee from the east, and the Clinch (300 m. long), which rises in Virginia and flows through northeastern Tennessee to join the Tennessee River. The Mississippi (2,470 m. long) may be navigated for the 250 miles of its course along the state's western

boundary. The Tennessee and the Cumberland are navigable for part of their length in the state. All together Tennessee has a water area of 335 square miles, and has no irrigated land.

**CLIMATE:** The climate of Tennessee varies with elevation. The mean summer temperature west of the lower Tennessee is 78° F.; it is 77° in the Central Basin. In the Valley of East Tennessee and on the Highland Rim Plateau it is 75°, on the Cumberland Plateau 72°, and in the mountains along the eastern border 62°. Most of the state has a mean winter temperature of about 38°. The annual mean varies from 57° in the east to 60° along the Mississippi. Nashville, in the west-central part of the state, has a mean January temperature of 39°, a mean July temperature of 79°, a record high of 106°, and a record low of -13°. The average annual rainfall for the state is about 50 in., and the average snowfall about 8 in. The winds that bring rain come from the south and southwest.

**INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING:** The more important institutions in Tennessee are Bethel College, McKenzie; Carson-Newman College, Jefferson City; University of Chattanooga, Chattanooga; Cumberland University, Lebanon; East Tennessee State College, Johnson City; Fisk University for Negroes, Nashville; King College, Bristol; Knoxville College for Negroes, Knoxville; Lambuth College, Jackson; Lane College for Negroes, Jackson; Le Moyne College for Negroes, Memphis; Lincoln Memorial University, Harrogate; Madison College, Madison College; Maryville College, Maryville; Milligan College, Milligan College; Scarritt College, Nashville; Siena College, Memphis; Southern Missionary College, Collegedale; Southwestern College, Memphis; Tennessee Polytechnic Institute, Cookeville; University of Tennessee, Knoxville; Trevecca Nazarene College, Nashville; Tusculum College, Greeneville; Union University, Jackson; University of the South, Sewanee; William Jennings Bryan University, Dayton. Teachers' training colleges are at Nashville, Johnson City, Murfreesboro, Memphis, and Clarksville. At Nashville is an agricultural and industrial colored normal school.

**CHARITIES AND CORRECTION:** The state maintains hospitals for the insane at Knoxville, Nashville, and Bolivar; a school for the deaf at Knoxville and one for the blind at Nashville; a training school for boys at Nashville, a vocational school for girls at Tullahoma, an industrial school at Nashville, and a vocational school for colored girls at Nashville; a Confederates' home at the Hermitage former home of Andrew Jackson, near Nashville; a penitentiary at Nashville and one at Petros. At Memphis is a psychiatric hospital. At Donelson is a home for the feeble-minded and at Pikeville a reform school for colored boys. Capital punishment is by electrocution.

**POLITICAL FACTS:** Tennessee's present constitution, adopted in 1870, was a revision of her second constitution (1834) and has not been much amended, since to change it is exceedingly difficult. Laws are made by an Assembly which consists of two houses: the Senate and the House of Representatives, both elected for two years. Senators and Representatives are apportioned among the various counties and districts, and there may not be more than 33 Senators nor more than 99 Representatives. No clergyman is eligible for the Assembly.

The governor, who serves a two-year term, must be over thirty years of age and a resident of the state for at least seven years at the time of his election. The secretary of state, who serves for four years, is appointed by the General Assembly. The supreme court appoints the attorney-general; other officials

## TENNESSEE—Continued

are appointed by the governor with the sanction of the General Assembly.

The judiciary is headed by the supreme court, which is made up of five judges elected by the voters for eight years. Not more than two of them may live in any one of the three grand divisions into which the state is divided. This court hears cases only on appeal. Besides the supreme court there are twelve chancery courts, nineteen circuit courts, and county courts; each one of them is presided over by a judge elected for eight years. Justices of the peace and, in certain cities, recorders' courts, complete the judiciary department.

Voters must be citizens of the United States and over twenty-one years of age. They must have lived in the state a year and in the county six months.

The county is the unit of local government.

Intermarriage between whites and Negroes is forbidden. There is a law forbidding the teaching of the theory of evolution.

The capital of Tennessee is at Nashville.

**PARKS:** Great Smoky Mountains National Park (460,-987 acres), partly in North Carolina, contains some of the finest scenery east of the Rockies.

Near Chattanooga is the Chickamauga and Chattanooga National Military Park, extending into Georgia. Others are Fort Donelson at Dover, Shiloh at Pittsburg Landing, and Stone's River at Murfreesboro. All have national cemeteries. Lookout Mountain, a fifth battlefield, has been offered to the nation as a park.

**MONUMENTS:** Andrew Johnson National Monument and Meriwether Lewis National Monument commemorate two famous historical figures.

Tennessee has 1,531,797 acres of national forest.

**GAME AND BIRD RESERVATIONS:** In Lake and Obion counties are Lake Isom Refuge for birds and Reelfoot Refuge for birds and fur-bearing animals. Tennessee Refuge in Henry, Benton, Humphreys, and Decatur counties protects waterfowl.

**NAME:** The region that is now Tennessee was known as the Washington District from 1775 to 1776. Between 1784 and 1788 it was the State of Franklin, and in 1790 it became the Territory South of the Ohio. It is hard to say just what was the origin of its name when it became the State of Tennessee in 1796. Probably the word came from "Tenassee," "Tanasi," "Tanassee," or "Tansi," the name the Indians of the Cherokee tribe gave to their capital at the time when they dwelt on the west bank of the Little Tennessee. The name of the Tennessee River and of the state doubtless came from this word, of which the meaning seems to have been

completely lost. Certain fanciful meanings have been assigned to it, such as "the river with a big bend," and "a curved spoon."

**NICKNAMES:** Tennessee has been called the Big Bend State from one of the fanciful meanings assigned to the state's name. It is not certain why it should have been called the Lion's Den State, though the title doubtless has some connection with the life and activities of Andrew Jackson. Since Tennessee has furnished three presidents and a number of distinguished statesmen it is sometimes called the Mother of Southwestern Statesmen.

The people of Tennessee are called Big Benders, Butternuts—from the brownish color of the uniforms of Tennessee soldiers in wartime—Mudheads, and Whelps. No explanation can be given for the last two nicknames.

**STATE FLOWER:** Passion flower (genus *Passiflora*), also called the wild apricot, the maypop, and the ocoee; selected by the school children in accordance with a resolution of the Assembly in 1919. However, in 1933 the Senate approved the iris as the state flower, and though this act does not abolish the previous law, the iris has come to be regarded as the official flower.

**STATE SONG:** "My Homeland, Tennessee," with words by Nell Grayson Taylor and music by Roy Lamont Smith; adopted by a resolution of the Senate in 1926. However, in 1931 the Assembly adopted as the state song "My Tennessee," by Frances Hannah Trantum. The attorney-general has ruled that the song first chosen is the official song.

**STATE FLAG:** A red field bearing in the center a blue circle containing three white stars. At the fly end of the flag is a blue stripe separated from the red field by a narrow white stripe. The flag symbolizes the three political divisions of the state, bound together by the people.

**STATE MOTTO:** "Agriculture and Commerce."

**STATE BIRD:** Mocking bird.

**INTERESTING FACTS:** Tennessee observes New Year's Day, Lincoln's Birthday, Washington's Birthday, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Election Day, Armistice Day, Thanksgiving Day, Christmas Day, Robert E. Lee's Birthday on January 19, Confederate Memorial Day on June 3, and the birthday of General Bedford Forrest on July 13.

Tennessee is now the scene of an experiment in regional development throughout a large area in the Tennessee Valley. The project, conducted by the federal government under the Tennessee Valley Authority, is described on other pages.

Population of state, 1940, 2,915,841	
Counties	
Anderson (F2)	26,504
Bedford (D3)	23,151
Benton (B2)	11,976
Bledsoe (E3)	8,358
Blount (G3)	41,116
Bradley (F4)	28,498
Campbell (F1)	31,131
Cannon (D3)	9,880
Carroll (B3)	25,978
Carter (H2)	35,127
Cheatham (C2)	9,928

Chester (B4)	11,124
Claiborne (G1)	24,657
Clay (E1)	10,904
Cocke (G3)	24,083
Colfee (D3)	18,959
Crockett (A3)	17,330
Cumberland (E3)	15,592
Davidson (D2)	257,267
Decatur (B3)	10,261
De Kalb (E3)	14,588
Dickson (C2)	19,718
Dyer (A2)	34,920
Fayette (A4)	30,322
Fentress (F1)	14,262

Franklin (D4)	23,892
Gibson (B2)	44,835
Giles (D4)	29,240
Grainger (G2)	14,356
Greene (H2)	39,405
Grundy (E3)	11,552
Hamblen (G2)	18,611
Hamilton (E4)	180,478
Hancock (G1)	11,231
Hardeman (B4)	23,590
Hardin (B4)	17,806
Hawkins (H1)	28,521
Haywood (A3)	27,699
Henderson (B1)	19,220
Henry (B2)	25,877

Hickman (C3)	14,873
Houston (C2)	6,432
Humphreys (C2)	12,421
Jackson (E2)	15,082
Jefferson (G2)	18,621
Johnson (J1)	12,998
Knox (G3)	178,468
Lake (A1)	11,235
Lauderdale (A3)	24,461
Lawrence (C4)	28,726
Lewis (C3)	5,849
Lincoln (D4)	27,214
Loudon (F1)	19,838

# TENNESSEE—Continued

McMinn (F3) . . .	30,781
McNairy (B4) . .	20,424
Macon (E1) . . .	14,904
Madison (B3) . .	54,115
Marion (E4) . . .	19,140
Marshall (D3) . .	16,030
Maury (C3) . . .	40,357
Meigs (F3) . . .	6,393
Monroe (F3) . . .	24,275
Montgomery (C1) . . .	33,346
Moore (D4) . . .	4,093
Morgan (F2) . . .	15,242
Obion (A1) . . .	30,978
Overton (E2) . .	18,883
Perry (C3) . . .	7,535
Pickett (E1) . . .	6,213
Polk (F4) . . .	15,473
Putnam (E2) . . .	26,250
Rhea (F3) . . .	16,353
Roane (F3) . . .	27,795
Robertson (D1) .	29,046
Rutherford (D3)	33,604
Scott (F1) . . .	15,966
Sequitche (E3) .	5,038
Sevier (G3) . . .	23,291
Shelby (A4) . . .	358,250
Smith (E2) . . .	16,148
Stewart (C1) . .	13,549
Sullivan (H1) . .	69,085
Sumner (D1) . .	32,719
Tipton (A3) . . .	28,036
Trousdale (D2) .	6,113
Unicoi (H2) . . .	14,128
Union (G2) . . .	9,030
Van Buren (E3) .	4,090
Warren (E3) . . .	10,764
Washington (H2) . . .	51,631
Wayne (C4) . . .	13,638
Weakley (B2) . .	29,498
White (E3) . . .	15,983
Williamson (D3) .	25,220
Wilson (D2) . . .	25,267

## Cities and Towns

[Places marked with an asterisk (\*) were classified as urban in 1940]

Adamsville (B4) .	719
Alamo (A3) . . .	1,137
Alcoa * (G3) . . .	5,131
Algood (E2) . . .	609
Arlington (A4) .	440
Ashland City (C2) . . .	957
Athens * (F4) . .	6,930
Atoka (A3) . . .	255
Baileytown (H2) .	229
Bartlett (A4) . . .	400
Baxter (E2) . . .	576
Bellbuckle (D3) .	355
Bells (A3) . . .	1,054
Bethel Springs (B4) . . .	560
Bluff City (H2) . .	700
Bolivar (B4) . . .	1,314
Bradford (B2) . .	612
Brighton (A3) . .	299
Bristol * (H1) . .	14,004

Brownsville * (A3) . . .	4,012
Bruceton (B3) . .	1,003
Butler (J2) . . .	608
Byrdstown (E1) .	215
Camden (B3) . . .	992
Carthage (E2) . .	1,512
Celina (E2) . . .	864
Centerville (C3) .	1,030
Charlotte (C2) . .	470
Chattanooga * (E4) . . .	128,163
Clarksville * (C1) . . .	11,831
Cleveland * (F4)	11,351
Clinton * (F2) . .	2,761
Collierville (A4) .	1,042
Columbia * (C3)	10,579
Cookeville * (E2)	4,364
Copperhill (F4) . .	1,005
Cornersville (D3) .	343
Cottage Grove (B2) . . .	172
Covington * (A3) .	3,513
Cowan (D4) . . .	1,461
Crossville (E3) . .	1,511
Cumberland Gap (G1) . . .	409
Dandridge (G2) . .	488
Dayton (F3) . . .	1,870
Decatur (F3) . . .	205
Decaturville (B3) . . .	433
Decherd (D4) . . .	868
Denmark (A3) . . .	81
Dickson * (C2) . .	3,504
Dresden (B2) . . .	1,115
Dunlap (E4) . . .	721
Dyer (A2) . . .	1,185
Dyersburg * (A2) . . .	10,034
East Ridge * (E4) . . .	2,939
Elizabethton * (H2) . . .	8,516
Englewood (F4) . .	1,342
Erin (C2) . . .	905
Erwin * (H2) . . .	3,350
Etowah * (F3) . .	3,362
Fayetteville * (D4) . . .	4,684
Franklin * (D3) . .	4,120
Friendship (A2) . .	451
Gainesboro (E2) .	671
Gallatin * (D2) . .	4,829
Gates (A3) . . .	383
Germantown (A4) . . .	402
Gibson (B2) . . .	284
Gleason (B2) . . .	883
Gordonsburg (C3) . . .	315
Gordonsville (D2) . . .	250
Graysville (E4) . .	846
Green Brier (D1) .	795
Greeneville * (H2) . . .	6,784
Greenfield (B2) . .	1,509
Halls (A3) . . .	1,511
Harriman * (F3) . .	5,620
Hartsville (D2) . .	1,095
Henderson (H4) . .	1,771
Henning (A3) . . .	415
Henry (B2) . . .	232

Hilham (E2) . . .	254
Hohenwald (C3) .	1,086
Hollow Rock (B2) . . .	422
Humboldt * (B3) .	5,160
Huntingdon (B3) .	1,432
Huntland (D4) . .	303
Jackson * (B3) . .	24,332
Jamestown (F2) . .	1,230
Jefferson City * (G2) . . .	2,576
Jellico (F1) . . .	1,581
Johnson City * (H2) . . .	25,332
Jonesboro (H2) . .	976
Kenton (A2) . . .	809
Kingsport * (H1)	14,404
Kingston (F3) . . .	880
Knoxville * (G3) . . .	111,580
La Follette * (F1) . . .	4,010
La Grange (A4) . .	243
Lake City (F2) . .	1,520
Lawrenceburg * (C4) . . .	3,807
Lebanon * (D2) . .	5,950
Lenoir City * (F3) . . .	4,373
Lewisburg * (D4) .	3,582
Lexington * (B3) .	2,526
Linden (C3) . . .	641
Livingston (E2) . .	1,527
Lookout Moun- tain (E4) . . .	1,545
Loudon * (F2) . .	3,017
Lynchburg (D4) . .	390
Lynnvile (C3) . . .	374
McEwen (C2) . . .	617
McKenzie (B2) . .	2,019
McMinnville * (E3) . . .	4,649
Madisonville (F3) . . .	965
Manchester (D4) . .	1,715
Martin (B2) . . .	3,587
Maryville * (G3) .	5,609
Mason (A3) . . .	448
Maury City (A4) .	412
Medina (B3) . . .	414
Medon (B3) . . .	97
Memphis * (A4)	292,942
Middleton (B4) . .	430
Milan * (B3) . . .	3,035
Millington (A4) . .	730
Mitchellville (D1) . . .	216
Monroe (E2) . . .	69
Monterey (E2) . .	1,742
Morrison (E3) . . .	278
Morristown * (G2) . . .	8,050
Moscow (A4) . . .	309
Mountain City (J2) . . .	1,021
Mount Pleasant * (C3) . . .	3,089
Munford (A3) . . .	407
Murfreesboro * (D3) . . .	9,495
Nashville * (D2) . . .	157,402
Newbern (A2) . . .	1,740
Newport * (G3) . .	3,575
Niota (F3) . . .	623
Oakdale (F4) . . .	900

Oakland (A4) . . .	251
Obion (A2) . . .	1,151
Oliver Springs (F2) . . .	855
Oneida (F2) . . .	1,252
Orme (E4) . . .	277
Palmer (E3) . . .	1,228
Paris * (B2) . . .	6,395
Parrottsville (H2) . . .	99
Parsons (B3) . . .	1,079
Petersburg (D3) . .	581
Pikeville (E3) . . .	759
Pleasant Hill (E3) . . .	178
Portland (D2) . . .	1,212
Pulaski * (C4) . .	5,314
Puryear (B1) . . .	368
Richard City (E4) . . .	1,008
Ridgely (A2) . . .	1,068
Ridgetop (D1) . . .	351
Ripley * (A3) . . .	2,784
Rockwood * (F3) .	3,981
Rogersville (G2) . .	2,018
Rossville (A4) . . .	190
Rutherford (A2) . .	771
Savannah (B4) . .	1,504
Selmer (B4) . . .	957
Sevierville (G3) . .	1,161
Sharon (B2) . . .	586
Shelbyville * (D3) . . .	6,537
Signal Mountain (E4) . . .	1,308
Slayden (C2) . . .	164
Smithville (E3) . .	919
Smyrna (D2) . . .	493
Somerville (A4) . .	1,570
South Fulton (A1) . . .	2,050
South Pittsburg (E4) . . .	2,285
Sparta * (E3) . . .	2,506
Spencer (E3) . . .	508
Spring City (F3) .	1,569
Springfield * (D2) . . .	6,668
Sweetwater * (F3) . . .	2,593
Tellico Plains (F4) . . .	899
Tiptonville (A2) . .	1,503
Toone (B4) . . .	305
Townsend (G3) . . .	378
Trenton * (B3) . .	3,400
Trezevant (B2) . .	527
Trimble (A2) . . .	763
Troy (A2) . . .	513
Tullahoma * (D4) . . .	4,549
Union City * (A2) . . .	7,256
Vanleer (C2) . . .	206
Viola (E3) . . .	240
Wartrace (D3) . . .	552
Watertown (D2) . .	908
Waverly (C2) . . .	1,318
Waynesboro (C4) . . .	768
White Bluff (C2) . .	522
White Pine (G2) . .	497
Whiteville (A4) . .	796
Winchester * (D4) . . .	2,760
Woodbury (D3) . .	663

---

# *The* HISTORY of TEXAS

---

## Reading Unit

No. 42

---

### TEXAS: THE LONE STAR STATE

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

#### *Interesting Facts Explained*

When Texas was part of a foreign land, 8-376  
The first explorers of Texas, 8-376  
The first serious attempt to settle Texas, 8-377-78  
When the United States gave up all claim to Texas, 8-379  
How Texas came to be known as the "Lone Star State," 8-

380  
When Texas joined the Union, 8-381  
Why the Texas Rangers were organized, 8-381  
Cotton growing, 8-381  
The live-stock industry, 8-381-82  
The natural wealth of Texas, 8-383-85

#### *Things to Think About*

What kinds of soil are to be found in Texas?  
What is the climate of Texas like?  
How did the frontiersmen of Texas like to die?

What did the battle cry "Remember the Alamo!" mean?  
Why was Sam Houston deposed as governor of Texas?  
Why did the land in northern Texas become a dusty desert?

#### *Picture Hunt*

What historical interest does the Mission of San Antonio have for us? 8-379, 380

Why is there a great sea wall at Galveston? 8-381

#### *Related Material*

One flag from ocean to ocean, 7-231-39  
What use is made of helium gas? 1-375, 473  
What difference did the invention of the cotton gin make to the plantation owners of the South? 9-32, 7-217, 13-317  
The story of cotton, 9-27-34  
Why was Mexico ready for revolution in the early 1800's? 7-82

How was Cortes able to defeat the Aztecs? 13-468-70  
What happens when an earthquake takes place beneath the sea? 1-80  
The story of oil, 9-449-55  
What lands in America did La Salle claim for the King of Spain? 13-486  
A famous citizen of Texas, 4-57-77

#### *Practical Applications*

How does Texas take advantage of her early spring season? 8-381

What is being done in Texas to improve the educational system? 8-385

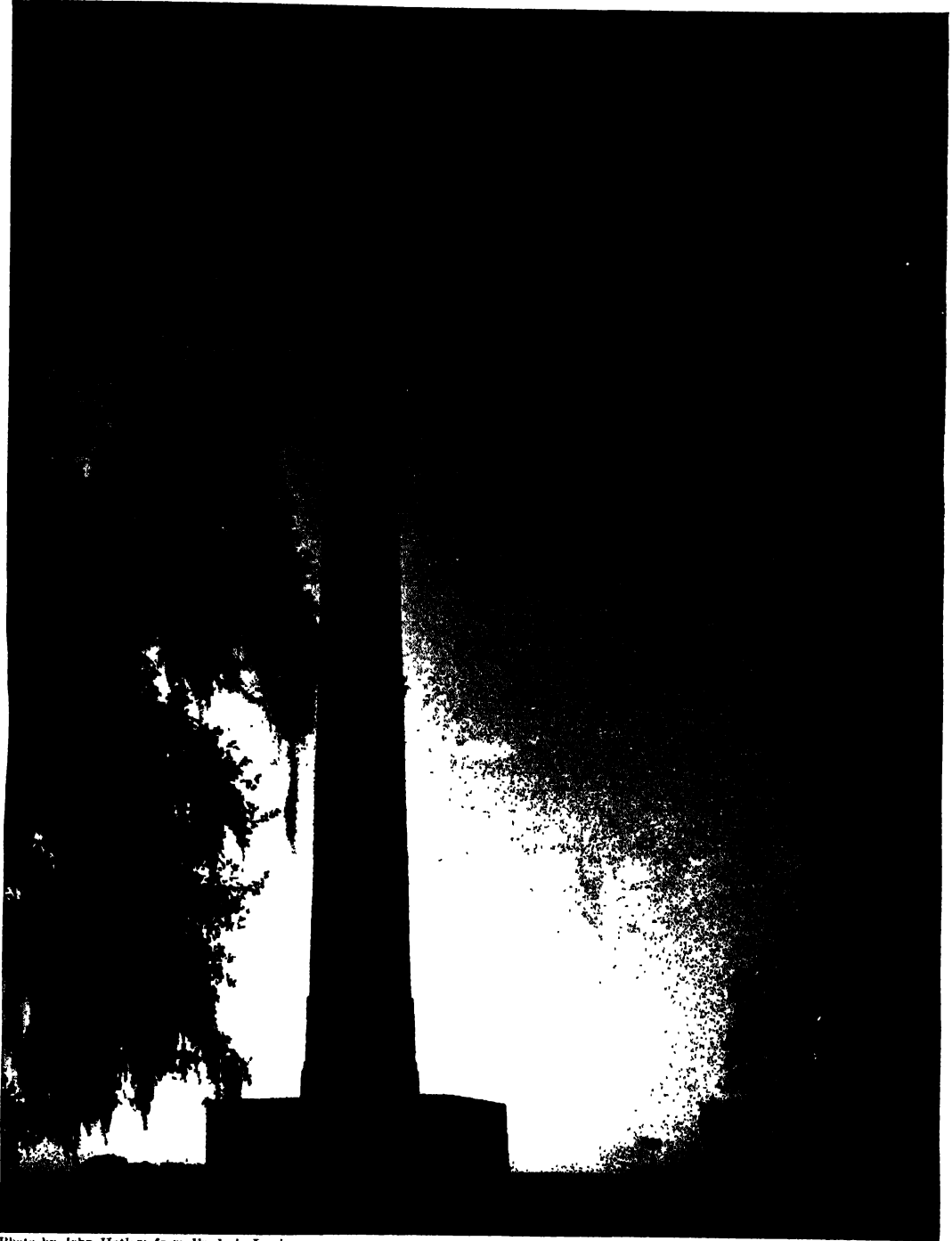


Photo by John Hatlem from Frederic Lewis

Near Houston, Texas' largest city, stands the San Jacinto Monument to mark the spot where the Battle of San Jacinto was fought on April 21, 1836. Here Texans under General Sam Houston defeated the Mexican general Santa Ana and won their freedom from Mexico. Ten days later Texas declared her inde-

pendence, and Houston became her first president. Nearly ten years later she joined the United States—pretty much on her own terms. Without consulting Congress she may divide herself into five different states if she so decides. She now leads the states as a producer of a large number of useful products.

## THE HISTORY OF TEXAS

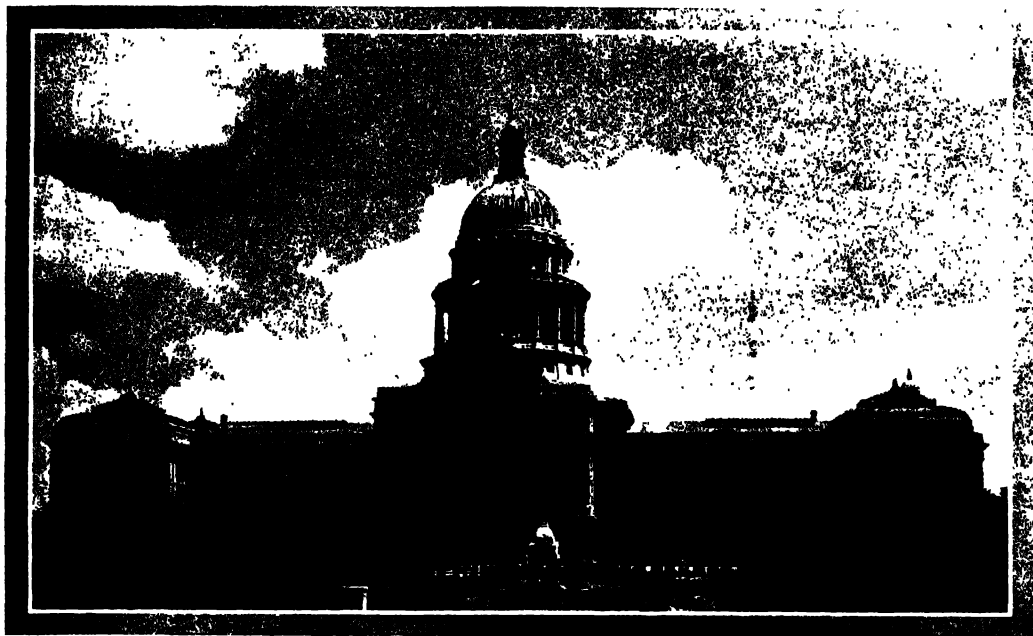


Photo by the Edison Photo Company

Austin, the capital city of Texas, was named for one of the founders of the state. The photograph shows the

capitol building, an enormous structure built of red granite native to Texas.

### TEXAS: *the* LONE STAR STATE

*The Largest State in the Union, Rich in Resources and in the Energies of Her Citizens, Is Building for Herself a Life That Is Distinctive and Full of Color*

**I**T IS strange to us to-day to think that any part of our country was once a part of a foreign land, speaking a foreign tongue and following foreign ways. Yet it is true that large sections in the western United States did not come into our possession until about the middle of the last century, and before that time had been as much a part of Mexico as they are a part of the United States to-day. And stranger still, Texas, before she was annexed by the United States, had been an independent nation for a number of years, with a national life of her own and plenty of national problems. To-day she has left those tempestuous days far behind—she is as thoroughly American as New England is—yet their warmth and color shed a glow down through the years, and lend her a thousand memories with which she would be very unwilling to

part. They have become a priceless heirloom.

For more than three hundred years Texas belonged to people who spoke the Spanish tongue. The first white man to set foot on her soil was the Spaniard Cabeza de Vaca (kā-bā'thā dā vā'kā). Between 1528 and 1536, after he had been shipwrecked in the Gulf of Mexico, he wandered about in the vast country of the Southwest until he finally made his way to Mexico City. In 1540 the famous Francisco Vásquez Coronado (vās'kāth kō'rō-nā'thō), whose search for mythical gold we have described in our stories of Kansas and Nebraska, crossed the greater part of Texas on his way up the Rio Grande (rē'ō grān'dā). Those were the first explorers of this vast region.

As for the land they explored, they described it as a wilderness empire of great richness and variety. Almost every sort of

## THE HISTORY OF TEXAS

soil was to be found in Texas, from the thin, rocky ground of mountain ranges and barren deserts to the fertile, black reaches of level plains. Along the Gulf coast the land of Texas is level, with a surface sloping gently toward the sea and many bays and lagoons along the shore. The soil here is mostly light and sandy. Covering most of the

northeastern corner of the state are the "prairie plains," level in the east, rugged in the southeast, and rising slowly to a height of about 2,500 feet in the west. They are a continuation of the prairies of the states farther north. Then, making up the rest of the state, are the Great Plains, consisting for the most part of level, very high tablelands which rise gradually to a height of 4,000 feet in the north. These plains are in some regions very uneven and deeply cut by the streams which flow through them. In other places they lie in long, open stretches, unbroken by the slightest irregularity. The most famous section of the level portion is called the Staked Plain, lying along the New Mexican border. South of a line drawn east from the

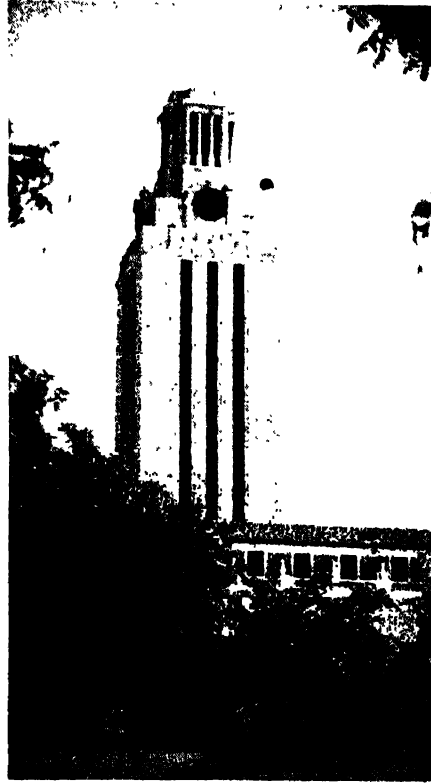
southern boundary of New Mexico, the Great Plains region is known as the Edwards Plateau (plă-tô'). Finally, in that part of the state which lies farthest west is a small region of very high ground—a spur of the Rockies—which makes up a separate drainage area. Here El Capitan, in the Guadalupe (gô'dă-lôop') Mountains, is the highest point in the state, with an elevation of 8,751 feet.

In general the land of Texas slopes to the southeast, so most of the rivers flow toward the southeast. The surface falls away in a series of gigantic steps, or "scarps," each step marking the descent from a given region to the one next lower. The climate along the coast is warm and moist, with only three or four days a year when the thermom-

eter goes below freezing. Inland Texas is much colder and drier. The west and southwest have very little rainfall, for the warm, moist winds from the Gulf have lost much of their moisture in passing over the lowlands.

This land, as we have said, the Spaniards were the first to explore. They came north, from their permanent settlements in Mexico, partly to explore and partly to conquer mythical cities which were rumored to be even richer in gold than those of Mexico and South America. But these seekers after fame and fortune were unable or unwilling to establish real settlements. The first real attempt to settle Texas was made quite by accident, and by Frenchmen, not by Spaniards. These Frenchmen were com-

manded by the famous La Salle (lă sâl), who was trying to found a colony at the mouth of the Mississippi River. Blown far to the west by a storm on the Gulf of Mexico, the party came to rest in Matagorda (măt'ă-gôr'dă) Bay, some 150 miles west of Galveston and between 450 and 500 miles west of the Mississippi delta. Here they decided to make the best of a bad job, and built a little fort (1685). The fort was soon de-



The University of Texas, which was opened in 1883, is rapidly becoming one of the most important educational centers in the South. Above is the Administration and Library Building.

## THE HISTORY OF TEXAS



Photo by Lloyd M. Long

Texas boasts many large cities. Among the biggest is Dallas, which lies in the center of a vast agricultural region and is an important distributing center. This photograph was taken at night, and shows the city's jagged skyline. Dallas has changed a good deal since

1841, when John Neely Bryan built his log hut on the bank of the Trinity River—the first building in what was to become a village known as Peter's Colony. From that modest beginning the settlement has grown to its present fine proportions.

settled by Indians, and the Frenchmen driven away; but just the same, that little building played an important part in the history of Texas. For the Spaniards, frightened by the thought that this land might be lost to them if some other power settled it, soon were sending missionaries and colonists into the broad plains and valleys of Texas. They had made their first permanent settlement in 1682 at Isleta (ēs-lā'tā), on the Rio Grande not far from the present El Paso (ēl pās'ō).

### The Mission of San Antonio

Under the Spanish, Texas soon began to flourish in a quiet and peaceful way. Many beautiful missions were built, some of which still stand. The Indians were slowly brought into contact with civilization and religion, and a few small towns grew up. There was no hurry or bustle about this growth, no large-scale use was made of the land or of the mineral wealth. The Spaniards did not build huge cities, or take much care about irrigating the land and teaching the Indians

how to get bigger crops. Everything was quiet and easy-going, with a little trading, a little farming, a little education, and a great deal of leisure and charm. The first settlements were near the coast, around San Antonio, Nacogdoches (nāk'ō-dō'chēz), and Goliad (gō'lī-ād'). The mission of San Antonio, known as the Alamo (a'lā-mō) because of its many cottonwoods—the tree is called "alamo" in Spanish—became, about the year 1718, the center of a little village, the first civil settlement in Texas.

### When Texas Was Part of Mexico

But while this slow-paced Spanish culture dreamed away the peaceful years, events were taking place in other parts of the world which would soon end the quiet of Texas. In Paris a treaty was signed which in 1803 gave to the United States the French territory of "Louisiana," including all of a vast region to the north and east of Texas except what is now New Mexico. At once American settlers came pouring into their new lands. And no, satisfied with what they had legally



## THE HISTORY OF TEXAS

acquired, they began to cast longing eyes on the fertile stretches of Texas. The United States claimed the eastern part of the region, and three times near the beginning of the nineteenth century American frontiersmen organized expeditions into the sparsely settled lands of Texas. Three times they were driven out. In 1791 an invasion was attempted and finally thwarted in 1794. In 1812-13 the most determined attack of all carried the Americans to San Antonio and had considerable success. From 1819 to 1821 a third invasion struggled manfully against great odds, without success.

But in spite of the failure of this third invasion of Texas, the year 1821 marked a great change in the history of the Southwest. For in that year the government of Mexico won, with a smashing victory, its hard-fought struggle for independence from the Spanish government. At this time the United States finally gave up all claim to Texas, and fixed a boundary line between the Province of Texas, a recognized part of Mexico, and the lands of the Louisiana Purchase, belonging to the United States.

### The Growth of Revolt

And so the Texas question seemed settled at last. Texas had been surrendered by the United States to a free Mexico, and was seemingly ready to start life anew on that basis. But there was one important difference between the old and the new Texas. Mexico,

unlike Spain, was quite willing to have American settlers develop the lands of Texas. In fact, she welcomed the energy and ability of the Americans. And so, even though the United States admitted that she no longer had the slightest claim to Texas, American

citizens kept flocking to this rich land, building their own towns, working their own farms, settling their own disputes, actually making their own laws.

For a while all went well. The Mexican government was liberal, and the new settlers enjoyed almost complete freedom. But soon the shoe of Mexican government began to pinch in places. An attempt was made to force the Roman Catholic religion on all settlers. Then, in 1830, all further immigration was forbidden. The population of Texas had grown from 4,000 in 1821 to 20,000 in 1830,

and since most of those new settlers were Americans, the Mexican government was becoming alarmed. Finally, in 1835, when Santa Anna became dictator of Mexico, with a reactionary policy which included huge grants of land to all his favorites, open revolt broke out. At first very few Texans were interested in complete freedom from Mexico. They only wanted to restore a liberal Mexican government. But as the struggle became fiercer, they gradually became more radical, until the battles were fought and the blood shed for the cause of Texan independence.

During the first few weeks of the war, the



Photo by H. E. Summerville

The lovely old Mission of San Francisco de la Espada at San Antonio was built in 1731. It is one of a group of missions established in Texas between 1690 and 1791 to convert the Indians to Christianity and to hold the land for Spain. The quaint doorway shows the influence of the Moors on the architecture of Old Spain.

## THE HISTORY OF TEXAS



Photo by the San Antonio C. of C.

This is the famous Alamo, where the brave Texas patriots lost their lives. It was really the chapel of the Mission of San Antonio, but it was called "the

Alamo" because it stood within a grove of cottonwood trees. "Alamo" is the Spanish word for "poplar," and cottonwoods belong to the poplar group.

Texans were generally successful, but the tide soon turned in favor of the Mexican army, under Santa Anna himself. Within a few weeks the city of San Antonio was captured, and on February 23, 1836, the garrison of 183 Texas frontiersmen was surrounded in the old mission of the Alamo.

### The Defense of the Alamo

Then came one of the greatest episodes in American frontier history—the defense of the Alamo. For nearly two weeks those 183 lion-hearted, sharp-shooting Texans held their fort against an army of 4,000 Mexicans. Cooped up in their tiny fortress, with only a little food and water, they fought day after day against hopeless odds. The enemy smashed a hole in the wall and tried to storm the fortress. A withering fire drove them back. Side by side the grim Texans battled, shooting with fearful accuracy and deadly calm. When their ammunition gave out, they fought with clubbed rifles and Bowie knives. They fought with their fists, their teeth, and their nails, until the last man of that dauntless 183 lay dead in the blood-stained ruins. In the welter of the fearful struggle died two of the most famous frontiersmen in American history—James Bowie, inventor of the Bowie

knife, and Davy Crockett. But that was the way most of those hardy frontiersmen preferred to die—with their boots on, their knives out, and their enemy before them.

### "Remember the Alamo!"

At any rate, the grim battlers of the Alamo did not lose their cause! Their brave stand aroused Texans everywhere. Rallying around their leader, Sam Houston (hūs'tūn), and the battle cry "Remember the Alamo!" they dealt the Mexican army under Santa Anna a crushing blow at the Battle of the San Jacinto (sān jā-sīn'tō) River. Most of the army was killed, and Santa Anna himself was captured. On the second day of March, 1836, Texas declared herself a free nation, and adopted a flag of red, white, and blue, with a single star in the middle. From this single star she is known as the "Lone Star State."

But Texas, large and flourishing as she was at that time—bigger than either France or Germany—was not yet strong enough financially to stand alone between two nations like the United States and Mexico, both already in the prime of their strength. Of course there was never any question of her returning to Mexico. What happened was that in 1845, after a long and bitter debate

## THE HISTORY OF TEXAS

over the question of slavery—for Texas had been settled as a slaveholding country, mostly by people from the South—she was admitted to the Union by her own request, and as a slave state.

During the Civil War Galveston (gǎl'vės-tŭn) was captured by the Federal fleet and held for some time, but on the whole Texas escaped the most severe fighting. One of the great tragedies of the war in Texas came about when Sam Houston, twice president of the Texas Republic, a bold, wary soldier and an honest, fearless public official, was deposed as governor because he spoke out for the Union cause. He had been one of Texas' greatest heroes. Under the Reconstruction Acts Texas was a heavy sufferer, yet it is from the Civil War days that we may count her real prosperity.

To be sure, there was a great deal of lawlessness and violence for some time. Gangs of cattle thieves terrorized the settlers, and there was the constant threat of uprisings on the part of the Indians—the fierce Comanches (kô-măn'chê), of the great Shoshonean (shô-shô'ně-ăn) group, and the Caddoes (kă'dô), a tribe which, though not far advanced, had learned to practice agriculture. These disorders were finally overcome when the state organized (1874) the famous Texas Rangers, a force of state police who soon brought order.

### Our Greatest Cotton State

Because most of her settlers came from the South, and because her soil was perfectly fitted to raising cotton, the growing of it was from the very beginning of her history the most important phase of Texas farming.

Especially along the bottom lands of her many rivers—the Rio Grande, Colorado, Brazos (brä'zôs), Trinity, Sabine (sä-bën'), Red, and Pecos (pä'kôs)—the land is black and wonderfully fertile. In the eastern part of the state, in the region now known as the Black Prairies, the soil is almost as fertile as

on the river bottoms. So it is little wonder that all those sections almost at once became centers of cotton production. In 1870 Texas ranked fifth among the states in cotton, in 1880 third. By 1900 she was in first place, where she has remained ever since. From 1934 to 1944 her crop averaged some \$235,000,000 a year in value. Other valuable crops are corn, which has lately brought the state from \$80,000,000 to \$85,000,000 a year, wheat, sorghums, oats, hay, rice, barley, flaxseed, potatoes, sweet potatoes, oranges, grapefruit, peaches, pears,

and grapes. Texas' crop of citrus fruits is growing steadily and is very profitable. The state's rank in nearly all farm products is high, partly because of her enormous size but also because of the great fertility of her soil, wherever there is enough rain to grow crops.

As for the state's newer crops, the raising of fruits and vegetables, especially along the Gulf coast, has developed rapidly in recent years, with peaches, pecans, onions, peanuts, spinach, strawberries, tomatoes, watermelons, cabbage, cantaloupes, and cucumbers all of growing importance. Because spring comes early in these southern climes, Texas ships her early fruits and vegetables to the ice-bound cities of the North, and realizes handsomely upon the transaction.

In the raising of live stock, Texas' rise to top place has been just as swift and impres-

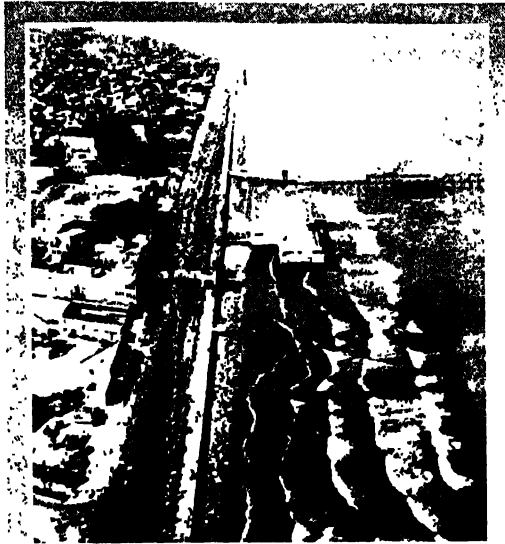


Photo by the Zerkun Photo Co.

This view of Galveston, Texas' great port, shows the beach and the great sea wall seven and a half miles long. The top of the wall is a hundred feet wide, and makes a fine promenade. Galveston suffered exceedingly from a tidal wave in 1900, and in this huge barrier has taken ample precautions against another such disaster.

## THE HISTORY OF TEXAS

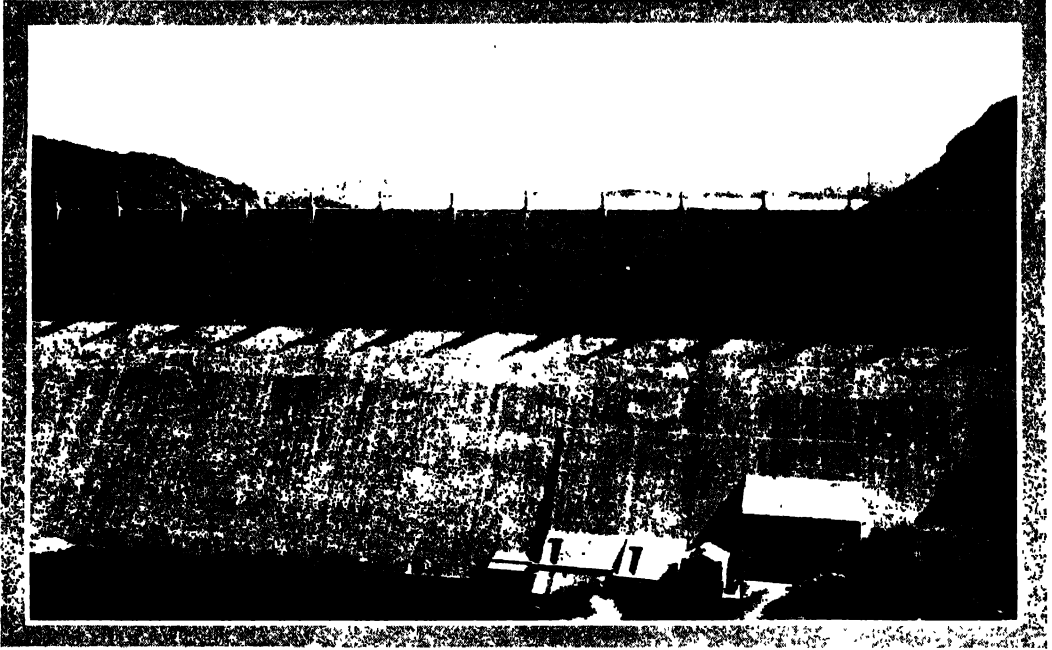


Photo by the El Paso Gateway Club

**Elephant Butte Dam on the Rio Grande in New Mexico stores millions of gallons of water for use in irrigating the parched lands of the Lone Star State. The dam,**

**which dates from 1916, is 306 feet high, and has formed a lake twenty-six miles long. Such a body of water is very rare in the West.**

sive. Especially in northwestern Texas it was for a long time the custom to allow the cattle, marked by the owner's brand, to roam freely over the open range, without fences or barriers of any sort. Because of the mild climate no winter shelter was necessary. The fencing off of the open range brought many lawless struggles between the great cattle barons, who insisted on fencing off their grounds, and the small producers, who preferred the open range. The introduction of sheep grazing had the same violent results; for the sheep ate the grass much closer to the ground than cattle could, and so tended to starve cattle off the range. The recent introduction of dry farming in the northwestern part of the state, which had formerly been the great range country, has also hindered the raising of live stock.

### **Our Leading Cattle State**

Yet in spite of all these conflicts and upheavals, the live-stock industry in Texas has grown amazingly. In the number of her cattle she has led the entire United States ever since 1860, and in sheep and wool she

has long been the leading state. The value of her cattle alone has mounted to some half billion dollars, while sheep, hogs, horses, and mules in the same year came to well over a quarter of a billion. Cattle are raised mostly in the south and west, while sheep and goats are grazed largely in the hills and rugged country of the north central part of the state. In raising turkeys Texas is now second to California. The cotton growers in the eastern counties have long raised hogs, but only of late years have hogs surpassed horses and mules in value. In the raising of horses and mules Texas is a leading state.

### **Agricultural Depression**

Following World War I the great agricultural depression cut deeply into the profits of Texas agriculture. In 1919 the value of her farm products was a good deal over \$1,070,000,000. But gradually it shrunk to a little over \$275,000,000 in 1935. This is a tremendous loss. The cotton crop alone, in the years between 1927 and 1935, was more than cut in half, shrinking in value by about \$2,500,000. To add to this story of

## THE HISTORY OF TEXAS

gloom and depression, we must of course mention the great droughts. When we said that stock raising in northwestern Texas was being replaced by dry farming, we neglected to mention the effect of this change on the soil. Overloaded with crops which cannot protect it from being carried off by rain and wind, and shorn of its natural protective coat of grass, land soon gives signs of wearing out. The succession of drought years in the early 1930's threatened to change the entire land surface into unproductive desert. Only prompt and thorough action on a broad scale saved northwestern Texas, New Mexico, and western Oklahoma from the fate of regions like the Gobi Desert in Central Asia. Carefully planned and rotated crops have aided much in this, and so have "shelter belts" of trees set out about half a mile apart to break the wind.

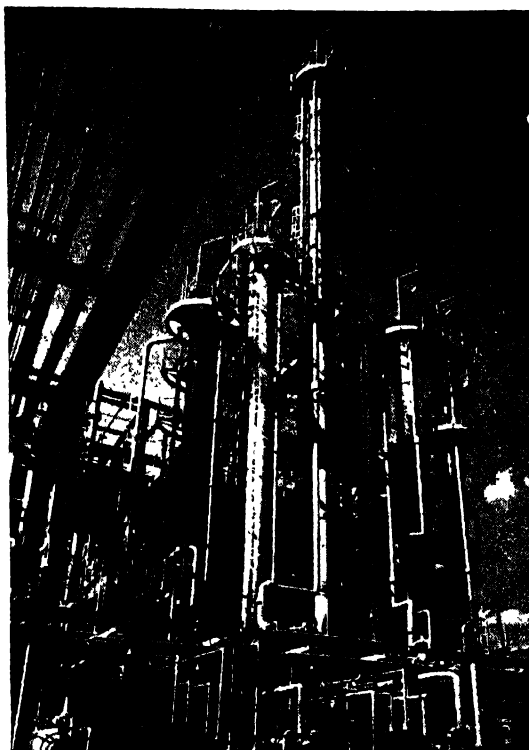
In all natural resources, and especially in minerals, Texas has been richly blessed. Her eastern regions are heavily stocked with timber, mostly yellow pine, with occasional stands of cypress.

### Is Texas Wasting Her Wealth?

Texas has been wasteful in exploiting these resources. In 1932 she cut only half as much timber as she cut in 1930 and only a third as much as in 1929. But she is still well supplied with valuable forests. The reforestation program which she has been slowly taking up should help her regain her former

proud position as a timber-producing state.

Far otherwise is the situation in regard to Texas' mineral wealth, the development of which is just now reaching its peak. In 1915 the value of Texas' mineral products was a little over \$29,000,000. Five years later it was more than twelve times that amount.



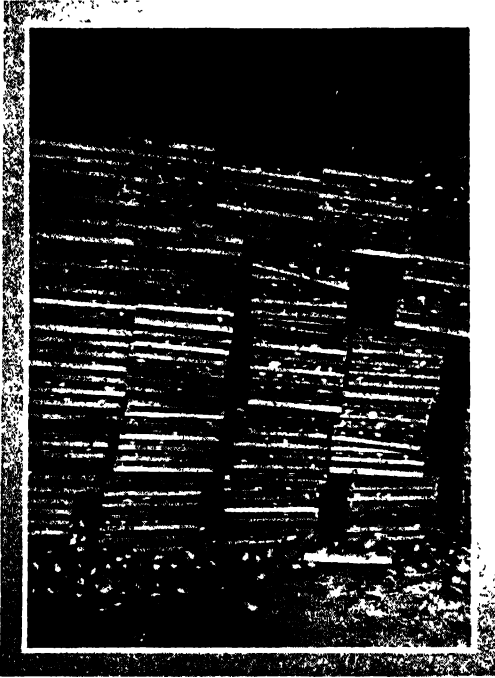
Courtesy of Du Pont Magazine

Magical changes take place at the Sabine River Works near Orange, Texas. This great plant—only a section of it is shown here—is part of Texas' growing chemical industry. At Sabine natural gas and substances taken from petroleum, found near at hand, are turned into substances that go to make useful articles ranging all the way from nylon and ice cube trays to "anti-freeze" for automobiles. Above is the ethylene fractionating tower.

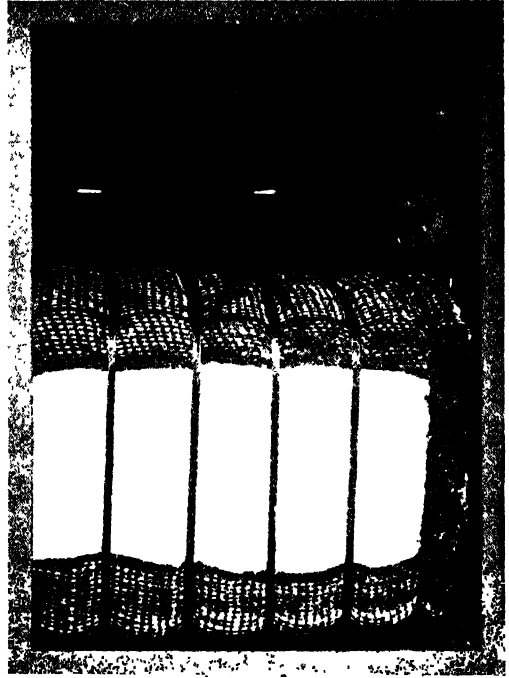
World War I had a great deal to do with this sudden rise, but the fact that development of mineral resources did not start in Texas till about 1895 was also of great importance. In that year the first oil was produced in the east-central part of the state, near Corsicana (kôr'-sî-kăn'â) in Navarro (nâ-vâr'ô) County. This field is still yielding to-day, having taken on new youth through the discovery of deeper layers of oil. Then, in 1901, the Spindle Top field, in the far southeastern corner of the state, began to yield. Before it came under control the first well in this field spouted oil 160 feet into the air for nine full days, pouring out half a million

barrels of fine oil in that time, to form great black pools all over the countryside. Since then, the great East Texas field has become one of the richest in the country. To-day oil brings Texas between \$700,000,000 and \$950,000,000 yearly. She leads all the states in its production. Along with these oil fields—where the wells are so close together that they look like great forests of gaunt steel trees—rich fields of natural gas are found not far away. In 1945 nearly one and three-fourths trillion cubic feet of gas

## THE HISTORY OF TEXAS



Here are two of the leading crops of Texas. To the left crates of onions are awaiting shipment. To the



right is a bale of cotton. Texas leads all the other states in both products.



Photos by the Texas State Department of Agriculture

These handsome cattle have replaced the Texas "long horns" that were so famous in the glamorous

days of the Old West. Texas ranks first in the raising of beef cattle, which supply our tables with meat.

was produced, and it was worth \$250,300,000. Like the oil that Texas produces these huge quantities of gas are transported by means of great pipe lines all over the country. In natural gas Texas has easily ranked first of all the states ever since the

late 1920's. She also supplies most of the world's helium (hē'lī-ŭm) gas.

Among other mineral products natural gasoline, sulfur, cement, clay products, gypsum, sand and gravel, stone, and magnesium compounds are most valuable. Texas produces

## THE HISTORY OF TEXAS

some four-fifths of the nation's sulfur, or 3,000,000 tons yearly of this modern industrial necessity. Humble cement, sand and gravel, clay products, salt, and stone bring in some \$35,000,000 a year. Future developments seem likely to center around great unexploited beds of coal, asphalt, and potash, all of which will probably be extremely valuable in a short time. Texas, with a fifth of the nation's mineral output, leads all the states.

### What Texas Manufactures

Texas manufacturing is naturally concerned mostly with the products of her farms and her mines. Abundant raw materials, cheap fuel close at hand, and a low cost of living all help to give her an enviable position in this field of industry. Most valuable of all were the products of her oil-refining industries, which in 1940 had an output twice that of any other state. Dallas, Houston, Fort Worth, San Antonio, Beaumont (bō'mōnt), and Galveston all had a hand in the oil-refining industry. Second in value were her meat-packing products. Fort Worth was the outstanding center of this industry, with El Paso and Texarkana (tēk'sār-kā'n'ā) also important cities. Fort Worth is the largest meat-packing city south of Kansas City. Cotton by-products were a close third among Texas manufactures. Just about all the cities in the state—Dallas (dāl'ās), Houston, San Antonio, Fort Worth, El Paso, Galveston, and Texarkana—take a hand in some sort of cotton manufacture. Grain products, such as flour and cattle feed, take fourth place, with Fort Worth, Houston, and Galveston the important cities. In the east the lumber and rice-cleaning industries flourish, with Texarkana and Beaumont important. Texas has large synthetic rubber plants.

### What Are Texas' Ports?

San Antonio and Dallas, besides being centers of great agricultural regions, also manufacture iron and steel. Dallas makes fully half the cotton gins that are used in the world, while Austin, the capital of Texas ever since 1839, is known as a flour-milling and agricultural center. Houston leads the state in manufacturing, and also in shipping-tonnage and in the value of imports and ex-

ports and of coastal and internal trade. Beaumont and Port Arthur come next in tonnage, and Galveston is second in the value of its shipping. Other deep-water ports on the Gulf are Aransas Pass, Brownsville, Corpus Christi (kōr'pūs krīs'tē), Freeport, Ingleside, Orange, Port Isabel, Port Aransas, Sabine Pass, and Texas City. Through these ports go exports enough to make Texas the leading export state in the Union. Fifteen thousand miles of railroad and hundreds of truck lines haul the products to and from the ports, all of which carry on a busy trade with the Atlantic seaboard and the rest of the world.

Educationally, Texas is not so far advanced as she is economically. Because of the large number of Negroes and Mexicans in the state—both groups with low wages and not much chance to go to school—the percentage of citizens who cannot read and write is fairly high in Texas, at 6.8 percent. But the building of huge public schools, each intended for all the pupils within a school district, should help to remedy this situation. Texas has a number of good colleges and universities.

### A Hundredth Anniversary

In 1936 Texas held a tremendous exhibition to celebrate the hundredth anniversary of her freedom from Mexican rule. Of course it was a thrilling pageant that was unfolded, showing the development of this vast state from a wilderness to her present position. The part played by frontiersman and Indian and Spaniard in this crowded history was faithfully shown. But more exciting still was the promise which that exhibit gave for the future. It became clear then that, quite aside from her almost unbelievable material wealth, Texas "down by the Rio Grand" has a great deal to contribute to the life of the nation. Perhaps it is not a way of life with which the old Spaniards would have very much sympathy, but Texas has borrowed from them, nevertheless, just as she has borrowed from many other sources. She is building a civilization which is not only distinctive in America, but which tries to combine all the many varied elements that have gone to make her what she is to-day.

## TEXAS

**AREA:** 267,339 square miles—1st in rank.

**LOCATION:** Texas, one of the West South Central states, lies between 25° 51' and 36° 30' N. Lat. and between 93° 31' and 106° 38' W. Long. It is bounded on the north by New Mexico and Oklahoma and for a very short distance by Arkansas; on the east by Oklahoma, Arkansas, and Louisiana; on the southeast by the Gulf of Mexico; on the southwest by Mexico; and on the west by New Mexico. It is the largest state in the Union, with an extreme length of 825 miles and an extreme breadth of 740 miles.

**PHYSICAL FEATURES:** The surface of Texas rises gradually toward the west in a series of broad steps which run parallel with the Gulf coast. The lowest part of the state is of course along the sea. Here is a wide plain, low and marshy near the shore but more hilly as one goes inland; along its inner margin, which is 100 to 150 miles from the sea, it reaches an elevation of 500 feet or more. West and north of the coastal plain, through the central part of the state, is a wide extension of the Prairies Plains of our country; they are rugged and barren toward the south, and rise to heights of 2,000 ft. in the west, where they merge into a barren plateau that belongs to the great plains region. In northern Texas the plateau rises to over 4,000 ft. In the south these high plains are known as the Edwards Plateau, but east of the border of New Mexico they are called the Staked Plains, or Llano Estacado. North of the Canadian River lies a section of the plateau known as the North Plains. On the southeast the plateau descends to what is known as the Grand Prairie, a region that reaches to the Rio Grande Valley. West of the Pecos River, in the southwest corner of Texas, is a mountainous area, where a number of high, barren ridges reach down into the state from the mountains to the north. This is referred to as the Trans-Pecos Province. Its ridges belong to the Basin ranges, which are characteristic of a large region lying to the north and west. Here is the highest elevation in the state—Guadalupe Peak, which reaches an elevation of 8,751 ft. A small plain southeast of these mountains is known as the Stockton Plateau. The average elevation of the state is 1,700 ft.

Across the northern panhandle from west to east flows the Canadian River (906 m. long), which rises in New Mexico and joins the Arkansas in Oklahoma. Its waters finally make their way to the Mississippi and the Gulf of Mexico. Much of the northern boundary line is formed by the Red River (1,018 m. long), which receives the drainage from most of the northern part of the state and carries it to the Mississippi. All of the southwestern boundary is formed by the Rio Grande (1,800 m. long), which rises in Colorado and empties into the Gulf of Mexico. Its chief Texas tributary is the Pecos (735 m. long), a stream that comes down from New Mexico. Neither of these rivers drain very large parts of Texas. The rest of the state's drainage is carried directly to the Gulf. The Sabine (380 m. long), which forms part of the boundary with Louisiana, the Neches (280 m. long), the Trinity (360 m. long), the Brazos (870 m. long), the Colorado (840 m. long)—not the famous Colorado but another river of the same name—the Guadalupe (300 m. long), and the Neuces (338 m. long) are the chief of the streams that rise in the high plains or the inner prairie plain and make their way southeastward to the sea. The coast of Texas is about 400 miles long and is lined with long narrow sand bars behind which are shallow lagoons or bays sometimes called "lakes." The important ports are Port Arthur on Lake Sabine, Galveston on Galveston Bay, and Houston, which is sixty miles from the Gulf but is connected with it by the Houston Ship Canal. The Sabine-Neches Waterway (48 m. long) connects Beaumont, Orange, Port

Arthur, and the Gulf of Mexico. An intracoastal waterway inside the offshore islands gives safe passage to barges as far south as Corpus Christi and connects with the intracoastal waterway that extends along the eastern part of the Gulf coast. The Rio Grande River may be navigated for some 500 miles, the Brazos for about forty miles from the Gulf, and the Sabine for short distances. Texas has very few lakes; the most important are Grand, Clear, Sabine, and Caddo, the last two lying partly in Louisiana. All together Texas has 3,498 square miles of water, and thousands of acres of irrigated land.

**CLIMATE:** The northeastern coastal region has a climate that is warm and moist, without great extremes of temperature. Galveston has a mean January temperature of 54° F. and a mean July temperature of 83°. The record high there is 101° and the record low 8°. Here the winds are mostly off the Gulf, and there are nearly 45 inches of rainfall a year. The rest of the coastal region is drier. Inland the temperature is by no means so even, for during the winter months winds come down from the north and cool the air, and the higher altitudes bring their own cooler weather conditions. The mean annual temperature is 73° in the lower Rio Grande Valley, but in the northern part of the panhandle it is 55°. In the north there are more than a hundred days every year when the thermometer goes below freezing, but along the coast there are only three or four. The rainfall too falls off as one goes westward. El Paso averages only 9 inches of rain a year. In the north snow falls to a depth of about 19 inches a year, but the average for the state is only 5 inches. Western and southwestern Texas gets its rain in summer, the rest of the state in spring.

**INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING:** The more important institutions are Abilene Christian College in Abilene, Austin College in Sherman, Baylor University in Waco, Bishop College (for Negroes) in Marshall, Daniel Baker College in Brownwood, Hardin-Simmons University in Abilene, Houston College for Negroes in Houston, Howard Payne College in Brownwood, Incarnate Word College in San Antonio, McMurry College in Abilene, Mary Hardin-Baylor College in Belton, Our Lady of the Lake College in San Antonio, Paul Quinn College (for Negroes) in Waco, Prairie View University (for Negroes) in Prairie View, Rice Institute in Houston, St. Mary's University in San Antonio, Samuel Houston College (for Negroes) in Austin, Southern Methodist University in Dallas, Southwestern University in Georgetown, Texas Agricultural and Mechanical College at College Station, Texas Christian University in Ft. Worth, Texas College of Arts and Industries in Kingsville, Texas College (for Negroes) in Tyler, Texas College for Women in Denton, Texas College of Mines and Metallurgy in El Paso, Texas Technological College in Lubbock, Texas Wesleyan College in Ft. Worth, Tillotson College (for Negroes) in Austin, Trinity University in San Antonio, University of Houston in Houston, University of Texas in Austin, Wiley University (for Negroes) in Marshall. There are several teachers' colleges.

**CHARITIES AND CORRECTION:** The state maintains hospitals for the insane at Austin, Galveston, Rusk, Terrell, San Antonio, Big Spring, and Wichita Falls; a tuberculosis sanatorium at Sanatorium; a hospital for epileptics at Abilene; a school for the feeble-minded at Austin; a school for the blind, one for the deaf, and one for blind, deaf, and dumb colored youths at Austin; a home for while orphaned children at Corsicana and one for Negro orphans at Gilmer; a home for dependent and neglected children at Waco; a juvenile training school at Gatesville; a girls' training school at Gainesville; a home for Confederate veterans at Austin; one for Confederate women at Austin; a



## TEXAS—Continued

penitentiary at Huntsville; and a number of convict farms scattered through the state. Texas inflicts capital punishment by electrocution.

**POLITICAL FACTS:** Texas is governed under the constitution of 1876, the fourth since it became a state. There have been a large number of amendments. The laws are made by a legislature consisting of two houses—a Senate made up of 31 members and a House of Representatives made up of not more than 150 members. Senators must be over twenty-five years of age and must have lived in the state for five years; they are elected for a four-year term. Members of the House of Representatives must be over twenty years of age and must have lived in the state for two years; they serve a two-year term. The legislature meets in alternate years.

All state executive officers are elected for a two-year term except the railroad commissioners, who serve six years, and the secretary of state, who is appointed by the governor with the consent of the Senate. The governor has wide powers—a survival of the days of the Texan republic.

The judiciary is headed by a supreme court, a court of criminal appeals, and courts of civil appeals, each made up of three judges elected for six years. The court of criminal appeals hears criminal cases on appeal from all parts of the state. The jurisdiction of the courts of civil appeals is divided into districts. Below these upper courts are district courts, each one presided over by a judge elected for four years. There are also county and commissioners' courts, and below them justices of the peace. The Texas judiciary shows many traces of the old Spanish judicial system.

Voters must be citizens of the United States over twenty-one years of age, and must have lived in the state a year and in the county six months. Foreigners who have declared their intention of becoming citizens and who fill the other requirements are allowed to vote. There is a poll tax for all voters who do not fall within certain classes of exemption.

Primaries are held in even-numbered years, and in presidential years primaries for the expression of a presidential preference are held in May. No one who denies the existence of a God may run for office. The qualifications for voters in the primaries are in the hands of the officers of the various parties.

The county is the unit of local government.

The capital of Texas is at Austin.

**PARKS:** Big Bend National Park (691,339 acres), a desert of mountain, canyon, and cliff, lies in the Big Bend of the Rio Grande River. Adjoining is a second national park across the river in Mexico. Together they form an international peace park.

Texas has 1,716,873 acres of national forest.

**GAME AND BIRD RESERVATIONS:** Aransas Refuge in Aransas and Refugio counties protects birds, deer, and peccaries. Birds, especially waterfowl, find safety in Hagerman Refuge in Grayson County, Laguna Atascosa Refuge in Cameron County, Mesilla Refuge in El Paso County—and extending into New Mexico

Muleshoe Refuge in Bailey County, and Santa Ana Refuge in Hidalgo County.

**NAME:** The word "Texas" comes from the Indian word "Texitia"—or from its Spanish form "Tejas"—and means "allies," "friends," or "confederates." It was commonly used by the Indians of this region when they formed themselves into allied bands for protection. About 1690 the name was first given to the whole region occupied by such an Indian alliance; at that time Mexico named this section the "Texas Province." When the inhabitants of the province won their freedom from Mexico they kept the name by which the region had been known for so long; and when they joined the United States, the new state kept the name it had had as an independent republic.

Another theory would have it that a party of Spaniards, camping on the Neches River, joyfully exclaimed, "Mira las tejas!"—"Look at the spider webs!"—when they woke one morning to find the spider webs covered with dew. From this incident, if the theory be sound, the land took its name of Texas.

**NICKNAMES:** Texas is called the Banner State because she polls a large vote in elections. Her gigantic cattle industry gives her the name of the Beef State. Because she is the largest state in the Union she has been called the Jumbo State—a name that once belonged to a very large elephant in one of our circuses. But she is most often called the Lone Star State, a title she takes from her flag with a single star—her national emblem when she was an independent republic.

**STATE FLOWER:** Blue bonnet, or buffalo clover (*Lupinus subcarneus*); approved in 1901.

**STATE SONG:** "Texas, Our Texas," with words by Gladys Yoakum Wright and music by William J. Marsh; approved by the legislature in 1929.

**STATE FLAG:** Two horizontal stripes of equal length and breadth, the upper white and the lower red, and across them a blue perpendicular stripe which is as wide as one-third the whole length of the flag and bears a five-pointed star in its center. Texas has a detailed analysis and description of her flag in the constitution of 1876, together with rules for its use.

**MOTTO:** "Friendship"—the original, accepted meaning of the Indian word "Texas," or "Tejas"—a motto the Texans have chosen because they feel it to be an expression of the spirit of the state.

**STATE BIRD:** Mocking bird; approved by legislative action in 1927.

**INTERESTING FACTS:** Texas observes New Year's Day, Lincoln's Birthday, Washington's Birthday, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Columbus Day, Election Day, Thanksgiving Day, Christmas Day, Lee's Birthday on Jan. 19, Texas Independence Day on March 2, the anniversary of the Battle of San Jacinto on April 21, Jefferson Davis' Birthday on June 3, and Victory Day on Nov. 11.

Texas has the Alabama-Coushatta Indian Reservation, on which live a certain number of Koasati Indians.

# TEXAS—Continued

Population of state, 1940, 6,414,824			
Counties			
Anderson (E4)	37,092	Freestone (D4)	21,138
Andrews (A3)	1,277	Frio (C8)	9,207
Angelina (E4)	32,201	Gaines (A3)	8,136
Aransas (D5)	1,469	Galveston (E5)	81,173
Archer (C3)	7,599	Garza (B3)	5,678
Armstrong (B2)	2,495	Gillespie (C4)	10,670
Atascosa (C5)	19,275	Glasscock (B4)	1,193
Austin (D5)	17,384	Goliad (D5)	8,798
Bailey (A2)	6,318	Gonzales (D5)	26,075
Bandera (C5)	4,234	Gray (B2)	23,911
Bastrop (D4)	21,610	Grayson (D3)	69,499
Baylor (C3)	7,755	Gregg (E4)	58,207
Bee (D5)	16,481	Grimes (E4)	21,960
Bell (D4)	44,863	Guadalupe (D5)	25,596
Bexar (C5)	137,176	Hale (B2)	18,813
Blanco (C4)	4,264	Hall (B2)	12,117
Borden (B3)	1,396	Hamilton (C4)	13,303
Bosque (D4)	15,761	Hansford (B1)	2,783
Bowie (E3)	50,208	Hardeman (C2)	11,073
Brazoria (E5)	27,069	Hardin (E4)	15,875
Brazos (D4)	26,977	Harris (E5)	528,961
Brewster (A5)	6,478	Harrison (E3)	50,900
Briscoe (B2)	4,056	Hartley (A2)	1,873
Brooks (C6)	6,362	Haskell (C3)	14,905
Brown (C4)	25,924	Hays (C4)	15,349
Burleson (D4)	18,334	Hemphill (B2)	4,170
Burnet (C4)	10,771	Henderson (E3)	31,822
Caldwell (D5)	24,893	Hidalgo (C6)	106,059
Calhoun (D5)	5,911	Hill (D4)	38,355
Callahan (C3)	11,568	Hockley (A5)	12,693
Cameron (D6)	83,202	Hood (D3)	6,674
Camp (E3)	10,285	Hopkins (E3)	30,274
Carson (B2)	6,624	Houston (E4)	31,137
Cass (E3)	33,496	Howard (B3)	20,990
Castro (A2)	4,631	Hudspeth (A6)	3,149
Chambers (E5)	7,511	Hunt (D3)	48,793
Cherokee (E4)	43,970	Hutchinson (B2)	9,069
Childress (B2)	12,149	Irion (B4)	1,963
Clay (C3)	12,524	Jack (C3)	10,206
Cochran (A3)	3,735	Jackson (D5)	11,720
Coke (B4)	4,590	Jasper (E4)	17,491
Coleman (C4)	20,571	Jeff Davis (B6)	2,375
Collin (D3)	47,190	Jefferson (E5)	145,329
Collingsworth (B2)	10,331	Jim Hogg (C6)	5,499
Colorado (B5)	17,812	Jim Wells (C6)	20,239
Comal (C5)	12,321	Johnson (D3)	30,384
Comanche (C4)	19,245	Jones (C3)	23,378
Concho (C4)	6,192	Karnes (D5)	19,248
Cooke (D3)	24,909	Kaufman (D3)	38,308
Coryell (D4)	20,226	Kendall (C5)	5,080
Cottle (B2)	7,079	Kennedy (D6)	700
Crane (A4)	2,841	Kent (B3)	3,413
Crockett (B4)	2,809	Kerr (C4)	11,650
Crosby (B3)	10,046	Kimble (C4)	5,064
Culberson (B6)	1,653	King (B3)	1,066
Dallam (A1)	6,494	Kinney (B5)	4,533
Dallas (D3)	398,564	Kleberg (D6)	13,344
Dawson (B3)	15,367	Knox (C3)	10,990
Deaf Smith (A2)	6,056	Lamar (E3)	50,425
Delta (E3)	12,858	Lamb (A2)	17,606
Denton (D3)	33,658	Lampasas (C4)	9,167
DeWitt (D5)	24,935	La Salle (C5)	8,003
Dickens (B3)	7,847	Lavaca (D5)	25,485
Dimmitt (C5)	8,542	Lee (D4)	12,751
Donley (D2)	7,487	Leon (D4)	17,733
Duval (C6)	20,565	Liberty (E4)	24,541
Eastland (C3)	30,345	Limestone (D4)	33,781
Ector (A4)	15,051	Lipscomb (B1)	3,764
Edwards (B5)	2,933	Live Oak (C5)	9,799
Ellis (D3)	47,733	Llano (C4)	5,996
El Paso (A6)	131,067	Loving (B6)	285
Erath (C3)	20,760	Lubbock (B3)	51,782
Falls (D4)	35,984	Lynn (B3)	11,931
Fannin (D3)	41,064	McCulloch (C4)	13,208
Fayette (D5)	29,246	McLennan (D4)	101,898
Fisher (B3)	12,932	McMullen (C5)	1,351
Floyd (B2)	10,659	Madison (D4)	12,029
Foard (C3)	5,237	Marion (E3)	11,457
Fort Bend (E5)	32,963	Martin (B3)	5,556
Franklin (E3)	8,378	Mason (C4)	5,378
		Matagorda (D5)	20,066
		Maverick (B5)	10,071
		Medina (C5)	16,106
		Menard (C4)	4,521
		Midland (B4)	11,721
		Milam (D4)	33,120
		Mills (C4)	7,951
		Mitchell (B3)	12,477
		Montague (D3)	20,442
		Montgomery (E4)	23,055
		Moore (B2)	4,461
		Morris (E3)	9,810
		Motley (B2)	4,994
		Nacogdoches (E4)	35,392
		Navarro (D3)	51,308
		Newton (F4)	13,700
		Nolan (B3)	17,309
		Nueces (D6)	92,661
		Ochiltree (B1)	4,213
		Oldham (A2)	1,385
		Orange (F4)	17,382
		Palo Pinto (C3)	18,456
		Panola (E3)	22,513
		Parker (D3)	20,482
		Parmer (A2)	5,890
		Pecos (A4)	8,185
		Polk (E4)	20,635
		Potter (B2)	54,265
		Presidio (A7)	10,925
		Rains (E3)	7,314
		Randall (B2)	7,185
		Reagan (B4)	1,197
		Real (C5)	2,420
		Red River (E3)	29,769
		Reeves (B6)	8,006
		Refugio (D5)	10,383
		Roberts (B2)	1,289
		Robertson (D4)	25,710
		Rockwall (D3)	7,051
		Runnels (C4)	18,903
		Rusk (E3)	51,023
		Sabine (F4)	10,896
		San Augustine (E4)	12,471
		San Jacinto (E4)	9,056
		San Patricio (D6)	28,871
		San Saba (C4)	11,012
		Schleicher (B4)	3,083
		Scurry (B3)	11,545
		Shackelford (C3)	6,211
		Shelby (E4)	29,235
		Sherman (B1)	2,026
		Smith (E3)	69,090
		Somerville (D3)	3,071
		Starr (C6)	13,312
		Stephens (C3)	12,356
		Sterling (B4)	1,404
		Stonewall (B3)	5,589
		Sutton (B4)	3,977
		Swisher (B2)	6,528
		Tarrant (D3)	225,521
		Taylor (C3)	44,147
		Terrell (A4)	2,952
		Terry (A3)	11,160
		Throckmorton (C3)	4,275
		Titus (E3)	19,228
		Tom Green (B4)	39,302
		Travis (D4)	111,053
		Trinity (E4)	13,705
		Tyler (E4)	11,948
		Upshur (E3)	26,178
		Upton (A4)	4,297
		Uvalde (C5)	13,246
		Val Verde (B5)	15,453
		Van Zandt (E3)	31,155
		Victoria (D5)	23,741
		Walker (E4)	19,868
		Waller (D5)	10,280
		Ward (A4)	9,575
		Washington (D4)	25,387
		Webb (C6)	45,916
		Wharton (D5)	36,158
		Wheeler (B2)	12,411
		Wichita (C2)	73,604
		Wilbarger (C2)	20,474
		Willacy (D6)	13,230
		Williamson (D4)	41,698
		Wilson (C5)	17,066
		Winkler (A4)	6,141
		Wise (D3)	19,074
		Wood (E3)	24,360
		Yoakum (A3)	5,354
		Young (C3)	19,004
		Zapata (C6)	3,916
		Zavalla (C5)	11,603
		Cities, Towns, and Villages	
		Abilene (C3)	26,612
		Alamo Heights (C6)	5,700
		Alice (C6)	7,792
		Alpine (A4)	3,866
		Alvin (E5)	3,087
		Amarillo (B2)	51,686
		Aransas Pass (D5)	4,095
		Arlington (D3)	4,240
		Athens (E3)	4,765
		Austin (D4)	87,930
		Ballinger (C4)	4,172
		Bay City (E5)	6,594
		Beaumont (E4)	59,061
		Beville (D5)	6,789
		Belton (D4)	3,572
		Benavides (C6)	3,081
		Big Spring (B3)	12,604
		Bonham (D3)	6,349
		Borger (B2)	10,018
		Bowie (D3)	4,470
		Brackettville (B5)	2,653
		Brady (C4)	5,002
		Breckinridge (C3)	5,826
		Brenham (D4)	6,435
		Brownfield (A3)	4,009
		Brownsville (B3)	22,083
		Brownwood (C4)	13,398
		Bryan (D4)	11,882
		Burkburnett (C2)	2,814
		Cameron (D4)	5,040
		Canyon (B2)	2,622
		Center (E4)	3,010
		Childress (B2)	6,464
		Cisco (C3)	4,868
		Clarendon (D2)	2,431
		Clarksville (E3)	4,095
		Cleburne (D3)	10,558
		Coleman (C4)	6,054
		Colorado (B3)	5,213
		Comanche (C4)	3,209
		Commerce (E3)	4,699
		Conroe (E4)	4,624
		Cooper (E4)	2,537
		Corpus Christi (D6)	57,301
		Corsicana (D3)	15,232
		Cotulla (C5)	3,633
		Crockett (E4)	4,536
		Crystal City (C5)	6,529
		Cuero (D5)	5,474
		Dalgart (A1)	4,682
		Dallas (D3)	294,734
		Decatur (D3)	2,578
		Del Rio (B5)	13,343
		Denison (D3)	15,581
		Denton (D3)	11,192
		Donna (C6)	4,712
		Dublin (C3)	2,546

# TEXAS—Continued

Eagle Pass (B5)	6,459	Jefferson (E3)	2,797	Navasota (D4)	6,138	Silsbee (E4)	2,525
Eastland (C3)	3,849	Kaufman (D3)	2,654	New Braunfels		Sinton (D6)	3,770
Edinburg (C6)	8,718	Kennedy (D5)	2,891	(C5)	6,976	Slaton (B3)	3,587
Edna (D5)	2,724	Kermit (A4)	2,584	Nocona (D3)	2,605	Smithville (D4)	3,100
El Campo (D5)	3,906	Kerrville (C4)	5,572			Snyder (B3)	3,815
Electra (C2)	5,588	Kilgore (E4)	6,708	Odessa (A4)	9,573	South San	
El Paso (A4)	96,810	Kingsville (D6)	7,782	Olney (C3)	3,497	Antonio (C5)	2,708
Ennis (D3)	7,087			Orange (F4)	7,472	Sonora (B4)	2,528
						Stamford (C3)	4,810
Floydada (B2)	2,726					Stephenville	
Fort Stockton		La Grange (D5)	2,531	Paducah (B2)	2,677	(C3)	4,768
(A4)	3,294	Lamesa (B3)	6,038	Palestine (E4)	12,144	Sulphur Springs	
Fort Worth		Lampasas (C4)	3,426	Pampa (B2)	12,895	(E3)	6,742
(D3)	177,662	Laredo (C6)	39,274	Pasadena (E5)	3,436	Sweetwater (B3)	10,367
Fredericksburg		La Porte (E5)	3,072	Paris (E3)	18,678		
(C4)	3,544	Levelland (A3)	3,091	Pearsall (C8)	3,164	Taft (D6)	2,686
Freeport (E5)	2,579	Liberty (E4)	3,087	Pecos (B6)	4,855	Taylor (D4)	7,875
		Littlefield (A2)	3,817	Pelly (E5)	7,712	Teague (D4)	3,517
Gainesville (D3)	9,651	Llano (C4)	2,658	Perryton (B1)	2,325	Temple (D4)	15,344
Galveston (E5)	60,862	Lockhart (D5)	5,018	Pharr (C6)	4,784	Terrell (D3)	10,481
Gatesville (D4)	3,177	Longview (E4)	13,758	Pittsburg (E3)	2,916	Texarkana (E3)	17,019
Georgetown (D4)	3,682	Lubbock (B3)	31,853	Plainview (B2)	8,263	Texas City (F5)	5,748
Gilmer (E3)	3,138	Lufkin (E4)	9,567	Port Arthur (F5)	46,140	Tyler (E3)	28,279
Gladewater (E3)	4,454	Luling (D5)	4,437				
Gonzales (D5)	4,722			Quanah (C2)	3,767	University Park	
Goose Creek		McAllen (C6)	11,877			(D3)	14,458
(E5)	6,929	McCamey (A4)	2,597	Ranger (C3)	4,553	Uvalde (C5)	6,679
Graham (C3)	5,175	McKinney (D3)	8,555	Raymondville			
Greenville (D3)	13,995	Marfa (B6)	3,805	(D6)	4,050	Vernon (C2)	9,277
		Marlin (D4)	6,542	Refugio (D5)	4,077	Victoria (D5)	11,566
Hamilton (C4)	2,716	Marshall (E3)	18,410	Rolstown (D6)	6,780		
Harlingen (D6)	13,306	Mart (D4)	2,856	Rosenberg (E5)	3,457	Waco (D4)	55,982
Haskell (C3)	3,051	Memphis (B2)	3,869	Rusk (E4)	5,699	Waxahachie	
Hearne (D4)	3,511	Mercedes (D6)	7,624			(D3)	8,653
Henderson (E3)	6,437	Mexia (D4)	6,410	San Angelo (B4)	25,802	Weatherford	
Highland Park		Midland (A4)	9,352	San Antonio		(D3)	5,924
(D3)	10,288	Mineola (E3)	3,223	(C5)	253,854	Wellington (B2)	3,308
Hereford (A2)	2,584	Mineral Wells		San Benito (D6)	9,501	Weslaco (C6)	6,883
Hillsboro (D3)	7,799	(C3)	6,303	San Diego (C6)	2,674	West University	
Hondo (C5)	2,500	Mission (C6)	5,982	San Marcos (D5)	6,006	Place (E5)	9,221
Houston (E5)	384,514	Monahans (A4)	3,944	San Saba (C4)	2,927	Wharton (D5)	4,386
Huntsville (E4)	5,108	Mt Pleasant		Seguin (D5)	7,006	Wichita Falls	
		(E3)	4,528	Seagraves (A3)	3,225	(C3)	45,112
Jacksonville (E4)	7,218	Nacogdoches		Seymour (C3)	3,328	Wink (A4)	1,945
Jasper (F4)	3,497	(E4)	7,538	Shamrock (B2)	3,123		
				Sherman (D3)	17,156	Yoakum (D5)	4,733

---

# *The HISTORY of UTAH*

---

## Reading Unit No. 43



### UTAH: THE BEEHIVE STATE

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

#### *Interesting Facts Explained*

How the story of Utah is "typically American," 8-389-90, 395  
Why no one ever speaks of the "Great American Desert," 8-390  
Why Great Salt Lake loses a third of its area in summer, 8-390  
Where the "basket makers" roamed while the pharaohs ruled in far-off Egypt, 8-391  
Where the dinosaur lived 8-391

The first explorers of Utah's deserts, 8-392  
When Utah became part of United States' territory, 8-392  
The Mormons, 8-392-93  
Why Utah was not admitted to the Union until 1896, 8-393  
How settlers triumphed over the Utah deserts, 8-394  
The mineral treasures of Utah's mountains, 8-394-95

#### *Picture Hunt*

How many people can the Church of Latter Day Saints seat? 8-389

Why do sheep thrive in Utah? 8-392  
The Mormons arrive, 7-244

#### *Related Material*

One flag from ocean to ocean, 7-231-39  
Where are deserts found? 1-256  
Where does our salt come from? 9-412  
Why can we not live without salt? 9-413  
What was the size of the dinosaurs? 3-40  
What is the biggest picture lan-

- guage the world has ever known? 10-37  
Why is the position of women in Mohammedan lands unhappy? 13-523  
Why do we add copper when we make gold into money? 9-396  
In what ways is zinc used? 9-420

#### *Practical Applications*

How did the California gold rush help the people of Utah? 8-393

How did the Mormons get what they wanted from the Indians? 8-393

#### *Leisure-time Activities*

PROJECT NO. 1: Make a list of the minerals found in Utah, 8-394-95.

PROJECT NO. 2: Draw a map of Utah and mark on it the chief lakes, mountains, and towns.

## THE HISTORY OF UTAH



Photo by the Salt Lake City Chamber of Commerce

When the foresighted Mormons planned their capital at Salt Lake City, they were careful to allow plenty of room for it to grow. Here in the beautiful lake valley are spacious, regular streets and handsome, uncrowded buildings. In the center is Temple Square,

the seat of the Church of Latter Day Saints. On the Square is the many-spired Temple and the curiously shaped Tabernacle, which houses a magnificent organ and can seat as many as 8,000 people. The picture shows the state capitol at Salt Lake City.

### UTAH: *the* BEEHIVE STATE

#### *The Inspiring Tale of How a Desert Was Settled by a Courageous People and Made to Blossom as the Rose*

**T**HE story of Utah is one that we like to think of as typically American.

Whether it really is so, remains to be seen. For "America" belongs to the present and future, as well as to the past, and what we are making of her to-day, and what our children and grandchildren are going to make of her, will help to decide her "type" just as much as did the gallant deeds of our forefathers. We of the present still have to prove that we are able to carry on the torch. But we can have no doubt that it has been delivered into our hands—a noble light kindled by our ancestors in blood and tears. We need not imagine that it will be any holiday matter to keep the flame burning.

And that is the reason why it is a good thing to turn to the stories of the past, to see just how our forefathers lit the torch that we hold in our hands to-day. We shall find that they always brought certain high qualities to the task. One, of course, was courage. They knew the future would be hard, and they never whimpered when they found it so. Another was perseverance. Even at the times when they seemed to be utterly beaten, they kept right on. And a third was willingness to blaze new trails. They refused to be bound by the chains of the past, but as new problems came up, they tried hard, for the most part, to look at them with honest and open minds. If they had always done things

## THE HISTORY OF UTAH



Photo by Salt Lake City Chamber of Commerce

In Salt Lake City the Mormons have built their spired Temple and their Tabernacle—the building with oval

roof. On the Temple's topmost spire is a copper statue of the angel Moroni.

as things had been done in Europe, America would be a very different place to-day.

### "Typically American"

Now we call the story of Utah (ū'tō) "typically American" because the people who settled there showed these traits to an extraordinary degree. And there we see the qualities bearing their fine fruit. For it certainly cannot be accident that to-day Utah is well-governed, progressive, and prosperous. The high-hearted band that paused one day on the shores of Great Salt Lake, and began planting their crops that very afternoon, did not adopt a land where Nature made things easy. On every hand stretched the desert, trackless, death-dealing, relentless. It was a land of homesickness and thirst. None but the brave could dare to settle there.

For in Utah is the last, unconquerable stronghold of the "Great American Desert," which in early days was supposed to cover the majority of our western states. Gradually it shrank, as farmers came to plant their crops in its dry but fertile soil, until at last it was narrowed down to certain waterless areas in Utah, Nevada, and New Mexico. To-day no one ever speaks of the "Great American Desert." There is grave danger that it may return—and return to stay for a good many

centuries! But if we can still command that quality of our forefathers which made it possible for them to adapt themselves to new conditions, the danger can be avoided. With a change in our farming methods the Great American Desert will be gone forever.

And in that change Utah will have to be one of the states to lead the way. Most of her soil is dry, but in the western part it is very dry indeed. There the land is low and very level, for long ages ago it was the bed of a vast lake, which is known to learned men to-day as Lake Bonneville (bōn'vīl). This great sheet of water covered some 20,000 square miles—nearly a quarter of Utah to-day. The first explorers to find what little is left of it thought it was part of the ocean, because its water was salt. But by that time the hot sun of Utah had shrunk the great lake to a fraction of its former size. To-day, when the water is highest Great Salt Lake has an area of about 2,000 square miles, but as the season advances, it loses a third of its area by evaporation.

### Why Great Salt Lake Is Salty

Now as water flows over and through the soil, it dissolves the salt and various other minerals that the soil contains, and carries them along in solution. And because Lake Bonneville had no outlet those minerals

## THE HISTORY OF UTAH

accumulated year by year, until to-day the water of Great Salt Lake, which was once a part of Lake Bonneville, is three and a half times as salty as the water in the sea. The same thing is true of Sevier (sē-vēr') Lake, another descendant of Bonneville; but Utah Lake is fresh because it has an outlet.

### A Sea of Salt

These three lakes and many low, shifting mud flats are all that remains of Lake Bonneville, but seventeen of its shore lines can be traced on the sides of the narrow north-and-south mountain ranges that rise from the old lake bed. These shore lines mark the various levels of the lake as it shrank. Much of its ancient bed would be very fertile if only it were well watered, but the region is part of what we know as the Great Basin, which is everywhere very dry. Besides this, in many places the soil is filled with salt which the lake left behind. So here in western Utah little will grow besides sagebrush. The region southwest of Great Salt Lake is driest of all, and is known as the Great Salt Lake Desert. Here the rainfall is less than five inches a year, and the temperature goes very high in summer. At one point a great smooth sea of snowy salt covers the ground over an area that is more than forty miles wide. In the south the Basin region rises to a height of 6,000 feet. It is 4,300 feet high along the shores of Great Salt Lake.

East of the splendid Wasatch (wō'säch) Range, which runs north and south through the central part of the state, there lies a plateau (plā-tō'), or tableland, some 6,000 feet high. It is broken by many mountains and by deep romantic canyons. The Uinta (ū-in'tā) Mountains run east and west close to the northern border, the only large east-and-

west range in the United States. Among them is King's Peak (13,498 feet), the highest point in Utah. From the Uintas the plateau falls away toward the south in a number of wide terraces, almost like a flight of shallow stairs, with bold, bright-colored cliffs to mark each step. So we climb the Pink Cliffs, the White Cliffs, the Vermilion Cliffs, and others as we travel northward from the Colorado River. Bryce Canyon and Zion Canyon are fine examples of what the weather has done in the rocks of the Utah plateau.

In the southeast the country is extremely wild and rugged, until fairly lately altogether unknown to the white man. The coloring of the sandstone is brilliant and beautiful, and the forms into which it has been weathered are fantastic almost beyond belief. Here are natural bridges and strange "monuments," and canyons with ancient cliff dwellings perched in wide crevices several hundred feet up the canyon walls. Caves, many of them still unexplored, bear on their walls the paintings and strange picture writing of men who lived many centuries ago, and in their

earthen floors they hide the remains of a still earlier race of "basket makers," who, as some scholars say, went up and down these canyons while the pharaohs were ruling in far-off Egypt. Here in the southeast the soil is poor and the climate is dry, and crops will grow only in the narrow river valleys.

### The Home of the Dinosaur

Farther north, in the region of the Henry Mountains, the ancient dinosaurs (dī'nō-sôr) once lived. Forests grow on the higher elevations, and there are beautiful mountain lakes where game is plentiful. The people live in the valleys, but they graze their flocks on the bunch grass that covers the



Photo by the Salt Lake City Chamber of Commerce  
Rows of sugar beets are being harvested in the field shown above. They do well in Utah's rich irrigated land, and are among the most important of the state's crops.

---

## THE HISTORY OF UTAH



Photo by the Salt Lake City Chamber of Commerce

Sheep raising is a thriving industry in Utah, as in most of the dry western states. For sheep have a way of getting along on very poor grazing land. Besides,

uplands and makes a nourishing pasturage even when it is brown and dry.

### How Utah's Mountains Were Made

The Henry Mountains and other mountain groups to the south are mostly dome-shaped, formed by the pressure of great masses of molten rock that pushed up from below and raised the upper layers. But the Wasatch Range is a result of "faulting"—that is, the steep eastern side of the range was upreared along a gigantic north-and-south cleft in the rocks, and the matching layers of rock on the other side of the cleft are far below, under the surface of the plateau. On the western side the range falls away in a gradual incline, and all its rivers drain into the Great Basin. It is along those streams, widely used for irrigation, that most of the state's population has gathered, and there the best farms are to be found.

The first explorer of Utah's deserts and grassy uplands was probably the Spaniard Coronado (kō'rō-nā'thō), who is thought to have come in 1540. But the records of his trip are vague, and the first visitors who described what they saw were two Spanish friars, Father Escalante (ās'kā-lān'tā) and Father Dominguez (dō-mēn'gāth). These men came north from Santa Fe in 1776, looking for a route to the Pacific Ocean and the Spanish settlements at Monterey (mōn'-tē-rā'), in California. They did not find such a route, but they did find Lake Utah, and a great number of Indians who told them of Great Salt Lake to the north. These Indians were probably Utes (ūt), members of the

they are a double source of revenue; those that do not turn up at the dinner table as roast lamb are sheared of their valuable wool

great Shoshonean (shō-shō'nē-ān) group of Indians. During the first few years of the nineteenth century a number of explorers, mostly Americans, ventured into this territory in search of furs or gold or simply excitement. One such adventurer, James Bridger, who was sent to Utah by William Ashley, the Idaho explorer, to trade for furs, is supposed to be the first American ever to see Great Salt Lake, though there are many others to claim the honor. At any rate, the whole region, including what is to-day the state of Utah, remained peacefully in the hands of Mexico until it was turned over to the United States in 1848, at the close of the Mexican War.

### The Coming of the Mormons

But before America had acquired title to the lands of Utah, a group of American citizens who were to prove of the greatest importance in Utah's history had already made their appearance on her soil as settlers. These were of course the Mormons, or Latter Day Saints, whose previous wanderings we have described in our stories of Ohio, Missouri, and Illinois. After being brutally ejected from their city of Nauvoo (nā-vōō') in Illinois, the whole band marched slowly to the west; and on July 24, 1847, after a year and a half on the way, the wagons of their advance guard stood on the Wasatch Mountains, looking down over Salt Lake Valley. Doubtless the prospect seemed forbidding enough to most of the settlers, and there were some who recommended that the march be continued to the fairy lands of California. But the Mormon



## THE HISTORY OF UTAH

leader knew the danger of having neighbors too close to his colony, and he never faltered at the hardships that might be before him. "This is the place," he said. And when the winter of 1847-1848 descended on Salt Lake Valley, it found some two thousand Mormons snugly settled there. The streams flowing down the great mountain range behind them were soon put to good use, and before long there were crops enough to support all the settlers. Meanwhile, missionaries all over the world were continually encouraging new colonists to come to the Mormon Land of Zion. In 1849 the whole Mormon settlement was organized as the state of "Deseret" (děz'ē-rēt'), with Brigham Young as governor. The name, taken from the book of Mormon, means the "land of the honey-bee." This new state included all of Utah and parts of Wyoming, Nevada, Colorado, New Mexico, and California; in 1850 it was organized as a Territory.

The Mormon faith taught that polygamy (pō-lig'ā-mī), or the practice by which one man might have two or more wives if he chose, was wise and in accordance with God's word. As had happened before, this belief, so contrary to all our American standards and ideals, aroused great suspicion and dislike when the Mormons settled in Utah—not among the neighbors of the Mormons, for there were few or none, but at the seat of the national government. And because people were suspicious, they repeated all sorts of groundless rumors about the Mormons—that the whole group intended to secede from the Union, that they hoped to ruin the Southern Pacific Railroad, which was just then being constructed, that they were planning a

general massacre of all non-Mormons, and similar absurd stories. And so, though Utah soon had enough settlers to qualify her for statehood, there were so many disputes over the Mormon beliefs that it was not until 1896 that she was admitted to the Union.

### Three Famous Trails

The California gold rush, coming in 1849, was a great boon to the people of Utah, who were scattered along three of the great trails going westward—the Old Spanish Trail leading up from Santa Fe, the Great Salt Lake Trail, and the Overland Trail. They soon had a thriving business selling food, water, and other much needed supplies to the gold seekers. Though they were in a position to charge about what they liked, the Mormons rarely took advantage of their hard-pressed customers, and were always willing to sell at fair prices whatever they did not need themselves. Their whole behavior shows how unfair had been the stories that were so widely circulated about them. In their relations with the Indians they were



Photo by the Salt Lake City Chamber of Commerce

At the enormous open-cut mine at Bingham, Utah, a whole mountain is being systematically carted away. Luckily for world markets, which would be flooded if the ore were rich, this is a low-grade copper ore. But when a mine can be worked on so gigantic a scale, even low-grade ore can be made to bring in large profits.

among the most successful of the frontiersmen, using force when necessary—for instance, in the troublous years between 1865 and 1867—but for the most part getting what they wanted by fair dealing and honest good will. Their government was in the hands of the church officials, and discipline was strict; so Utah was spared the lawless frontier stage that most of the other states had to pass through. When the United States wisely passed (1862) an act forbidding polygamy there was some resistance, but in the end most of the Mormons submitted quietly to the new law. A few went

## THE HISTORY OF UTAH

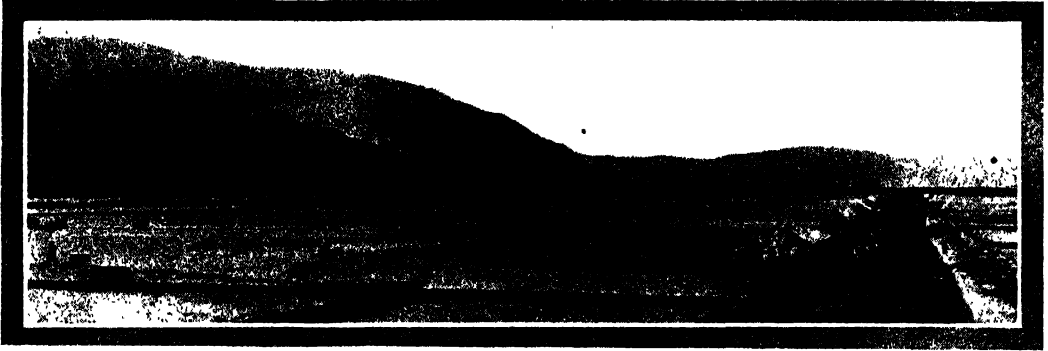


Photo by the Salt Lake City Chamber of Commerce

If you drive west a few miles from Salt Lake City on the great white flats that were once covered by Lake Bonneville, you will see to your right Great Salt Lake—a trifling remnant of the great body of water that covered this region in the Ice Age. Here and there

are bathing beaches. To the left you will see the scene shown above. Here salt is being “harvested.” In the distance are isolated mountain chains—long uptilted blocks that are characteristic of Utah, Nevada, and parts of neighboring states.

off to settle in Mexico, where there was no such provision; and there they remain to this day, in the mountains and plains of Chihuahua (chê-wâ’wâ) Province. But even in Mexico the practice of polygamy has gradually died out. The Mormons to-day are like all other Americans. On an average, they are unusually thrifty, hard-working, and law-abiding.

### The Triumph over the Desert

Less than one-fifth of Utah’s land surface is in farms, a percentage lower than that of any other state except Nevada. But where irrigation is possible, in the mountain valleys and along the western edge of the Wasatch Mountains, the desert really blossoms as the rose. Dry farming too has been widely practiced. Agriculture was the basis of the Mormons’ early life; and they arranged for almost every man to have a farm. As a result the farms were often very small, but that very fact has caused them to be well and intensively cultivated. The Mormons were the first people in the United States to use irrigation on a large scale. Hay, wheat, potatoes, sugar beets, corn, oats, barley, apples, peaches, grapes, and garden truck are now the most valuable crops, with fruit and vegetables thriving on irrigated land especially. The reason for these fine crops is the richness of the soil in minerals and salts which favor plant life.

The most important product of Utah’s

farms is, and long has been, her live stock, with sheep the most valuable of all. They can flourish on the dry bunch grass which is the only fare to be had on the open range during the summer and fall, and they produce both wool and mutton. Cattle and horses are raised, but they do not bring a large return. As a matter of fact Utah has not many of either. In the number of her sheep, on the other hand, she comes fifth among the states, as a rule, and fifth also in the size of her wool clip. Her sheep yield a heavy fleece.

### Treasure in the Mountains

Though farming was Utah’s first great industry, as the years went by it had to yield first place to mining. Silver and gold were the first metals to be sought there and they still are valuable sources of income. By 1900 Utah had gained seventh place among the states in gold and third place in silver. Soon afterward her copper was worth more than her gold and silver combined. By 1924 she was leading all the states in the Union in her output of metals. To-day she mines less gold and silver, but she leads in gold, is second in copper and silver, and stands high for total mineral output. Her coal is now second to copper in value, with gold, zinc, lead, silver, and iron following. Other minerals also pay well—natural gas, oil, asphalt, sand and gravel, stone, salt, and manganese and vanadium, which give

## THE HISTORY OF UTAH



Photo by Ewing Galloway, N.Y.

Set against the magnificent sculpturing of the Wasatch Mountains, the city of Ogden dominates the central

portion of Salt Lake Valley. It is a busy manufacturing and railroad center, with farms in the vicinity.

strength and hardness to steel and make it more useful under high temperatures. Utah also mines tungsten and molybdenum. The copper mine at Bingham, in the West Mountain mining district, still mines more copper than any other mine in the country. Utah's coal should be profitable for a long time, for she has large deposits of it. To-day it brings her some \$20,000,000 a year. The value of her copper varies between perhaps \$60,000,000 and \$85,000,000 yearly, and gold, zinc, lead, and other minerals are for the most part below \$10,000,000 each. All together Utah's mineral output yields between \$130,000,000 and \$165,000,000 yearly.

### Fine Cities of the Desert

Like many of her neighbors Utah is not a manufacturing state. This is in large part because she is a long way from large markets and has certain difficulties of transportation. For though she has excellent railroads, with more than 2,100 miles of track, mountain ranges both to west and east cut her off from the country's large markets. Salt Lake City, the state's capital and largest city, is a large meat-packing, publishing, oil-refining, and smelting city; and besides carrying on all these industries, she manufactures beet sugar, candy, and flour from the crops of the surrounding fields. Ogden, the next largest city, manufactures flour, beet sugar, and oil prod-

ucts, and also packs meat. Provo (prō'vō) and Logan are other centers for the canning and shipping of farm products, and in addition Provo has busy mines and steel mills.

The worst enemy of the Mormons never accused them of being unfriendly to education, and Utah's educational system is a product of their best effort. Her illiteracy rate—that is, the proportion of her citizens who cannot read and write—is one of the lowest in the country, at 1.2 per cent. She has a number of efficient schools of higher education.

As the white man first saw her, Utah seemed to offer nothing to settlers. On the surface she was a barren desert, covered with scrub and salt and forbidding mountains. It took a people driven by persecution and used to toil to make this wilderness flower into prosperity. But when the effort and the intelligence were applied, they were far from wasted. Not only did the land flourish, but the persecuted people found themselves prosperous and respected and happy. They lost their feeling of being cast out from society, and mingled their differences with the many traits they had in common with the rest of the American people. It is a true "success story," this tale of the making of a land and of a people, a success story unsurpassed in the history of the country. Utah and the nation, may well be proud of it.

## UTAH

**AREA:** 84,916 square miles—10th in rank.

**LOCATION:** Utah, one of the Mountain states, lies between 37° and 42° N. Lat. and between 109° and 114° W. Long. It is bounded on the north by Idaho and Wyoming, on the east by Wyoming and Colorado, on the south by Arizona, and on the west by Nevada.

**PHYSICAL FEATURES:** A little to the west of the center of Utah's northern border the fine Wasatch Mountains enter the state and extend southward for 150 miles to Mount Nebo. Farther south are scattering ranges. Nearly all of Utah that lies west of the mountains belongs to the Great Basin Province of our country, a vast desert region in which the rivers find no outlet to the sea but lose themselves in the sands or form salt lakes in the lowest depressions. Great Salt Lake, with an area of 2,000 square miles in the wet season, is such a lake, and Sevier Lake, in the west-central part of the state, is another. It disappears entirely in the dry season. The surface of the Basin region is fairly level except where it is broken by the many short mountain ranges that lie north and south. In many places there are large level tracts of salts and other minerals left by the shallow lakes that form in the wet season and then dry up. One such snowy expanse lies southwest of Great Salt Lake, in Great Salt Lake Desert. From Great Salt Lake, which has an elevation of 4,300 ft., the land rises gradually toward the south until it reaches an elevation of 6,000 ft. However, the state's lowest point is in Washington County in the southwestern corner, where the elevation in one of the canyons is only 2,000 ft. Utah's mean elevation is 6,100 ft.

East and south of the Wasatch Range the country is a plateau which in the north is from 9,000 to 11,000 ft. high. Near the state's northern border rise the Uinta Mountains, a fine range that extends east from the Wasatch Range. These are the highest mountains in Utah, and here, in Duchesne County, is Kings Peak (13,498 ft. high), the highest point in Utah. Gilbert Peak is nearly as high. As one travels south the plateau falls away toward the Colorado River in a series of great steps that take their names from the brilliant sandstones that have been weathered away to make the cliffs. Some of these steep declines are the Gray Cliffs, the Vermilion Cliffs, the Pink Cliffs, and the White Cliffs. All this eastern part of the state is a continuation of the Colorado Plateau, which occupies western Colorado. Rivers have carved deep canyons in it, and upthrusts of molten rock underneath the sandstone have raised domelike mountains, such as the Henry Mountains in the south-central part of the state and the Abajo Mountains in the southeast. South of the Colorado, where there are almost no inhabitants and the soil is very scanty, wind and weather have worn the rock away into all sorts of interesting formations—natural bridges, spires, and towers. Many of the weird shapes have been preserved in national monuments. Here too are a large number of interesting Indian remains.

Across the southwestern corner of Utah flows the Colorado River, which rises in Colorado and makes its way across our country for 1,360 miles to the Mexican border. Some 90 miles beyond the border it finds an outlet in the Gulf of California and the Pacific Ocean. In Utah it receives two fairly large rivers. The Green River (730 m. long) comes down toward the south from its headwaters in Wyoming. The San Juan River (350 m. long), which rises in Colorado and flows across the northwest corner of New Mexico, enters the Colorado River from the east, having carved a remarkable canyon for itself. In the southwest corner of the state the Virgin River (200 m. long) carves out beautiful Zion Canyon as it flows southward to enter the Colorado in Nevada. A very small area in the extreme northwest is drained northward into the Snake River and so on to

the Columbia. Great Salt Lake is the outlet for the Bear River (about 450 miles long), which rises in north-central Utah but flows through Wyoming and Idaho on its way to Great Salt Lake. The Malad River is one of its branches. The same lake is the outlet for the Weber River, coming from the east, and for the Jordan River (45 m. long), which enters it from the south, bringing the water of Utah Lake (30 m. long), a body of water that is always fresh because it has an outlet. Sevier River (279 m. long) has its outlet in Sevier Lake but is often dried up. Utah's rivers, especially those that drain the western slopes of the Wasatch Mountains, are useful for irrigation, though they do not carry boats. All together the state has 2,806 square miles of water, and large sections under irrigation.

**CLIMATE:** The higher elevations in Utah have a climate that is relatively cool and moist, but in the depressions of the Great Basin the heat is often intense and the rainfall scanty. Temperatures as low as -36° F. are recorded at high elevations in the north, while at points in the southern deserts the thermometer goes above 110° in summer. The average temperature for the year is 58° in the south and 42° in the north. Of course the valleys of the north have a milder temperature than the mountain tops; but even in the lowlands the growing season may be only three months long, while farther up the mountain sides frosts may come at any time of year. Great Salt Lake keeps the region around it from suffering such great extremes as other parts of the state. At Salt Lake City the mean January temperature is 29°, the mean July temperature 76°. The record high there is 105°, the record low -20°. Utah's rainfall too depends greatly on elevation. The mean annual rainfall for the whole state is only 11 in., but the higher elevations may have as much as 42 in. and points in the desert as little as 2.3 inches. Salt Lake City gets about 16 in. a year. The summer is the dry season, so most of the rainfall comes as snow in winter. Higher elevations are heavily forested. The lowland streams are bordered with willows and cottonwoods, and the desert has the usual desert growth of sagebrush, mesquite, creosote bush, and bunch grass.

**INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING:** The more important institutions are Brigham Young University at Provo, Utah State Agricultural College at Logan, the University of Utah at Salt Lake City, and Westminster College at Salt Lake City.

**CHARITIES AND CORRECTION:** Utah has a school for the deaf and blind at Ogden, a state industrial school at Ogden, a training school for the feeble-minded at American Fork, a state hospital for the insane at Provo, and a state prison at Salt Lake City. The state inflicts capital punishment by hanging or shooting.

**POLITICAL FACTS:** Utah is still governed under her first constitution, which has since been amended. Laws are made by a legislature meeting in odd-numbered years and consisting of two houses: a Senate which is made up of not more than 30 members, elected for four-year terms; and a House of Representatives made up of at least twice but not more than three times as many members as the Senate has. Representatives are elected for two-year terms. All members of the legislature must be at least twenty-five years old.

The executive branch of the government is headed by the governor, with the usual state officials as members of his staff. All of them are elected for four-year terms and must have lived in the state for at least five years. The state auditor and state treasurer may not serve two consecutive terms.

The judiciary is headed by a supreme court consisting of three justices elected for six years. If necessary the

## UTAH—Continued

number may be increased to five. The state is divided into seven judicial districts, for each of which one or more judges are elected to serve four-year terms. Cases may be appealed from the various inferior courts to the district courts.

Voters must be citizens of the United States, must be over twenty-one years old, and must have lived in the state a year and in the county four months.

The county is the unit of local government. Each incorporated city and town holds elections every two years, and has the privilege of establishing a commission form of government.

The people have the right of initiative and referendum except for constitutional amendments.

The rights of labor are safeguarded by law, and there are restrictions on child labor and female labor.

**PARKS:** Zion National Park was established in 1909 in the southwestern part of the state and covers 94,241 acres. In it is the magnificently colored gorge known as Zion Canyon, its steep walls from 1,500 to 2,500 ft. deep. The park contains a great many interesting rock formations.

Bryce Canyon National Park, established in 1928 near Zion National Park, covers 36,010 acres and contains Bryce Canyon, a horseshoe-shaped gorge with walls rising in terraces 1,000 ft. above the floor of the valley. Countless pinnacles stand out above the surface of the rock. Bryce Canyon is famous for its brilliant coloring.

**MONUMENTS:** Arches National Monument in a desert north of Moab contains remarkable windows and arches worn by erosion in the canyon wall.

Capitol Reef National Monument contains a brightly colored sandstone cliff twenty miles long with huge buttresses and, on top, interesting dome-shaped formations.

Cedar Breaks National Monument, connecting Bryce Canyon and Zion Canyon, contains a series of natural amphitheaters carved 2,000 feet deep in the solid rock.

Dinosaur National Monument, in Uinta County and extending into Colorado, contains remarkable remains of the dinosaur and other fossils.

Hovenweep National Monument in San Juan County is partly in Colorado and is described on other pages.

Rainbow Bridge National Monument, on the Paiute Indian Reservation in southeastern Utah, contains the finest natural bridge in the world. Its perfect arch rises 309 feet above the stream and is 278 feet wide.

Timpanagos Cave National Monument, on the southern slope of American Fork Canyon in Utah County, contains a cave of great interest and beauty.

Zion National Monument, near Zion Park, contains eight steep canyons 1,500 to 2,500 feet deep.

Utah has 8,983,787 acres of national forest.

**GAME AND BIRD RESERVATIONS:** Bear River Migratory Bird Refuge, established in 1928, covers 64,899 acres and protects ducks, geese, coots, shore birds, pelicans, ibises, pheasants, beavers, and muskrats.

Locomotive Springs Migratory Bird Refuge, established in 1931, covers 1,031 acres and protects ducks, coots, curlews, avocets, sandpipers, and other shore birds.

Strawberry Valley Bird Refuge, established on a government reclamation project in 1909, covers 14,080 acres and protects ducks and sage grouse.

**NAME:** What is now the state of Utah was first organized in 1849 as the Provisional State of Deseret,

but when the region was organized as a territory in 1850, the present name was chosen, and the same title was given the region when it became a state. The word comes from the language of the Shoshone Indians, and was variously spelled Youta, Eutah, Utaw, and Utah. It means "in the tops of the mountains," or, as the Indians themselves put it, "high up." It is sometimes said to mean "the land of the sun" and "the land of plenty," but most of the Utes and Paiutes who remember the traditions of their forefathers speak of their people, from whose name the word comes, as "the men who live on the heights."

**NICKNAMES:** Utah is known as the Deseret State, a title that the Mormons originally chose for the name of their colony. The word "deseret" means "honeybee," and is taken from the Book of Mormon. Because Utah has a beehive on its coat of arms it is called the Beehive State, with an implied reference to the industry of its citizens. Its large Mormon population has given it the title of the Land of the Mormons; and because the Mormons officially call themselves the Latter Day Saints, Utah is known as the Land of the Saints. It is also called the Mormon State.

The people of Utah are referred to as Mormons and Saints.

**STATE FLOWER:** Sage lily (*Calochortus nuttallii*); adopted in 1911. The plant is dear to the people of Utah, not only for its beauty, but because during the famine years of 1840 and 1851 the starving inhabitants were able to keep soul and body together by eating its soft roots.

**STATE SONG:** "Utah, We Love Thee," by Evan Stephens; officially adopted in 1917.

**STATE FLAG:** A blue field bordered with gold and bearing in its center, in natural colors, a shield with an American eagle above it. Upon the shield, which is pierced by six arrows, is the word "Industry," with a beehive below it. Below the beehive are sage lilies, and below the lilies, at the bottom of the shield, are the word "Utah" and the date "1847." Behind the shield are draped two American flags, and between them is the date "1896." The flag was adopted in 1913.

**STATE MOTTO:** "Industry"; a motto that comes naturally from the use of the beehive as the symbol of the state.

**STATE BIRD:** California gull; chosen in memory of the occasion when a flock of gulls saved the people of Utah from starvation by destroying a plague of insects that threatened the crops.

**INTERESTING FACTS:** Utah observes New Year's Day, Lincoln's Birthday, Washington's Birthday, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Columbus Day, Armistice Day, Thanksgiving Day, Christmas Day, and Pioneer Day on July 24.

Utah has ten Indian reservations: Navajo, Gandy, Cedar City, Goshute, Kanosh, Koosharem, Paiute, Shivwits, Skull Valley, and the Uintah and Ouray Reservation. On them live members of the Ute, Shoshone, Navajo, Goshute, and Paiute tribes.

The great plain of salt southwest of Great Salt Lake is a famous automobile speedway, where a number of world records have been made.

The government of Utah was at first in the hands of the Mormon church, and there still is a close relationship between church and state, though no sort of discrimination is shown against other religions. The payment of tithes is still a feature of the Mormon organization. The Latter Day Saints now make up three-fourths of all church members in Utah.

# UTAH—Continued

## Population of state, 1940, 550,310

### Counties

Beaver (A4)	5,014
Box Elder (A1)	18,832
Cache (C1)	29,797
Carbon (D3)	18,459
Daggett (E2)	564
Davis (C1)	15,784
Duchesne (D2)	8,958
Emery (D3)	7,072
Garfield (C5)	5,253
Grand (E4)	2,070
Iron (A5)	8,331
Juab (A3)	7,392
Kane (B5)	2,561
Millard (A3)	9,613
Morgan (C1)	2,611
Piute (B4)	2,203
Rich (C1)	2,028
Salt Lake (C2)	211,623
San Juan (E5)	4,712
Sanpete (C3)	16,063
Sevier (C4)	12,112
Summit (D2)	8,714
Tooele (A2)	9,133
Uintah (E2)	9,898
Utah (C2)	57,382
Wasatch (C2)	5,754
Washington (A5)	9,269
Wayne (D4)	2,394
Weber (C1)	56,714

### Cities and Towns

[Place marked with an asterisk (\*) were classified as urban in 1940]

Alpine (C2)	444
American Fork (C2)	1,333
Aurora (C4)	607
Bear River (B1)	429
Beaver (B4)	1,808
Bingham Canyon (B2)	2,834
Blanding (E5)	1,111

Bountiful * (C2)	3,357
Brigham * (B1)	5,641
Cannonville (B5)	250
Castle Dale (C3)	841
Castle Gate (D3)	851
Cedar City * (A5)	4,695
Centerfield (C3)	598
Centerville (C2)	691
Charleston (C2)	323
Circleville (H4)	683
Clarkston (B1)	579
Cleveland (D3)	447
Coalville (C2)	949
Corinne (B1)	411
Cornish (C1)	221
Delta (B3)	1,304
Deweyville (B1)	256
Duchesne (D2)	907
Elsinore (B4)	674
Emery (C4)	618
Enterprise (A5)	619
Ephraim (C3)	2,094
Escalante (A5)	1,106
Eureka (B3)	2,292
Fairview (C3)	1,314
Farmington (C2)	1,211
Ferron (C3)	515
Fielding (B1)	329
Fillmore (B4)	1,785
Fountain Green (C3)	988
Garden City (C1)	261
Garland (B1)	926
Glenwood (B4)	385
Goshen (C3)	616
Grantsville (B2)	1,242
Green River (D4)	470
Gunnison (C3)	1,115
Hatch (B5)	294
Heber * (C2)	2,748
Helper * (D3)	2,843
Henefer (C1)	335
Henrieville (B5)	241
Hiawatha (D3)	858
Hinckley (B3)	637
Holden (B3)	500
Honeyville (B1)	596
Huntington (D3)	997
Huntsville (C1)	496
Hurricane (A5)	1,524
Hyde Park (C1)	696
Hyrum (C1)	1,874
Joseph (B4)	297

Junction (B4)	393
Kamas (C2)	683
Kanab (B5)	1,365
Kanarrville (A5)	309
Kanosh (B4)	526
Kaysville (C1)	1,211
Kingston (B4)	63
Koosharem (C4)	375
Layton (C1)	646
Leamington (B3)	279
Lehi * (C2)	2,733
Levan (C3)	621
Lewiston (C1)	1,804
Loa (C4)	396
Logan * (C1)	11,868
Maeser (E2)	428
Manti (C3)	2,268
Mapleton (C2)	907
Marysville (B4)	626
Mayfield (C3)	473
Meadow (B4)	422
Mendon (C1)	454
Mercur (B2)	358
Midvale * (C2)	2,875
Midway (C2)	801
Millford (A4)	1,393
Millville (C1)	439
Minersville (B4)	570
Moab (E4)	1,084
Mona (C3)	357
Monroe (B4)	1,292
Monticello (E5)	667
Morgan (C1)	1,078
Moroni (C3)	1,158
Mount Pleasant (C1)	2,382
Murray * (B2)	5,740
Myton (D2)	437
Nephi * (C3)	2,835
New Harmony (A5)	170
Newton (B1)	549
North Ogden (C1)	687
Oak City (B3)	391
Oakley (C2)	305
Ogden * (C1)	43,688
Ophir (B2)	300
Orangeville (C3)	652
Orem * (C2)	2,914
Panguitch (B5)	1,979
Paradise (C1)	500
Paragonah (B5)	365
Park City * (C2)	3,739
Parowan (B5)	1,525
Payson * (C2)	3,951

Perry (B1)	383
Pleasant Grove (C2)	1,941
Plymouth (B1)	292
Portage (B1)	342
Price * (D3)	5,214
Providence (C1)	1,110
Provo * (C2)	18,071
Randolph (C1)	656
Redmond (C3)	641
Richfield * (B4)	3,584
Richmond (C1)	1,131
Roosevelt (D2)	1,264
St. George * (A5)	3,591
Salem (C2)	659
Salina (C4)	1,616
Salt Lake City * (C2)	149,934
Sandy (C2)	1,487
Santa Clara (A5)	283
Santaquin (C3)	1,297
Scipio (B3)	595
Stofield (C3)	259
Sigurd (C4)	364
Smithfield (C1)	2,461
Snowville (B1)	195
Soldier Summit (C3)	97
Spanish Fork * (C2)	4,167
Spring City (C3)	849
Springville * (C2)	4,796
Sterling (C3)	223
Stockton (B2)	332
Sunnyside (D3)	424
Syracuse (B1)	732
Tooele * (B2)	5,001
Toquerville (A5)	263
Torrey (C4)	231
Tremonton (B1)	1,443
Trenton (C1)	553
Tropic (B5)	514
Uintah (C1)	264
Vernal (E2)	2,119
Virgin (A5)	143
Wales (C3)	223
Wallsburg (C2)	233
Washington (A5)	507
Wellington (D3)	674
Wellsville (C1)	1,402
Willard (B1)	541
Woodruff (C1)	241
Woods Cross (C2)	211
Yost (A1)	172

---

# *The HISTORY of VERMONT*

---

## Reading Unit No. 44

---

### VERMONT: THE GREEN MOUNTAIN STATE

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

#### *Interesting Facts Explained*

Where native worth counts for much, 8-398

Where the early settlers of Vermont came from, 8-399

The first state to make slavery illegal, 8-399

Why the Green Mountain Boys were organized, 8-401

Vermont, the fourteenth state in the Union, 8-401

Where the finest marble in the United States comes from, 8-402

Why Vermont attracts summer visitors, 8-403

#### *Things to Think About*

Why is it easy to recapture the spirit of the early days in Vermont?

Which Indian tribes lived in Vermont?

What prevented any great num-

ber of settlers from going to Vermont in the early days?

How long was Vermont an independent republic?

What are Vermont's chief industries?

#### *Picture Hunt*

Who was John Stark? 8-399

Where are the farmers' barns and woodsheds built in Vermont? 8-401

How is the sap collected from the maple trees in Vermont? 8-402

#### *Related Material*

Why do we make "artificial wood"? 9-294

How does the maple tree make sugar? 2-235-38

What event made the "Robin Hood of Vermont" famous? 12-495

Where did the merino sheep come from originally? 9-75

The tragedy of our abandoned

farms, 7-406

Which two New England states were not among the "thirteen original colonies"? 7-126

What is the story of French exploration in the United States? 7-135-43

Colonial life in New England, 7-146-53

#### *Practical Applications*

How has her newest industry helped the farmers of Vermont? 8-403

Why has Vermont always delighted in raising live stock? 8-403

---

## THE HISTORY OF VERMONT

---



Photo by E. T. Houston

This dignified building is Vermont's capitol, at Montpelier. The fine old town that is the capital city was first settled in 1787. To-day it has its share of Ver-

mont's industries, though it is not so important as other cities in that respect. It lies in a charming setting of hills and valleys dotted with smiling farms.

### VERMONT: *The GREEN MOUNTAIN STATE*

*The People of Ethan Allen's State Still Have a Sturdy Love of Independence, though a Changing Era Is Forcing Them to Give Up a Good Many of Their Ancient Ways*

**D**IGNIFIED, rugged, independent, for over two centuries Vermont has sat enthroned upon her Green Mountains, shunning the bustle and confusion of our modern day. Wars have come and she has fought in them, inventions have come and she has adopted them, yet her calm, unhurried life has gone on, at bottom little changed by the march of events. There probably is no state in the Union where the visitor finds it easier to recapture the spirit of early days.

It is not alone that the little villages, with their white houses and age-old trees, still wear the peaceful air they wore in 1776. It is not that picturesque ribbons of road wind back to upland farms where the plowing is still done by oxen and in the long cold winter the house is cut off from its neighbors for weeks on end. It is not that during the past

hundred years the great tide of immigration has largely passed by the rugged little state and has left it with the same names and the same Yankee countenances it had in Revolutionary days. All these things help, of course, to carry us back to the past, but the real reason lies deeper. It is to be found in the fact that the people of Vermont, quiet, hard-working, thrifty, have so far largely refused to take part in the mad scramble for wealth that we see in so many places in the world to-day. They have a deep respect for achievement, and few states, if any, have produced so many distinguished men in proportion to the population. But their standard for a man is very high, and wealth does not enter into the requirements. Native worth has always counted for a great deal in Vermont.

Of course one wonders how all this has



## THE HISTORY OF VERMONT

come about. All we need do to find the answer is to ask a few questions of the past. To begin with, we might inquire what manner of people it was who first settled Vermont and laid the pattern of what was to come. They were not new arrivals from England. They were sturdy men and women from the earlier colonies, seasoned by hardship and taught by the wilderness. Connecticut sent more settlers than any other colony, and Massachusetts came next.

They had not been driven out of their early homes by religious or political persecution, though it is true that there were a few who came because Connecticut had passed laws taxing those who did not agree with her religious convictions. For the most part Vermont's early settlers were looking for new land and better opportunities. The older colonies were far from democratic, and by the first half of the eighteenth century, when settlers were beginning to trickle into Vermont, most of the good land of the colonies to the south had been taken up either by settlers or by speculators. It was hard for a poor man to get a start.

### By River and Trail

So the more enterprising turned to the rich bottom land of Vermont. They were not aristocrats, and they were schooled to the hardest work. Up the rivers they came, bringing their wives and babies and their meager household possessions. Some of them came in summer, and then they traveled by boat; others came in winter, and then they hauled their goods over the ice on sledges. Still others came over the Indian trails on horseback, and then the husband trudged

along beside the horse that carried his wife and children. Some, having neither horse nor canoe, covered the weary miles on foot.

They brought no aristocratic prejudices and no religious bitterness. From the first,

Vermont allowed a man to worship as he pleased; and when she drew up a constitution of her own (1777) she made slavery illegal. She was the first state to take such a stand. The early settlers were mostly English, with a few Scotch, but they did not include the plentiful number of old-world scamps who took refuge in various of the other colonies, and there were few "indented servants," who had bound themselves out to work without pay for other men for a term of years. The people of Vermont neither oppressed others nor were oppressed. They were simple, hardy, and filled with the love of freedom.

It is all these facts that led an expert of the United States Census Bureau to say of those first settlers: "It is probable that no State in the Union was settled by choicer immigration than that which passed to the Connecticut River to the Green Mountains."

The French had been the first to explore the territory. As early as 1609 Champlain (shām-plan') had discovered the lake that bears his name, and in 1605 the French had built there the fort of St. Anne, on Isle La Motte. Of course they claimed the territory a part of New France. But the fort never was the center of a settlement.

The English were the first to establish a permanent home for white people in this territory. In 1724 they built Fort Dummer at what is now Brattleboro. Other forts followed. It is thought that these were put

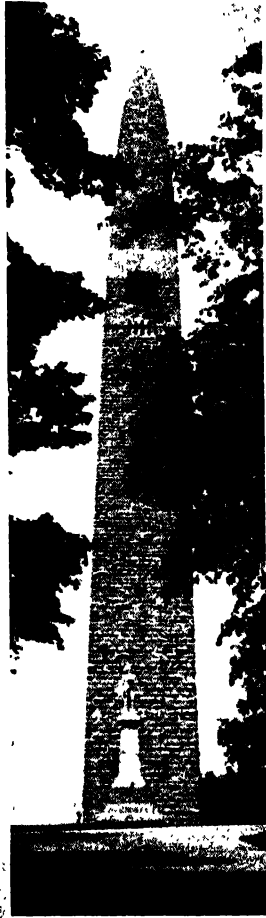
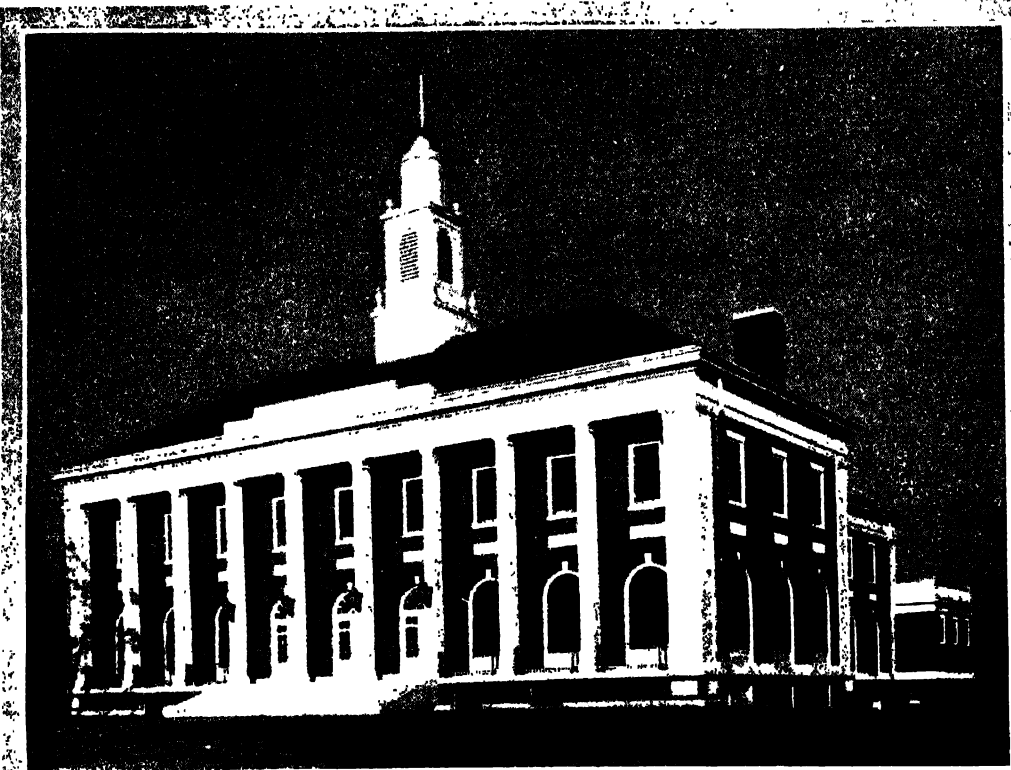


Photo by Derrick Studios

This tall monument, built of Vermont's famous stone, was erected at Bennington in honor of John Stark and his brigade of untrained but staunch soldiers who defeated the British at the Battle of Bennington (1777). You may read more of this Revolutionary hero on other pages of this work.

## THE HISTORY OF VERMONT



The University of Vermont, at Burlington, is not large as universities go, but it was one of the first to be

founded in this country. Above is one of its fine buildings, designed in the style of colonial days.

up to protect the people of Massachusetts from Indian raids led by a powerful chief named Gray Lock, who had settled himself near the mouth of the Mississquoi (mī-sīs'kwoi) River, in the northwest corner of the state. His tribe belonged to the Abnakis (āb-nā'kī), who also occupied most of Maine. They were part of the large Algonquian (āl-gōn'kī-ān) group, whom we have described in our story of Wisconsin.

### The Red Men of Vermont

The country west of the Connecticut River had long been a highway for Indian raids upon white settlements, just as it had been a favorite hunting ground for various Indian tribes. The Abnakis had once possessed it, and so had the Iroquois (īr'ō-kwoi'), the powerful Indian group whom we have described in our story of New York. At the time when the white man came the borders

of the state were held by a number of tribes who fought desperately among themselves. Some were Abnakis, who were largely in the north; some, like the Mohawks, were Iroquois; and others belonged to various tribes of the Algonquian group—Mohicans (mō-hē'kān), Squakheags (skwak'hēg), and Pocumtucks (pō-kūm'tūk). Remnants of a good many tribes, driven out of their lands farther south, had taken refuge with the tribes of Vermont. All the Indians of the Eastern United States except the Iroquois were friendly to the French and unfriendly to the English.

### The Mounting Tide of Settlers

This hostility on the part of the French and the Indians prevented any great number of settlers from going to Vermont until after the English took Canada in 1760. Then most of the danger was over and settlers

## THE HISTORY OF VERMONT

hurried in, of course taking up holdings on the fertile bottom lands.

But now they were faced with another difficulty. Governor Wentworth of New Hampshire had been giving grants of land to settlers under an old charter and under the agreement arrived at between New Hampshire and Massachusetts in 1741, when New Hampshire's southern boundary line had been described as running due westward until it met the boundary line of another colony. New Hampshire considered that she owned territory as far to the west as the western boundaries of Massachusetts and Connecticut.

But land speculators in New York looked enviously upon the territory, and declared that under their charter of 1664 New York owned east to the Connecticut River. In 1764 they were able to influence the king's privy council to recognize their claim, and the settlers in Vermont the territory was now referred to as "the New Hampshire grants" -- were told that they must turn over their titles and buy their holdings all over again at Albany. Then New York began giving out grants in this territory, mostly to land speculators who had no intention of making settlements but merely wanted to sell their holdings to other men at a profit.

### The Valiant Green Mountain Boys

It is not hard to imagine the feelings of the original settlers when they saw themselves robbed of the farms they had worked so hard to clear. By armed resistance they held out against all efforts to enforce the New York claims. To defend the cause Ethan Allen organized (1771) an army known as the Green Mountain Boys, and his brother Ira

Allen, Vermont's guiding spirit at this time, forwarded the movement in every possible way. Meanwhile a general spirit of dissatisfaction with British rule was growing fast in all the colonies, and in March, 1775, a riot, called the Westminster Massacre, broke out at Westminster, Vermont, between colonial sympathizers and representatives of the king's government. Two months later

Fort Ticonderoga (tī-kōn'dēr-ō'gā), in New York, was taken by a force under Ethan Allen, the first of a number of gallant exploits by the Green Mountain Boys in the colonial cause.

In 1777 Vermont drew up her own declaration of independence and became an independent republic under the name of New Connecticut. Strange as it may seem to us now, the plucky little state remained a separate country for fourteen years, operating under her own constitution, passing her own laws, laying her own taxes, and coining her own money. For though she had fought so valiantly in the cause of freedom, New York kept her from being admitted to the Continental Congress -- made up of the other thirteen colonies -- while she held out in the matter of the New

Hampshire grants. And Vermont held out!

Finally, when New York City was ambitious to become the permanent capital of the nation, the feud was settled in Vermont's way. She was admitted to the Union in 1791, the fourteenth state. Now she called herself "Vermont," which means "green mountain."

Since those troublous days her history has been fairly serene. At first she prospered, but as the West was opened up, her farmers found they could not compete with the more fertile soil in the Mississippi Valley; and



Photo by Derek Stud

The barn and woodshed of this comfortable Vermont farm were not built behind the house, or at a distance from it, but are attached to it, after the convenient fashion often found in Vermont. The farmer must be glad of the arrangement when the snow lies deep in winter.

## THE HISTORY OF VERMONT



Photo by Derrick Studios

Much of the delicious maple syrup which we pour on our griddle cakes and waffles at breakfast comes from Vermont. The maple trees are tapped early in spring,

when the sap begins to run. Then a sled like the one you see in the picture is drawn from tree to tree to collect the sap and carry it off for boiling.

after the Civil War, when Australian wool began to come into the market, Vermont's famous flocks of merino sheep began to dwindle in their green upland pastures. From 1830 on, the little state, not dreaming of the mineral wealth hidden in her unproductive soil, sent a steady procession of vigorous young men to help open up the new states to westward. Nor were immigrants from the Old World tempted by those rugged farms. For seventy years, in spite of a goodly immigration from Canada, Vermont's population was about stationary.

### The Work of the Factory Wheels

She set her rivers to turning sawmills, it is true, and became an important lumber market; but the best of her forests were soon cut down. Though she has other willing streams it is only since the beginning of World War I that she has seemed much inclined to enter upon the whirring industrial life of her neighbors to the east and south. To-day she still turns her white pine and

hemlock, her spruce and firs, into wood products—furniture, wood pulp, and paper, and she weaves cotton and woolen goods in such towns as Burlington, Bennington, and Winooski (wī-noos'kī).

Her manufactures are highly varied - for a typical Yankee can turn his hand to making almost anything. Burlington, her principal city, turns out a host of articles ranging all the way from spools and ovens to boats. St. Johnsbury and Rutland make all types of scales. Brattlebury is famous for her organs. Centered in Springfield, Windsor, and Burlington is a thriving machine tool industry. Other manufactures vary from spark plugs at Vergennes to veterinary remedies at Lyndonville. And the state leads all others in maple products, made in many towns.

### Marble in Every Color of the Rainbow

In her hills Vermont has found valuable deposits of granite, marble, slate, asbestos, talc, and some copper. The granite quarried near Barre is said to be the finest

---

## THE HISTORY OF VERMONT

---

in the world. The first marble quarry produced stone from Dorset Mountain before the Revolutionary War, and to-day Vermont produces large quantities of a marble which is noted for its beauty and variety of color. The Supreme Court Building in Washington and the Arlington Memorial are built of Vermont marble. Vermont slate comes in colors ranging from green to purple and is used for roofing, switchboards, flooring, headstones, and other products. Eden is the center of the asbestos industry. The high heat resistance and the strength of this substance suit it admirably for brake linings, plastic cements, and certain molded products which require these qualities. At Johnson and Waterbury talc is mined and milled for use in the making of paper, rubber, paint, and cosmetics. In 1943 an old copper mine at South Strafford was reopened and profitably worked.

### A Waterway to the Hudson

The various parts of the state are served by two north-and-south railroads, one in each valley, and by a number of lines across the mountains. As early as 1823 Lake Champlain was connected by canal with the Hudson, but ice closes this route for seven months in the year. For Vermont's winters are long and very cold, with snow from 70 to 110 inches deep. Champlain also affords an outlet to the St. Lawrence River. A bridge crosses the lake at Chimney Point.

### Vermont's Newest Industry

Another new industry that Vermont has developed of late years is the entertainment of summer guests. Her beautiful mountain scenery, her clear rivers and four hundred picturesque lakes - some of them almost unknown to man even to-day - her cool summer climate, and her upstanding, hospitable people attract weary holiday makers from the bustling cities to the south. Deer, bears, and land-locked salmon are there for the sportsman, and for "hikers" there is the Long Trail along the summit of the Green Mountains from Connecticut to Canada. Vermont's abandoned farms make ideal summer homes for visitors. One of the most popular vacation centers in the East is Lake Champlain,

which occupies 120 miles of the state's western boundary.

### Products of Vermont's Farms

Farming is still the pursuit which is nearest the hearts of Vermont's people. Nearly two-thirds of her land is taken up by farms and farm woodlands. In the number of dairy animals and in dairy production she outranks all the other New England states, and her farmers are proud of their pure-blooded stock, which is among the finest in the country. Poultry and egg production follows dairying in importance. Sheep, horses, beef cattle, and growing numbers of fur-bearing animals and turkeys are raised on the farms. Her rugged surface, much like that of neighboring New Hampshire and Maine, stands in the way of the production of field crops, but farmers grow potatoes, corn, oats, hay, apples, pears, and various berries. In Windham County and the Champlain Valley peaches are grown successfully.

The sugar maple has made Vermont a name known at tables throughout the country, for Vermont is the greatest producer of maple sugar and syrup in the United States. Her annual production of maple syrup averages about one million gallons, and that of maple sugar is about half a million pounds.

### Changing Vermont

Though Vermont has never been very rich, and probably never will be, her outlook is now brighter than ever before. She has an abundance of water power, which is being employed increasingly as a source of power in such thriving towns as Bellows Falls. The new industries now springing up, added to the old ones still flourishing, form a sound basis for her economy.

Meanwhile let us hope that, with the coming of greater prosperity, Vermont will not forget her ancient virtues. As she grows in wealth she will have to face the problems of a modern day much more than in the past. But she has a high standard of education and a tradition of courageous and rigorous facing of facts, so she should continue to furnish the nation with fearless and forward-looking men and women.

## VERMONT

**AREA:** 9,609 square miles—42nd in rank.

**LOCATION:** Vermont, one of the New England states, lies between 42° 44' and 45° 0' 43" N. Lat., and between 71° 28' and 73° 26' W. Long. It is bounded on the north by Quebec, a province of Canada; on the east by New Hampshire; on the south by Massachusetts; and on the west by New York.

**PHYSICAL FEATURES:** Vermont is a mountainous state, with the beautiful Green Mountains extending north and south just west of the central portion, the Taconic Mountains along the western border in the southern part of the state, and the Red Sandrock Mountains north of them, along the eastern shore of Lake Champlain. The most level part of the state is in the northwest, where the surface slopes gently down from the foot of the Green Mountains. The state's mean elevation is 1,000 ft., but there are twenty-one peaks in the Green Mountains that are over 3,500 ft. high, and Mount Mansfield reaches 4,393 ft. The lowest land is along Lake Champlain.

East of the mountains all the streams drain into the Connecticut River (407 m. long), which rises in New Hampshire and flows along the line between the two states. Its western low-water line is the official boundary, and its chief Vermont tributaries are the West, the White, the Ottauquechee, the Passumpsic, and the Deerfield (100 m. long), which enters it in Massachusetts. The streams of the southwest find their way to the Hudson; here the Battenkill and the Hoosic are the most important. Farther north the drainage is all into Lake Champlain, a beautiful body of water (118 m. long) that lies on the boundary line between New York and Vermont and extends into Canada. From Vermont it is fed by Otter Creek, and the Winooski (100 m. long), the Lamoille, and the Missisquoi rivers; the last three all rise east of the mountains. The Poultney forms part of the state's western boundary. Lake Champlain has a great many islands, of which Grand Island, North Hero Island, and Isle La Motte are the largest. On the state's northern boundary is Lake Memphremagog, which is the outlet for the Barton, Black, and Clyde rivers. Both Champlain and Memphremagog are drained into the St. Lawrence River. Vermont is dotted with beautiful lakes and ponds. Altogether it has a water area of 440 square miles, and no irrigated land. There are 58,453 acres of national forest.

**CLIMATE:** Vermont has a severe winter climate but one that is delightful in summer—and healthful all the year round. The mean Jan. temperature at Burlington is 19° F.; the mean July temperature, 70°. The record high is 100°; the record low, -29°. The mean annual temperature for the state is between 40° and 47°, and the average yearly rainfall is about 37.5 in. The lowest temperatures are recorded in the central mountain section; the western lowlands are the mildest part of the state. Snow averages 90 in. for the state.

**INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING:** Bennington College for women at Bennington, Middlebury College at Middlebury, Norwich University at Northfield, St. Michael's College at Winooski Park, the University of Vermont and State Agricultural College at Burlington, and normal schools at Castleton, Johnson, and Lyndon Center.

**CHARITIES AND CORRECTION:** The state maintains a prison and house of correction for men at Windsor and one for women at Rutland; at Vergennes is a school for delinquent boys and girls and at Brandon a school for the feeble-minded; at Montpelier is a receiving home for dependent children; at Pittsford a sanatorium is maintained for the tubercular and at

Waterbury a hospital for the insane. Vermont inflicts capital punishment by electrocution.

**POLITICAL FACTS:** Vermont is governed under her third constitution, which has been amended frequently since its adoption in 1793. A General Assembly, made up of a Senate representing the counties and a House of Representatives representing the cities and organized towns, makes the laws. Each unit, regardless of population, has at least one member, with additional seats allotted according to population.

The executive branch consists of a governor and a lieutenant-governor, both of whom must have lived in the state at least four years, and a treasurer, a secretary of state, and an auditor of accounts, all of whom are elected for a two-year term. Members of various commissions and boards are appointed by the governor, the Senate consenting.

The judiciary is headed by a supreme court of five justices and a superior court of six justices who are elected by the General Assembly for two years. Besides these, there are municipal court judges, courts of probate, and justices of the peace.

Any United States citizen who has resided in the state for a year prior to the election of members to the House of Representatives, is entitled to vote.

Townships and counties are the units for local government. The towns are governed by annual town meetings at which selectmen and other officials are chosen.

The capital of Vermont is at Montpelier.

**GAME AND BIRD RESERVATIONS:** Missisquoi Refuge in Franklin County protects geese, ducks, and waterfowl, and Morgan Refuge in Addison County protects waterfowl, upland game, and fur animals.

Vermont has 580,520 acres of national forest.

**NAME:** On a map made by Samuel de Champlain the name "Verd Mont," which in French means "Green Mountain," was given to the mountains the explorer had seen when he traveled through this region. The settlers came to have an affection for the name after the exploits of the "Green Mountain Boys," who defended Vermont soil through many troublous years. So though they at first named their state New Connecticut, they soon changed its name to "Vermont."

**NICKNAMES:** For obvious reasons Vermont is called the Green Mountain State, and inhabitants of the state are called Green Mountain Boys, in recollection of the historic fighters who first bore the name.

**STATE FLOWER:** Red clover (*Trifolium pratense*); adopted in 1894.

**STATE SONG:** "Hail, Vermont" is the state song, but John F. Howard's "Song of the Green Mountains" is frequently sung, and "Champlain," by Dr. D. D. Fisher and C. S. Putnam has been printed in the University Song Book. A number of other songs are popular.

**STATE FLAG:** A blue field with the coat of arms of the state upon it; adopted in 1923.

**STATE MOTTO:** "Freedom and Unity."

**STATE BIRD:** Hermit thrush; chosen by the Vermont Federated Women's Clubs in 1927.

**INTERESTING FACTS:** Vermont observes New Year's Day, Lincoln's Birthday, Washington's Birthday, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Columbus Day, Armistice Day, Thanksgiving Day, Christmas Day, and the anniversary of the Battle of Bennington on August 16th.

# VERMONT—Continued

## Population of state, 1940, 359,231

### Counties

Addison (B5) ..17,944

Bennington (B7).22,286

Caledonia (E3) 24,320

Chittenden (B3) 52,098

Essex (F2)..... 6,490

Franklin (B2) . 29,601

Grand Isle (A2). 3,802

Lamoille (C3) . 11,028

Orange (D4)... 17,048

Orleans (E2)... 21,718

Rutland (B6).. 45,638

Washington (C4)41,546

Windham (C7) 27,850

Windsor (C6).. 37,862

### Cities and Villages

(Places marked with an asterisk (\*) were classified as urban in 1940, those having two asterisks (\*\*) were classified as urban under special rule)

Albany (D2) . 200

Alburg (B2). . . 638

Barre\* (D4). . . 10,909

Barton (E2).. 1,262

Bellows Falls\* (D7) . 4,236

Bennington\* (R8) . 7,628

Bradford (E5). 693

Brattleboro\*\* (D8) 9,622

Bristol (B4) . 1,236

Burlington\* (B3) . . . 27,686

Cabot (D3) 265

Cambridge (C3) 217

Chester (D7) 749

Concord (F3) 313

Derby Center (E2) . 346

Derby Line (E2) 661

Enosburg Falls (C2) 1,168

Essex Junction (B3) . . . 1,901

Fair Haven (B6) 1,968

Glover (E3) 216

Groton (E4) 419

Hardwick (D3) 1,607

Hyde Park (C3) 330

Jeffersonville (C3)..... 287

Jericho (C3)... 254

Johnson (C3).. 753

Ludlow (C6) 1,780

Lyndon Center (E3)..... 283

Lyndonville (F3) 1,444

Manchester (B7) 325

Marshfield (D3) 292

Middlebury (B4) 2,123

Milton (B3) 729

Montpelier\* (D4) . 8,006

Morrisville (D3) 1,967

Newbury (E4). 391

Newfane (C7) 160

Newport\* (E2) 4,902

North Bennington (B8) 992

Northfield (C4) 2,129

North Troy (D2) 1,077

Orleans (E2) 1,332

Perkinsville (C6) 144

Pittsford (B5) 576

Plainfield (D4) 521

Poultney (B6) 1,333

Proctor (B5) 2,184

Proctorsville (D6) 643

Randolph (C5).. 1,988

Readsboro (C8).. 667

Richford (D2).. 1,889

Richmond (B3).. 692

Rutland\* (C6). 17,082

St. Albans\* (B2) 8,037

St. Johnsbury\* (E3) . . . . 7,437

Saxtons River (D7) . . . 740

South Ryegate (E4) . . . . 346

Springfield\* (D7) . . . . 5,182

Stowe (C3).... 540

Swanton (B2) 1,461

Townshend (C7). 210

Vergennes (B4) . 1,662

Waterbury\* (C3) 3,074

Wells River (E4). 527

West Barnet (E3) . . . . 131

West Burke (E2) 316

West Glover (D2) . . . . 68

Westminster (D7) . . . 270

Wilmington (C8) 597

Windsor\* (D6) 3,402

Winooski\* (B3). 6,016

Woodstock (D6). 1,325

---

# *The* HISTORY of VIRGINIA

## Reading Unit No. 45

### VIRGINIA: THE OLD DOMINION

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

#### *Interesting Facts Explained*

When the first settlers landed in Virginia, 8-406  
Virginia's first source of wealth, 8-406  
Why nations would fight for forests, 8-407  
How people lived on the great plantations, 8-408  
How the plantation owners got

cheap labor, 8-409  
Virginia, the home of eight presidents of the United States, 8-412  
How the state was ruined in Civil War days, 8-412-13  
The great harbor at Hampton Roads, 8-415  
Virginia's famous colleges, 8-417

#### *Things to Think About*

How did Virginia get its name?  
What materials did England want the colonists to supply?  
What kind of men were the plantation owners of Virginia?  
What difference was there be-

tween life in Virginia and in the New England states?  
Who settled the Valley of Virginia?  
Which presidents of the United States came from Virginia?

#### *Picture Hunt*

Which outstanding buildings in Virginia owe their design to Thomas Jefferson? 8-405, 407

Name some of Virginia's important industries, 8-409-14, 416  
The Confederate generals, 7-257

#### *Related Material*

A famous Virginia poet, 13-314-15  
What is the story of Captain John Smith? 7-121-22  
On what occasion did Patrick Henry say, "Give me liberty or give me death"? 12-482-83  
The oldest colony, 7-122-23  
What is the story of Thomas

Jefferson? 12-503-6  
How did George Washington show his great courage during the Revolution? 12-474-78  
What was the famous doctrine that President Monroe proclaimed? 5-506, 7-211  
Colonial life in the South, 7-153-55  
Cavalier and Puritan, 6-60-66

#### *Leisure-time Activities*

PROJECT NO. 1: Make a relief map of Virginia, and show on it the chief mountains, valleys, and rivers.

PROJECT NO. 2: Read Poe's "The Raven," "The Bells," and "Annabel Lee."



---

## THE HISTORY OF VIRGINIA

---



Photo by Virginia State Office of Commerce

The capitol of Virginia, shown above, at Richmond, is one of the many fine buildings designed by Thomas Jefferson. It was modeled after the famous Maison Carrée (mè'zòN' kà'rà'), an ancient Roman building

which stands at Nîmes (nêm), in Southern France. But many details were changed to suit the needs and tastes of a new civilization in a new land. It still remains one of our finest state capitols.

### VIRGINIA: *The* OLD DOMINION

#### *The Tale of the First of the Thirteen Colonies and of How, through Storm and Stress, She Has Maintained Her Noble Ideals of Statehood*

**I**T OFTEN happens that a person's finest achievement is not the one that shows—not the book that is written or the bridge that is built or the fortune that is made. Instead, it is the long hard pull on a road that seems to have no end, the steady grind when day after day there is nothing to show for one's work, the battle gallantly fought when defeat seems certain from start to finish. It is from such victories of patience and reason and courage that the more showy triumphs are likely to be born.

And so it is with a people. History has had a way of recording the battles that were won or the lands that were conquered. Those things were easy to date and easy to tell

about. But nowadays our historians look deeper into the ways of nations. They know that the seed of events must lie in the earth a long, long time before it springs to life, and that growth is slow. The periods of groping are the ones that test a people's fiber.

It is for this reason that Americans now feel for the Old Dominion State a deeper admiration and a tenderer pride than in the day when she had the controlling voice in the nation's councils and was giving to the country a long list of our greatest statesmen. The first century and a half of her history is full of noble deeds. No state did more to bring our country into being and to set it on

## THE HISTORY OF VIRGINIA

the right road once it was born. No state held before her citizens a higher standard of conduct and of accomplishment. And yet it is the years since the Civil War, which left her broken and utterly impoverished, that have seen her most remarkable achievement.

The story is an interesting and moving one, and should be told from the beginning. It was in May of the year 1607 that a little band of 140 men—some third of them members of the middle class and the rest laborers—landed on the bank of the James River to plant what proved to be the first permanent English settlement in America. Sir Walter Raleigh had named the land "Virginia" in honor of Elizabeth, the Virgin Queen of England. Later English rulers valued the new domain so highly that Charles II put the arms of Virginia upon his royal shield along with the arms of the four other British dominions of England, Scotland, Ireland, and France. It was probably in this way that Virginia came to be known as "the Old Dominion."

### Virginia's First Source of Wealth

We have told on other pages the story of the Jamestown colony and of how it finally struggled to its feet by learning to grow tobacco. For a long time the English government frowned upon the crop. It wanted the American colonies to supply England with products she had to buy from other nations—pitch and tar, cotton and silk and wine, iron and tall masts for the British navy. But silk and wine were not the crops to

thrive in this raw new country, and the other products all took up more room on shipboard than the fragrant leaf that brought such a good price in England or Holland. Wheat would have been a useful crop, but it could be raised so cheaply in England that shipping it across the Atlantic would hardly pay. Corn the Englishmen did not like and would have none of.

So all the laws the British government could pass did not prevent the men along the James River from staking their fortunes on the single crop that paid them best. When it sold for a good price they were comfortable; when the price was low, they suffered exceedingly. Because the government forced them to, they planted a certain amount of land to useful grains and before long were raising all their own food. By the middle of the century they were even selling wheat and corn and cattle and hogs to other American colonies and in the West Indies. But their main effort went to the raising of tobacco and from it

they made their money.

And strange as it may seem, that single crop shaped the life and customs of the whole colony for years to come. In the first place the growing of it swallowed up nearly all other enterprises. The mother country believed the soil of Virginia to be admirably adapted to raising flax, and hoped to see her colonists making a fine grade of linen. She needed iron, and knew that Virginia had it—together with ample supplies of wood for smelting it. To make her great navy seaworthy, and for a variety of other purposes,



Photo by Virginia State Chamber of Commerce

Robert Edward Lee, whom you see here riding his famous gray horse, Traveler, is one of Virginia's best-loved sons. A gentle, thoughtful man, as well as one of the world's greatest soldiers, he refused the command of the Union armies, but went instead to the aid of the beloved state where he was born. This statue of him was erected at Richmond, Virginia's capital city.

## THE HISTORY OF VIRGINIA

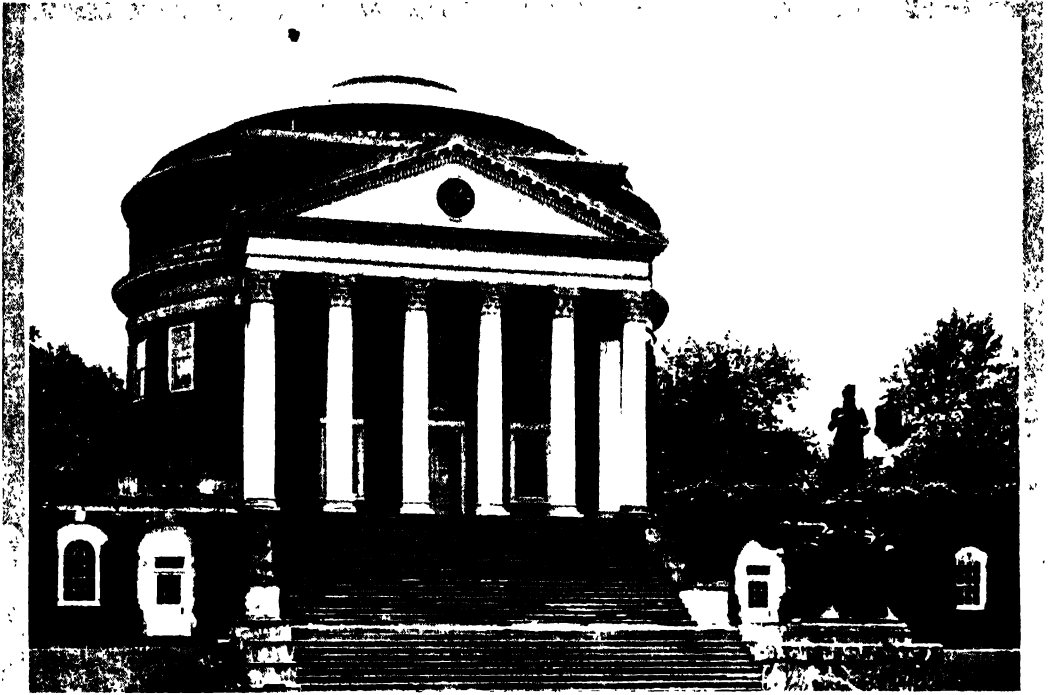


Photo by Virginia State Chamber of Commerce

This stately structure, the library of the University of Virginia, is a faithful copy of the one designed by Thomas Jefferson but destroyed by fire. Many visitors come every year to Charlottesville to visit

the university, which probably has the most beautiful campus in the United States. Here, amid trees and velvety lawns, are many fine old buildings planned by our third president.

she needed pitch and tar, both of which Virginia had in abundance in her fine pine trees.

### When Nations Fought for Forests

The forests of the mother country were running low. People were building their houses of stone or brick because wood had grown so costly. The world had not yet learned how to use its supplies of coal that have since made our Machine Age possible. In Queen Elizabeth's day anyone who wanted a very hot fire made it of pine knots. And any country that wanted to rule the world looked about for a kingly forest to build into ships. Wood was as important to a nation in Shakespeare's time as coal and oil and iron are to-day. It was something nations would fight for. Naturally England hoped to get plenty of it from her great forests across the Atlantic.

Yet in spite of all her pleas for linen and

iron and pitch and lumber, the only products the settlers of Virginia cared to ship the mother country were a little sassafras root to use in medicines and a weed that people could burn in their pipes or breathe up their noses as snuff. To get the quick monetary return that tobacco brought, the colonists allowed all their other industries and resources to go undeveloped. A few manufactures carried on in the homes helped to supply them with leather and some of their shoes and a little cloth. Otherwise all their manufactured articles came from England. The ships that carried over tobacco came back laden with goods that the colonists might have been making for themselves. It is true that in the very first years an effort had been made to start certain industries—shipbuilding, iron manufacture, the making of glass beads to trade to the Indians—but an Indian massacre in 1622 wiped out these enterprises and it was nearly a century

## THE HISTORY OF VIRGINIA

before an effort was made to rebuild them.

### The Reason for Great Plantations

In other ways, too, the tyrannical little plant shaped the life of the settlers. It grew well only on virgin soil, which it soon wore out. Because wheat if planted on virgin soil grew up to straw and little else, the first crop the settlers put into the land was certain to be tobacco. In a short time the yield began to fall off and then, since no one knew how to use artificial fertilizers, fresh land had to be cleared if the planter was to keep on raising his most profitable crop. In this way the farms - "plantations," they were called - grew larger and larger as more and more land was added, and the population spread out in ever-widening circles along the banks of streams.

It was a gracious, easy, independent life. The rivers served for highways and boats for steeds. People made calls and went to church in boats. Nearly every planter had his own private wharf from which his produce was loaded for shipment and on which were unloaded the goods he had ordered from England or the purchases he might make from some ship's captain. Everything was paid for in tobacco, for in spite of the frequent appeals of the colonists that coin should be sent them, there was practically no money in circulation. England did not care to send gold and silver out of the country, and even if the colonists had been able to mine it

they would not have been allowed to coin it. This was a day when colonies existed only for the benefit of the mother country.

Because every planter bought direct from England or from the boat that tied up at his wharf, the colony had no need for ports or for large centers of trade - which are likely to be centers of manufacture. The plantation made up its own little world. It baked and brewed and spun and wove, it made most of its shoes and much of its coarser clothing, it raised its own food and had its own store of supplies. It even had its own teacher and did much of its own doctoring. Hospitality was generous, and people were always coming and going.

Over his little domain the planter ruled as an absolute monarch - independent, self-reliant, undisturbed. If his holdings were large - and some of the great planters, such as the Carters or Byrds, might own 175,000 acres or more - he almost certainly sat in the House of Burgesses (bûr'jêz), which was the first representative

assembly in North America. There, with the other great planters, he controlled the affairs of the colony.

As one of a wealthy landed aristocracy he sided with the king or the royal governor against the common people, who had a hard time making both ends meet. But when the crown tried to seize too much power or passed regulations harmful to the interests of the colony as a whole, the great planters united

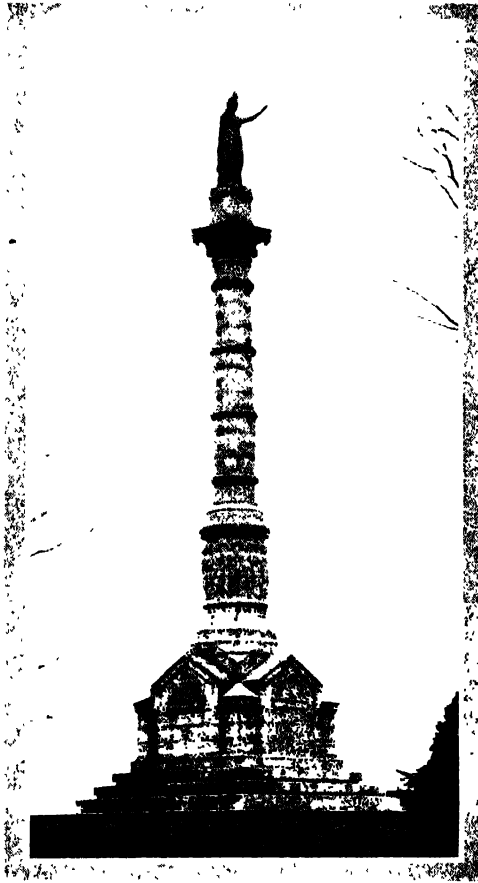


Photo by Virginia State Chamber of Commerce

It was at Yorktown, Virginia, in 1781 that the British under Lord Cornwallis surrendered to Washington. The Victory Monument, shown above, commemorates that happy event in our country's history.

## THE HISTORY OF VIRGINIA

as one man to oppose such encroachments—and they usually won their point! They were able, fearless, independent - trained to leadership and with the love of liberty deeply ingrained. Most of them were Cavaliers (kāv'â-lēr'), and as members of the Church of England felt a deep disdain for their Puritan neighbors, who were largely people of the humbler sort. Elsewhere in these books you may read of the bitter strife between the English parties of Cavalier and Roundhead.

Now if this kingly planter was to make his holdings pay, he needed a good many subjects, for tobacco must have care. His chief difficulty was the finding of cheap labor. He bought "indentured servants" - men who sold themselves for a term of years to pay for their passage across the sea. And he brought slaves!

It was in 1619 that the first Africans were brought to Virginia for sale, and at that moment our country was started on its career of slaveholding though the traffic was not greatly developed till after 1700. Everything conspired to fasten slavery upon us. The planter wanted the labor, which, though unskilled, could be trained to tend tobacco and could be cheaply fed on food the plantation provided. The shipowner of New England—or perhaps of London or Amsterdam—wanted the handsome returns he got from bringing the black men across the sea and selling such of them as could outlive the filth and disease of the voyage. And nowhere was there a force of public opinion to protest against the practice. Plenty of people in New England and other colonies owned slaves, but because they had no great plantations where unskilled slave labor could be

profitably set to work, slavery never was fastened upon the North as it was upon the South. It went hand in hand with the raising of tobacco. That single fateful plant molded the lives of hundreds of thousands of people and affected the destiny of a great nation.



Cotton picking has a way of bringing sore backs and aching muscles, but this dusky youngster at work in a Virginian cotton field does not seem to mind it much, even though she probably makes very little in a day, as wages go.

Meanwhile Virginia was given over to its culture.

With her scattered plantations, where only about a fifth of the land was under cultivation and the rest was virgin forest or woodland where the horses and cattle and swine roamed all the year at will, she was as different as might be from the compact settlements of New England. Instead of having little farms whose owners worked the land and lived in a scattering village community that centered round the church, much of Virginia was given over to large detached estates worked by indentured servants or slaves and ruled over by an owner who perhaps did not leave his own little kingdom for weeks on end. Instead of a variety of crops, some one

of which might succeed though all the others failed, Virginia had just one great agricultural product, by which her fortunes rose and fell.

### A People Who Loved the Land

Instead of having hundreds of manufactures to sell and hundreds of boats to carry them in, Virginia had to buy nearly everything that did not spring from the soil. It is true that when the price of tobacco fell or the mother country began to pass laws that raised the price of manufactured articles, Virginia was forced to start certain industries of her own. But her settlers never did develop much interest in manufacturing. Like the people they had sprung from in

## THE HISTORY OF VIRGINIA



Photo by Virginia State Chamber of Commerce

This is one of the trim farms in the Shenandoah Valley, one of the most beautiful parts of Virginia. The floor of the valley has been cut out of limestone which, in

this moist climate, was more easily worn down than were the rocks on either side. Weathering deeply, it has given rise to a very rich soil.

England, they loved the land and the genial outdoor life of those who work it.

### The Lordly Planter and His Rule

Instead of the town, with its annual meeting to transact the business of the community and elect a member to the colonial assembly, Virginia had the plantation, over which the planter ruled in his own interest. And when he sat in the House of Burgesses, he followed the custom of his Cavalier ancestors across the sea and acted largely in the interest of his class. He never needed to learn the art of political coöperation as the small New England farmer had to learn it.

### The Men from "Up Country"

And yet he did not have things entirely his own way. Up in the back country were hundreds of sturdy frontiersmen, many of them Scotch and all of them hard-working, independent, democratic folk, who tilled their own little farms and bore the brunt of the Indian attacks. They did not relish being ruled by the few wealthy planters in the lowlands. Finally they found a leader in Nathaniel Bacon, who led them in a successful battle against the Indians and then in a march upon Governor Berkeley at Jamestown. Bacon's Rebellion (1676) accomplished little, but it was the beginning of a long struggle between the royal government and the masses of the people.

And it was to the back country that new settlers flocked, for the rich land of the coastal plain—in what is known as "tide-water Virginia"—had been mostly taken up by the older settlements. In those lowlands were the great plantations, on land that had once been under the margin of the sea, where it had been deposited bit by bit as the rivers carried it down. When it was uplifted, the rivers set to work wearing it away again; and when it began to sink, the sea reached long arms into the river valleys to make the bays that give Virginia its many excellent harbors.

### A Shore Line Made for Shippers

It is in this way that such rivers as the Potomac (pō-tō'māk), the Rappahannock (rāp'-ā-hān'ūk), the York, and the James came to have their wide mouths, or estuaries (čs'-chū-ā-rī). The great Chesapeake (čhēs'-ā-pēk) Bay, which divides the mainland of Virginia from the peninsula that is known as the Eastern Shore, is really only the drowned valley of the Susquehanna (sūs'kwē-hān'ā) River. Without these fine streams lying open to the sea, the planters could never have shipped their tobacco from their own wharves, but would have had to go to the expense of sending it overland to a port.

In the southeastern corner of the Virginia coastal plain lies the northern part of the Dismal Swamp, a great water-logged tract of forest and grass that in colonial days

## THE HISTORY OF VIRGINIA



Photo by N. and W. Ity

The "breaker house" shown in this photograph is one of the important buildings of a coal mine at Bishop,

Virginia. Here the coal is broken up, cleaned, and then loaded into separate cars according to size.

covered some eight hundred square miles. Part is now in North Carolina. Lately sections of the Dismal Swamp have been drained and have proved very fertile.

### What Is the "Fall Line"?

Inland from the coastal plain is the Piedmont Plateau (pēd'mōnt plā-tō'), part of the long belt of very hard and very ancient rocks that extends from Alabama to Maine. Rivers have done their work here, dissecting the upland into valleys. The soil is good, though not so fertile as in the lowlands. You will find the long history of this belt of highland in our story of Maine.

The Piedmont Plateau joins the coastal plain along a line passing through Richmond and extending in general north and south. Here the rivers have made themselves falls by wearing away the rocks of the coastal plain more rapidly than they have worn the harder rocks adjoining. This is known as the "fall line"; along it a knowing person will look for a series of mills that run by water power. The colonists set up their grist mills here.

A fine mountain range known as the Blue Ridge marks the western boundary of the Piedmont region. It is made of the same rocks as the plateau but is much higher, for it reaches an elevation of 5,719 feet in Mount Rogers, the highest point in the

state. On the slopes of the Blue Ridge are born most of the rivers that find their way southeastward to the sea.

West of the Blue Ridge is the beautiful Valley of Virginia, a part of the Great Appalachian (ăp'ă-lă'chī-ăn) Valley that extends like a broad highway from Alabama to Lake Champlain. It is the richest section of Virginia, and in the northern part, which is drained by the Shenandoah (shēn'ăn-dō'ă) River, is some of the finest scenery of the Eastern United States. On one hand it is bounded by the domelike summits of the Blue Ridge; on the other by the Shenandoah Mountains, a range belonging to the Allegheny (ăl'ê-gă'nî) ridges, which occupy a strip along Virginia's western boundary. We have described them in our story of Pennsylvania. Parts of the underlying rocks in the Great Valley have been worn into large caves, among them the Luray (lû-ră') Caverns, famous for their beauty. The Natural Bridge, another natural wonder carved by the water's fingers, is also in the Great Valley.

### Virginia's Great Valley Is Settled

The Valley of Virginia was not settled till the eighteenth century, when dissatisfied people from the older Virginia settlements, Scotch-Irish and Germans from Pennsylvania, and English, Scotch, Swiss, and

---

## THE HISTORY OF VIRGINIA

---

Germans from across the sea, all came pouring in to plant their crops in its rich soil. It was easy for settlers to the north to find their way down this fertile corridor that promised them abundance.

### **The Uplands versus the Lowlands**

Those rugged pioneers had little in common with the aristocratic planters along the coast. Here were no great tobacco plantations worked by dusky slaves—no people of Cavalier blood to bring to the New World their habits of ease and culture. Instead, each family had its own little farm where it planted its grain, set out its orchards, raised its cattle, and followed the simple customs it had followed in Maryland or Pennsylvania or in the Old World. Every man worshiped as he pleased, and there was considerable dislike of the Church of England, which was the state church in Virginia.

And there was even greater dislike of the few powerful planters, who kept affairs in their own hands. They would not give the newer settlements proportional representation in the legislative assembly, and except in a crisis were not very much concerned by the frontiersman's struggle with the Indians. They were safe enough themselves. The small Virginia tribes—who were mostly gathered into the Powhatan (pou'hă-tăn') Confederacy and were members of the great Algonquian (ăl-gŏn'kĭ-ăn) group of Indians, whom we have described in our story of Wisconsin—were making their last desperate stand. There were the Powhatan, the Pamunkey (pă-mŭng'kĭ), the Chickahominy (chĭk'ă-hŏm'ĭ-nĭ), and the Potomac tribes. Finally the government of Virginia was obliged, in the French and Indian Wars, to send out a military expedition against them under a young commander named George Washington.

### **The Call to Freedom**

The frontiersmen acted with splendid courage in these desperate times, and naturally felt that they deserved some recognition. Two able men from the lowlands became their champions. One was Patrick Henry, a fiery young man of Scotch descent, himself a product of the frontier;

and the other was Richard Henry Lee, member of an aristocratic Cavalier family and one of the ablest men in the colonies. As time wore on and the masses of the Virginia colonists grew more and more resentful against the mother country, these were the men who with Thomas Jefferson, another man from the frontier, took the lead in the cause of freedom.

In spite of the opposition of most of the great planters, Virginia was a prime mover in adopting the Declaration of Independence. And there were no better fighters in Washington's army than those Scotch-Irish and German pioneers who had tested their mettle with the Indians over so many years.

### **The Mother of Presidents**

After the war the great planters led in demanding a sound constitution for the new nation; and no state contributed a larger number of influential statesmen to carry on the government. Virginia was the leader among the southern states, as Massachusetts was the leader in New England. She has contributed eight presidents to our country: Washington, Jefferson, Madison, Monroe, William Henry Harrison, Tyler, Taylor, Wilson—and is often called the Mother of Presidents. Until 1820 Virginia was the most populous state in the Union. Her career of prosperity was uninterrupted until the Civil War.

But from that terrible conflict she came out utterly devastated. At its opening she lost all her valuable northwestern counties when sympathy with the North led them to form the new state of West Virginia. Richmond became the capital of the Confederacy, and Virginia its battlefield. In the whole dreary length of the conflict there were only a few weeks when fighting was not going on somewhere on Virginia soil.

Her fields, her farms, her highways, her bridges, her mills, her factories, even many of her cities, were destroyed. General Sheridan left the beautiful Shenandoah Valley as bare of food as a billiard table. All the live stock in the state had been commandeered; hardly a chicken was left. The slaves, a third of her population, had all been freed and the investment they



---

## THE HISTORY OF VIRGINIA

---



Photo by Norfolk-Po South Advertising Board

After the tobacco leaves have been picked, they are stored in barns much like this one to dry. There they

are left for about a year, until, completely dried out, they are put into hogsheads for shipment.

represented completely wiped out. The income to the state treasury was so small that it was only large enough to pay the interest on the state debt. And most tragic loss of all, her man power lay buried upon the battlefields with which her soil was dotted. To rebuild her prosperity and reorganize her shattered social order seemed more than her handful of people could hope to do in a good many generations.

### Victorious over Defeat

Yet to-day Virginia is smiling, prosperous, progressive. With a courage and determination unsurpassed in our country's history she set her face toward the future and went to work. Everyone was poor— an enormous number were very, very poor. There was no money for improvements, no money for schools. The carpetbag government was a scandal. The Negroes could not be allowed to starve, yet there was no money to pay them wages. The fields and mines and forests and fisheries were all waiting to be worked, yet there was no money to work them. Fac-

tories were waiting to be built, yet there was no money to build them.

By tremendous effort and self-denial Virginia succeeded in repairing the ruin within a space of forty years. That was the turning point. Railroads had been widely built some fifteen or twenty years before. Now her industries and trade began to grow by great leaps. Her ambitious young men had been seeking careers elsewhere, but now the tide began to run in the other direction. Attracted by rich resources, cheap labor, magnificent harbors, and fine climate, northern capital came in to develop Virginia's mines and her manufactures, and northern industrialists bought her fine country places in order to enjoy the gracious, leisurely life her people had learned to live. Here they bred prize stock— especially cattle and horses— and experimented with soils and crops.

### The Small Farmer Comes into His Own

To-day agriculture is one of Virginia's most important industries, though with the passing of slavery small farms have come to replace

## THE HISTORY OF VIRGINIA

the big plantations. Virginia soil will grow every sort of vegetable of the Temperate Zone, and the Virginia farmer is expert in his calling. His crops are said to average nearly fifty percent more in value per acre than the average for the country, and Northampton and Accomac (ăk'ô-măk') counties, on the fertile Eastern Shore, have lately ranked first and second among the counties of the whole United States in the value of their crops per acre. They are given over to truck gardening, especially to the raising of early spinach and kale for sale in northern markets. Like the rest of the Virginia coastal plain, they have a mild, even temperature, with plenty of rain and no killing frosts before the middle of October or after the latter part of April. This gentle climate is a result of the frequent bays and inlets and the nearness of the sea. Snow falls rarely and never lasts long. We have described the life and interesting farming methods of the Eastern Shore in our story of Maryland.

### Wealth from Virginia's Fields

Corn, oats, wheat, buckwheat, barley, hay, soybeans, peanuts, potatoes, sweet potatoes, tobacco, apples, peaches, pears, and grapes are Virginia's most valuable crops, with corn leading. Virginia raises a great deal of live stock, especially pure-bred cattle and horses. In the southwestern corner of the state the famous blue grass grows. From these lush pastures the great

herds of beef cattle may be sent direct to market without any period of fattening. Many of them are shipped abroad. Pulaski (pŭ-lăs'kŭ) County lately led all the counties in the United States in the percentage of its

farmers owning pure-bred stock. The Piedmont section north of the James also raises blooded stock and a variety of crops, but these are more likely to be on the big estates of the "gentlemen farmers" who never put on overalls themselves. Of course Virginia has valuable dairying and poultry industries.

West of the Blue Ridge, in the Great Valley, the products are much the same as before the Revolution. The descendants of the thrifty German, Scotch-Irish, Swiss, and Dutch settlers plant their holdings to wheat, corn, hay,

and other field crops, and raise fruit and stock.

South of the James River most of Virginia's tobacco, peanuts, and cotton are grown, as well as a good deal of corn. Tobacco seems to thrive best west of the fall line, cotton and peanuts in the southeastern counties. The Old Dominion no longer leads the states in tobacco production; two or three states outdo her. But Virginia tobacco is the kind in the greatest demand, and she exports more of the plant than any other state.

Peanuts are relatively a new crop with her. The half-starved soldiers in the Confederate army found that the toothsome little seeds were more appetizing than the parched corn they so often had to fall back on. Since then peanuts have constantly grown in importance



Photo by Virginia State Chamber of Commerce

Apples are high in the list of Virginia's valuable crops. The farmers in the photograph are picking the rosy fruit from trees near Winchester—for apples that fall to the ground are usually bruised and so rot easily.

---

## THE HISTORY OF VIRGINIA

as a commercial crop. They are used for a variety of purposes, and in Virginia are the food of the hogs which yield the famous Smithfield hams. Cured in hickory smoke and aged over a period of years, these hams are one of the state's best-known products. Suffolk is the largest peanut market in the world, and has numerous peanut factories as well as an industry in oyster packing.

### A Land of Apple Trees

All the valleys west of the Blue Ridge excel in the production of hay. Though the climate here and in the Piedmont region is a good deal more variable than in tidewater Virginia, and the winters somewhat longer, the rich soil and ample rainfall will produce several crops of hay a season. Here too are many of the fine apple orchards for which Virginia is noted. Frederick County lately sold more apples abroad than any other county in the United States.

Great plantations once covered tidewater Virginia north of the James River, but now, except for occasional truck farms, the section has largely grown up to forests of pine. Cypress flourishes in the Dismal Swamp, and birch along the streams of the coastal plain. The Piedmont uplands bear both pine and hardwood, and the mountain ranges farther west, with their cold winters and heavy snowfall, are clothed with a variety of trees, both evergreen and deciduous. All these forests support wood-working industries.

### Wealth from Virginia's Mines

Far outdistancing her forests in value are Virginia's mines and quarries, both of which will yield for many years to come. The barren mountains that separate the pasture lands of the southwestern counties contain rich deposits of coal. Here is mined the well-known Pocahontas coal. Along New River, in the Great Valley, is a smaller deposit, and near Richmond a field that was one of the first to be worked in the United States is still yielding substantial returns. The first iron works in America were also near Richmond. To-day iron is mined from deposits in the Virginia mountains.

Virginia has almost unlimited stores of building stone—marble, granite, limestone,

sandstone, slate—and many fine mineral springs, such as Hot Springs, White Sulphur Springs, and Healing Springs, the centers for popular resorts. Virginia produces lead, zinc, gold, manganese, marl, clay, mica, feldspar, lime, talc, natural gas, and titanium (tī-tā'-nĭ-ŭm), used in making paints and for hardening steel.

Virginia is near the top among the states in the value of her commercial fisheries. Oysters are the single most valuable catch, with crabs, clams, Norfolk spots, shad, and various other food fishes all of great importance. More oysters are taken from Chesapeake Bay than from any other body of water in the world.

Virginia's manufacturing industries, ruined by the Civil War, are now thriving. Tobacco manufactures are the most important, but textile mills of all kinds are steadily increasing. The South is manufacturing more and more of its cotton into fabrics, and in this growing industry Virginia has a share. Her forests provide her with material for her paper and wood pulp industries and for her many lumber mills, furniture factories, and other woodworking plants. Shipbuilding is exceedingly important, and so are iron and steel manufactures, the making of chemicals, canning, milling, and meat packing.

### The Great Harbor at Hampton Roads

It is not alone cheap labor, a fine climate, and an abundance of coal and water power that have helped in the growth of Virginia's manufactures. She has excellent means of shipping her wares to market, and ranks high among the states in the value of her exports. Ships can steam up her broad rivers as far as the fall line, and excellent railway systems lead north, south, and west. Nor does she lack fine harbors for her shipping. Hampton Roads is one of the world's great ports. Under the Hampton Roads Port Commission the ports of Hampton, Newport News, Suffolk, Portsmouth, and Norfolk have been consolidated, and to this great harbor come numerous railway and steamship lines. It is the greatest port in the world for the shipping of coal and of tobacco, and receives large quantities of oil. It is an important naval base and a headquarters for the United States

---

## THE HISTORY OF VIRGINIA

---



Photo by Norfolk-Portsmouth Advertising Board

**This pretty little harbor at Hampton, on Hampton Roads, is one of Virginia's crab and oyster centers. The toothsome little animals, found in Chesapeake Bay**

**and its nearby tributaries, are brought in by the boats you see at the right and taken to the sheds where they are prepared for shipment.**

fleet, for at its miles of piers more than a thousand ships can find comfortable berth. Fortress Monroe, at the entrance, is one of the strongest defenses on the Atlantic coast. The port, the great navy yards here, and the great shipbuilding plants performed miracles in World War II.

Nor has the state neglected its highways, which before they were ruined by the Civil War were said to be the best in the United States. The ribbons of bright red clay that were so picturesque a note in the landscape and so annoying to travelers in wet weather have given place to thousands of miles of superb state road.

### **Busy Richmond**

Richmond, at the head of navigation on the James River, is not only the capital but by far the most important manufacturing center in the state. It is the world's capital for cigarette manufacture, and has a large wood-working plant and baking powder factory. Before the Civil War the city was the country's greatest flour-milling center, but that industry has moved to cities more convenient to the wheat fields of the West. To-day Richmond is one of the largest hog

markets in the country and makes more cigarettes than any other city in the world.

Second to Richmond is Norfolk, with its busy harbor and its green setting of truck farms. Here are factories for making textiles, fertilizer, automobiles, peanut and cottonseed products, lumber products, and cement. From the "blackstrap" that tankers bring up from Cuban sugar factories an amazing number of articles are made, among them yeast, table sirup, and alcohol. But shipbuilding is Norfolk's most important industry. A good many fishing boats go out from Hampton Roads and their catch is shipped from Norfolk, Portsmouth, Hampton, and other points on the harbor. Since she is at the center of one of the most important truck gardening districts in the country, Norfolk sends vast quantities of spinach, cabbage, broccoli, kale, potatoes, cauliflower, beans, tomatoes, and strawberries to northern markets.

Roanoke (rō'ā-nōk'), the third city of the state, is a busy manufacturing center. She has more than 150 factories that make a variety of goods—fabricated steel, rayon yarns and woven fabrics, wearing apparel, and furniture. Her most important industry

---

## THE HISTORY OF VIRGINIA

---

is the manufacture of railway equipment.

Lynchburg, a large tobacco center, ranks fourth in the state in the value of its manufactures. Its principal industry is the making of boots and shoes. Newport News, besides its great shipyards, has huge docks where coal, tobacco, and automobiles are shipped, and copra, pulpwood, manganese ore, and materials for making fertilizer are received. Petersburg, at the fall line of the Appomattox (ăp'ô-măt'ûks) River, is another port, and ships tobacco, peanuts, and lumber. It has the largest trunk factory in the country and manufactures a great deal of tobacco as well. Danville, another large tobacco center, has hosiery and silk mills and one of the largest cotton mills in the South. Of course there are a goodly number of smaller towns that have thriving industries in the manufacture of tobacco, cotton, wood, or peanut products, and in the Valley of Virginia, at towns like Winchester and Waynesboro, are factories for turning apples into vinegar and cider.

### Virginia's Famous Colleges

With all this new bustle and stir Virginia keeps her allegiance to all that is best in her past. From earliest times she has appreciated the gifts of culture and has cultivated the arts. The sons of well-to-do colonial planters were sent to England to school and the university, and she has long had fine colleges of her own. William and Mary College (1693) at Williamsburg—the old colonial capital now restored to its former appearance—was the second college to be founded in the United States, and among the graduates has a larger proportion of men known to history than any college in the country. Here Phi Beta Kappa (fi bă'tă kăp'ă), the honorary fraternity, was founded (1776). Washington and Lee University (1749) at Lexington was endowed by Washington and numbers Robert E. Lee among its presidents. The University of Virginia (1817) at Charlottesville was founded by Thomas Jefferson and has a number of buildings designed by him. There probably is no more beautiful group of college buildings in the country. In addition to these famous institutions Virginia has such well-known schools as the Virginia Polytechnic Institute, the Virginia Military

Institute, Randolph-Macon College, Sweetbriar College—the last two for girls—and a large number of other institutions. The Hampton Normal and Industrial Institute is richly endowed for Negroes and Indians.

Virginia has few citizens of foreign birth, and her percentage of Negroes is declining as the colored people leave "ole Virginny" and other southern states to find work in the North. This has tended to raise the price of labor in southern factories and has caused some concern in the South. Virginia has been taking steps to educate her colored people, and to equip them to earn a better livelihood.

### Virginia's Gift to the Nation

Proud of her distinguished history Virginia has made a large number of her battlefields and other spots of historic interest into state parks or national monuments. Only lately she has presented to the nation a magnificent tract of land known as the Shenandoah National Park. Over a million dollars of the two millions and more that it cost was made up by popular subscription. Here one of the finest scenic highways in the country winds along the crest of the Shenandoah Mountains.

This magnificent gift may well be taken as a sign that Virginia's years of suffering are over her warfare accomplished. She still has many knotty problems to face. Much of her best soil has been lost through "erosion," she has many farming people who cannot own their farms and earn only a pitiable living as farm tenants, in spite of her earnest efforts at education many of her people cannot read and write, and her farms and factories produce only a fraction of the abundance that they might produce.

### The Charm of Old Virginia

But these are problems that she shares with all the southeastern states, often a part of the terrible legacy of the Civil War. And she is valiantly trying to solve them. Meanwhile her gracious life goes on, renowned for dignity and hospitality. Her fine old estates, many of them dating from colonial times, still grace the river valleys, huntsmen still ride to hounds after the manner of their forebears in Old England, and the old outdoor life of gun and reel is more alluring than ever.

## VIRGINIA

**AREA:** 40,815 square miles—35th in rank.

**LOCATION:** Virginia, one of the South Atlantic states, lies between 36° 30' and 39° 37' N. Lat. and between 75° 15' and 83° 40' W. Long. It is bounded on the north by West Virginia and Maryland, on the east by Maryland and the Atlantic Ocean, on the south by North Carolina and Tennessee, and on the west and northwest by Kentucky and West Virginia.

**PHYSICAL FEATURES:** East of a line drawn roughly north and south through Richmond lies what is known as Tidewater Virginia. It is part of the Atlantic coastal plain, and is everywhere low and flat, though it rises gradually to its boundary along the fall line, where the rivers tumble from the harder rocks of the Piedmont Plateau to the softer, worn-down rocks of the coastal plain. The Piedmont region rises in rolling hills to the foot of the Blue Ridge, and reaches a height of from 700 to 1,200 ft. It is about 40 miles wide in the north, but at least four times broader in the south. West of the Piedmont Plateau is the mountain belt, a part of the Appalachian mountain system. In general it stretches northeast and southwest, with the beautiful Blue Ridge along its southeastern boundary. The Blue Ridge is from 3 to 20 miles wide, and on its northwest side slopes down to the Great Valley, which runs the full length of Virginia and is part of the Great Appalachian Valley that stretches along the whole length of the Appalachian mountain system. Beyond the Great Valley, which is 25 to 30 miles wide, the long narrow ridges of the Allegheny Mountains cover the rest of the state, reaching to altitudes of over 4,000 ft. But the highest point in Virginia is Mount Rogers (5,719 ft.) in the Blue Ridge, in the southwestern part of the state. The average elevation of Virginia is 950 ft.

On the north the Potomac River (287 m. long), which rises in West Virginia, forms the boundary between Virginia and Maryland before it empties into Chesapeake Bay. It breaks through the Blue Ridge in a picturesque gap at Harpers Ferry. Other rivers that flow to the east and enter the Chesapeake are the Rappahannock (185 m. long), which rises on the slopes of the Blue Ridge; the Pamunkey (75 m. long) and the Mattaponi (125 m. long), which unite to form the York (40 m. long), in reality only an estuary. The James (340 m. long) has its headwaters in the Great Valley, for it is formed by the union of the Jackson and the Cowpasture, and has to break through the Blue Ridge to reach the Atlantic Ocean. The Roanoke (380 m. long) is another river that has part of its headwaters in the Great Valley and has had to cut a path through the Blue Ridge. After it is joined by the Dan (180 m. long), which rises in North Carolina, it makes its way southward and enters Albemarle Sound, in North Carolina. The northern part of the Great Valley is drained by the Shenandoah River (100 m. long), which makes its way to the Potomac, and the southern part by the New River and the Holston (235 m. long). The New finds its way westward to the Ohio, and the Holston southward into Tennessee and the Tennessee River, and so eventually joins the Ohio. The limestone of the Great Valley has been greatly worn away, leaving many interesting formations like the Natural Bridge (215 ft. high) in Rockbridge County and the famous Luray Caverns at Luray.

Because the region along the shore has sunk, the sea has run up into the river valleys and made long bays or estuaries which give excellent anchorage for ships. The tide reaches clear to the fall line, which is at Washington on the Potomac, at Fredericksburg on the Rappahannock, and at Richmond on the James. Boats can sail up the rivers to these cities, and as far as West Point on the York. Between these long estuaries the land projects in four broad peninsulas,

and on the eastern side of Chesapeake Bay is still a fifth peninsula belonging to Virginia. As a matter of fact Chesapeake Bay also is a great estuary formed by the sinking of the valley of the Susquehanna River, which enters it in Maryland. South of the James the Virginia shore is known as Southside Virginia. Here the land is very low and is in part covered by the Dismal Swamp, which extends into North Carolina. Virginia has all together about 1,000 miles of shore line, with excellent beaches which are popular as resorts in summer. There are 2,365 square miles of water, and no irrigated land.

**CLIMATE:** The climate of Virginia depends on the elevation. The Tidewater section is warm and often rather moist, but without extremes; the Piedmont section is more bracing, and the mountains are cool in summer and crisp in winter. Norfolk, on the coast, has a mean January temperature of 41° F. and a mean July temperature of 70°. Its record high is 105°, and its record low 2°. The mean winter temperature in this coastal section is about 40°, the mean summer temperature about 77°, and the mean annual temperature about 59°. The growing season is four and a half or five months long. In the Piedmont region the climate is more changeable and the growing season is somewhat shorter. Here the mean winter temperature is about 36°, and the mean summer temperature 75°. The mean annual temperature is about 56°. In the mountains the mean winter temperature is about 34°, and the mean summer temperature about 71°. The mean annual temperature here is about 53°. The rainfall is ample over the whole state, with 44.1 in. a year at Norfolk. Deep snows gather in the mountains, but in the rest of Virginia the snow never stays long on the ground and may be expected only during three months of the year.

**INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING:** Bennington College at Bennington, Bridgewater College at Bridgewater, Emory and Henry College at Emory, Hampden-Sidney College at Hampden-Sidney, Hampton Institute at Hampton, Hollins College at Hollins College, Lynchburg College at Lynchburg, Mary Baldwin College at Staunton, Randolph-Macon College at Ashland, Randolph-Macon Woman's College at Lynchburg, the University of Richmond at Richmond, Roanoke College at Salem, St. Paul's Polytechnic Institute at Lawrenceville, Sweet Briar College at Sweet Briar, Virginia Military Institute at Lexington, Virginia Polytechnic Institute at Blacksburg, Virginia State College for Negroes at Petersburg, Virginia Theological Seminary and College at Lynchburg, Virginia Union University at Richmond, the University of Virginia at Charlottesville, Washington and Lee University at Lexington, and the College of William and Mary at Williamsburg are the chief institutions. At Harrisonburg, Lawrenceville, and Farmville are teachers' training colleges.

**CHARITIES AND CORRECTION:** State hospitals for the insane are maintained at Williamsburg, Marion, Petersburg, and Staunton, and a colony for epileptics at Colony. At Staunton is a school for the white deaf and blind, and at Newport News one for the colored deaf and blind. Sanatoriums have been established at Catawba, Blue Ridge, and Piedmont. At Beaumont is an industrial school for white boys, at Hanover one for colored boys, at Bon Air one for white girls, and at Peakes one for colored girls. At State Farm, Powhatan, Capron, and Goochland are penal farms. The penitentiary is at Richmond. There are 31 convict camps. Capital punishment is by electrocution.

**POLITICAL FACTS:** Virginia is now governed under her fifth constitution, which was adopted in 1902. There have been frequent amendments. Laws are made by the General Assembly, which is composed

## VIRGINIA—Continued

of a Senate and a House of Delegates. Both Senators and members of the House of Delegates are apportioned to the population, with reapportionment every ten years. Senators are elected for four years, and members of the House of Delegates for two. The legislature meets in even-numbered years.

Heading the executive department is the governor, who is elected for four years and may not serve two consecutive terms. A lieutenant governor is elected at the same time. The governor appoints a secretary and treasurer. All serve four-year terms.

The judiciary is headed by the supreme court of appeals, which consists of seven judges chosen for a twelve-year term by a joint vote of the two houses of the General Assembly. Below this court are numerous circuit courts, each presided over by a judge chosen for eight years by a joint vote of both houses of the legislature. Cities of over 10,000 people have a corporation court, which is similar to the circuit courts. The supreme court of appeals has the duty of hearing cases involving habeas corpus, mandamus, and prohibition, but otherwise it hears only such cases as are appealed to it from the lower courts.

A voter must be a United States citizen at least twenty-one years old, and have lived in the state one year, the county or city six months, and the precinct thirty days. He must have paid a poll tax for at least three years before the election unless he is exempt. New voters pay a poll tax of \$1.50. There is also a literacy test for voters.

Primary elections are held in the year of the general elections to choose candidates. Nominations for the primaries are to a certain extent optional.

All communities having more than 5,000 people are governed as cities, with a mayor elected for four years and an elected council made up of two branches. Several cities are free of county government. Provision is made for a special form of government for cities of more than 50,000 inhabitants.

Virginia has laws restricting child labor and controlling corporations.

The capital of Virginia is at Richmond.

**PARKS:** The Shenandoah National Park was created in 1935 and covers 193,473 acres in northwestern Virginia. It includes the famous Skyline Drive through some of the finest scenery in the Blue Ridge.

The Colonial National Historical Park in southeast Virginia was established in 1936, and includes historic spots at Jamestown, at Yorktown, where Cornwallis surrendered to Washington, and at Williamsburg, the colonial capital which has been restored through the generosity of Mr. John D. Rockefeller, Jr.

Virginia has two national military parks: the Fredericksburg and Spotsylvania County Battle Fields Memorial at Fredericksburg, and the Petersburg National Military Park at Petersburg. There are national cemeteries at Arlington, Fredericksburg, Petersburg, and Yorktown.

Richmond National Battlefield Park is the scene of battles in defense of Richmond during the Civil War.

**MONUMENTS:** Appomattox Court House, scene of Lee's surrender, and Washington's Birthplace near Fredericksburg are national monuments. Manassas Battlefield, scene of the Battle of Bull Run, is a national historic site, and the Lee Mansion, Robert E. Lee's birthplace, is a national memorial.

Virginia has 4,123,667 acres of national forest.

**GAME AND BIRD RESERVATIONS:** Back Bay Refuge in Princess Anne County protects whistling swans, geese, ducks, shorebirds, and muskrats. Chincoteague Refuge in Accomac County and Fisherman's Island Refuge in Northampton County protect geese, scaup, brant, shorebirds, heron, and terns.

**NAME:** Virginia was so named by Sir Walter Raleigh in honor of Elizabeth, the Virgin Queen. It is quite possible that the name was chosen at her suggestion. The word is the feminine form of the noun "Virginius," the name of a Roman gens, or clan. It is usually taken to be derived from the Latin word "virgo," meaning "virgin."

**NICKNAMES:** Virginia is called the Old Dominion or the Ancient Dominion from the fact that in 1663 Charles II had the arms of Virginia upon his royal shield along with the arms of his four other dominions—England, Scotland, France, and Ireland. The fact that the colony was settled by a large number of Cavaliers who came over at the time of the trouble between the Puritans and the Cavaliers in England, has given Virginia the name of the Cavalier State. Since it has been the birthplace of eight of our presidents it is called the Mother of Presidents, and since the original province of Virginia was cut up into seven states, Virginia has been called the Mother of States.

From the fact that the people of Virginia followed the English custom of having beards attendant on the courts the people of Virginia have been called Beards. The early Cavalier settlers have given the inhabitants of the state the nickname of Cavaliers. Since the "first families of Virginia" are referred to as "F.F.V's" the people of the state are sometimes given the same nickname. Virginians are also called Sorebacks, perhaps because the farmers in the south raise so much cotton that it makes their backs sore to pick it. The poorer people are sometimes called Tuckahoes from the fact that they used to eat the root of the tuckahoe plant, especially during the Civil War.

**STATE FLOWER:** American dogwood (*Cornus florida*); adopted by the General Assembly in 1918.

**STATE SONG:** James Bland's "Carry Me Back to Ole Virginny" is the state song and the best-loved of all Virginia songs. But "The Call of Virginia," with words by Lillian Smith and music by B. T. Gilmer, is sung at public gatherings, and "Old Virginia," by Dr. John W. Wayland and Will H. Ruebush, is also well known.

**STATE FLAG:** A deep blue field with a circular white center upon which is painted or embroidered the state coat of arms. Both sides of the flag are alike.

**STATE MOTTO:** "Sic Semper Tyrannis," meaning "Always thus to tyrants."

**STATE BIRD:** Virginia has never adopted a state bird, but has passed a law protecting the robin.

**INTERESTING FACTS:** Virginia observes New Year's Day, Washington's Birthday, Independence Day, Labor Day, Columbus Day, Election Day, Armistice Day, Thanksgiving Day, Christmas Day, Lee-Jackson Day on January 19, Confederate Memorial Day on May 30, Jefferson's Birthday on April 13, and the birthday of Jefferson Davis on June 3.

During Garden Week, in the latter part of April, more than a hundred of the fine old colonial estates in Virginia are thrown open to the public under the auspices of the Garden Club of Virginia.

The Shenandoah Apple Blossom Festival is held yearly at Winchester, usually in the last week in April, when the apple trees are in bloom in the Shenandoah Valley.

The Dogwood Festival is held at Bristol when the dogwood is at its height.

At Newport News Mr. Archer M. Huntington has built a museum of the sea, and the world's first golf museum.

# VIRGINIA—Continued

<b>Population of state, 1940, 2,677,773</b>	<b>King William (F4) . . . 7,855</b>	<b>Wise (B1) . . . 52,458</b> <b>Wythe (B5) . . . 22,721</b>	<b>Herndon (F3) . . . 1,046</b> <b>Hopewell * (F4) 8,679</b>
<b>Counties</b>	<b>Lancaster (G4) . . 8,786</b> <b>Lee (A1) . . . 39,296</b> <b>Loudoun (F2) . . . 20,291</b> <b>Louisa (E4) . . . 13,665</b> <b>Lunenburg (E5) 13,844</b>	<b>York * (B4) . . . 8,857</b>	<b>Lawrenceville (F5) . . . 1,703</b> <b>Leesburg (F2) . . . 1,698</b> <b>Lexington * (D4) 3,214</b> <b>Luray (E3) . . . 1,511</b> <b>Lynchburg * (D4) 44,541</b>
<b>Accomack (H4) 33,030</b> <b>Albemarle * (E3) 24,652</b> <b>Alleghany (C4) 22,688</b> <b>Amelia (F4) . . . 8,495</b> <b>Amherst (D4) . . . 20,273</b> <b>Appomattox (F4) . . . 9,020</b> <b>Arlington * (F3) 57,040</b> <b>Augusta (D3) . . . 42,772</b>	<b>Madison (E3) . . . 8,465</b> <b>Mathews (G4) . . . 7,149</b> <b>Mecklenburg (E5) . . . 31,933</b> <b>Middlesex (G4) 6,673</b> <b>Montgomery (C4) . . . 21,206</b>	<b>Abingdon * (B5) 3,158</b> <b>Alexandria * (F3) . . . 33,523</b> <b>Altavista * (D4) 2,919</b> <b>Appalachia * (B1) . . . 3,010</b> <b>Arlington Co. (F3) . . . 57,040</b> <b>Ashland (F4) . . . 1,718</b>	<b>Manassas (F3) . . . 1,302</b> <b>Marion * (B5) . . . 5,177</b> <b>Martinsville * (D5) 10,080</b> <b>Narrows (C4) . . . 1,480</b> <b>Newport News * (G5) 37,067</b> <b>Norfolk * (G5) 144,332</b> <b>Norton * (B1) . . . 4,006</b>
<b>Bath (D3) . . . 7,191</b> <b>Belford (D4) . . . 29,687</b> <b>Bland (B4) . . . 6,731</b> <b>Botetourt (D4) 16,447</b> <b>Brunswick (F5) 19,575</b> <b>Buchanan (A4) 31,477</b> <b>Buckingham (E4) . . . 13,398</b>	<b>Nansemond * (G5) 22,771</b> <b>Nelson (F4) . . . 16,241</b> <b>New Kent (G4) 4,092</b> <b>Norfolk * (G5) 35,828</b> <b>Northampton (H4) . . . 17,597</b> <b>Northumberland (G4) . . . 10,463</b> <b>Nottoway (E4) 15,556</b>	<b>Bedford * (D4) . . . 3,973</b> <b>Bug Stone Gap * (B1) . . . 4,331</b> <b>Blackburg (C4) 2,133</b> <b>Blackstone * (E4) . . . 2,699</b> <b>Bluefield * * (B4) 3,921</b> <b>Bristol * * (A5) 9,768</b> <b>Buena Vista * (D4) 4,335</b>	<b>Orange (E3) . . . 1,980</b> <b>Pennington Gap (A1) . . . 1,990</b> <b>Petersburg * (F4) 50,631</b> <b>Phocbus * (C4) 3,503</b> <b>Pocahontas (B4) . . . 2,623</b> <b>Portsmouth * (G5) . . . 50,745</b> <b>Pulaski * (C4) . . . 8,792</b>
<b>Campbell * (D4) 26,048</b> <b>Caroline (F4) . . . 13,945</b> <b>Carroll (C5) . . . 25,904</b> <b>Charles City (F4) . . . 4,275</b> <b>Charlotte (E4) 15,861</b> <b>Chesterfield * (F4) . . . 31,183</b> <b>Clarke (E2) . . . 7,159</b> <b>Craig (C4) . . . 3,769</b> <b>Culpeper (F3) . . . 13,365</b> <b>Cumberland (E4) . . . 7,505</b>	<b>Orange (E3) . . . 12,649</b> <b>Page (E3) . . . 14,863</b> <b>Patrick (C5) . . . 16,013</b> <b>Pittsylvania (D5) . . . 61,697</b> <b>Powhatan (F4) 5,671</b> <b>Prince Edward (E4) . . . 14,922</b> <b>Prince George (F4) . . . 12,226</b> <b>Princess Anne * (G5) 19,984</b> <b>Prince William (F3) . . . 17,738</b> <b>Pulaski (C4) . . . 22,767</b>	<b>Cape Charles (G4) . . . 2,299</b> <b>Charlottesville * (E3) 19,400</b> <b>Chase City (E5) 1,896</b> <b>Chincoteague (H4) . . . 2,142</b> <b>Christiansburg (C4) . . . 2,299</b> <b>Clifton Forge * (D4) 6,461</b> <b>Colonial Heights * (F4) . . . 3,194</b> <b>Covington * (D4) . . . 6,300</b> <b>Crews (E4) . . . 2,048</b> <b>Culpeper (F3) . . . 2,316</b>	<b>Portsmouth * (G5) . . . 50,745</b> <b>Pulaski * (C4) . . . 8,792</b> <b>Quantico (F3) . . . 1,139</b> <b>Radford * * (C4) 6,990</b> <b>Richlands (B4) . . . 2,203</b> <b>Richmond * (F4) . . . 193,042</b> <b>Roanoke * * (D4) 69,287</b> <b>Salem * (C4) . . . 5,737</b> <b>Saltsville * (B5) 2,650</b> <b>Shenandoah (E3) 1,829</b> <b>South Boston * (E5) . . . 5,252</b> <b>South Hill (E5) 1,739</b> <b>South Norfolk * (G5) 8,038</b>
<b>Dickenson (A4) 21,266</b> <b>Dinwiddie * (F4) 18,166</b>	<b>Prince William (F3) . . . 17,738</b> <b>Pulaski (C4) . . . 22,767</b>	<b>Clifton Forge * (D4) 6,461</b> <b>Colonial Heights * (F4) 3,194</b> <b>Covington * (D4) 6,300</b> <b>Crews (E4) . . . 2,048</b> <b>Culpeper (F3) . . . 2,316</b>	<b>Roanoke * * (D4) 69,287</b> <b>Salem * (C4) . . . 5,737</b> <b>Saltsville * (B5) 2,650</b> <b>Shenandoah (E3) 1,829</b> <b>South Boston * (E5) 5,252</b> <b>South Hill (E5) 1,739</b> <b>South Norfolk * (G5) 8,038</b>
<b>Elizabeth City * (G4) 32,283</b> <b>Essex (D4) . . . 7,006</b>	<b>Rappahannock (E3) . . . 7,208</b> <b>Richmond (G4) 6,634</b> <b>Roanoke (C4) 42,897</b> <b>Rockbridge (D4) . . . 22,384</b> <b>Rockingham (F3) . . . 31,289</b> <b>Russell (B1) . . . 26,627</b>	<b>Clifton Forge * (D4) 6,461</b> <b>Colonial Heights * (F4) 3,194</b> <b>Covington * (D4) 6,300</b> <b>Crews (E4) . . . 2,048</b> <b>Culpeper (F3) . . . 2,316</b>	<b>South Norfolk * (G5) 8,038</b> <b>Staunton * (D3) 15,337</b> <b>Strasburg (E3) . . . 1,968</b> <b>Suffolk * * (G5) 11,343</b> <b>Tazewell (B4) . . . 1,474</b>
<b>Fairfax * (F3) 40,929</b> <b>Fauquier (F3) 21,039</b> <b>Floyd (C5) . . . 11,967</b> <b>Fluvanna (F4) 7,088</b> <b>Franklin (D4) 25,864</b> <b>Frederick * (E2) 14,008</b>	<b>Rappahannock (E3) . . . 7,208</b> <b>Richmond (G4) 6,634</b> <b>Roanoke (C4) 42,897</b> <b>Rockbridge (D4) . . . 22,384</b> <b>Rockingham (F3) . . . 31,289</b> <b>Russell (B1) . . . 26,627</b>	<b>Clifton Forge * (D4) 6,461</b> <b>Colonial Heights * (F4) 3,194</b> <b>Covington * (D4) 6,300</b> <b>Crews (E4) . . . 2,048</b> <b>Culpeper (F3) . . . 2,316</b>	<b>Staunton * (D3) 15,337</b> <b>Strasburg (E3) . . . 1,968</b> <b>Suffolk * * (G5) 11,343</b> <b>Tazewell (B4) . . . 1,474</b>
<b>Giles (C4) . . . 14,635</b> <b>Gloucester (G4) 9,548</b> <b>Goochland (F4) 8,454</b> <b>Grayson (B5) 21,916</b> <b>Greene (E3) . . . 5,218</b> <b>Greensville (F3) 14,866</b>	<b>Scott (A1) . . . 26,989</b> <b>Shenandoah (F3) . . . 20,898</b> <b>Smyth (B5) . . . 28,861</b> <b>Southampton (F5) . . . 26,442</b> <b>Spotsylvania (F3) . . . 9,905</b> <b>Stafford (F3) . . . 9,548</b> <b>Surry (G4) . . . 6,193</b> <b>Sussex (F5) . . . 12,485</b>	<b>Clifton Forge * (D4) 6,461</b> <b>Colonial Heights * (F4) 3,194</b> <b>Covington * (D4) 6,300</b> <b>Crews (E4) . . . 2,048</b> <b>Culpeper (F3) . . . 2,316</b>	<b>Staunton * (D3) 15,337</b> <b>Strasburg (E3) . . . 1,968</b> <b>Suffolk * * (G5) 11,343</b> <b>Tazewell (B4) . . . 1,474</b>
<b>Halifax (F5) 41,271</b> <b>Hanover (F4) 18,500</b> <b>Henrico * (F4) 41,960</b> <b>Henry * (D5) 26,481</b> <b>Highland (D3) 4,875</b>	<b>Tazewell (B4) 41,607</b> <b>Warren (E3) . . . 11,352</b> <b>Warwick (G4) 9,248</b> <b>Washington (A5) 38,197</b> <b>Westmoreland (G3) . . . 9,512</b>	<b>Clifton Forge * (D4) 6,461</b> <b>Colonial Heights * (F4) 3,194</b> <b>Covington * (D4) 6,300</b> <b>Crews (E4) . . . 2,048</b> <b>Culpeper (F3) . . . 2,316</b>	<b>Staunton * (D3) 15,337</b> <b>Strasburg (E3) . . . 1,968</b> <b>Suffolk * * (G5) 11,343</b> <b>Tazewell (B4) . . . 1,474</b>
<b>Isle of Wight (G5) . . . 13,381</b>	<b>Tazewell (B4) 41,607</b> <b>Warren (E3) . . . 11,352</b> <b>Warwick (G4) 9,248</b> <b>Washington (A5) 38,197</b> <b>Westmoreland (G3) . . . 9,512</b>	<b>Clifton Forge * (D4) 6,461</b> <b>Colonial Heights * (F4) 3,194</b> <b>Covington * (D4) 6,300</b> <b>Crews (E4) . . . 2,048</b> <b>Culpeper (F3) . . . 2,316</b>	<b>Staunton * (D3) 15,337</b> <b>Strasburg (E3) . . . 1,968</b> <b>Suffolk * * (G5) 11,343</b> <b>Tazewell (B4) . . . 1,474</b>
<b>James City * (G4) . . . 4,907</b>	<b>Tazewell (B4) 41,607</b> <b>Warren (E3) . . . 11,352</b> <b>Warwick (G4) 9,248</b> <b>Washington (A5) 38,197</b> <b>Westmoreland (G3) . . . 9,512</b>	<b>Clifton Forge * (D4) 6,461</b> <b>Colonial Heights * (F4) 3,194</b> <b>Covington * (D4) 6,300</b> <b>Crews (E4) . . . 2,048</b> <b>Culpeper (F3) . . . 2,316</b>	<b>Staunton * (D3) 15,337</b> <b>Strasburg (E3) . . . 1,968</b> <b>Suffolk * * (G5) 11,343</b> <b>Tazewell (B4) . . . 1,474</b>
<b>King and Queen (G4) . . . 6,954</b>	<b>Tazewell (B4) 41,607</b> <b>Warren (E3) . . . 11,352</b> <b>Warwick (G4) 9,248</b> <b>Washington (A5) 38,197</b> <b>Westmoreland (G3) . . . 9,512</b>	<b>Clifton Forge * (D4) 6,461</b> <b>Colonial Heights * (F4) 3,194</b> <b>Covington * (D4) 6,300</b> <b>Crews (E4) . . . 2,048</b> <b>Culpeper (F3) . . . 2,316</b>	<b>Staunton * (D3) 15,337</b> <b>Strasburg (E3) . . . 1,968</b> <b>Suffolk * * (G5) 11,343</b> <b>Tazewell (B4) . . . 1,474</b>
<b>King George (F3) . . . 5,431</b>	<b>Tazewell (B4) 41,607</b> <b>Warren (E3) . . . 11,352</b> <b>Warwick (G4) 9,248</b> <b>Washington (A5) 38,197</b> <b>Westmoreland (G3) . . . 9,512</b>	<b>Clifton Forge * (D4) 6,461</b> <b>Colonial Heights * (F4) 3,194</b> <b>Covington * (D4) 6,300</b> <b>Crews (E4) . . . 2,048</b> <b>Culpeper (F3) . . . 2,316</b>	<b>Staunton * (D3) 15,337</b> <b>Strasburg (E3) . . . 1,968</b> <b>Suffolk * * (G5) 11,343</b> <b>Tazewell (B4) . . . 1,474</b>
		<b>Galax * (C5) . . . 3,195</b> <b>Gate City (B1) 1,565</b> <b>Grundy (A4) . . . 1,476</b>	<b>Victoria (E5) . . . 1,555</b> <b>Vinton * (D4) . . . 3,455</b> <b>Virginia Beach * (H5) . . . 2,600</b> <b>Warrenton (F3) . . . 1,651</b> <b>Waynesboro * (E3) . . . 7,373</b> <b>West Point (G4) 1,947</b> <b>Williamsburg * (G4) 3,942</b> <b>Winchester * (E2) 12,095</b> <b>Woodstock (E3) 1,546</b> <b>Wytheville * (B5) . . . 4,653</b>

<sup>1</sup> Part of Charlottesville district, Albemarle County, annexed to Charlottesville city in 1939.

<sup>2</sup> Parts of Arlington and Fairfax Counties annexed to Alexandria city in 1930, name of Arlington County changed from Alexandria in 1920. Entire county of Arlington classified as urban under special rule.

<sup>3</sup> Parts of Brookville district, Campbell County, annexed to Lynchburg city in 1926 and 1940.

<sup>4</sup> Part of Henrico County annexed to Chesterfield County in 1922.

<sup>5</sup> Parts of Namozine district, Dinwiddie County, annexed to Petersburg city in 1921 and 1932, part of Prince George County annexed to Petersburg city in 1921.

<sup>6</sup> Parts of Wythe district, Elizabeth City County, annexed to Newport News city in 1921, 1926, and 1938.

<sup>7</sup> Part of Frederick County annexed to Winchester city in 1921.

<sup>8</sup> Part of Martinsville district, Henry County, annexed to Martinsville city in 1939. The 1920 figure for Henry County includes population (4,075) of Martinsville city, geographically located in Henry County, but incorporated and made independent in 1929.

<sup>9</sup> City located in county but independent thereof.

<sup>10</sup> Population of Bluefield city, Mercer County, W. Va. 20,641 in 1940.

<sup>11</sup> Population of Bristol city, Sullivan County, Tenn. 14,004 in 1940.



---

# **The HISTORY of WASHINGTON**

---

## **Reading Unit**

**No. 46**

---

### **WASHINGTON: THE EVERGREEN STATE**

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

#### ***Interesting Facts Explained***

How gold brought settlers to Washington, 8-420  
The beauty of the Washington forests, 8-421  
Washington's first explorers, 8-422  
What was the easiest way to get

rich in Washington, 8-422  
When the English controlled the Northwest fur trade, 8-422-23  
The "Pig War," 8-423  
The important cities in Washington, 8-427

#### ***Things to Think About***

Which states were wildernesses until the white men came?  
What lesson can we learn from New England?  
What are coulees?  
What was the meaning of "fifty-

four forty or fight"?  
Where is the apple capital of the world?  
What do the cowboys call the beef cattle?

#### ***Picture Hunt***

What makes Seattle a very important port? 8-422  
Why are there fish elevators in

the Bonneville Dam? 8-424  
What is irrigation doing for Washington? 8-425-26

#### ***Related Material***

How has the Coolidge Dam helped Arizona? 10-542  
What things do we get from our forests? 9-245  
What was life like in the old logging camps? 9-246-54

Why must trees be planted by hand on mountain sides? 2-246  
How important are the Alaskan salmon fisheries? 8-14

#### ***Practical Applications***

Our great fisheries, 9-361-70  
What keeps Washington's largest cities busy? 8-423  
What did Washington do to help

school teachers? 8-427  
How food is put up in cans, 9-225-231

#### ***Leisure-time Activities***

PROJECT NO. 1: Make a relief map of Washington state, 8-421-22.

PROJECT NO. 2: Read the story of the salmon, 3-245-50.

## THE HISTORY OF WASHINGTON



Photo by Seattle C. of C.

Olympia, Washington, is the capital of a beautiful land of snow-capped mountains, rugged gorges, and tum-

bling waterfalls. The capitol building, shown here, is surrounded by a park of handsome trees.

### WASHINGTON: *the* EVERGREEN STATE

*Forests, Fisheries, Enormous Water Power, and Fertile Soil  
Combine to Make Washington One of Our Richest  
States in Natural Resources*

**I**T WAS the cry of "Gold! Gold!" that first brought settlers to Washington, just as it brought them to many of the other western states. But it was not gold that made their children prosperous and that drew more and more people from all over the world to the forests and fields, the fisheries and factories of the Evergreen State. It was the presence of other "natural resources."

Now if you have read the stories of certain of the other states you may perhaps have noticed that we have always told of the natural advantages that a state enjoys, and have shown how they have helped to make the state prosperous. The settlers developed the mines or fisheries or fertile soil of their region and so grew rich. And of course that is true. But it would be a great mistake to conclude that it was just the presence of those resources that made the settlers prosperous. For the truth is that natural resources are of no value whatever until the labor of men has been spent on them. Our stories have proved this over and over again. Colorado, Wyoming, California—in fact

every state in the Union was just a wilderness until men came. Then the state prospered. But not according to the extent of its natural resources' Its success depended on the energies of men. Labor was the important thing.

"But," you may say, "men will not want to settle down and work hard in a region where there are no natural resources that they can turn into wealth. So after all it is the natural advantages that make a region wealthy." And of course this is partly true. But any given natural resource can be exhausted. Men went to Oregon, Montana, Idaho, and various other western states to take out the gold. Yet it is not gold that is making those states prosperous to-day. Seekers after gold did not despise Oregon's fisheries and fields. If they did not find gold they made the best of whatever else was at hand, and so Oregon is a wealthy state to-day.

The same thing is happening everywhere in our country. New England, for instance, is an outstanding example of what resourcefulness can do in making up for a lack of

## THE HISTORY OF WASHINGTON

natural wealth. There the labor and inventiveness of men have turned a rocky region which never was rich in gold or silver or iron or coal into one of the richest manufacturing sections of our country.

For there are very few regions on the earth's surface without some sort of natural resource. And it is generally true that men will try to exhaust the resources of one region before they desert it for another, even though the second may be richer. When New England's farms could no longer compete with the richer lands of the West, her people turned to their water power and developed manufacturing. And when Washington's furs and gold mines no longer paid well, her settlers turned for their income to the magnificent forests which up to that time they had looked upon as a nuisance. Because the people of Washington are wide-awake and resourceful—that is, able to make the most of whatever comestohand their state is one of the most prosperous in the Union, with a future that is secure.

### The Grandeur of Mountain and Sea

The forests of Washington, like those of Oregon, are things to marvel at. All over the northward continuations of those Cascade and Coast ranges which we have described in our story of Oregon, forests cover the earth like an immense blanket. The splendid beauty of the green Cascades, rising here and there to graceful snow-capped volcanic peaks, is famous all over the world. Mount Rainier (rā-nēr'), the highest point in the state, reaches an elevation of 14,408 feet, but Mount Adams, Mount Baker, Glacier Peak, Mount St. Helens, and Mount Stuart are

all famous and all very beautiful. In the extreme northwestern part of the state, where the Coast Range rises to grand heights, there is another magnificent mountain region on the Olympic (ō-līm'pīk) Peninsula, which faces Puget (pū'jēt) Sound on two sides and the Pacific Ocean on a third. Here the Olympic Mountains seem to rise directly out of the sea, with some of the most awe-inspiring scenery in the world. Naturally the region has a great many fine resorts.

To the east of the Cascade Range stretches

the broad surface of the Columbia River Plains, made up of vast, level beds of lava (lā'vā) very much like those of Idaho and the Great Basin section of Oregon, but unbroken by any such disturbances as cut up the surface of those regions. The Washington beds of lava have been estimated at several thousand feet in thickness, and in many places where old or modern river channels run, we can see five or six hundred feet down through the layers.

Such V-shaped river

valleys are known as coulees (kōō'li). There are many of them on the broad plains of the Columbia River. The most famous one—where the great Columbia River itself once ran—is known as the Grand Coulee. All the flat interior lowland region of Washington is very dry, with greater extremes of temperature than are found west of the Cascades. But the warm winds from the Pacific, even though they have dropped much of their moisture on the western mountain slopes, are still warm enough to lap up the snow when it sometimes falls in winter.

In the northeastern and southeastern parts of the state there are other mountainous regions, the Blue Mountains in the south and



In the background is the Library and in the foreground the Physics Building of the University of Washington. The university is in Seattle, a beautiful city that to-day is almost four hundred times as large as it was in 1870. Like many other western cities that have grown with amazing speed, it has kept much of its pioneer flavor.

## THE HISTORY OF WASHINGTON



Photo by C. B. & Q. Railway

Seattle, lying as it does on the blue waters of Puget Sound, with the snowy Cascade Mountains against the horizon, has one of the loveliest settings in the world. The city is a leading port for the lumber,

fruit, and grain industries of the Northwest. Most of its trade is coastwise, but some of the ships that dock here link Seattle commercially with ports in Alaska and in the Orient.

the Okanogan (ō'kā-nōg'ān) Highlands in the northeast. The Okanogans are the largest and most important group of mountains east of the Cascades, and were once as thickly forested as the regions to the west. But the trees have been cut down, and now the land is used for farming, especially for orchard crops.

### The First White Explorer

The first white man to see what is now Washington was a Spanish captain named Juan Perez (hwān pā'rāth), who sailed near in 1774. The next year Bruno Heceta (ā-thā'tā) actually landed, and in 1792 Captain George Vancouver (vān-kōō'vēr), a British sea captain, explored Puget Sound and the outer bay. He gave many of the outstanding landmarks the names which they still have to-day. In the same year Captain Robert Gray, an American merchant, discovered and named the Columbia River. In 1805 and 1806 Lewis and Clark explored the interior of Washington still further when they came down the Columbia River from the east.

And now, when the first work of exploring the "Oregon country" was over, men settled

down to exploit the new region. The first, easiest, and most natural way to get rich from it was through trading in furs with the Indians. Since the English and Americans had begun trading operations at about the same time, and since there was plenty of trade for both, the English and American companies continued for a long time to send out men and to establish trading points along the shore and in the interior. In 1810 Spokane (spō-kān') House, the first permanent building in Washington, was built by a British trading company where the Little Spokane joins the Spokane River, and in 1836 a mission settlement was established at Walla Walla (wōl'ā wōl'ā).

### "Fifty-four Forty or Fight"

As we have told in our story of Oregon, whose early history was the same as that of Washington, the war of 1812 drove the great American Fur Company of John Jacob Astor away from its main post at Astoria and out of the Northwest altogether. And so for the next thirty-five years the English controlled the larger part of the Northwest fur trade. Their business grew so large, and their claim to the region seemed so just, that

## THE HISTORY OF WASHINGTON

the settlers of the Northwest felt quite certain that the Columbia River would be the final boundary between Canada and the United States. For this reason few American settlers went north of the great Columbia, for they did not want to be left without land when the final decision on ownership of the Northwest was made. But the great disturbance raised by the American politicians—when they demanded a boundary at “fifty-four forty or fight”—finally induced the English in 1846 to settle the boundary where it now stands, at the forty-ninth parallel. Seven years later Washington became a separate territory, no longer a part of Oregon.

In 1859 there was a squabble, known as the “Pig War,” over the boundary at the extreme western part of the line, where it follows a crooked channel through the San Juan (săn hwan) Islands. The reason for the curious name lies in the fact that the whole thing started when an American shot a prize pig belonging to an Englishman, because it insisted on eating his garden. In a short while the incident nearly brought the two greatest nations in America to a war, and it took more than ten years to settle this tempest in a teapot. During the 1850’s there was some trouble with the Indians, too.

### Washington’s Indian Tribes

In our story of Oregon we have described the tribes who lived in this region. The Yakimas (yăk’î-mă), of the Shahaptian (shă-hăp’tî-ăn) group, the Spokanes, members of the large Salishan (să’lish-ăn) family which covered northern Washington, and the Nootkas (noot’kă) were among the more active Washington tribes.

Meanwhile, a rush of gold seekers to Washington distracted attention from the “Pig War” and the Indian unrest. Rich supplies of ore, found in the eastern part of the state and in the great mines of Idaho—which until 1863 was still part of Washington Territory—did much to build up Spokane and Walla Walla as outfitting posts. Finally, the coming of the railroad to Washington in 1883 encouraged a quick and efficient development of the region’s resources, and in 1889 Washington was admitted to the Union. Distance from markets and the difficulty of transportation had long been the only hindrances that kept Washington from leaping into prosperity. Today, with thousands of miles of track and one of our country’s greatest centers for ocean shipping, she is ready to send her products to every corner of the globe.

And Washington produces a great many products to export to other parts of the world.

First, of course, is her lumber. No other state in the Union equaled Washington’s output of timber for a good many years. Several billion board feet of lumber—Douglas fir, yellow and white pine, spruce, larch, and cedar—come out of Washington every year, and even this vast production represents a decline from the peak figure of 7,300,000,000 feet in 1929. The whole northern half of the country is supplied with shingles by Washington. This business is so important to the state that, without her sawmills and lumber-working mills, many of her largest cities would simply disappear. But there is not much danger of such a calamity. The climate of western Washington, warm and rainy almost all the year, is ideal for growing



Photo by Bellingham C. of C.

It is a busy time for the fishermen when the salmon enter Puget Sound to climb the rivers to their spawning grounds. Here you see a group of fishermen hauling in their silvery catch.

## THE HISTORY OF WASHINGTON

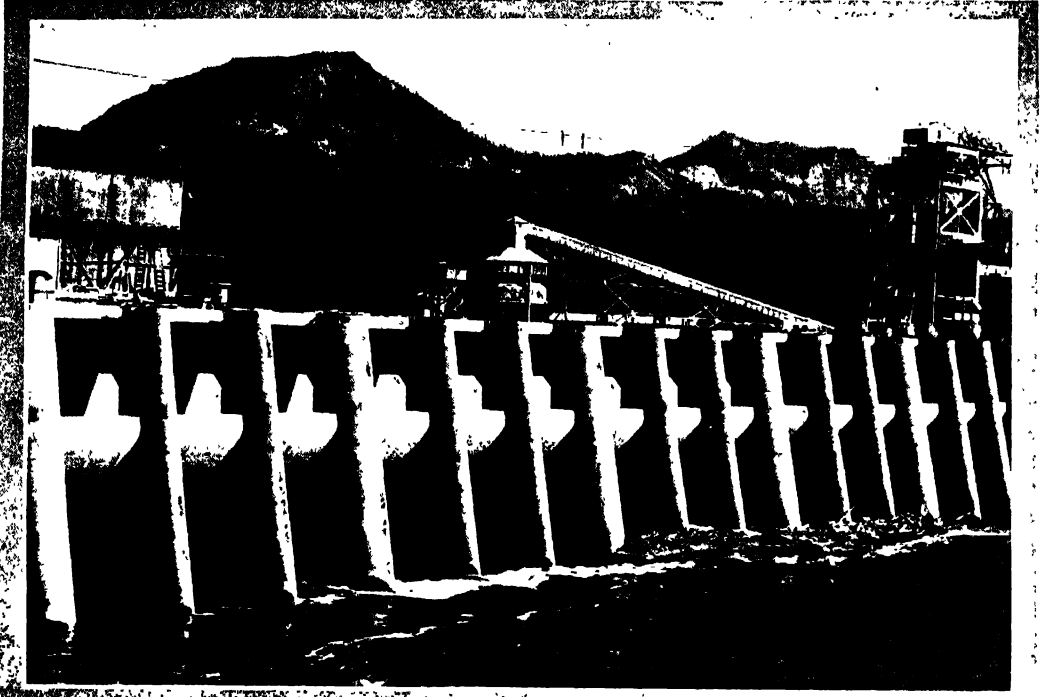


Photo by Seattle C. of C

This great barrier of concrete and steel was built to bring comfort and prosperity to farmers and city-dwellers in Washington and Oregon. Bonneville Dam, built across the Columbia River, which forms the boundary between the two states, will be a tremendous source of energy for the future "Age of Electricity"

vegetation of every sort and trees in particular. In the rain-swept mountain regions of the Cascades, where the ground is soft and rich, trees shoot up almost overnight, and they are being encouraged by reforestation which is carried on in the most enlightened and scientific manner throughout the state. Washington will still be the "Evergreen State" long after her original evergreen forests have been cut down.

In many places where timber has been cleared away, Washington has turned to farming with marked success. Wheat is the most important and valuable of her crops, worth nearly \$90,000,000 in 1945; but the wheat fields of Washington are not as a rule found in cleared forest lands. For the most part they lie in the Columbia River Plains to the east of the Cascades, where dry farming or irrigation is usually necessary because of the lack of rain. Washington wheat farms in those broad, rolling prairies

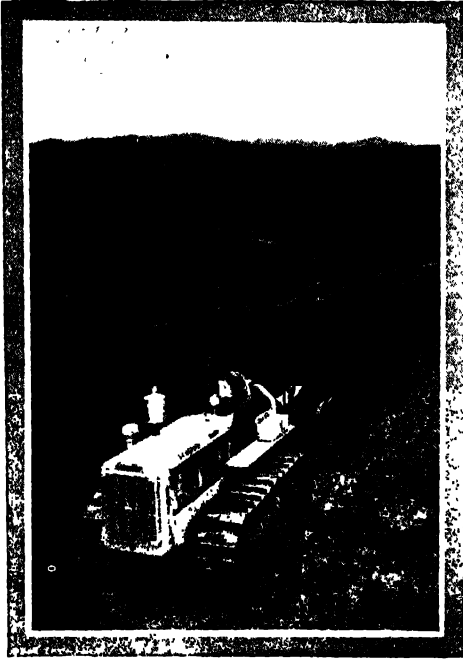
that experts predict. And the waters that it stores are used to turn deserts into gardens. The dam is equipped with a complicated system of "fish elevators" and conduits which allow salmon to pass up the river to spawn and make it possible for the young fish to find their way to the sea.

are truly impressive sights. The farms are huge and the yield per acre is high. All sorts of advanced machinery can be used to harvest the grain and to prepare it for market.

### Where Is the "Apple Capital"?

After wheat, Washington's fruit is the most valuable of her farm products. Apples, as one may easily guess from looking at the apple boxes in the grocer's store, are the most widely shipped and valuable of the fruits. Yakima and Wenatchee (wê-nách'é), both outstanding examples of what can be done by wise use of irrigation, are aspirants to the proud title of "Apple Capital of the World." Strawberries, pears, peaches, cranberries, and grapes are other fruit products which are steadily increasing in value. Others of Washington's crops, less exciting to imagine but very valuable, are corn, barley, oats, hay, potatoes, and truck crops such as asparagus, celery, peas, cantaloupes, cab-

## THE HISTORY OF WASHINGTON



Washington's wheat grows in the eastern part of the state. Above is a field at plowing time.



Photos by Seattle C. of C.

The men in this picture are undercutting one of the magnificent firs in a Washington forest.



The delicate blossoms on these trees promise a fine crop of Washington's celebrated apples. Orchards

like this one in the Yakima Valley prove what irrigation can do for the dry valleys of the state.



Photo by Seattle C. of C.

This pleasant farm in the Kittitas Valley, in Washington, owes its pretty garden and productive fields to waters that have been brought in for irrigation. There

is an old saying, of course not always true, which runs to the effect that you can measure the prosperity of a farmer by the size of his barn.

bage, carrots, cauliflower, onions, and tomatoes. The astonishingly mild climate of Washington, which makes possible the growing of these crops even at high altitudes, is one of the things for which the state may well be thankful.

### **The Columbia Grazing Lands**

In the raising of live stock, also, Washington is of considerable importance, for her eastern section is ideally suited to the grazing of sheep and cattle. Washington grass is green all winter long. As a matter of fact, some of the valleys are too productive to be used for raising beef cattle—"critters," as the cowboys call them. "Critters" raised on a range need not be of a very high quality, because, as we have explained in our story of Iowa, they are generally sold to a fatterer, or "feeder," instead of directly to the slaughtering or packing company. So Washington, instead of giving most of her time to raising beef cattle, as Montana or Wyoming does, has taken up dairy farming on a large scale. As yet the dairy output is not impressive, but her production of milk and butter gives

Washington a place that includes her among the upper third of the dairying states in the Union. After cattle, her most important live-stock products are horses, sheep, and swine. Though dairy products have been increasing in value, Washington must compete with states of the Middle West, which are much nearer the markets and enjoy an almost boundless supply of cheap feed. In poultry of various sorts, and in eggs also, Washington's production has been growing.

### **Wealth from Sea and Stream**

Like Oregon, Washington has a thriving fishing industry, mostly centered around Puget Sound. Salmon are the most valuable catch, with halibut a close second.

Washington is the only state on the Pacific coast where coal is at all important as a source of income. The mines are found in the eastern and central parts of the state, and are easily Washington's most valuable and important mining developments, even though they do not place her very high nationally as a coal-producing region. Usually some 1,500,000 tons of coal are mined, giving



---

## THE HISTORY OF WASHINGTON

---

Washington a place about midway among the states. One of her most valuable mineral products is stone, with large quantities of marble, limestone, granite, and sandstone taken from the quarries. Other mineral products are sand and gravel, zinc, gold, copper, lead, silver, tungsten, clay products, pumice, talc, and peat—none of them of great importance. All together, the mining industries of Washington, like those of Oregon, have declined greatly from the only moderate prosperity of their early days. Even her coal output is now on the wane, for the fields are small and gradually giving out, and there seems little likelihood of a revival.

### What Are Washington's Cities?

But in her constantly expanding manufactures, Washington more than makes up for a declining mining industry. Naturally, in view of her enormous supplies of raw material, Washington's primary manufacturing industry centers around lumber and timber. Practically all of the cities on Puget Sound, in the northwestern corner of the state, are famous lumbering cities. Seattle (*sê-ăt'ł*) is the outstanding manufacturing city in the state, though second in lumbering to Tacoma (*tâ-kō'mă*). Lumber and flour milling, shipbuilding, and the canning of salmon are some of her outstanding industries. Tacoma, also on Puget Sound, is called the "Lumber Capital of America," and well deserves the title. Here are made doors, veneers, and panels in magnificent abundance—in fact, just about anything that can be made of wood is made at Tacoma. In addition, Tacoma is known as a flour-milling and metal-smelting city, and as a railroad center as well. Spokane, in the eastern part of the state, is the principal city of that great "Inland Empire," the Columbia River Plains. In lumber and flour milling, and as a railroad center, the magnificent supplies of water power which are available make Spokane one of the leading cities of the Northwest. Bellingham and Everett are known as ports, and for their salmon and fruit canneries, lumber mills, and sugar-beet factories; and Aberdeen (*ăb'ēr-dên'*), Longview, and Hoquiam (*hō-quă-ăm*) are active lumbering towns. Van-

couver is a center for lumber products and fruit canning, and Olympia, the capital of Washington, is known as a port and for woolen and lumber products. The ports in Puget Sound are nearer to Asia than any other American ports and carry on a tremendous trade.

### Setting a Record in Education

In education Washington is one of the most advanced states in the Union. She is tied with Oregon for the second lowest percentage of "illiteracy" (*i-lit'ēr-ă-sī*) in the country—only one percent of her citizens cannot read and write. The high-school system of Washington is often said to be the finest in the United States. She was one of the first states to encourage the building of private cottages for teachers near their schools, in order to end the haphazard, unpleasant system of "boarding out" the teacher in private homes. The state has a number of efficient colleges and universities.

### Washington's "White Coal"

Of all the states in the Union Washington has had the greatest supply of undeveloped water power, and is one of the greatest actual users of this "white coal." As a matter of fact, her water power might be called the keystone of her prosperity, so important is it. So it is especially encouraging for Washington's future that a great dam has been built across the Columbia River at Bonneville (*bôn'vīl*), Oregon, and at Grand Coulee in Washington, in the central part of the state, another which is the greatest concrete dam in the world. These beautiful structures have put thousands of very fertile acres under irrigation, provide magnificent supplies of electric power to the whole Northwest, and open up the river to navigation for ocean-going vessels as far as two hundred miles from the Pacific Ocean. It is hoped that these vast desert stretches which are so rich when well watered will be converted into a smiling countryside where fruits and grain and vegetables will flourish. It would help to make up for the millions of acres of fertile soil which this country has already lost through bad farming methods. It would make Washington a very great state.

## WASHINGTON

**AREA:** 68,192 square miles—19th in rank.

**LOCATION:** Washington, one of the Pacific states, lies between 45° 32' and 49° N. Lat. and between 116° 57' and 124° 48' W. Long. It is in the northwestern corner of our country, and is bounded on the north by the Canadian province of British Columbia, on the east by Idaho, on the south by Oregon, and on the west by the Pacific Ocean. In the northwest corner the Canadian island of Vancouver is separated from Washington by Georgia Strait, Haro Strait, and the Strait of Juan de Fuca.

**PHYSICAL FEATURES:** Washington is crossed from north to south by two mountain ranges, the Coast Range along the Pacific and the Cascade Range farther inland. Of these the Cascade Range—named from its many waterfalls—is the higher, reaching in Mount Ranier an elevation of 14,408 ft., the highest point in the state. Mount Adams and Mount Baker are the next highest among five lofty peaks that belong to extinct volcanoes. The other summits in the range average 8,000 ft. The Coast Range is about 1,500 ft. high in the south, but in the northwest corner of the state it reaches considerable altitudes in the beautiful Olympic Mountains on the Olympic Peninsula. Here Mount Olympus is nearly 8,000 ft. high. Between the two ranges lies the Puget Sound Basin, which rises gradually from the irregular shores of Puget Sound in the north to the divide that separates the basin from the valley of the Cowlitz River (150 m. long), a stream which flows west from its headwaters on the western slopes of the Cascade Mountains and then turns south to join the Columbia River and go on to the Pacific. Puget Sound, famous as a harbor, reaches far inland toward the south, and is connected with the Pacific by the Strait of Juan de Fuca. Scattered through the sound are a great many islands, among them Whidby Island, the largest, which is some 50 miles long. Toward the southwest the Hood Canal, an arm of the sound, reaches inland for 60 miles and divides the Kitsap Peninsula from the land to the west of it. A number of short rivers, the Skykomish, the White, the Puyallup, and the Nesqually, drain the western slopes of the Cascades into the Sound and give rise to abundant water power. The Chehalis (125 m. long) has broken through the Coast Range from the east and drains the southern part of the Puget Sound Basin directly into the Pacific. At its mouth is Gray's Harbor, and a little farther south is Willapa Bay, both of which give anchorage to ships. Short streams drain the Coast Range into the Pacific and the Olympic Mountains into Puget Sound on the east or into the Pacific on the west.

East of the Cascade Range are the Columbia River Plains, with the Okanogan Mountains, a spur of the Rockies, bounding the plains on the north and the Blue Mountains in the southwest corner of the state. Here in the east the land is a treeless plateau 1,000 to 2,000 ft. above the sea, and the Okanogan Highlands rise to 5,000 and 6,000 ft. The state's average elevation is 1,700 ft. Across the plains flows the Columbia River (1,214 m. long), which rises in Canada and sweeps in a great bend through eastern Washington before it reaches the state's southern boundary, along which it flows for a long way before it enters the Pacific. It receives the drainage of all that part of the state which lies east of the crest of the Cascade Range, as well as the waters of the Cowlitz River farther west. Just before it reaches the southern border it is joined by the Snake River (1,038 m. long), which comes into Washington from Idaho. Other tributaries are the Spokane River, the Pend Oreille, the Okanogan, the Wenatchee, and the Yakima. Through this eastern section there are a good many abandoned river channels called coulees, some of them several hundred feet

deep. One of the largest is Grand Coulee, the old bed of the Columbia River. There the world's largest dam has been built. In the Cascade Range are a good many glacial lakes, among them Lake Chelan (60 m. long). Rapids and waterfalls make it impossible for boats to navigate the Washington rivers except for short distances on the Snake and the Columbia. All together Washington has 2,291 square miles of water. There are large tracts of irrigated land.

**CLIMATE:** Western Washington has a mild, even climate with plenty of rain, for winds from the Pacific prevent extremes and lose much of their moisture as they climb the Cascades. East of the Cascades there are greater extremes of temperature, though nowhere is the climate severe unless it be on the high elevations. The east is a good deal drier than the west, and farmers must resort to irrigation to make their crops grow. At Seattle the mean January temperature is 40° F., the mean July temperature 63°. The record high there is 98°, the record low 3°. The average for the year along the coast is about 50°. In eastern Washington the January temperature may range all the way from -30° to 65°, and the July temperature from 40° to 110°. The dry air there keeps the extremes from being too uncomfortable. The western slopes of the Olympic Mountains, of the Coast Range, and of the Cascades get from 60 to 120 inches of rain a year, about three-fourths of it in winter and early spring. The uplands of the eastern section get from 12 to 24 inches a year, but the southern part of that section has only from 6 to 12 inches a year, with a summer that is almost rainless. The snows are heavy on the mountains.

**INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING:** Gonzaga University at Spokane, the College of Puget Sound at Tacoma, St. Edward's Seminary at Kenmore, St. Martin's College at Lacey, Seattle College at Seattle, Seattle Pacific College at Seattle, Walla Walla College at College Place, State College of Washington at Pullman, University of Washington at Seattle, Washington Missionary College at Takoma Park, Whitman College at Walla Walla, Whitworth College at Spokane, and several normal schools.

**CHARITIES AND CORRECTION:** Washington has state mental hospitals at Steilacoom, Medical Lake, and Sedro Wooley, a state custodial home at Medical Lake, a state soldiers' home at Orting, a veterans' home at Retsil, a school for the deaf and a school for the blind at Vancouver, a state training school for boys at Chahalis, a state school for girls at Centralia, a reformatory at Monroe, and a penitentiary at Walla Walla. The state inflicts capital punishment by hanging.

**POLITICAL FACTS:** Washington is governed under the original constitution of 1889, which has been a good deal amended. Laws are made by a legislature consisting of two houses: a House of Representatives made up of not less than 63 nor more than 99 members, and a Senate made up of not more than one-half nor less than one-third as many members as there are in the House of Representatives. All members of the legislature are elected in alternate years.

The executive branch of the government is headed by the governor, who has on his staff a lieutenant-governor, a secretary of state, a treasurer, an auditor, an attorney-general, a superintendent of public instruction, and a commissioner of public lands. They are chosen at elections at which members of the legislature are chosen, but they hold office for four years. The treasurer may not serve two consecutive terms. All state officers may be recalled by the people.

The judiciary is headed by a supreme court made up of nine judges elected for six years. Each county has

## WASHINGTON—Continued

a superior court presided over by a judge who is elected at the general state election and who serves a four-year term. There are also courts presided over by justices of the peace, and such other inferior courts as may be established by the legislature.

Voters must be citizens of the United States over twenty-one years of age, must be able to read and speak the English language, and must have lived in the state a year, in the county ninety days, and in the town or precinct thirty days. The vote is denied to convicts, insane or feeble-minded persons, and Indians who are not taxed.

The county is the unit of local government. Its officers are elected for two years and may not hold office for more than two terms in succession. Cities of over 20,000 inhabitants may frame a charter for their own government. Those with 5,000 to 20,000 inhabitants may adopt the commission form of government.

The initiative and referendum are in full force but do not apply to constitutional amendments. There are laws relating to labor and juvenile courts. Aliens may not own land unless they have declared their intention of becoming citizens.

The capital of Washington is at Olympia.

**PARKS:** Washington has two great national parks. Mount Ranier National Park, in Pierce County, covers 378 square miles and contains the greatest extinct volcano of the whole Cascade Range. The summit and sides of the great mountain are glacier-covered, and brilliant fields of wild flowers extend from the ice line to the forests of the lower regions.

Olympic National Park, on the Olympic Peninsula, covers over 1,300 square miles of mountain and forest. It is the only breeding ground of the Olympic elk.

Washington has 10,738,942 acres of national forest.

**MONUMENTS:** Whitman National Monument near Walla Walla contains the remains of the state's first mission.

**GAME AND BIRD RESERVATIONS:** Columbia Refuge in Adams and Grant counties for waterfowl; Columbia River in Walla Walla and Benton counties for waterfowl, herons, and terns; Conconully in Okanogan County for waterfowl and grouse; Copalis in Grays Harbor County for cormorants, petrels, murre, auklets, guillemots, and puffins; Dungeness in Clallam County for brant, mallard, baldpate, pintail, scaup, buffle-heads, shorebirds, murre, and auklets; Flattery Rocks in Clallam County for shorebirds, auklets, petrels, guillemots, and puffins; Jones Island in San Juan County for scoter, pigeons, and guillemots; Lenore Lake in Grant and Douglas counties for mallard, buffle-heads, ruddy ducks, California quail, and shorebirds; Little Pend Oreille in Stevens County for grouse, ducks, deer, and bears; Matia Island in San Juan County for cormorants, guillemots, ducks, and pigeons; Quillayute Needles in Clallam and Jefferson counties for petrels, cormorants, shorebirds, auklets, and puffins; Skagit in Skagit County for waterfowl and shorebirds; Smith Island in Island County for waterfowl, shearwaters, and gulls; Turnbull in Spokane County for mallard, teal, grouse, valley quail, and shorebirds; and Willapa in Pacific

County for brant, geese, pintails, scaup, grouse, shorebirds, bears, deer, raccoons, and muskrats.

**NAME:** When what is now the state of Washington was organized as a territory in 1853 the citizens asked that it be named the Territory of Columbus. Since there was already a District of Columbia, it was felt that the two names might easily be confused; so the new territory was named for George Washington. When the territory was raised to statehood it kept its name and became the State of Washington. The word "Washington" comes from "Wessington"—a word made up originally of the personal name "Wassa" and other syllables which have become "ing" and "ton." "Ing" was used to refer to the settlement of a family or clan, and "ton" was a term applied to a piece of ground surrounded by a hedge, or perhaps to a farm. So the word "Washington" means "the settlement -- of farm -- of the people of Wassa."

**NICKNAMES:** The Chinook Indians, who lived in Washington, gave the state the title of the Chinook State. Its giant evergreens, and its grass that stays green all winter, have given it the title of the Evergreen State.

**STATE FLOWER:** Western rhododendron.

**STATE SONG:** "Washington Beloved," with words by Edmond S. Meany and music by Reginald De Koven; adopted in 1909.

**STATE FLAG:** A dark green field bearing a representation of the state seal at its center.

**STATE MOTTO:** "Alki," a Chinook word meaning "by and by"; the motto suggests the state's promising future.

**STATE BIRD:** Though it has not been officially adopted, the willow goldfinch is a likely candidate for the honor.

**INTERESTING FACTS:** Washington observes New Year's Day, Lincoln's Birthday, Washington's Birthday, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Columbus Day, Election Day, Armistice Day, Thanksgiving Day, and Christmas Day.

Washington has a large number of Indian reservations: Colville, Kalispel, Spokane, Chehalis, Hoh, Makah, Nisqually, Ozette, Quileute, Quinaielt, Shoalwater, Skokomish, Squaxin Island, Lummi, Muckleshoot, Port Madison, Puyallup, Swinomish, and Tulalip. On these reservations are members of a large number of tribes: Colville, Kalispel, Chehalis, Clallam, Makah, Nisqually, Quileute, Quinaielt, Skokomish, Squaxin, Upper Chinook, Lummi, Muckleshoot, Nooksak, Puyallup, Skagit, Snohomish, Suquamish, Swinomish, and Yakima. There is an Indian hospital at Tacoma.

A huge dam the largest concrete dam in the world -- has been built by the federal government across the Grand Coulee. The structure is 550 ft. high, and helps in flood control, irrigation, and the creation of electric power. The work is part of a reclamation project.

At Hanford is a plant for manufacturing materials used in creating atomic energy.

Population of state, 1940, 1,736,191	Chelan (E3)	34,412	Ferry (G2)	4,701	Island (C2)	6,098
	Clallam (B2)	21,848	Franklin (G4)	6,307		
Counties	Clark (C5)	42,852			Jefferson (B3)	8,918
Adams (G3)	Columbia (H4)	5,549	Garfield (H4)	3,383	King (D3)	504,980
Asotin (H4)	Cowlitz (C4)	40,155	Grant (F3)	14,668	Kittitas (E3)	20,230
			Grays Harbor (B3)	53,166	Klickitat (E5)	11,357
Benton (F4)	Douglas (F3)	8,651				

**WASHINGTON—Continued**

Lewis (C4)	41,393	Cathlamet (B4)	621	Lind (G4)	679	St. John (H3)	526
Lincoln (G3)	11,361	Centralia * (C4)	7,414	Long Beach (A4)	620	Seattle * (C3)	368,302
		Chehalis * (C4)	4,857	Longview * (C4)	12,385	Sedro-Woolley *	
Mason (B3)	11,603	Chelan (E3)	1,738	Lynden (C2)	1,696	(C2)	2,954
Okanogan (E2)	24,546	Cheney (H3)	1,551			Sequim (H2)	676
		Chewelah (H2)	1,565	Malton (E4)	485	Shelton * (H3)	3,707
Pacific (B4)	15,928	Clarkston * (H4)	3,116	Marysville (C2)	1,748	Skykomish (D3)	479
Pend Oreille		Cle Elum (E3)	2,230	Medical Lake		Snohomish *	
(H2)	7,156	Colfax * (H4)	2,853	(H3)	2,114	(C3)	2,794
Pierce (D4)	182,081	Colville (H2)	2,418	Metaline Falls		Snoqualmie (D3)	775
		Concrete (D2)	859	(H2)	453	Soap Lake (F3)	622
San Juan (C2)	3,157	Cosmopolis (B4)	1,207	Monroe (C3)	1,590	South Bend (B4)	1,771
Skagit (D2)	37,650	Coulee City (F3)	744	Montesano (B4)	2,242	Spokane * (H3)	122,000
Skamania (D4)	4,633			Morton (C4)	778	Sprague (H3)	641
Snohomish (D2)	88,754	Davenport (C3)	1,337	Mount Vernon *		Stanwood (C2)	600
Spokane (H3)	164,652	Dayton * (H4)	3,026	(C2)	4,278	Steilacoom (C3)	832
Stevens (H2)	19,275	Deer Park (H3)	1,070			Stevenson (D5)	563
				Newport (H2)	1,174	Sultan (D3)	961
Thurston (C4)	37,285	Eatonville (C4)	996	North Bend (D3)	646	Sumas (C2)	650
		Edmonds (C3)	1,288	Northport (H2)	427	Sumner (C3)	2,140
Wahkiakum (B4)	4,286	Ellensburg * (E4)	5,944			Sunnyside (E4)	2,368
Walla Walla		Elma (B3)	1,370	Oakesdale (H3)	590	Tacoma * (C3)	109,408
(G4)	30,547	Enumclaw *		Oakville (B4)	418	Tenno (H3)	1,383
Whatcom (D2)	60,355	(D3)	2,627	Olinda (G3)	816	Temoka (C4)	952
Whitman (H4)	27,221	Ephrata (F3)	951	Okanogan (F2)	1,735	Toledo (C4)	523
		Everett * (C3)	30,224	Olympia * (C3)	13,254	Tonasket (F2)	643
Yakima (E4)	99,019			Omak * (E2)	2,918	Toppanish * (E4)	3,683
		Jerndale (C2)	717	Oroville (F2)	1,206	Tukwila (C3)	521
		Friday Harbor		Orting (C3)	1,211	Tumwater (C4)	955
		(B2)	658			Twisp (E2)	477
<b>Cities and Towns</b>						Union Gap (E4)	976
[Places marked with an		Garfield (H3)	674	Palouse (H4)	1,028	Vader (C4)	479
asterisk (*) were clas-		Goldendale (E5)	1,584	Pasco * (F4)	3,913	Vancouver *	
sified as urban in 1940]		Grandview (E4)	1,449	Pateros (F2)	484	(C5)	18,788
		Granier (E4)	752	Pe Ell (B4)	825	Waitsburg (G4)	936
Aberdeen * (B4)	18,846	Granite Falls		Pomeroy (H4)	1,723	Walla Walla *	
Almira (G3)	466	(D2)	683	Port Angeles *		(C4)	18,109
Anacortes * (C2)	5,875			(B2)	9,409	Wapato (E4)	1,483
Arlington (C2)	1,460	Hoguan * (B4)	10,815	Port Orchard		Washougal (C5)	1,267
Asotin (H4)	686			(C3)	1,566	Waterville (E3)	939
Auburn * (C3)	4,211	Ilwaco (A4)	656	Port Townsend *		Wenatchee *	
		Ione (H2)	681	(C2)	4,683	(E3)	11,620
Bellingham *		Issaquah (C3)	812	Poulsbo (C3)	639	Westport (A4)	443
(C2)	29,314			Prosser (F4)	1,719	White Salmon	
Blaine (C2)	1,521	Kalama (C4)	1,028	Pullman * (H4)	4,417	(D3)	985
Bothell (C3)	794	Kelso * (C4)	6,749	Puyallup * (C3)	7,889	Wilbur (G3)	1,011
Bremerton *		Kennecook (F4)	1,918			Winlock (C4)	891
(C3)	15,134	Kent * (C3)	2,586	Raymond * (B4)	4,045	Woodland (C5)	980
Brewster (F2)	447	Kettle Falls (G2)	560	Reardan (H3)	422		
Buckley (C3)	1,170	Kirkland (C3)	2,084	Redmond (C3)	530		
Burlington (C2)	1,632	Kittitas (E4)	501	Renton * (C3)	4,488		
				Republic (G2)	922		
Camas * (C5)	4,433	La Conner (C2)	624	Ridgefield (C5)	643		
Cashmere (I3)	1,465	La Crosse (H4)	475	Ritzville (G3)	1,718		
Castle Rock (C4)	1,182	Leavenworth		Rosalia (H3)	596		
		(E3)	1,608	Roslyn * (E3)	1,743		

---

# *The* HISTORY of WEST VIRGINIA ---

## Reading Unit

No. 47

### WEST VIRGINIA: THE PANHANDLE STATE

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

#### *Interesting Facts Explained*

Why West Virginia is called the Panhandle State, 8-430  
The famous water gap at Harper's Ferry, 8-431  
Why explorers first came to West Virginia, 8-431  
Who the first settlers were, 8-431-32  
The land George Washington surveyed, 8-432  
Why there was not much sym-

pathy between the two Virginias, 8-433  
West Virginia and the Civil War, 8-433  
When West Virginia was admitted to the Union, 8-434  
Why travel by water was easy in West Virginia, 8-434  
Coal and natural gas in West Virginia, 8-435

#### *Picture Hunt*

Why are farmers in the South planting trees on land unsuited to crops? 8-434

What is still a common sight on the Ohio River? 8-435

#### *Related Material*

What was life like on the old plantations? 7-153-54  
What were the unhappy results of the invention of the cotton gin? 7-217  
What caused the division between the states in the Union? 7-246  
What did George Washington dream of doing? 12-474-75  
Why is the Portland Vase famous? 12-29

The men from "up country," 8-410, 412  
How are doll heads made? 12-44  
Why are pottery painters limited in the colors they may use? 12-46  
What was a river pilot supposed to be able to do in Mark Twain's time? 13-329  
When did white men first see tobacco? 9-221

#### *Practical Applications*

How did the railroads help West Virginia? 8-434-35  
How does the waste of natural

gas in the early days affect West Virginia now? 8-435

#### *Leisure-time Activities*

PROJECT NO. 1: Put a piece of glass amid very hot coals and

watch it melt. See if you can shape it with a poker as it cools.

---

## THE HISTORY OF WEST VIRGINIA

---



Photo by the West Virginia State C. of C.

Charleston, West Virginia, lies on the banks of the Kanawha, the river that might have given its name to the state had it been just a bit easier to pronounce.

The city, built in the midst of a region that produces coal and oil, became the permanent capital in 1885. Above is a view of the state capitol.

### WEST VIRGINIA: *the* PANHANDLE STATE

*Out of the Rugged Mountains of Western Virginia a Brave and Freedom-loving Race of Men Have Carved a State Known for Its Independence and Fearless, Upright Spirit*

**W**HEN settlers in a new region look about for the best place to lay out a farm or start a town, they do not turn to the hill country. Instead, they like to plant their crops in the rich plains, where the soil will not resist the plow and roads can easily be laid down to connect them with one another and perhaps with the world they have left behind. The mountains seem rough and forbidding—good places to avoid. But in spite of this mistrust, the hills somehow manage to draw to their wild retreats the free, courageous spirits who are not afraid of hardship or loneliness. There the stronger men dare to go to wrestle with the barren soil and stony fields. For this reason we shall find that the rugged states are likely to have an unconquerable independence, and often are able to do an amazing amount of work. An example is the little state of West Virginia.

West Virginia is commonly known as the Panhandle State, from the two arms which she stretches out, one to the north and one to the east. But she is frequently called the Mountain State and the reason for that nickname is plain to see. There are two great geological regions within her boundaries, and both of them are extremely mountainous. In the west, covering almost two-thirds of the state, is the great Allegheny Plateau (ă'l'ĕ-gă'nĭ plă-tô'). It began as a broad, flat mass of rocks lying in layers, with a very slight slope to the northwest. But the streams which have been running over it for countless centuries have cut it up into a great network of valleys and canyons. In every direction, for the whole length and breadth of the Allegheny Plateau, there is nothing to be seen but steep hills and deep valleys lying in utter confusion. To be sure, most of the streams run into the Ohio River

## THE HISTORY OF WEST VIRGINIA

sooner or later. But they do not seem to care how or when they get there, for in this western hill country they wind back and forth at every angle and without any sort of system.

The eastern part of West Virginia belongs to that part of the Appalachian (ăp'ă-lă'-chĭ-ăn) mountain system which here, as in Pennsylvania, lies east of the Allegheny Plateau. It too is very wild and rugged. But the shapes of the mountains are entirely different from those we have just described. Instead of being scattered about helter-skelter, they run in long straight lines, or ridges. The whole country is a series of ridges and valleys, each valley with a long straight stream running down the center. Wherever you journey you will find first a valley, then a ridge, another valley, and then another ridge. All the lines of mountain and valley run in the same direction, northeast and southwest.

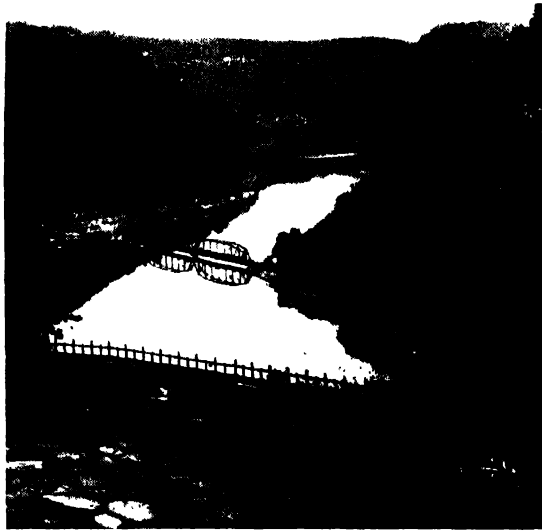
### What Is a Water Gap?

The reason for this arrangement is to be found in the fact that the same layers of rock which make up the Allegheny Plateau were folded here, so that they no longer lie flat. Instead of being spread out one directly on top of the other, like these lines of type, they were pressed into folds until now the layers stand up on end, more or less like a row of dominoes which has been pushed from the sides. Now some of these rocks were soft and some were hard. Those that were soft were easily weathered away, and so they became valleys after a time. The hard

rocks stood out above the valleys and remained as ridges. Rain water ran off them into the valleys, where rivers began to run. If you look at a map of this region, you will see that nearly all the rivers run in straight lines, northeast or southwest. They are following the valleys. Whenever one of

them turns suddenly, it must cut through a ridge. Those places where the rivers do cross the ridges are called "gaps." One of the most famous is at Harper's Ferry, where the Potomac River cuts through the Blue Ridge. In our story of Kentucky we mentioned another, the famous Cumberland Gap, an important gateway for early settlers who made their way westward before the day of railroads.

West Virginia, then, is a rugged country, wild and rocky and watered by many rivers. If we can imagine it covered once again



West Virginia Industrial and Publicity Commission

In Hawk's Nest State Park, near Ansted, West Virginia, one sees this charming view of New River.

with the deep, dark forests of other days, filled with wild animals and savage Indians, without roads or settlements of any sort, we shall understand why few men cared to leave the peaceful lowlands of tidewater Virginia for this forbidding wilderness. It was not until 1671 that the first white explorers, Thomas Batts and his party, crossed through these mountains in search of a river which might flow into the Pacific. And it was fully fifty-five years later, in 1726 or 1727, that the first real settlers came to West Virginia. They were a group of Germans who built their little cabins at what is now Shepherdstown, and a Welshman named Morgan ap Morgan who settled on Mill Creek in Berkeley County. At that time there had been

## THE HISTORY OF WEST VIRGINIA



Photo by the Wheeling Steel Corporation

The shaft of this West Virginia coal mine descends from the tall building to the right. In the background

are some of the rugged hills that are highly characteristic of this rugged state.

settlements in eastern Virginia for 120 years.

### Who Were the First Settlers?

From the very start the settlements in West Virginia were different from the villages east of the mountains. For most of the men who came to conquer those rugged mountains were not English gentlemen, or indeed Englishmen at all. They were Germans, and they came from Pennsylvania, across the Potomac River. Because the only convenient way for men to travel in those days was by water, they came up the valleys of the streams running into the Potomac, and soon had followed the streams to their sources, far in the interior of West Virginia. All the early farms were planted in the fertile bottom lands. In 1748 and 1751 George Washington surveyed this region for Lord Fairfax, to whom the King of England had given it by a special grant. He found all the valleys filled with German settlers from Pennsylvania. But it was not long before other pioneers, mostly Scotch and Irish, began crossing over into the valleys and hills of the Alleghenies.

It was now that the white men began to meet their first large groups of hostile Indians. The red men had been in possession here for a long, long time. Earlier ones had left their mounds, as they did in Wisconsin

and Ohio. Near Moundsville, a town on the Ohio River, is a great cone of earth some seventy feet high which was used as a place of burial. But when the white men came the Indians were using the state largely as a hunting ground. Along the Potomac, the Tuscaroras (tūs'kâ-rō'râ) were few and friendly; but the Delawares and the Shawnees, who were scattered through the Allegheny region, were powerful, hostile tribes. During the wars with the French and the Indians (1754-1763) those Indians drove back the new settlers for many miles, and destroyed their forts and cabins. But in 1774 Governor Dunmore of Virginia crushed the Shawnees, under their chief Cornstalk, in a short war named after the Governor. In the Revolution the Indians fought on the British side.

### The Bloody Indian Warfare

Like nearly all frontier wars, the Revolutionary War in West Virginia was a vicious, bloody affair. The Indians attacked and besieged many of the towns, and nearly all the settlers had to fight for their lives at one time or another. The government at Richmond was too busy fighting its own battles to send any help to the few settlers in the counties beyond the mountains. But the West Virginians proved themselves a sturdy



## THE HISTORY OF WEST VIRGINIA

race. They fought off the Indians without help, and even contributed some of the heroes who marched with George Rogers Clark to capture Illinois and the Northwest.

The people of West Virginia never had had much in common with the Virginians in the east. We have told of the relationship in our story of Virginia.

After the war was over the men of the western mountains were more conscious than ever of the gulf between the two sections. They had had no help from the east during the war, and the mountains between the two regions cut them off from each other almost entirely. Besides this, the plantation system which covered eastern Virginia had never worked well in West Virginia. It needed a richer and more fertile soil than the mountains provided, and a gentler climate. For all these reasons a strong movement grew up in West Virginia to make the region a separate state, with the name "West-sylvania." Kentucky was making the same request about this time—and finally having it granted. But while Virginia did not seem to mind very much what became of Kentucky, she clung stubbornly to those unruly counties in the northwest.

### The Two Virginias

Yet it was plain that there was not much sympathy between the two Virginias, and never would be. West Virginia continued to complain bitterly to her rulers in Richmond. The taxes which the western counties were paying went to improve roads and schools in the east, though all the while West Virginia was growing. By 1850 she

had 302,000 white inhabitants, and needed badly the new roads and other improvements which her taxes should have paid for. Besides that, she was entirely out of sympathy with the great slaveholding system in the eastern part of the state. Her citizens were free citizens; there were almost no slaves at

all. Those hardworking white farmers could not produce goods so cheaply as the slaveholders could, and at the same time they could see that slave labor had ruined the finest tobacco fields of Virginia. They did not want the same thing to happen to their own fields of hay, corn, potatoes, wheat, and tobacco. The hill dwellers were sturdy, independent folk, with minds of their own; the easterners were equally firm and sincere in their beliefs. Some sort of break had to come.

The break finally came when the Civil War divided Virginia into two camps. John Brown's raid on Harper's Ferry, in the northeastern part of the state, had no effect on the West Virginians. They considered Brown a fanatic who was trying

to wreck the Union by bringing about an uprising of the slaves. But when the Virginia Convention actually voted (1861) to leave the Union over the question of slavery, West Virginia rebelled. At that convention there were forty-six delegates from the counties which are now West Virginia. Only nine of them voted with the South. In June and November of 1861 the western counties held their own meetings at the city of Wheeling, and finally decided to make a new state out of the region west of the Alleghenies. At first they planned to call it "Kanawha" (kā-nō'wā), after the Kanawha River, which

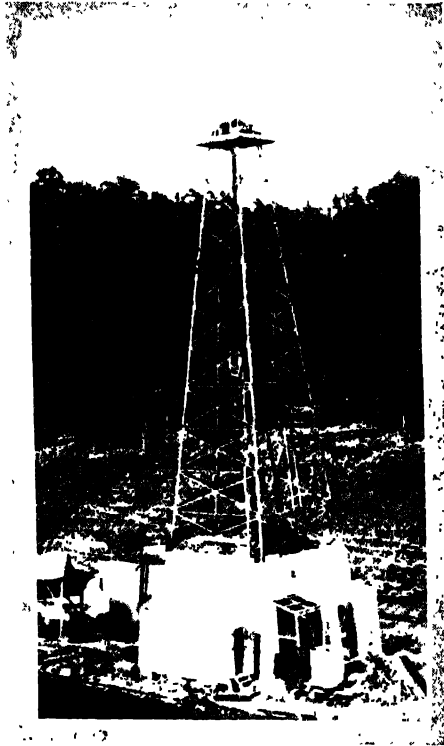


Photo by the West Virginia State C of C

The oil well illustrated here has been drilled deep into the earth's crust. Though West Virginia still produces petroleum she is no longer important among oil-producing states.

---

## THE HISTORY OF WEST VIRGINIA

---



The pile of cut logs lying in front of this lumber mill came from one of West Virginia's numerous forests. The state still has a plentiful supply of hardwood, as well as a great deal of less valuable timber. To-day

the South is awaking to the fact that there is a growing demand for wood which can be made into paper and cellulose. The result is that farmers are planting trees on land unsuited to crops.

flows through West Virginia. But this seemed too hard to spell and pronounce, so the name was changed to "West Virginia." In 1863 West Virginia was admitted to the Union as a separate state.

### The State of Stonewall Jackson

The Civil War did not work the havoc in West Virginia that it worked in her sister state to the east, though there was a good deal of destruction. Early in the war the Union armies under General McClellan advanced over the state and captured it after only one battle. This was at Philippi (fī-lip'ī)—the first real land battle of the war and the last that was fought on West Virginia soil. But while the Southern armies fought no more pitched battles in the state, they made many raids into West Virginia, burning crops, terrorizing citizens, and collecting booty. The most famous of all the soldiers that West Virginia sent to the front was the great "Stonewall" Jackson, a Clarksburg man who during the darkest days of the fighting was known and respected by both sides as one of the greatest generals the unhappy conflict produced.

At the end of the Civil War the state of West Virginia was free, well settled, and fairly prosperous. Though many men had

passed by her valleys and gone on to search for broader lands to the west, many others had stayed behind, to till the soil and work in the factories of the little Panhandle State. In spite of her many settlers and her new improvements, West Virginia was still a pioneer state. Those high mountains had not yet been transformed from a hindrance to a help. They still served mainly to cut off West Virginia from her neighbors, to keep her from exchanging ideas and goods with the rest of the world. Yet a new day was already dawning. In 1852 the Baltimore and Ohio railway reached Wheeling, and was soon building branch lines along the valleys which ran deep into the interior of the state. Of course travel by water had always been easy in West Virginia, because of her many large rivers. To-day certain of them are still in use, especially for coal barges—the great Ohio, the Kanawha to a point thirty miles above Charleston, and the Monongahela (mō-nōng'gā-hē'lā) as far as Fairmont.

### Riches Hidden in the Mountains

The real growth of the railroads came in the ten years from 1880 to 1890. In 1880 West Virginia had only 691 miles of railroad; ten years later she had 1,433 miles. The reason for the sudden appearance of these

## THE HISTORY OF WEST VIRGINIA

new roads is not hard to find. In the depths of West Virginia's steep hills and rugged valleys there was coal; and coal was of value, if it could be carried out of the hills to factories and mills. At first few men realized how rich West Virginia was in coal, and how valuable the coal was. As a matter of fact, it can be found under nearly three-fourths of the state's surface, and is of very fine grade. Here and in Kentucky are the only important deposits of cannel coal in the country. In 1863 only 44,648 tons of coal were mined. But as soon as the railroads came, production began to rise, and soon West Virginia was second only to Pennsylvania in the amount of coal produced. In 1908 she mined 41,897,843 tons, almost a thousand times as much as she had produced thirty-five years before. In 1934 her output had more than doubled again, and she easily took the second place behind Pennsylvania, with nearly 100,000,000 tons. With this great increase in coal mining went a tremendous rise in the production of natural gas and oil. Between 1880 and 1910 West Virginia grew to be one of the greatest oil states in the country, and people from other states were pouring in, hoping to make their fortunes. Truly the "barren" mountains were giving forth riches in abundance.

### Billions of Feet of Natural Gas

The natural gas industry also showed tremendous rises in production. The settlers of West Virginia had known of natural gas, just as they had known of coal and oil, ever since colonial days. But they did not think of using it until those days after the Civil War. Then there came a wild scramble to buy up land with oil and gas beneath it. Production rose so fast that in 1906 West

Virginia was the leader among all the states in the production of natural gas, with an output of almost 120,000,000,000 cubic feet. That is a very great deal of natural gas! She is able to supply various of the surrounding states through long pipe lines laid underground. Only in 1924 did Oklahoma finally succeed in overtaking little West Virginia in producing natural gas.

Unhappily there was a great deal of waste in those early years.

Men thought the fields would never give out, so it made no difference if a few thousand barrels of oil or a few thousand cubic feet of gas went to waste. To-day these industries, and many others, are paying a heavy penalty for their early wastefulness. Thousands and thousands of feet of the finest timber in the country were slashed from the hills of West Virginia. Her oak, chestnut,

hemlock, maple, and spruce were ruthlessly cut down; and only the steepness of her hills and valleys saved her from being as treeless to-day as Indiana or Illinois. She still is a leader in producing hardwood, but is far from having the reserves which she might have had.

The first tremendous supplies of these raw materials—coal, gas, and wood brought many new industries to the cities of West Virginia. Most of those cities are in the western part of the state, along the Ohio River or its tributaries. Wheeling, the biggest and most important of them, is famous for her glass, iron, steel, porcelain, and gas. Parkersburg and Huntington, both further down the Ohio, are other steel and porcelain centers; but Parkersburg has large oil refineries, while Huntington is an important railway terminal. Wellsburg and other cities on the Ohio River make glass—so much of it that West Virginia is one of the



Photo by the West Virginia State Co. of C.

This Ohio River steamboat is one of a goodly fleet that once plied the Ohio River but has now given place to towboats that haul long strings of barges.

---

## THE HISTORY OF WEST VIRGINIA

chief states in the Union in its manufacture. Great stores of natural gas and rich deposits of glass sand make this possible. Grafton and Charleston, the capital, are both busy steel, mining, and lumbering cities, and Charleston refines oil and manufactures chemicals. Finally, in the northeast Martinsburg is the center of the apple country, and produces tremendous quantities of cider vinegar, as well as cement, limestone, and woolen goods. The magnificent scenery and fine climate have attracted a good many people to the West Virginia mountains, and White Sulphur Springs is a popular resort.

### Leaving the Farms for the Mines

The sudden growth of West Virginia's industries had many important effects on her large farming population. To-day her agriculture is thriving. She grows corn, oats, wheat, barley, buckwheat, hay, tobacco, potatoes, apples, peaches, and grapes; and her lush pastures support large herds of live stock. But at the opening of the century farming in West Virginia, especially in the distant, hidden valleys of the interior, was more or less of a pioneering industry. The life of the farmer was hard and rough. The wages which the coal mines and steel mills could offer were not very high, but to those poor farmers they seemed princely and the life of the mill towns looked luxurious. From 1910 to 1930 the number of farms fell off about a seventh; from 1920 to 1925, the number of farmers decreased by 22,720. Those men were leaving their farms to make a living in the coal mines and the factories.

### How Grave Problems Were Solved

But West Virginia soon found that her coal industry could not keep on growing at its original speed. New fields in the Middle West had entered into competition. Less West Virginia coal was being mined and sold. The companies were not getting as much for their coal, so they could not afford to pay the miners as much for their work. The miners, who until then had had no union, formed one at once, and in 1927 and 1928 they struck for higher wages. At first there

was a great deal of angry feeling. Troops were called out to keep order between employers and strikers; and several men were actually killed in fighting around the mines. But the final result was that the union and the employers reached an agreement— one which did not starve the miners or bankrupt the employers. Both sides have lived up to this agreement fairly well, and by their efforts give West Virginia fourth place in the Union in mineral output. The state has a splendid future. She already has magnificent supplies of coal and oil and gas to be used for manufacture, and fine water power, largely undeveloped. She produces natural gasoline, iron, lime, salt, clay, and stone.

At present the output of the steel works and rolling mills leads in West Virginia manufactures, with glass coming second in value. But car shops, wood-working and packing plants, oil refineries, and factories for finishing leather and making porcelain, all bring wealth to this busy state.

### What of the Future?

And so, with her industrial struggles adjusted, West Virginia seems to have settled down at last to a life of peace. During her whole history she has been the child of struggle, a rugged and independent little state who had to fight for every inch of progress she made. Now she has turned to the arts of peace, and gone about improving conditions among her people. For a long time her system of public education had been neglected. But in the fifteen years between 1920 and 1936 she decreased her illiteracy from 6.4 to 4.8 a thousand, and increased the average amount spent yearly on each pupil from \$26 to \$49. To-day it is higher still. She has some sound institutions of higher learning, and with her background of industry and independence, is certain to continue in the path of peaceful progress. No matter what difficulties she may encounter in that path, they are unlikely to daunt her. In the past she overcame more obstacles than almost any other state. We may be sure that she is not going to stand still now, forgetful of all her fine traditions.

## WEST VIRGINIA

**AREA:** 24,181 square miles—40th in rank.

**LOCATION:** West Virginia, one of the East South Central states, lies between 37° 10' and 40° 40' N. Lat. and between 77° 40' and 82° 40' W. Long. It is bounded on the north by Ohio, Pennsylvania, and Maryland; on the east by Pennsylvania, Maryland, and Virginia; on the south by Virginia; and on the west by Kentucky and Ohio. It sends out two long projections, or "panhandles," one extending north between Ohio and Pennsylvania and the other east between Maryland and Virginia.

**PHYSICAL FEATURES:** West Virginia is a mountainous state, well drained by swift rivers that flow in the valleys they have worn. Roughly, the eastern third of the state belongs to the Appalachian mountain region, and is covered by the high, narrow ridges of the Allegheny Mountains, running in general northeast and southwest at elevations of 3,000 or 4,000 feet. The rest of the state belongs to what is known as the Allegheny Plateau, a part of the great Appalachian Plateau. It has been deeply cut by streams and is very rugged and beautiful. In this section the level layers of rock slope toward the northwest, where the Ohio River (981 m. long) forms the northwestern boundary of the state. This great river flows through a gently rolling country, and carries a good deal of traffic. In the eastern mountains is Spruce Knob (4,860 ft.), the highest point in the state. The average elevation of West Virginia is 1,500 ft.

Most of West Virginia's rivers drain into the Ohio and so eventually reach the Gulf of Mexico; but those in the northeast make their way to the Atlantic by way of the Potomac (287 m. long), which has its headwaters here. Often the rivers in the mountainous eastern section have cut deep gorges, known as "gaps," through the ridges that lie in their path. One such picturesque gorge is at Harpers Ferry, in the northeast corner of the state, where the Potomac cuts through the Blue Ridge. Of the rivers entering the Ohio the most important is the Great Kanawha (97 m. long), which makes its way across the state carrying water from the Blue Ridge in North Carolina. It drains about a third of the state, and may be navigated as far as Montgomery. It brings to the Ohio the drainage of the southern part of the Allegheny ridges in the southeastern part of the state. In the north the Monongahela (128 m. long) makes its way to the Ohio across Pennsylvania. South of it is the Little Kanawha (150 m. long), and in the southwest are the Gayandotte, the Twelve Pole, and the Big Sandy (100 m. long), which with its tributary the Tug forms the boundary between West Virginia and Kentucky. The fertile river valleys are everywhere very beautiful, and are so well drained that West Virginia has no marsh land whatever. All together her water area is 148 square miles, and her area of national forest 346,470 acres. There is no irrigated land.

**CLIMATE:** The climate of West Virginia is bracing and healthful, but a good deal colder in the eastern mountains than it is along the Ohio. At Parkersburg the mean January temperature is 32° F., the mean July temperature 75°. The record high there is 106°, the record low -27°. These records are always several degrees lower in the east. Along the Ohio the growing season is about a month longer than it is in certain parts of the upland. In the mountains the annual rainfall is about 50 inches, but along the Ohio and in the eastern panhandle it is only 35 or 40 inches. A good deal of snow falls in winter.

**INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING:** The more important institutions in the state are Bethany College at Bethany, Davis and Elkins College at Elkins, Marshall College at Huntington, Morris Harvey College at Charleston, Salem College at Salem,

West Virginia State College for Negroes at Institute, the University of West Virginia at Morgantown, West Virginia Wesleyan College at Buckhannon, the New River State College at Montgomery. The Potomac State School at Keyser offers a junior college course. Teachers training schools are maintained at Huntington, West Liberty, Fairmont, Glenville, Shepherdstown, and Bluefield.

**CHARITIES AND CORRECTION:** Hospitals for the insane are maintained at Weston, Spencer, and Huntington, and general state hospitals at Welch, McKendree, and Fairmont. Sanatoriums are at Hopemont, Pincrest, Denmar, and Berkeley Springs. At Romney and Institute there are schools for the deaf and blind, and at St. Mary's a school for the feeble-minded. Children's homes are maintained at Elkins and Huntington, and a home for aged and infirm Negroes at Huntington. There is an industrial school for white boys at Grafton, one for colored boys at Lakin, one for white girls at Salem, and one for colored girls at Huntington.

West Virginia administers capital punishment by hanging.

**POLITICAL FACTS:** West Virginia is governed under her second constitution, which was adopted in 1872 and has since been amended. The laws are made by a legislature made up of a Senate and a House of Delegates. Members of the House of Delegates are elected for two-year terms, and members of the Senate for four years. Senatorial elections are held every two years, and half the members of the Senate are elected at each election. The legislature meets in odd-numbered years in a session that is limited to 60 days unless two-thirds of the members vote to prolong it.

Executive powers rest with a governor, a secretary of state, a superintendent of free schools, an auditor, a treasurer, an attorney-general, and a commissioner of agriculture. They are elected for four years, and the governor may not serve two succeeding terms.

The judiciary is headed by the supreme court of appeals, which is made up of five judges elected by the people for twelve-year terms. Besides this there are circuit courts, one for each of the circuits into which the state is divided. The first circuit has two judges, the others have one; all circuit judges are elected for eight years. Circuit courts are held in each county at least three times a year. Each county has a county court made up of three commissioners elected by the county for six years.

Voters must be United States citizens twenty-one years of age or over, and must have lived in the state for a year and in the county for sixty days. Laws providing for primary elections were passed in 1915. In such elections the voter may designate a party preference for the presidency of the United States. An exception to this law providing for election in party primaries is made in the case of judges in the higher courts and of officers in towns of less than 5,000 inhabitants.

The county is the unit of local government. Each county has a surveyor of lands, a prosecuting attorney, a sheriff, and not more than two assessors, all elected to serve four-year terms.

The state has rigid laws controlling inheritance taxes and insurance rates. White persons and colored persons are forbidden by law to attend the same school. A large amount of important legislation concerning state roads has been passed of late.

The capital of West Virginia is at Charleston.

**NAME:** When the break came between Virginia and West Virginia in 1861, the new state proposed to call itself Kanawha, but finally chose its present name.

## WEST VIRGINIA—Continued

The derivation of the word "Virginia" has been explained in our treatment of the state of Virginia.

**NICKNAMES:** West Virginia is called the Mountain State because of her rugged surface, and the Pan-handle State because of the two long arms projecting from her boundaries, like the handles of a pan.

The people of West Virginia are often called Pan-handleites.

**STATE FLOWER:** The big laurel, or rhododendron—as distinguished from the western variety—was selected by the school children in 1902 and approved by the legislature in 1903.

**STATE SONG:** No song has been officially adopted, but "West Virginia Hills," with words by Mrs. Ellen King and music by H. E. Engle, is sung on occasions demanding a state song.

**STATE FLAG:** A pure white field upon the center of which is the great seal or coat of arms of the state, with

a scroll beneath carrying the words "State of West Virginia." On the reverse side appears the state flower. The flag is bordered by a strip of blue, and set off with a fringe of old gold.

**STATE MOTTO:** "Montani Semper Liberi," meaning "Mountaineers Are Always Freemen." The motto was drawn up by Joseph Diss Debar, an Alsatian who came from Switzerland to America in 1842 and interested himself in the sale of West Virginia lands to Swiss and French immigrants.

**STATE BIRD:** Tufted titmouse, selected by the State Federation of Women's Clubs.

**INTERESTING FACTS:** West Virginia observes New Year's Day, Lincoln's Birthday, Washington's Birthday, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Columbus Day, Election Day, Armistice Day, Thanksgiving Day, Christmas Day, and West Virginia Day on June 20th.

West Virginia has 1,836,140 acres of national forest.

Population of state, 1940, 1,901,974		Putnam (B3)		10,511		East Ramelle (C4)		1,515		Nutter Fort (C2)		1,803	
Counties		Raleigh (B4)		86,687		Elkins * (D3)		8,133		Oak Hill * (B3)		3,213	
Barbour (C2)	19,869	Randolph (D3)		30,259		Fairmont * (C2)		23,105		Paden City (C2)		2,215	
Berkeley (E2)	29,016	Ritchie (B2)		15,389		Fayetteville (B3)		1,347		Parkersburg *			
Boone (B3)	28,556	Roane (B3)		20,787		Follansbee * (C1)		4,834		(B2)		30,103	
Braxton (C3)	21,658	Summers (C4)		20,409		Gassaway (C3)		1,429		Parsburg (D2)		2,077	
Brooke (C1)	25,513	Taylor (C2)		19,919		Glendale (C2)		1,348		Pennsboro (B2)		1,738	
Cabell (A3)	97,459	Tucker (D2)		13,173		Grafton * (D2)		7,431		Petersburg (D2)		1,751	
Calhoun (B3)	12,455	Tyler (C2)		12,559		Grantsville (B3)		1,052		Philippi (C2)		1,955	
Clay (B3)	15,206	Upshur (C3)		18,360		Harrisville (B2)		1,338		Piedmont * (D2)		2,677	
Doddridge (C2)	10,923	Wayne (A3)		35,566		Hinton * (C1)		5,815		Point Pleasant *			
Fayette (B3)	80,628	Webster (C3)		18,080		Hollidays Cove *				(A3)		3,538	
Gilmer (C3)	12,046	Wetzel (C2)		22,342		(C1)		6,137		Princeton * (B4)		7,426	
Grant (D2)	8,805	Wirt (B2)		6,475		Huntington *				Richwood * (C3)		5,051	
Greensbrier (C4)	38,520	Wood (B2)		62,399		(A3)		78,836		Ridgeley (E2)		1,907	
		Wyoming (B4)		29,774		Kenova * (A3)		3,902		Rivesville (C2)		1,552	
						Kcyser * (F2)		6,177		Romney (E2)		2,013	
						Keystone * (B4)		2,942		Roncoverte (C4)		2,265	
						Kimball (B4)		1,580		Rowlesburg (D2)		1,452	
						Kingwood (D2)		1,676					
						Lewisburg (C4)		1,466		Sabraton (C2)		1,810	
						Logan * (B4)		5,166		St. Albans * (B3)		3,558	
						Lumberport (C2)		1,285		St. Marys (B2)		2,201	
										Salem * (C2)		2,571	
										Shannon * (C2)		2,817	
										Sistersville * (B2)		2,702	
										South Charleston *			
										(B3)		10,377	
										Spencer (B3)		2,497	
										Star City (D2)		1,175	
										Sutton (C3)		1,083	

<sup>1</sup> Part of Jackson annexed to Kanawha in 1927

<sup>2</sup> Population of Bluefield town, Tazewell County, Va., 3,921 in 1940.

---

# *The HISTORY of WISCONSIN*

---

## Reading Unit

No. 48

---

### WISCONSIN: THE BADGER STATE

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

#### *Interesting Facts Explained*

Wisconsin's great age, 8 438-39  
The mounds left by the first inhabitants of Wisconsin, 8-439  
Which Indian tribes lived in Wisconsin? 8-440  
What attracted the French to Wisconsin in the early days? 8 440-41  
When Wisconsin was part of Que-

bec, 8-441  
Black Hawk and his famous war, 8-442  
Where peoples of many nations settled, 8 442  
Where cheese is made and shipped, 8-444  
Wisconsin's fishing industry, 8-444-45

#### *Things to Think About*

Why are the Wisconsin mounds very interesting?  
How did the Indian tribes live when white men first came to Wisconsin?  
Why was the task of making Wisconsin American a hard

one?  
How did Wisconsin come to be called the Badger State?  
Why are many of the people in Wisconsin of German descent?  
What was Wisconsin's "Idea"?

#### *Picture Hunt*

Where are the state Capitol and the University of Wisconsin built? 8 438, 440

How important is the dairying industry in Wisconsin? 8-442, 443

#### *Related Material*

How old do learned men think the earth is? 1 43-44  
Which animals are valued for their beautiful furs? 4-254, 295, 355-62, 373, 379, 468  
What did the early French ex-

plorers want to buy from the Indians? 7-137  
What different kinds of cheese are there? 9-346-48  
What is rennet? 9-346

#### *Practical Applications*

Why Americans do not speak French, 7-135-39  
What is Wisconsin doing to save

her trees? 8-443  
How did Wisconsin work out her "Idea"? 8-445

#### *Leisure-time Activities*

PROJECT NO. 1: Read Longfellow's "Song of Hiawatha."

PROJECT NO. 2: Make some cottage cheese, 9-346.

---

## THE HISTORY OF WISCONSIN

---



Madison, the capital of Wisconsin, was named after James Madison, our fourth president. Pleasantly situated between two of the beautiful lakes of the Four Lakes region, it is a city of many fine libraries,

museums, and parks. Its broad streets are bordered by handsome shade trees. The state capitol, shown above, and the University of Wisconsin as well, are built on high hills overlooking the city.

### WISCONSIN: *the* BADGER STATE

*Rich Resources and an Energetic Population Have Combined to Make Wisconsin a Successful Laboratory for Political Experiment*

**S**OME states are known for their cotton, some for their corn, and some for their wealth of gold and silver, but of all the states in the Union Wisconsin is the only one to be known for an idea. To be sure she has other distinctions. In dairying she has no equal. She cans tons of peas and raises more hemp than any other state in the Union, and the clear water from her mineral springs is sold more widely than the waters of any other state. Yet until lately all these things together did not bring her so much fame as she earned from "the Wisconsin idea."

Before we can tell you what that is we shall have to go back to the beginning and tell the story of various events that have helped make the Wisconsin we know to-day. And that will take us very far back indeed; for in the northern part of the state is found what learned men call the Superior oldland,

a part of the Laurentian (lô-rên'shî-ăn) highlands of Eastern Canada, the oldest land in North America. These uplands rose as mountains out of the early sea so many millions of years ago that we can reckon the time only by vast periods. After their first upheaval long ages passed in which the mountain crests were well worn down by wind and water before the continent of which they formed a part was submerged again—all but the highlands, which were left above the waves. Layer by layer those ancient hills were carried by streams to be spread on the floor of the sea that lapped their sides. And then, after more eons had gone by, the continent was gradually upreared again, and what had been the bottom of the sea became dry land about the base of the original ancient highlands which had never been submerged. The newer land now forms the southern part



---

## THE HISTORY OF WISCONSIN

---

of Wisconsin. It too was laid down in very early geologic times. Its layers of rock are among the oldest in our country to-day.

After the upheaval the work of weathering went on, carving up the newer land as well as the ancient oldland. And once more the whole was lifted up, so that streams went to work with redoubled vigor. Finally the glaciers came, and cut and carved and carted the rocks and soil about until, when the ice finally withdrew, the face of things was greatly changed. The glaciers left Wisconsin very much as we know it to-day, a gently rolling fertile country of picturesque hills and valleys dotted with beautiful lakes and drained by numerous rivers that give abundant water power to turn factory wheels. Long oval hills called drumlins were left by the glacier in certain sections, and valuable heaps of sand and gravel--called "terminal moraine"--which the glacier had piled up in front of it as it went along.

### Where Wisconsin's Rivers Run

What might be called the floor plan of the state is very simple. Two long arms of elevated land reach southward from the northern highlands and divide the state into three drainage basins. The western arm is a watershed between the Mississippi-St. Croix Valley and the long trough drained by the Wisconsin River, which finally joins the Mississippi at Prairie du Chien (dōō shēn). The eastern arm forms the watershed between the Wisconsin River Valley and those streams that find their way into Lake Michigan. On the one hand it sends its waters to the Mississippi and the Gulf of Mexico, on the other to the St. Lawrence and the Atlantic Ocean. No streams of any size flow north into Lake Superior.

### A Famous "Carry"

Most important of all the rivers draining into Lake Michigan is the Fox, which wends its way northeast, through Lake Winnebago, and enters Green Bay. It is not a large river, but it has played a big rôle in its day. For its headwaters are only a mile and a half from the banks of the Wisconsin, and as a result the long valley of the Fox and the Wisconsin became a highway for early travelers,

both red men and white, who journeyed from the Mississippi and the country beyond to the Great Lakes or the St. Lawrence River. For many centuries these sister streams, the Fox and the Wisconsin, carried the canoes of Indian war parties or of white fur traders, and long before the white man came, countless moccasined feet had worn a well marked trail across the narrow portage between the two rivers. The adjoining valleys made one of the great early highways of our continent.

How long men have lived in this beautiful fertile country no one really knows, but it must have been several thousand years. Nor do we know just what the first inhabitants were like, though they probably did not differ much from certain of the Indians living in America when the white man came. They left the state dotted with mounds, which seem to have served different purposes. Some were foundations for dwellings. The numerous cone-shaped mounds were used for burial--and these have yielded implements and ornaments and household gear that tell us a good deal about what their builders were like. Mounds of a third type served as fortifications; and still others, huge affairs in the shape of animals, must have had some religious or tribal meaning.

### Strange Mounds of an Ancient People

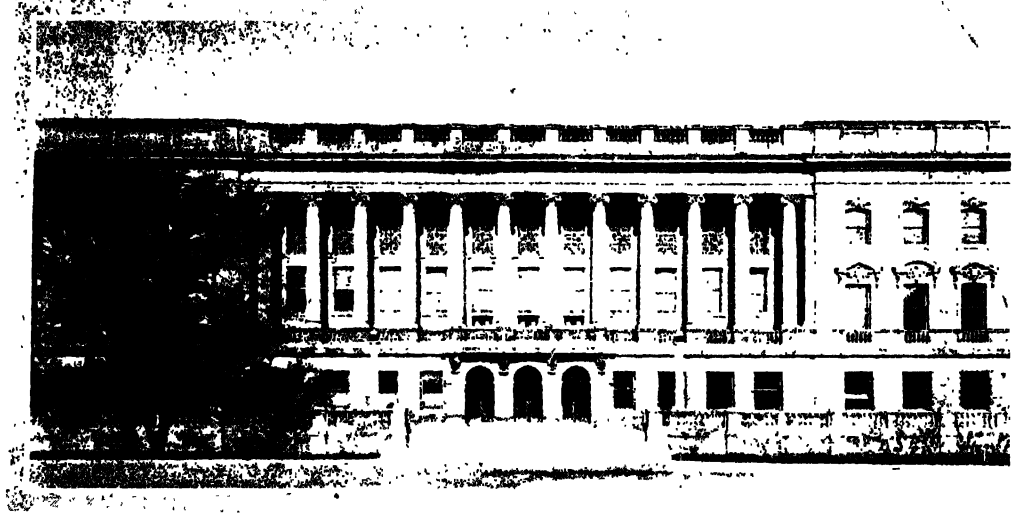
To the last class belongs the elephant mound not far from the Mississippi River in Grant County. Originally it was shaped to represent a bear, but the centuries have shifted the earth about and turned the bear into an elephant. Lately certain mounds in the northwestern part of the state have yielded burial masks some two or three thousand years old; certain learned men think that the people who made them must go back for 15,000 years. It is hard to trace the history of this ancient folk, but they are thought to have come up from the south. All the early peoples moved about a great deal, and their wanderings are hard to follow.

When the white men came they found Wisconsin inhabited by a number of different Indian tribes, who lived mostly by hunting and fishing, with a little hit-or-miss agriculture on the side. If for any reason their crops of corn, beans, or pumpkins failed, they fell

---

## THE HISTORY OF WISCONSIN

---



The University of Wisconsin, founded at Madison in 1848, just twelve years later than the city, is one of the leading universities of the country. It excels in

many branches of learning, and has made a point of making itself useful to the people of the state. The picture above shows its well-stocked library.

back on the wild rice that grew plentifully along the plashy margins of lakes and rivers. They were a tall, well-made lot, members—except for the Winnebago (*wīn'ē-bā'go*)—of the great Algonquian (*āl-gōn'kī-ān*) group of Indians, who occupied the forests of the north-central and northeastern part of the continent.

### Wisconsin's Many Tribes of Indians

Wisconsin was one of their favorite hunting grounds. Here lived the Chippewas (*chīp'ē-wā*) in the north, the Menominees (*mē-nōm'ī-nē*) in the northeast, the Foxes along the Fox River and southward, the Winnebagoes in the central and eastern part of the state, the Potawatamis (*pōt'ā-wōt'ā-mī*), Kickapoos (*kīk'ā-pōō*), and Mascoutins (*mās-kōō'tīn*) along the western shore of Lake Michigan, the Sauks in the south and southwest, and a few roving Sioux (*sōō*) along the western border. The Winnebagoes belonged to the Dakotas, a branch of the great Sioux group of Indians, but had been driven eastward till they had found an abiding place in Wisconsin.

Into this untamed country came Jean Nicolet (*zhōN nē'kō'lē'*) in 1634, the first white man to set foot on Wisconsin soil. He was looking for that much sought Northwest Pas-

sage to Asia, the idea of which was to pester explorers for so many years. Naturally he failed to find it, but what he did find was a land full of fur-bearing animals and of Indians to trap them. So the gallant gentleman made a solemn treaty with the Winnebagoes—who entertained him royally at their village on the east shore of Green Bay—received their oath of allegiance to the king of France, traveled up the Fox River to an Indian village near Berlin, and then went back to his headquarters on the St. Lawrence.

### When Wisconsin Was a Foreign Land

After some twenty years other Frenchmen began to follow him. Roving traders came for furs; licensed representatives came to carry on the legal fur trade for the great trading companies; Jesuit (*jēz'ū-īt*) missionaries—among them Father Marquette and Louis Joliet (*zhō'lyē'*), whose story you will find elsewhere in these books—came to bring Christianity to the red men; and after a time a few French settlers cleared the land around the trading posts and began to raise their little crops. For all these people Green Bay, with its settlement at La Baye, was the usual port of entry, though trading posts were established at various convenient points on Lake Superior, the Fox River, and at Prairie

## THE HISTORY OF WISCONSIN

du Chien. Usually they were at or near Indian villages.

The great attraction was the fur trade, though stories of copper in the north and of lead in the southwest charmed a good many ears. There was very little effort to work the land; these French were not colonizers. Most of them wanted to get rich and go back to France—or at least back to Quebec. The few who stayed on intermarried with the Indians and settled down to an easy-going life of trade and outdoor adventure. For the most part they got on pretty well with their dark-skinned neighbors, who more and more were leaving off their native arts in order to trap furs and so be able to buy the fascinating wares the Europeans had to offer.

But there were upheavals from time to time. The Indians, those "original Americans," still fondly thought of the country as their own, and resented the pale-faced intruders. And the white men gave them plenty of cause for grievance. In 1712 the Foxes, haughtiest of the Wisconsin tribes, broke out against the French, and with the help of certain other tribes kept things in a turmoil for nearly thirty years. It was an unlucky feud for the French, whose power on this continent depended upon keeping a line of communication open from the mouth of the St. Lawrence through the Great Lakes and down the Mississippi to Louisiana. When they lost control of that famous portage between the Fox and the Wisconsin rivers the very backbone of their American empire was broken, and they were greatly handicapped for their struggle with the British later on.

### When Wisconsin Was Part of Quebec

In that struggle the British won. The British flag was run up at the various Wis-

consin military posts in 1761 and La Baye was renamed Fort Edward Augustus. But the change in ownership made little change in the lives of the people. The country ceased to be called New France, and became a part of the British Province of Quebec, but the old French life went right on. Even the



These are medicine men of Wisconsin's Menominee tribe. The strikingly decorated drum at their feet is used in a dance to bring rain. Dances like these which are really prayers—go far back into the past.

Revolutionary War left things much as they had been, for though the land by treaty now belonged to the United States, the British did not withdraw until 1794, and it was not till after the War of 1812 that the United States took actual military possession of the country (1816).

If you were to go today to the busy city of Milwaukee or the great state university at Madison you would find it hard to realize that only a little more than a century ago

Wisconsin was a foreign land, thoroughly French in manners, customs, and speech. The task of making it American was no easy one. The inhabitants had all along been sympathetic to the cause of the British, who had let them do very much as they pleased; now they were slow to take up with the determined American settlers and pushing American ways. There was money to be made in the fur trade—which at this time was in the hands of John Jacob Astor's American Fur Company—and in the lead mines of the southwest, which had for many years been worked by the Sauk and Fox Indians, sometimes with the help of Pawnee slaves. Now Americans began to flock in and to introduce better ways of getting out the metal that was in such great demand for bullets. By 1830 a genuine "rush" was on, like the famous gold rushes of history. Most of the miners came up the Mississippi from the South, often bringing Negro slaves to do the heavy work; and the lead was shipped by boat down the Missis-

## THE HISTORY OF WISCONSIN



An important part of Wisconsin's wealth comes from her cows, which supply her dairies with milk to be turned

into butter, cheese, or condensed milk. These products are shipped over all the country.

issippi River. Everywhere the French began to feel the stir of competition.

It probably was certain of those early miners who gave Wisconsin her nickname. The ones who came from Illinois went home when winter set in and so were called "suckers," after a variety of migratory fish that lives in the streams of the region. But men from farther away stayed all the year round, and passed the winter in dugouts not unlike the burrows of the valiant little badger, for which they were named—though no badgers are found in the state. From these hardy miners Wisconsin came to be called the Badger State.

### Black Hawk and His Famous War

By 1830 lead mining was beginning to replace the fur trade as Wisconsin's most profitable industry, and more and more American miners were crowding the Indians out of their rich possession. There were various flare-ups, but none so violent as the Black Hawk War (1832), which is named for the Sauk brave who led the uprising. Of course the white man won, and the valuable lead mines became his beyond dispute. Meanwhile the encounter roused great excitement everywhere, the new land's rich soil was talked of far and wide, and settlers began to come in ever increasing numbers, eastern settlers who wanted land and were willing to clear it for farms. They found the climate very cold in winter but warm enough in summer to mature even such crops as corn. The rainfall was plentiful and the soil fertile. To their great delight they discovered that their crops never failed.

Wisconsin now began to enter upon her agricultural career.

It was not long until she was demanding to become a separate territory. In 1787 she had been made a part of the old Northwest Territory. Then she had been included in the Indiana Territory (1800), in the Illinois Territory (1809), and in the Michigan Territory (1818). The new Wisconsin Territory set up in 1836 took in what is now Iowa, Minnesota, and part of the Dakotas. In 1848 her population had grown sufficiently for her to be admitted to statehood.

Now it happened that this very year saw in Germany a political revolution that was disastrous to German liberty. Discontented Germans, casting about for some place to go, heard of far-off Wisconsin, with her rich soil, magnificent forests, abundant water power, and free institutions. They came to Wisconsin in vast numbers, taking up whole counties to the west and north of Milwaukee, and bringing with them industry, thrift, a love of freedom, and a love of learning. To-day a great many of the people in Wisconsin are of German descent.

### Wisconsin: Refuge of Many Peoples

The Norwegians came too; many of them settled in the south-central part of the state, but others went to western and northern counties. Swedes and Danes; Cornishmen, Irish, Scotch, and Welsh; Dutch, Swiss, Czechs, Poles, and Finns followed and helped open up the state's rich resources; there even are Icelandic fishermen on Washington Island in Green Bay. But in spite of all these peo-

## THE HISTORY OF WISCONSIN

ples—and of later migrations of Italians, Russians, and French Canadians—the Germans still form a third of Wisconsin's foreign stock.

There is no way to estimate Wisconsin's debt to her foreign-born citizens. With their help the southern part of the state was soon dotted with farms and was shipping flour and

no longer to be had, Wisconsin found ready markets for her wool; and a dearth of Southern tobacco led her to grow the plant herself. Milwaukee grew like a mushroom, and the state as a whole made rapid strides. Her loss of men in the war was staggering—for those same foreign-born citizens fought like tigers for the ideal of liberty that had brought them here—but the men who came home from the war had no trouble in getting work on the farms and in the factories.

### In the Old Logging Days

Soon more railroads were built to connect Milwaukee with Chicago and with St. Paul,



Above, by Wisconsin Conservation Dept.  
Right, by Geo. A. Smith

Wisconsin is a wonderland of beautiful little lakes set among pines and birches and abounding in fish for the sportsman. It is a summer playground for people living throughout the Mississippi Valley.

But Wisconsin is not all play. Her many thriving industries profit by access to cheap transportation on the Great Lakes. Milwaukee, into whose harbor the freighter at the right is carrying coal, is a busy port and manufacturing center.



pork from Milwaukee. By 1857 a railroad had been built from Milwaukee to Prairie du Chien, and not only the product of the lead mines now dwindling in importance but all the varied crops of the southern counties could find a way to the East through the Great Lakes and the Erie Canal, a much shorter route than the one down the Mississippi.

### Wisconsin Loses a Valuable Customer

The railroad had come just in time, for with the Civil War the southern waterway was entirely shut off. The state lost a valuable customer when the South seceded, but the new commercial route made it possible for her to sell foodstuffs to the Union army and to England, where crops had been bad for a number of years. When Southern cotton was

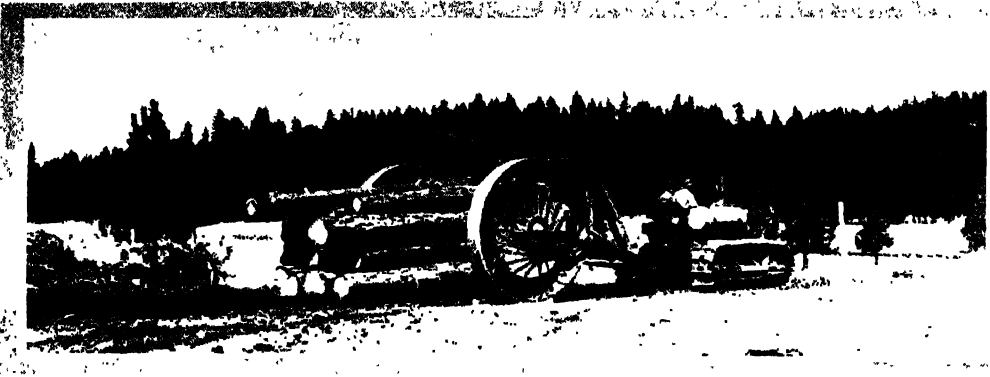
and to open up the forests of the north. Sawmills sprang up along the rivers, and from 1900 to 1905 Wisconsin was the leading lumbering state in the Union. Of course those magnificent stands of white pine are gone today—tragically wasted, as they were in so many other parts of our country—but Wisconsin still cuts thousands of feet of hemlock for making paper, and she has many other valuable woods as well. Of late a conservation program has been saving her timber resources and converting some of the useless cut-over land into new forests.

With the felling of her trees Wisconsin became an important farming state, and began to turn her attention more and more to dairying. Large quantities of hay, corn, oats, potatoes, buckwheat, wheat, barley, soybeans, and tobacco are harvested every year, but

---

## THE HISTORY OF WISCONSIN

---



Although Wisconsin's forests are now as nothing in comparison with what they once were, some lumber is still being cut—as you can see here. With intelligent

planting the state's enormous areas of cut-over land will gradually grow into useful forests again—a crop that will constantly increase in value.

only a small part of all this finds its way to market. Most of it is fed to stock on the farms and in that way is made to yield a larger profit. Wisconsin has more milch cows than any other state in the Union, and thanks to the dairying skill of her German, Swiss, and Danish immigrants, the city of Sheboygan, on Lake Michigan, ships more cheese than any other city in the world. Green County is devoted almost entirely to its production. Of course hogs and sheep are raised, and chickens as well, but cows are of first importance.

### Fruits along Our Northern Border

Even though the state is so far north, the warm summer sun ripens numerous small fruits. Apples, cherries, cranberries, and plums are all profitable crops, and there is a large grape production.

You will remember that Wisconsin was provided by nature with abundant water power. Her inhabitants did not let it go to waste. Factories began to spring up rapidly just after the Civil War, and now manufacturing is the state's chief industry. It is not surprising that the dairies should contribute the state's most valuable manufactured output. All over the state, in little villages and at convenient crossroads in the open country, are cheese factories and creameries. Wood pulp and paper products come next, and automobiles and auto parts third. There are many other manufactures, including tractors, various kinds of industrial apparatus, foot-

wear, and textiles—a varied list. Milwaukee ranks first in their production, with Kenosha (kê-nô'shâ) second and Racine (râ-sên') third. Janesville turns out farm implements, and Oshkosh, Fond du Lac, Appleton, and Green Bay have used their water power for the making of paper and of wood products. Superior, at the head of Lake Superior, is an important railway terminus, and her great docks are crowded with iron ore, lumber, and wheat for shipment down the lakes, or with the coal she gets in return. She manufactures iron products. Ashland and Green Bay are other important lake ports. Beloit and West Allis are busy manufacturing towns.

The lead mines which brought Wisconsin wealth in the early day have about run out, but the zinc they yield is still valuable. Iron, too, is mined in quantity in the northern highlands, but more important than the mines are the quarries of granite of various colors. Sand and gravel, lime, a little lead and marl, and clay for making brick and tiles are the other chief mineral products. Famous mineral waters are bottled at Waukesha (wô'kê-shô).

### Wisconsin's Youngest Industry

Of late years Wisconsin has developed a thriving new industry. Her dry air and clear cool waters attract thousands of summer visitors from the warmer states to the south. More than 2,500 lakes and countless brooks and rivers invite the fisherman, who finds everything from trout to muskellunge. In-

---

## THE HISTORY OF WISCONSIN

---

deed the commercial fisheries in the Great Lakes yield a handsome revenue, and Lake Superior whitefish is a delicacy of national reputation. In the northern woods the sportsman finds deer and numerous wild fowl, and there the naturalist can study a remarkable variety of birds—some 350 species in all. The state has become a summer resort for the whole Middle West.

### What Is "the Wisconsin Idea"?

And yet, with all her thriving farms and busy industries, Wisconsin's most important product has been an idea. It has carried her name to every corner of the nation and to foreign lands as well. It has affected the government of nearly every state in the Union. It has caused bitter enmities and more than once has brought about the downfall of political parties. But though it has been so powerful, it is a difficult thing to put into words, for it has come to embody a whole political movement.

It first had its beginning back in the eighties. Corruption was common in nearly all the state governments in that freebooting era. In Wisconsin the railroads and the lumbermen controlled the state, and only those who represented their interests could be elected to important offices. Now those freedom-loving Germans, Scandinavians, Czechs, and Poles had not come to the New World for that kind of thing, and their dissatisfaction grew apace. They found a leader in a young man named Robert Marion La Follette (1855-1925), who later became congressman, governor of the state, then United States senator, and finally ran for the presidency in 1924. By that time he had turned much farther to the left.

La Follette was a hard worker, and before many years passed had organized a following which put upon the statute books a series of laws completely revolutionizing the government of the state. The foundation of them all was the primary election law, which took the nomination of candidates for public office out of the hands of the political bosses and put it in the hands of the people. The provision has been adopted in many other states. Laws putting the railroads—and various other corporations serving the people—under

the control of a commission of experts were bitterly opposed but finally were passed.

The whole idea of expert, non-partisan control was extended, and now Wisconsin has a public utilities commission, a tax commission, an industrial commission, with wide powers to deal with the many problems arising in industry, an insurance commission, and boards controlling highways, conservation, civil service, banking, agriculture, libraries, public health, and the punishment of crime. She has at all times been a leader in legislation for social welfare.

In the passage of all these measures and in their administration the state constantly calls upon the services of experts in the state university, an institution known all over the world for its work in the social sciences and for its schools of agriculture and of domestic science. A large measure of the state's success in farming is due to researches carried on at the university. Wisconsin's whole public school system is an excellent one.

### Is Wisconsin a "Splendid Nuisance"?

All these measures go to make up the Wisconsin idea. If one were to put it into a few words it probably would be fairly well summarized in the statement that it is the duty of the state to bring the government to the people, to see that the individual's rights and welfare are not infringed upon by any powerful group of private interests, and that the resources of the state are efficiently developed for the prosperity of the people as a whole. This is not socialism, for it in no way involves public ownership of what is now private enterprise. Wisconsin is now only one of many states to have similar provisions, but she was a pioneer in working them out. Often they were bitterly opposed by those who feared that private capital would be driven from the state or that too much power would be put in the hands of the common people. Those who were in sympathy with the movement have called Wisconsin "the most efficient commonwealth in the Union;" others have referred to her as "a splendid nuisance." What you yourself will think of the "Wisconsin idea" will depend upon how far you think the government should go in regulating business and in promoting the welfare of its citizens.

## WISCONSIN

**AREA:** 56,154 square miles—25th in rank.

**LOCATION:** Wisconsin, one of the East North Central states, lies between 42° 30' and 47° 3' N. Lat. and between 86° 49' and 92° 54' W. Long. It is bounded on the north by Lake Superior and by Michigan, on the east by Michigan and Lake Michigan, on the south by Illinois, and on the west by Iowa and Minnesota.

**PHYSICAL FEATURES:** Wisconsin is a picturesque country of rolling hills and valleys, with no elevation higher than Rib Hill (1,940 ft.), near Wausau; the average elevation is 1,050 ft. In the north is a very old upland of hard rock sloping down to the shore of Lake Superior. It is known as the Northern Highland, and it is here that Rib Hill is found. Another somewhat elevated region known as the Western Upland runs south from the Highland between the valleys of the Wisconsin and the Mississippi; it is a section of picturesque river valleys and coulees that run up into the hills. But like the Eastern Ridges that separate the valley of the Wisconsin from the rivers that drain into Lake Michigan, the Western Upland is low, and greatly cut up by streams. Through the Central Plain that these uplands inclose, flow the Fox River and the Wisconsin River (430 m. long), which finds its outlet in the Mississippi at Prairie du Chien. It can be navigated by small boats as far as Portage, 200 miles from its mouth. Here it is only a mile over low marshy ground to the Fox River (175 m. long), the chief river emptying into Lake Michigan. It flows through Lake Winnebago, and empties into Green Bay, a long arm of Lake Michigan. The Fox receives the Wolf River (200 m. long), which comes down from the north. The Menominee (125 m. long), which forms part of the boundary line with Michigan, and the Oconto also enter Green Bay. The low eastern watershed, which also forms the peninsula that separates Green Bay from Lake Michigan, is really a part of the same belt of rock that makes the cliff over which the Niagara tumbles in its famous waterfall. On the eastern slope of this low divide the Wisconsin streams make their way straight to Lake Michigan. The most important of them are the Sheboygan and the Milwaukee (100 m. long), at the mouth of which stands the large city of the same name. The river mouths form the ports in this part of Lake Michigan. The Central Lowland is drained to the south by the Rock River (300 m. long), which enters the Mississippi in Illinois. Most of the drainage of Wisconsin is toward the Mississippi (2,470 m. long), which forms part of the state's western boundary. Its most important tributary is the St. Croix (164 m. long), which, on the way from its source in the Penoque Range in the Northern Highlands, forms part of the boundary line between Wisconsin and Minnesota. The Mississippi and its tributary the St. Croix may be navigated as far as St. Croix Falls, in Polk County. Shortly before it is joined by the St. Croix the Mississippi widens to form a large body of water that is known as Lake Pepin. Other tributaries of the Mississippi are the Black (200 m. long) and the Chippewa. The streams entering Lake Superior are all short.

Wisconsin has a large number of beautiful lakes and some famous mineral springs, especially at Waukesha. Of her lakes Winnebago (30 m. long) is the largest lying entirely within the state, and is a center for a number of busy manufacturing cities. Other lakes of great beauty are Geneva Lake, Green Lake, and the four lakes at Madison. In the north the lakes are smaller but very picturesque. Most of Wisconsin's lakes are a result of the glacier, which also left, in the eastern part of the state, a large number of low oval hills of glacial drift that are excellent sources of sand and gravel. They are called drumlins. The southwestern corner was the only part of the state that the glacier did not visit. Here the land is more rugged and the scenery unusually picturesque. Other fine

scenery occurs along the Mississippi, where there are bold bluffs, and in the rugged bluffs, or dalles, along the Wisconsin and the St. Croix. Wisconsin rivers give excellent water power. All together the state has a water area of 810 square miles. There is no irrigated land. The state has more than 500 miles of shore line on Lake Superior (31,820 sq. m.) and Lake Michigan (22,400 sq. m.), and owns the large group of the Apostle Islands in Lake Superior. There are 549,239 acres of national forest.

**CLIMATE:** Wisconsin has a rugged climate in which there are great extremes of heat and cold, but the air is dry and bracing. Along the shores of the Great Lakes temperatures do not vary so greatly as they do in other parts of the state; the greatest extremes come in the central and northwestern sections. The growing season in the southeast is 170 days long, but in the north it is much shorter. Milwaukee has a mean January temperature of 21° F. and a mean July temperature of 70°. Its record high is 105°, and its record low -25°. The mean annual temperature for the state is about 44°, but certain sections have seen a record high of over 110°, and certain other sections a record low of -48°. The average annual rainfall for the state is about 31 in., about half of which comes in the growing season. The average snowfall is about 45 in., but in the north it is 53 in. The climate of the state is in general a result of the great cyclonic whirls that cross the continent and of the winds that blow northward up the Mississippi Valley in summer.

**INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING:** Beloit College at Beloit, Carroll College at Waukesha, Lawrence College at Appleton, Marquette University at Milwaukee, Milton College at Milton, Milwaukee-Dowder College for women at Milwaukee, Mission House Academy, College, and Seminary at Plymouth, Mount Mary College for women at Milwaukee, Northwestern College at Watertown, Ripon College at Ripon, and the University of Wisconsin at Madison are the more important institutions in the state. Normal schools are at Oshkosh, Platteville, Superior, Whitewater, Stevens Point, River Falls, Eau Claire, Milwaukee, Madison, and La Crosse.

**CHARITIES AND CORRECTION:** The state maintains hospitals for the insane at Mendota, Oshkosh, and Waupun, a psychiatric institute at Mendota, a school for the deaf at Delavan, a school for the blind at Janesville, an institute for blind artisans at Milwaukee, a school for orphaned children at Sparta, an industrial school for girls at Milwaukee, an industrial school for boys at Waukesha, an industrial home for women at Taycheedah, a reformatory at Green Bay, a state prison at Waupun, schools for the feeble-minded at Chippewa Falls and Union Grove, a tuberculosis sanatorium at Wales, and a tuberculosis camp at Tomahawk Lake. Wisconsin does not inflict capital punishment.

**POLITICAL FACTS:** Wisconsin is still governed under its first constitution, which has been largely amended since it was formulated in 1847. Laws are made by a legislature that consists of two houses: the Senate, with members elected for four years, and the Assembly, with members elected for two years. The Assembly must never number less than 54 members nor more than 100, and the Senate must never have less than a fourth nor more than a third of the number in the Assembly. The legislature meets in regular session every two years.

The executive branch of the government centers about a governor and lieutenant-governor, both elected for two years. The secretary of state, attorney-general, insurance commissioner, and treasurer are also elected for two-year terms, but the superintendent of public instruction is elected for four years. A



## WISCONSIN—Continued

large part of the business of government is transacted by various commissions.

The judiciary consists of a supreme court of seven judges elected for ten years, and of circuit courts with judges elected for six years. The state is divided into twenty judicial districts, with a circuit court for each district. The supreme court justices are elected by the people at large, and the judges of the circuit courts by the voters of the districts. Probate judges are chosen by county vote, and serve for four years. Justices of the peace serve two-year terms.

All United States citizens over twenty-one and foreigners who are of age and have declared their intention of becoming citizens may vote if they have resided in the state for one year preceding the election and in the electoral district for ten days. Candidates for state offices are nominated in state primary elections. Judicial and school elections are nonpartisan. There is a strict corrupt-practices law governing elections.

Towns are governed by an annual town meeting at which officers are elected for two years. Cities may be governed by special or general charter, or, if they so choose, by a commission form of government. In all cities the mayor is the chief executive officer and head of the police and fire departments.

The state has a minimum-wage law, child-labor regulations, laws governing labor, and a workmen's compensation act. It was the first state to enact (1931) an unemployment compensation act.

The capital of Wisconsin is at Madison.

**GAME AND BIRD RESERVATIONS:** Gravel Island and Green Bay refuges in Door County, Long Tail Point Refuge in Brown County, and Trempealeau Refuge in Trempealeau and Buffalo counties protect waterfowl and other birds. Birds, deer, and fur animals find safety in Horicon Refuge in Dodge County, Necedah Refuge in Juneau County, and the Upper Mississippi Wildlife and Fish Refuge in Crawford, Buffalo, Vernon, Trempealeau, Grant, and La Crosse counties. This last refuge extends into Minnesota, Iowa, and Illinois.

Wisconsin has 2,018,964 acres of national forest.

**NAME:** On the authority of an Indian trader it has

come to be generally accepted that "Wisconsin" means "gathering of the waters." The word probably comes from the language of the Chippewa Indians, who lived along the headwaters of the Wisconsin River, from which the region doubtless took its name at the time (1836) when it ceased to be a part of any other territory and came to have an identity of its own. The early maps give over twenty spellings of the word, ranging all the way from "Miscous" to the French form "Ouisconsin," with "Misconsin," "Ouisconching," "Ouiskensing," and "Wiskonsan" lying between.

**NICKNAMES:** Wisconsin is called the Badger State from the early lead miners who lived all winter in holes dug in the ground, much as the badger lives in his hole. The state has no badgers. It was formerly called the Copper State because of the large number of copper mines once worked in the north.

The people are commonly referred to as Badgers.

**STATE FLOWER:** Violet; selected by a vote of the school children in 1908.

**STATE FLAG:** Of dark blue silk, with the state coat of arms embroidered in color on each side.

**STATE MOTTO:** "Forward"; probably suggested by the motto "Excelsior."

**STATE BIRD.** Robin

**INTERESTING FACTS:** Wisconsin observes New Year's Day, Lincoln's Birthday, Washington's Birthday, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Columbus Day, Election Day, Armistice Day, Thanksgiving Day, and Christmas Day.

Wisconsin has a number of Indian reservations: Bad River, Lac Courte Oreille, Lac du Flambeau, Red Cliff, St. Croix, Menominee, and Oneida. Living in the state are members of the Chippewa, Potawatomi, Menominee, Stockbridge, Oneida, and Winnebago tribes. All together Wisconsin had over 12,000 Indians in 1940. The federal government maintains institutions for Indians at Hayward and Menominee Mills.

### Population of state, 1940, 3,137,587

#### Counties

Adams (D5)	8,149
Ashland (C 2)	21,801
Barron (B3)	34,289
Bayfield (B2)	15,827
Brown (F 4)	83,109
Buffalo (B4)	16,090
Burnett (A3)	11,382
Calumet (E4)	17,618
Chippewa (B4)	40,703
Clark (C 4)	33,972
Columbia (D5)	32,517
Crawford (C 5)	18,328
Dane (D5)	130,660
Dodge (E5)	54,280
Door (F 4)	19,095
Douglas (A2)	47,119
Dunn (B4)	27,375
Eau Claire (B1)	46,999
Florence (E3)	4,177

Fond du Lac (F 5)	
Forest (E3)	
Grant (C 6)	40
Green (D6)	23,146
Green Lake (D5)	14,092
Iowa (C 6)	20,
Iron (C 2)	10,
Jackson (C 4)	
Jefferson (E5)	868
Juneau (C 5)	708
Kenosha (E6)	63,505
Kewaunee (F 4)	16,680
La Crosse (B5)	59,
Lafayette (C 6)	18,
Langlade (D3)	23,
Lincoln (D3)	22,
Manitowoc (F 4)	61,617
Marathon (D4)	75
Marinette (F 3)	36
Marquette (D5)	9,097
Milwaukee (F 6)	766,885
Monroe (C 5)	30,080

Oconto (E4)	27,075
Oneida (D3)	18,938
Outagamie (E4)	70,032
Ozaukee (F 5)	18,985
Pepin (B4)	7,897
Pierce (A3)	21,471
Polk (A3)	26,197
Portage (D4)	35,800
Price (C 3)	18,167
Racine (F 6)	94,047
Richland (C 5)	20,381
Rock (D6)	80,173
Rusk (B3)	17,737
St. Croix (A3)	24,842
Sauk (D5)	33,700
Sawyer (B3)	11,540
Shawano (E4)	35,378
Sheboygan (F 5)	76,221
Taylor (C 3)	20,105
Trempealeau (B4)	24,381
Vernon (C 5)	29,940
Wausau (D2)	8,894

Walworth (E6)	33,103
Washburn (B3)	12,496
Washington (E5)	28,430
Waukesha (E5)	62,744
Waupaca (E4)	34,614
Waushara (D4)	14,268
Winnebago (E4)	80,507
Wood (D4)	44,165

#### Cities and Villages

[Places marked with an asterisk (\*) were classified as urban in 1940]

Abbot'sford (C5)	920
Adams (D5)	1,310
Algoma * (F4)	2,652
Alma (B4)	1,139
Altoona (B4)	1,239
Amery (A3)	1,461
Antigo * (D3)	9,495
Appleton * (E4)	28,436
Arcadia (B4)	1,810
Ashland * (C 2)	11,101
Athens (C 3)	856
Augusta (B4)	1,519
Baldwin (A4)	918

\* Part of Monroe annexed to Vernon in 1939

# WISCONSIN—Continued

Bangor (B5) 847	Grantsburg (A3) 874	Mukwonago (E6) 855	Schofield (D4) 1,536
Baraboo * (D5) 6,415	Green Bay * (E4) 46,235	Muscoda (C5) 902	Seymour (E4) 1,365
Barron (B3) 2,059	Hartford * (E5) 3,910	Necedah (C4) 838	Sharon (E6) 812
Bayfield (C2) 1,212	Hartland (E5) 998	Neenah * (E4) 10,645	Shawano * (E4) 5,565
Beaver Dam * (E5) 10,156	Hayward (B2) 1,571	Neillsville * (C4) 2,562	Sheboygan * (F5) 40,638
Beloit * (D6) 25,365	Highland (C5) 902	Nekoosa (D4) 2,212	Sheboygan Falls * (F5) 3,395
Benton (C6) 835	Hillsboro (C5) 1,146	New Glarus (D6) 1,068	Shell Lake (B3) 872
Berlin * (E5) 4,247	Horicon (E5) 2,253	New Holstein (E5) 1,502	Shorewood * (F5) 15,184
Black River Falls * (C4) 2,539	Hortonville (E4) 968	New Lisbon (C5) 1,215	Shullsburg (C6) 1,197
Blair (B4) 856	Hudson * (A4) 2,987	New London * (E4) 4,825	South Mil- waukee * (F6) 11,134
Bloomer (B3) 2,204	Hurley * (C2) 3,375	New Richmond (A3) 2,388	Sparta * (C5) 5,820
Boscobel (C5) 2,008	Independence (B4) 1,036	Niagara (E1) 2,266	Spooner * (B3) 2,639
Brillion (E4) 1,200	Janesville * (D6) 22,992	North Fond du Lac (E5) 2,083	Spring Green (C5) 868
Brookfield (D6) 1,750	Jefferson * (E5) 3,059	Oconomowoc * (E5) 4,562	Spring Valley (A4) 973
Burlington * (E6) 4,414	Juneau (E5) 1,301	Oconto * (F4) 5,362	Stanley (C4) 2,021
Cameron (B1) 807	Kaukauna * (E4) 7,382	Oconto Falls (E4) 1,888	Stevens Point * (D4) 15,777
Campbellsport (E5) 1,094	Kenosha * (F6) 48,765	Omro (E4) 1,401	Stoughton * (D6) 4,743
Cassville (C6) 956	Kewaskum (E5) 880	Onalaska (B5) 1,742	Stratford (C4) 879
Cedarburg (F5) 2,245	Kewaunee * (F4) 2,533	Oregon (D6) 1,005	Sturgeon Bay (F4) 5,439
Cedar Grove (F5) 907	Kiel (E5) 1,898	Oshkosh * (E4) 39,089	Sun Prairie (D5) 1,625
Chetek (B3) 1,227	Kimberly * (E4) 2,618	Osseo (B4) 1,105	Superior * (A2) 15,136
Chilton (E4) 2,203	Kohler (F5) 1,789	Owen (C4) 1,083	Thorp (C4) 1,052
Chippewa Falls * (B4) 10,368	La Crosse * (B5) 42,707	Pardesville (D5) 1,001	Tomah * (C5) 3,817
Clinton (E6) 903	Ladysmith * (B3) 3,671	Park Falls * (C3) 3,252	Tomahawk * (D3) 3,365
Clintonville * (E4) 4,134	La Farge (C5) 921	Peshtigo (F3) 1,947	Two Rivers * (F4) 10,302
Colby (C4) 903	Lake Geneva * (E6) 3,238	Pewaukee (E5) 1,352	Union Grove (E6) 973
Colfax (B3) 992	Lake Mills (E5) 2,219	Phillips (C3) 1,915	Viola (C5) 825
Columbus * (D5) 2,760	Lancaster * (C6) 2,963	Platteville * (C6) 4,762	Viroqua * (C5) 3,549
Cornell (B3) 1,759	Little Chute * (E4) 3,360	Plymouth * (F5) 4,170	Walworth (E6) 875
Crandon (E3) 2,000	Lodi (D5) 1,116	Portage * (D5) 4,706	Washburn (C2) 2,363
Cuba City (C6) 1,259	Loyal (C4) 921	Port Edwards (D4) 1,192	Waterloo (E5) 1,474
Cudahy * (F6) 10,561	Madison * (D5) 67,447	Port Washington * (F5) 4,046	Watertown * (E5) 11,301
Cumberland (A3) 1,539	Manitowoc * (F4) 24,404	Poynette (D5) 870	Waukesha * (E5) 19,242
Darlington (C6) 2,002	Marathon (D4) 823	Prairie du Chien * (B5) 4,622	Waupaca * (D4) 3,458
Delavan * (E6) 3,444	Marinette * (F3) 14,183	Prairie du Sac (D5) 1,001	Waupun * (E5) 6,798
Denmark (F4) 863	Marion (E4) 1,034	Prescott (A4) 857	Wausau * (D4) 27,268
De Pere * (F4) 6,374	Markesan (E5) 912	Princeton (D5) 1,247	Wautoma (D4) 1,180
Dodgeville (C6) 2,269	Marshfield * (C4) 10,359	Pulaski (E4) 979	Wauwatosa * (E5) 27,769
Durand (B4) 1,858	Mauston * (C5) 2,621	Racine * (F6) 67,195	West Allis * (E6) 36,364
Eagle River (D3) 1,491	Mayville * (E5) 2,754	Randolph (E5) 1,146	West Bend * (E5) 5,452
East Troy (E6) 925	Mazomanie (D5) 851	Redgranite (D4) 857	Westby (C5) 1,438
East Claire * (B4) 30,745	Medford (C3) 2,361	Reedsburg * (D5) 3,608	Westfield (D5) 851
Elgin (D4) 694	Mellen (C2) 1,598	Rhineland * (D3) 8,501	West Mil- waukee * (F5) 5,010
Edgerton * (D6) 3,266	Menasha * (E4) 10,481	Rib Lake (C3) 1,042	West Salem (B5) 1,254
Elkhorn (E6) 2,382	Menomonee Falls (E5) 1,469	Rice Lake * (B3) 5,719	Weyauwega (E4) 1,173
Ellsworth (A4) 1,340	Menomonie * (B4) 6,582	Richland Center * (C5) 4,364	Whitefish Bay * (E5) 9,651
Elmwood (A4) 828	Merrill * (D3) 8,711	Ripon * (E5) 4,566	Whitehall (B4) 1,035
Elroy (C5) 1,850	Middleton (D5) 1,358	River Falls * (A4) 2,806	Whitewater (E6) 3,689
Evansville (D6) 2,321	Milton (E6) 1,266	Rothschild (D4) 812	Winneconne (E4) 931
Fairchild (B4) 639	Milwaukee * (E5) 587,472	St. Croix Falls (A3) 1,007	Wisconsin Dells * (D5) 1,762
Fennimore (C6) 1,592	Mineral Point (C6) 2,275	Sauk City (D5) 1,325	Wisconsin Rapids * (D4) 11,416
Fond du Lac * (E5) 27,209	Mondovi (B4) 2,077		Wittenberg (D4) 900
Fort Atkinson * (E6) 6,153	Monroe * (D6) 6,182		
Fountain City (B4) 985	Montello (D5) 1,138		
Fox Lake (E5) 1,016	Montreal (C2) 1,700		
Galesville (B4) 1,147	Monticello (D4) 1,361		
Gillett (E4) 1,145	Mount Horeb (D5) 1,610		
Grafton (F5) 1,150			

\* Name changed from Kilbourn in 1931.

---

# The HISTORY of WYOMING

## Reading Unit No. 49

---

### WYOMING: THE EQUALITY STATE

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

#### *Interesting Facts Explained*

Where men found a river that flowed into the "western seas," 8-448-49  
Where the Oregon Trail led, 8-449  
When gold was discovered in Wyoming, 8-451

Where the old life of the ranches still goes on, 8-452  
The Teapot Dome and Salt Creek oil fields, 8-452  
The Yellowstone National Park, 8-453

#### *Things to Think About*

What did the early explorers of North America hope to find?  
Who explored the mountain streams of Wyoming?  
What does the word "Wyoming" mean?  
What products does Wyoming get

from her mines to-day?  
Which are the oldest industries in Wyoming?  
Why does Wyoming make no attempt to outdo her sister states in farming?

#### *Picture Hunt*

Where does Cheyenne lie? 8-448  
What industries make the West

prosper? 8-450, 453  
When was the Shoshone Dam built? 8-451

#### *Related Material*

Wyoming's national parks, 7-404-6  
What has happened to the old picturesque life of the cowboy? 9-318, 326  
What was the "Pony Express"? 12-574, 10-190  
How are sheep counted? 9-319  
How much water is there in the

reservoir above the Roosevelt Dam? 10-539  
The romance of oil, 9-449-55  
Our country's vanishing fertility, 7-455, 466  
What land did Lewis and Clark explore? 13-491-92  
What is a geyser? 1-32-36

#### *Practical Applications*

How can Wyoming market her oil cheaply? 8-452  
What will help Wyoming to in-

crease her farming operations? 8-452

#### *Leisure-time Activities*

PROJECT NO. 1: Memorize one of the cowboy songs, such as

you may find in Carl Sandburg's "American Songbag."

---

## THE HISTORY OF WYOMING

---

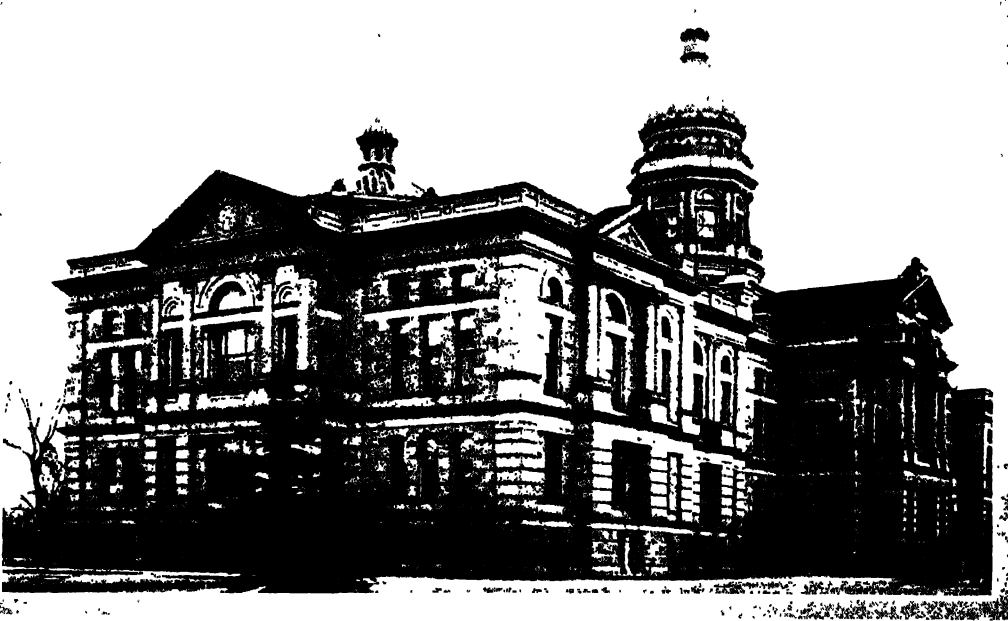


Photo by Wonderful Wyoming Society

Just *where* "the West begins" is an impossible point to settle, but probably Cheyenne satisfies the requirements better than any other city. To begin with, it lies at the western edge of the Great Plains, and just at the eastern edge of the great Front Range of the Rockies.

Besides, although not settled until the Union Pacific Railroad pushed through in 1867, the city has managed to keep much of the flavor of the early days of the West. Perhaps that is why the cowboys meet here every year. Above is the state capitol at Cheyenne

### WYOMING: *the* EQUALITY STATE

*Lying along the Ridgepole of the Continent, Wyoming Is a Land of Magnificent Scenery and of Many Other Natural Wonders*

**W**E are likely to take it for granted that there always were plenty of explorers. Columbus discovered a New World, and straightway other men set out for it. What could be more natural? But that is what we say to ourselves as we sit comfortably at home. It was quite another matter for the men who braved the hardships and dangers of an unknown wilderness. Many of them never came back alive. What was it that drove them on?

Of course for a few of them there was hope of fame, and for all of them there was the hope of wealth—for any riches they might discover belonged to the finder, perhaps to be shared with the man who financed him. So all the early explorers of

North America hoped to find gold, or perhaps more of the golden cities which the Spaniards had discovered farther south.

But there were other lures which beckoned them, and one was the hope of finding a northwest passage to the Pacific and so a short route to the lands of the Far East, where jewels and spices and silks were to be had in gorgeous abundance. That was what the Cabots and Henry Hudson were searching for. It was what drew the early Frenchmen on toward the west. The finding of a river that flowed into the "western seas" was one of the actual achievements of Lewis and Clark. But though the discovery would have brought fame and fortune to anyone who could have found such a river

---

## THE HISTORY OF WYOMING

---

rising in New York or Wisconsin, when it was discovered out in the trackless wilds of Wyoming (wī-ō'mīng) it produced no excitement at all. No great ships could reach it from the Atlantic Ocean, and no caravans could hope to cover the thousands of miles that lay between. Yet here it was that white men first saw that long-looked-for river flowing to the west. For through Wyoming runs the continental divide, and the Snake River, gathering its waters along the western slope, joins the mighty Columbia, which takes its course straight to the Pacific Ocean. The expedition that made the discovery is one of which Americans will be proud for many generations to come.

It is fitting that Wyoming should be the source of the only great river flowing directly into the Pacific. For she is also the source of rivers which flow toward all the other points of the compass—north and south and east, as well as west. We should, then, expect to find Wyoming set well up in the clouds—and high up she is, loftier, on an average, than any other state in the Union, unless it be Colorado. Of course the Rocky Mountains, in the western part of the state, supply a great deal of this height; and it is here that the highest point of the state is to be found—Gannet Peak (13,785 feet) in the Wind River Range of the North Rockies.

### The Oregon Trail

As a matter of fact, the Rockies do not average so high in Wyoming as in Colorado. This is because, in the middle of the state, there is a decided break in their great mass. To the north, running through Montana

and Idaho, lie the North Rockies; to the south, in Colorado, New Mexico, and Arizona, are the South Rockies. And between them, in the west-central part of Wyoming, lies a narrow, flat upland. The early emigrants in the California gold rush were not slow to take advantage of this low pass, for it was the only one where there were no real

mountains to be climbed. The Oregon Trail led over the Wyoming plains, and so did other famous trails especially valued when speed in getting from east to west was a matter of great importance.

The main ramparts of the Rockies are not the only mountains that break the broad, rolling plains of Wyoming. Several other outlying ranges lie to the east, none of them so imposing as the mountains along the western border, but still very considerable ranges. The most important of them are the Laramie (lār'ā-mī) and Big Horn mountains in the central

part of the state, and the Black Hills in the northeast. The plains themselves are far from being lowlands, for they are generally from 5,000 to 7,000 feet above sea level.

To this land of Wyoming came the usual early explorers and fur traders—Spaniards from Mexico, Frenchmen from Canada, and Americans from the eastern states. All wandered haphazard through the rugged country, without leaving very many traces of their presence. That is why it is hard to say who was the first explorer of Wyoming. For like the land of Colorado, Wyoming's surface was long thought to be too rugged and her climate too dry ever to allow successful farming. In 1803 the Louisiana Purchase transferred to the United States



to be Wyoming Dept. of Commerce and Industries

The University of Wyoming is at Laramie, a town beautifully situated at the edge of the great Laramie Basin, with views of spectacular peaks to the south and west and of lesser mountains to the east. The picture shows the entrance to University Hall.

## THE HISTORY OF WYOMING



Photos by Wyoming Dept. of Commerce and Industry

One of Wyoming's important oil fields is at Salt Creek, in the central part of the state. Here is produced a particularly light and high-grade oil. Its quality is

probably a result of the heat and pressure to which the oil was subjected when Wyoming's great mountain ranges were being made.



Raising sheep for eastern markets is a prosperous business in the West. In the spring the flock is sent into the foothills to graze on the early spring grass. Along with the sheep goes a herder, who guides them to fresh pastures and guards them from coyotes and bobcats. He has only his well-trained sheep dog for a

companion during the long, lonely months that he is away from the ranch. Gradually his flock will climb into the hills until they reach grass kept green by water from mountain glaciers. The sheep in the picture are grazing on the foothills of the Big Horn Range, a fine group of mountains in northern Wyoming.

## THE HISTORY OF WYOMING

nearly all of Wyoming east of the continental divide, but even this gave little encouragement to settlers. Besides the supposed uselessness of the soil, the fierce hostility of the Arapahoe (ă-răp'ă-hō), Sioux (Sōō), and Cheyenne (shī-ěň') Indians served to keep anyone from settling down in Wyoming—both Cheyennes and Arapahoes were western representatives of the Algonquian (ălgŏn'kī-ăn) stock, which we have described elsewhere. Many fur trappers and traders, especially those representing the American Fur Company, explored the mountain streams; thousands upon thousands of pioneers passed through the state on their way west through that break in the Rockies; but the only results were a few little forts built along the trails to the west in order to protect the gold hunters bound for California.

During the Civil War the hostilities of the Indians did not die down. In fact when some of the Federal troops were withdrawn to fight at the front, all the tribes joyfully seized the chance to strike back at the hated palefaces. They massacred many of the settlers, they attacked trains and caravans, they killed the messengers of the famous Pony Express, and ambushed stagecoaches. All these exploits of the red men did not increase the eagerness of the people to settle in Wyoming.

### Gold on the Sweetwater

But the same thing that brought people to Colorado brought them to Wyoming, some ten years later. Gold, that ever-fascinating mineral, was discovered on the Sweetwater

River in 1867, and within a short time there were plenty of white men on hand to deal with the Indians. Though the Indians continued to go on the warpath for a long time, whenever they felt they were being unfairly treated, they were never again a threat to the white man's dominion. A rush of gold hunters into Indian country around the

Black Hills in north-eastern Wyoming was the immediate cause of the most famous and bitter of these late Indian wars, which lasted from 1874 to 1879. But meanwhile settlement had been so rapid that in 1868 the Territory of Wyoming was organized. The word originally meant, in the language of the Delaware Indians, "upon the great plains." At the very first meeting of the territorial government women were given equal voting rights with men; and this action, a pioneer step in recognizing women's rights, gave Wyoming, when it became a state (1890), the honorable title of the "Equality State."



Photo by Wyoming Dept. of Com. and Industry

If you were to approach Yellowstone Park from the east, you would drive along the winding road shown here and pass by this huge dam. The Shoshone Dam, which at this point joins the rugged walls of the canyon of the Shoshone River, was built in 1910, and is the oldest of our great dams.

The mines of Wyoming, which were the first attraction to her settlers, are still important to-day; but now they are worked not so much for gold and silver as for the more humble and useful products, such as oil, natural gas and gasoline, and coal. In the early days those minerals were not of very much use, because there was not any way of transporting them to the towns where they were needed. But with the steady growth of Wyoming's 2,000-mile railway system, their value has increased rapidly. Petroleum is of first importance, with a yearly value of nearly forty million dollars. Next comes coal, with a value of

---

## THE HISTORY OF WYOMING

some thirty million dollars a year. Natural gas and natural gasoline follow coal in value, and then come clay, stone, sand and gravel, feldspar, and a little lead, gold, and silver. The oil fields and oil industries of Wyoming play a large part in her life; and the construction in 1924 of a great pipe line reaching from several of her richest fields far to the east has made it possible for her to market her oil cheaply. Wyoming ranks high among the states that produce oil.

### Out in the Cattle Country

After mining, the raising of live stock is the oldest industry, and even outstrips the mines in the value of the product every year. Almost as soon as Wyoming was settled, the overstocked ranges of Texas began shipping immense numbers of cattle to these new grazing lands; and the cattle industry of Wyoming has been growing ever since. Overstocking threatened for a time to destroy the Wyoming ranges, but the danger was averted by several hard winters which starved cattle and drove the producers bankrupt. As a result the load on the grazing areas was cut down. Around 1890 sheep were brought into Wyoming, and were the cause of many wars between the sheep raisers and the cattle barons. We have described it all in our story of Texas. To-day there are more than twice as many sheep as cattle grazing on the Wyoming ranches, but the cattle have gradually come to be worth more than three times as much as the sheep. Wyoming is the second state in the Union in the raising of sheep, and second, as a rule, in the size of her wool clip, which amounts to 25 or 30 million pounds. The cool nights on those northern ranges cause the sheep to grow very heavy fleece. The value of Wyoming's dairy and poultry products has also grown of late, though the state's dry climate does not encourage this industry so much as it does the growing of beef and mutton. On other pages we have told how the cattle are shipped east from the ranges to be fattened in the corn states before going to market; but as farms increase in Wyoming, more and more of these cattle are fattened at home.

The old life of the ranches still goes on,

with the annual round-up of cattle for sorting and branding, and the wild, sweet songs of the cowboys as they gather to sing what is some of the best folk music in our country. Once a year the cowboys meet at Cheyenne, and then their feats on horseback and their yarns when the day's events are over are such as to make a tenderfoot feel that, of all others, this is the spot "where men are men"!

### What are Wyoming's Crops?

For a long time the cattle men tried to keep out homesteaders, even at the cost of bloodshed, but all that violent enmity is now a thing of the past. The same farms now raise cattle and crops. Among the farm crops of Wyoming, hay is of greatest value and reflects the overwhelming interest of the state in cattle grazing. But sugar beets, wheat, corn, potatoes, oats, beans, and barley can bring a substantial sum in a year. Various projects for irrigation, which relies on Wyoming's many large rivers, give promise of an impressive rise in farming in the future. Dry farming, like cattle grazing, has suffered at times from the droughts and dust storms which have afflicted this whole region; but the steady growth of irrigation is helping to control this evil and to bring greater prosperity to the farmers of Wyoming.

### Salt Creek and Teapot Dome

As for manufacturing, the oil products which Wyoming refines are of great importance, and Casper, the industrial center of the state, is one of the great oil-refining centers of the country. With Cheyenne, which has been the state capital ever since 1869, Casper ships cattle and grain products and does a good deal of meat packing. She is also noted as a wool center. The reason for Casper's outstanding position in the oil industry is to be found in the nearby Teapot Dome and Salt Creek oil fields, which are among the biggest and most important in the nation. With these two cities we have practically exhausted the list of Wyoming's manufacturing towns; and it should come as no surprise to learn that, in the value of her manufactured products, the state ranks near the bottom of the list.



## THE HISTORY OF WYOMING



It is from cattle ranches more or less like this one that we get our steaks and roasts of beef. Here cattle can graze all the year round, and even in a dry season, when the ranges are brown, can find enough to live on.

You will notice that these western cattle look very different from the sleek herds one sees on dairy farms. They are bred for beef, not for milking qualities, and never have been pampered.

In education Wyoming holds a secure if not a distinguished place. Her illiteracy is very low indeed—only 1.6 percent of her people cannot read and write—a most remarkable figure, in view of her scattered population and recent settlement. As a matter of fact, only the state of Nevada has fewer people per square mile than Wyoming. Whereas the United States as a whole had an average population of 41.3 people to the square mile in 1930, Wyoming averaged only 2.3. The problem of setting up schools in country as sparsely settled as this is easy to imagine; and Wyoming may well feel proud of the success with which she has met it.

### Yellowstone and Grand Teton

But all this while we have been ignoring one of the most remarkable features of Wyoming. This is of course Yellowstone National Park in the far northwestern corner of the state. We have described its wonders on other pages. It is not strange that more and more people come to Wyoming every year to marvel at it. And other parts of the state which are exceedingly interesting and beautiful are constantly being explored

by happy holiday makers—the fine mountain scenery around Laramie, the Grand Teton National Park in the north, and the beautiful ranges in the east. The keeping of dude ranches is one of Wyoming's most profitable industries.

Wyoming does not seem likely ever to become an industrial or even an agricultural leader in our country. With the tragic effects of overburdening a dry soil already before her, in the shape of blazing "dust bowls," she can be pardoned for not even wanting to outdo her sister states in farming. Some of her land is actual desert, with only six inches of rainfall a year, and it is only in certain of the mountains that there is enough rain for crops. But it is not necessary or even possible for every state to be an industrial leader. Wyoming has riches enough in her mines, and if she can merely retain the beauty and charm which nature has given her so lavishly, she will have a distinction almost unequalled among her sister states. There is little doubt that it will make her more loved and admired than if she had ripped up her mountains in search of coal and cut down her beautiful forests to make them into lumber.

## WYOMING

**AREA:** 97,914 square miles—8th in rank.

**LOCATION:** Wyoming, one of the Mountain states, lies between 41° and 45° N. Lat. and between 104° 3' and 111° 3' W. Long. It is bounded on the north by Montana, on the east by South Dakota and Nebraska, on the south by Colorado and Utah, and on the west by Utah and Idaho.

**PHYSICAL FEATURES:** Most of Wyoming lies in the Great Plains, which here have an elevation of from 5,000 to 7,000 ft. Out of their great treeless stretches, which roll away as far as the eye can see, rise occasional buttes and mesas; and in the northwest and southeast magnificent ranges of the North Rockies and the South Rockies enter the state from the north and from the south. Between them is a sag in the mountain crest—it has long given a highway to people going West; across it lies the continental, or great, divide, which enters the state somewhat west of the center of the southern boundary and extends northwest to Yellowstone Park, which is really a high plateau. South of the park the magnificent Teton Range rises to heights of 10,000 and 11,000 ft., with the beautiful valley known as Jackson's Hole lying at its eastern base. South of it are the Gros Ventre and Shoshone ranges. Southeast of the Tetons is the Wind River Range, in which is Gannett Peak (13,785 ft. high), the highest point in the state. Fremont Peak, in the same range, is nearly as high. East of the Yellowstone the Absarokas extend into the state from Montana, and east of them, in the north-central part of the state, the Big Horn Mountains rise from the plains; they are a part of what is known as the Front Range of the Rockies—that is to say, a part of the great irregular wall which the easternmost ranges of the Rockies form as they rise from our western plains. In the south the Laramie Mountains form part of the Front Range. Other mountain masses in the same section are the Medicine Bow and Seminole ranges. The Black Hills extend into the northeastern corner of the state. Montana's average elevation is 6,700 ft.; its lowest elevation—in Crook County—is 3,100 ft.

The southwestern part of the state is drained by the Green River (730 m. long), which crosses the border into Wyoming and finally joins the Colorado; its waters are carried on to the Pacific. Yellowstone Park furnishes the headwaters of the Snake River (1,038 m. long), which flows through Jackson's Hole and finally crosses into Idaho to join the Columbia and so make its way to the Pacific. The Bear River (450 m. long), which flows for a short distance along the western border, never finds its way to the sea, but drains into the Great Basin. All the rest of the state—some two-thirds in all—drains into the Missouri. In the northwest the Yellowstone (671 m. long) flows north on its way to the Missouri. In the central part of the state rises the Big Horn (about 500 m. long), which enters the Yellowstone River in Montana and so is carried on north to the Missouri. East of the Big Horn the Powder (375 m. long) flows north to the Yellowstone. In the northeast a number of small streams unite to form the Cheyenne (290 m. long) just over the eastern boundary and so are carried to the Missouri. The central and southeastern part of the state is drained by the Sweetwater (175 m. long), the North, and the Laramie into the North Platte (618 m. long), which rises in Colorado and later helps to form the Platte River in Nebraska, a tributary of the Missouri. The Missouri carries all these streams to the Mississippi, which finally enters the Gulf of Mexico. None of the Wyoming rivers can be navigated, but they furnish fine water power. Wyoming has a great many mineral springs, especially in the Yellowstone region; all her lakes are in the mountainous sections. All together she has 366 square miles of water surface. There are large irrigated tracts, for much of her land is

semi-arid. Near the southern boundary lies a section known as the Red Desert.

**CLIMATE:** Like most regions at the heart of a continent Wyoming has a climate of great extremes, though a very healthful one. The state's elevation and northern latitude make the winters severe, especially west of the great divide, but the dryness of the air keeps both heat and cold from being uncomfortable. The mountains are cool even in summer. The mean annual temperature on the high elevations is 36° F., but in the valleys it is 10° higher. Everywhere the thermometer falls greatly at night—in July from a daytime average of 81° to a night average of 47°, and in January from a daytime average of 32° to a night average of 7°. At Cheyenne the mean January temperature is 26°, the mean July temperature 67°. The record high there is 100°, the record low -38°. The city lies in the southeastern part of the state, where most of the farming is, and has an annual rainfall of about 15 inches, almost three-fourths of it coming between April and September. Other parts of the state are much drier. Sweetwater County on the southern border, the lower Wind River Valley, and parts of the Big Horn Basin get only six inches of rain a year. Only the mountains around Yellowstone Park get as much as 35 inches of rain a year. The average rainfall for the state is under 14 inches a year.

**INSTITUTIONS OF HIGHER LEARNING:** The University of Wyoming is at Laramie, and connected with it is a state normal school.

**CHARITIES AND CORRECTION:** The state maintains an insane hospital at Evanston, a general hospital at Rock Springs, a tuberculosis sanatorium at Basin, an industrial school for delinquent girls at Sheridan and one for delinquent boys at Worland, a school for the feeble-minded at Lander, a soldiers' and sailors' home at Buffalo, and a prison at Rawlins. The state inflicts capital punishment by administering a death-dealing gas.

**POLITICAL FACTS:** Wyoming is governed under the constitution of 1889. Laws are made by a legislature composed of a Senate of 21 members and a House of Representatives made up of 60 members. Senators are elected for four years and must be at least twenty-five years of age. Representatives are elected for two years and must be at least 21 years of age. The legislature meets in odd-numbered years.

The executive power is vested in a governor and his staff. The governor is elected for two years, as are the secretary of state, the auditor, the treasurer, and the superintendent of public instruction. The attorney-general, state engineer, state examiner, and various other state officials are appointed by the governor.

The judiciary is headed by a supreme court made up of three justices elected for eight years. Below this court are the district courts, one for each of the seven judicial districts into which the state is divided. Each district court is presided over by a judge who is elected for six years, and who has the assistance of one or more court commissioners in each county to transact legal business in his absence. Below these courts are justices courts and such other courts as may be established by law.

Voters must be citizens of the United States, must be over twenty-one years of age, and must have lived in the state for a year and in the county for sixty days.

Nominations for public offices are made through primary elections. The law demands that the election of judges shall be nonpartisan.

The county is the unit of local government, with the towns incorporated under a general law. Municipalities with more than 4,000 inhabitants may adopt the commission form of government.

## WYOMING—Continued

The initiative and referendum are in force in cities of more than 4,000 inhabitants. There are laws regulating child labor, workmen's compensation, and cooperative marketing.

The capital of Wyoming is at Cheyenne.

**PARKS:** The Yellowstone National Park, established in 1872, covers some 3,438 square miles in the north-western corner of Wyoming. It is described on other pages.

Grand Teton National Park, just south of the Yellowstone, was established in 1929 and covers about 150 square miles. In it is some of the finest scenery in the Teton Range.

**MONUMENTS:** The Devil's Tower National Monument is a gigantic shaft on the Belle Fourche River in northeastern Wyoming. It is 100 feet in diameter and rises 1,280 feet above the river, a perpendicular column of beautifully colored rock.

Other national monuments are Fort Laramie, containing buildings belonging to the early fort at Fort Laramie; Jackson Hole, just east of the Teton Range and remarkable for its examples of glaciation and its wild life; and Shoshone Cavern, a large cave incrustured with crystals.

Wyoming has 9,013,328 acres of national forest.

**GAME AND BIRD RESERVATIONS:** Bamforth Lake National Refuge and Hutton Lake Refuge in Albany County protect waterfowl, shorebirds, and antelopes. Evanston Refuge in Uinta County protects waterfowl. National Elk Refuge in Teton County protects elk, grouse, sage hens, geese, and mallards. Pathfinder Refuge in Natrona and Carbon counties protect waterfowl, shorebirds, and antelopes.

**NAME:** The state's name is said to be a corruption of "maughwauwame," an Indian word meaning "large plains" or "broad meadows." Another theory has it that the original form was the Delaware word "m'cheu-womink," meaning "the great plain." It is interesting that in northern Pennsylvania, where the Delaware Indians lived, there is a Wyoming Valley. Wyoming

has had its present name ever since it was organized as a territory in 1868. When it was admitted to the Union there was a good deal of agitation to call the new state "Cheyenne," but the territorial name was finally adopted.

**NICKNAMES:** Wyoming is known as the Equality State because it was a pioneer in giving the vote to women. It is also known as the Sagebrush State because of the large quantities of sagebrush that grow on its dry plains.

**STATE FLOWER:** Indian paintbrush (*Castilleja linariaefolia*); adopted by legislative action in 1917.

**STATE SONG:** Wyoming has no state song, but there are two songs that are popular for occasions when a state song is required; they have the same words, written by Charles E. Winter, but the music of one is by Earle R. Clemens and of the other by George E. Knapp.

**STATE FLAG:** Around a blue center runs a white band, and outside that is red border. In the center of the flag is the silhouette of a buffalo in white, with the seal of the state in blue on his back—a reminder of the western custom of branding cattle.

**STATE MOTTO:** "Cedant Arma Togae," a phrase from Cicero meaning "Let arms yield to the toga"—that is, let force yield to law. The toga was the customary dress of the Roman citizen. The motto "Equal Rights" appears on the state seal, and refers to women's political equality in the state.

**STATE BIRD:** Meadow lark

**INTERESTING FACTS:** Wyoming observes New Year's Day, Lincoln's Birthday, Washington's Birthday, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Columbus Day, Election Day, Armistice Day, Thanksgiving Day, and Christmas Day.

Wyoming has the Shoshone, or Wind River, Indian Reservation, on which live members of the Arapaho and Shoshone tribes.

Population of state, 1940, 250,742		Population of counties, 1940		Population of cities and towns, 1940	
Counties		Counties		Counties	
Albany (F4)	13,946	Sheridan (E1)	19,255	Baggs (D4)	221
Big Horn (D1)	12,911	Sublette* (B3)	2,778	Basin (C1)	1,099
Campbell (F1)	6,048	Sweetwater (C4)	19,407	Big Piney (A3)	241
Carbon (E4)	12,644	Teton* (A2)	2,543	Buffalo (E1)	2,302
Converse (F3)	6,631	Uinta (A4)	7,223	Burns (G4)	253
Crook (G1)	5,463	Washakie (D2)	5,858	Byron (C1)	388
Fremont* (C3)	16,095	Weston (G2)	4,958	Casper* (E3)	17,964
Goshen (G3)	12,207	Yellowstone National Park (part)* (A1)	416	Cheyenne* (G1)	22,474
Hot Springs (C2)	4,607			Chugwater (G4)	245
Johnson (E1)	4,980			Clearmont (E1)	215
Laramie (G4)	33,651			Cody* (B1)	2,536
Lincoln* (A3)	10,286			Cokeville (A3)	452
Natrona (E3)	23,858			Cowley (C1)	491
Niobrara (G2)	5,988			Dayton (D1)	240
				Deaver (C1)	111
				Diamondville (A4)	586
				Dixon (D4)	94
				Douglas (F3)	2,205
				Dubois (B2)	412
				Elk Mountain (E4)	107
				Encampment (E4)	331
				Evanston* (A4)	3,605
				Fort Laramie (G3)	311
				Gillette (F1)	2,177
				Glendo (F3)	162
				Glenrock (F3)	1,014
				Granger (A4)	163
				Green River* (B4)	2,640
				Greybull (C1)	1,828
				Guersey (G3)	603
				Hanna (E4)	1,127
				Hartville (G3)	179
				Hudson (C3)	330
				Jackson (A2)	1,046
				Kaycee (E2)	210
				Kemmerer (A4)	2,026
				Kirby (C2)	107

Part taken to form part of Sublette in 1923

Parts taken to form Teton and part of Sublette in 1910

Part annexed to Yellowstone National Park, and part of Yellowstone National Park annexed, in 1929

Organized from parts of Fremont and Lincoln Counties in 1923

\* Organized from part of Lincoln County in 1923

\* Yellowstone National Park geographically located within limits of Idaho, Montana and Wyoming. Total population 459 in 1940 reported as in Wyoming only in 1920 and prior years. Part annexed to Park County and part of Park County annexed, in 1929.

# **WYOMING—Continued**

La Grange (G4)	211	Medicine Bow		Ranchester (D1).	189	Superior (C4)	1,240
Lander * (C3)	2,594	(E4)	338	Rawlins * (D4)	5,531	Ten Sleep (D1).	345
Laramie * (F4)	10,627	Meeteetse (C1)	373	Riverside (E4)	68	Thermopolis	
Lingle (G3)	428	Moorcroft (G1)	387	Riverton * (C2)	2,540	(C2)	2,422
Lost Cabin (D2)	34	Newcastle (G2)	1,962	Rock River (F4)	34 <sup>0</sup>	Torrington (G3)	2,344
Lost Spring (G3)	38			Rock Springs *		Upton (G1)	545
Lovell (C1)	2,175			(B4)	9,827	Van Tassell (G3)	82
Lusk (G3)	1,814	Opal (A4)	78	Saratoga (E4)	810	Wamsutter (D4)	169
Lyman (A4)	378			Sheridan * (E1)	10,529	Wheatland (G3)	2,110
Manville (G3)	240	Pine Bluffs (C4)	771	Shoshoni (C2)	226	Worland * (D1)	2,710
Marbleton (A3)	43	Pinedale (B3)	647	Sublet ? (A4)	(1)		
		Powell (C1)	1,948	Sundance (G1)	685		

<sup>0</sup> No population. District 1 of Lincoln County, comprising Sublet town, abandoned in 1934, but not disincorporated; no population reported for 1940

---

# **The HISTORY of the HAWAIIAN ISLANDS**

---

## **Reading Unit**

**No. 50**

---

### **UNCLE SAM'S PEARLS OF THE PACIFIC**

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

#### ***Interesting Facts Explained***

The "paradise of the Pacific," 8-456  
Two thousand miles in a frail canoe, 8-456  
A race of sport and music lovers, 8-457  
Riding the ocean's waves on a board, 8-457  
How Hawaiian history has come down to us, 8-457  
What is a taboo? 8-457-58  
The death of Captain Cook, 8-458  
The traders make one man king

of all the islands, 8-458  
The missionaries Christianize the natives, 8-458  
Foreigners get control of most of Hawaii, 8-460  
Foreigners start a "Hawaiian" revolution, 8-460  
President Cleveland refuses to annex Hawaii, 8-460  
The Hawaiian Republic, 8-460  
Hawaii annexed, 8-460  
The tourists' paradise, 8-460  
Hawaii to-day, 8-460

#### ***Things to Think About***

Did the high tariff on sugar cause the Hawaiian revolution?

Would you have voted to give Hawaii statehood?

#### ***Picture Hunt***

A welcoming committee, 8-456  
On the surf at Waikiki, 8-457

Keeping weeds out, 8-459  
The pineapple industry, 8-459

#### ***Related Material***

Do Hawaii and the Philippines owe their present difference in status to the difference in the ways in which they came into our possession? 7-294-302

Growing pineapples, 9-185  
He discovered Hawaii, 13-488  
The sugar industry, 9-113  
Hawaii's favorite sport, 14-534

#### ***Practical Applications***

Hawaii is the first line of defense of the Pacific coast. Explain.  
What problem presents itself in

considering Hawaii as a candidate for statehood? 8-460

#### ***Habits and Attitudes***

Where visitors are welcomed with open arms, 8-456  
Crossing an ocean in a canoe to visit friends, 8-456  
Things that could not be touched,

8-457, 458  
Why it was easy to convert the natives, 8-458  
A queen loses her throne because she seeks revenge, 8-460

## THE HISTORY OF THE HAWAIIAN ISLANDS



Photo by Souleman Syndicate

These gay and pretty girls are native Hawaiians. They like to come to the steamers and drape wreaths of

flowers about the necks of passengers, as they have been doing here. Hawaiians are very fond of flowers.

### UNCLE SAM'S PEARLS *of the* PACIFIC

#### *Do You Know How We Came to Own Hawaii, and What the Beautiful Islands Are Like?*

**H**AWAII—the “paradise of the Pacific”! Who has not visited or longed to visit these little islands far out in the ocean, with their blue skies and towering mountain peaks and shining beaches? Who has not heard the haunting rhythms of Hawaiian music, and dreamed of riding the white-foamed surf along Waikiki (wā’ē-kē’kē) Beach?

For centuries people have been coming delightedly on Hawaii (hā-wī’ē) and staying there in search of homes or wealth or mere enjoyment. And yet Hawaii is two thousand miles across the water from the nearest mainland. It is a long voyage to Hawaii even now—and what must it have been in the days when the voyagers had only dugout canoes for the journey?

Yet that is just how the Hawaiians (ha-wī’yān) themselves must have come there. It may have been as long ago as 500 A.D. that the first of the skillful, daring Polynesian (pōl’ī-nē’shān) sailors beached their canoes on Hawaiian sands. And they were not afraid to venture to sea again and again in their frail craft, for by about 1200 A.D. they were actually voyaging back and forth to visit other homes of their island race. Their canoes they dug out of single giant logs with great patience and toil. Generally they lashed two of them together and built a crude deck between. They knew enough of the stars to steer by them in the lonely tropic waters.

The Polynesians are slim, athletic, brown-skinned people, good to look upon and

## THE HISTORY OF THE HAWAIIAN ISLANDS



Photo by Publishers Photo Ser.

To stand thus balanced on a little board as a great swell of surf sweeps you swiftly landward—could there be a more exciting and invigorating sport? It is by

nimble on their feet and in the water. Living in warm lands, they needed little clothing, and the Hawaiian wore only a cloth about the loins. They loved bright ornaments—necklaces and bracelets of ivory and shells, garlands of flowers. Their chiefs sometimes wore also cloaks and ornaments of feathers, whalebone, and ivory.

### The Happy Race of Hawaiians

They were a joyous race, great lovers of sports and of music. They liked foot racing and wrestling, but were, and are, most famous for their feats in the water. Scarcely the fishes themselves are better swimmers, and Hawaiian surf-board riding is still the wonder of the world. When we think of their music now we are likely to think of the ukulele (ū'kōō-lā'lē), but that little instrument came to them later from Portugal; their own instruments were drums and a sort of nose flute made of bamboo. The hula (hōō-lā) dance was originally part of a religious rite.

The Hawaiians lived in houses made of grass thatched on a wooden frame. They were farmers and fishermen. Their principal food was "poi" made from taro (tā'rō) roots,

no means easy to learn, for it takes strength and marvelous balance. Yet many a swimmer acquires the skill of this young athlete at Waikiki.

but they liked coconuts, yams, breadfruit, and bananas, too, and thought there was no greater delicacy than a piece of pig or dog. When they fought their neighbors, as happened often enough, they used javelins, spears, daggers, clubs, and slings made of human hair. They had no written language, but they memorized stories and legends which their parents told, and in turn told them to their children. In this way their history has come down to us.

### Early Days in Hawaii

When we meet them first the Hawaiians were ruled by kings and chiefs whom they believed to be descended from the gods. These kings owned all the land, and their subjects paid them rent in labor, and in food and other goods. The people were very religious, and listened with awe to the priests and sorcerers, who knew so much about the likes and dislikes of the gods whose hideous images in wood or stone frowned from the great stone temples. Nothing was more sacred and powerful among the people than the mysterious law of taboo (tā-bōō)—a word which we ourselves have borrowed from the Hawaiians and other Polynesians. This

## THE HISTORY OF THE HAWAIIAN ISLANDS

law held that there were certain objects which were "taboo"—that is, sacred, and death to touch.

For a long time the Hawaiians had their lovely semitropical islands to themselves. Then in 1527 some white sailors were shipwrecked on the coast. But these men simply stayed on, married native women, and became Hawaiians themselves. It was not until 1778 that Hawaii was discovered by the rest of the world.

In that year came the famous explorer, Captain James Cook, who visited the islands and then returned to them a second time. For a while the white men got on fairly well with the natives, but then one day Cook tried to take the king captive as hostage for the return of a stolen boat. As he was leading the old man off—in a kindly enough way, though quite determinedly—the people suddenly fell upon him and did away with him. But his men escaped and brought back news of Hawaii to the people of Europe and America.

and now there was to be acted over again the old, old story of the coming into power of white men over men of darker complexions. In the case of Hawaii it all happened so gradually and so naturally that not many people realized just what was going on until it was all over.

First came the traders, whaling

ships and China-bound vessels that stopped to take on sandalwood. With the help of the firearms the white strangers brought, a native king, Kamehameha I (kä-mā'hä-mā'hä), succeeded in conquering the other island kings and making himself master of all Hawaii. He organized a central government, made laws, and took charge of the trade in sandalwood. From George Vancouver, another early explorer, he and his people received cattle and a knowledge of shipbuilding.

Next came the missionaries, the first of whom arrived in 1820. They found that the old religion, with its system of taboo, had fallen on evil days, and that the people were very easy to convert to Christianity. The genial and affectionate natives received the strangers kindly and proved themselves honest and trustworthy and eager to learn. The missionaries put the Hawaiian language into writing, opened schools, and imported printing presses.

To clinch the matter came the settlers. More and more of them came—Chinese and Japanese from Asia, Englishmen and Frenchmen and Germans from Europe, "Yankees" from America—and especially Americans. It was Englishmen

This whole family of Hawaiians live in the little grass hut by which they are sitting. The hut, which is covered with a thickly woven thatch of grasses, keeps out the rain very well, even if it has no windows and not much room. But more and more Hawaiians are now building frame houses.



Photo by British Museum

This astonishing face is an Hawaiian ceremonial mask. It is covered with feathers, and represents the god of war.



Photo by Publishers Photo Service

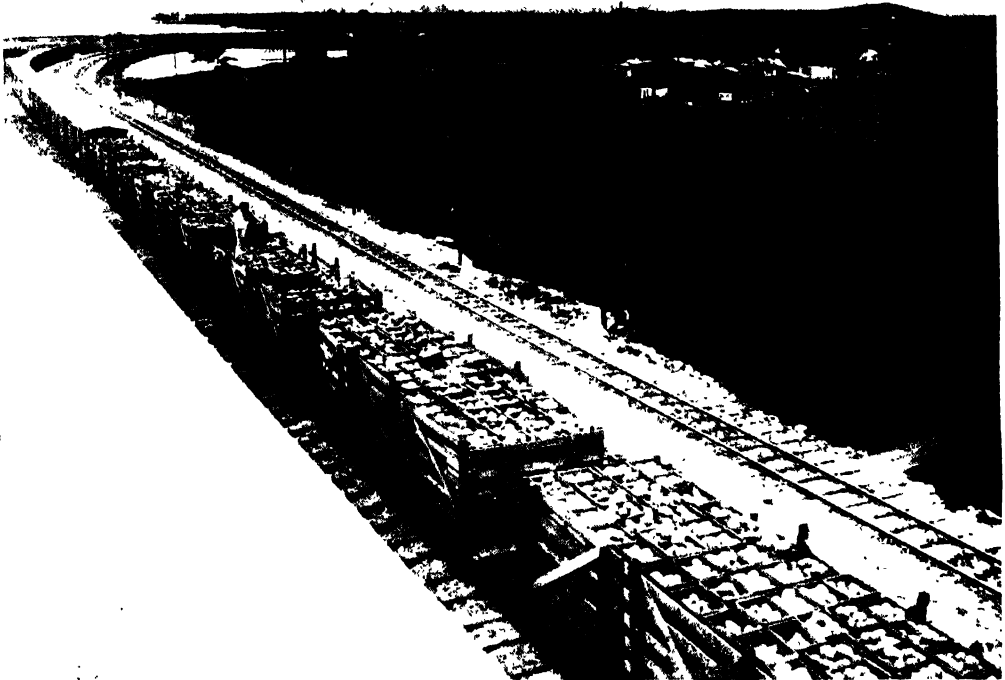


## THE HISTORY OF THE HAWAIIAN ISLANDS



Scientific methods have made pineapple growing the second largest industry in Hawaii, with only sugar

ahead of it. These workers are laying paper mulch between the rows to keep weeds out and moisture in.



Photos by The Hawaiian Pineapple Co.

Nowhere else is the pineapple cultivated commercially on so large a scale as in Hawaii. Here is a whole

trainload of pineapples, headed, doubtless, for Honolulu and the largest pineapple cannery in the world.

---

## THE HISTORY OF THE HAWAIIAN ISLANDS

who discovered Hawaii, but for once they let others get ahead of them in colonizing what they had found. The largest number of the traders were Americans, and nearly all the missionaries. Now Americans began to persuade the native kings to give them land in exchange for money or trade privileges, and huge American-owned sugar plantations appeared all over Hawaii. By 1890 more than half the land belonged to foreigners, and it was said that Americans owned two-thirds of the sugar industry. Besides the Chinese and Japanese, there were perhaps five thousand white men in Hawaii, and they had much more power in running its affairs than did the native king.

### Why the United States Annexed Hawaii

There had been a treaty with the United States in 1875, which had been a great help to the sugar growers, but now in 1890 a high tariff was passed at Washington which nearly ruined them. The Americans in the islands, and even many of the other foreigners, began to cry out to the United States to do something about it.

Meanwhile the natives were having a good deal of excitement in their own politics. They had a constitution, forced on the king in 1887, which gave liberal privileges to the foreigners. But the new queen, Liliuokalani (lē'lē-ōō-ō-kä-lä'nē), who came to the throne in 1891, hated foreigners, whether sugar planters or missionaries. So she would have none of this constitution. In 1893 there was a revolution, and she was pushed off her throne. Afterwards it became quite clear that the foreigners themselves had a good deal more to do with this business than the natives did.

At all events, the rebels hoisted the American flag and sent a commission to Washington in the hope of being annexed to the United States. The commission consisted of four Americans and one Englishman—no Hawaiians. A treaty of annexation was made, but it was withdrawn by President Harrison's successor.

President Cleveland did not know what to do. He wanted to do right by the native queen, but his sympathies were naturally with the Americans. Besides, Liliuokalani

frankly said that she wanted not only to get back her throne, but to punish the rebels too—and Cleveland did not like the idea of turning them over to her. Finally (1894) she said she would not punish them; but by that time the rebel government had declared Hawaii independent—and the American government decided to recognize the new republic. Then in 1898 the United States at last annexed the islands, after their legislature had voted to turn over their government to her. Hawaii became a territory in 1900.

The first governor of Hawaii was Sanford B. Dole, son of a missionary, who had been elected president of the republic in 1893. The islands are organized as a regular territory, but in 1947 the Congress in Washington began the passage of an act to make Hawaii a full-fledged state. It was objected that she had many Japanese, but since they were loyal to the United States in World War II the objection was overruled.

So Hawaii has become a modern land with many thousands of inhabitants, a large number of whom are genial, happy-go-lucky natives or people from the Orient. White men's diseases have killed off a good many of the natives, and many of them have mixed with other races and thus have lost themselves in the general population. They and the orientals do most of the labor on the great plantations, where grow the sugar and pineapple for which Hawaii is so famous.

Hawaii is famous, too, as we began by saying, because it is a "tourists' paradise"—with its volcanoes and luxuriant flowers and unequalled bathing beaches. And Honolulu (hōn'ō-lōō'lōō), the capital, has become a beautiful and thriving city. It now has a territorial university, established in 1907.

Life was going smoothly there until, on the morning of December 7, 1942, the people of Honolulu were awakened by the thunder of bombs. Japanese airplanes had treacherously attacked our naval base at Pearl Harbor, a few miles away. We have told the story on other pages. Though Pearl Harbor is the most strongly fortified naval base in the world, many of our ships were sunk or damaged, and many people in Honolulu were killed. Our respect for Japanese honor had suffered a death blow.

(History of World War II 6-493)

## THE HAWAIIAN ISLANDS

### AREA

6,45 square miles, distributed over the eight inhabited islands—Hawaii, 4,030 sq. m.; Maui, 728 sq. m.; Oahu, 604 sq. m.; Kauai, 555 sq. m.; Molokai, 260 sq. m.; Lanai, 141 sq. m.; Niihau, 72 sq. m.; Kahoolawe, 45 sq. m.

### LOCATION

Hawaii, a group of about twenty islands in the North Pacific Ocean, lies between  $18^{\circ} 55'$  and  $28^{\circ} 25'$  N. Lat. and between  $154^{\circ} 48'$  and  $178^{\circ} 25'$  W. Long. It is more than 2,000 miles from the nearest mainland; Honolulu, the capital, is about 2,100 miles from San Francisco and 3,400 from Yokohama. The chain extends from northwest to southeast and is about 1,578 miles long. The eight inhabited islands extend over 390 miles.

### PHYSICAL FEATURES

All the Hawaiian Islands—sometimes called the Sandwich Islands—were formed by the action of volcanoes, and have been built up—by eruption after eruption—from a base 15,000 to 18,000 ft. below sea level. Their highest point above the sea is 13,825 ft. All together there are some forty volcanic peaks on the islands, a number of them still active. Mauna Loa, on the island of Hawaii, is the largest volcano in the world and, in bulk, the largest mountain in the world. Haleakala, on the island of Maui, is the largest extinct crater in the world; Kilauea, on Hawaii, is the largest active crater in the world. The soil on all the islands is made by the weathering of the lava that the volcanoes have poured forth, and is rich in nitrogen. No coal or other valuable minerals have ever been found. Along the shores of many of the islands are lines of coral reef. Honolulu and Pearl Harbor are the only harbors in the whole chain.

Because the Hawaiian Islands are a long way from any other land, and because they have on them a great variety of conditions, they have more kinds of native plants than any other region of equal size in the world. The forests are such as one finds in the Tropics, and only a few trees shed their leaves at regular seasons. The two chief crops are sugar cane and pineapple, but coffee and bananas are also raised in considerable quantities. The bulk of the pineapple crop is canned. Most of the trade of Hawaii is with the United States.

### CLIMATE

Hawaii is cooler than other places in the same latitude, and is very healthful. In Honolulu, at sea level, the mean annual temperature is  $74.6^{\circ}$  F. The maximum there averages just under  $80^{\circ}$ , but there is a record

high of  $88^{\circ}$ . The minimum averages just under  $70^{\circ}$ , but there has been a record low of  $56^{\circ}$ . The temperature falls as one goes higher up. The sky is usually clear and there are no severe storms. The rainfall varies greatly; the sides of the islands that are toward the wind get more rain than the sheltered sides. One spot on Maui has a record of 2.46 inches of rain for an entire year, and another spot on the same island has a record of 562 inches in a year. The highest point on the island of Kauai has one of the highest records of rainfall in the world—perhaps the highest. Honolulu has an annual rainfall of 28.6 inches. Though there is no wet or dry season, more rain falls in winter than in summer. During January, February, and a part of March the winds blow from the south or southwest and the weather is hot and damp. From March to December is the season of the northeast trade winds.

### THE PEOPLE

The natives of Hawaii are of Polynesian race, a handsome, brown-skinned, athletic people; but they are tending to disappear through intermarriage with other races that have come in. To-day besides the native Hawaiians there are Japanese, Chinese, Koreans, Portuguese, Spanish, Filipinos, and Americans.

### GOVERNMENT

The Hawaiian Islands are a Territory of the United States, governed under the Organic Act of 1900. The chief executive officer is the governor, appointed by the President of the United States with the consent of the Senate. He serves a four-year term. The territorial secretary is appointed in the same way, but the heads of the territorial departments of government are appointed by the governor, with the territorial senate consenting. The President also appoints the chief justice and two associate justices of the supreme court, eight judges to provide over the five circuit courts, a United States attorney, a marshal, and various other officials. The citizens elect every two years a delegate to the Congress of the United States; he may introduce bills and debate them, but may not vote. They also elect the members of the territorial legislature—fifteen Senators who serve for four years and thirty Representatives who serve for two years.

### NATIONAL PARKS

The Hawaii National Park was set aside by the Congress of the United States in 1916. It contains the volcanoes of Mauna Loa and Kilauea on Hawaii and Haleakala, now extinct, on Maui. In the Kilauea section are a great many interesting volcanic formations.

# UNCLE SAM'S PIGMY ISLANDS

## Reading Unit No. 51

### UNCLE SAM'S PIGMY ISLANDS

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

#### ***Interesting Facts Explained***

The empire of the United States, 8-470  
Islands we owned without knowing it, 8-470-71  
A land inhabited only by sea swallows, 8-471  
Discovered by accident, 8-471  
Spoils of the Spanish War, 8-471  
What is peonage? 8-472  
Where a naval captain is the governor, 8-472  
A desert island, 8-473

Teaching the natives to earn a living, 8-472-73  
The finest harbor in the Pacific, 8-473  
Uncle Sam teaches his wards not to fight, 8-473  
What is the "fono"? 8-473  
An island with eighty-one inhabitants, 8-474  
Why did the United States buy the Virgin Islands? 8-474  
The Navy fails, 8-474

#### ***Picture Hunt***

Where building a house costs nothing, 8-470

Three hills in one, 8-473  
Natives of Samoa, 8-472, 474

#### ***Related Material***

A man who wrote of the South Seas, 13-273  
Why we need the Pacific islands, 10-101  
How islands grow, 3-97  
The Navy Department, 7-481

Rafts of coconuts, 9-189  
The first white man to stop at Guam, 13-462  
The trouble with Germany over Samoa, 7-289  
What is a tidal wave? 1-80

#### ***Practical Applications***

Why does the Navy govern most of our dependencies? 8-470  
Does it pay the United States to

make up Guam's deficit? 8-472

#### ***Habits and Attitudes***

Uncle Sam brings freedom to Guam, 8-472  
The care-free Samoans, 8-473

How keeping children out of school retards progress, 8-474  
Learning habits of peace, 8-473

#### ***Leisure-time Activities***

PROJECT NO. 1: Read R. L. Stevenson's "Vailima Letters."  
PROJECT NO. 2: Show why

Magellan had to stop at Guam, 7-324.

## UNCLE SAM'S PIGMY ISLANDS



Photo by Brown Bros

It is never cold in Samoa, and even the native chiefs build their homes with light materials and open sides, like the house shown under construction above. First

the builders set up poles and a network frame for the roof; then they cover the framework with a thick layer of thatch, which serves in place of shingles.

## UNCLE SAM'S PIGMY ISLANDS

*Scattered Here and There over the Pacific and Parts of the Caribbean Are Little Dots of Land That in One Way or Another Have Come to Fly the United States Flag*

**T**HE empire of the United States! How strange those words sound! Of course the United States has never really engaged in the business of empire building. Yet for all that, Uncle Sam owns a goodly number of spots on the map in various parts of the world—lands which are not states of the Union, like New York or California, and yet fly the Stars and Stripes. These include, of course, the big spots—Alaska, twice the size of Texas, and Porto Rico—which have stories of their own in our books. But also the United States owns many little islands scattered about the Pacific and the Caribbean; and Uncle Sam has to take good care of them, because they are not like the large, self-supporting areas, which can take fairly good care of themselves.

These little islands have come to Uncle Sam by purchase and by treaty. At first he scarcely wanted the bother and expense of

looking after them, but there always were people who kept telling him that he ought to take them. He could use one for a cable station; another would be good for a naval base; and so on. Moreover, the Navy said it would do all the work of governing them for him. A captain could look after this island, an admiral after that, and these officers would make everything so spick-and-span that Uncle Sam would be proud of his islands, instead of thinking they were a care.

Furthermore, the Navy told Uncle Sam that he might as well get a few more islands, since he already had one in the Pacific, and had had it since 1867.

"Have I, indeed?" said Uncle Sam, surprised. "And where is it?"

"Eighteen hundred miles north by west of Honolulu, sir," says the Navy.

"And what might be the name of it?" asked Uncle Sam.

## UNCLE SAM'S PIGMY ISLANDS

"The Midway Islands, sir," the Navy answered.

"And who lives there?" said Uncle Sam.

"Nobody, sir," replied the Navy.

"Well, no wonder I didn't know I had it," retorted Uncle Sam.

Indeed, the Midway Islands were the first of Uncle Sam's dependencies—and, though small, have served him well and have seen stirring times. They were discovered in 1859 by Captain Brooks of the "Gambria," and they were annexed and named by the commander of the U. S. S. "Lackawanna" in 1867. They are midway between Asia and America; and are just a coral atoll (â-tôl') eighteen miles around, with a lagoon and two islets inside the coral reef. One of these, Eastern Island, is  $1\frac{1}{4}$  miles long,  $\frac{1}{2}$

mile wide, and 12 feet high from the level of the water. The other, Sand Island, is  $1\frac{3}{4}$  miles by  $\frac{3}{4}$  mile, and is 43 feet high. Coarse grass and bushes grow in the sand which covers the islands and the reef. Until 1903 the Midways were deserted except by terns and sea swallows. Then they began to grow in importance. Finally in 1939 we established an air and submarine base there.

The Japanese tried to take Midway in June, 1942, but were badly defeated by our Navy. The Midways were practically an accident. The first island Uncle Sam got knowingly was Wake Island, a spot of land about one square mile in area, lying on the road from Honolulu to Hongkong. Wake

Island is really just a large rock. On July 4, 1898, General F. V. Greene hoisted the United States flag there because he thought that it would be a good place for a cable station. A commercial air base was built there in 1935, and later a naval, air, and submarine base. Our marines made a heroic stand there for thirteen days when the Japanese attacked.

Wake is just outside a group of islands called the Marianas (mä'rê-ä'-näs), and if we inquire our

way to the largest of that archipelago, we shall be directed to Guam (gwäm)—a real island at last, with plenty of people on it. Guam belongs to Uncle Sam, who sent the U. S. S. "Charleston" to take it in the Spanish-American War of 1898. It was delivered over by treaty in the same year.

Guam has the distinction of having been discovered by the first man to sail around



Photo by American Museum of Natural History

The Samoans are a handsome race, though the women lose their youthful beauty early. This group is in gala attire, such as the people wear for the dance. For everybody loves to sing and dance in Samoa, and on holidays they choose competing "siva," or dancing, teams, and singing teams too, which delight not only the members of the tribe and their friends but also any white visitors who may be lucky enough to see and hear them.

## UNCLE SAM'S PIGMY ISLANDS

the globe, for Magellan visited it in 1521. But for 147 years after that no one bothered about it. Then the Spaniards appeared, converted some of the natives, killed off the rest, and kept the island as a Spanish province for 230 years.

When, after the Spanish-American War, Uncle Sam appropriated Guam, things there began to pick up. Uncle Sam

started building a naval station, laying submarine cables, setting up schools, and seeing that everybody had enough to eat. In 1900 he abolished *peonage* (*pē'ōn-āj*), which is a kind of slavery a good deal like serfdom. He teaches the grown people how to farm, and is so eager to have the children well educated that nearly half the expense of the island goes for schools.

No wonder the population, which had been small and getting smaller, began to increase as soon as Uncle Sam arrived. In 1910 there were 11,806 natives, and in 1930 there were 17,391. These people are called Chamorros (*chä-mōr'rō*). When they do not know English they speak a Malay dialect, but they are a mixed race and not pure Malay in blood. They live in many little villages and in one larger town, Agaña (*i-gän'yä*), a clean and smiling collection of white stone houses with wooden upper floors. This town holds some 10,000 people. Down the coast a short distance there is a fine harbor called Apra (*i-prä*).

Of course there are several hundred people

in Guam who are not natives, most of them connected with the schools or the naval station. For the Navy has entire charge of Guam. The governor is a captain, appointed by the secretary of the navy. The island is divided into six districts, each with a commissioner at its head, and there are police courts and civil courts and a court of appeals, but the governor has full power to make laws for the island, and nobody can change or question them.

True, there is a native congress, but it can do nothing except make suggestions.

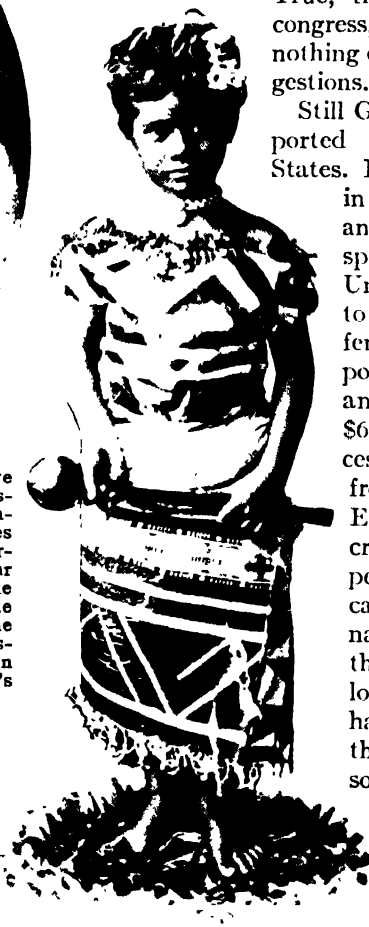
Still Guam is well supported by the United States. If the taxes bring in only \$137,805 and the governor spends \$152,786, Uncle Sam is ready to make up the difference. If the exports are \$247,666 and the imports \$673,758, the excess is forthcoming from Washington. Even if all the crops fail, as happened in the hurricane of 1912, the natives know that they will be well looked after. Perhaps that is why they are increasing so fast in numbers.

Of course, Uncle Sam wants the Chamorros to make their own living as well as they can. They pick coconuts for copra and oil, and the United States Department of Agriculture has built an experiment station on Guam to show them how to grow vegetables, rice, mangoes, breadfruit, tobacco, pineapples, cacao, peppers, and other things. Many of the natives now grow these things. They live in their



Photos by Field Museum and Gramstorff Bros.

The Samoan man above is in the ordinary costume of the male Samoan; but when he goes to church or to visit foreigners, he will wear clothes more like the white man's. The little Samoan princess at the right is wearing an especially elegant version of the Samoan woman's costume—quite as princess should!



## UNCLE SAM'S PIGMY ISLANDS

villages and go out to their "ranches" to work every day.

As we might guess from this list of tropical farm plants, Guam is a land where it is always summer, with the average temperature at 81 degrees. Like other tropical lands, it now and then sees tremendous rain and thunder storms, and sometimes hurricanes and earthquakes. In December, 1941, Guam was taken by the Japanese, for Congress had been unwilling to fortify the island. It was the first of our possessions to fall. Of course we regained it.

On the way from Guam to Samoa (sä-mō'ä) we shall pass Baker Island, just south of the Equator. On it we have an aerological station. Uncle Sam has several such dots of land—Samarang, 5° North and 162.30° West; Johnston, 16.55° North and 169.30° West; Walker, 4° North and 149.25° West; and five more between the Midways and Hawaii. They are so tiny that it will hardly

be worth while for us to stop to visit them.

But in the Samoan group we shall find one island, Tutuila (tōō'tōō-ē'lä), 200 square miles in size, another 26 square miles in size, and four others of smaller proportions, all belonging to Uncle Sam, besides several more which look to New Zealand for their government.

These Samoan Islands did not become American as a result of war. Many years back American captains had persuaded the

native chiefs to let them use the fine harbor of Pagopago as a coaling station, and then when Germany and England were dividing the islands up, Uncle Sam took these as his share, in February, 1900. In Pagopago (päng'ō-päng'ō) he got the best harbor in the South Seas, and one of the most beautiful in the world.

The Samoans are very different from the Chamorros of Guam. They are pure Polynesian (pöl'ī-nē'shän), brown-skinned, handsome, stalwart, tall, and they have the qualities of generosity, honor, and bravery. Care-free and light-hearted, they are among the happiest of Uncle Sam's children. And they are growing in numbers, in 1900 there were 5,679, and in 1930 there were 10,055, or nearly twice as many. Before the United States began governing them they used to fight a great deal among themselves; perhaps that is why they did not increase in earlier days.

While the Navy helps govern Samoa, Congress takes a hand too, studying native laws and keeping them where possible. There is a "fono," or general assembly, and the native chiefs have much power over their tribes. To-day all the Samoan children can learn to read and write; there are a large number of thriving public schools. The natives are now Christians, though they have not forgotten some of their old pagan belief and customs. They are forbidden by law to sell their land to



Photo by Publisher

It would not be easy to find a more charmingly picturesque town than Charlotte Amalie, the seat of government for the Virgin Islands. It has a beautiful and famous harbor, and one long level street along the shore. From this many steep streets, often mere flights of steps, as in this picture, climb to the white houses on three green hills. These three hills, all part of the same ridge, have the delightfully salty nicknames of "Foretop," "Maintop," and "Mizzentop."



## UNCLE SAM'S PIGMY ISLANDS

any foreigner, and when they have anything such as copra to dispose of, Uncle Sam handles it for them and sees that they get a good price.

These beautiful islands are clothed in forests. The shores are lined with breadfruit and banana trees, and the valleys are gay with tropical flowers. Since Samoa is south of the Equator, the warmest month is December. The climate is hot and steamy from November to March, and in July the thermometer falls only to 75 degrees. Like Guam, Samoa sometimes has to wrestle with hurricanes and tidal waves.

Uncle Sam has done a good job in Samoa, for things are much better now than when he started. Not so very long ago he added another Samoan island to those he already possessed. Swains Island, with its handful of people, was proclaimed United States territory on May 13, 1925.

### Why Uncle Sam Owns the Virgin Islands

These Samoan islands complete the list of the Pacific possessions of Uncle Sam; and now we must swing over to the arm of the Atlantic called the Caribbean Sea, where we shall find the American flag flying over several of the islands of the West Indies.

In the Virgin Island group, about which we have written in the story of the West Indies, there are about fifty islands belonging to the United States. A few of these, called the Crab Islands, were taken from Spain in 1898, along with Porto Rico. The others Uncle Sam bought from Denmark on Janu-

ary 25, 1917, for \$25,000,000, or about \$300 an acre.

Did Uncle Sam drive a poor bargain? At first people thought he did, for the inhabitants, of whom only eight percent are white, were very poor and the islands could not pay their expenses. But he built air bases there and a big naval station on St. Thomas, in the fine harbor of Charlotte Amalie (â-ma'lyě), the largest town and the capital of the islands. It is often called "St. Thomas." During World War II the islands proved their worth many times over as an advance base for the defense of the United States and the Panama Canal.

And by now St. Thomas and St. John have come to pay their own way. St. Thomas distills rum and has a busy trade and a good deal of shipping. During the war its role in defense brought in money. St. John makes bay rum out of the leaves of the bay trees it grows. St. Croix is mostly given over to farming, with sugar cane and live stock its principal products. Rum and bay rum are exported. The fine climate brings many tourists to St. Thomas.

The Navy started to govern the Virgin Islands with all the vigor it displayed in the Pacific, but somehow things did not go so well. Finally in February, 1931, the President transferred the government to the Department of the Interior, and appointed a civil governor, who has civilian helpers. The inhabitants are citizens of the United States, and all who can read and write English may vote. English is the language spoken.

The Samoan people, of whom this attractive woman is one, are the very finest type of Polynesian. There is even a tradition that Samoa was the center from which the Polynesian race spread over the Pacific.



The language the Samoans speak is so soft and liquid that it is sometimes called "the Italian of the Pacific." It is very hard to learn well, for it is full of queer twists, or idioms, and peculiar inflections.

Photo by Field Museum  
(History of World War II, 6 493)

---

# ***The HISTORY of PORTO RICO***

---

## **Reading Unit No. 52**

### **SUNNY PORTO RICO**

*Note: For basic information not found on this page, consult the general Index, Vol. 15.*

*For statistical and current facts, consult the Richards Year Book Index.*

#### ***Interesting Facts Explained***

The official name, 8-469  
The climate, cool and comfortable, 8-469  
A famous discoverer, 8-469  
The Spanish thirst for gold, 8-469  
Centuries of cruelty and misrule, 8-469  
Porto Rico becomes a possession of the United States, 8-469  
A record of steady improvement, 8-469

Tourists flock to her shores, 8-469  
Her chief exports and industries, 8-470  
The beautiful Porto Rican embroidery, 8-470  
The way to carry a bundle, 8-470  
The favorite drink, 8-470  
Spanish traditions, 8-470  
Porto Rico's poverty, 8-470

#### ***Things to Think About***

Why was the Spanish thirst for gold a bad thing for Porto Rico?

Why were the Porto Ricans glad to belong to the United States?  
Why is Porto Rico worth a visit?

#### ***Picture Hunt***

Could you do this? 7-53  
An island school house, 7-57  
Will you have a banana? 7-59

A native flower girl, 7-65  
Spanish architecture, 7-384

#### ***Related Material***

The fountain of youth, 7-119  
How Uncle Sam acquired Porto Rico, 7-58-59  
Geographical material, 7-60  
More valuable than Inca's gold, 9-185-86

Brown seeds for breakfast 9-129-32  
The greatest of Elizabeth's sea dogs, 12-403-5  
He doubled the size of the world, 13-447-55

#### ***Practical Applications***

Why are the trade winds an asset to Porto Rico? 8-469  
In what ways has the United

States improved conditions on the island? 8-469-70

#### ***Leisure-time Activities***

PROJECT NO. 1: Collect travel material on Porto Rico.  
PROJECT NO. 2: Read the stories of the Spanish Conquistadors: Cortes, 5-13; De Soto, 13-

464; Diaz, 13-456; Vasco da Gama, 13-460; Coronado, 8-21, 224, 258; Marcos de Niza, 8-21, 257; Panfilo de Narvaez, 7-119.

## SUNNY PORTO RICO

### *The Story of a Little Palm-strewn Island That Has Seen Stormy Times and Still Has Grave Problems That She Is Trying Hard to Solve*

**S**OME fourteen hundred miles southwest of New York lies a sunny little island. It is a beautiful spot. Nature seems to have been in a happy mood when she gave it the fruits and flowers, the rugged mountains and fertile valleys that grace its surface. Cradled by the ocean and cooled by the northeast trade winds it was meant for a Garden of Eden, where life should be gentle and sweet and man somewhere near his best. And yet until lately Porto Rico (pōr'tō rē'kō) or Puerto Rico (pwēr'tō rē'kō), to give the island its official name—has had a history as sad as it is long. Cruelty and stupidity and greed had their way for four long centuries, and during their rule man was seen at something like his worst instead of at his best. To-day life is growing pleasanter on this little tropical gem, but centuries of misrule cannot be undone in a few short years.

#### The First White Visitor

It was on November 19, 1493, that white men first set foot on the soil of Porto Rico, and the first visitor to arrive was no less a personage than Christopher Columbus, then on his second voyage to the New World. He named the island for St. John the Baptist and sailed away, and it was not till 1508 that he sent the explorer Ponce de León (pōn'thā dā lā-ōn') to plant a settlement. Like all Spaniards the enterprising Ponce was on the lookout for gold. He sailed along the northern shore of the island and discovered the excellent harbor at San Juan. He named it "Rich Port"—Puerto Rico—and it is by that name that the whole island has come to be called. Strangely enough San Juan, the present capital, has taken its name from what was once the name of the island. It was here that Ponce planted his first colony, and here that he wielded the almost absolute power that came into his hands when King Ferdinand of Spain appointed him governor of the island in 1510.

It was the peace-loving Indians who were the first to regret his coming. He and the men who followed him were pitiless in dealing with those simple, easy-going savages. The Spanish thirst for gold led the white men to enslave the whole population and set them to work in the mines. Hardship and cruel treatment, coupled with the white man's diseases, soon wrought sad havoc among the Indians, and by the year 1600 they had all been killed off or had moved to neighboring islands. Then the Spaniards began to import Negroes from Africa, and set them to work in the mines and in the fields. Meanwhile the colony was sadly misruled by a series of military governors. It was not until late in the nineteenth century that it was given a voice in the management of its affairs, though it had been valiant in repulsing attacks of the Indians from neighboring islands, of the French and Dutch, and even of the redoubtable Sir Francis Drake and other English sea dogs. In fact the land was robbed so often that one of these bold freebooters found nothing to take away save the church's organ and bells and seventy of the island's cannon. Because of deep dissatisfaction with the rule of the mother country the people of Porto Rico, though Spanish in blood, in language, and in culture, welcomed the American soldiers during the Spanish-American War (1898), and rejoiced to find their island a possession of the United States when the treaty of peace was signed.

On the whole, since the United States bought her Porto Rico has progressed in prosperity, in education, and in general well-being. Her delightful climate and the fertility of her fields and orchards have attracted a good many citizens from the mainland, and American ways are coming to be more and more a habit of the people. English is now taught in the schools and is a good deal used in business. Tourists flock to Porto Rico in winter and in summer, and wealthy

## THE HISTORY OF PORTO RICO

men find promising openings for investment in sugar plantations, in groves of orange and grapefruit trees, or in farms for raising pineapples. Those are the fruits that are most shipped abroad. Bananas are raised in large quantities, but they are mostly eaten at home, together with the corn, beans, and rice that make up the bulk of the native diet. The people of Porto Rico raise excellent coffee and tobacco, and manufacture cigars and cigarettes. Coffee is grown on the uplands—for the mountain sides are often cultivated clear to the summits—and tobacco is raised in the valleys. The sugar plantations are found in the low coastal plains.

### New Industries in an Old Land

It is only lately that the island has turned her hand to cultivating the valuable sea-island cotton that finds such a ready market, and is planting more and more land to garden vegetables that are shipped north during the winter months for sale in the large cities of the United States. As far back as Columbus' time the Porto Rican natives were skilled in the making of drawn work and beautiful embroideries. The industry still flourishes, though the materials are cut and stamped in New York and then are sent to Porto Rico to be worked. A great effort is being made to start factory industries. In commerce Porto Rico finds the United States by all odds her best customer, and buys the bulk of her imported goods from the States.

To-day if you go to Porto Rico you will see a kindly, hard-working people busy at the agricultural pursuits that make up the chief industry of their island. Most of them are descended from the Indians, Negroes, and Spaniards who came here long ago. They work long hours in the fields of the men who own the land, and on holidays—or "fiestas" (fyēs'tä)—make merry with music and dancing and processions. They love music, and will have an orchestra to accompany them even to the grave. It is hard to think of Porto Rico without hearing in your ears the rhythmic accompaniment to the "bamba," a native dance brought to the island from Africa by Negro slaves. Porto Ricans are graceful and lithe, and can carry a burden

on their heads as well as you or I can carry it in our arms. The little schoolboy runs nimbly home from school with his books balanced skillfully on his head. The housewife carries home her provisions in a basket upon her head. Ladies out for a stroll through the shopping district comfortably rest their umbrellas across their heads. Even the iceman runs through the street with a large cake of ice on his head. And when he grows too tired he will refresh himself with his favorite drink of coconut milk, taken from a coconut that has been kept on ice and then split open with a twist of the long native knife known as a machete (mä-chä'tä). The Porto Rican used to be thought unambitious, but since United States rule has provided him with free schools and a university, he is turning to education and is eager to learn.

The lot of the people who tilled the soil had long been pitiable, for the land was owned by a few large holders who had the peasant class completely in their power. Finally in 1941 the Porto Rican legislature passed the Land Authority Act making it illegal for one man to own more than 500 acres. It provided that the government should purchase the land it took over and sell it in small parcels, with arrangement for long-term payment. But the island kept on growing more and more crowded with people, for the United States had taught Porto Ricans how to control disease. The problem of poverty gets constantly worse and is still unsolved.

### Orchid, Bamboo, and Palm

And this is a great pity, for the island should be a kind of Eden. Some day you may go there to see its stately palms, its groves of feathery bamboo, and its thickets of beautiful orchids. The better houses will mostly be in the Spanish style, with walls several feet thick and ornate balconies, but the natives will be living in primitive huts set up on stilts and thatched with palm leaves. Many of the roads are very good. And if you climb through fields and groves and coffee plantations till from a high mountain top you see the blue Caribbean, with the Virgin Islands in the distance, you will know that the trip has been worth while.



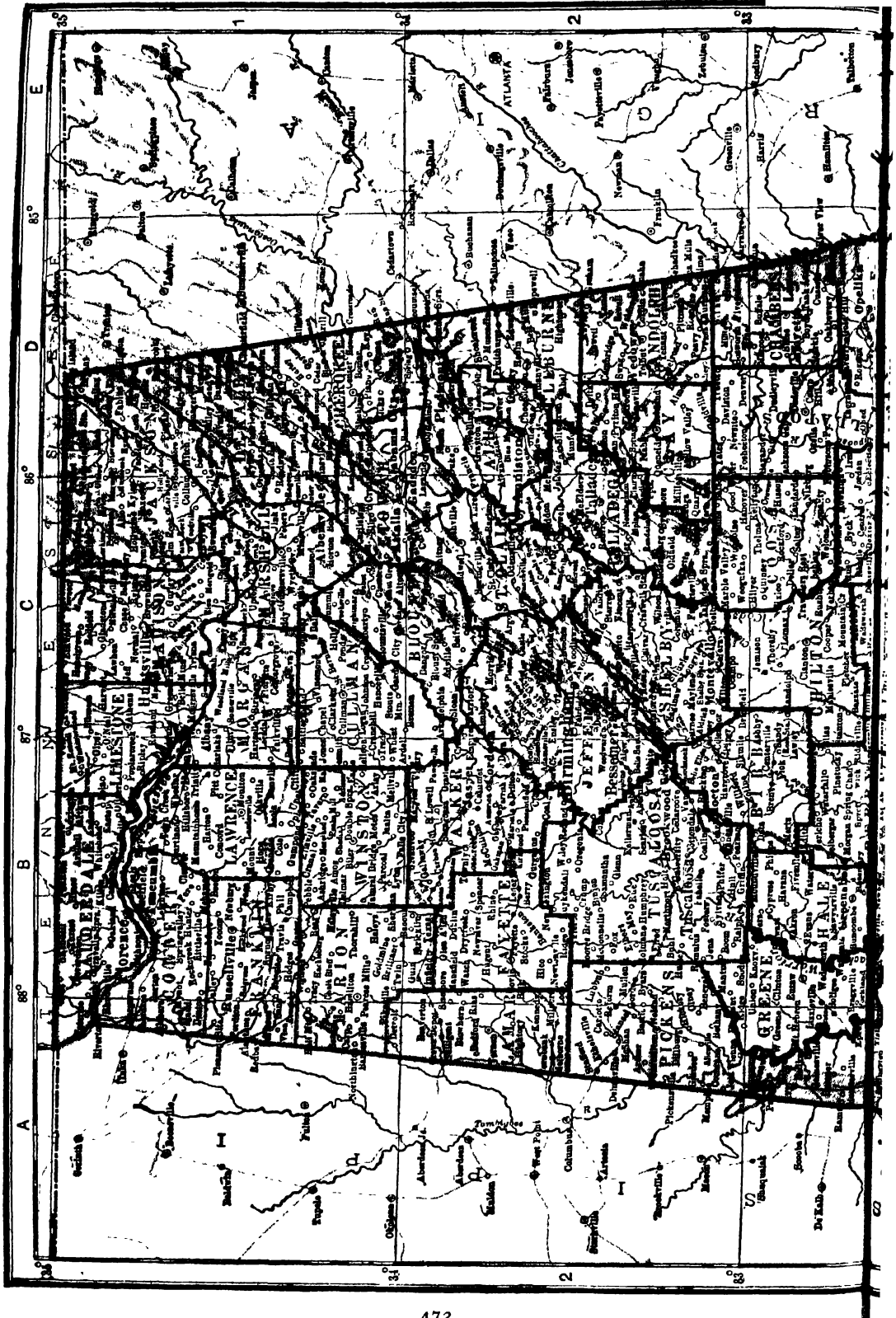


# REGIONAL ATLAS

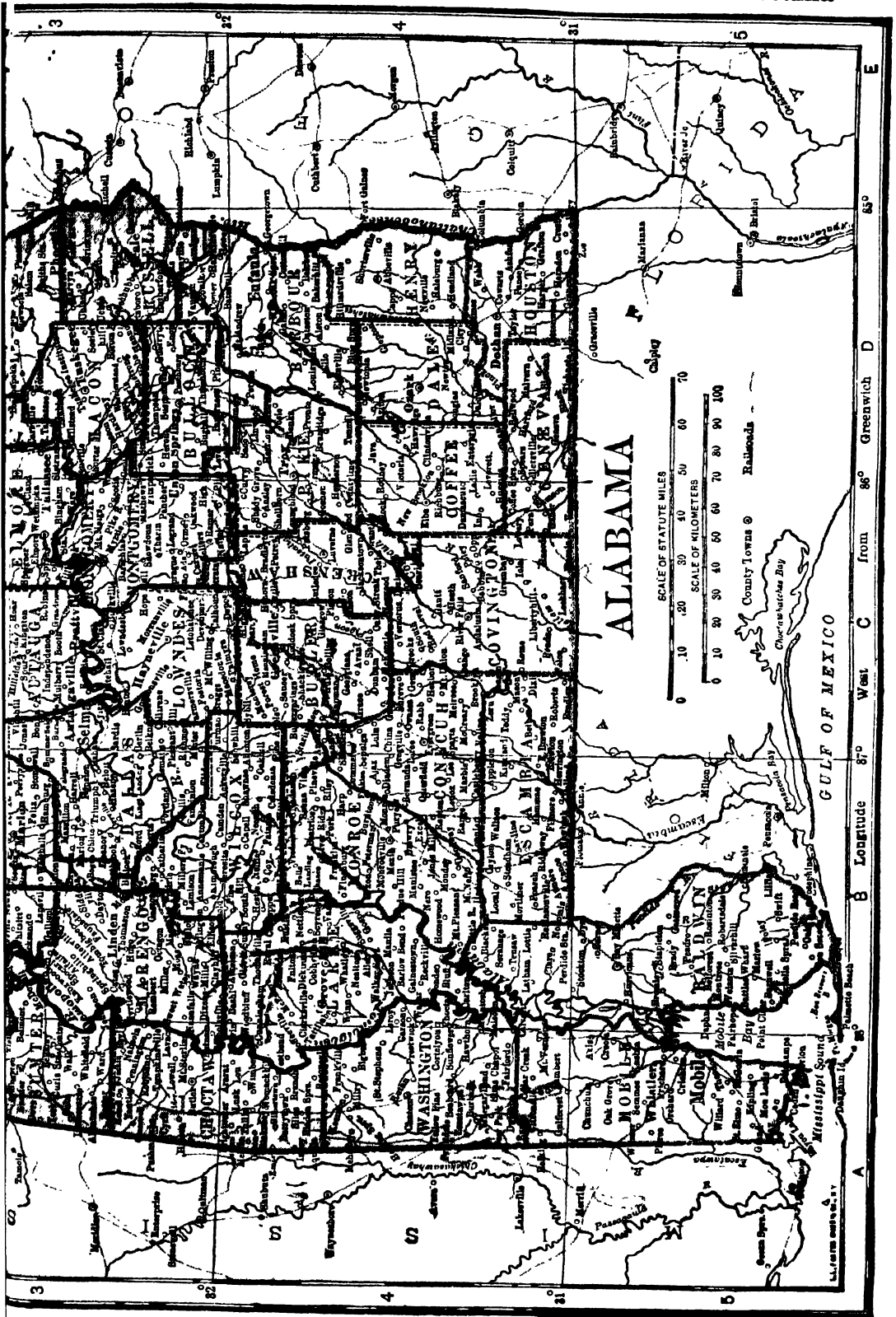
## STATES AND POSSESSIONS OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

	MAP ON		MAP ON
ALABAMA . . . . .	472	MONTANA . . . . .	516
ALASKA . . . . .	560	NEBRASKA . . . . .	518
ARIZONA . . . . .	474	NEVADA . . . . .	520
ARKANSAS . . . . .	476	NEW HAMPSHIRE, AND VERMONT . . . . .	522
CALIFORNIA . . . . .	478	NEW JERSEY . . . . .	524
COLORADO . . . . .	480	NEW MEXICO . . . . .	526
CONNECTICUT . . . . .	482	NEW YORK . . . . .	528
DELAWARE, AND MARYLAND . . . . .	504	NORTH CAROLINA . . . . .	530
FLORIDA . . . . .	484	NORTH DAKOTA . . . . .	532
GEORGIA . . . . .	486	OHIO . . . . .	534
HAWAII . . . . .	562	OKLAHOMA . . . . .	536
IDAHO . . . . .	488	OREGON . . . . .	538
ILLINOIS . . . . .	490	PENNSYLVANIA . . . . .	540
INDIANA . . . . .	492		
IOWA . . . . .	494	RHODE ISLAND . . . . .	543
KANSAS . . . . .	496	SOUTH CAROLINA . . . . .	544
KENTUCKY, AND TENNESSEE . . . . .	498	SOUTH DAKOTA . . . . .	546
LOUISIANA . . . . .	500	TENNESSEE, AND KENTUCKY . . . . .	498
MAINE . . . . .	502	TEXAS . . . . .	548
MARYLAND, AND DELAWARE . . . . .	504	UTAH . . . . .	550
MASSACHUSETTS . . . . .	506	VERMONT, AND NEW HAMPSHIRE . . . . .	522
MICHIGAN . . . . .	508	VIRGINIA, AND WEST VIRGINIA . . . . .	552
MINNESOTA . . . . .	510	WASHINGTON . . . . .	554
MISSISSIPPI . . . . .	512	WEST VIRGINIA, AND VIRGINIA . . . . .	552
MISSOURI . . . . .	514	WISCONSIN . . . . .	556
WYOMING . . . . .	558		

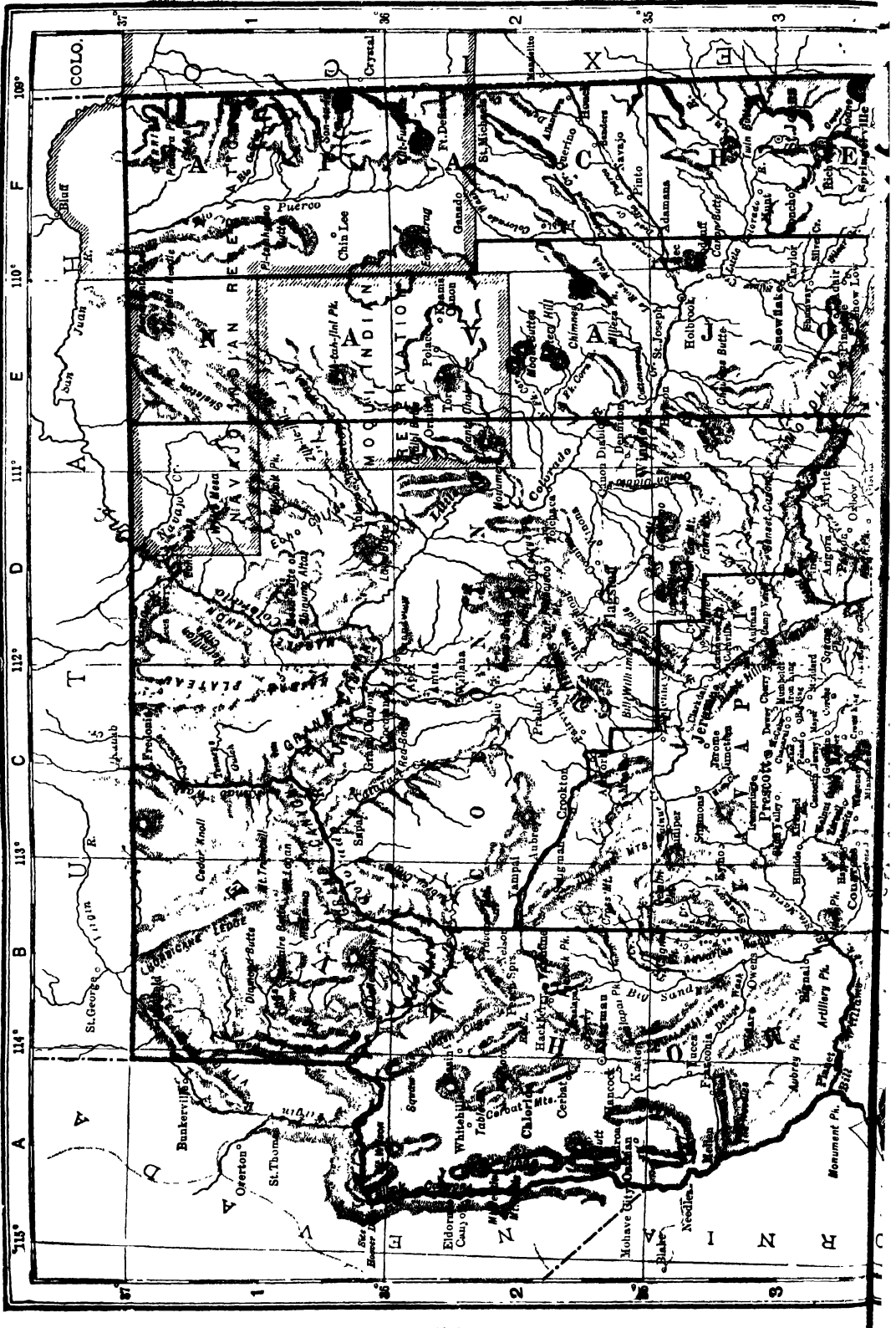
Alabama

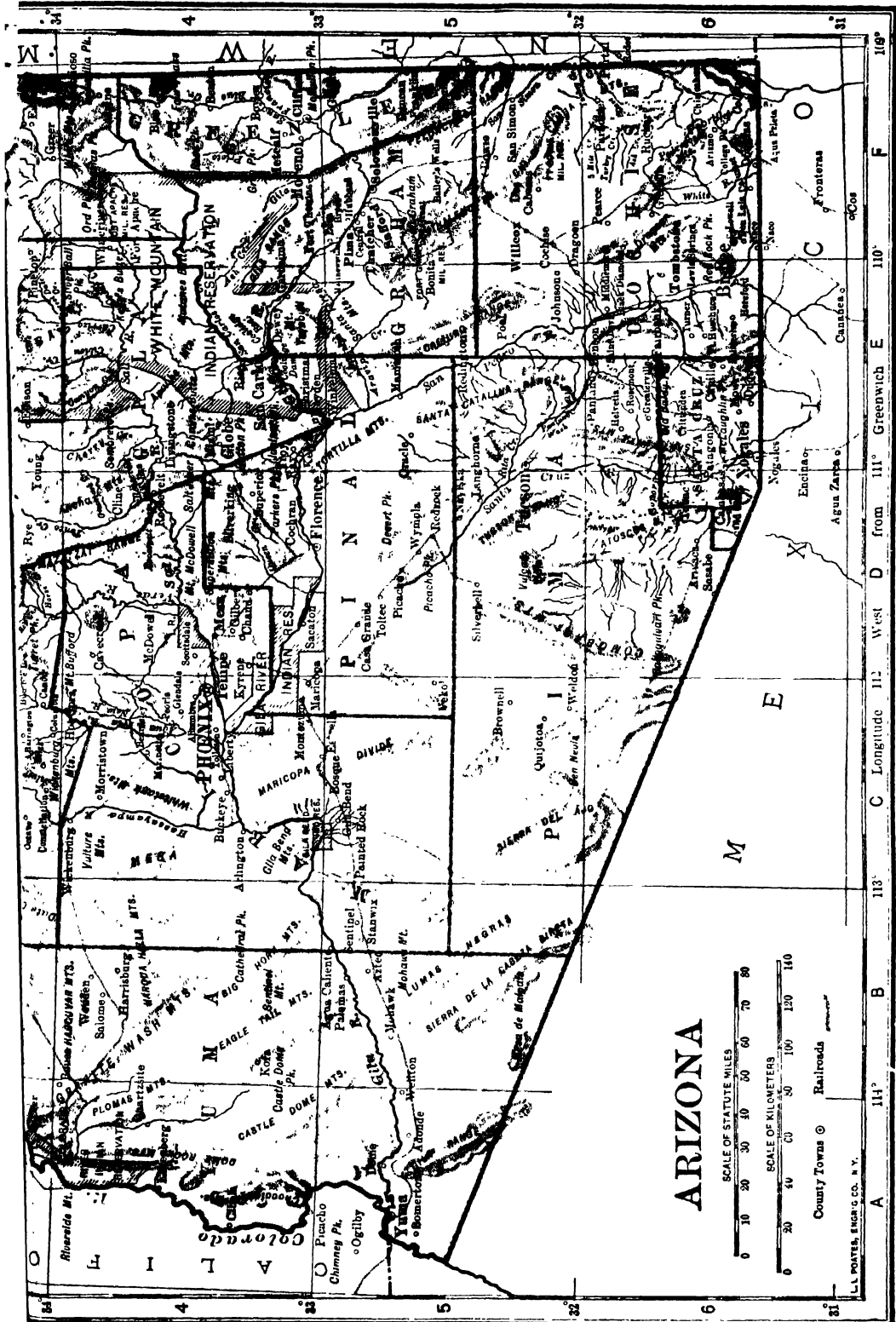




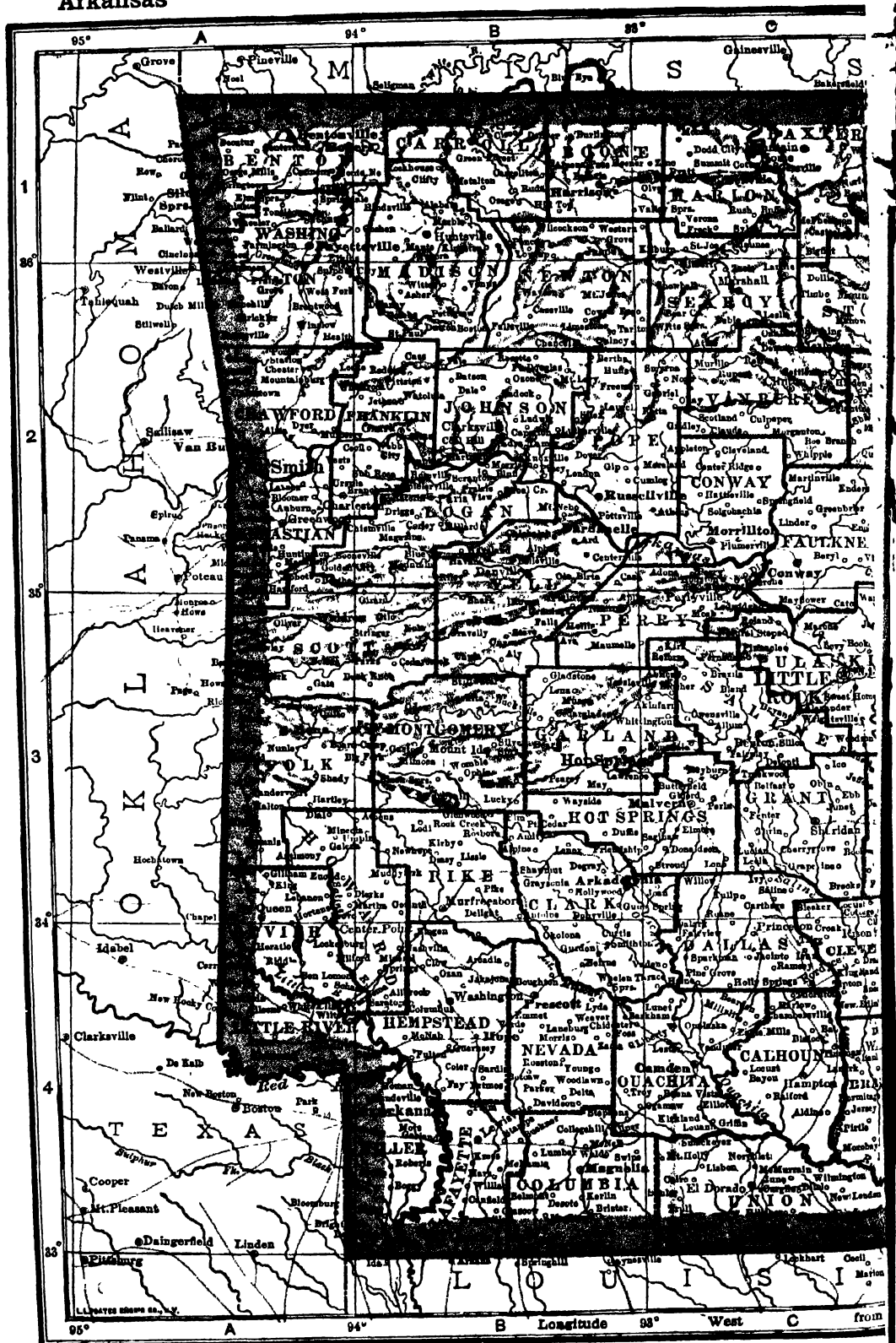


## Arizona

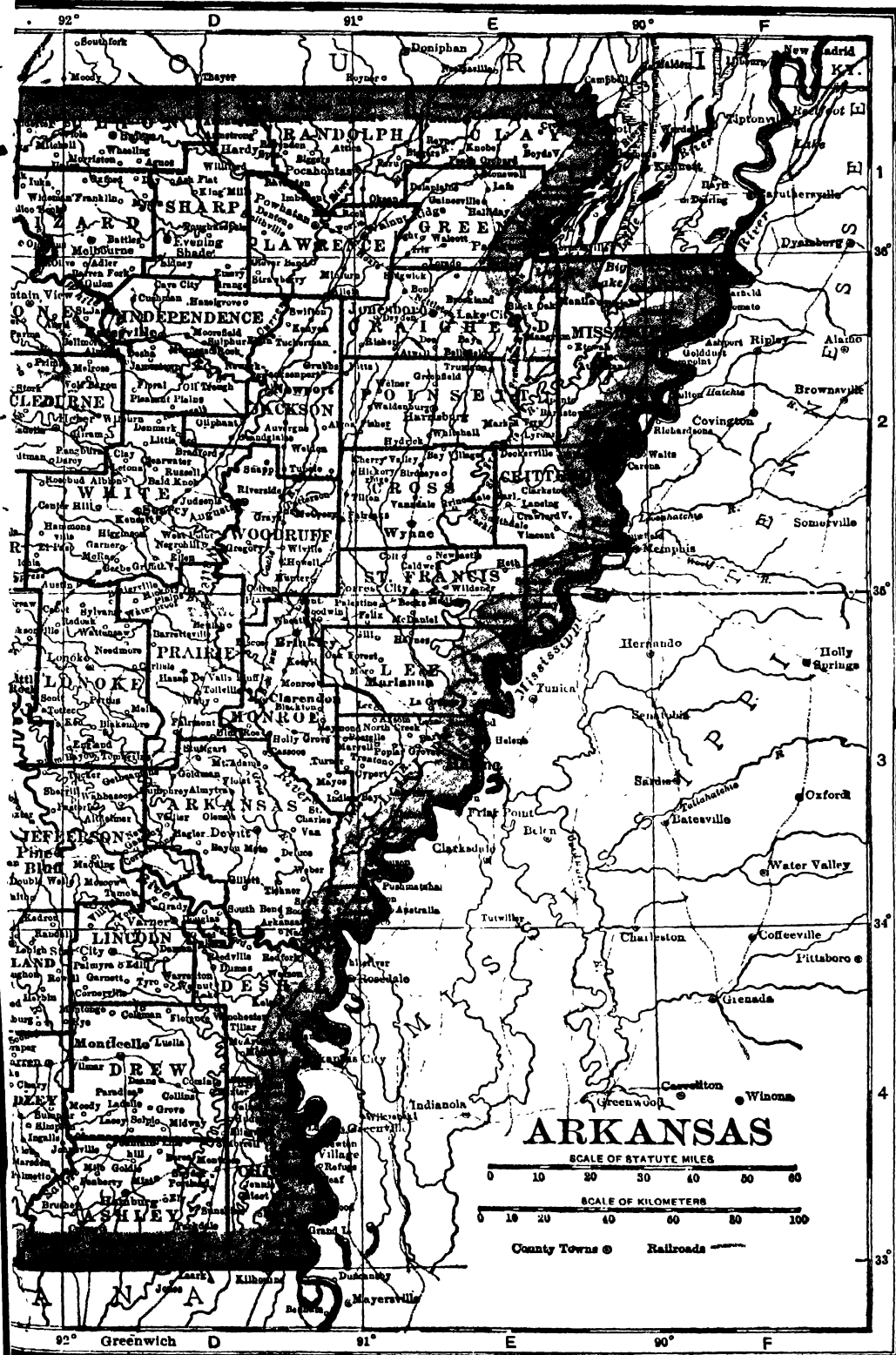


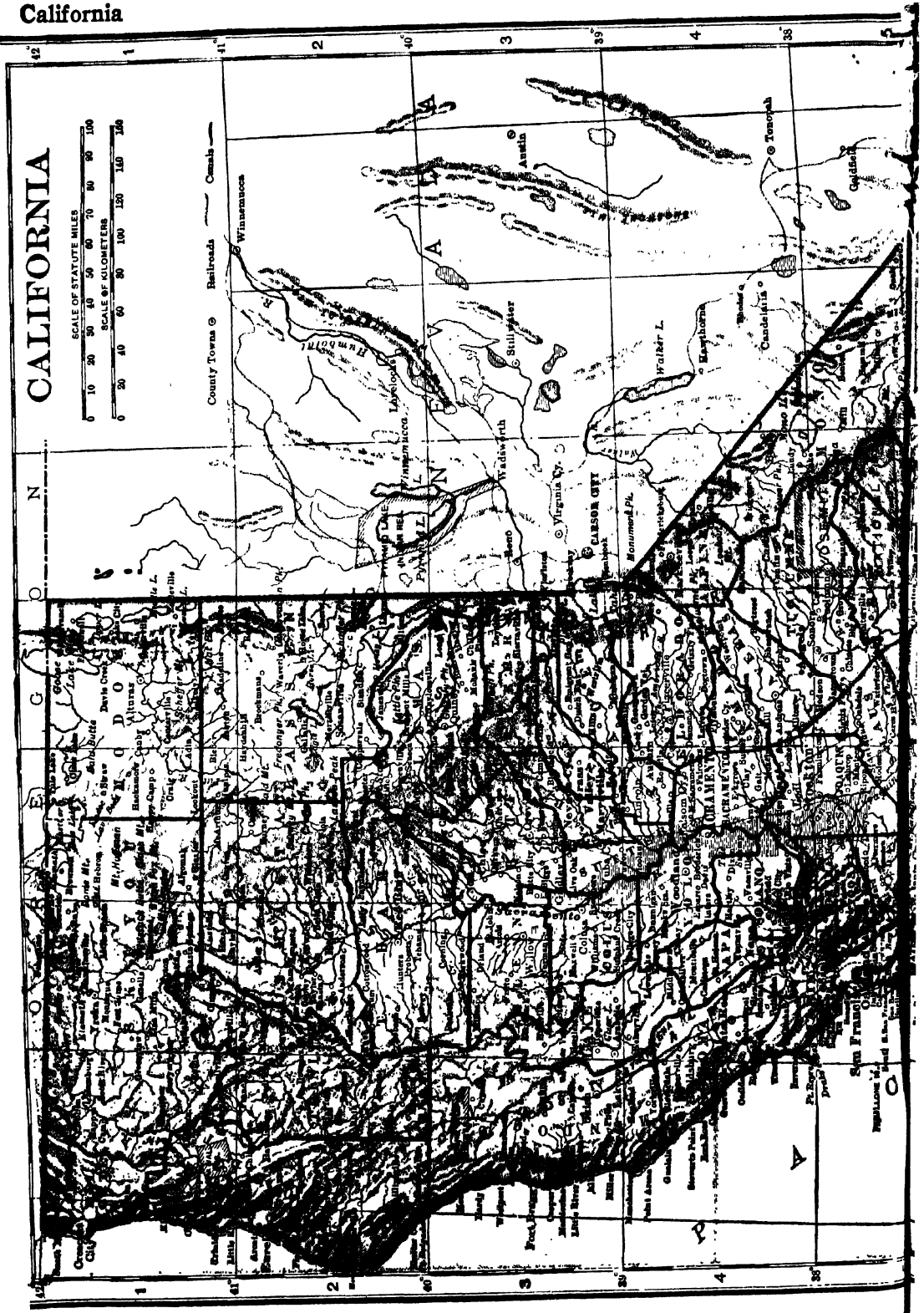


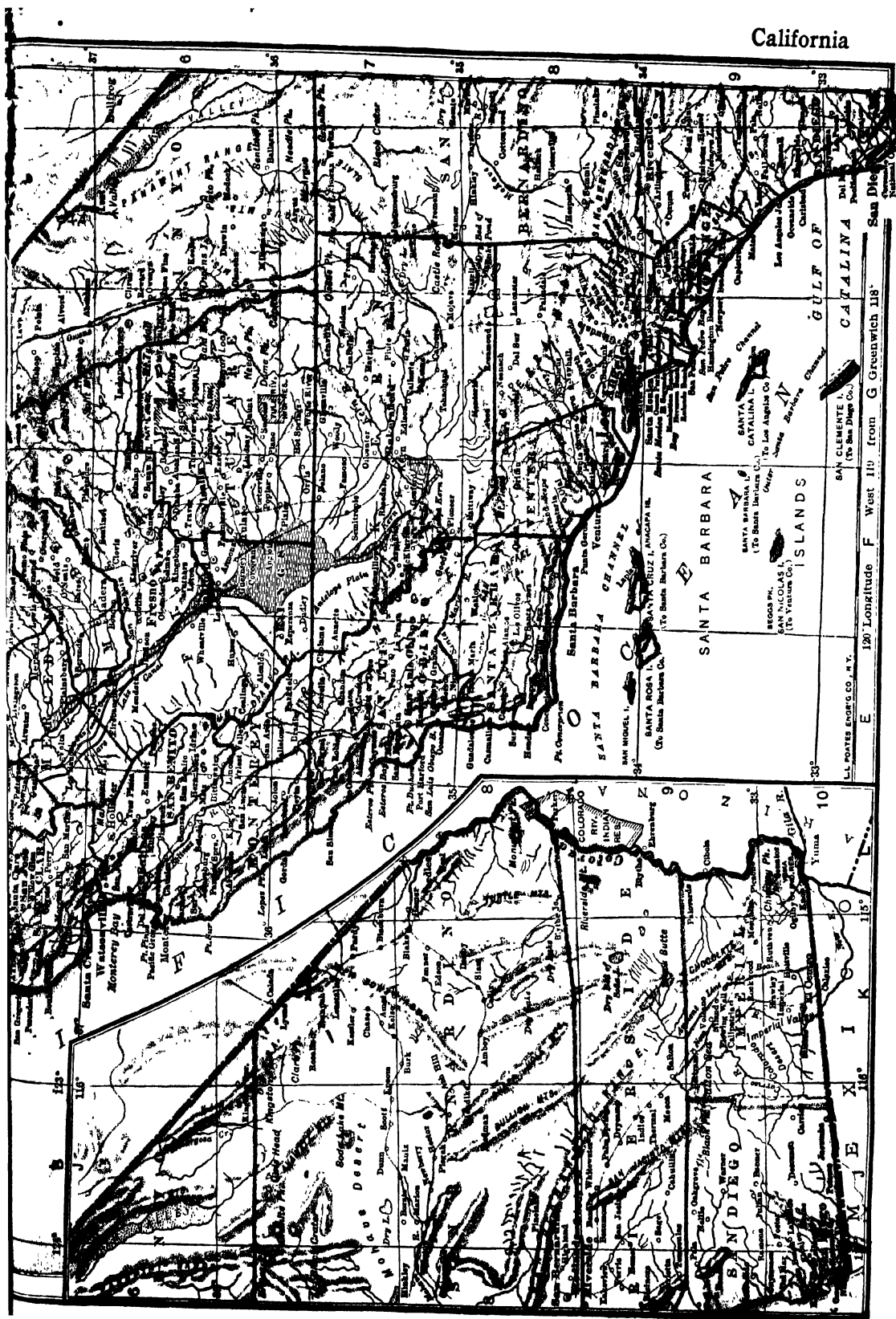
# Arkansas



# Arkansas

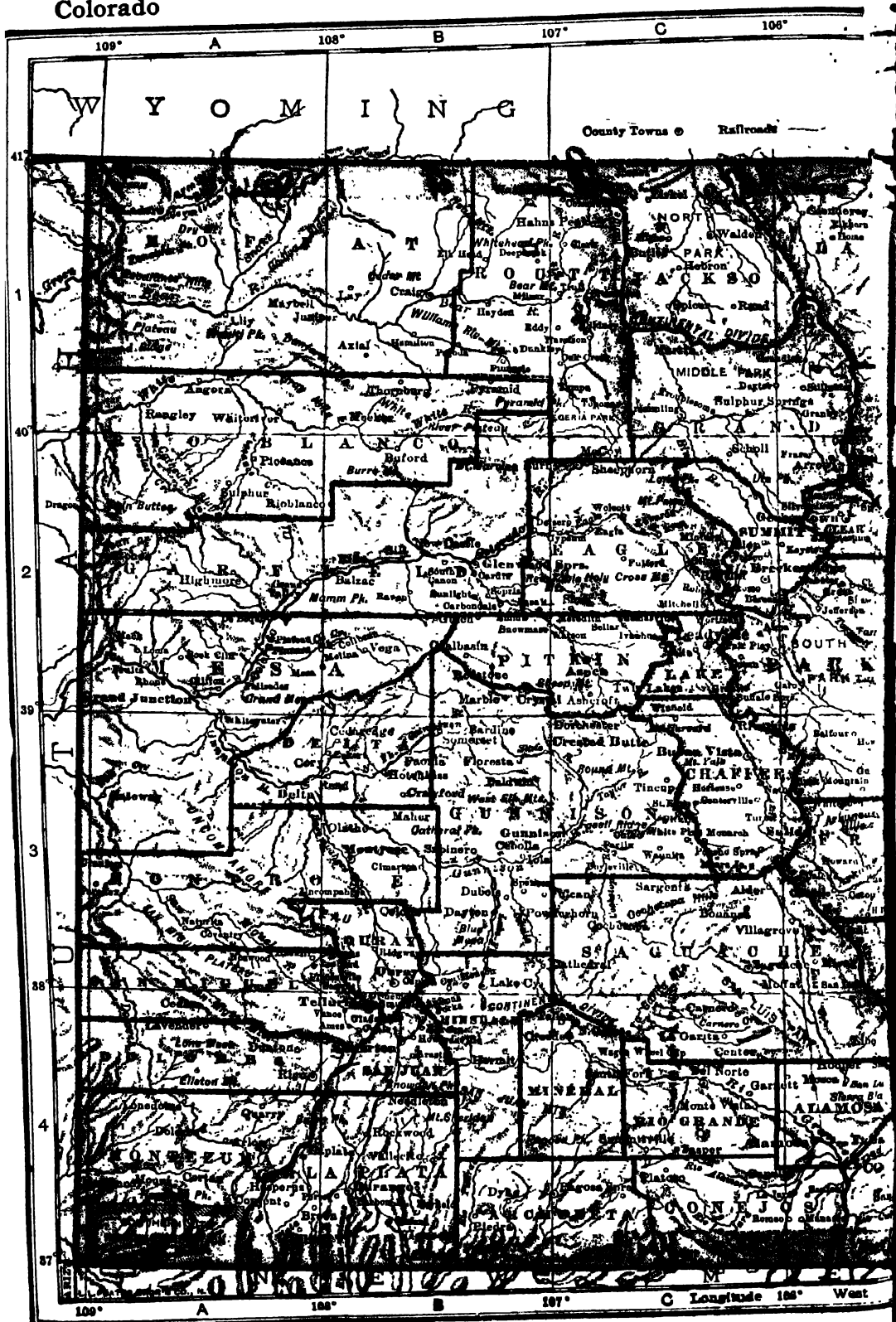




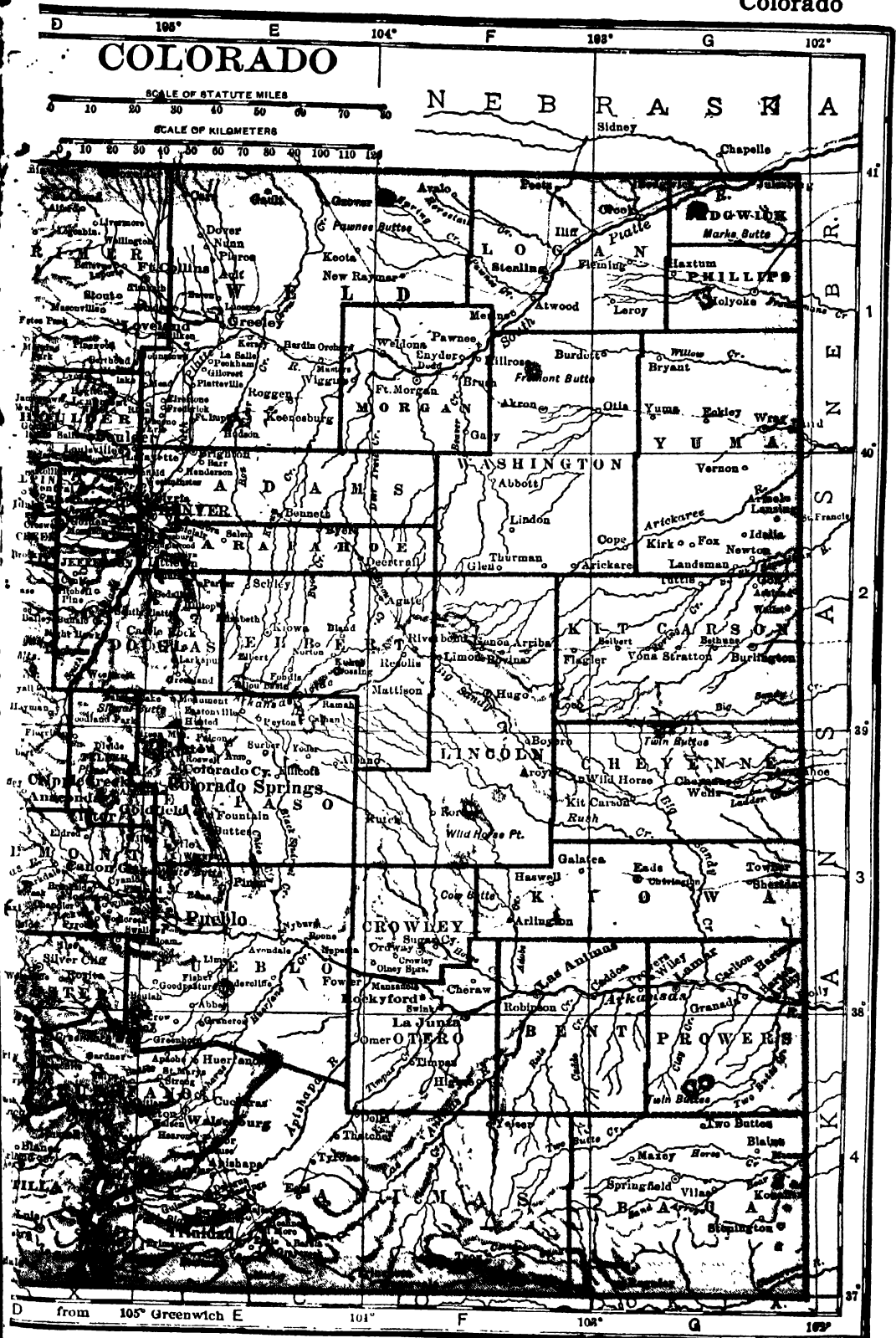




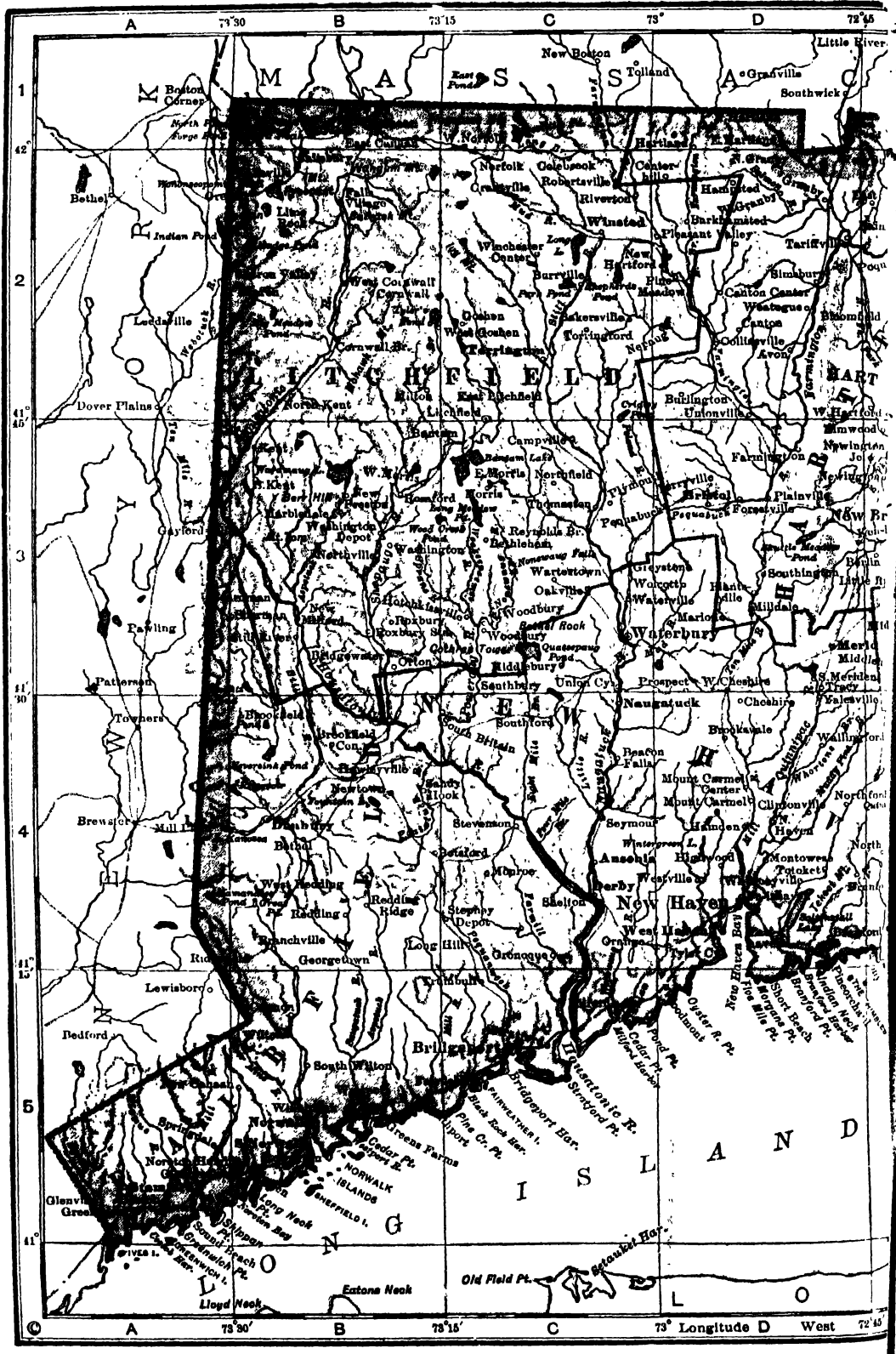
## Colorado







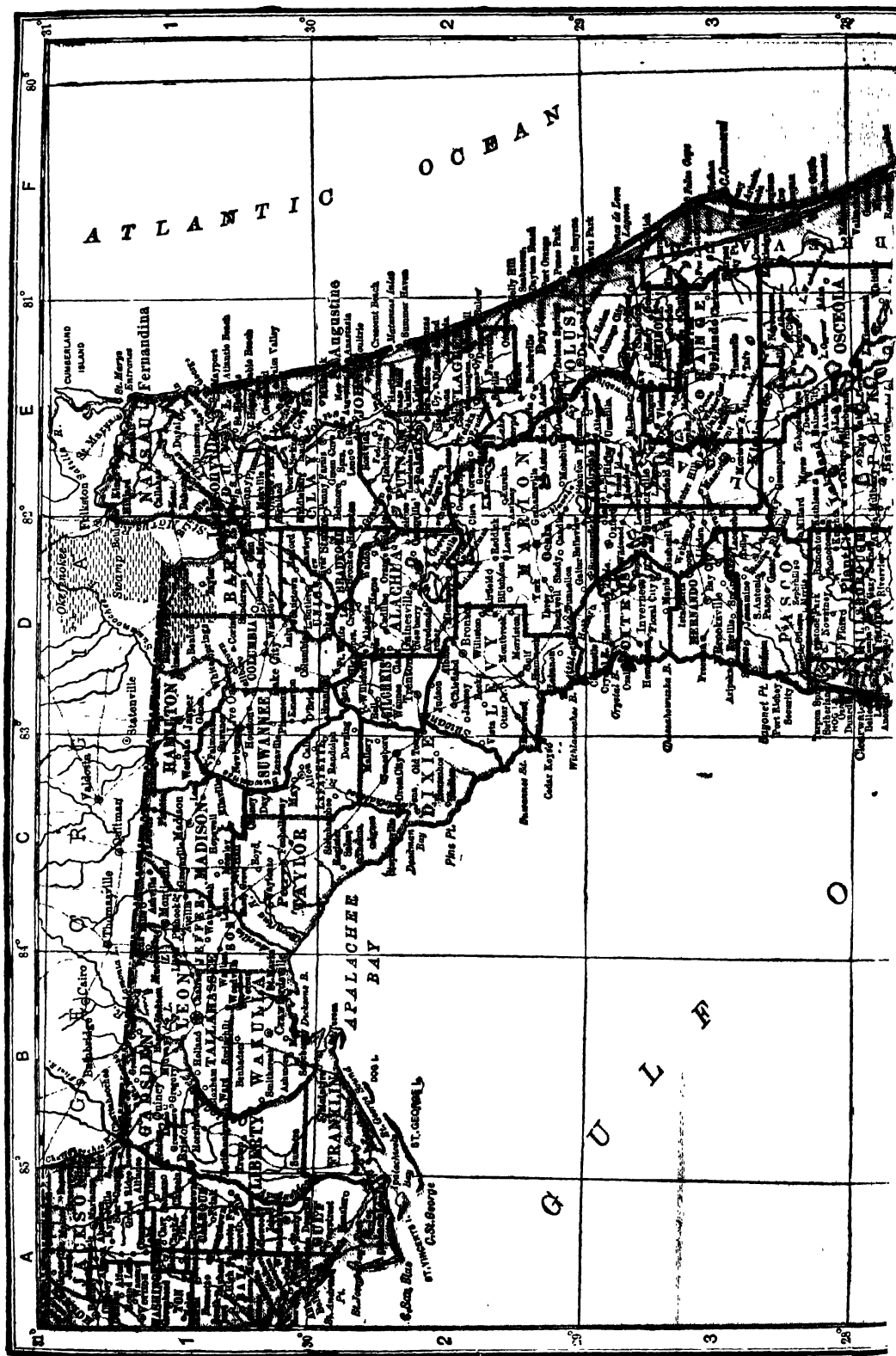
# Connecticut

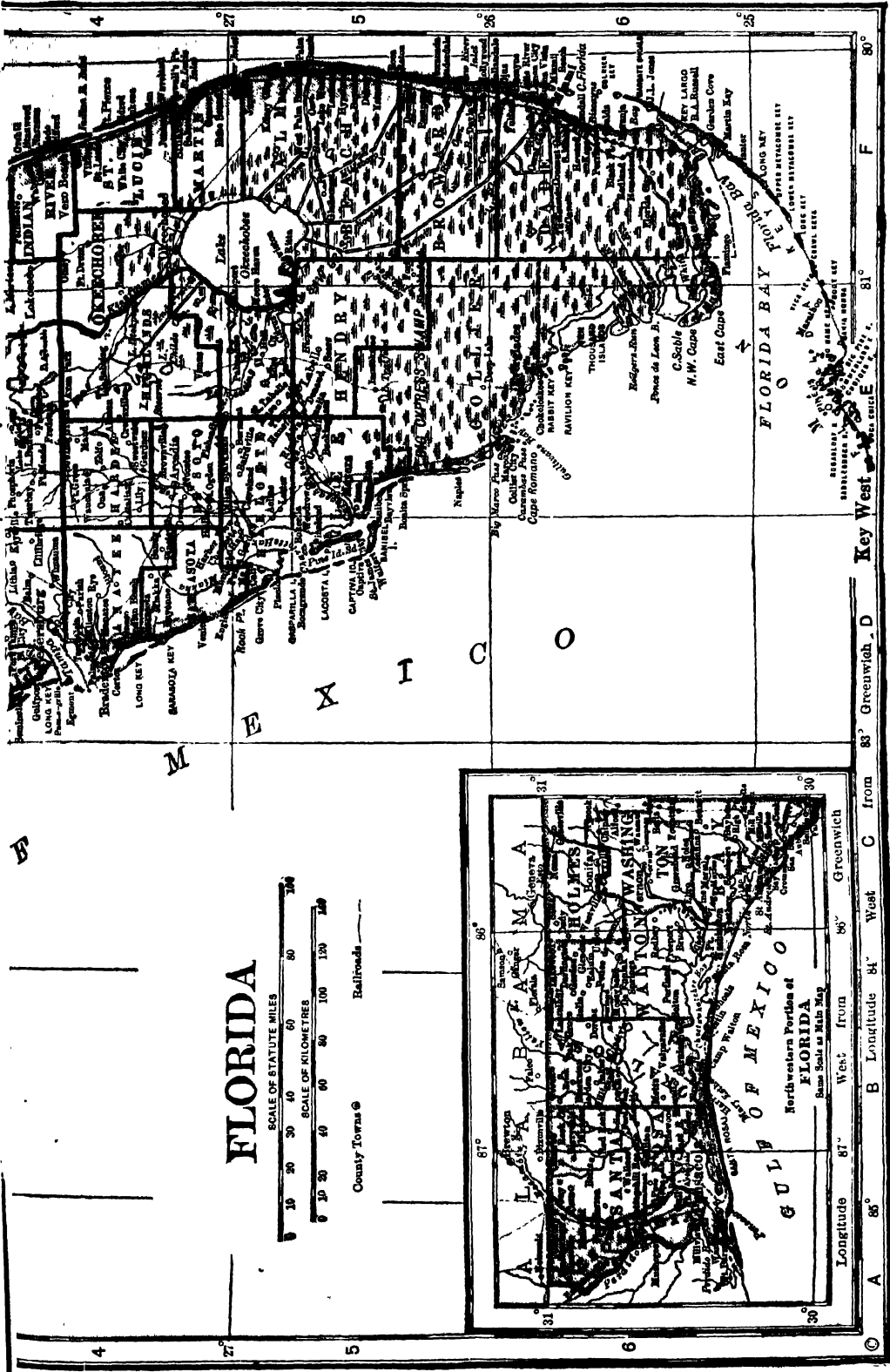


# Connecticut

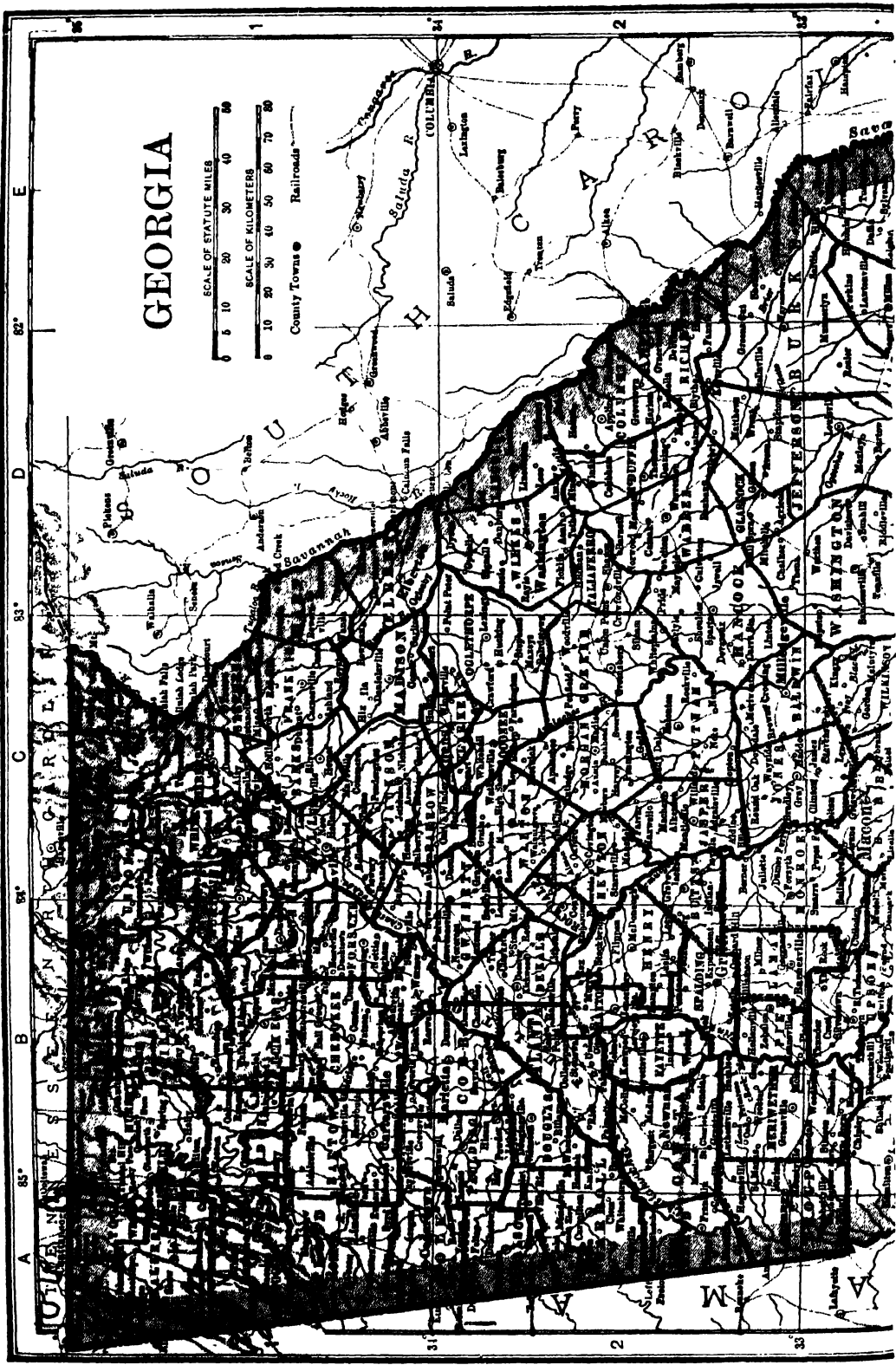


# Florida



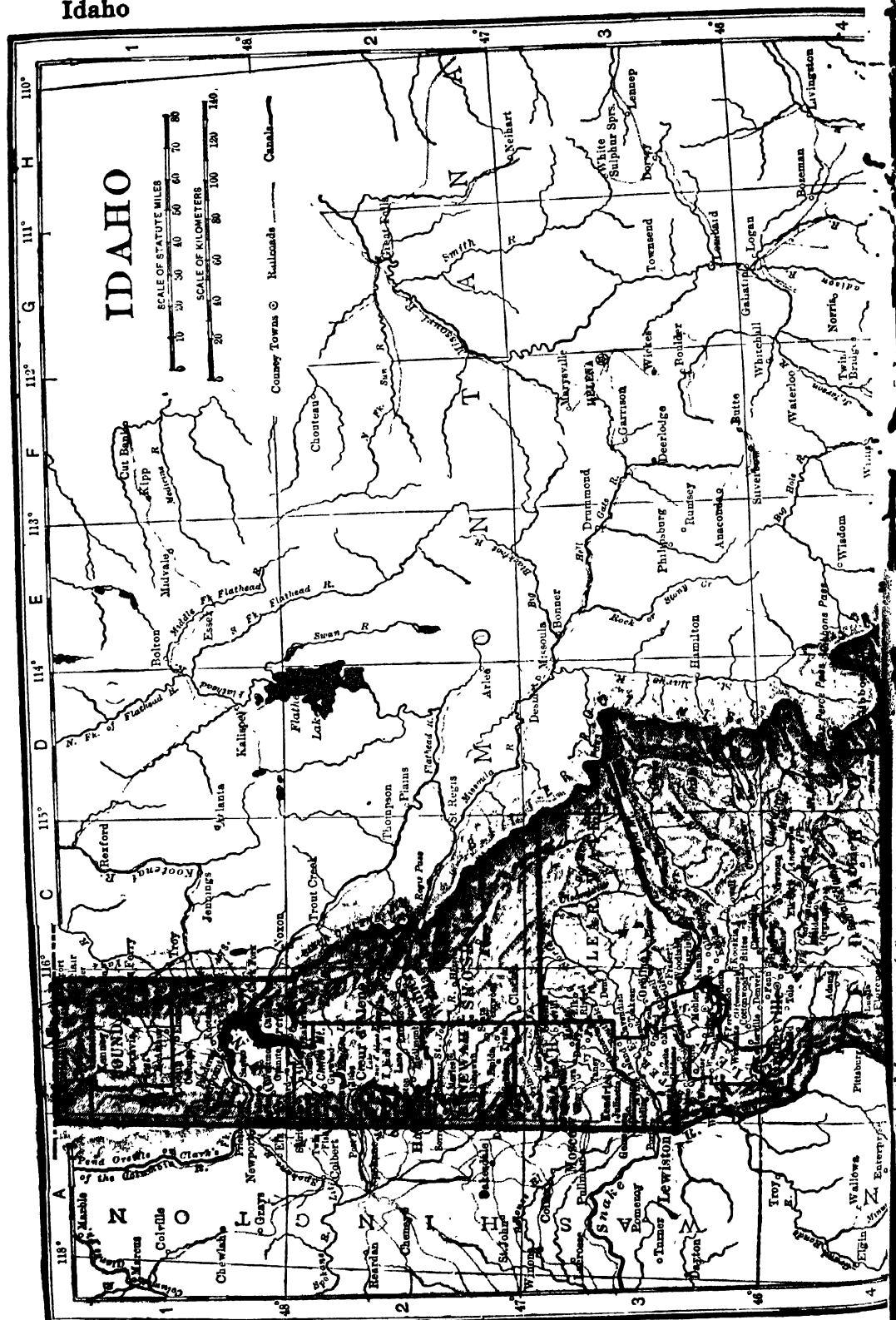


Georgia

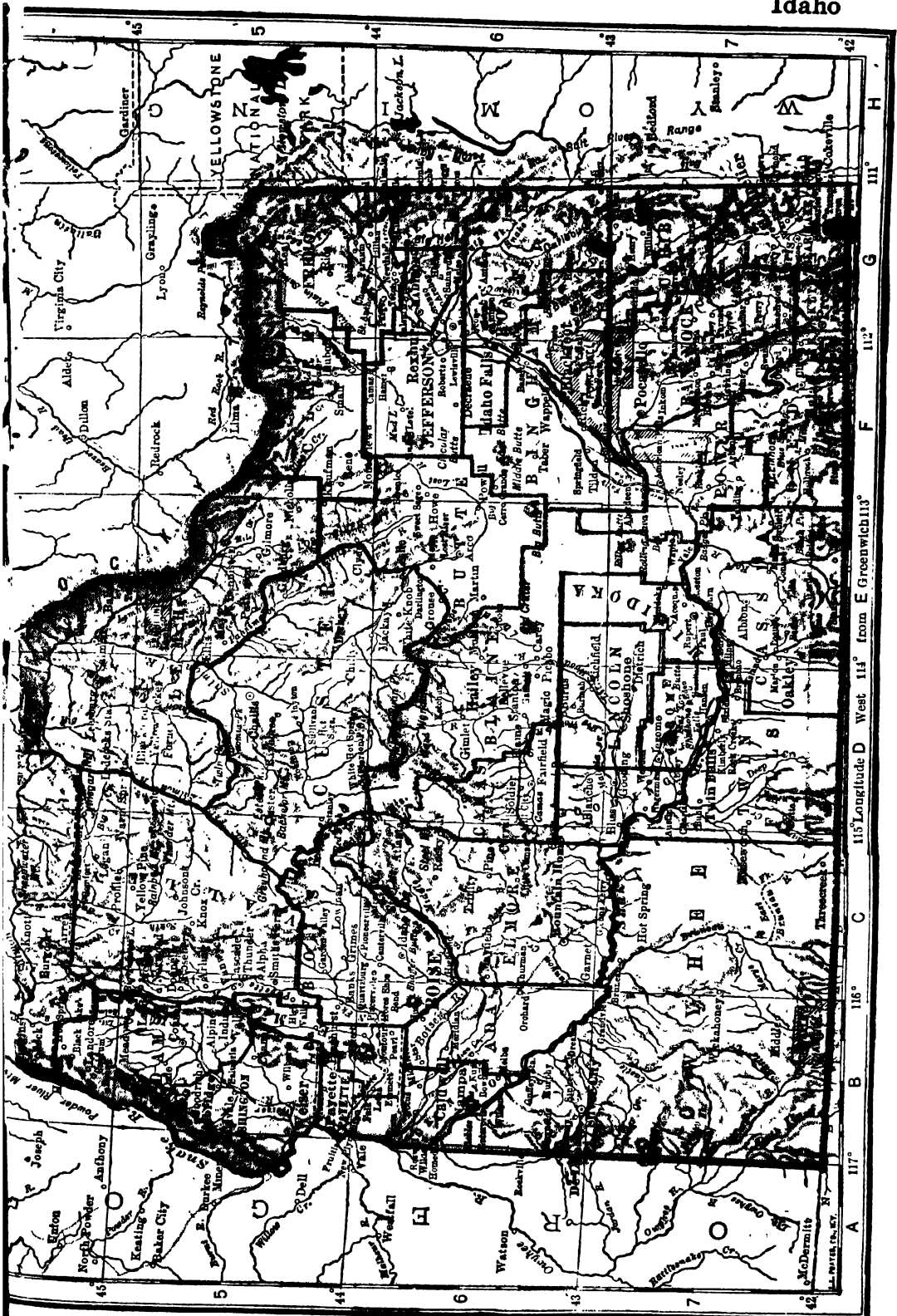




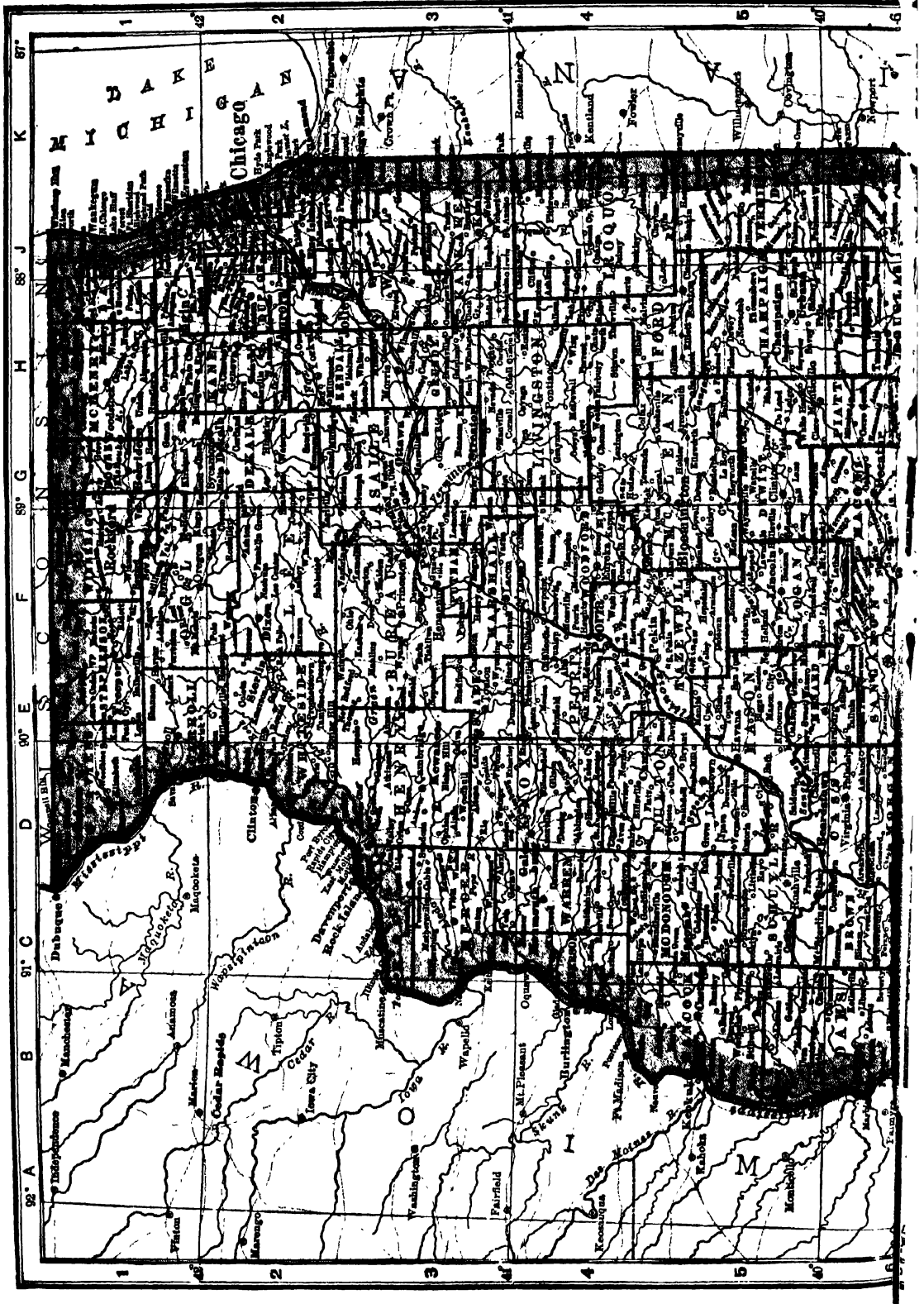
## Idaho

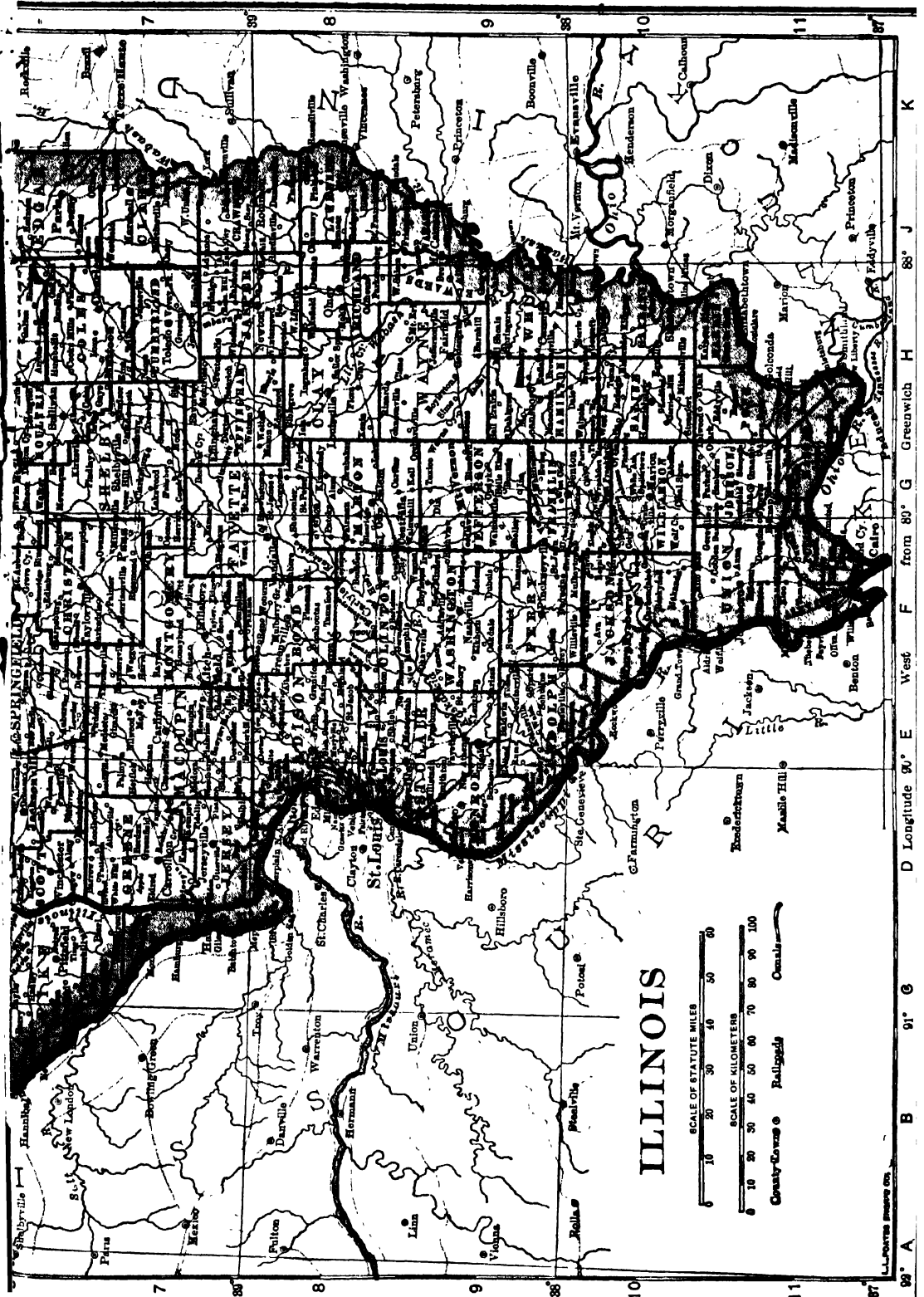




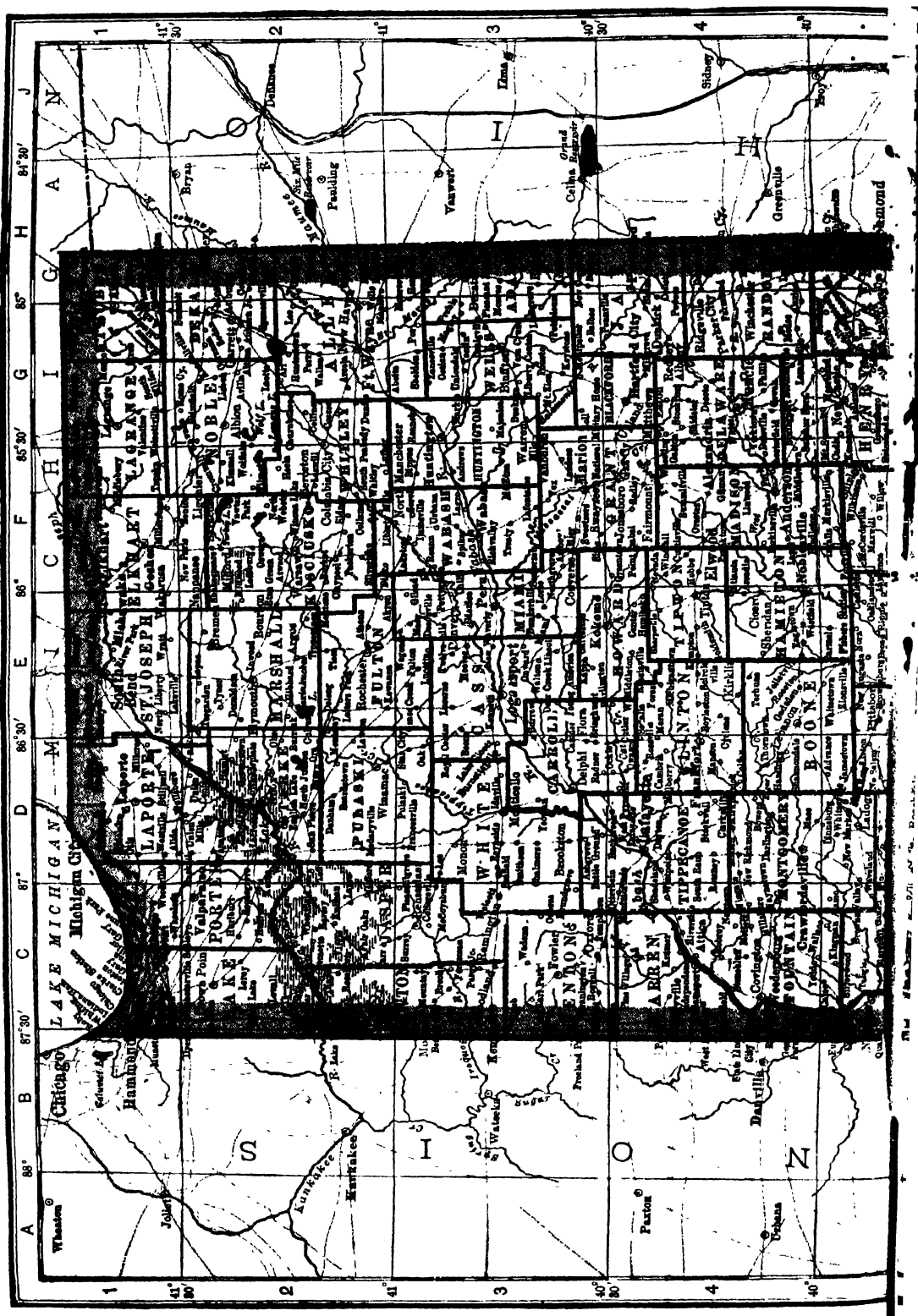


Illinois





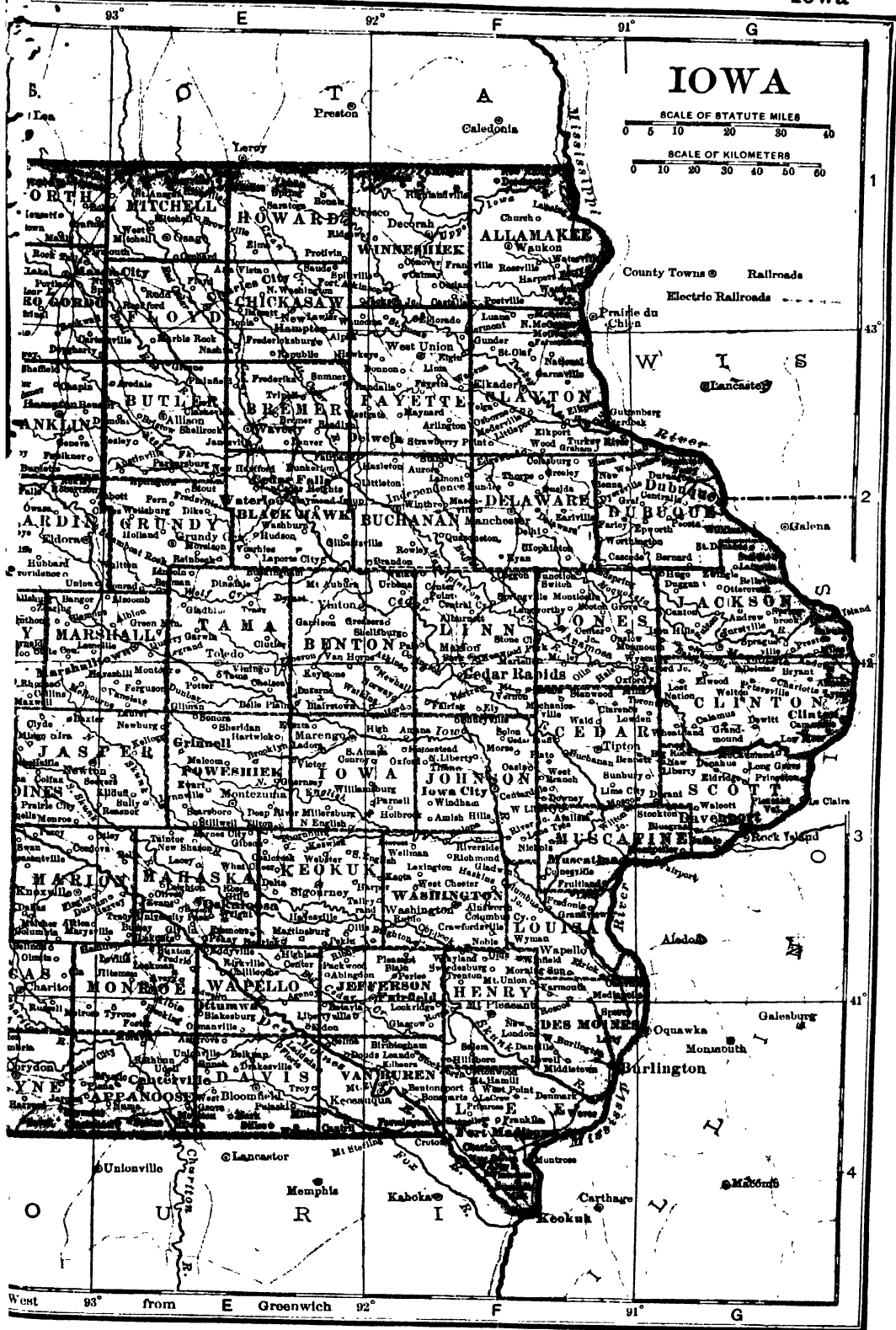
# Indiana





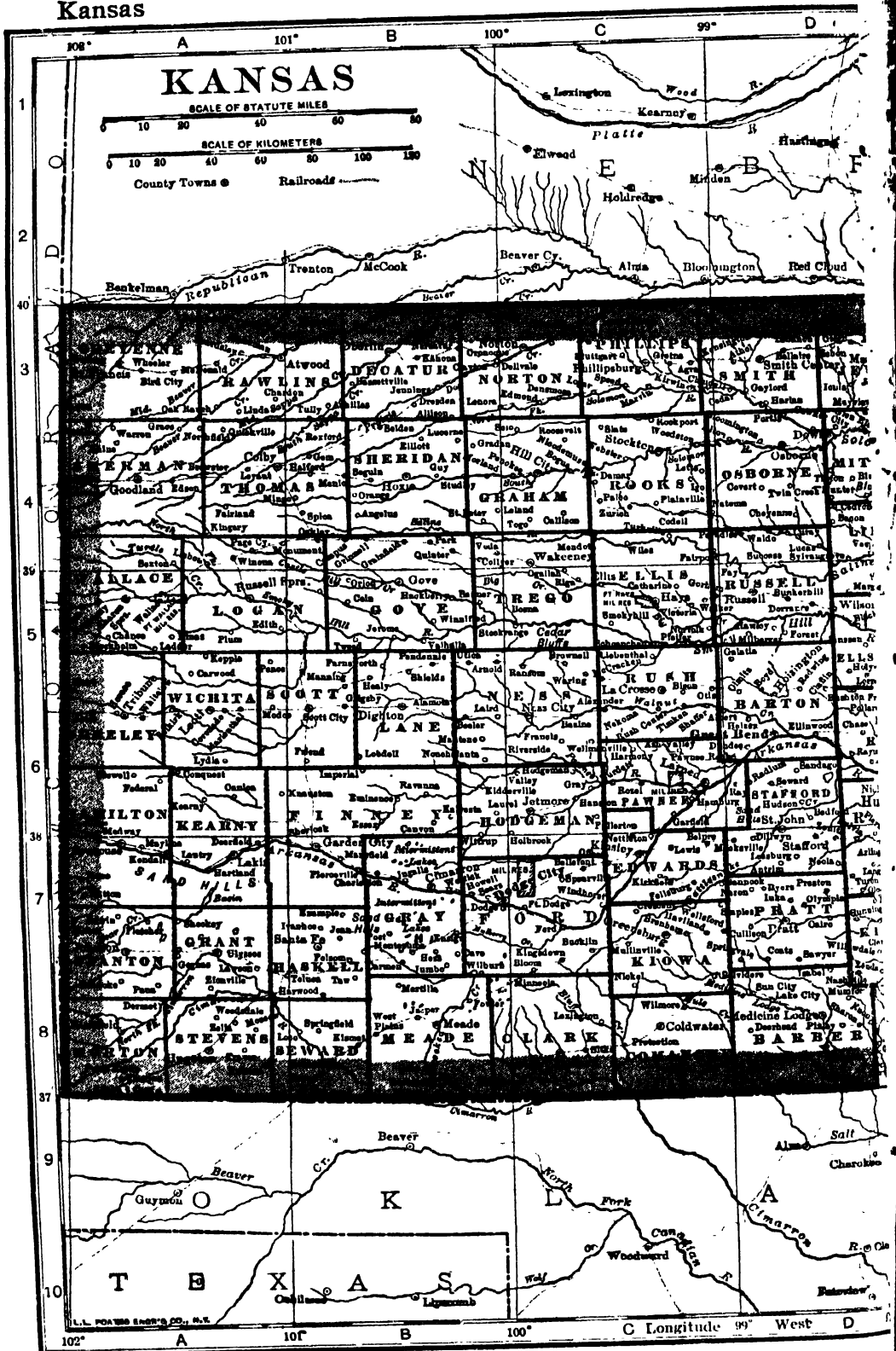
# Iowa



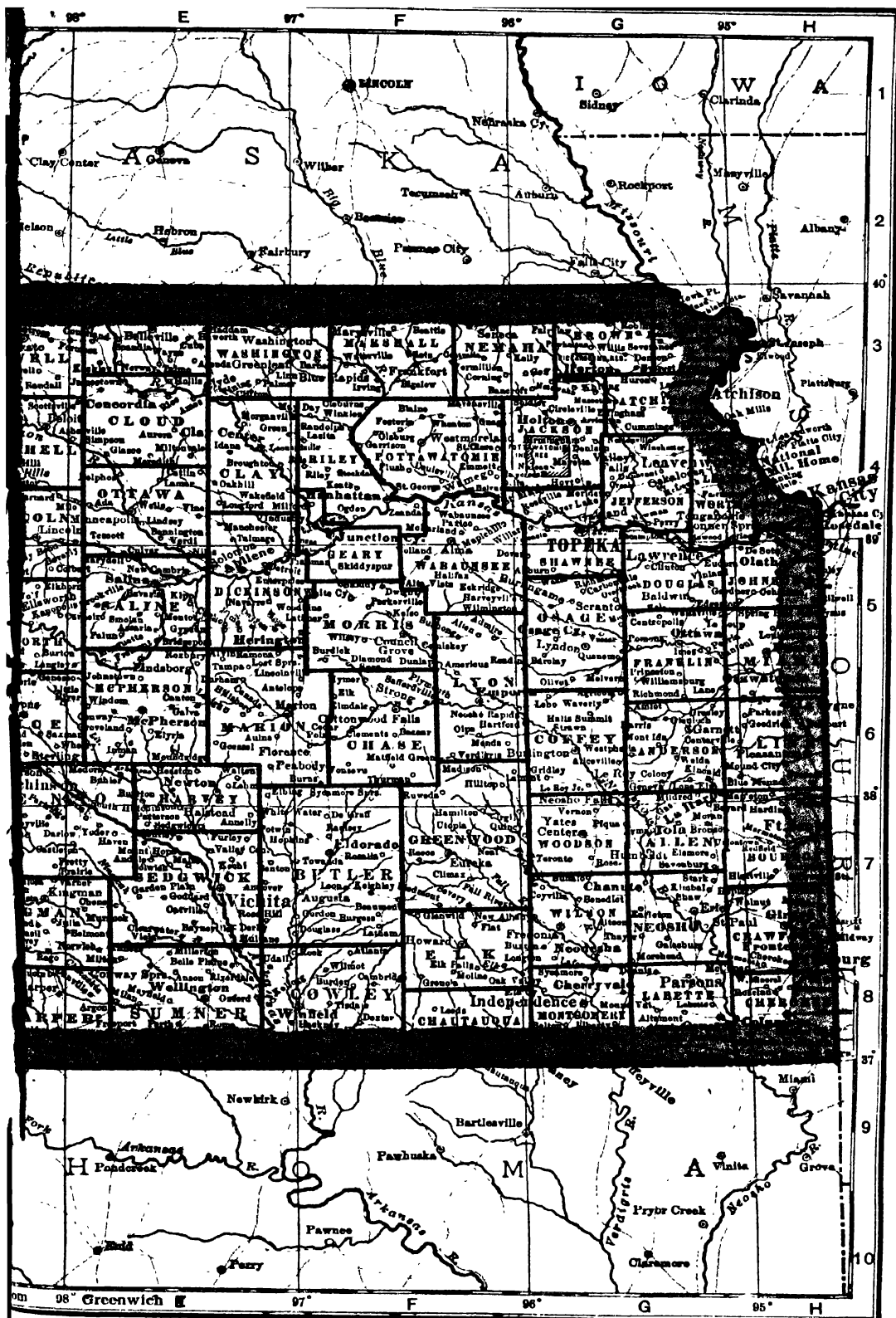




## Kansas



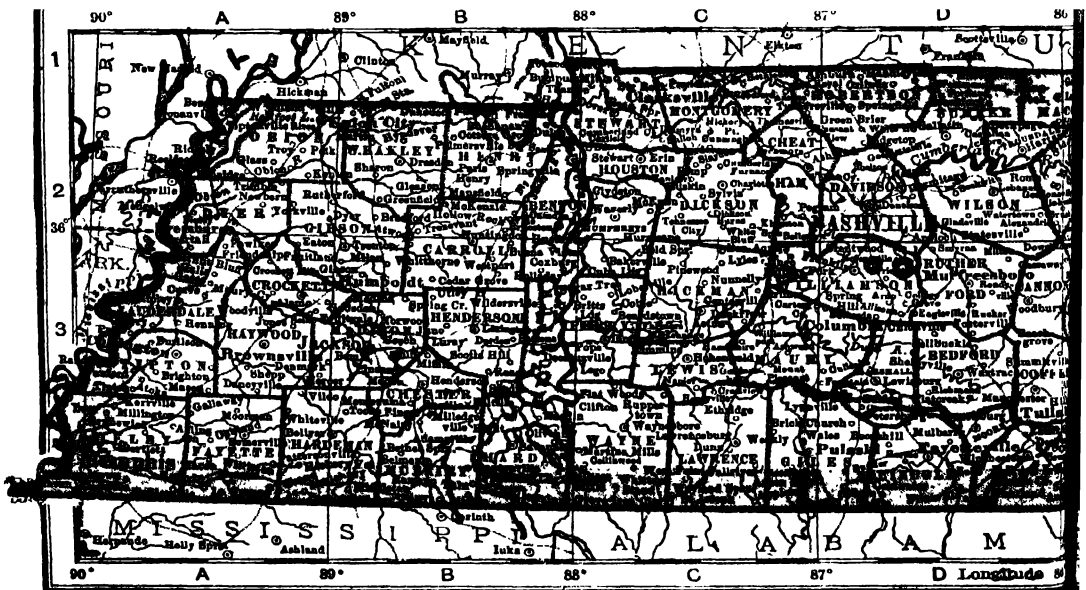




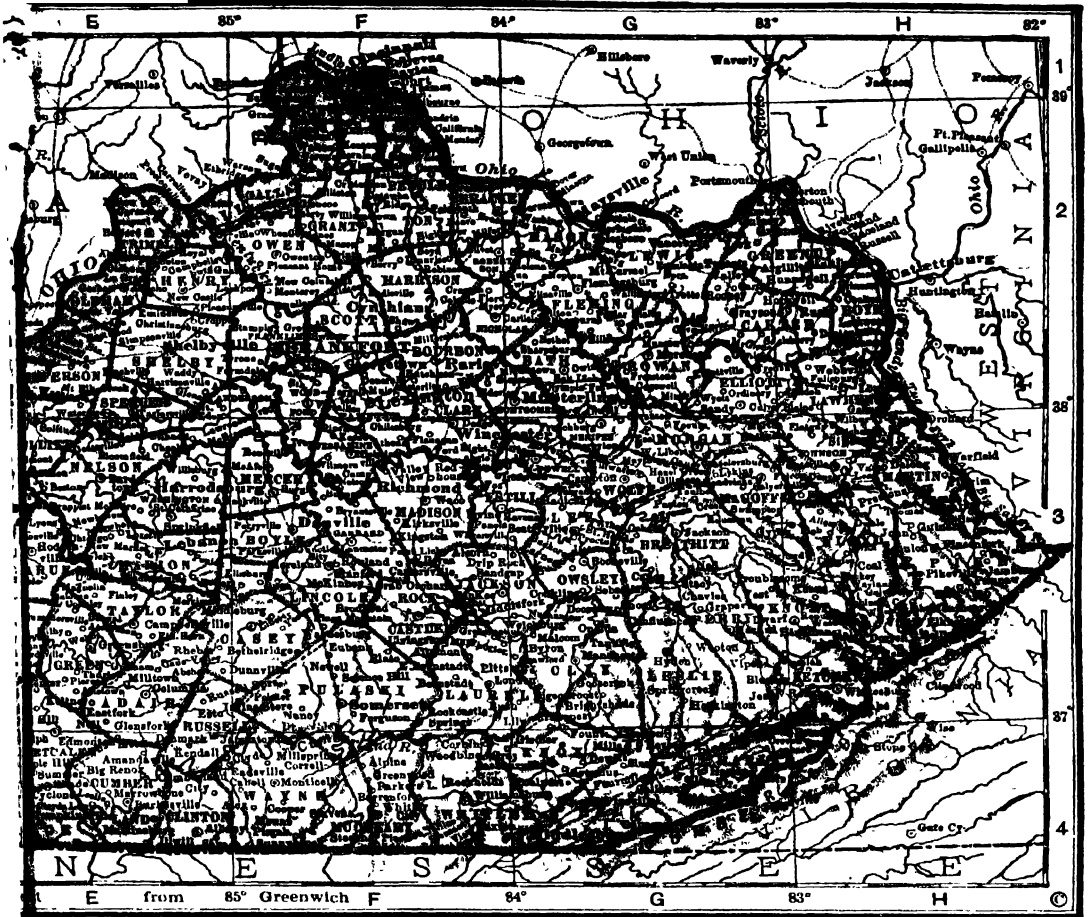
# Kentucky



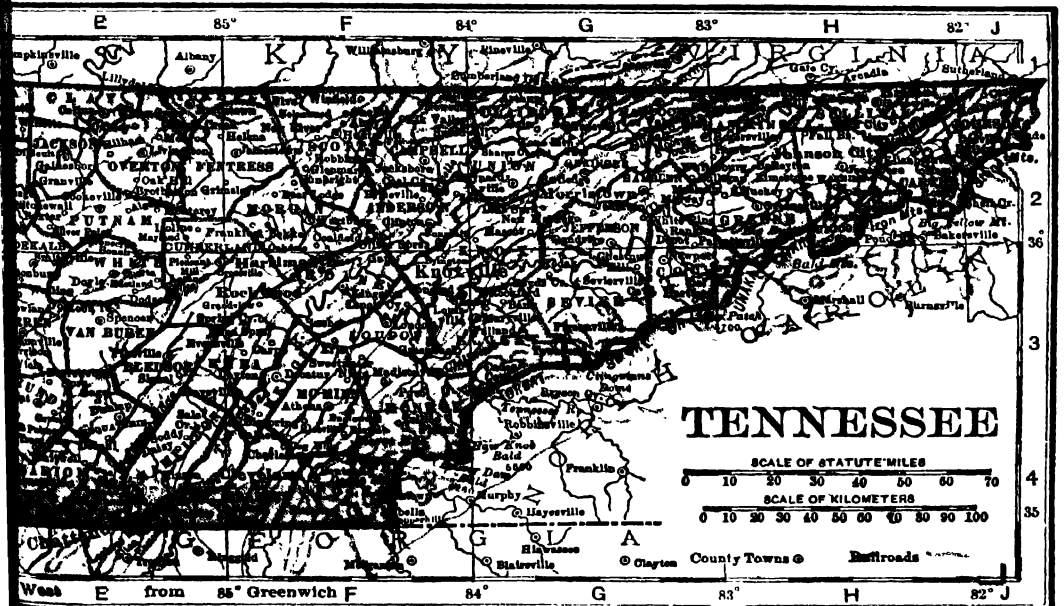
# Tennessee



# Kentucky



# Tennessee

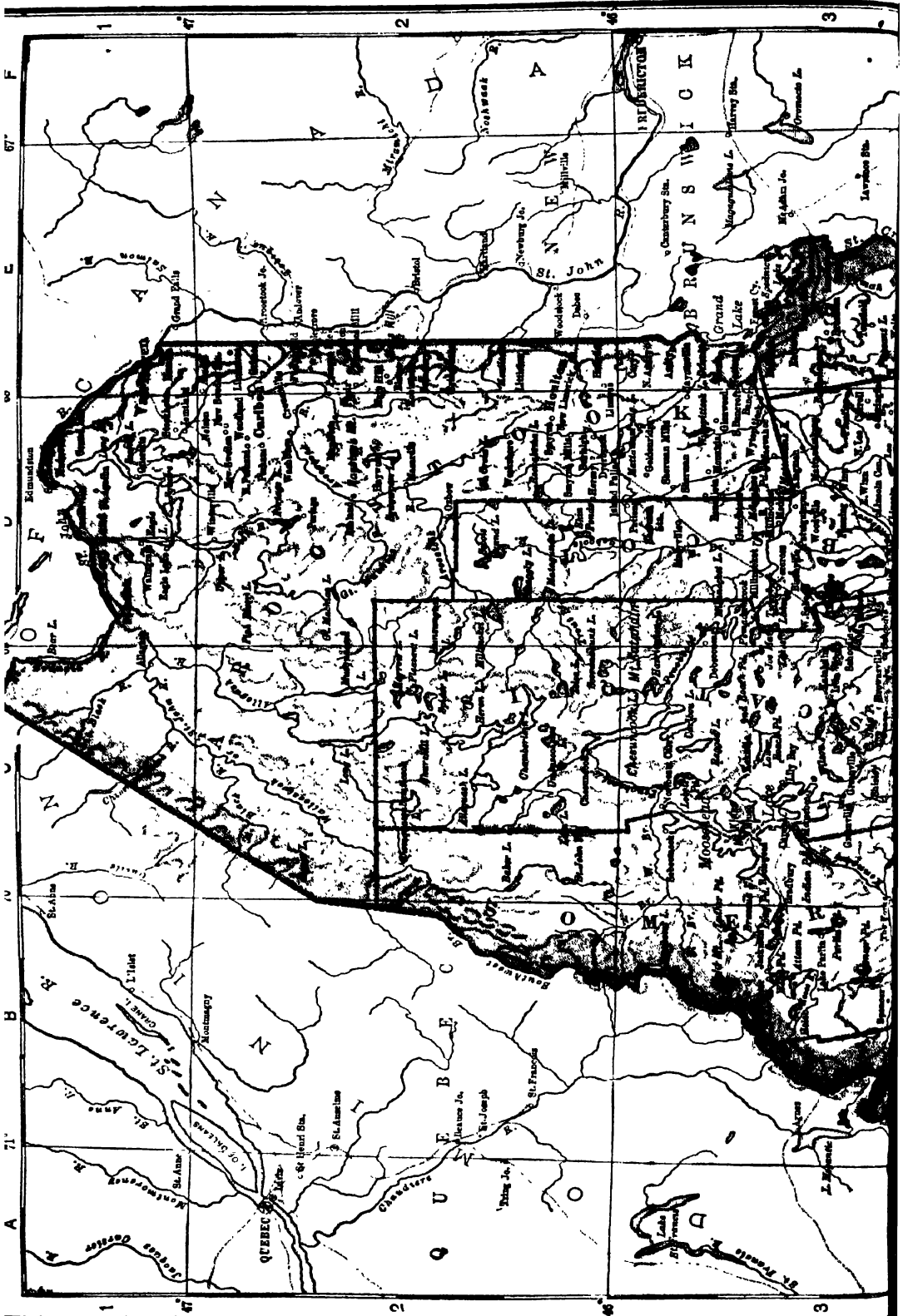


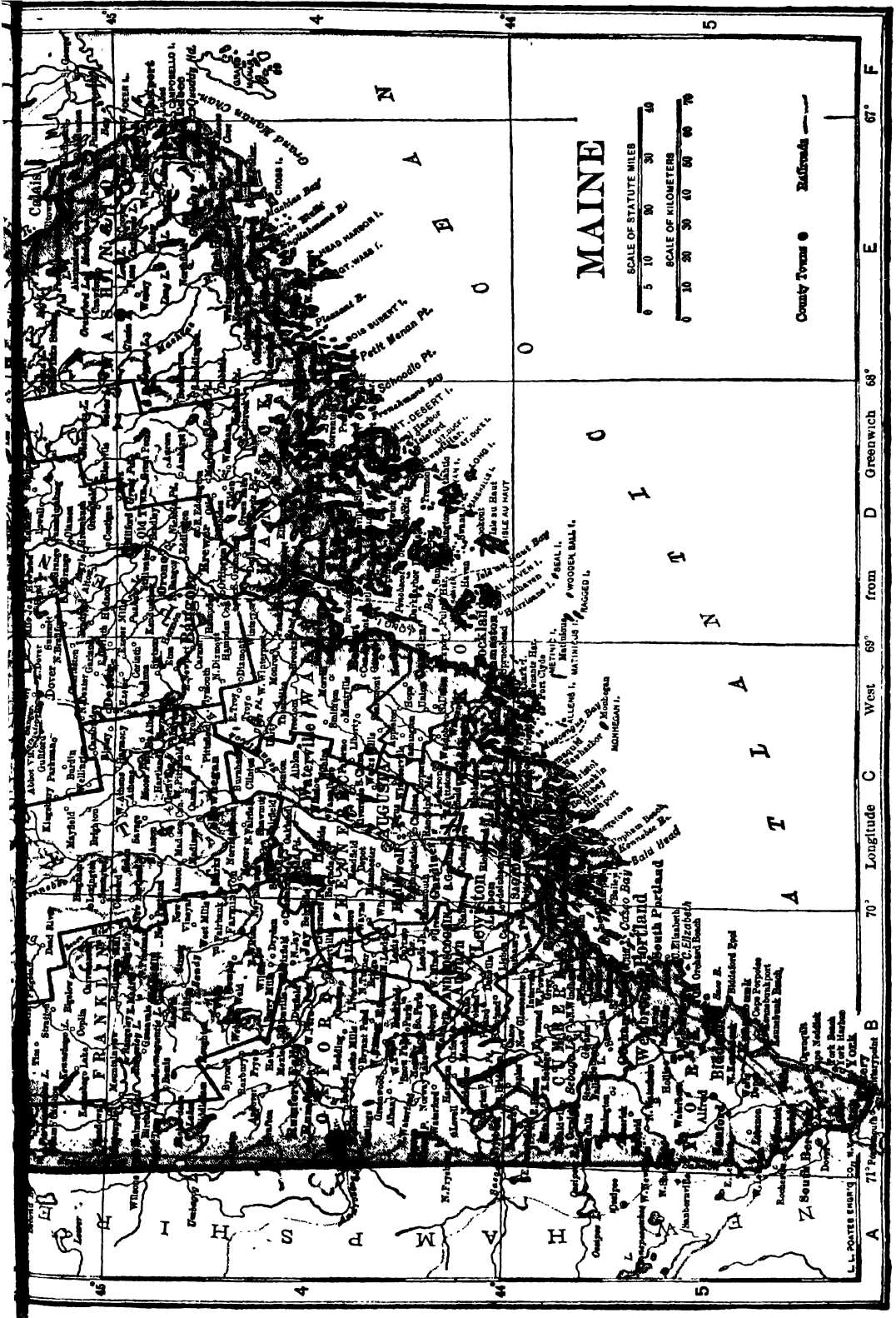
# Louisiana



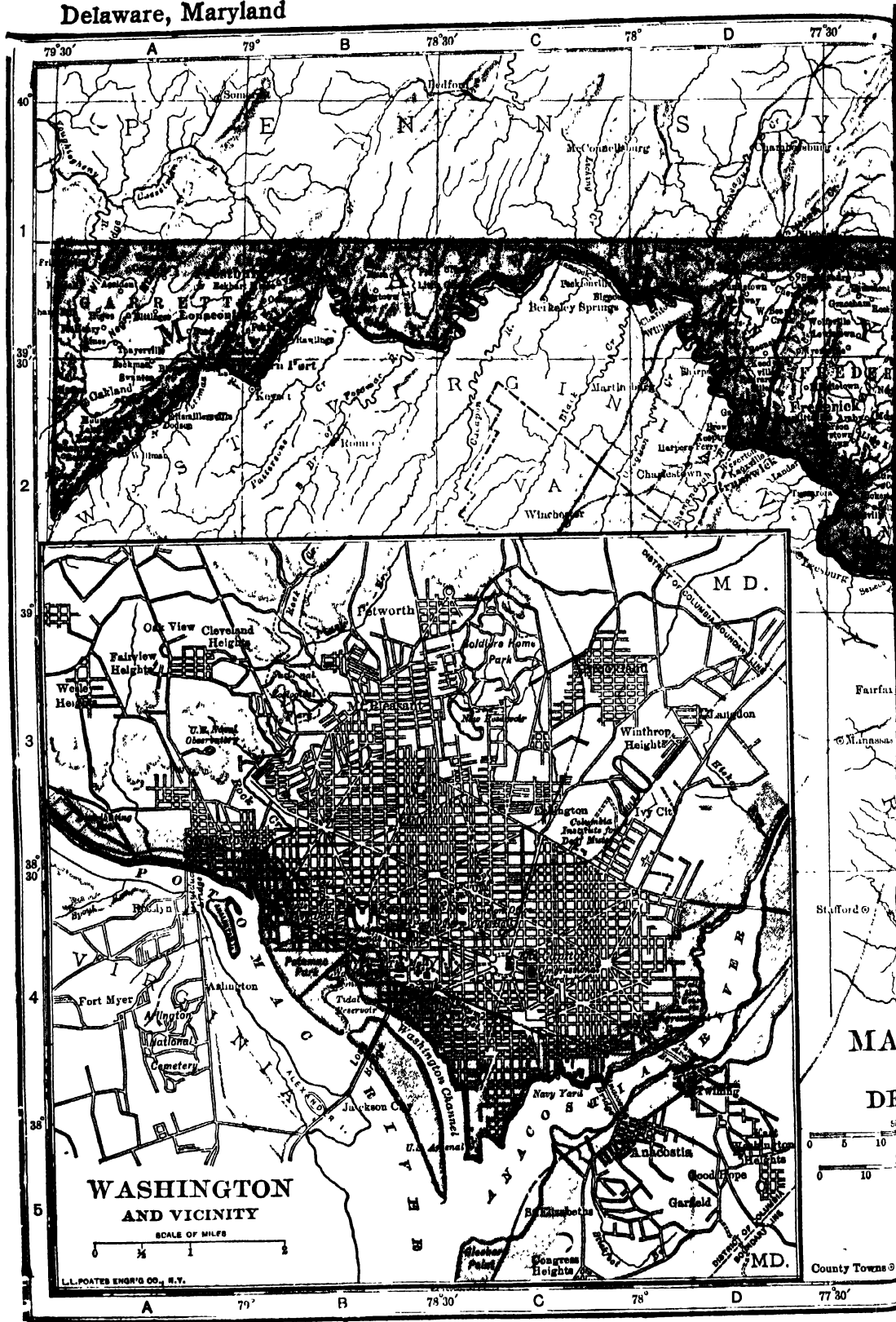
[illegible]

Maine



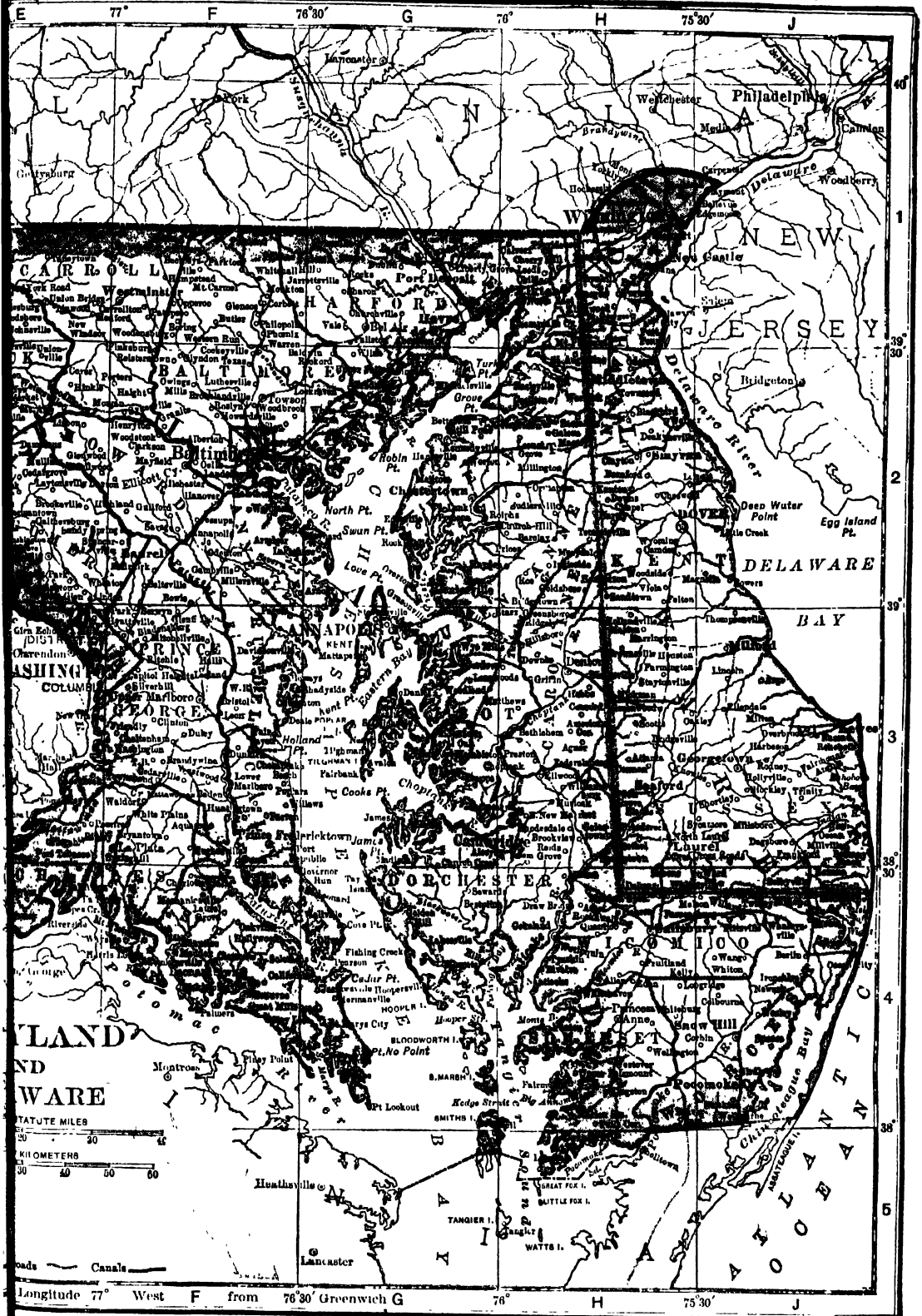


# Delaware, Maryland

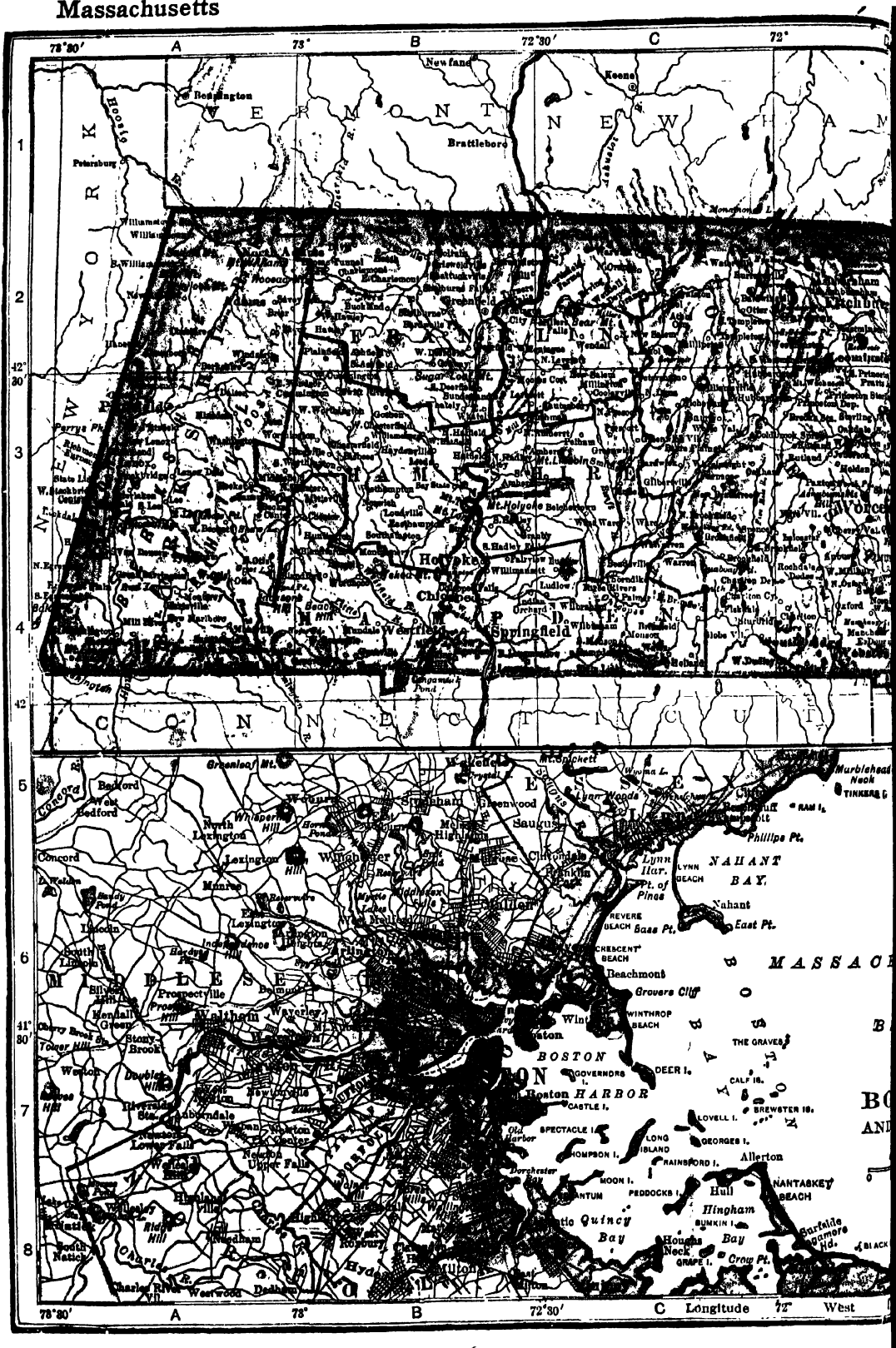




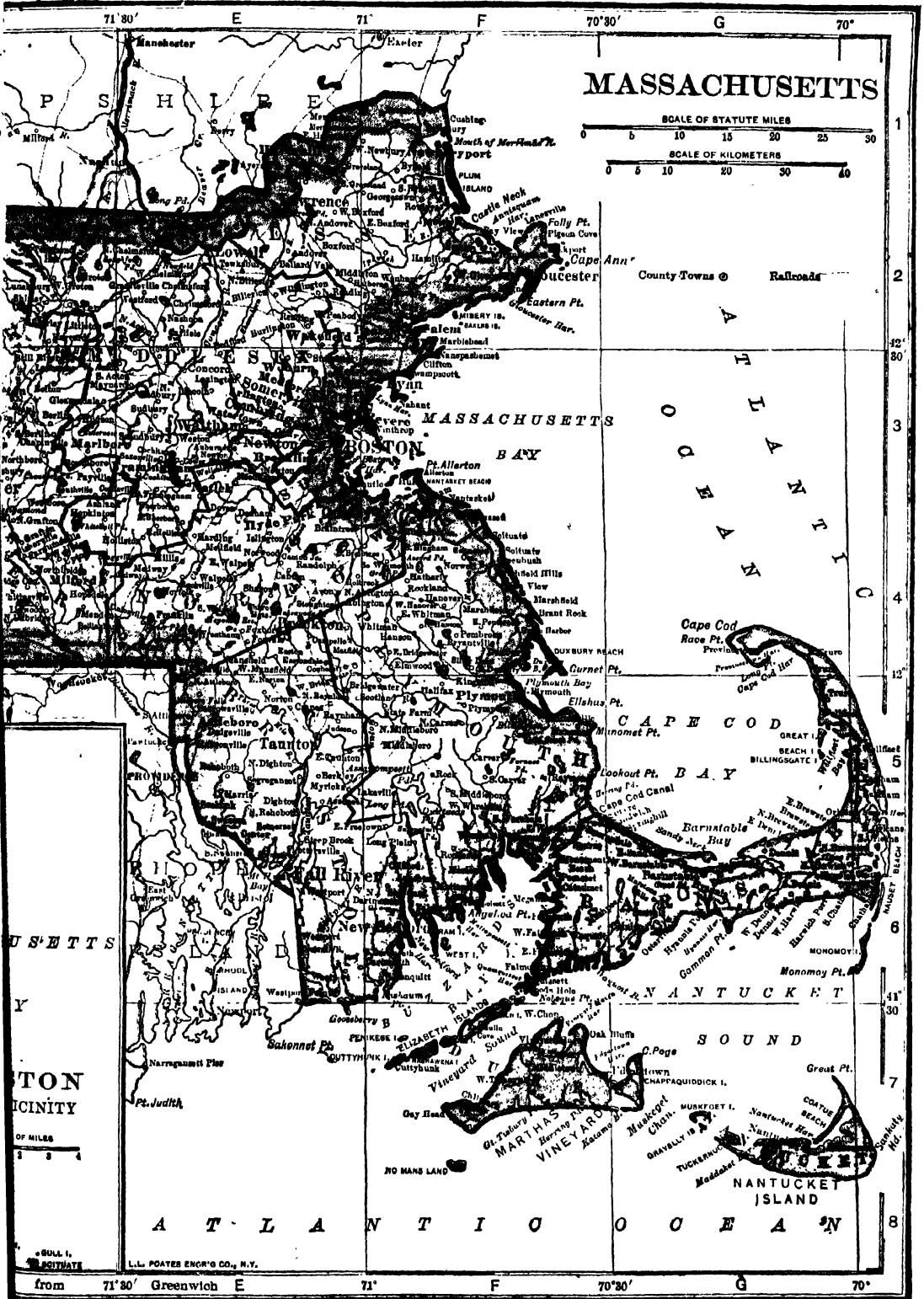
# Delaware, Maryland

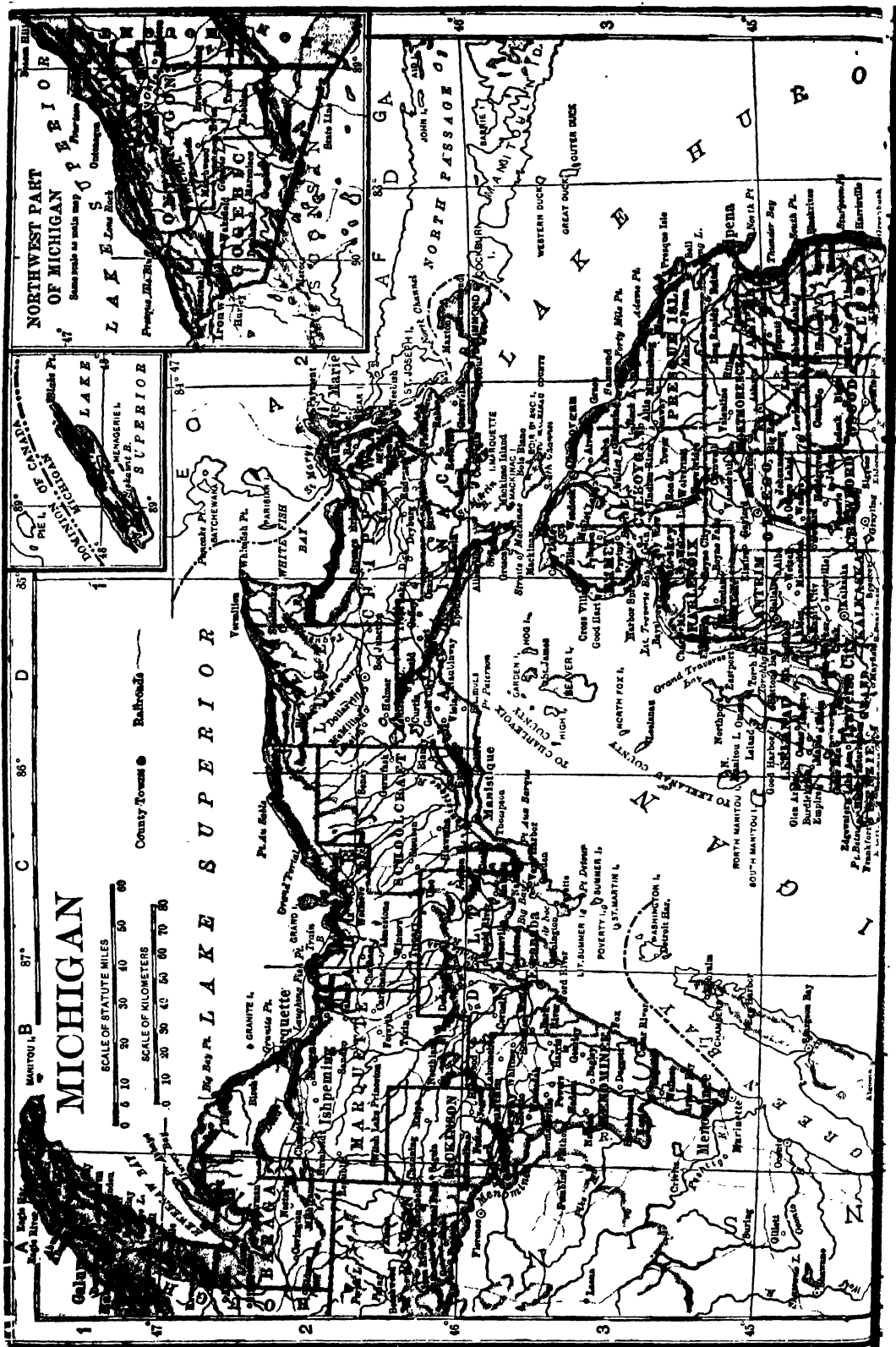


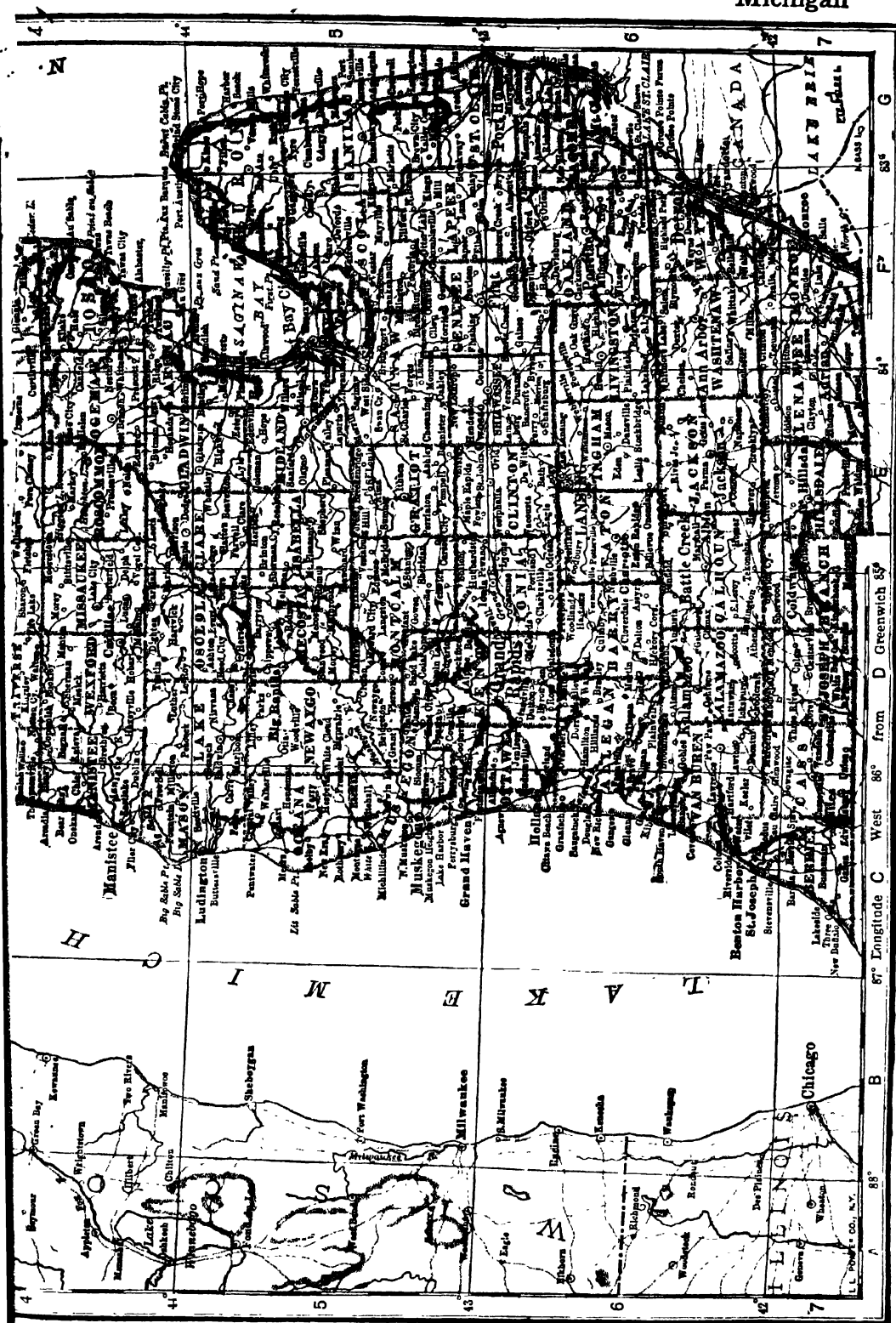
# Massachusetts



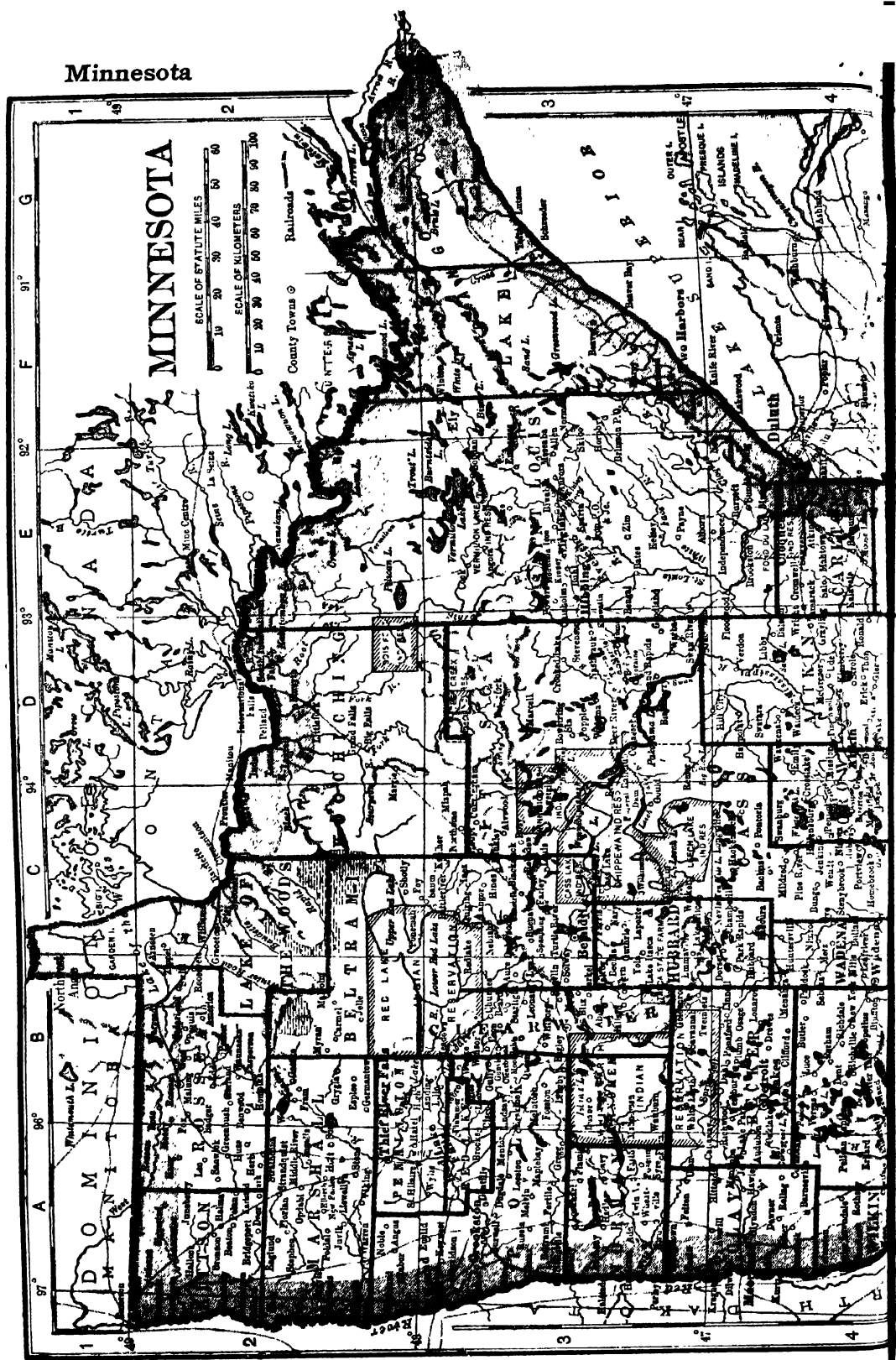
Massachusetts

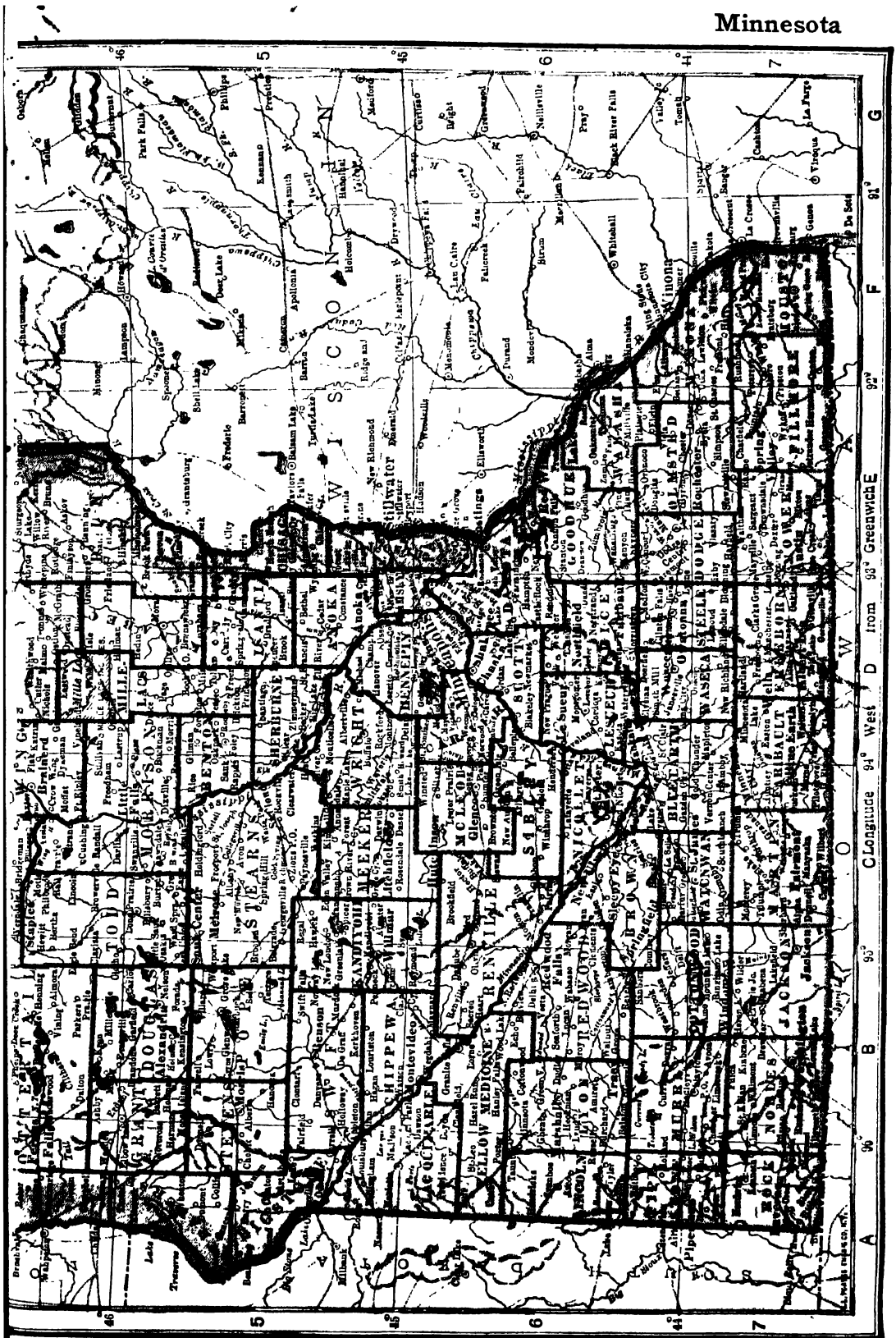






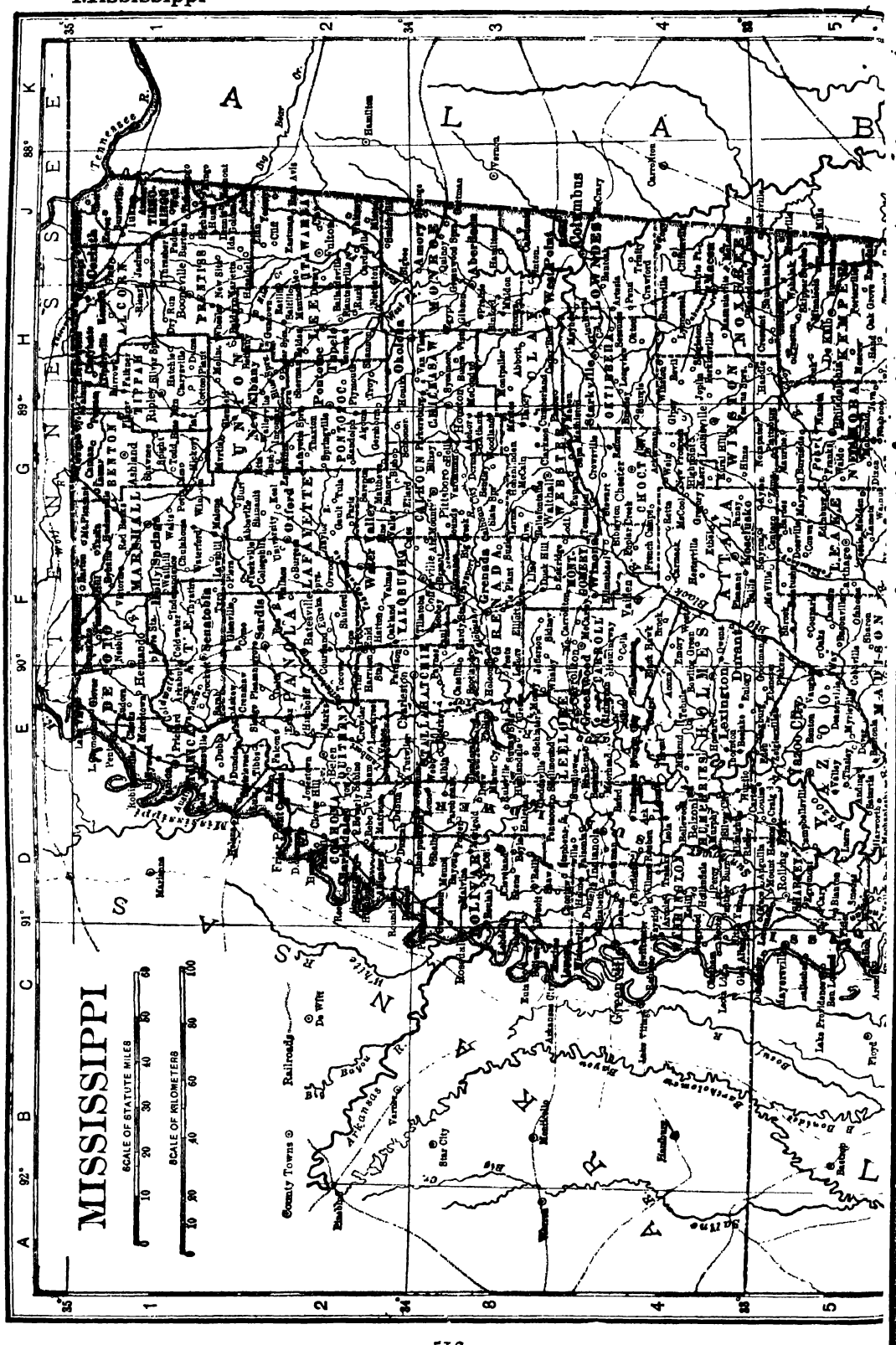
# Minnesota



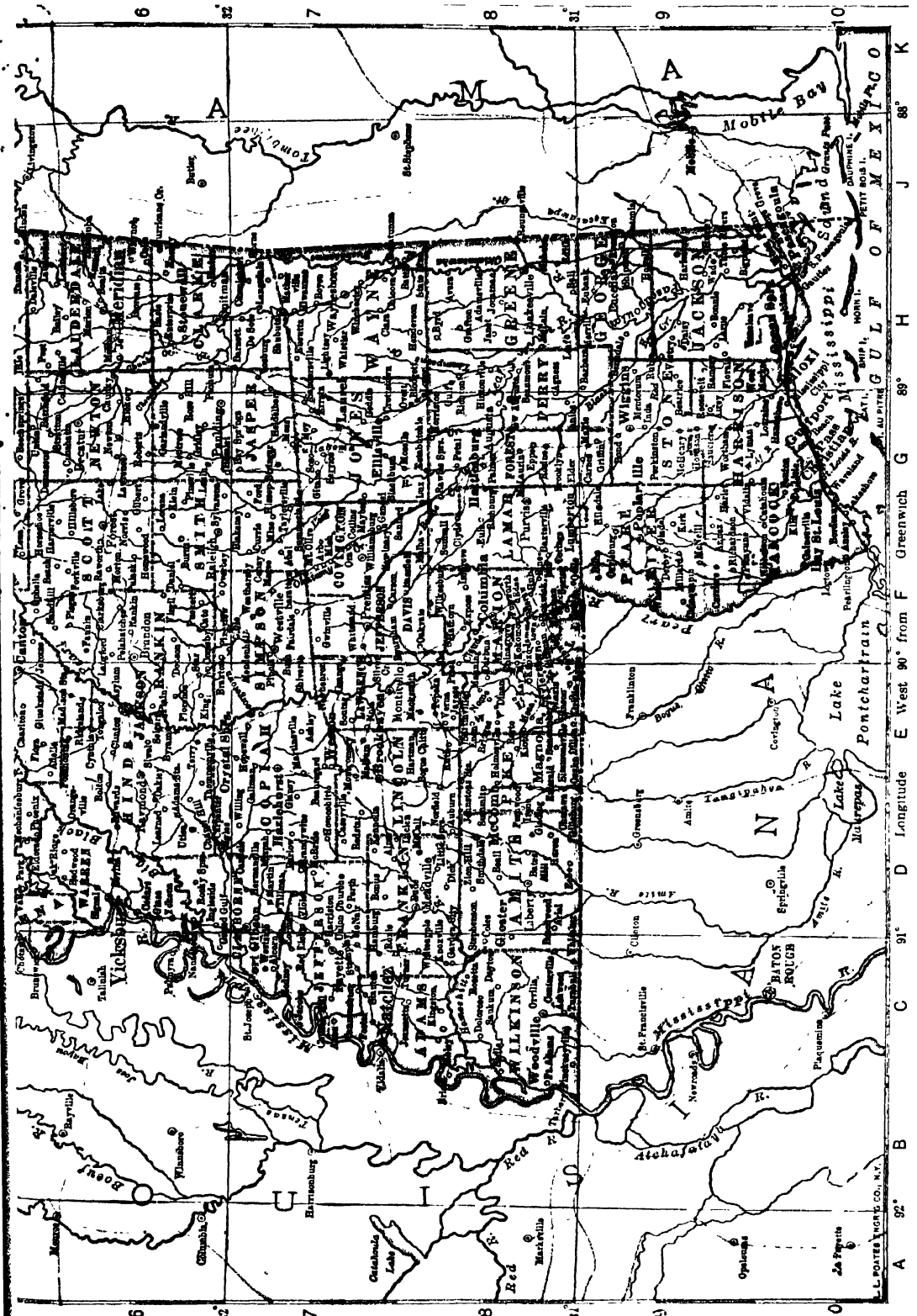




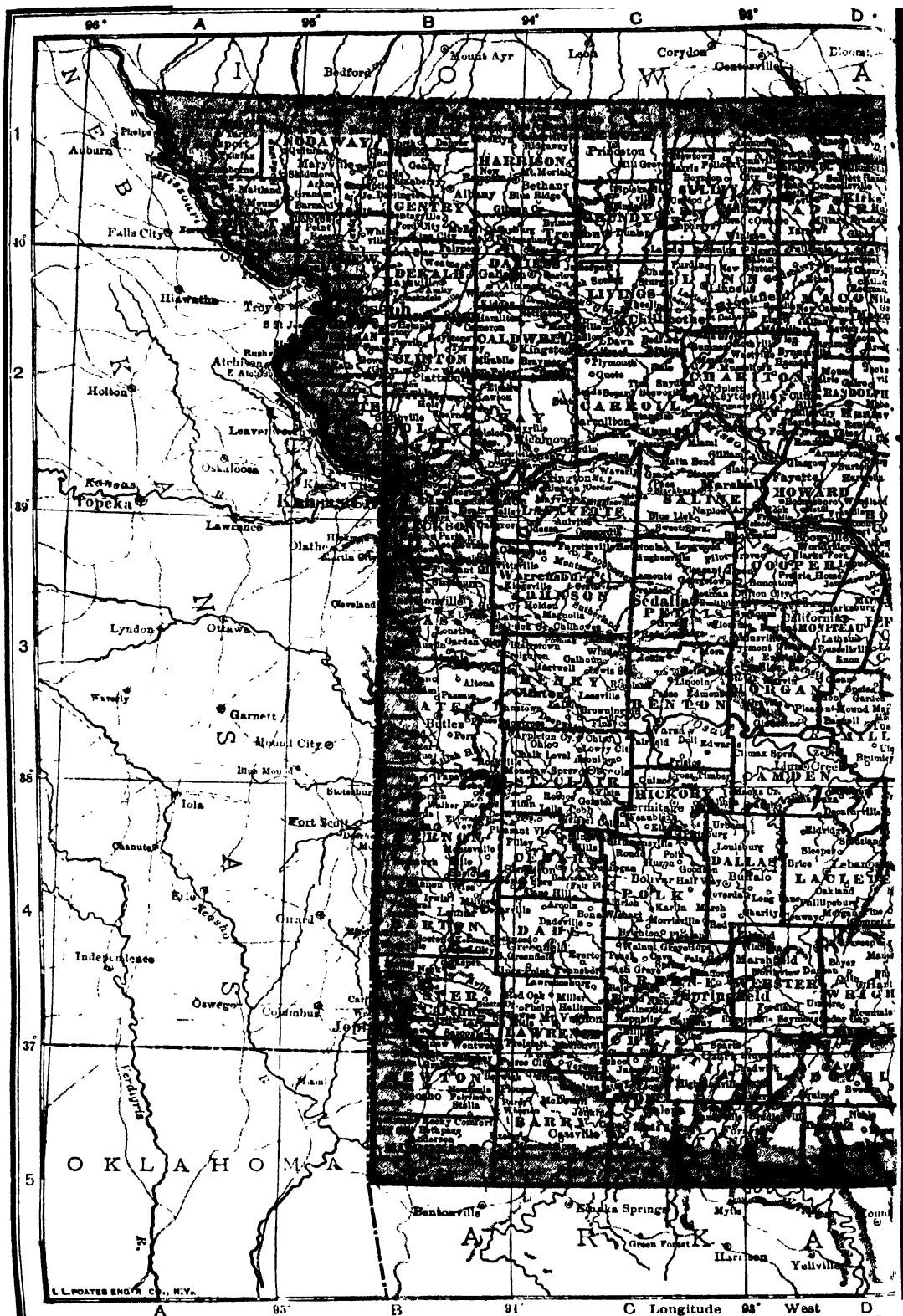
# Mississippi

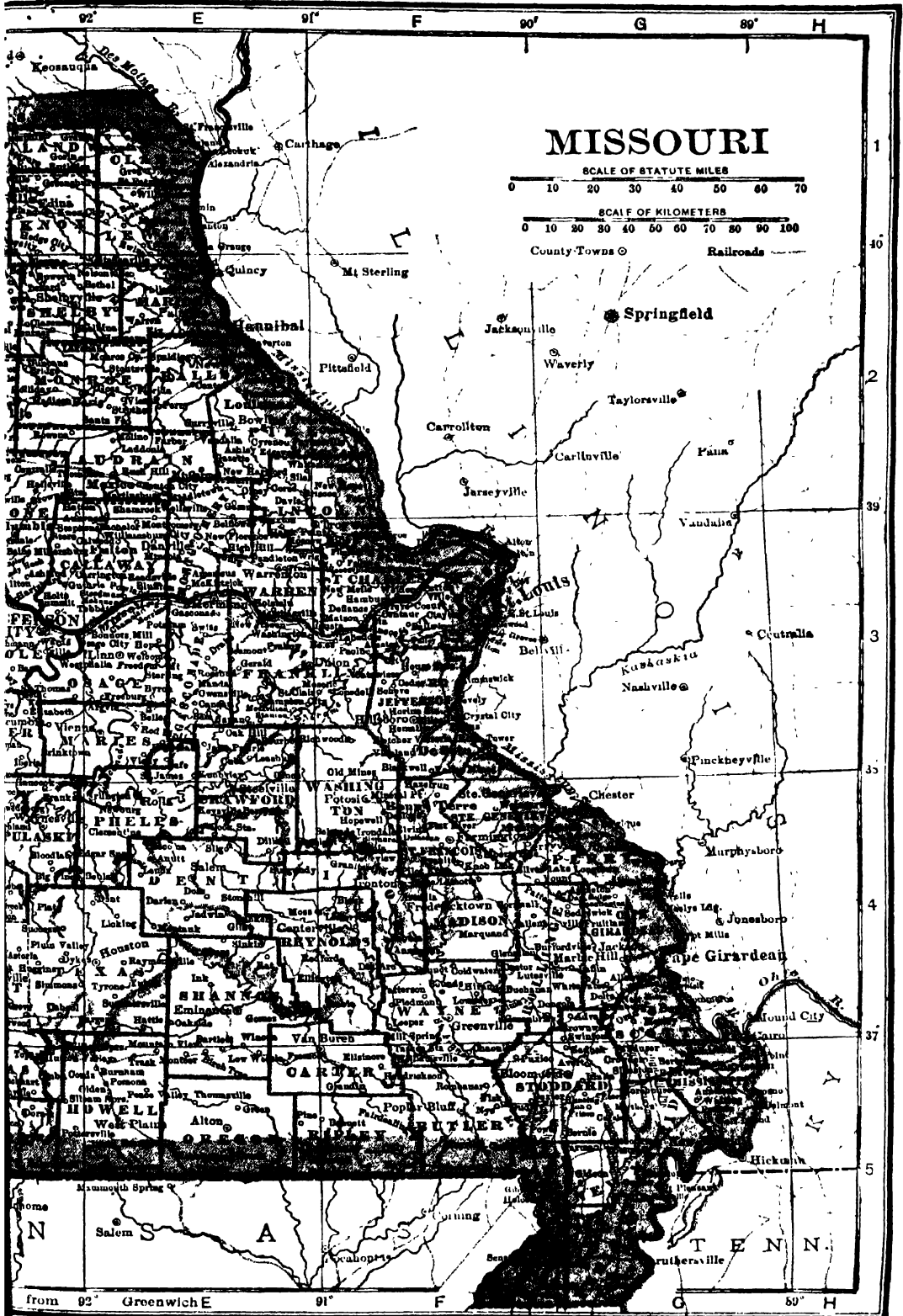






# Missouri

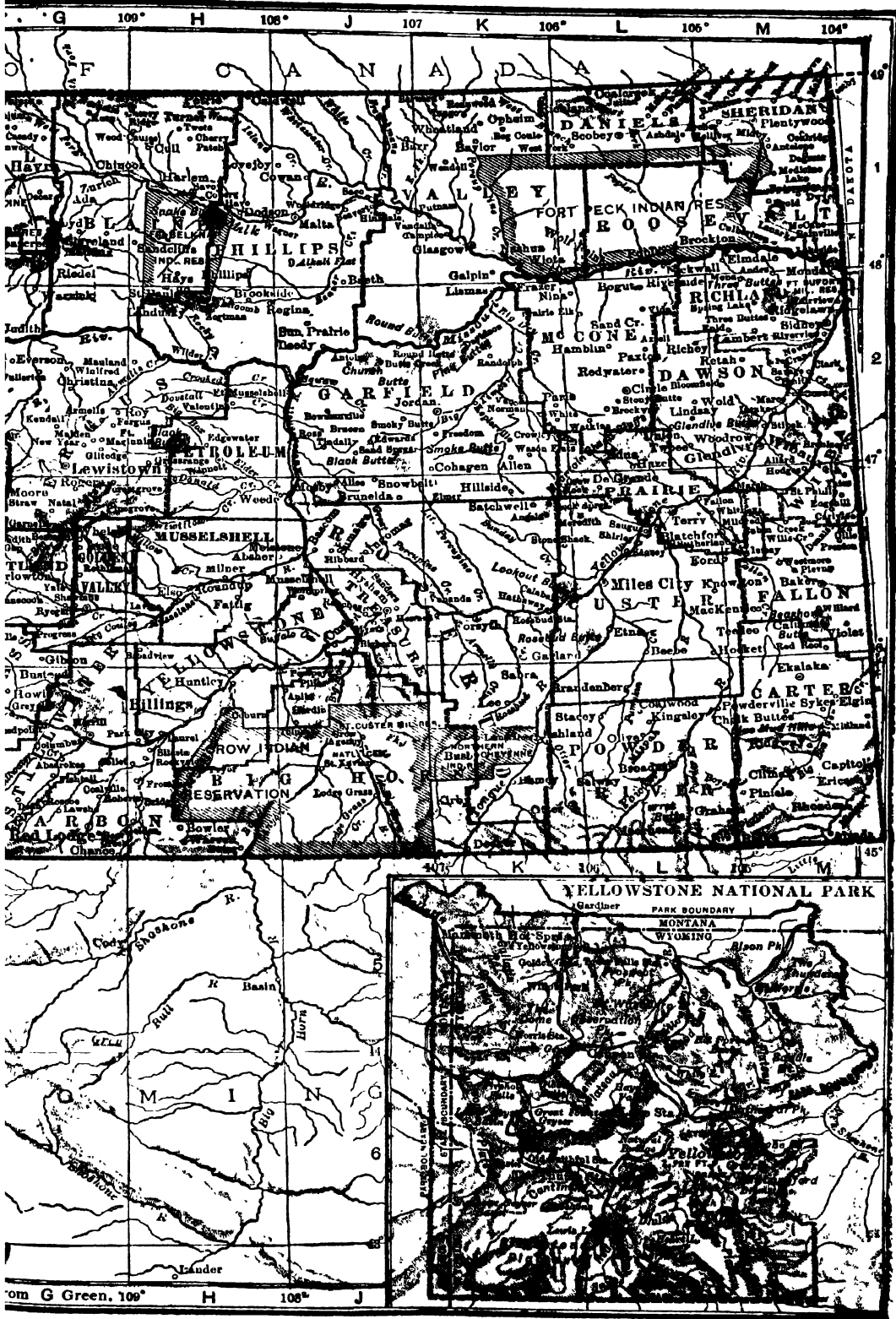




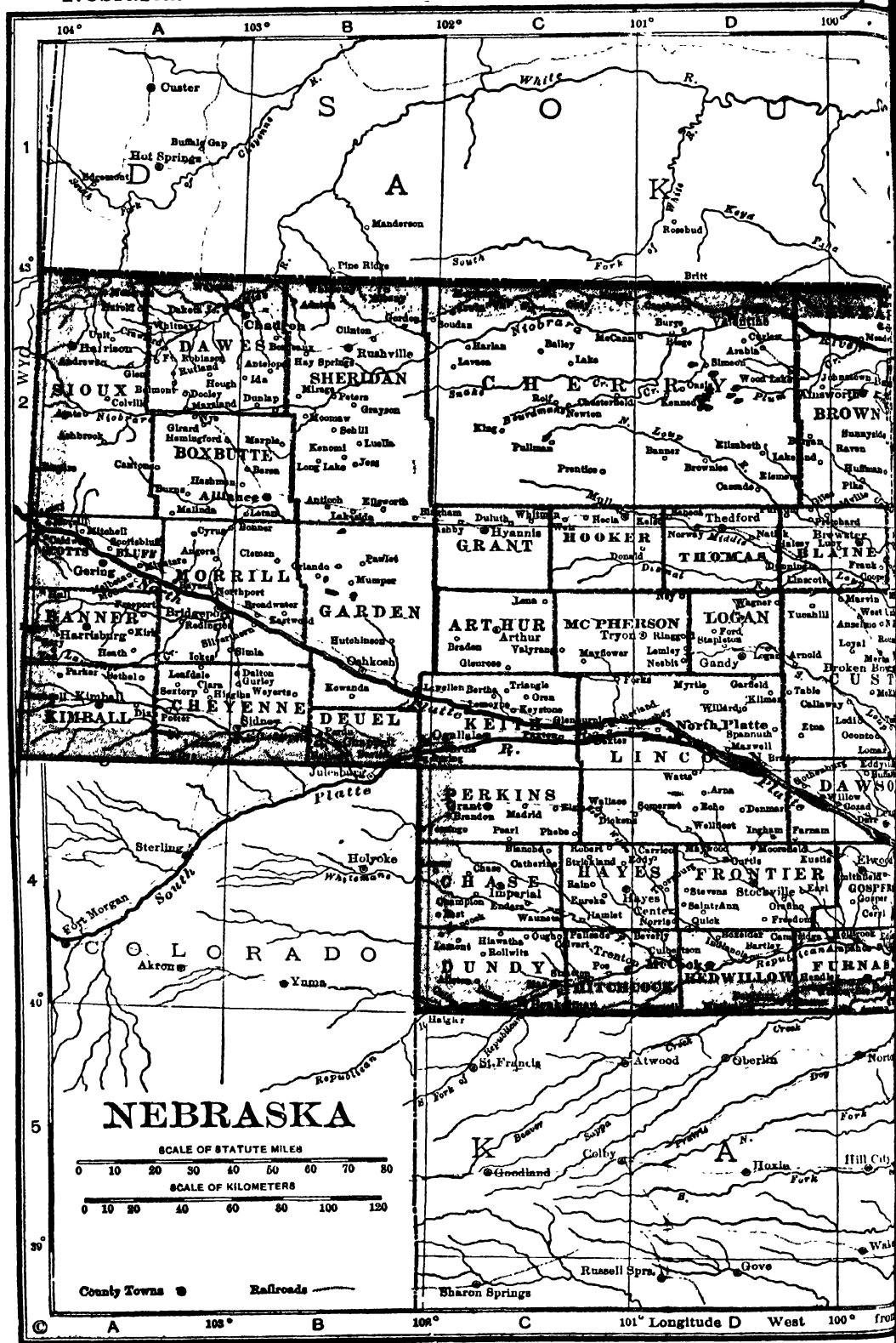
# Montana



# Montana



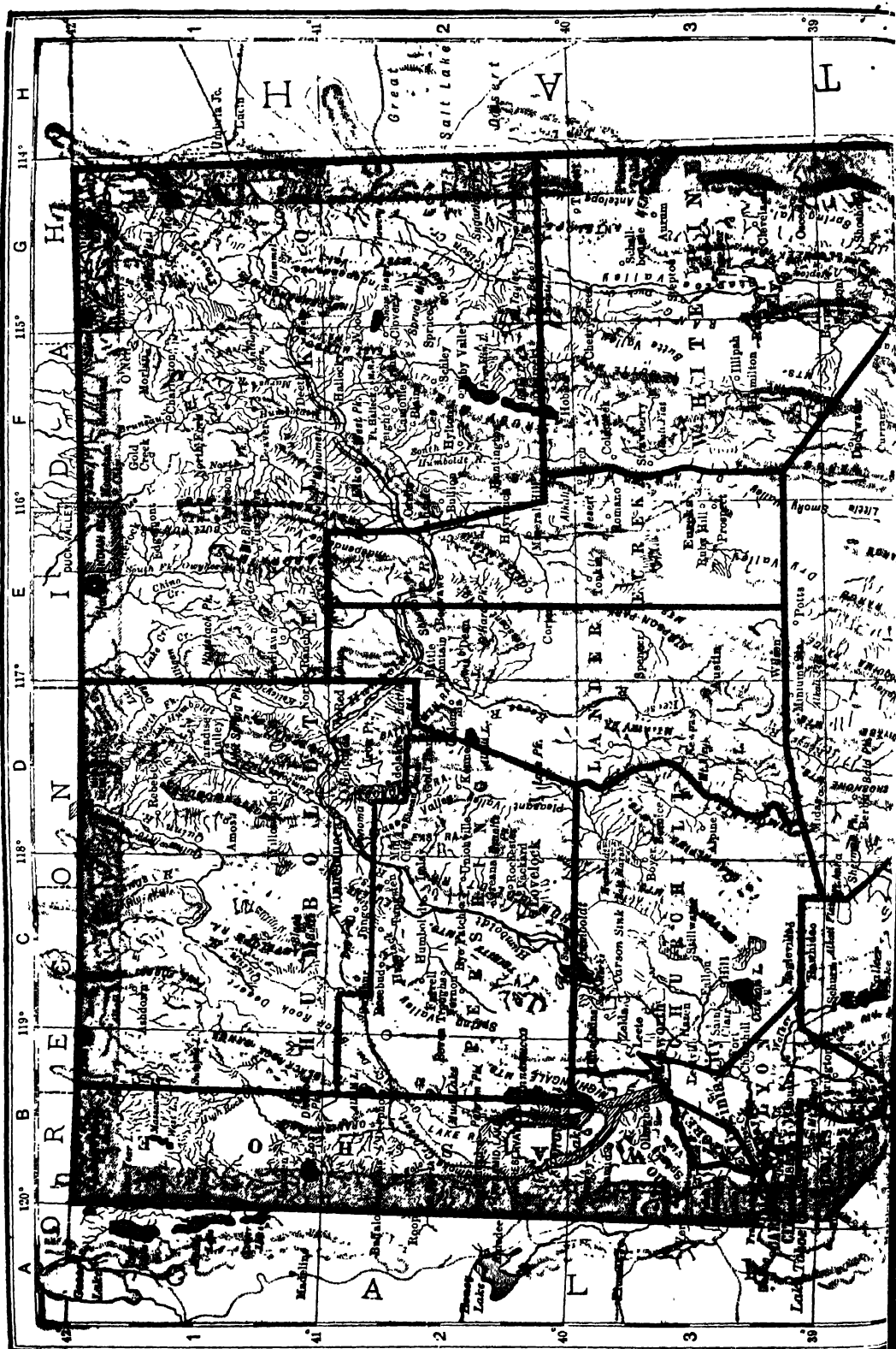
## Nebraska



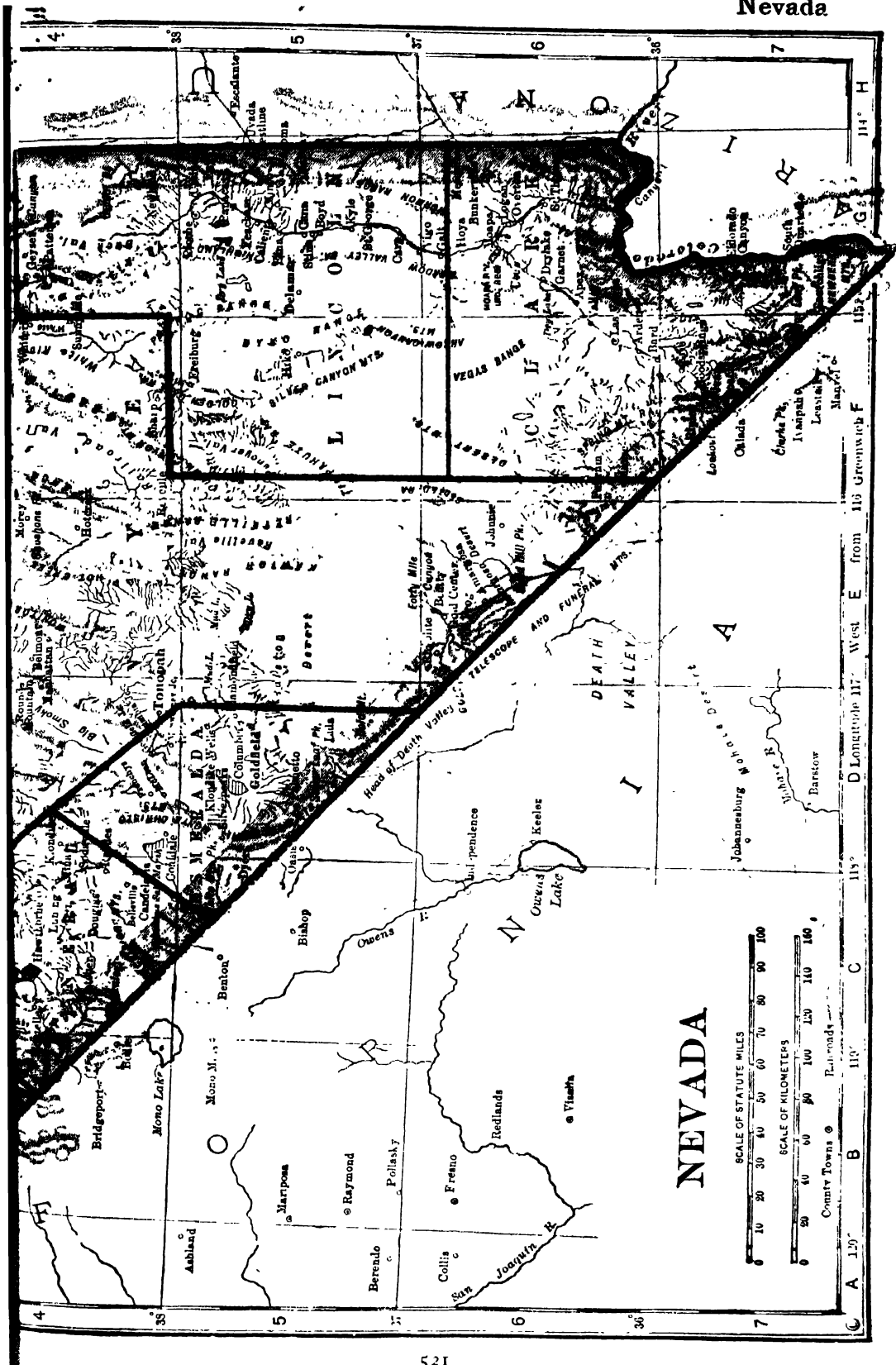
This is a detailed black and white map of Nebraska, showing county boundaries, major cities, and geographical features. The map is labeled with county names such as Adams, Baker, Blaine, Boone, Box Elder, and others. Major cities like Omaha, Lincoln, and Kansas City are marked. The map includes a grid with latitude and longitude coordinates.



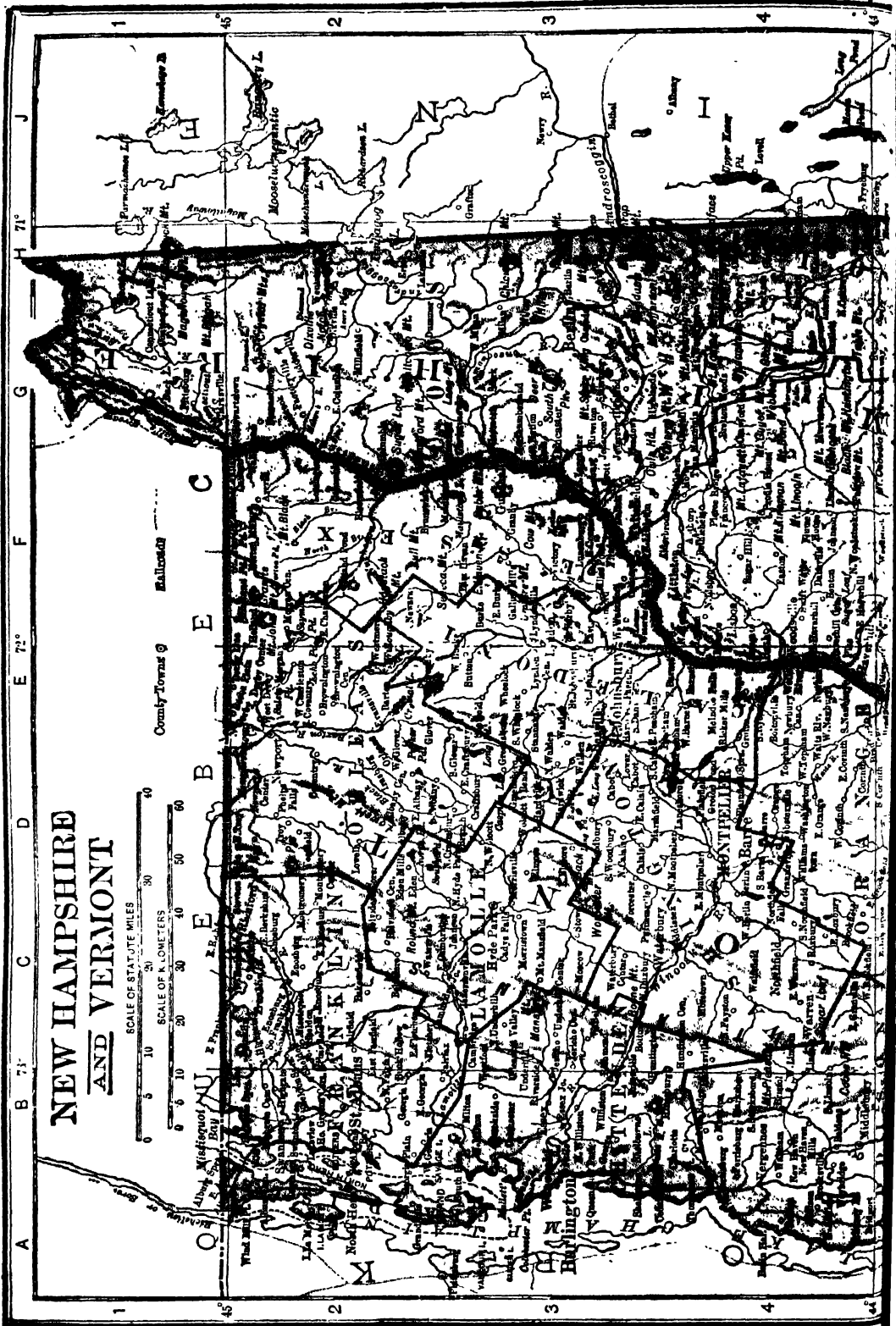
# Nevada



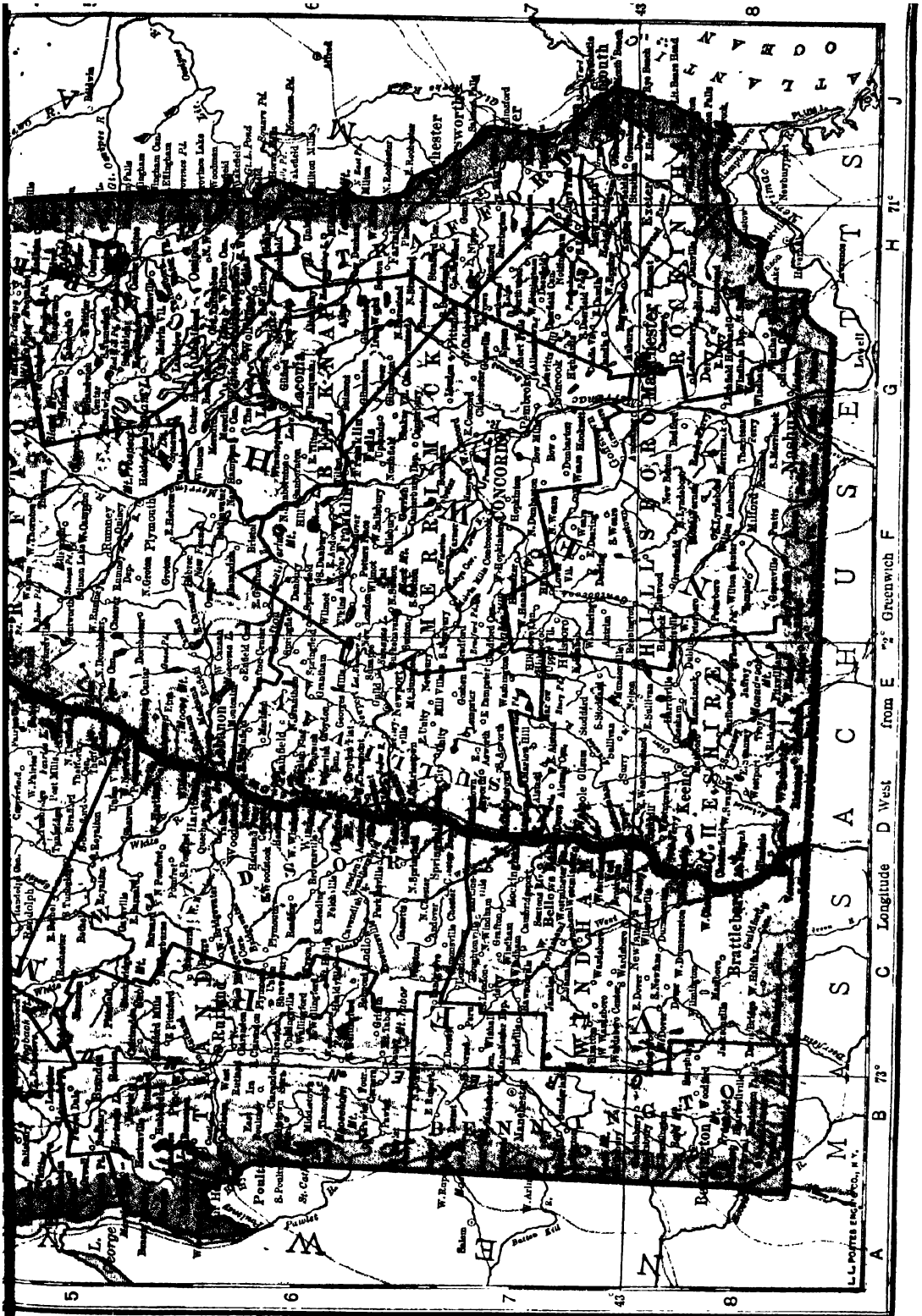




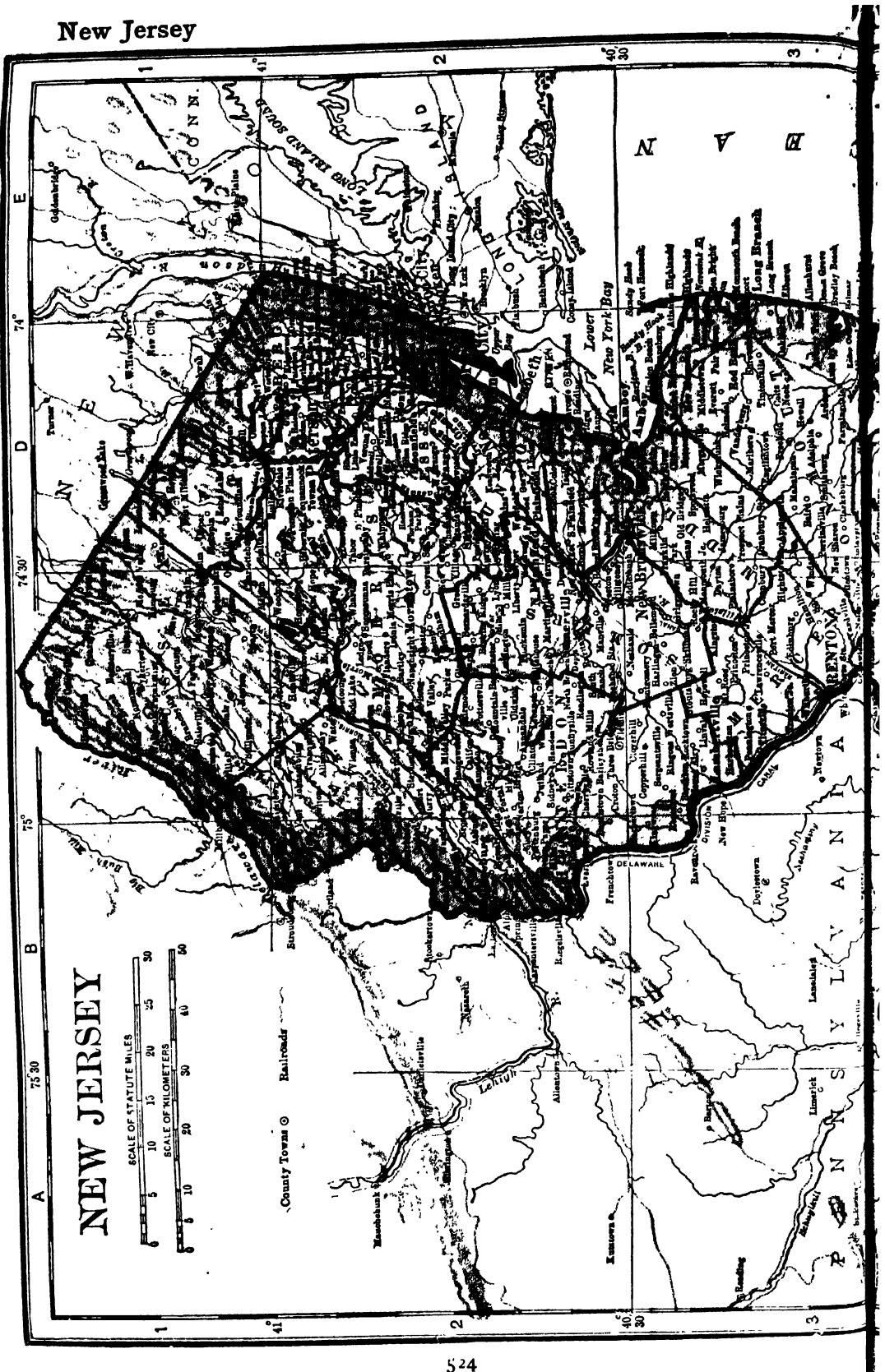
# New Hampshire, Vermont

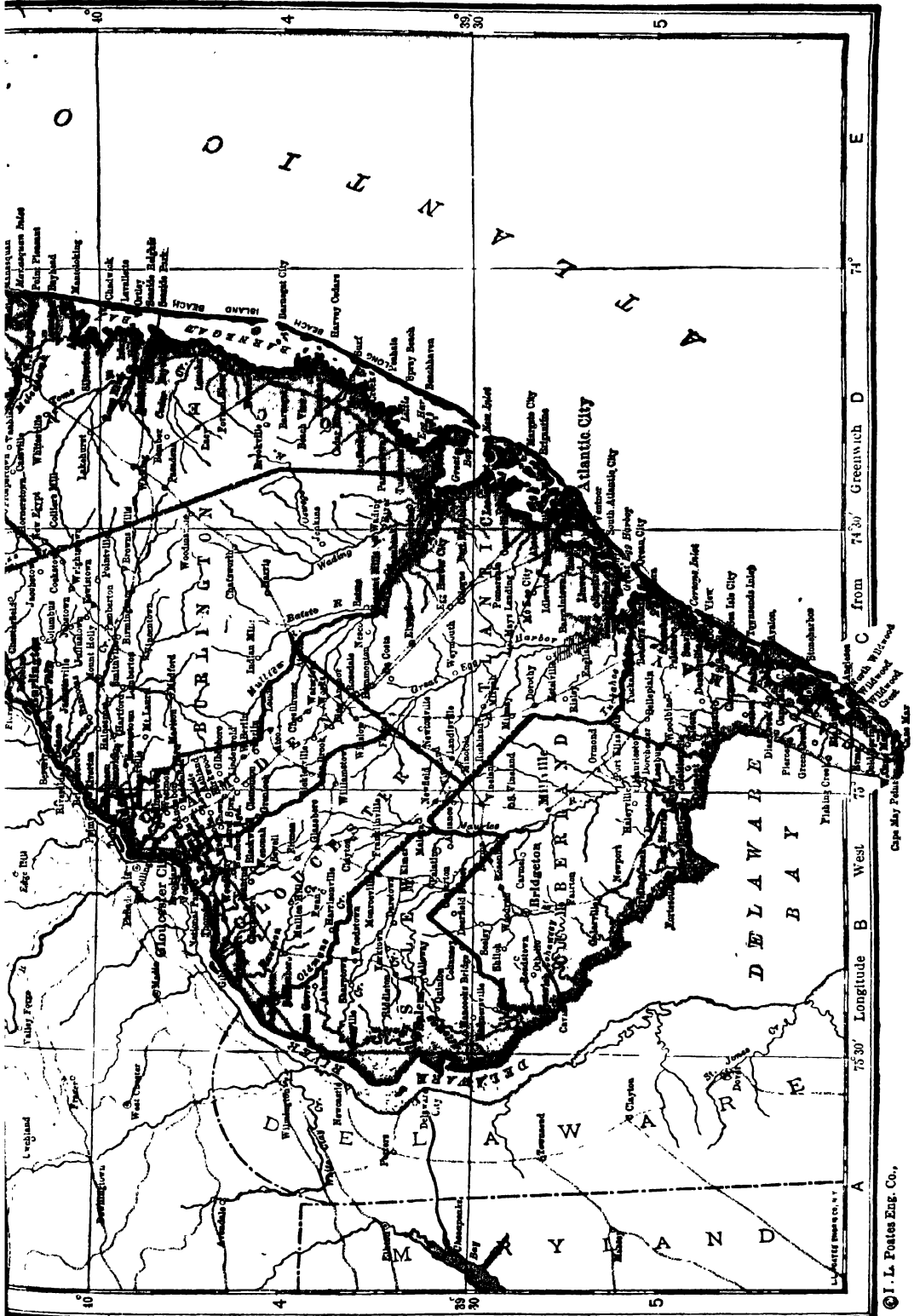


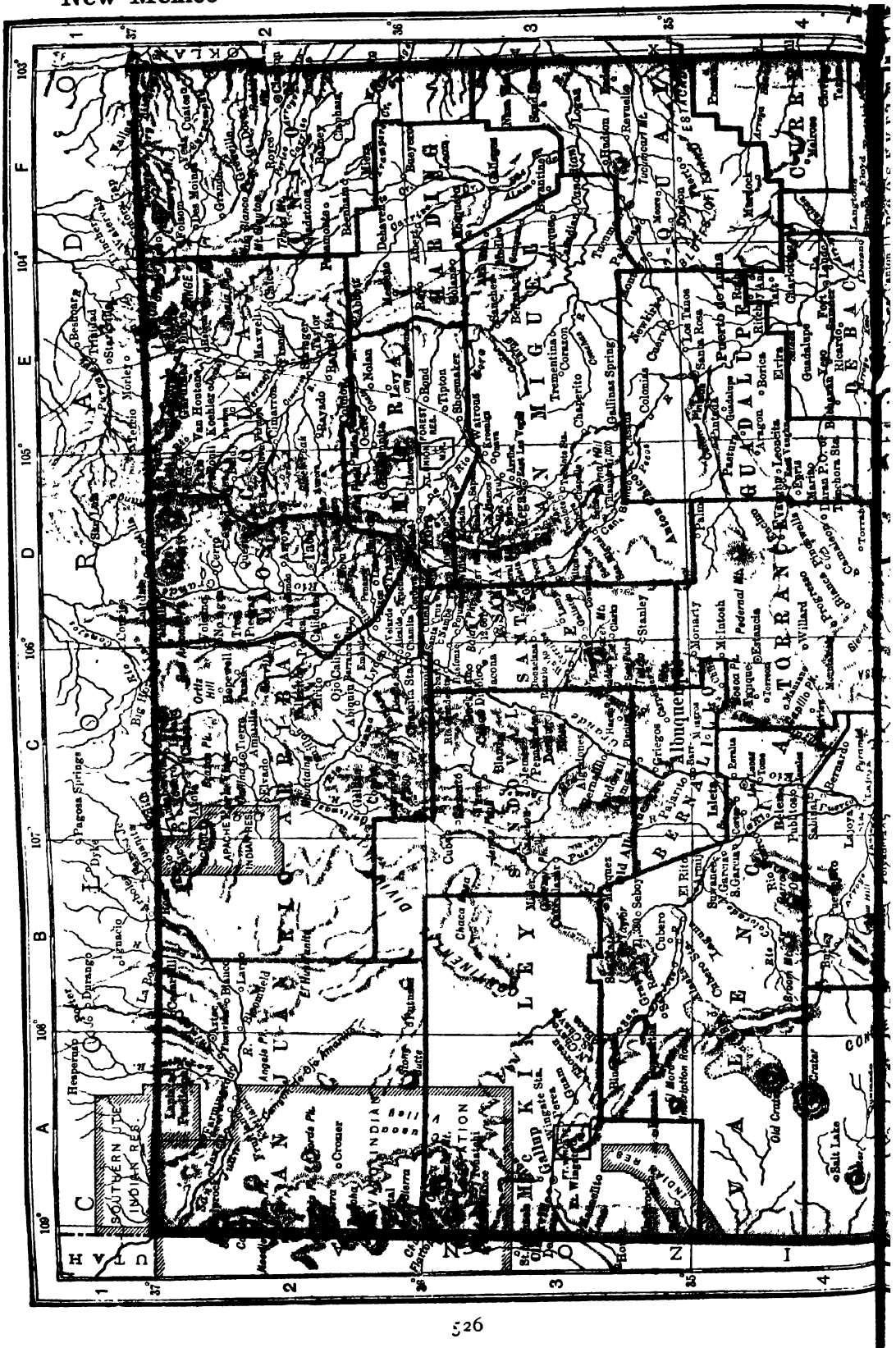
# New Hampshire, Vermont

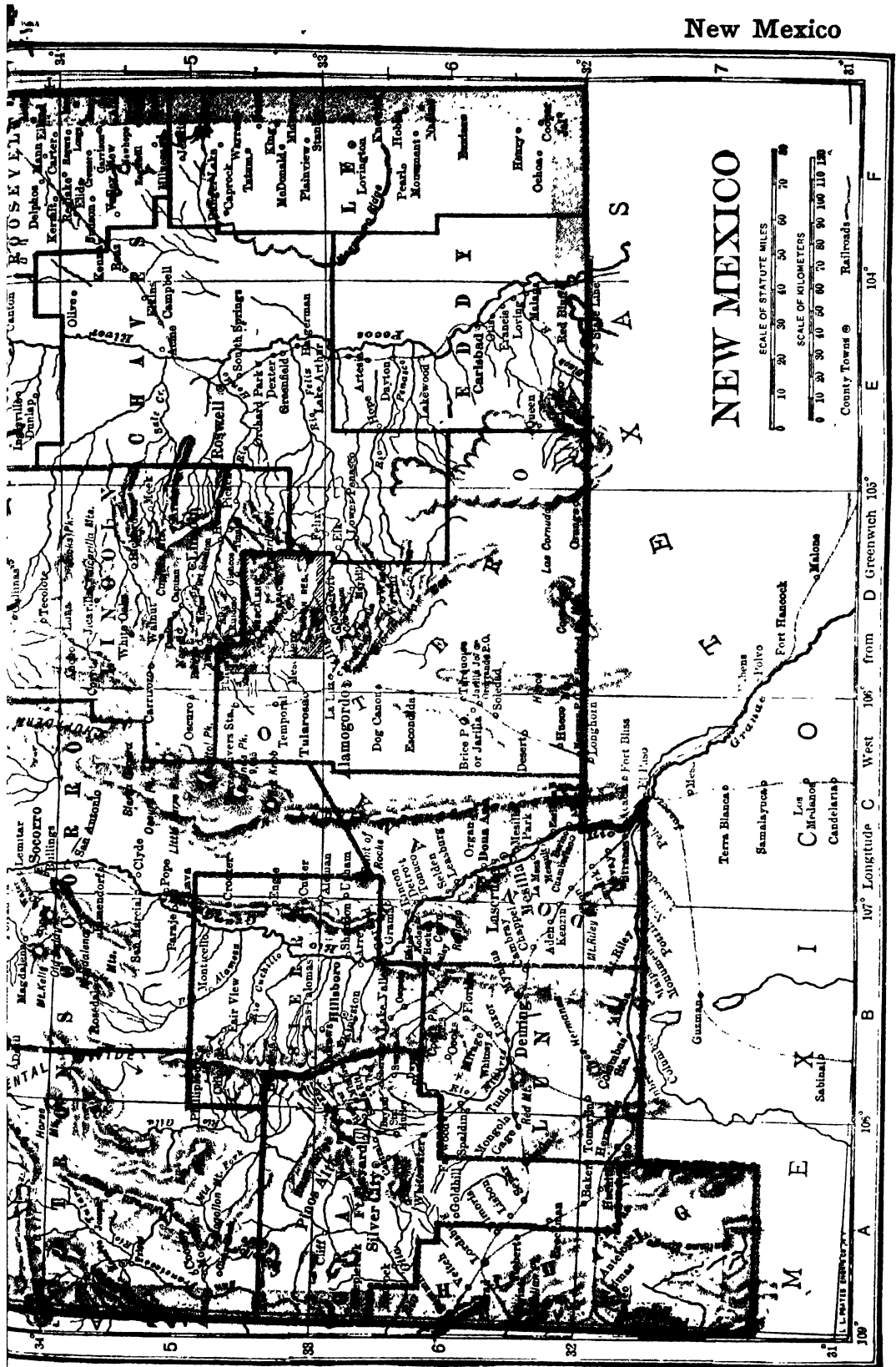


# New Jersey

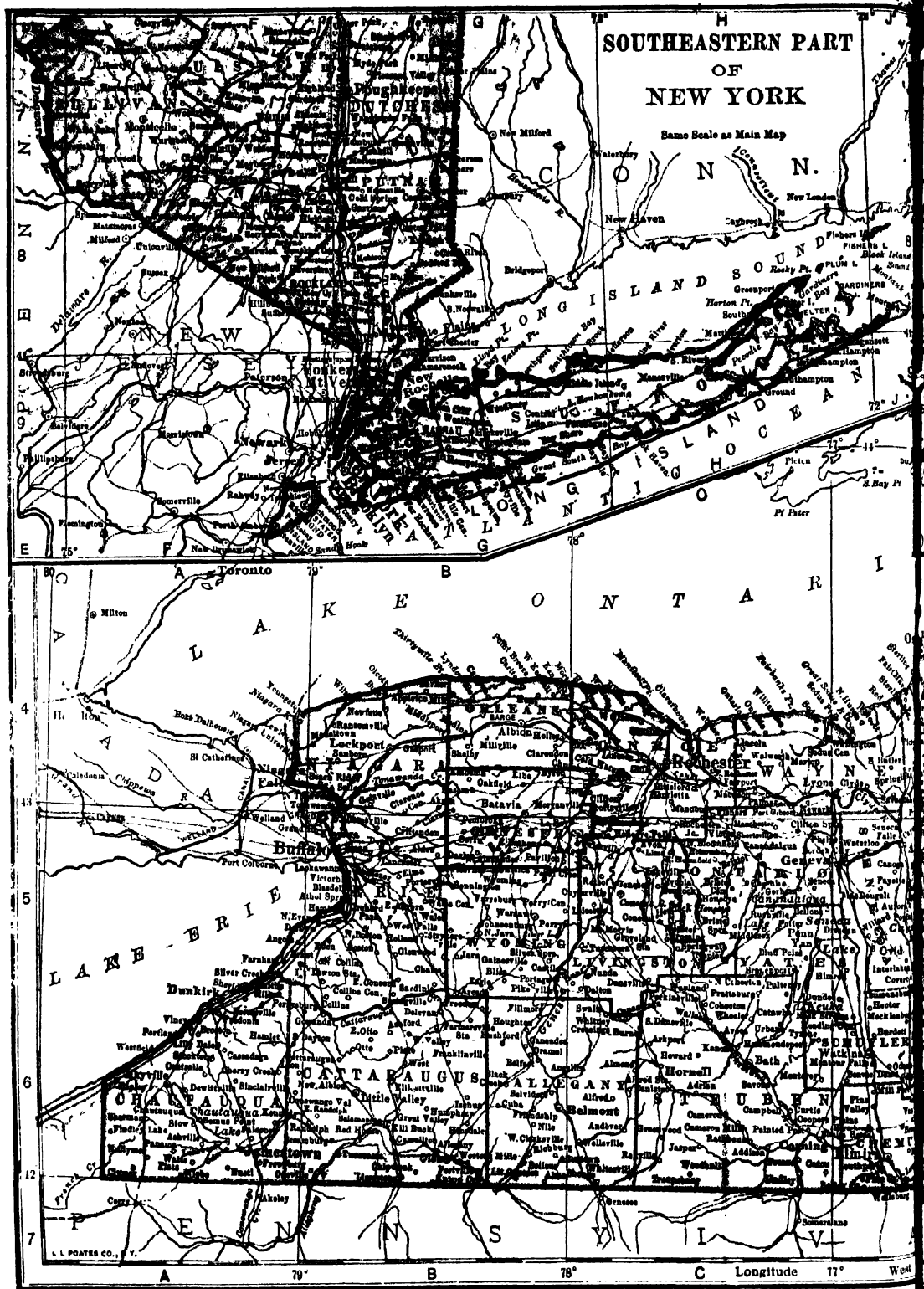








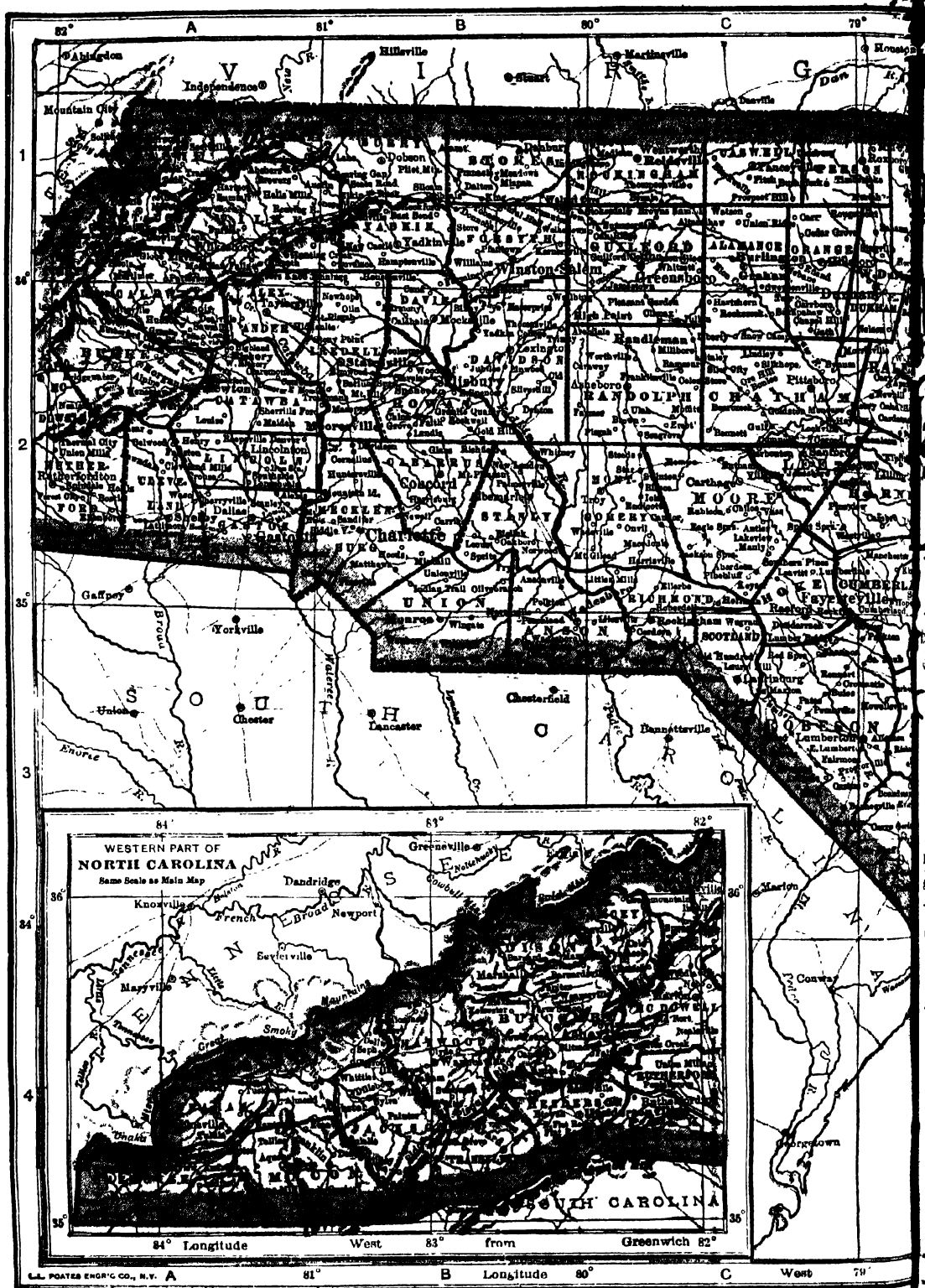
**New York**



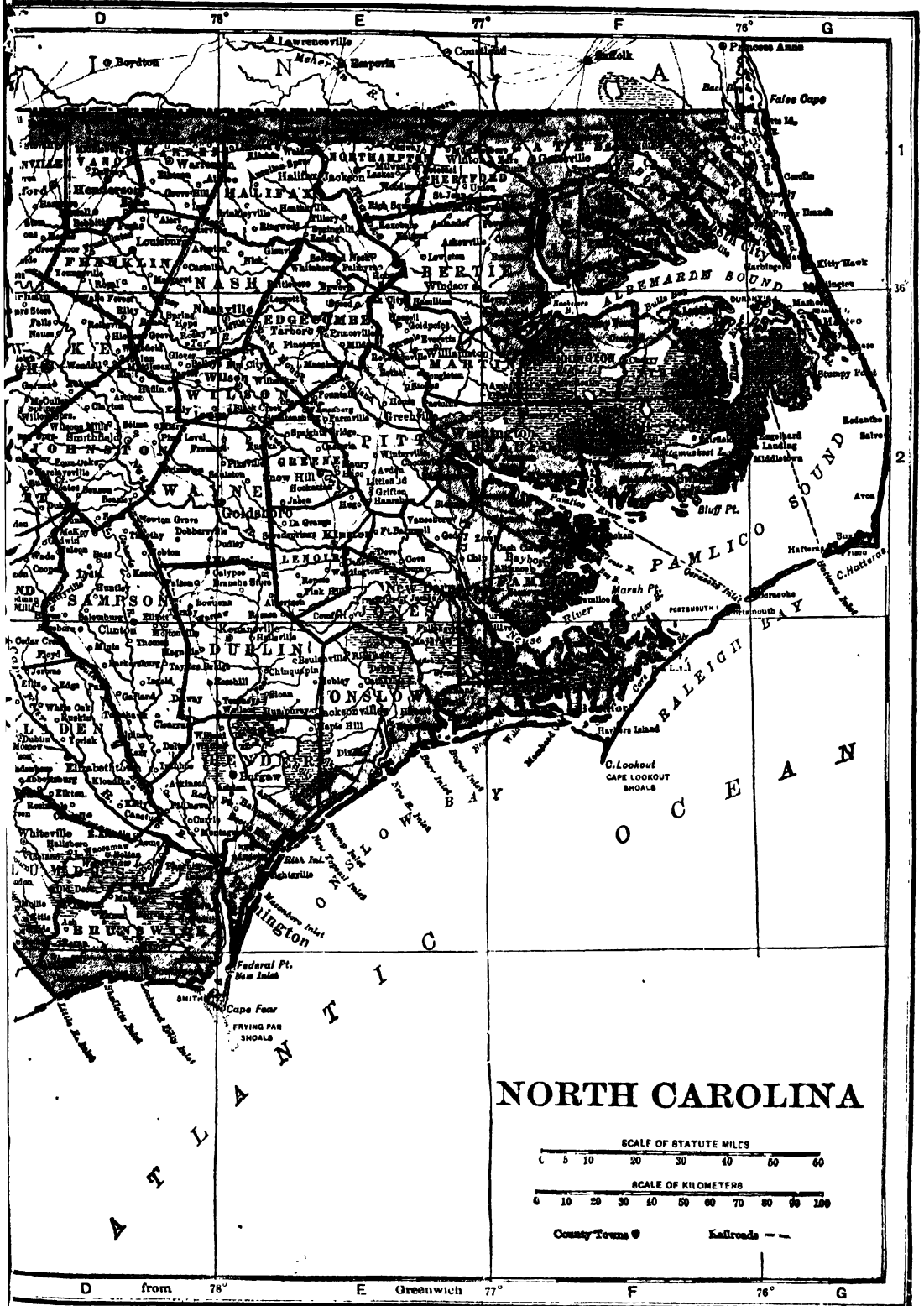




# North Carolina



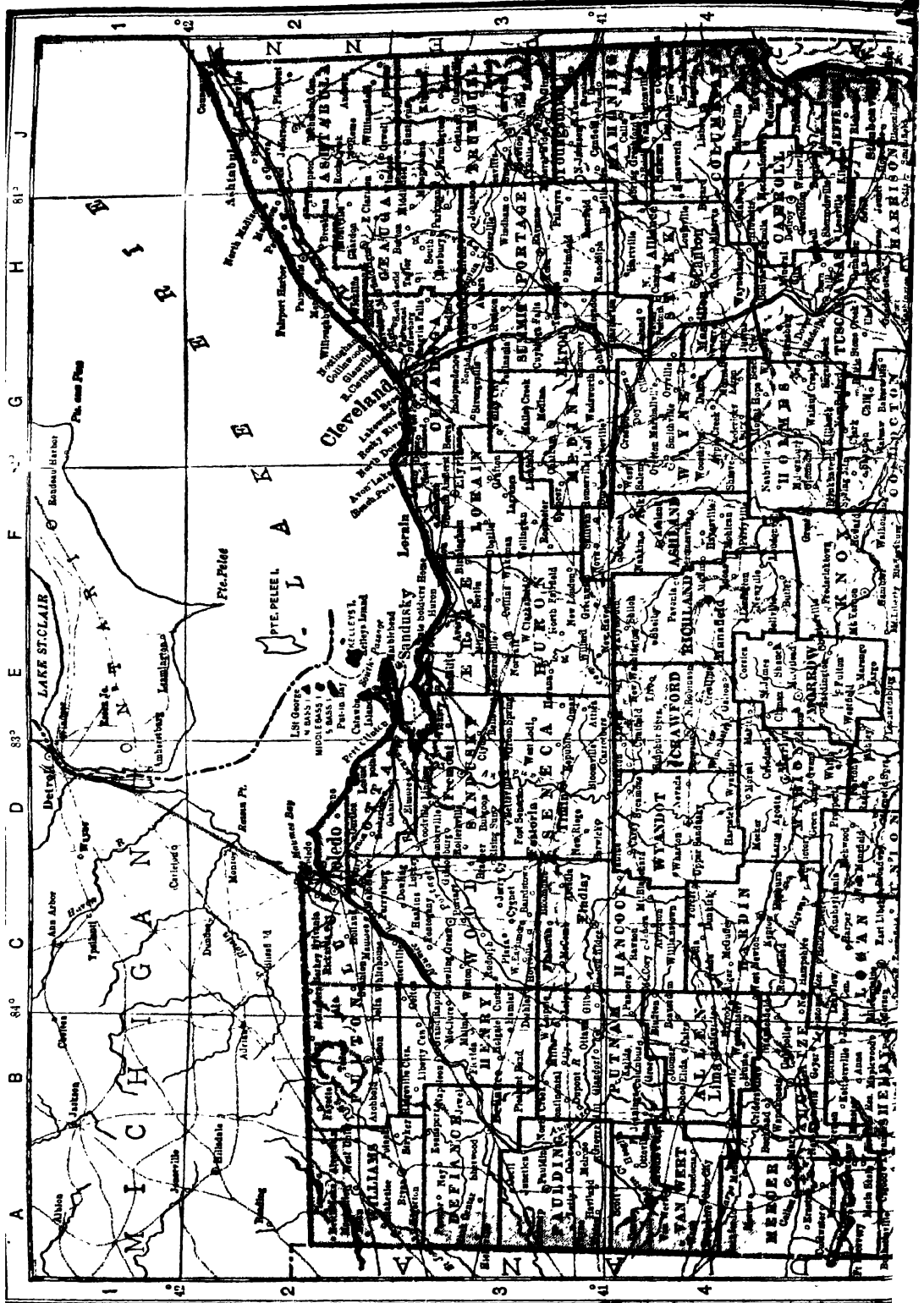
# North Carolina

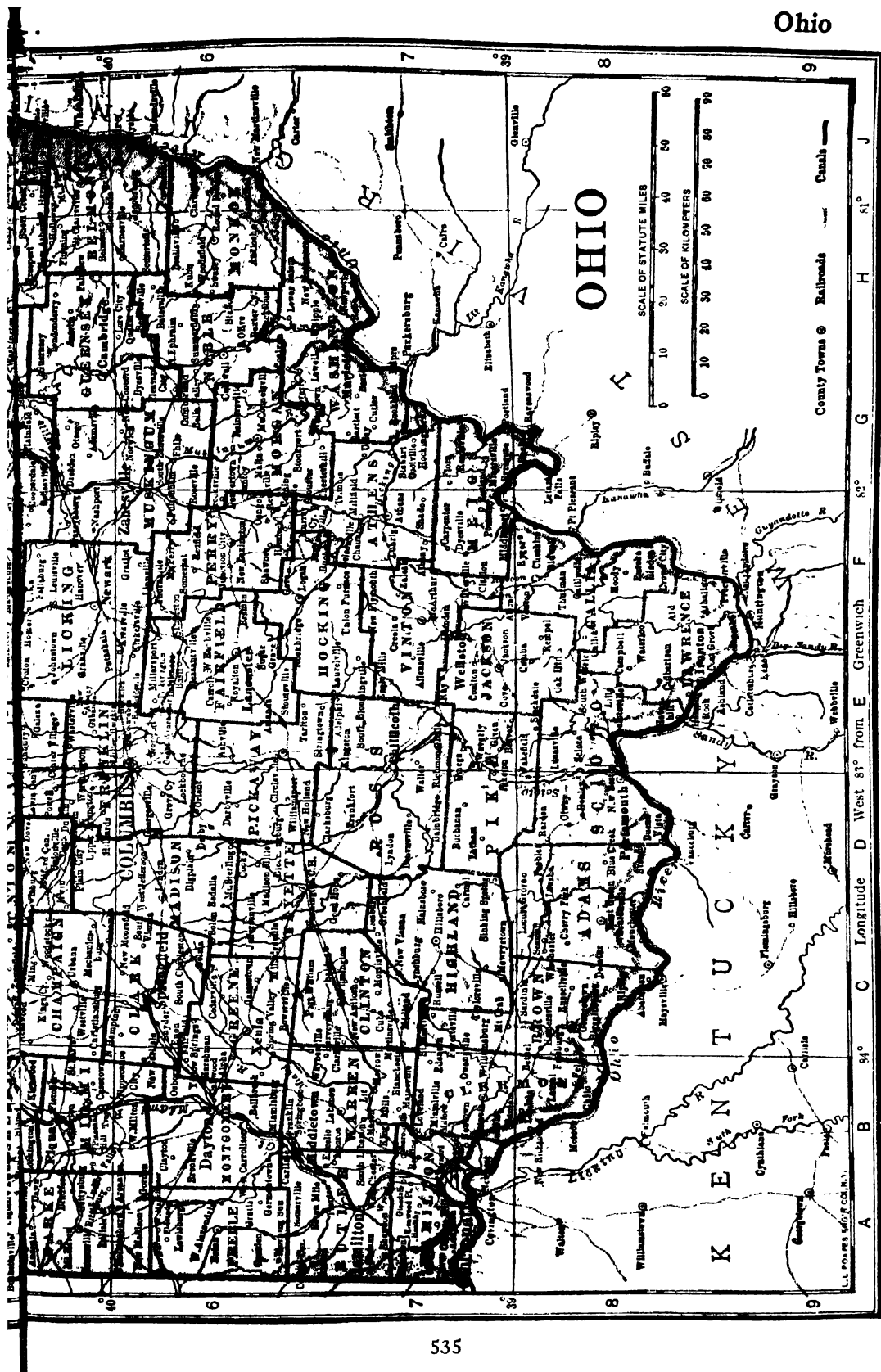


## North Dakota



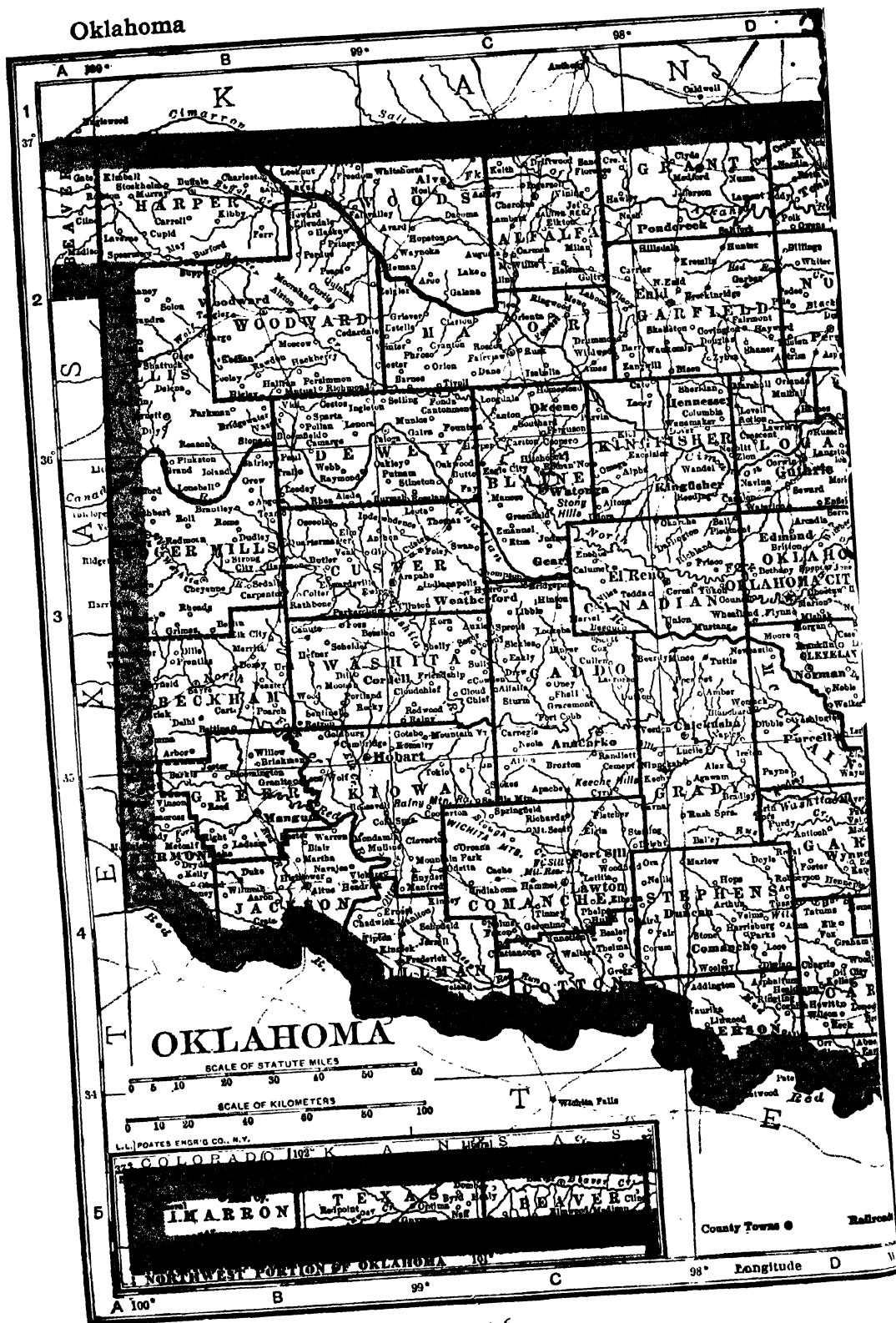
This is a detailed black and white map of North Dakota, showing county boundaries, major cities, and geographical features. The map is labeled with county names such as Adams, Barnes, Beadle, and Bottineau. Major cities like Grand Forks, Minot, and Bismarck are marked. The map includes a grid with latitude and longitude coordinates and a scale bar at the bottom.







## Oklahoma





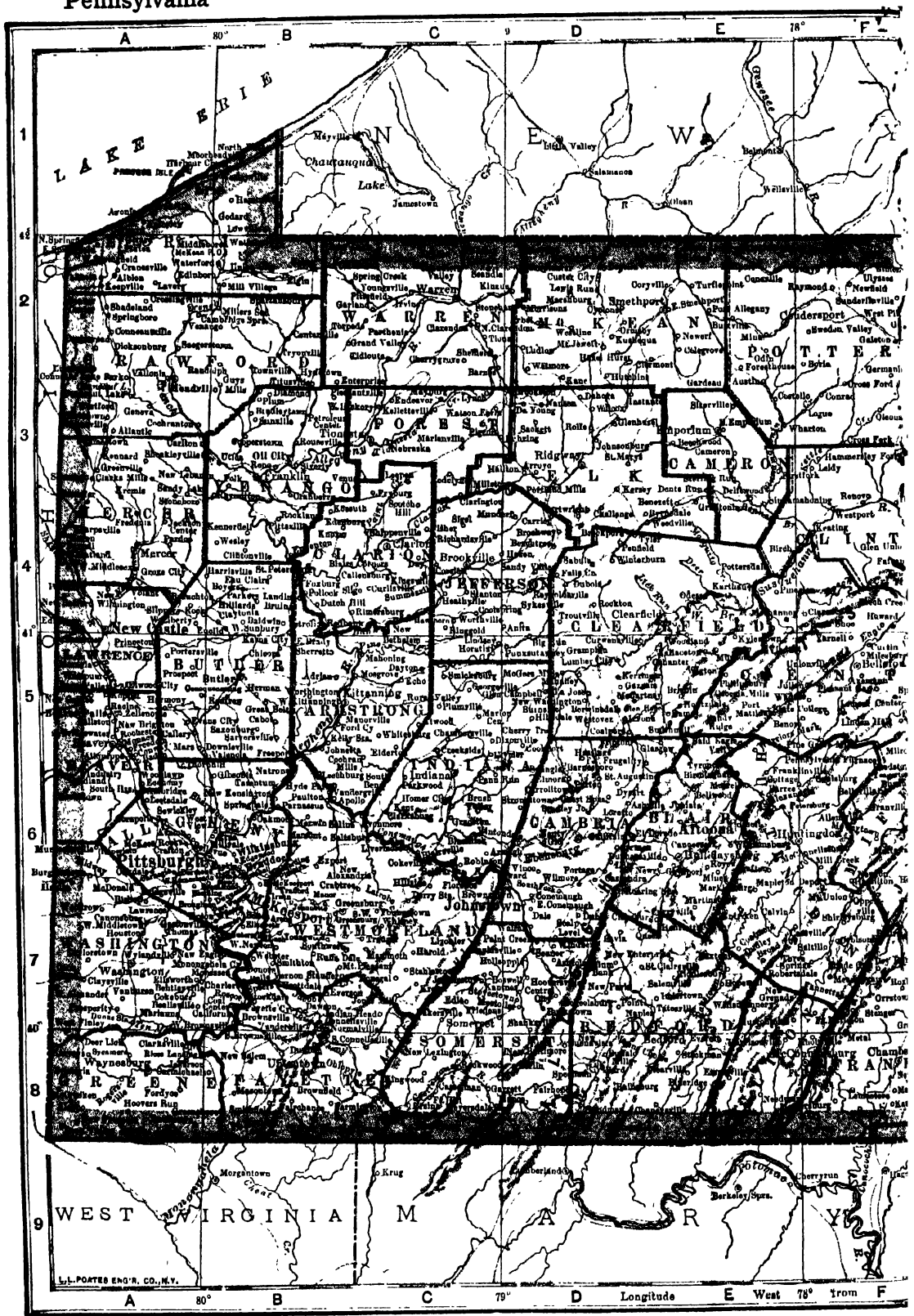
This is a detailed map of Oklahoma Territory, showing county boundaries, major cities, and geographical features. The map is labeled with county names such as Nowata, Oklahoma, Rogers, Lincoln, and Muskogee. It includes a grid with latitude and longitude coordinates (97° to 96° West, 34° to 37° North) and a scale bar at the bottom indicating distances from Greenwich.

# Oregon



This is a detailed black and white map of the state of Nevada. The map shows the state's outline and internal county boundaries. Major cities and towns are marked with dots and labeled. The map includes geographical features such as mountains, rivers, and the Great Sandy Desert in the southwest. The state is bordered by California to the west, Utah to the south, and Arizona to the southwest. The map is framed by a grid of latitude and longitude lines, with labels for degrees and minutes. The word 'NEVADA' is written across the bottom of the map. The map is titled 'NEVADA' at the top center.

# Pennsylvania







# Rhode Island

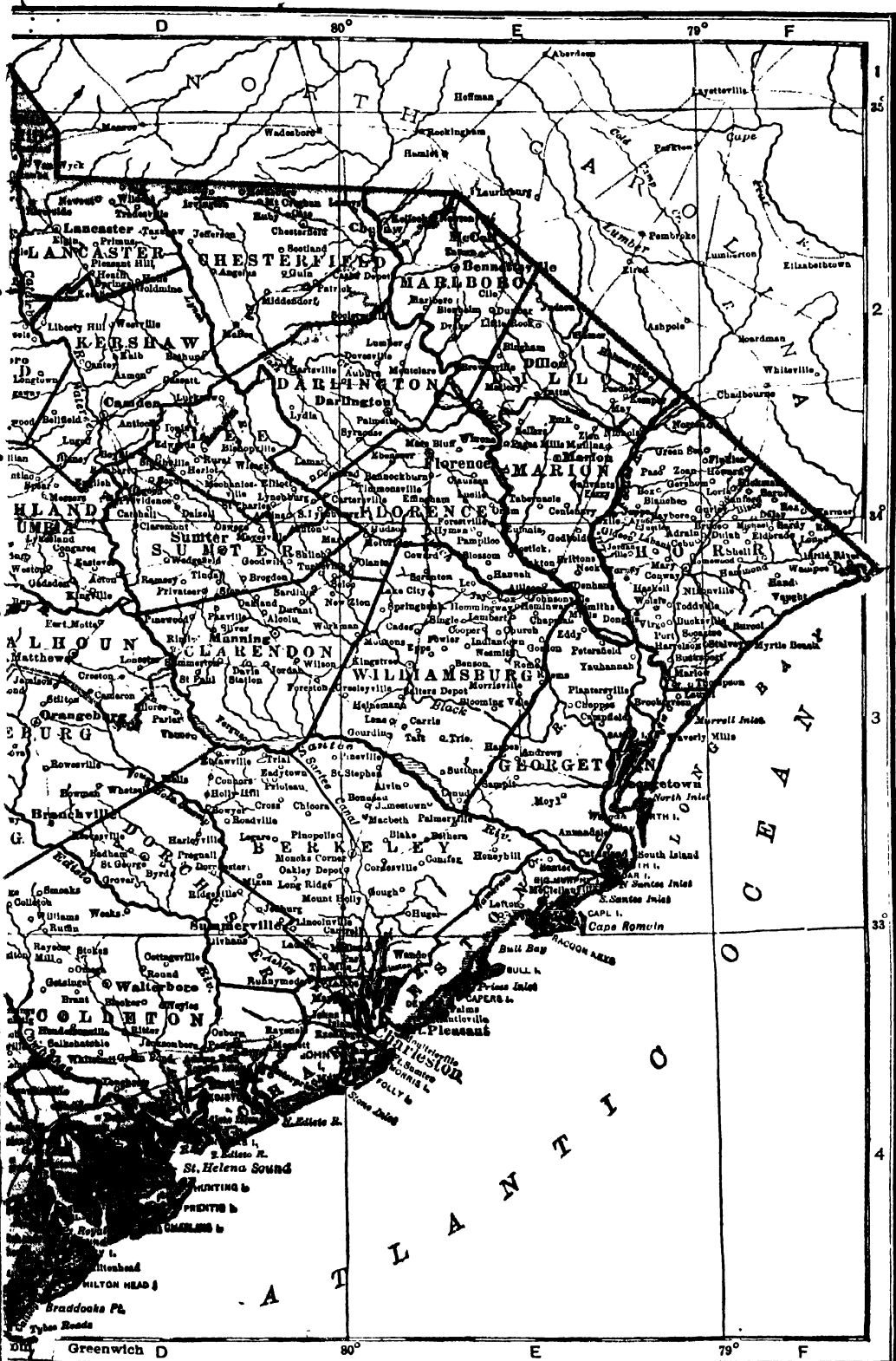


# South Carolina

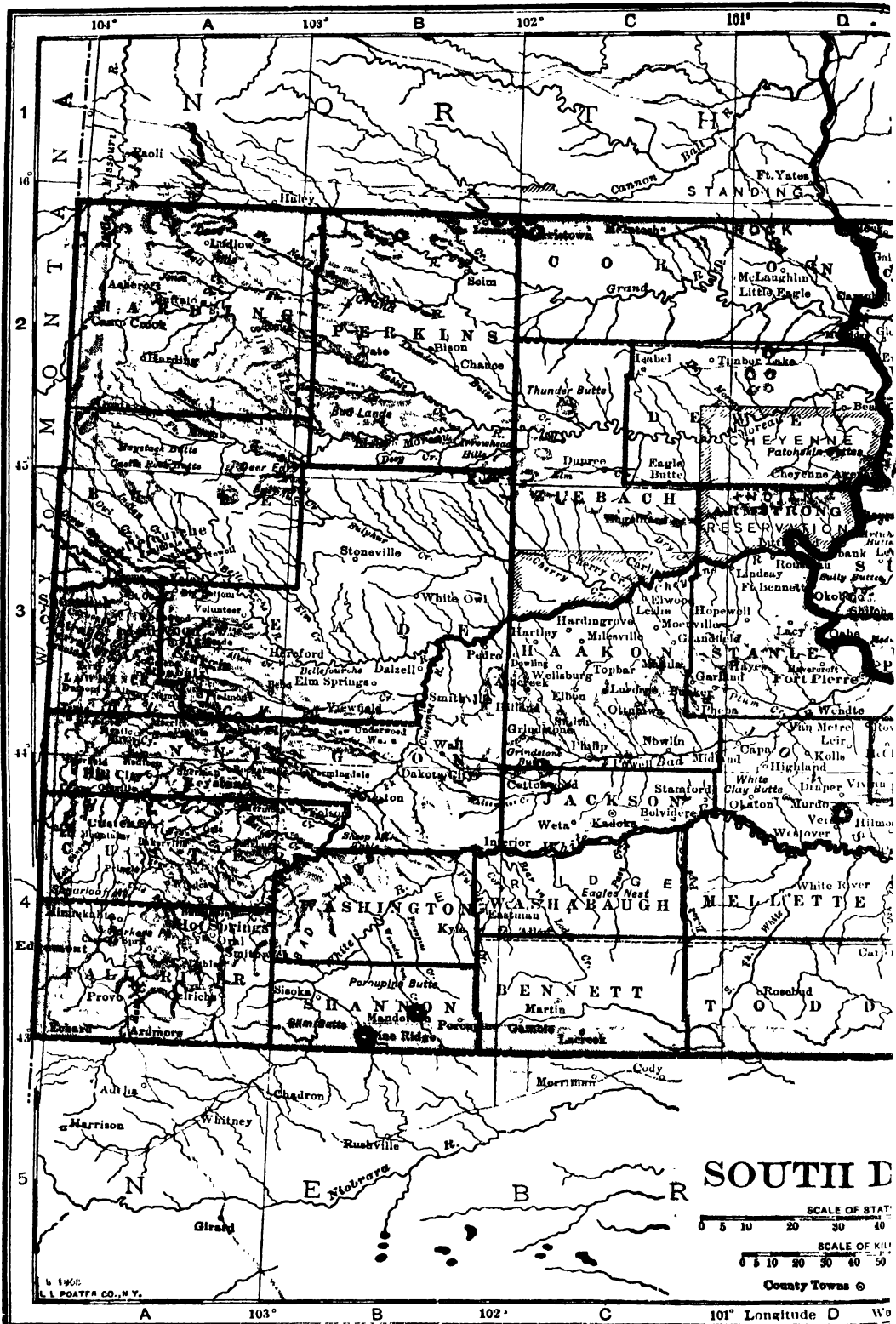




# South Carolina

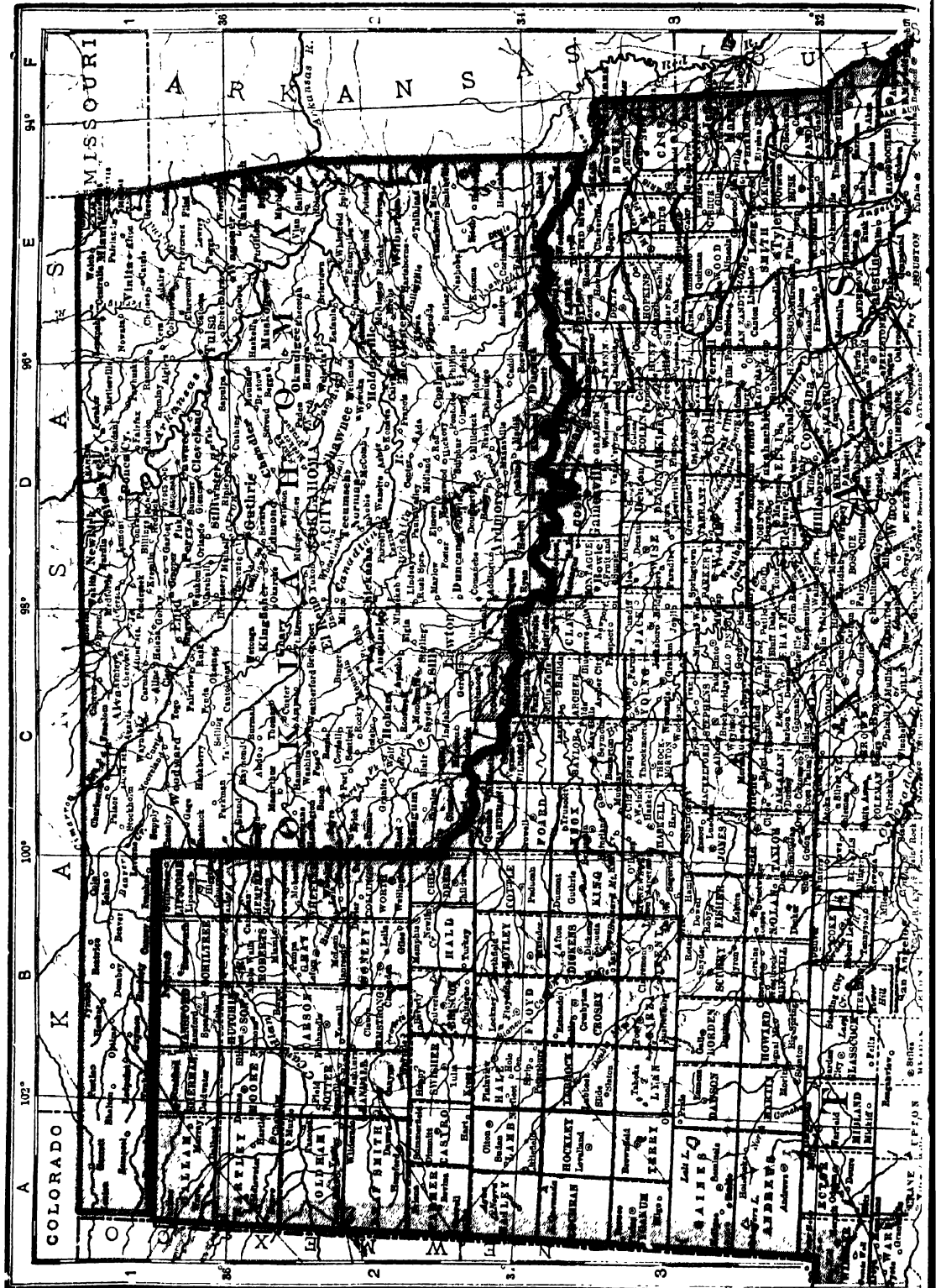


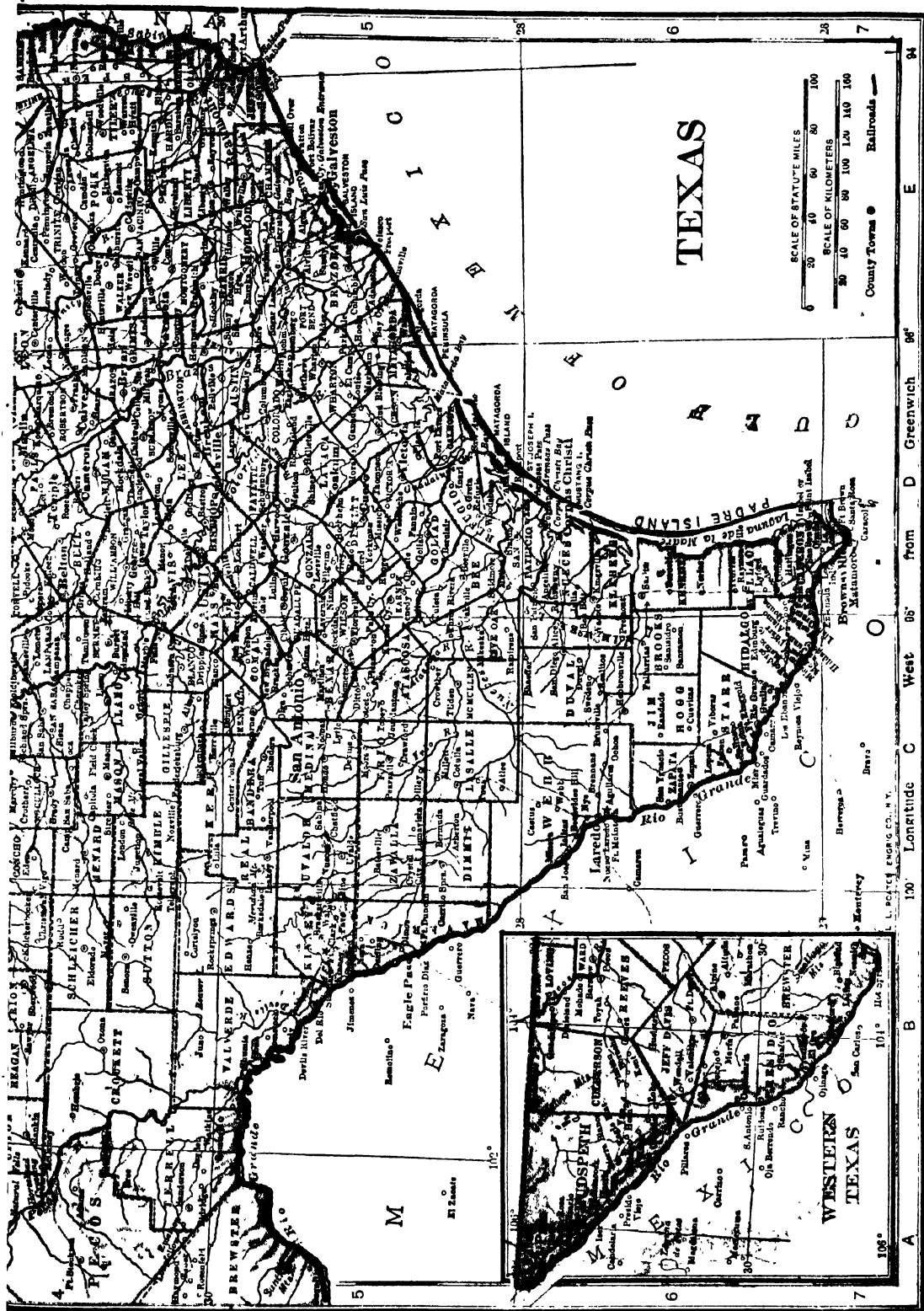
## South Dakota



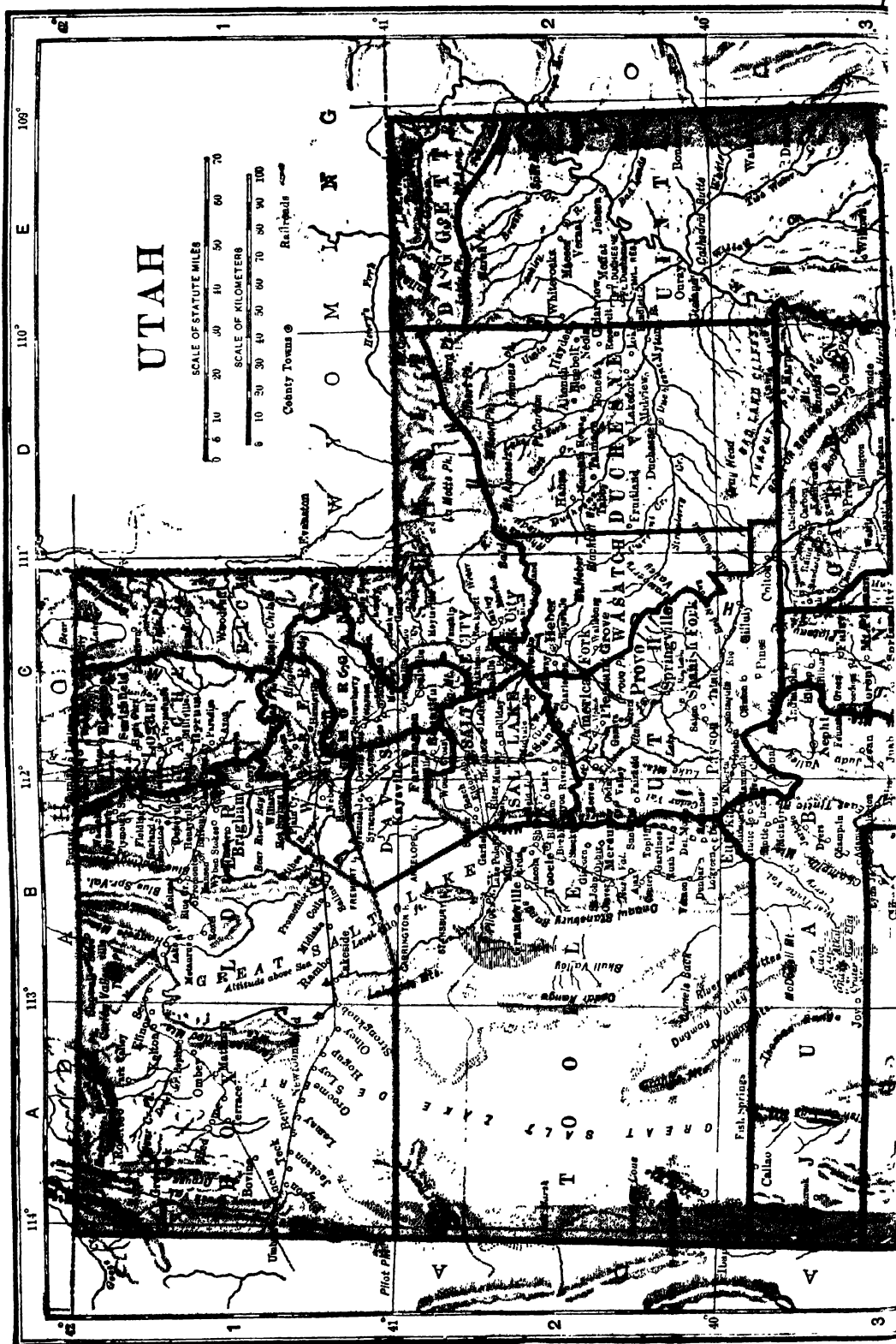
# South Dakota

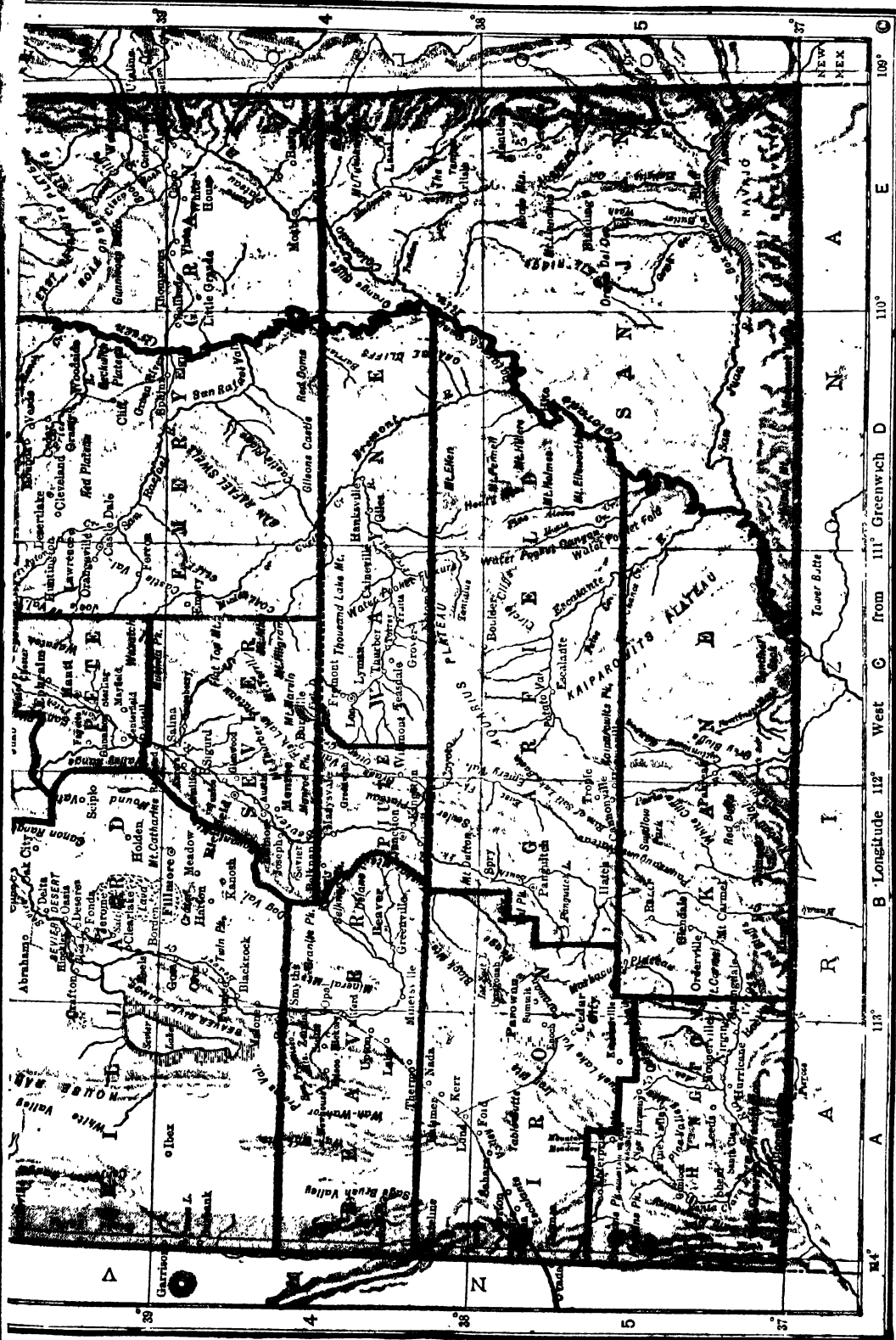






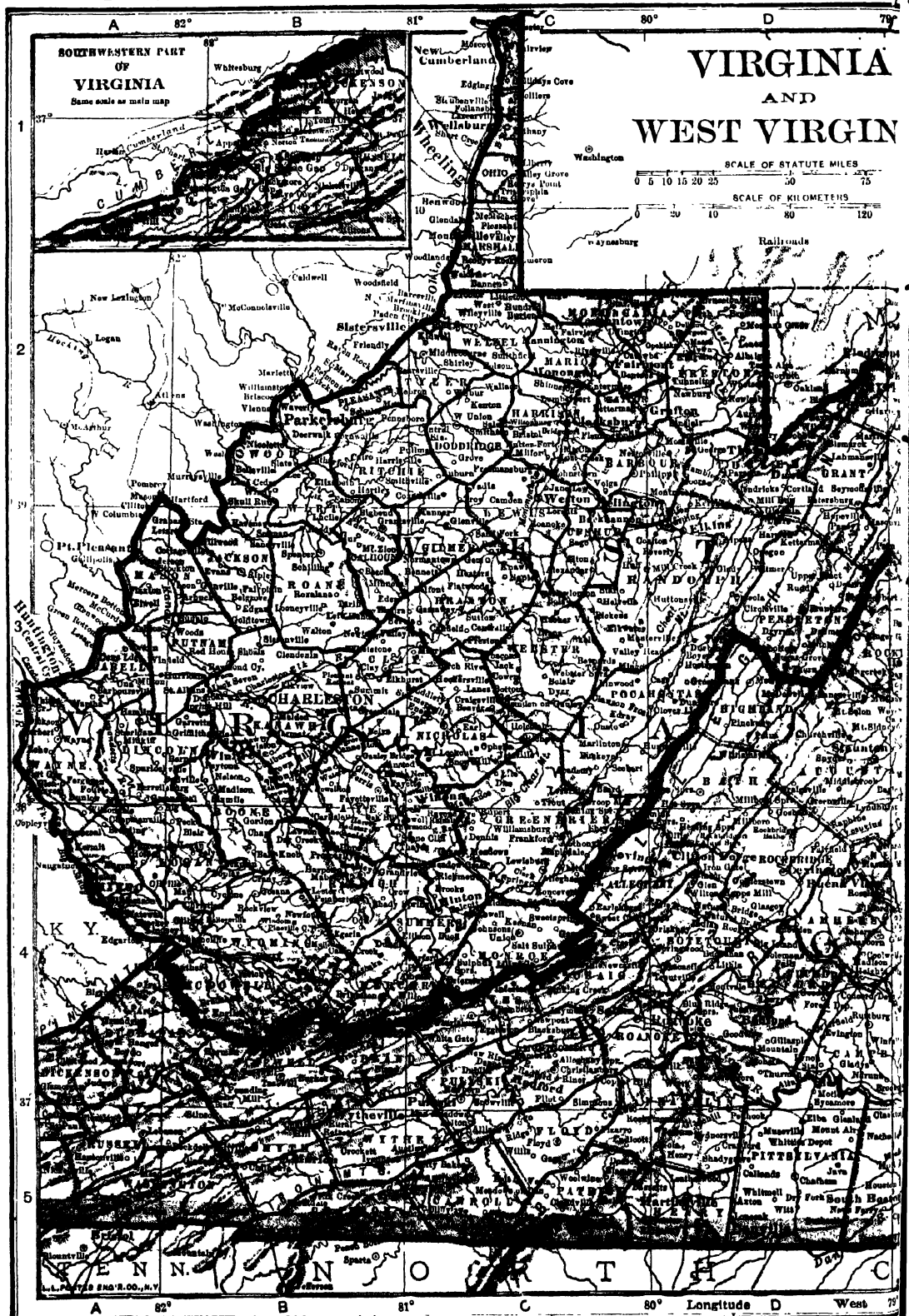
## Utah





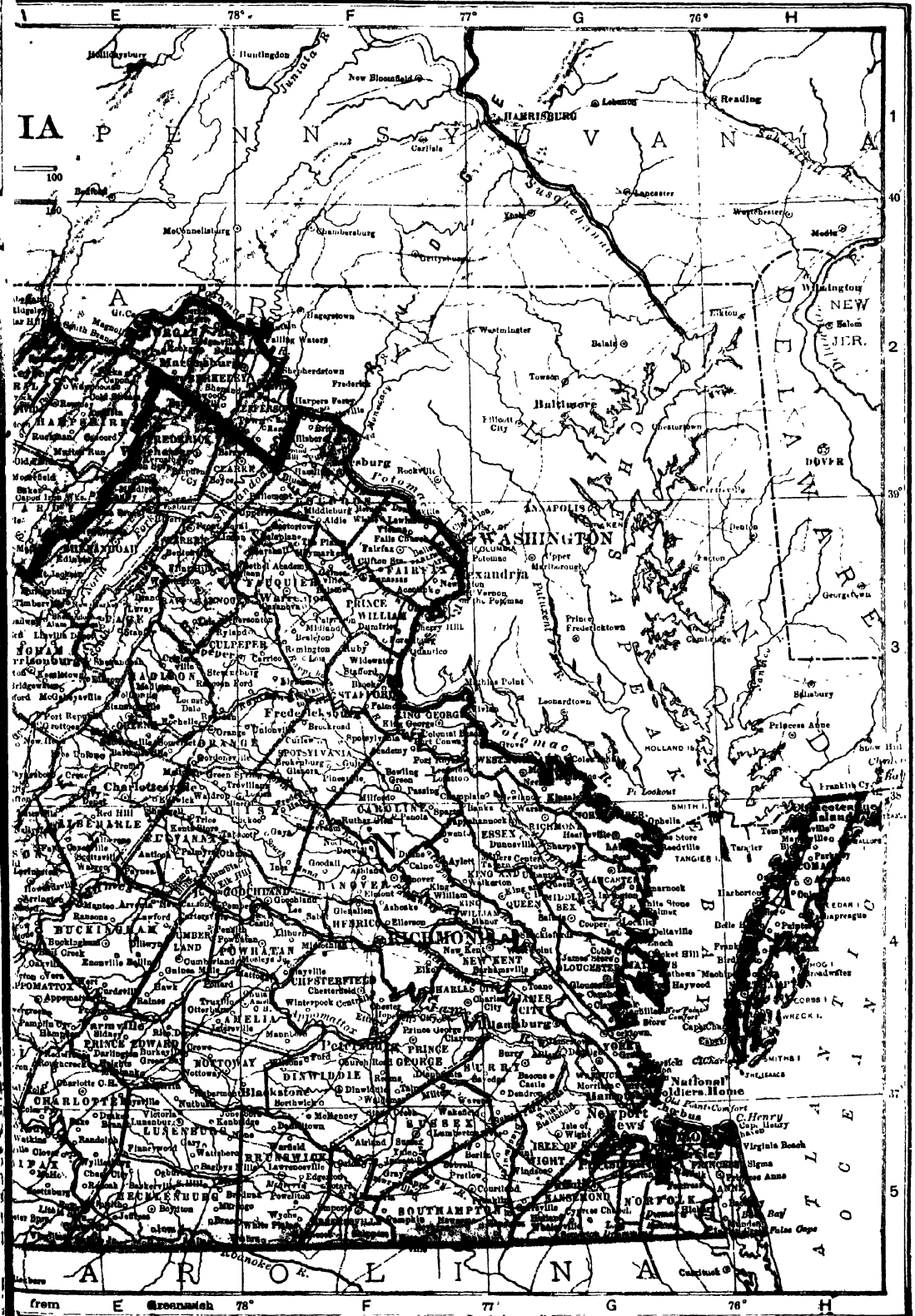


## Virginia, West Virginia

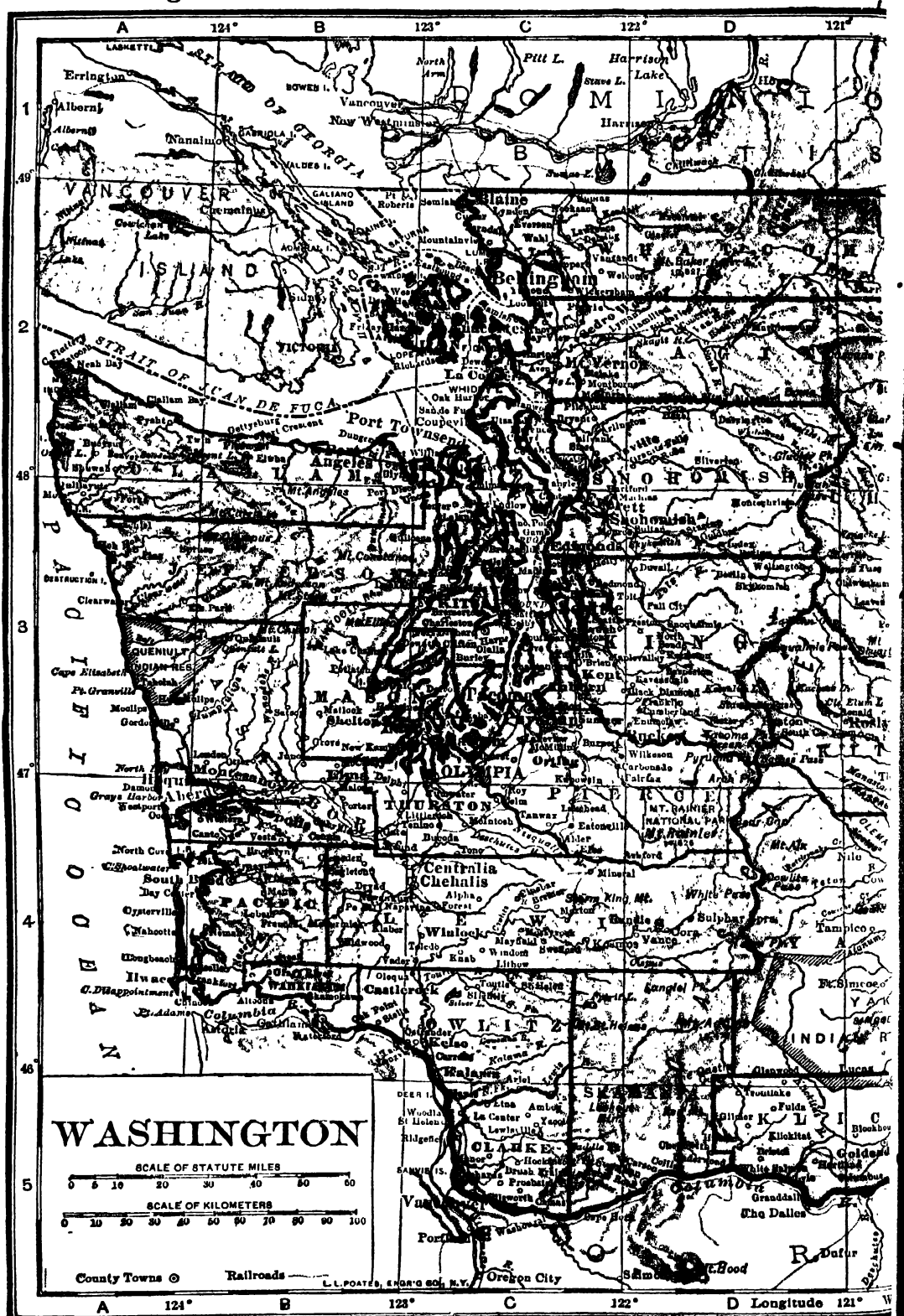




# Virginia, West Virginia .

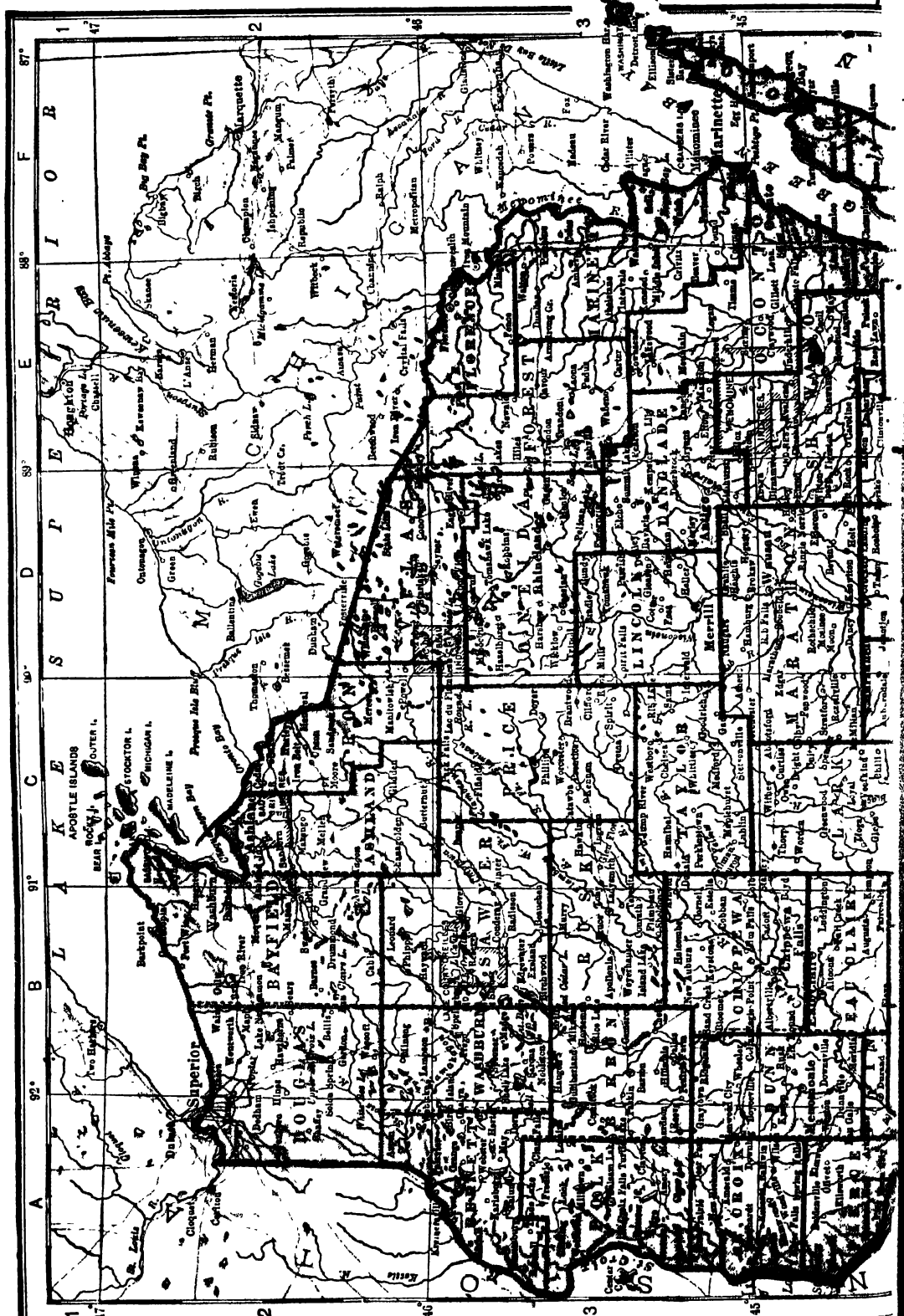


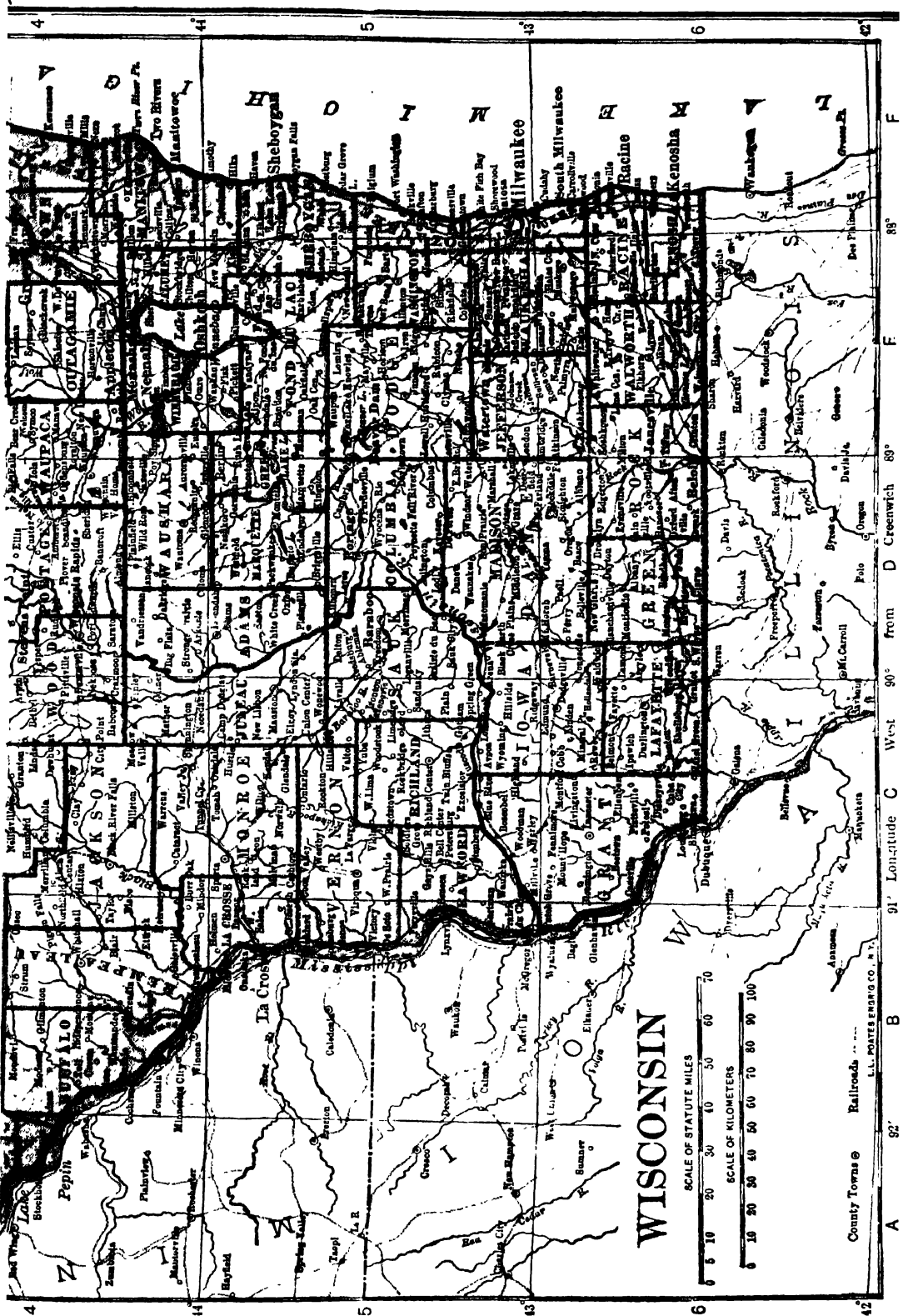
## Washington



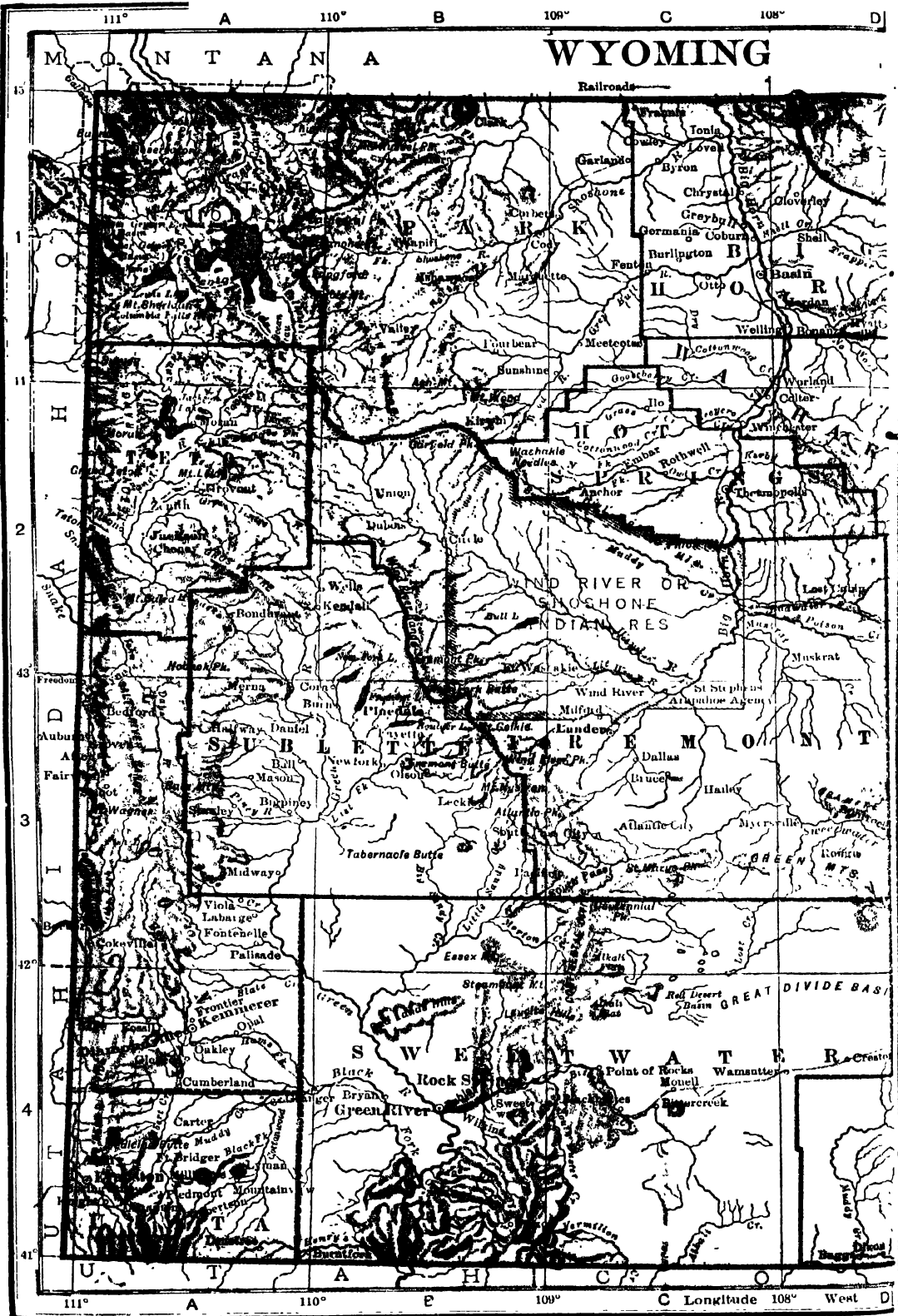
## Washington







# Wyoming



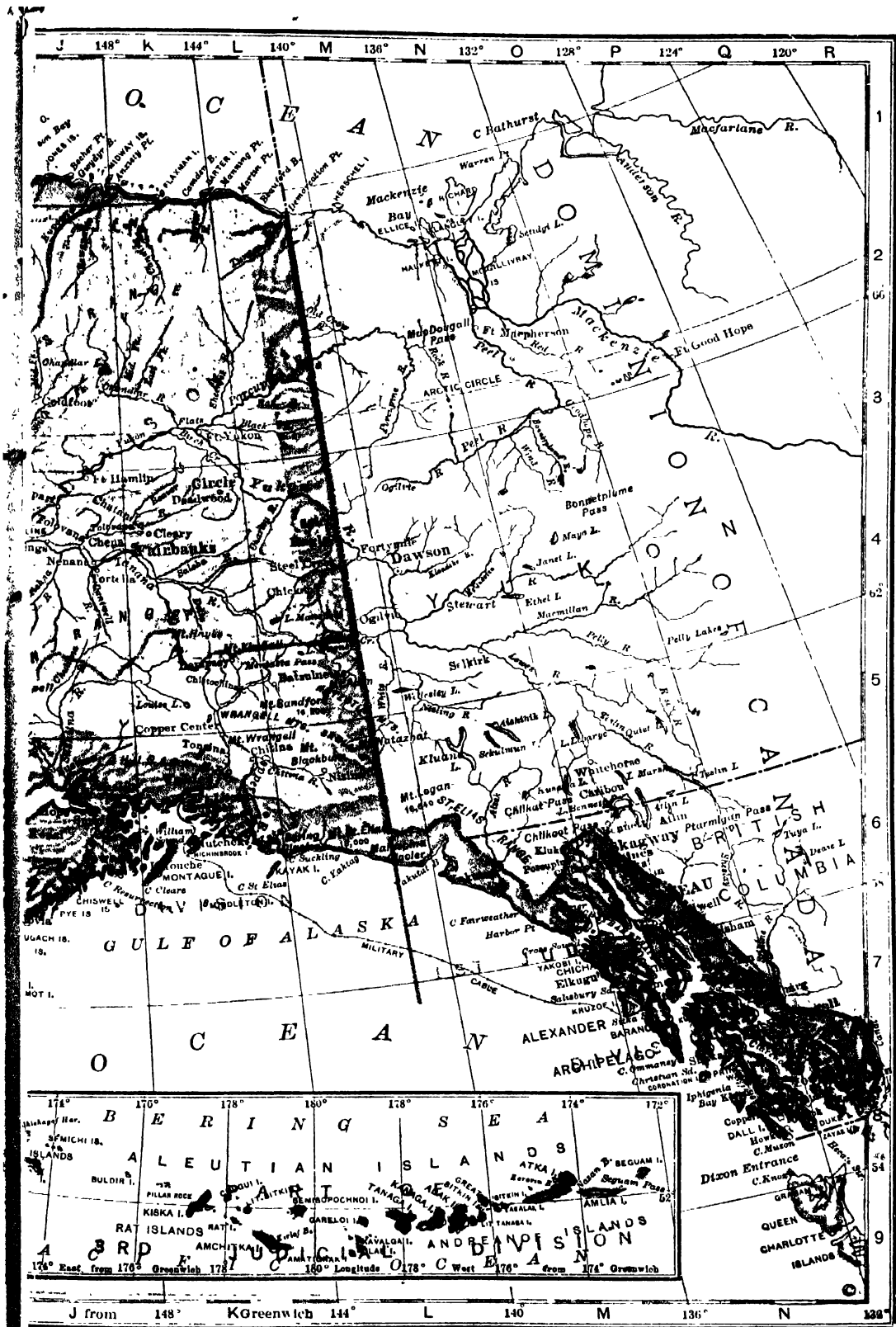
# Wyoming













# Puerto Rico

